

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

v92

Genesis

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes **11**
Genesis 11
Genesis Introduction 11
Genesis 1 16
Genesis 2 61
Genesis 3 89
Genesis 4 121
Genesis 5 155
Genesis 6 186
Genesis 7 215
Genesis 8 243
Genesis 9 272
Genesis 10 305
Genesis 11 331
Genesis 12 367
Genesis 13 393
Genesis 14 414
Genesis 15 448
Genesis 16 473
Genesis 17 493
Genesis 18 526
Genesis 19 572
Genesis 20 618
Genesis 21 641
Genesis 22 679
Genesis 23 710
Genesis 24 735
Genesis 25 813
Genesis 26 847
Genesis 27 890
Genesis 28 939
Genesis 29 962
Genesis 30 1002
Genesis 31 1044
Genesis 32 1107
Genesis 33 1140
Genesis 34 1162
Genesis 35 1194
Genesis 36 1228
Genesis 37 1271
Genesis 38 1313
Genesis 39 1346
Genesis 40 1372
Genesis 41 1396
Genesis 42 1459
Genesis 43 1502
Genesis 44 1541
Genesis 45 1579
Genesis 46 1609
Genesis 47 1644
Genesis 48 1686
Genesis 49 1714
Genesis 50 1756
Appendix: Translation Academy **1786**
First, Second or Third Person 1786
Abstract Nouns 1787
Active or Passive 1789
Double Negatives 1791
Doublet 1793
Ellipsis 1795
Euphemism 1797
Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ 1798
Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors 1800
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information 1803
Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit 1807
When Masculine Words Include Women 1809

Generic Noun Phrases 1810
Go and Come 1812
Hendiadys 1813
Hyperbole 1815
Hypothetical Situations 1818
Idiom 1821
Imperatives — Other Uses 1823
Information Structure 1826
Irony 1829
Litotes 1831
Merism 1832
Metaphor 1833
Metonymy 1838
Nominal Adjectives 1839
Parallelism 1840
Personification 1843
Possession 1844
Pronouns 1847
Direct and Indirect Quotations 1849
Quotes within Quotes 1850
Reduplication 1853
Reflexive Pronouns 1854
Rhetorical Question 1856
Simile 1859
Synecdoche 1861
Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural 1862
Forms of 'You' — Singular 1864
Collective Nouns 1865
Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions 1868
Connect — Hypothetical Conditions 1870
Connect — Exception Clauses 1872
Connect — Contrast Relationship 1873
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship 1875
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship 1877
Connect — Background Information 1879
Connect — Sequential Time Relationship 1881
Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship 1883
Connecting Words and Phrases 1884
Biblical Distance 1887
Blessings 1889
Biblical Money 1891
Biblical Volume 1893
Biblical Weight 1895
Kinship 1897
How to Translate Names 1899
Numbers 1902
Ordinal Numbers 1904
Symbolic Action 1905
Irregular Use of Tenses 1907
Textual Variants 1910
Copy or Borrow Words 1912
Translate Unknowns 1913
Verse Bridges 1916
Background Information 1917
Introduction of a New Event 1920
Oath Formulas 1923
Introduction of New and Old Participants 1926
Poetry 1928
Politeness 1930
Pronouns — When to Use Them 1933
Quotations and Quote Margins 1936
Appendix: Translation Words 1939
abomination, abominable 1939
Almighty 1940
altar 1940
angel, archangel 1941
anoint, anointed, anointing 1943
appoint, appointed 1944
ark 1945
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh 1946

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief 1947
birthright 1949
bless, blessed, blessing 1949
bind, bond, bound 1951
call, called, call out, called out 1952
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision 1953
compassion, compassionate 1954
covenant 1955
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love 1957
curse, cursed, cursing 1957
dominion 1958
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever 1959
evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant 1960
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry 1962
favor, favorable, favoritism 1963
fear, afraid, frighten 1964
fool, foolish, folly 1965
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned 1966
God 1967
good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness 1970
grace, gracious 1971
guilt, guilty 1972
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly 1973
Hebrew 1974
honor 1975
image of God, image 1976
inherit, inheritance, heir 1977
iniquity 1978
innocent 1978
Israel, Israelites 1979
judge, judgment 1980
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification 1981
lamb, Lamb of God 1983
lament, lamentation 1984
lord, Lord, master, sir 1984
love, beloved 1986
Most High 1988
myrrh 1988
pray, prayer 1989
priest, priesthood 1990
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess 1991
pure, purify, purification 1993
redeem, redeemer, redemption 1994
remnant 1995
restore, restoration 1995
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness 1996
save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue 1998
sign, proof, reminder 1999
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning 2000
sons of God, children of God 2002
spirit, wind, breath 2003
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire 2004
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence 2005
transgress, transgression 2007
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness 2008
unleavened bread 2009
wise, wisdom 2010
prostrate, bow down, worship 2011
wrath, fury 2012
Yahweh, Yah 2012
Abel 2014
Abimelech 2015
Abraham, Abram 2016
Adam 2018
Ai 2019
Amalek, Amalekite 2019
Ammon, Ammonite 2020
Amorite 2020
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus 2021
Ararat 2022

Asher 2023
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire 2023
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian 2024
Beersheba 2025
Benjamin, Benjaminite 2026
Bethel 2026
Bethlehem, Ephrathah 2027
Bethuel 2028
Bilhah 2028
Cain 2029
Canaan, Canaanite 2029
Chaldea, Chaldean 2030
Cush 2031
Damascus 2031
Dan 2032
Eden, garden of Eden 2032
Edom, Edomite, Idumea 2033
Egypt, Egyptian 2034
Elam, Elamites 2035
Enoch 2035
Ephraim, Ephraimite 2036
Ephrath, Ephrathah 2036
Esau 2037
Euphrates River, the River 2038
Eve 2038
Gad 2039
Gaza 2040
Gerar 2040
Gilead, Gileadite 2041
Girgashites 2041
Gomorrah 2042
Goshen 2042
Greece, Grecian 2043
Hagar 2043
Ham 2044
Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath, Hamath Rabbah 2044
Hamor 2045
Haran 2045
Hebron, Kiriath Arba 2046
Hittite 2046
Hivite 2047
Isaac 2047
Ishmael, Ishmaelite 2048
Issachar 2049
Jacob, Israel 2050
Japheth 2052
Jebus, Jebusite 2052
Jordan River, Jordan 2053
Joseph (OT) 2053
Judah 2055
Kadesh, Kadesh Barnea, Meribah Kadesh 2056
Kedar 2056
Korah, Korahite 2057
Laban 2057
Lamech 2058
Leah 2059
Levi, Levite 2059
Lot 2060
Maacah 2061
Manasseh 2061
Mede, Medes, Media 2062
Melchizedek 2063
Meshech 2064
Midian, Midianite 2064
Mizpah 2065
Moab, Moabite 2066
Naaman 2066
Nahor 2067
Naphtali 2067
Negeb, Negev 2068

Nephils, Nephilim, Nephilites 2068
Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile 2069
Nineveh, Ninevite 2070
Noah 2070
Paddan Aram 2071
Paran 2072
Perizzite 2072
Pharaoh, king of Egypt 2073
Philistines 2074
Potiphar 2074
Rachel 2075
Rebekah 2075
Reuben 2076
Salt Sea, eastern sea 2077
Sarah, Sarai 2077
Saul (OT) 2078
Seth 2079
Sheba 2080
Shechem 2080
Shem 2081
Shiloh 2081
Shinar 2082
Sidon, Sidonians 2082
Simeon 2083
Sodom 2083
Succoth 2084
Tamar 2084
Tarshish 2085
Terah 2085
Tubal 2086
Ur 2086
Zebulun 2087
Zilpah 2087
Zoar 2088
adversary, enemy 2088
afflict, affliction, distress 2089
archer 2090
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community 2090
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance 2091
barren, dry 2092
bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced 2093
beast 2094
day 2095
month, monthly 2096
week 2096
year 2097
blot out, wipe out 2098
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee 2098
bow and arrow, a bow 2099
bread 2100
bronze 2101
burnt offering, offering by fire 2101
bury, buried, burial 2102
camel 2103
captive, captivate, captivity, catch 2103
cast out, driving out, throw out 2104
chariot, charioteer 2105
cherub, cherubs 2105
chief, leader 2106
clan 2107
companion, fellow worker, friend 2107
conceive, conceived, conception 2108
concubine 2108
contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to 2109
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved 2109
council 2110
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox 2111
create, created, creation, creator 2112
cry, cry out, outcry 2113
cupbearer 2113

deceive, lie, deception, illusion 2114
declare, proclaim, announce 2115
deer, doe, fawn, roebuck, stag 2116
defile, defiled, desecrate 2116
delight 2117
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered 2118
descend, descendant 2119
desert, wilderness 2120
desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator 2120
destroy, destruction, annihilate 2121
devour 2122
discern, discernment, distinguish 2123
disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed 2123
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer 2124
donkey, mule 2124
dove, pigeon, turtledove 2125
dream 2125
drink offering 2126
drunk, drunkard 2127
earth, land 2127
elder 2129
envy, covet, jealous, jealousy 2130
family, household 2130
famine 2131
feast, feasting 2131
fig 2132
firstborn 2133
flock, herd 2134
flood 2135
flute, pipe 2136
alien, foreigner, sojourn 2136
forsake, forsaken, leave 2137
fountain, source, spring 2138
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful 2138
gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway 2139
generation 2140
goat, goatskin, scapegoat, kid 2141
gold, golden 2142
grain, grainfields 2142
grape, grapevine 2143
hang, hung 2143
hard, harder 2144
harvest, reap 2144
heir 2145
honey, honeycomb 2146
horn, horned, shofar 2146
horse, warhorse, horseback, stallion, steed, mare 2147
horseman 2147
house 2148
image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue 2148
integrity 2149
interpret, interpretation, interpreter 2150
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad 2151
judge 2152
king, kingship 2153
kingdom 2154
kiss 2155
know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish 2155
labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work 2156
law, principle 2157
lion, lioness 2157
livestock, animals 2158
loins 2158
lust, lustful, passion, desire 2159
lute, lyre 2159
magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits 2160
meditate, meditation 2160
messenger 2161
might, mighty, mighty works 2161
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock 2162

mourn, mourner, weeping 2163
multiply, multiplied, multiplication 2164
nation 2164
oak 2165
oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by, sworn 2166
oil 2167
olive 2167
oversee, overseer, keeper 2168
overtake 2169
peace, peaceful, peacemaker 2170
perfect, complete 2171
column, pillar 2171
pit, pitfall, trench, cistern 2172
plea, plead, please, beg, implore 2173
pledge 2173
plow, plower, plowman, plowmen, plowshare, unplowed 2174
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess 2174
praise, praised, praiseworthy 2175
prey, prey on 2176
prince, princess, governor, provincial governor, official, nobleman, noblemen, nobility 2177
profit, profits, profited, profitable 2178
prosper, prosperity, prosperous 2178
prostitute, harlot, whored 2179
prostrate 2180
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness 2180
rebuke, reprove 2181
reed 2182
reign, rule 2182
report, reported, tell, reputation 2183
reward, prize, deserve 2183
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader 2184
sackcloth 2185
sacrifice, offering 2186
sandal 2187
scepter 2188
seal, sealed, unsealed 2188
seed 2189
seek, search, look for 2190
seize, seizure, capture 2191
serpent, snake, viper 2192
servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women 2192
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach 2194
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin 2196
shepherd, herder, pastor 2197
shield 2198
shrewd, cunning 2199
silver 2199
slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder 2200
slaughter, slaughtered 2201
sow, sower, plant, planted, replanted, transplanted 2201
staff, clubs 2202
statute 2203
strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict 2203
sweep 2204
sword, swordsmen 2204
tent, tentmaker 2205
tenth, tithe 2206
terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic 2207
thief, thieves, rob, robber, robbery, bandit 2207
thorn, thorn bush, thistle 2208
thresh 2209
throne, enthroned 2209
grave, gravedigger, tomb, burial place 2210
tongue, language 2211
tremble, shake, shaken, quake 2212
tribe, tribal, tribesmen 2212
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity 2213
tunic 2214
veil, veiled, unveiled 2214
vine 2215

vineyard 2216
virgin, virginity 2216
vision, envision 2217
watch, guard, take heed, beware 2218
cistern, well 2219
wheat 2220
wine, wineskin, new wine 2220
wise men, advisor 2221
wolf, wild dog, wild dogs 2222
womb 2223
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful 2223

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Genesis

Genesis Introduction

Introduction to Genesis

Part 1: General Introduction

In the book of Genesis, God communicates to all people the early history of the universe. He begins with how he created everything from nothing, including the earth and all the heavenly bodies (sun, moon, stars), all the plants and animals, and especially how he created human beings in his image to be in a relationship with him. This book also explains how sin and death came into the world and what God's plan is to save people from that. In fact, all the important teachings in the Bible begin in Genesis. That makes this book foundational and important for everyone so that they can know and understand the truth about God and his plan for their lives.

Beginning with verse 1, the book of Genesis is a narrative that tells the history of events that actually happened. This is confirmed by the fact that the conjunctions and the forms of the verbs that are used in the Hebrew text reflect the Hebrew narrative style, which is used to narrate historical accounts. In the same way, those who translate the book of Genesis should also use grammatical structures in their languages that are used for true, historical narratives. God uses narrative, which is one of the most interesting styles of communication, to not only tell people about the events in the early history of the world, but also to teach them about himself and about the way he interacts with people as their loving Creator.

Genesis provides the vital context for the rest of God's Word, especially the gospel message about Jesus, and so it helps people to understand their need for him to be their Savior. In fact, without Genesis, it would not be clear why everyone needs to trust in Jesus as the only one who can save them from sin and its consequences, so that they can associate with God and be part of his eternal family.

In light of all that, Genesis should be one of the first books of the Bible that is translated into every language that needs a translation. May God guide and bless you and your translation team as you undertake this important task together by his power.

Author and date of writing

Moses was the human author of the first five books of the Bible, including the book of Genesis (Exodus 24:3–4; Deuteronomy 31:9, 24; John 1:45). The Holy Spirit is the one who inspired what Moses wrote in those books (2 Peter 1:21), so ultimately God is the author, and these books are part of his Message to mankind. Those five books are sometimes referred to as the Torah (a Hebrew word that means "teaching," "instruction," or "law") or the Pentateuch (a Greek word that means "five books"). In the New Testament this set of books is also referred to as "the Law" (John 1:45) or "the Law of Moses" (Acts 28:23), and Jesus himself affirmed that Moses wrote them (John 5:46–47; 7:23).

Moses was born in the country of Egypt around 1526 B.C. (Exodus 2:1–10). According to the genealogies in Genesis, his birth was about 1,000 years after the Flood (which was about 1,650 years after creation). Moses may have written much of the Pentateuch during the forty years that he led the people of Israel as they wandered in the wilderness (around 1446 B.C.—1406 B.C.).

The very first verse in Genesis assumes that God (the author guiding the human author) has always existed and that he has no beginning and no end (also see 21:33; Deuteronomy 33:27; Psalm 90:2). He uses his personal name "Yahweh" for the first time in Genesis 2:4. The name "Yahweh" means "he is" and indicates that God is eternal. His name also means that he is unchanging and that he is always present.

Book outline

In all, Genesis covers a span of about 2200 years of history. After the world's early history, the rest of Genesis tells about the ancestors of God's people, with special focus on Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Joseph (and their families). Genealogies are an important part of what ties the book together from beginning to end.

The following outline shows these two main divisions in the book of Genesis: (1) Early World History, and (2) The History about the Ancestors of God's Chosen People. Those two divisions each have roughly four main subdivisions, which are based on four key events (in the first division) and four key ancestors (in the second division). Some scholars prefer to divide the book up into ten divisions that are introduced by the Hebrew phrase that means "these are the generations of …" In the outline below, **asterisks** mark the sections that contain that phrase. The phrase is found in Genesis 2:4 (heavens and earth), 5:1 (Adam), 6:9 (Noah), 10:1, 10:32 (sons of Noah), 11:10 (Shem), 11:27 (Terah), 25:12 (Ishmael), 25:19 (Isaac), 36:1, 36:9 (Esau), and 37:2 (Jacob).

Bold words in the outline show which sections contain promises and covenants from God and also mark who the main ancestors were in the various sub-divisions.

Division 1: Early World History

Creation

- God creates the universe and everything in it (1:1–2:3)
- Adam and Eve and the Garden of Eden (2:4–25)*

The Fall

- The first sin and God's judgment; prophecy of Christ (3:1–24) - **promise**
- Cain and Abel: the first murder; Cain's descendants (4:1–26)
- The descendants of Adam to Noah (5:1–32)*

The Flood

- God destroys the world with a flood, puts rainbow in the sky - **covenant** (6:1–9:17)*
- Noah curses his son Ham and his grandson Canaan, blesses other sons (9:18–27)
- The descendants of Noah's sons Shem, Ham, and Japheth (10:1–32)*

Tower of Babel

- Mankind rebels against God at Babel, so God creates many different languages and scatters the people over the earth (11:1–9)

Division 2: The History about the Ancestors of God's Chosen People

The history about **Abraham** Genesis 11:10–25:11

- The descendants of Shem to Abram (11:10–26)*
- Terah and his three sons' families in Haran; Terah dies (11:27–32)*
- Abram travels to Canaan with Sarai and his nephew Lot (12:1–9) - **promise**
- Abram lies about Sarai to Pharaoh, king of Egypt (12:10–20)
- Back in the Negeb Desert, Abram and Lot part ways (13:1–18) - **promise**
- War of the kings; Abram rescues Lot and the other citizens of Sodom (14:1–17)
- Melchizedek blesses Abram; Abram refuses bounty from king of Sodom (14:18–24)
- God's **covenant** with Abram (15:1–21) - **promise**
- Hagar and Ishmael (16:1–16)
- New names: Abraham and Sarah; **covenant** of circumcision (17:1–27) - **promise**
- Three men visit Abram, Yahweh renews promise, Sarah laughs (18:1–15) - **promise**
- Abram pleads with Yahweh to spare Sodom (18:16–33)
- Lot and two daughters escape destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (19:1–29)
- Lot's grandsons: the ancestors of the Moabites and Ammonites (19:30–38)
- Abraham lies about Sarah to Abimelech, king of the Philistines (20:1–18)
- Isaac is born to Sarah; Ishmael grows up in the desert (21:1–21)
- Abraham makes a treaty with King Abimelech at Beersheba (21:22–34)
- God tests Abraham by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac (22:1–19) - **promise**
- Sarah dies and Abraham buys burial property in the land of Canaan (23:1–20)
- God provides Rebekah as a wife for Isaac (24:1–67)
- Abraham's descendants by second wife Keturah (25:1–6)
- Abraham dies and is buried by Isaac and Ishmael (25:7–11)

The history about **Ishmael** and **Isaac** Genesis 25:12–35:29

- Ishmael's descendants and his death (25:12–18)*

- Isaac's sons Esau and Jacob; Esau sells his birthright (25:19–34)*
- Isaac lies about Rebekah to Abimelech, king of the Philistines (26:1–22) - **promise**
- God's **covenant** with Isaac in Beersheba; treaty with Abimelech (26:23–33)

The history about **Esau** and **Jacob** Genesis 26:34–36:43

- Jacob steals Esau's blessing; Esau plans revenge (26:34–27:46)
- Jacob flees and heads to Haran; stairway to heaven at Bethel (28:1–22) - **promise**
- Jacob works for Laban to marry his wives Leah and Rachel (29:1–30)
- Jacob's wives have his first eleven sons (29:31–30:24)
- Jacob becomes wealthy while working for Laban (30:25–43)
- Jacob and his family flee from Laban; Jacob's treaty with Laban (31:1–55)
- Jacob wrestles with God, who names him **Israel** (32:1–32)
- Jacob and Esau reconcile, and Jacob settles in the city of Shechem (33:1–20)
- Shechem rapes Dinah, and Jacob's sons take revenge (34:1–31)
- God blesses Jacob at Bethel (35:1–15) - **promise**
- Rachel dies giving birth to Benjamin (35:16–20)
- List of Jacob's twelve sons; Isaac dies and is buried by Esau and Jacob (35:16–29)
- Esau's descendants, the Edomites (36:1–43)*

The history about **Jacob** and **Joseph** Genesis 37–50

- Jacob's family; Joseph's dreams anger his brothers (37:1–11)*
- Joseph sold as a slave and taken to the country of Egypt (37:12–36)
- **Judah** and his daughter-in-law Tamar have children (38:1–30)
- Potiphar's wife falsely accuses Joseph, and he is imprisoned (39:1–23)
- In the prison, Joseph interprets dreams for Pharaoh's officials (40:1–23)
- Joseph interprets Pharaoh's dreams about famine (41:1–40)
- As governor over Egypt, Joseph stores up grain; he has two sons (41:41–57)
- Joseph's brothers come to Egypt to buy grain, then return to Jacob (42:1–38)
- All Joseph's brothers return to Egypt and have a meal with him (43:1–34)
- Joseph tests his brothers with his silver cup (44:1–17)
- Judah pleads with Joseph for Benjamin's freedom (44:18–34)

- Joseph reveals his identity to his brothers; they give the news to Jacob (45:1–28)
- Jacob and his family move to Egypt; list of his descendants (46:1–27)
- Joseph settles Jacob and his family in the land of Goshen (47:1–12)
- Joseph sells grain to all the people of Egypt (37:13–31)
- Jacob blesses Joseph's sons Ephraim and Manasseh (48:1–22)
- Jacob blesses each of his 12 sons (49:1–28)
- Jacob's death (49:29–33)
- Joseph has his father Jacob embalmed and buries him in Canaan (50:1–14)
- Joseph reassures his brothers that he has forgiven them (50:15–21)
- Joseph's death Genesis (50:22–26)

Special formatting

The book of Genesis sometimes uses poetic language to emphasize what is being said. Many translations use a special format to identify these passages as poetry by indenting each clause on a new line. Many other translations do not do this, but rather use regular paragraph formatting everywhere, including for poetry. It may be helpful to look at a translation in the national language of your country that uses poetry formatting, to help you decide whether or not you want to do something similar in your translation. Some translations put some of the following passages in poetry format since these verses have certain features of poetry such as parallelisms and metaphors: Genesis 1:27; 2:23; 3:14–16, 17b–19; 4:23–24; 8:22; 9:6, 9:25–27; 12:2–3; 14:19–20; 15:1; 16:11–12; 24:60; 25:23; 27:27–29, 27:39–40; 48:15–16, 48:20; 49:1–27. You may not want to put all these passages in poetry format since some of them have parallelisms that are not necessarily poetry but may just be emphasizing certain events in the narrative or certain points in a prophecy.

Genesis 1

Genesis 1 Introduction

Genesis 1 Chapter Introduction

Possible titles for this book:

- “Genesis”
- “The Book of Genesis”
- “Genesis: The First Book By Moses”
- “Genesis: The Book About Beginnings”
- “The First Book That God’s Spokesman Moses Wrote: Genesis”

The English title “Genesis” is a transliteration of a Greek word that means “origin” or “beginning” or “birth”; the ancient Greek translation of the Hebrew scriptures (the Septuagint) uses this word for the first time in Genesis 2:4. The Hebrew title of this book (pronounced “bereshith”) is the first Hebrew word in verse 1 and literally means “In the beginning.” The Latin translation of the Bible (the Latin Vulgate) was the first translation to use the title “The Book of Genesis.” Since that time, many other translations include “Genesis” in the book title because people are familiar with that name. Sometimes, as part of the title, translators also include the fact that Moses was the author and that he was inspired by God.

Genesis 1:1

ULT	UST
In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.	*This is how everything began: God created the heavens and the earth.*

ULT **In the beginning**
UST This is how everything began

The first chapter of Genesis is a true, historical narrative (which is indicated by the Hebrew language structures that are used throughout the chapter), and verse 1 records the first event in that history. This is confirmed by the wider context of the Scriptures, which teach us that God created everything out of nothing at the very beginning of the world (Psalm 33:6, Psalm 33:9; Hebrews 11:3). Some languages must use a verb (**began**) in verse 1 rather than an abstract noun (**beginning**). Alternate translation: [At the beginning of time]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **created**
UST created

In the Hebrew Bible, the verb "create" refers to an activity that only God does, and it often implies (as it does here) that he made something out of nothing. Also, the forms of the verbs in the Hebrew text (and the conjunctions) show that chapter 1 is a narrative that tells about true history and events in the order that things actually happened. Make sure that your translation does the same thing. Alternate translation: [made]

ULT **the heavens**
UST the heavens

Alternate translation: [the sky]

ULT **and the earth**
UST and the earth

This phrase refers to the planet earth.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
created	created
heavens	heavens
earth	earth

Genesis 1:2

ULT	UST
Now the earth was formless and empty, and darkness was over the surface of the deep waters, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the surface of the waters.	*At first after that, the earth did not have its present form, and there was nothing living on it. It was totally dark, there was deep water everywhere, and God's Spirit was moving above the water.*

ULT **Now the earth**
UST At first after that, the earth

The author pauses here to describe what the earth and the heavens were like after God first created them (verse 1). Some languages use a conjunction like **Now** to introduce that information, while other languages do not use a conjunction here. Do what is natural in your language. Also, be consistent here with how you translated **the earth** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [Now at first after that, the earth]

ULT **was formless and empty**
UST did not have {its present} form, and there was nothing {living} on it

It is not clear what the earth looked like at that time, but it did not have its present shape and order. The phrase **was formless and empty** could mean: (1) "did not have its present form, and there was nothing living on it yet" (2) "completely desolate," which treats the text as a hendiadys. However, it is best to keep both terms separate in your translation (as they are in the Hebrew text).

ULT **and darkness {was} over the surface of the deep waters**
UST It was {totally} dark, there was deep water everywhere

Alternate translation: [It was completely dark, there was deep water everywhere] or [and everywhere there was deep water that was surrounded by total darkness]

ULT **and the Spirit of God was hovering**
UST and God's Spirit was moving

The clause **and the Spirit of God was hovering** could mean: (1) "and God's Spirit was hovering" or (2) "and a wind from God was blowing"

ULT **over the surface of the waters**
UST above the water

Throughout this chapter, the word **waters** is in the plural in the Hebrew text. For some languages it is more natural to use the singular "water." Alternate translation: [over the surface of the water] or [above the waters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
Spirit	Spirit
God	God

Genesis 1:3

ULT	UST
Then God said, “Let there be light.” And there was light.	*Then God said, “I command light to start shining!” And immediately light started shining.*

ULT Then God said
UST Then God said

What God says in verse 3 is a command. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to make that explicit in this quote margin. Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Let there be light
UST I command light to start shining

This is a command, not a permission or a suggestion. It is a direct quote of what God actually said, and it is usually put between quotation marks in a translation. If you use an exclamation point with this command in your translation, make sure it does not mean or imply that God was angry. Also, the way you translate **light** should refer to what shines from a source of light; it does not refer here to the source itself. Alternate translation: [Let light exist] or [I command there to be light]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God

Genesis 1:4

ULT	UST
And God saw the light, that it was good. Then God separated between the light and the darkness.	*God observed that the light was excellent. Then he divided the light from the darkness so that each had its own time.*

ULT **And God saw**
UST God observed

Notice that Hebrew frequently uses a conjunction such as **And** or **Then** at the beginning of a sentence. Some languages do not use conjunctions as frequently as Hebrew uses conjunctions. Do what is accurate and natural in your language in each context. Alternate translation: [And he saw] or [He saw]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **the light, that {it was} good**
UST that the light {was} excellent

In the Bible, **good** is an important theme. Throughout chapter 1, it especially means that what God created was high quality, complete, and had no defects; in other words, it had all the characteristics and functions that God intended it to have. The word **good** also includes the idea that what God created was untainted by sin and reflected his good character (Psalm 19:1; Romans 1:20). The focus here is not on how pleased or satisfied God was. Alternate translation: [that the light was good]

ULT **Then God separated between the light and the darkness**
UST Then he divided the light from the darkness so that each had its own time

Alternate translation: [Then he caused the light to have its own time and the darkness to have its own time] or [Then he separated the light from the darkness so that it would be light for a number of hours and then dark for a number of hours]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
good	was excellent
God	Then he divided

Genesis 1:5

ULT	UST
And God called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. Then there was evening, and there was morning, one day.	*He named the light Daytime, and the darkness he named Nighttime. Then evening came, and later morning came, and that was the end of the first day.*

ULT **And God called**
UST He named

Some languages omit the connecting word **And** or **Then** here. Consider what is the best way in your language to connect this sentence with the previous one. Alternate translation: [Then He called] or [God named]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **the light Day**
UST the light Daytime

Notice that in this context the word **Day** refers only to the time when the sun is shining, not to the 24-hour time period that makes up a complete day. Make sure that this is clear in your translation. Throughout chapter 1, some translations use quote marks around the names that God gives the different things he created.

ULT **Then there was evening, and there was morning**
UST Then evening came, and {later} morning came

The evening and the morning are the parts of a 24-hour day that separate the hours of daytime (light) from the hours of nighttime (darkness): Evening came at the end of each daytime after God finished his work of creating. Then after about 12 hours of nighttime, morning came, which began the next 12 hours of daytime when God did more work. Make sure your translation does not sound like morning came immediately after evening. Some languages have a one-word conjunction that means “and then” or “and later” and would fit well here. Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]
Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **one day**
UST and that was {the end of} the first day

Here, **day** refers to a full 24-hour day. Also, the Hebrew text uses a cardinal number (**one**) here, but then uses ordinal numbers (“second,” “third,” and so on) for the rest of the days of the creation week. Some languages need to use an ordinal number **first** here too. Other languages use cardinal numbers throughout (“day one,” “day two,” and so on). Alternate translation: [and that was day one]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	He named
called	He named
Day	Daytime
called	he named
day	day

Genesis 1:6

ULT	UST
Then God said, "Let there be an expanse in the middle of the waters, and let it separate the waters from the waters."	*Then God said, "I command there to be a large space in the middle of the water, so that it divides the water into two separate places."*

ULT Then God said
UST Then God said

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Let there be an expanse
UST I command there to be a large space

The Hebrew word for **expanse** here describes a large space that is spread out. It was not solid, but rather it was open and empty, and it could be seen through and flown through (verse 20). It was probably also curved, following the spherical shape of the earth. See how you translated **Let there be** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Let there be a vast space] or [I command there to be a vast space] or [I command a vast space to form]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT in the middle of the waters
UST in the middle of the water

See how you translated **waters** in verse 2.

ULT and let it separate the waters from the waters
UST so that it divides the water into two separate places

Alternate translation: [and let it divide the water above it from the water below it] or [so that it separates the waters into two different places]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God

Genesis 1:7

ULT	UST
So God made the expanse and separated between the waters that were under the expanse and the waters that were above the expanse. And it was so.	*That is how God made a large space and used it to divide the water that was below the space from the water that was above it. Everything happened exactly as he commanded,*

ULT So God made
UST That is how God made

Verse 7 explains what God's command in verse 6 caused to happen, and it repeats some of the same words and phrases. Make sure that your translation of these verses does not sound like God created the expanse twice. Alternate translation: [In that way God made] or [That is how he made]

ULT the expanse
UST a large space

Alternate translation: [a vast space]

ULT and separated
UST and used it to divide

Alternate translation: [and divided] or [and used it to separate]

ULT between the waters that {were} under the expanse and the waters that {were} above the expanse
UST the water that {was} below the space from the water that {was} above it

For some languages it is more natural to use a pronoun (**it**) here to refer to the expanse, since it was just mentioned earlier in the verse. Each language has its own system of when to use nouns or pronouns to refer to people, places, and things. In each context, do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the water that was under it from the water that was above it]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT And it was so
UST Everything happened {exactly} as he commanded

Alternate translation: [That is the way it happened] or [Everything was exactly as he commanded it to be]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God

Genesis 1:8

ULT	UST
And God called the expanse Heavens. Then there was evening, and there was morning, the second day.	*and he named the space Sky. Then evening came, and later morning came, and that was the end of the second day.*

ULT the expanse
UST the space

See how you translated this phrase in verses 6 and 7. Alternate translation: [the vast space]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT Heavens
UST Sky

This word probably refers here to the atmosphere above the earth's surface, where clouds are and where birds fly, as well as the space where the sun, moon, and stars are now. Be consistent here with how you translated this term in verse 1.

ULT Then there was evening, and there was morning
UST Then evening came, and {later} morning came

See how you translated this sentence in verse 5, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]

ULT the second day
UST and that was {the end of} the second day

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use an ordinal number (**second**) here or a cardinal number **two**. Alternate translation: [and the second day ended] or [and that was the end of day two]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	and he named
called	and he named
Heavens	Sky
day	day

Genesis 1:9

ULT	UST
Then God said, “Let the waters under the heavens be gathered to one place, and let the dry ground appear.” And it was so.	*Then God said, “I command the water that is below the sky to come together in one place so that there is dry ground.” And that is exactly what happened.*

ULT Then God said
UST Then God said

See how you translated this phrase in verses 3 and 6. Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Let the waters under the heavens be gathered
UST I command the water {that is} below the sky to come together

Consider whether it is better here in your language to use a passive form of the verb (**be gathered**) or an active form (“gather” or “come”). Alternate translation: [Let the water that is under the sky come together] or [I command the water that is below the heavens to come together]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT to one place
UST in one place

Alternate translation: [in one area] or [into one area]

ULT and let the dry ground appear
UST so that there is dry ground

The water had been covering the land, so when the water receded from it, the land became exposed and dried off. Make sure that the way you translate **dry ground** does not sound like the land was dry while it was under the water. Alternate translation: [so that there is dry land] or [so that dry land can be seen] or [so that land is uncovered and dries off]

ULT And it was so
UST And that is {exactly} what happened

See how you translated this sentence in verse 7. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [And it was exactly as God commanded it to be]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
heavens	sky

Genesis 1:10

ULT	UST
And God called the dry ground Land, and the gathered waters he called Seas. And God saw that it was good.	*Then God named the ground that had dried off Land, and he named the water which had gathered together Ocean. And he observed that what he had made was excellent.*

ULT And God called
UST Then God named

Alternate translation: [Then he named]

ULT the dry ground
UST the ground that had dried off

Alternate translation: [the dry land] or [the land that had dried off]

ULT Land
UST Land

This is the same Hebrew word that is translated as “earth” in verse 1, but here it refers to the dry land or ground (in contrast to the water), and not to the entire planet. Alternate translation: [Ground]

ULT and the gathered waters he called
UST and he named the water which had gathered together

See how you translated a sentence in verse 5 that is similar in structure to this sentence. Alternate translation: [and the waters that he had gathered together he named] or [and he called the gathered waters] or [and he called the waters that had come together]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT Seas
UST Ocean

At that time there was probably just one very large body of water and one very large landmass on the earth (as verse 9 indicates). So a singular noun that refers to the largest body of water, such as “Ocean” or “Sea,” could be used here in your translation. Alternate translation: [Oceans]

ULT that {it was} good
UST that {what he had made was} excellent

Some languages cannot use a pronoun (**it**) here, but have to specify what was good. Also see how you translated the word **good** in verse 4, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [that what he had made was good] or [that the land and the seas were good]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
called	Then … named
Land	Land
called	he named
God	אֱלֹהִים
good	what he had made was excellent

Genesis 1:11

ULT	UST
Then God said, "Let the land sprout vegetation: every plant yielding seed, every fruit tree bearing fruit according to its kind, that has its seed inside it, on the earth." And it was so.	*Then God said, "I command the land to produce green plants all over the earth, including all types of plants that produce seeds and all types of fruit trees that produce their own type of fruit with seeds inside." And that is exactly what happened.*

ULT **Then God said**
UST Then God said

Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Let the land sprout vegetation**
UST I command the land to produce {green} plants

The Hebrew word for **vegetation** refers generally here to any kind of green plant and includes the plants and trees that are mentioned next in this verse. Also, see how you translated **Land** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [I command the ground to grow green plants] or [The ground must now be covered with green plants]

ULT **every plant yielding seed**
UST including {all types of} plants that produce seeds

This phrase refers to many different kinds of plants, not just one plant or one seed. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Also, these kinds of plants have soft stems and include vegetable plants, herbs and other plants that produce edible seeds, such as rice, corn, and wheat. Alternate translation: [including every kind of plant that has seeds] or [including all kinds of plants that bear seeds]

ULT **every fruit tree bearing fruit according to its kind**
UST and {all types of} fruit trees that produce their own type of fruit

The phrase **according to its kind** emphasizes that each different kind of tree produces its own kind of fruit and seeds, which grow and become only that kind of tree. For example, apple trees always produce apples with apple seeds, never peaches or cherries, or any other kind of fruit or seeds. Alternate translation: [and fruit trees that bear fruit, each according to its own kind] or [and every kind of fruit tree that bears its own kind of fruit] or [and all kinds of fruit trees that bear their own kind of fruit]

ULT **that {has} its seed inside it**
UST with seeds inside

Alternate translation: [that has seeds inside] or [with its own kind of seeds inside it]

ULT **on the earth**
UST all over the earth

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, “Let the land sprout vegetation throughout the earth …” Alternate translation: [throughout the earth]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And it was so**
UST And that is {exactly} what happened

Either a period or a colon can be used here, but a colon more clearly shows that verse 12 gives the details of what happened. This is different from verse 7, where the details of what happened come before **And it was so**, and from verse 9, where no additional details are given. Alternate translation: [And it happened exactly as God commanded it to happen:]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
land	land
seed	seeds
fruit	fruit
fruit	fruit
seed	seeds
earth	earth

Genesis 1:12

ULT	UST
So the land brought out vegetation, every plant yielding seed according to its kind, and every tree bearing fruit that has its seed inside it, according to its kind. And God saw that it was good.	*The land started producing green plants, including all types of plants that produce their own type of seeds and all types of trees that produce their own type of fruit with seeds inside. God observed that what he had made was excellent.*

ULT **So the land brought out vegetation**
UST The land started producing {green} plants

Verse 12 explains what God's command in verse 11 caused to happen, and it repeats some of the same words and phrases. Make sure that your translation of these verses does not sound like God created the plants twice. Alternate translation: [The land sprouted plants] or [The land started growing green plants]

ULT **every plant yielding seed according to its kind**
UST including {all types of} plants that produce their own type of seeds

Alternate translation: [including plants that have seeds, each according to its own kind] or [including every kind of plant that has seeds that grow into the same kind of plant] or [including all kinds of plants that have their own type of seeds]

ULT **and {every} tree bearing fruit that {has} its seed inside it, according to its kind**
UST and {all types of} trees that produce their own type of fruit with seeds inside

Alternate translation: [and trees that bear fruit with seeds inside, each according to its own kind] or [and every kind of tree that has fruit with seeds that grow into the same kind of tree] or [and all kinds of trees that have their own kind of seed-bearing fruit]

ULT **And God saw**
UST God observed

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin this sentence with a conjunction. Alternate translation: [And he saw] or [He saw]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **that {it was} good**
UST that {what he had made was} excellent

See how you translated this clause in verse 10. Some languages have to specify what was good. Alternate translation: [that what he had made was good] or [that all the plants and trees were good]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
seed	seeds
fruit	fruit
seed	seeds
God	God
good	what he had made was excellent

Genesis 1:13

ULT	UST
Then there was evening, and there was morning, the third day.	*Then evening came, and later morning came, and that was the end of the third day.*

ULT **Then there was evening, and there was morning**
UST Then evening came, and {later} morning came

See how you translated this sentence in verses 5 and 8. Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]

ULT **the third day**
UST and that was {the end of} the third day

Alternate translation: [and the third day ended] or [and that was the end of day three]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day

Genesis 1:14

ULT	UST
Then God said, "Let there be lights in the expanse of the heavens to separate between the day and the night. And let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days and years.	*Then God said, "I command there to be sources of light in the sky that divide the daytime from the nighttime. They must also mark when important things happen, and they must show when seasons, days and years begin and end.*

ULT **Then God said**
UST Then God said

Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Let there be lights**
UST I command there to be sources of light

These lights refer to the sun, the moon, and stars that give off light. But it is important to keep this general in your translation (like the Hebrew text does) and not specify the names of these lights. Alternate translation: [Let there be objects that give light]

ULT **in the expanse of the heavens**
UST in the sky

It might seem that the expression **the expanse of the heavens** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. The expanse is the same thing as the heavens (verse 8), so some translations leave **the expanse of** implied here. Alternate translation: [in the space of the sky] or [in the open space of the sky] or [in the heavens]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **to separate**
UST that divide

Alternate translation: [to divide] or [that separate]

ULT **And let them be for signs**
UST They must also mark when important things happen

Alternate translation: [Let those lights also be] or [They will also serve as markers] or [I also command those lights to serve as]

ULT **and for seasons, and for days and years**
UST and {they must} show when seasons, days and years begin and end

The sun and moon show the passing of time. For example, the 30-day month is determined by the phases of the moon, and the 365-day year is determined by the time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun. The **seasons** are regular times of the year, such as seed-planting and harvesting times, and the seasons of spring, summer, fall and winter (Genesis 8:22), as well as the special festivals which God appointed for his people to meet with him. You could put some of that information in a footnote.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
heavens	sky
day	the daytime
signs	They must also mark when important things happen
days	days
years	years

Genesis 1:15

ULT	UST
And let them be as lights in the expanse of the heavens to shine on the earth.” And it was so.	*They must function as lights in the sky that shine light on the earth.” And that is exactly what happened.*

ULT And let them be as lights
UST They must function as lights

Alternate translation: [And they will be sources of light] or [They will serve as lights] or [Their purpose is to serve as sources of light]

ULT in the expanse of the heavens
UST in the sky

See how you translated this phrase in verse 14. Alternate translation: [in the space called the sky] or [in the open space of the sky] or [in the heavens]

ULT to shine on the earth
UST that shine {light} on the earth

See how you translated **the earth** in verses 1–2. Alternate translation: [to shine light on the earth] or [so that they give light to the earth]

ULT And it was so
UST And that is {exactly} what happened

Alternate translation: [And it was exactly as he commanded it to be]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heavens	sky
earth	earth

Genesis 1:16

ULT	UST
So God made the two great lights, the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night, and the stars.	*That is how God made the two bright lights, the brighter light to shine during the daytime, and the weaker light to shine during the nighttime. That is also when he made the stars.*

ULT **So God made**
UST That is how God made

Verses 16–18 explain what God's commands in verses 14–15 caused to happen. Make sure your translation of these verses does not sound like he created the lights twice. See how you translated **So God made** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [In that way God made] or [That is how he made]

ULT **the two great lights**
UST the two bright lights

This phrase refers to the sun and the moon, which are the two brightest objects in the earth's sky. However, the author intentionally does not use their names, so you should not include their names in your translation either. Alternate translation: [the two big lights]

ULT **the greater light**
UST the brighter light

The focus is on the relative brightness or strength of the lights, not on their size. Alternate translation: [the stronger light]

ULT **to rule the day**
UST to shine during the daytime

The word **rule** is a figure of speech that means each light has the greatest effect during a particular time period, because it is the brightest light that is shining then. For some languages, nonliving objects like the sun and the moon cannot **rule** because only people can do that. Do what is accurate and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [to govern the day]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **and the lesser light**
UST and the weaker light

Alternate translation: [and the dimmer light]

ULT **to rule the night**
UST to shine during the nighttime

Be consistent here with how you translated **rule** previously in this verse. Alternate translation: [to govern the night]

> ULT **and the stars**
> UST That is also {when he made} the stars

The verb **made** that is used earlier in the verse is implied here. Translate this in a way that is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and he also made the stars] or [That is also when he created the stars]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
rule	to shine during
day	the daytime
rule	to shine during

Genesis 1:17

ULT	UST
And God set them in the expanse of the heavens to shine on the earth,	*He put those lights in the sky to shine light on the earth,*

ULT in the expanse of the heavens
UST in the sky

See how you translated this phrase in verses 14 and 15. Alternate translation: [in the space called the sky] or [in the open space of the sky] or [in the heavens]

ULT to shine on the earth
UST to shine light on the earth

See how you translated this phrase in verse 15. Alternate translation: [to provide light to the earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	אֱלֹהִים
heavens	sky
earth	earth

Genesis 1:18

ULT	UST
and to rule over the day and over the night, and to separate between the light and the darkness. And God saw that it was good.	*to shine during the daytime or during the nighttime, and to divide the light from the darkness. God observed that what he had made was excellent.*

ULT **and to rule over the day and over the night**
UST to shine during the day{time} or during the nighttime

Make sure that your translation of the word **day** refers here to the daytime hours, not an entire 24-hour day. Also see how you translated **rule** in 1:16. Alternate translation: [and to dominate the daytime or the nighttime] or [and to shine during the daytime and during the nighttime]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **and to separate between the light and the darkness**
UST and to divide the light from the darkness

Consider again how you translated **separate** in verses 4, 6–7, 14 and 18. Alternate translation: [and to distinguish the light from the darkness] or [and to separate the time of light from the time of darkness]

ULT **And God saw**
UST God observed

Alternate translation: [And he saw] or [He saw]

ULT **that {it was} good**
UST that {what he had made was} excellent

Some languages need to specify what was good. Alternate translation: [that what he had made was good] or [that the lights in the sky were good]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rule	to shine
day	during the daytime
God	God
good	what he had made was excellent

Genesis 1:19

ULT	UST
Then there was evening, and there was morning, the fourth day.	*Then evening came, and later morning came, and that was the end of the fourth day.*

ULT **Then there was evening, and there was morning**
UST Then evening came, and {later} morning came

Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]

ULT **the fourth day**
UST and that was {the end of} the fourth day

Alternate translation: [and the fourth day ended] or [and that was the end of day four]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day

Genesis 1:20

ULT	UST
Then God said, "Let the waters swarm with swarms of living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth across the face of the expanse of the sky."	*Then God said, "I command there to be large groups of water animals that live everywhere in the water. I also command there to be birds that fly in the sky above the earth."*

ULT **Then God said**
UST Then God said

Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Let the waters swarm {with} swarm{s} of living creatures**
UST I command there to be large groups of {water} animals that live everywhere in the water

For emphasis, the speaker is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of showing the emphasis. Alternate translation: [I command the water to be full of large groups of living creatures] or [I command there to be large numbers of water animals that live everywhere in the water]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **and let bird{s} fly**
UST I also command there to be birds that fly

The Hebrew word for **birds** can also be more general and refer to "winged creatures," which includes birds, bats, flying insects and even flying reptiles that are now extinct. Alternate translation: [and let there be birds that fly] or [Also let there be winged creatures that fly]

ULT **above the earth across the face of the expanse of the sky**
UST in the sky above the earth

Alternate translation: [above the earth, through the air] or [across the sky above the earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
earth	earth
sky	sky

Genesis 1:21

ULT	UST
So God created the great sea creatures and every living creature that moves which the waters swarm with according to their kind, and every winged bird according to its kind. And God saw that it was good.	*That is how God made the huge sea animals and all the other types of animals that live all over the place in the water, each having its own type of young. That is also how he made all the different types of birds, each having its own type of young. God observed that what he had made was excellent.*

ULT **the great sea creatures**
UST the huge sea animals

These include whales, sharks, giant squid, crocodiles, and leviathans (Psalm 74:13–14, Isaiah 27:1), which were probably swimming reptiles that are now extinct. Alternate translation: [the huge ocean animals]

ULT **and every living creature that moves**
UST and all {the other} {types of} animals that live

Alternate translation: [and every kind of fish and every other animal that lives] or [and all the fish and other kinds of animals that live]

ULT **which the waters swarm with**
UST all over the place in the water

Alternate translation: [throughout the ocean in large groups] or [in the water and fills it] or [everywhere in the ocean]

ULT **according to their kind**
UST each having its own type of young

The author assumes that his readers will understand that each different kind of creature has its own distinct kind of offspring. For example, whales always give birth to whales, and never give birth to cats or cows or any other kind of creature. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [each according to its own kind] or [each that has its own kind of young]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **every winged bird**
UST all {the different types of} birds

See how you translated **birds** in verse 20. Alternate translation: [every kind of bird] or [all the different kinds of birds] or [every kind of winged creature]

ULT **according to its kind**
UST each having its own type of young

See how you translated this phrase earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [each according to its own kind] or [each that has its own kind of young]

ULT **And God saw**
UST God observed

Alternate translation: [And He saw] or [He saw]

ULT **that {it was} good**
UST that {what he had made was} excellent

Some languages need to specify what was good. Alternate translation: [that what he had made was good] or [that the water animals and the birds were good]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
created	That is how … made
God	God
good	what he had made was excellent

Genesis 1:22

ULT	UST
Then God blessed them, saying, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the waters in the seas, and let the birds multiply on the earth."	*Then he blessed them all by saying to them, "You water animals must have many young so that you increase greatly in number and live all over the place in the ocean. You birds must also increase greatly in number all over the earth."*

ULT **Then God blessed them**
UST Then he blessed them all

For some languages it is necessary to specify to what **them** refers. Alternate translation: [Then God blessed the water creatures and the birds]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **saying**
UST by saying to them

God blesses the water animals first. If that is not clear, you could make that explicit here in the quote margin or at the beginning of what God says. Alternate translation: [and said first to the water animals]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Be fruitful**
UST You {water animals} must have many young

God speaks directly to the water animals using the second person **you**, then later in the verse speaks about the birds in the third person (**the birds**). For some languages it is necessary to use either second person for both or third person for both, to prevent confusion. Do what is natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: [Reproduce] or [You water animals will produce many young]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and multiply**
UST so that you increase {greatly} in number

Alternate translation: [so that you and your offspring will multiply greatly in number] or [so that you and your offspring will become very many]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **and fill**
UST and live all over the place

Alternate translation: [and live throughout]

ULT **the waters in the seas**
UST in the ocean

For some languages, "waters in the seas" is too repetitive, so it is more natural here to just say "sea" or "ocean" or "water." Alternate translation: [the water of the sea]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

> ULT **on the earth**
> UST all over the earth

Alternate translation: [throughout the earth] or [and live all over the earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	אֱלֹהִים
blessed	blessed
fruitful	You {water animals} must have many young
multiply	so that you increase {greatly} in number
multiply	must {also} increase {greatly} in number
earth	earth

Genesis 1:23

ULT	UST
Then there was evening, and there was morning, the fifth day.	*Then evening came, and later morning came, and that was the end of the fifth day.*

ULT **Then there was evening, and there was morning**
UST Then evening came, and {later} morning came

Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]

ULT **the fifth day**
UST and that was {the end of} the fifth day

Alternate translation: [and the fifth day ended] or [and that was the end of day five]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day

Genesis 1:24

ULT	UST
Then God said, "Let the land bring forth every living creature according to its kind: livestock and every crawling creature and every living thing of the earth, each according to its kind." And it was so.	*Then God said, "I command the land to produce all types of animals, each having its own type of young, including domestic animals, all types of animals that crawl and all the other types of wild animals, each having its own type of young." And that is exactly what happened.*

ULT **Then God said**
UST Then God said

Alternate translation: [Then God commanded]

ULT **Let the land bring forth**
UST I command the land to produce

See how you translated a similar command to the land in verse 11. Alternate translation: [I command the land to yield] or [The land must now produce]

ULT **every living creature**
UST all types of animals

This is a general term that refers to all the different kinds of creatures that breathe, including the three large categories of animals mentioned below in this verse. Alternate translation: [every type of living animal] or [all kinds of animals]

ULT **according to its kind**
UST each having its own type of young

This phrase means that every kind of animal that God created always produces young that are the same kind of animal as their parents. See how you translated this phrase in verse 21, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [each that has its own kind of young] or [each having its own kind of young]

ULT **livestock**
UST including domestic animals

Moses assumes that his readers will understand that **livestock** probably includes animals such as horses, camels, cattle, sheep, and goats that people raise for food or use for farming or other work. This is in contrast to animals that normally live in the wild. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [including farm animals]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and {every} crawling creature**
UST all types of animals that crawl

Alternate translation: [every type of animal that crawls] or [all kinds of animals that crawl]

ULT **and {every} living thing of the earth**
UST and {all} the {other types of} wild animals

Moses assumes that his readers will understand that this phrase, **and {every} living thing of the earth**, refers in general to animals that are normally not raised by people but live in the wild. Alternate translation: [and every other kind of wild animal that lives on the land] or [and all the other kinds of wild animals that live on the land]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **each according to its kind**
UST each having its own type of young

See how you translated this phrase earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [each that has its own kind of offspring] or [each having its own kind of offspring]

ULT **And it was so**
UST And that is {exactly} what happened

Alternate translation: [It happened exactly as he commanded it to happen]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
land	land
livestock	animals
earth	and {all} the {other types of} wild animals

Genesis 1:25

ULT	UST
So God made every creature of the earth according to its kind, and the livestock according to its kind, and every crawling creature of the ground according to its kind. And God saw that it was good.	*That is how God made all the different types of wild animals, each having its own type of young, and all the domestic animals, each having its own type of young, and all different types of animals that crawl on the ground, each having its own type of young. God observed that what he had made was excellent.*

ULT **So God made**
UST That is how God made

Alternate translation: [That is how God created] or [In that way God made]

ULT **every creature of the earth**
UST all the different types of wild animals

See how you translated **every creature of the earth** in verse 24. Alternate translation: [every kind of wild animal] or [all the different kinds of wild animals]

ULT **according to its kind**
UST each having its own type of young

Alternate translation: [each that bears its own kind of young] or [each having its own kind of young]

ULT **and every crawling creature of the ground**
UST and all {different types of} animals that crawl on the ground

See how you translated **crawling creature** in verse 24. Alternate translation: [and every kind of creature that crawls along the ground] or [and all different kinds of animals that crawl along the ground]

ULT **according to its kind**
UST each having its own type of young

Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 11, 12, 21, 24, and 25. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [each that bears its own kind of offspring] or [each having its own kind of young]

ULT **And God saw**
UST God observed

Alternate translation: [And he saw] or [He saw]

> ULT **that {it was} good**
> UST that {what he had made was} excellent

Some languages need to specify what was good. Consider again how you translated “And God saw that … good” in verses 10, 12, 18, 21, 25. Alternate translation: [that what he had made was good] or [that all the animals that he had made were good]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
earth	all the different types of wild animals
livestock	animals
God	God
good	what he had made was excellent

Genesis 1:26

ULT	UST
Then God said, "Let us make man in our image, according to our likeness, and let them rule over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the sky and over the livestock and over all the earth and over every moving creature moving on the earth."	*Then God said to himself, "Now we should make human beings to be like us and act like us, and let us put them in charge of the fish in the ocean, the birds in the sky, the domestic animals, and the entire earth, including all the animals that live on the earth."*

ULT **Then God said**
UST Then God said to himself

Here God is not commanding anything to happen, but is getting ready to personally create mankind (the details are given in Genesis 2:7, 21–22). Some languages have to specify who is being spoken to.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Let us make**
UST Now we should make

Most Bible scholars think that the plural pronouns (**us** and **our**) in this verse refer to God and reflect the fact that he is three Persons in one God. So it is best to keep these pronouns plural in your translation. Also, many translations capitalize the first letter of all pronouns that refer to God in order to show him honor and respect. Your translation team needs to decide whether or not you will do that too. Be consistent with your decision as you translate the Bible. Alternate translation: [Now we will make]

ULT **man**
UST human beings

The Hebrew word for **man** is used here (and in verse 27) as a collective noun that refers to human beings in general, including both male and female. Alternate translation: [mankind]
Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **in our image, according to our likeness**
UST to be like us and act like us

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that God made mankind to be like himself in many ways. Alternate translation: [to be like us, so that they are similar to us in many ways]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **and let them rule**
UST and let us put them in charge of

Alternate translation: [and let us put them in control of] or [We will give them authority to rule]

ULT **over the fish of the sea**
UST the fish in the ocean

Alternate translation: [the fish in the sea]

ULT **and over the bird{s} of the sky**
UST the birds in the sky

Some translations leave out the phrase **of the sky** because it is strongly implied and may not sound natural in their languages. However, if it is natural in your language, it is best to include this phrase, because the author repeatedly contrasts three large categories of animals in this section: creatures that live on the ground, creatures that swim in the water, and creatures that fly in the sky. Alternate translation: [the birds that fly in the sky]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and over all the earth**
UST and the entire earth

This refers to the planet earth and everything on it, including water, soil, metals, minerals, and other resources, as well as all the plants and animals.

ULT **and over every moving creature moving on the earth**
UST including all the animals that live on the earth

For some languages it is not natural to repeat **and** or **over** with each item in this list. Consider what is the best way to translate a list like this in your language. Alternate translation: [including every creature that moves on the earth] or [and all the animals that live on the earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
image	to be like us
and let them rule	and let us put them in charge of
sky	sky
livestock	animals
earth	earth
earth	earth

Genesis 1:27

ULT	UST
Then God created man in his image. In the image of God he created him; male and female he created them.	*So God created human beings to be like himself. Yes, he made them to be like himself. He also created them to be male or female.*

ULT **Then God created**
UST So God created

In this verse God does what he said he was going to do (verse 26). Make sure your translation does not sound like God created mankind twice. Also see how you translated **created** in verses 1 and 21. Alternate translation: [So God made]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **man**
UST human beings

Be consistent here with how you translated this term in verse 26. Alternate translation: [mankind]

ULT **In the image of God he created him**
UST Yes, he made them to be like himself

This clause is the second half of a chiasm (an inverted parallelism) that repeats the first part of verse 27 in reverse order, to emphasize that it was in God's image that human beings were created. Alternate translation: [Yes he made them in his image] or [Indeed he created them to be like himself] or [Yes, God made them to be similar to himself in many ways]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **In the image of God he created him**
UST Yes, he made them to be like himself

The pronoun **him** refers to the collective noun **man**, which in this case refers to human beings in general, not just one person.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **male and female he created them**
UST He {also} created them {to be} male or female

The phrase **male and female** comes first in the Hebrew text in order to emphasize it. Do what is accurate and natural in your language. Also make sure your translation of this verse does not sound like God is both male and female. Alternate translation: [He also made them to be male or female]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
created	created
image	to be like himself
image	Yes … to be like himself
God	Yes … to be like himself
created	he made
created	created

Genesis 1:28

ULT	UST
Then God blessed them, and God said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the earth and subdue it. And rule over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the sky and over every living thing that moves on the earth."	*Then God blessed them by saying to them, "Have many children so that you and your descendants increase greatly in number and live all over the earth and take control of it. You are in charge of the fish in the ocean, the birds in the sky, and all the animals that live on the land."*

ULT **and God said to them**
UST by saying to them

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this quote margin that what God says next is the way that he blessed mankind, not something he said separately from that. Alternate translation: [and said] or [He said]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Be fruitful**
UST Have many children

See how you translated **Be fruitful and multiply** in verse 22. It may be necessary to translate the phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Bear many children] or [You will bear many children]
Support Reference: Blessings

ULT **and multiply**
UST so that you {and your descendants} increase {greatly} in number

Alternate translation: [so that you and your descendants will multiply greatly in number] or [so that you and your descendants will become very many]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **and fill the earth**
UST and live all over the earth

Alternate translation: [and inhabit the whole earth] or [Fill the earth]

ULT **and subdue it**
UST and take control of it

Alternate translation: [and take care of it] or [and bring it under your control]

ULT **And rule**
UST You are in charge of

See how you translated **rule** in verse 26. Alternate translation: [You must rule over] or [I am giving you authority to rule]

ULT **over the fish of the sea and over the bird{s} of the sky**
UST the fish in the ocean, the birds in the sky

See how you translated these phrases in verse 26. Alternate translation: [the fish in the ocean, the birds that fly in the sky]

ULT **and over every living thing that moves on the earth**
UST and all the animals that live on the land

This phrase refers generally here to every kind of creature that lives on land. Alternate translation: [and every animal that moves on the land] or [and all the animals that move on the land]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
blessed	blessed
God	by saying
fruitful	Have many children
multiply	so that you {and your descendants} increase {greatly} in number
earth	earth
And rule	You are in charge of
sky	sky
earth	land

Genesis 1:29

ULT	UST
Then God said, "Behold, I have given to you every plant that yields seed that is on the surface of the whole earth and every tree that has tree fruit that yields seed inside it. They will be yours for food.	*Then he also said to them, "Listen, I am now giving to you for food all the different types of plants that produce seeds and grow anywhere on the earth, as well as all the different types of trees that produce fruit with seeds inside it. All of them are yours to eat from.*

ULT **Then God said**
UST Then he {also} said to them

God is still speaking to the human beings, so it may be necessary to add "also" to this quote margin. Some languages need to specify who is being spoken to. Other languages may leave this quote margin implied, since the same subject (God) is talking to the same people. However, the repeated quote margin in the Hebrew text could show that God paused before continuing or that he is changing the topic, or it may be to emphasize what he says next. So if it is natural to keep the quote margin here in your language, that is best. Alternate translation: [Then God also said to them] or [Then he added]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold**
UST Listen

This word means that what God says next is important and should be given special attention. Consider what is the best way to translate this term in your language. Alternate translation: [Look] or [Listen to this] or [I want you to know that]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **I have given to you**
UST I am {now} giving to you for food

Alternate translation: [I am now giving to you as food] or [I have provided as food for you] or [I am now providing as food for you]

ULT **every plant {that} yields seed that is**
UST all {the different types of} plants that produce seeds and grow

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 11 and 12. Alternate translation: [every kind of seed-bearing plant that grows] or [every kind of plant with seeds that grows] or [all the different kinds of plants that yield seeds and grow]

ULT **on the surface of the whole earth**
UST anywhere on the earth

Alternate translation: [anywhere throughout the earth]

ULT **and every tree that has**
UST as well as all the {different types of} trees that produce

Alternate translation: [as well as every kind of tree that bears] or [and all the different kinds of trees that bear]

ULT **tree fruit {that} yields seed inside it**
UST fruit with seeds inside it

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 11 and 12. Alternate translation: [seed-bearing fruit]

ULT **They will be yours for food**
UST All of them are yours to eat from

Alternate translation: [You may eat from any of those plants]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	Then he {also} said to them
seed	seeds
earth	earth
fruit	fruit
seed	seeds

Genesis 1:30

ULT	UST
And to every living thing of the earth, and to every bird of the sky, and to everything moving on the earth that has living breath in it, I have given every green plant for food." And it was so.	*In the same way, I give every type of green plant for food to all the wild animals that live on the earth, and all the birds that fly in the sky, and all the other animals that live on the land and breathe air." And that is how it was.*

ULT And to every living thing of the earth
UST In the same way … to all the {wild} animals {that live} on the earth

See how you translated similar phrases in verses 24 and 25. Alternate translation: [In the same way, to every kind of wild creature that lives on the land] or [Likewise, to all the wild creatures that live on the land] or [In the same way, to all the wild animals]

ULT and to every bird of the sky
UST and all the birds {that fly} in the sky

Alternate translation: [and every kind of bird that flies in the sky]

ULT and to every{thing} moving on the earth that {has} living breath in it
UST and all the {other} animals {that live} on the land and breathe air

See how you translated "that moves on the earth" in verse 28. Alternate translation: [and every other kind of creature that moves on the land and has the breath of life] or [and all the other creatures that move on the earth and breathe air to live]

ULT I have given every green plant for food
UST I give every {type of} green plant for food

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase near the beginning of this verse and say, "In the same way, I give every type of green plant for food to all the wild animals that live on the earth, and all the birds that fly in the sky, and all the other animals that live on the land and breathe air." Also see how you translated **plant** in verses 11, 12, 29. Alternate translation: [I give every kind of green plant as food] or [I have given all the green plants as food]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT And it was so
UST And that is how it was

Consider again how you translated this sentence in verses 7, 9, 11, 15, 24 and 30. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. For example, here in verse 30 this phrase follows a statement God made, which is different from the other contexts where it follows a command. Alternate translation: [And it was exactly as God said it would be]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
sky	sky
earth	land

Genesis 1:31

ULT	UST
Then God saw all that he had made, and behold, it was very good. Then there was evening, and there was morning, the sixth day.	*Then God looked at everything that he had made, and he observed that it was all very excellent. Then evening came, and later morning came, and that was the end of the sixth day.*

ULT **Then God saw**
UST Then God looked at

See how you translated "God saw …" in verse 4. Alternate translation: [Then God observed]

ULT **all that he had made**
UST everything that he had made

This phrase refers to everything that God made during the entire week of Creation, not just on the sixth day. Consider again how you translated **made** (or "make") in verses 7, 16, 25, 26 and 31. Compare that to how you translated a word that has a similar meaning **created** in verses 1, 21 and 27. Alternate translation: [everything that he had created]

ULT **and behold**
UST and he observed that

This word calls attention to what God is looking at and helps emphasize that what he saw was very good. Alternate translation: [and indeed]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **it was very good**
UST it was {all} very excellent

Consider again how you translated **good** in verses 4, 10, 12, 18, 21, 25, and 31. Alternate translation: [it was all very good]

ULT **Then there was evening, and there was morning**
UST Then evening came, and {later} morning came

Consider again how you translated these phrases in verses 5, 8, 13, 19, 23, and 31, and see the note about that at verse 5. Alternate translation: [Then evening came, and then morning came]

ULT **the sixth day**
UST and that was {the end of} the sixth day

Alternate translation: [and the sixth day ended] or [and that was the end of day six]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
good	it was all … excellent
day	day

Genesis 2

Genesis 2:1

ULT	UST
So the heavens and the earth were completed, and all their hosts.	*That is how God finished creating the heavens and the earth, including all the many things that are in them.*

ULT **So the heavens and the earth were completed**
UST That is how God finished {creating} the heavens and the earth

Verse 1 is a summary statement that looks back at what God did in chapter 1. Make sure that is clear in your language. Also consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or passive clause here, and see how you translated “heavens and earth” in 1:1. Alternate translation: [So it was that the heavens and the earth were finished by God] or [That is how God concluded making the heavens and the earth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heavens	heavens
earth	earth

Genesis 2:2

ULT	UST
And by the seventh day God had completed his work that he had done, so he rested on the seventh day from all his work that he had done.	*By the seventh day he had finished the work he had been doing, so he rested on that day from all that work.*

ULT **by the seventh day**
UST By the seventh day

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God had completed his work by the seventh day and did not work on that day. Also consider again how you translated ordinal numbers in Genesis 1:5, 8, 13, 19, 23, 31; 2:2. Alternate translation: [By day seven]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **so he rested on the seventh day from all**
UST so he rested on that day from all

God **rested** in the sense that he stopped his work and did not work on that day. It does not mean he was tired or had lost his strength. Rest is an important theme in the Bible, so you should try to be consistent in how you translate this term here and in other passages, such as Exodus 23:12, 31:17 and Hebrews 4:4, 10. Part of this theme includes the Hebrew word for Sabbath, which has the same root word as the verb for "rest" and is often translated as "resting day." Alternate translation: [so he ceased on that day from all] or [so on the seventh day he no longer did]

ULT **his work that he had done**
UST the work he had been doing

Alternate translation: [the work that he had been doing]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
God	אֱלֹהִים
day	day

Genesis 2:3

ULT	UST
And God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because on it he rested from all his work of creating that God had done.	*Then God established the seventh day as a day to bless people, by setting it apart as a special time to rest and worship him. He did that because on that day he no longer did the work that he had been doing, creating everything.*

ULT **And God blessed the seventh day**
UST Then God established the seventh day {as a day} to bless people

Alternate translation: [Then he designated the seventh day as a day to bless people] or [And he honored the seventh day]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **and sanctified it**
UST by setting it apart as a special time to rest and worship him

Alternate translation: [and made it a holy day] or [and set it apart as a day especially devoted to him] or [by setting it apart as a special day for people to rest and worship him]

ULT **because on it**
UST He did that because on that day

Alternate translation: [because during that day] or [He did that because during that day]

ULT **he rested from all his work**
UST he no longer did the work

See how you translated a similar clause in 2:2. Alternate translation: [he ceased from all the work] or [he did not do any more work]

ULT **of creating that God had done**
UST that he had been doing, creating everything

Alternate translation: [of creating that he had been doing]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
blessed	bless
day	day
creating	creating
God	he had been doing, creating everything

Genesis 2:4

ULT	UST
These are the generations of the heavens and the earth when they were created, in the day when Yahweh God made the earth and the heavens,	*What follows tells more details about the history of what God did when he created the heavens and the earth: During the time when Yahweh who is God created the earth and the heavens,*

ULT **These are**
UST What follows tells more details about

This phrase refers forward to Genesis 2:5–24 and begins a new section. Chapter 1 of Genesis gives an overview of what God did each day of creation week, including that he created human beings on day six. Chapter 2 gives more details about how God created Adam and Eve, who were his most important creations. Each chapter emphasizes different parts of the same history; they are not two different histories. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [These are more details about] or [This is more about] or [What follows gives more details about]

ULT **the generations of the heavens and the earth when they were created**
UST the history of what {God} did when he created the heavens and the earth

The Hebrew text uses a passive construction here to emphasize the heavens and the earth. Decide the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [the history of the heavens and the earth when they were created by God] or [what happened when God created the heavens and the earth]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **in the day when**
UST During the time when

Alternate translation: [during the days when] or [During the days when]

ULT **made the earth and the heavens**
UST created the earth and the heavens

This clause forms a poetic device called a chiasm with "the heavens and the earth … created" in the first part of this verse. Try to keep the same phrase order in your translation. See how you translated **the heavens** and **the earth** in 1:1 and 2:1. Alternate translation: [created the earth and the heavens]
Support Reference: Poetry

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	the history of
heavens	heavens
earth	earth
created	created
day	During the time when
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
earth	earth
heavens	heavens

Genesis 2:5

ULT	UST
and every shrub of the field had not yet appeared on the earth, and every plant of the field had not yet sprung up, because Yahweh God had not caused it to rain on the earth, and there was no man to work the ground.	*for a while there were not yet any bushes growing in the fields on the earth, and there were not any other plants that had sprouted yet. That was because God had not yet sent rain to water the earth, and human beings did not exist yet to cultivate the ground.*

ULT **and every shrub of the field had not yet appeared on the earth**
UST for a while there were not yet any bushes {growing} in the fields on the earth

Verses 5–6 give background information about what things were like before God created mankind (verse 7). Some languages use a conjunction like "Now" to introduce background information, while other languages do not use a conjunction here. Alternate translation: [Now for a while, there were not yet any shrubs in the fields on the earth] or [For a while, no wild shrubs had yet started growing on the earth]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **and every plant of the field had not yet sprung up**
UST and there were not any {other} plants that had sprouted yet

See how you translated **plants** in 1:11–12 and 1:29–30. Alternate translation: [nor had any other plants started growing yet]

ULT **had not caused it to rain on the earth**
UST had not {yet} sent rain to water the earth

See how you translated **earth** in 1:1 and 2:1. Alternate translation: [had not yet caused it to rain on the earth] or [had not yet caused rain to water the earth]

ULT **and there was no man**
UST and human beings did not exist yet

Alternate translation: [and there were no human beings yet] or [and mankind did not exist yet]

ULT **to work the ground**
UST to cultivate the ground

Working the ground includes tasks such as clearing the ground, preparing the soil, planting seeds, and watering the plants. See how you translated **ground** in 1:25. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [to farm the land]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
Yahweh	יְהוָה
God	God
earth	earth
work	to cultivate

Genesis 2:6

ULT	UST
But mist came up from the earth and watered all of the surface of the ground.	*During that time springs of water kept seeping up from underground and supplied water to the entire surface of the land.*

ULT But mist
UST During that time springs of water

The Hebrew word for **mist** refers to water in some form, such as water vapor, springs, or streams of water. Also, some translations begin verse 6 without **But**. Alternate translation: [But at that time mist] or [At that time mist]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT came up
UST kept seeping up

This verb describes a repeated or continuous action. Alternate translation: [seeped up]

ULT from the earth
UST from underground

Alternate translation: [from the ground] or [from underground]

ULT and watered
UST and supplied water to

Alternate translation: [and irrigated] or [and spread over]

ULT all of the surface of the ground
UST the entire surface of the land

Alternate translation: [the whole surface of the earth] or [the ground everywhere]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	underground

Genesis 2:7

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh God formed the man out of dust from the ground, and he breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and the man became a living being.	*Then Yahweh who is God took some dirt from the earth and formed the first man out of it. Then he blew his breath into the man's nostrils to make him live, so that the man became alive.*

ULT Then Yahweh God formed
UST Then Yahweh {who is} God took … and formed … out of it

The word **formed** describes what an expert craftsmen would do; it implies artistic skills and design. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh who is God shaped]

ULT the man
UST the … first man

The definite article **the** is used here because this refers to a specific man, the first male human. For many languages it is more natural to use an indefinite article **a** to introduce him here or else to not use an article at all. Alternate translation: [the first man]

ULT out of dust
UST some dirt

The word used here in the Hebrew text is usually translated as **dust** (as in 13:16, 28:14), but it can also be translated as "dirt" (as in 26:15) or "mortar/mud/clay" (as in Leviticus 14:42). The dirt would have been damp enough to be formed or shaped. Alternate translation: [out of mud]

ULT from the ground
UST from … earth … the

For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in the first half of this verse and say, "Then Yahweh who is God took some dirt from the ground and formed a man out of it," Also, see how you translated **ground** in 1:25 and 2:5–6. You may need to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [from the earth]

ULT and he breathed
UST Then he blew

Alternate translation: [and he blew] or [Then he exhaled]

ULT and he breathed into his nostrils the breath of life
UST Then he blew his breath into the man's nostrils to make him live

This refers to God breathing God's breath into man's nostrils. As you translate the pronouns **he** and **his** in this verse, make sure it is clear in your language to whom each pronoun refers.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God

Genesis 2:8

ULT	UST
Now Yahweh God had planted a garden in Eden, in the east, and there he put the man whom he had formed.	*Now Yahweh God had planted a large garden in the region of Eden, which was in the east, and that is where he put the man whom he had created.*

ULT **Now Yahweh God had planted**
UST Now Yahweh God had planted

The clause **Now Yahweh God had planted** could mean: (1) "Now Yahweh God had previously planted" or "Before that, Yahweh God had planted." This interpretation fits the context of chapter one, which says that God had made all the trees and plants on day three (1:11–12), three days before he created man (1:26–27; 2:7). Following this view, verses 8–14 give background information for what happens in verses 15–24. (2) "Then Yahweh God planted" According to this interpretation, God made the Garden of Eden on day six, after he created man.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **a garden**
UST a {large} garden

The man lived in this garden, and there were animals and many trees and other plants in it too, so it was fairly large. Make sure your translation of this term does not refer to something that is too small. Alternate translation: [a large park]

ULT **in Eden, in the east**
UST in {the region of} Eden, {which was} in the east

In this context, the phrase **in the east** could refer to: (1) the eastern part of the region of Eden; or (2) a region east of where Moses lived when he wrote this. It is best, if possible, to keep your translation of this phrase general here (like the Hebrew text). Alternate translation: [in the region called Eden, which was to the east] or [in the eastern part of the land of Eden]

ULT **and there he put the man**
UST and that is where he put the man

Alternate translation: [and in that garden he put the man] or [That is where he put the man]

ULT **whom he had formed**
UST whom he had created

See how you translated **formed** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [whom he had shaped] or [whom he had created]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
planted	planted
Eden	Eden

Genesis 2:9

ULT	UST
And Yahweh God had made to grow from the ground every tree that is pleasant to the sight and good for food, and the tree of life in the middle of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.	*There Yahweh had caused all types of trees to grow from the ground that are beautiful to look at and that grow fruit that is good to eat. In the middle of the garden was the tree whose fruit makes people live forever, as well as the tree whose fruit enables people to know what is good and what is evil.*

ULT **to the sight**
UST to look at

Alternate translation: [to the eyes] or [in appearance]

ULT **and good**
UST and {that grow fruit that is} good

Alternate translation: [and that have fruit that is good] or [and whose fruit is good]

ULT **for food**
UST to eat

Alternate translation: [for eating]

ULT **and the tree of life in the middle of the garden**
UST In the middle of the garden was the tree whose fruit makes people live forever

Alternate translation: [including the tree whose fruit gives people eternal life, which was in the middle of the garden]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	אֱלֹהִים
that is pleasant	that are beautiful
good	good
knowledge	know
good	good
evil	evil

Genesis 2:10

ULT	UST
And a river was going out from Eden to water the garden, and from there it divided and became four headwaters.	*There was a river flowing through the region of Eden that provided water for the park. From Eden the river divided into four smaller rivers.*

ULT **And a river was going out**
UST There was a river flowing

Verse 10 gives more of the background information that began in verse 8. Many translations omit the conjunction **And** or "Now" here. Alternate translation: [Now a river was flowing] or [A river was flowing]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **from Eden**
UST through {the region of} Eden

The garden was inside the land of Eden, so as the river flowed through Eden, it watered the garden. Alternate translation: [from the land of Eden]

ULT **to water**
UST that provided water for

See how you translated **watered** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [to irrigate] or [to provide water for] or [that watered]

ULT **the garden**
UST the park

See how you translated this phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: [the park]

ULT **and from there**
UST From Eden

Alternate translation: [and from the garden] or [and from Eden]

ULT **it divided and became four head{water}s**
UST the river divided into four {smaller} rivers

This verse could refer to: (1) a river in Eden which was the source river that watered the garden and then divided downstream into the four smaller rivers. Alternate translation: [the river divided into four smaller rivers]; or (2) the four rivers being source headwaters that flowed downstream and joined to form the larger river in Eden. Alternate translation: [there were four smaller source rivers that joined together and formed the larger river] If possible, leave your translation ambiguous here (as the Hebrew text does), so that either interpretation is possible.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Eden	Eden

Genesis 2:11

ULT	UST
The name of the first is Pishon. It winds through all of the land of Havilah, where gold is.	*The first river was the Pishon River, which flowed around the entire region of Havilah, a place where there was much gold.*

ULT **The name of the first is**
UST The first {river} was

Most translations use past tense in verse 10, but then use present tense throughout verses 11–14. It may be best to use past tense throughout verses 10–14, especially since the rivers and places that are named in these verses no longer existed when Genesis was written, because the Flood completely changed the entire surface of the earth; after the Flood, the names of some of those rivers and places were given to new rivers and places. Alternate translation: [The first river is named] or [The first river is]

ULT **Pishon**
UST the Pishon River

Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to use the article (the) with the name of a river.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **It winds through**
UST which flowed around

The words **winds** or "meanders" mean that the river changed direction from time to time. Alternate translation: [It meanders through] or [which flows around]

ULT **all of the land of Havilah**
UST the entire region of Havilah

Be consistent in how you translate **land of** throughout this section. Alternate translation: [the whole region called Havilah]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **where gold is**
UST a place where {there was} {much} gold

Alternate translation: [a place where there is much gold] or [which has a lot of gold]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	the … region of
gold	gold

Genesis 2:12

ULT	UST
And the gold of that land is good. Bdellium and onyx stone are there.	*In fact, the gold from that region was very pure. A type of fragrant resin and valuable onyx gemstones were also in that region.*

ULT And the gold of that land
UST In fact, the gold from that region

This sentence emphasizes the previous statement about the gold and gives more information about it. Alternate translation: [In fact, the gold from that land] or [Indeed, the gold that is found in that land]

ULT is good
UST was {very} pure

Alternate translation: [is very pure] or [is very high quality]

ULT Bdellium
UST A {type of} fragrant resin

The meaning of this Hebrew word is not certain. In many translations it is transliterated, that is, spelled the way the Hebrew word is pronounced. It may refer to: (1) a fragrant tree resin that was used to make perfume; or (2) a type of stone or crystal, or possibly pearl. Alternate translation: [A kind of sweet-smelling resin called bdellium] or [A kind of fragrant perfume]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT and onyx stone
UST and {valuable} onyx gemstones

It is not certain what kind of stone this was, but most Bible scholars think it was onyx, which is a kind of quartz that is often black but also occurs in many other colors and can have stripes or bands of white (or other colors) running through it. Alternate translation: [and valuable stones called onyx] or [and valuable gemstones]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT are there
UST were {also} in that region

Make sure the verb tense you choose here fits with the way you translated verse 11. Alternate translation: [are also found there] or [are also in that land]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
land	region
good	was {very} pure

Genesis 2:13

ULT	UST
And the name of the second river is Gihon. It winds through all of the land of Cush.	*The second river was the Gihon River, which flowed around through the entire region of Cush.*

ULT **It winds through**
UST which flowed around through

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2:11. Alternate translation: [It meanders through] or [which wanders throughout]

ULT **all of the land of Cush**
UST the entire region of Cush

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 2:11. Alternate translation: [the whole region of Cush]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	the … region of
Cush	Cush

Genesis 2:14

ULT	UST
And the name of the third river is Tigris. It goes east of Asshur. And the fourth river is Euphrates.	*The third river was the Tigris River, which flowed east of the region of Assyria, and the fourth river was called the Euphrates River.*

ULT **And the name of the third river is**
UST The third river was

Alternate translation: [The name of the third river is] or [The third river is named] or [The third river is]

ULT **It goes east of**
UST which flowed east of

The word **east** refers to where the river was located, not the direction it was flowing. Alternate translation: [It flows in an area east of] or [which flows in an area east of] or [which was located east of]

ULT **Asshur**
UST the region of Assyria

This Hebrew name is pronounced “ash-shur” and is spelled “Asshur,” “Ashur,” or “Assyria” in English, depending on the context. This was a region of land, because at that time there were no cities. Most translations have “Assyria” here. Consider again how you translated “the land of” in verses 2:11 and 2:13. Alternate translation: [the land of Asshur]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Asshur	Assyria
Euphrates	Euphrates River

Genesis 2:15

ULT	UST
And Yahweh God took the man and put him in the Garden of Eden to work it and tend it.	*After Yahweh God placed the man in Eden Garden to cultivate it and take care of it,*

ULT **And Yahweh God took the man and put him**
UST After Yahweh God placed the man

In verse 8 it says that God had already put the man in the garden, so the way you translate verse 15 should not sound as though he did it again. This information is repeated here to continue the story from verse 8. Alternate translation: [Now Yahweh God had already situated the man]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **in the Garden of Eden**
UST in Eden Garden

Notice that **Garden** is capitalized when it is part of a name. Alternate translation: [in the garden in the land called Eden]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **to work it**
UST to cultivate it

See how you translated **work** in verse 2:5. Alternate translation: [to farm it] or [so that he would farm it]

ULT **and tend it**
UST and take care of it

Alternate translation: [and maintain it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
Eden	Eden
work	to cultivate it
and tend it	and take care of it

Genesis 2:16

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From every tree of the garden you may freely eat,	*he instructed him, "You may eat as much fruit as you want to eat from any tree in the garden,*

ULT **Then Yahweh God commanded the man, saying**
UST he instructed him

Alternate translation: [Then he directed the man, telling him]

ULT **From every tree of the garden you may freely eat**
UST You may eat as much {fruit} as you want {to eat} from any tree in the garden

Alternate translation: [You may eat all the fruit you want to eat from every tree in the garden] or [You are permitted to eat whatever fruit that you want to eat from every tree in the garden]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	יְהוָה
God	אֱלֹהִים

Genesis 2:17

ULT	UST
but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, because on the day you eat from it you will surely die."	*except I forbid you to eat any fruit from the tree whose fruit enables people to know what is good and what is evil. If you eat fruit from that tree, on that same day you will definitely die."*

ULT but you must not eat from the tree of
UST except I forbid you to eat {any fruit} from the tree

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is not contradicting himself here, but rather he is giving an exception to what he said in verse 16. To make that clear, you could say (starting with the beginning of God's words in verse 16), "Out of all the trees in the garden, there is only one tree that you must not eat from: the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If you eat fruit from that tree, on that same day you will certainly die." Alternate translation: [except you may not eat any fruit from the tree] or [except for one: you may not eat the fruit that grows on the tree]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

ULT the knowledge of good and evil
UST whose fruit enables people to know {what is} good and {what is} evil

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2:9. Alternate translation: [whose fruit enables people to discern what is good and what is wrong]

ULT because on the day you eat from it
UST If you eat {fruit} from that tree, on that {same} day

Alternate translation: [because on the same day that you eat fruit from that tree] or [If you eat any fruit from that tree, on that same day]

ULT you will surely die
UST you will definitely die

Alternate translation: [you will certainly die]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
knowledge	know
good	good
evil	evil
day	day

Genesis 2:18

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh God said, "It is not good for the man to be alone. I will make a suitable helper for him."	*Then Yahweh who is God said, "It is not good for the man to live by himself. So I will create someone who is just right for him to help him."*

ULT **Then Yahweh God said, "{It is} not good for**
UST Then Yahweh {who is} God said, "{It is} not good

Alternate translation: [Next, Yahweh who is God declared, "It is not good]

ULT **a suitable helper for him**
UST someone who is just right for him to help him

Alternate translation: [a helper who is just right for him] or [someone who is right for him and will help him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
good	good

Genesis 2:19

ULT	UST
Now Yahweh God had formed from the ground every living thing of the field and every bird of the sky. So he brought them to the man to see what he would call them, and whatever the man called a living creature, that was its name.	*Now previously, Yahweh had used dirt from the ground to form all the different types of wild animals and all the different types of birds that fly in the sky. So he brought them all to the man to hear how he would name them. Whatever name the man gave to each kind of animal, that became the name for that kind of animal.*

ULT **Now Yahweh God had formed from the ground**
UST Now {previously,} Yahweh had used {dirt} from the ground to form

The first sentence of verse 19 is a flashback of what happened before the events in verses 15–18 (which were first recorded in Genesis 1:20–21, 24–25). Translate this phrase in a way that makes it clear that this is background information that has already happened. Also see how you translated **formed** in verses 2:7–8 and "dust from the ground" in verse 2:7. Alternate translation: [Now before that, Yahweh God had shaped from the dust on the ground] or [Now previously, he had used dust from the ground to form]

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **every living thing of the field**
UST all {the different types of} wild animals

Consider how you translated a similar phrase **every living creature of the earth** in Genesis 1:24 and 1:30. Alternate translation: [every type of creature that lives in the fields] or [all the different kinds of animals that live in the fields] or [all the different kinds of wild animals]

ULT **and every bird of the sky**
UST and all {the different types of} birds {that fly} in the sky

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 1:30. Alternate translation: [and every kind of bird that flies in the sky] or [and all the different kinds of birds that fly in the sky]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **So he brought them**
UST So he brought them all

This sentence continues the storyline. Consider how your language continues a story after giving background information. Also consider whether **brought** or "took" fits best here in your language. Alternate translation: [So he took them all]

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **to the man**
UST to the man

Every translation team needs to decide when to use Adam's name for the first time in the book of Genesis. The Hebrew word "adam" means **man** and is also Adam's name; the choice that is not followed here in your translation could be put in a footnote. Some translations first use Adam's name here in verse 19, when he is naming the animals. Many other translations start using his name at the end of verse 20. Still other translations wait until 3:20, when he names Eve, and a few other translations begin in 3:9, 17, or 21. Alternate translation: [to Adam]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **to see**
UST to hear

Alternate translation: [to watch] or [to find out]

ULT **what he would call them**
UST how he would name them

These names were labels for what kind of animals they were, such as “dog” or “horse,” not personal names like “David” or “Mary.” Alternate translation: [what he would name each one] or [what names he would give to them]

ULT **and whatever the man called**
UST Whatever name the man gave to

Alternate translation: [Whatever name the man assigned to]

ULT **a living creature**
UST each {kind of} animal

Alternate translation: [each kind of living creature] or [each type of animal]

ULT **that {was} its name**
UST that {became} the name for that kind of animal

Alternate translation: [that became its name] or [that became the name of that type of animal]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	אֱלֹהִים
sky	sky
called	Whatever name … gave to

Genesis 2:20

ULT	UST
And the man gave names to all the livestock and to the birds of the sky and to every living thing of the field, but for the man a suitable helper was not found.	*The man gave names to all the different kinds of livestock and to all the different kinds of birds that fly in the sky, and to all the different kinds of wild animals, but none of them was an appropriate companion to help him.*

ULT **And the man gave names to all the livestock**
UST The man gave names to all the {different kinds of} livestock

Alternate translation: [The man assigned names to all the different types of livestock] or [Adam named all the different types of tame animals]

ULT **and to the bird{s} of the sky**
UST and to {all} the {different kinds of} birds {that fly} in the sky

Alternate translation: [and to all the different types of birds that fly in the sky]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and to every living thing of the field**
UST and to all the {different kinds of} wild animals

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 2:19. Alternate translation: [and to all the other different types of creatures that live in the wild] or [and to all the wild animals]

ULT **but for the man a suitable helper was not found**
UST but none of them was an appropriate companion to help him

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use an active or passive construction here. Also see how you translated **a suitable helper** in Genesis 2:18. Alternate translation: [but he could not find a fitting helper for himself among them] or [but none of them was a helper who was just right for him]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And … gave	gave
livestock	livestock
sky	sky

Genesis 2:21

ULT	UST
So Yahweh God caused a deep sleep to fall on the man. And while he was sleeping, then he took one of his ribs and closed up its place with flesh.	*So Yahweh God caused the man to sleep deeply. Then while the man was asleep, God took a rib out of the man's body and filled in the place where it had been with flesh and healed it.*

ULT **So Yahweh God caused a deep sleep to fall on the man**
UST So Yahweh God caused the man to sleep deeply

Many languages have a similar common expression for **caused a deep sleep to fall on** that works well here. Consider what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh God caused the man to go into a deep sleep]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **then he took**
UST God took

Consider whether to use a pronoun or noun here to refer to God. Make sure it is clear in your translation to whom each pronoun is referring at each point in this verse. Alternate translation: [he took out]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **one of his ribs**
UST a rib out of the man's body

The phrase **one of his ribs** could mean: (1) "one of the man's ribs from his body" Alternate translation: [a rib from the man's side]; or (2) "part of the man's side from his body"

ULT **and closed up its place {with} flesh**
UST and filled in the place where it had been with flesh and healed it

In this context, the term **flesh** probably includes muscles and skin. Alternate translation: [and filled in the hole where it had been with flesh and healed it] or [and replaced it with flesh and healed him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God

Genesis 2:22

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh God built the rib which he had taken from the man into a woman, and he brought her to the man.	*Next Yahweh God made a woman from the rib which he had taken out of the man's body, and he took her to the man.*

ULT **Then Yahweh God built**
UST Next Yahweh God made

Alternate translation: [Next he] or [After that, he]

ULT **Then … built the rib which he had taken from the man into a woman**
UST Next … made a woman from the rib which he had taken out of the man's body

See how you translated **rib** in verse 2:21 and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [used the part which he taken from the man to construct a woman from it]

ULT **and he brought her to the man**
UST and he took her to the man

See how you translated **brought** in verse 2:19. Alternate translation: [Then he took her to Adam]

Support Reference: Go and Come

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God

Genesis 2:23

ULT	UST
And the man said, "This one now is bone from my bones and flesh from my flesh! She will be called 'woman,' because it was from a man that she was taken."	*When the man saw her, he exclaimed, "Finally! Here is someone like me who has bones and flesh from me! I will call her 'woman,' because it was from the body of a man that God took her."*

ULT **And the man said**
UST When the man saw her, he exclaimed

Remember to only make implied information explicit in your translation if it helps people understand the text better or if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning or bad grammar in your language. Alternate translation: [Then the man said] or [When the man saw her, he said] or [When the man woke up and saw the woman, he said]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **This {one} now**
UST Finally! Here

Alternate translation: [Now there is a person who] or [At last here is a person like me who] or [Ah! Here is someone like me who]

ULT **is bone from my bones and flesh from my flesh**
UST is someone {like me} who has bones and flesh from me

Alternate translation: [was made out of my own bones and flesh!]

ULT **She will be called 'woman**
UST I will call her 'woman

There is a play on words here because the Hebrew word for woman **ishsha** is similar to the Hebrew word for man **ish**. You could put that information in a footnote.

ULT **because {it was} from a man {that} she was taken**
UST because {it was} from {the body of} a man {that} {God} took her

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [because she was taken by God from the body of a man]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	call

Genesis 2:24

ULT	UST
For that reason a man will leave his father and his mother, and he will cling to his wife, and they will become one flesh.	*Because of that, when a man gets married, he must leave the home of his father and mother, and he must unite with his wife, so that they become completely united.*

ULT **For that reason**
UST Because of that

Alternate translation: [That is why]

ULT **a man will leave**
UST when a man gets married, he must leave

Alternate translation: [a man who marries must leave] or [when a man gets married, he must move away from]

ULT **and he will cling to his wife**
UST and he must unite with his wife

This is a common expression meaning that the man is committed to his wife and has a close physical relationship with her too. Consider what is the best way to translate this in your language. Alternate translation: [and he must join with his wife] or [and he must live in close relationship with his wife]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and they will become**
UST so that they become

Some languages have a special dual pronoun for **they** that fits well here.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **one flesh**
UST completely united

The phrase **one flesh** is a common expression that emphasizes the close physical and spiritual unity between a husband and wife. Other languages may have a similar common expression. Consider how to best communicate this in your language. Alternate translation: [completely one] or [joined in body and spirit] or [united like one person]
Support Reference: Idiom

Genesis 2:25

ULT	UST
And the man and his wife were both naked, but they were not ashamed.	*During that time the man and his wife did not wear any clothes, but yet they were not ashamed about it.*

ULT **And the man and his wife were both naked**
UST During that time the man and his wife did not wear any clothes

Alternate translation: [Now at that time both the man and his wife were naked] or [At that time the man and his wife did not wear any clothes]

ULT **but they were not ashamed**
UST but {yet} they were not ashamed about it

Some languages have a common expression for this clause that fits well here. Alternate translation: [but yet they were not embarrassed about it] or [but yet they did not feel embarrassed about being naked]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ashamed	ashamed

Genesis 3

Genesis 3:1

ULT	UST
Now the serpent was more crafty than every living thing of the field that Yahweh God had made. And he said to the woman, "Did God really say, 'You must not eat from any tree of the garden'?"	*Now the snake was the craftiest of all the animals that Yahweh God had created. One day he asked the woman, "Did God really command you not to eat fruit from any of the trees in the garden?"*

ULT **Now the serpent**
UST Now the snake

Here the author is introducing **the serpent** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation.
Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **was more crafty**
UST was the craftiest

By **crafty**, the author means that the snake had evil intent and was clever in a way that was not good. See how you translated **living thing of the field** in Genesis 2:19–20. Alternate translation: [was more deceptive and clever than any of the other creatures living in the wild]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **than every living thing of the field**
UST of all the animals

By **every living thing of the field** the author means all the beasts, large and small, crawling, swimming, flying, or moving on legs, that God made. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to the animals that God had made, not the fields. Alternate translation: [than each and every animal]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And he said to the woman**
UST One day he asked the woman

If you use a pronoun (**he**) here in your translation, make sure it clearly refers to the serpent, not God. Also, since the snake asked a question, some languages have to be more specific and say "asked" in the quote margin. Alternate translation: [One day the snake went to the woman and asked her]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Did God really say, 'You must not eat**
UST Did God really command you not to eat

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [Did God actually command you to not eat] or [Is it true that God commanded you not to eat]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

> ULT **from any tree of the garden**
> UST fruit from any of the trees in the garden

See how you translated **garden** in Genesis 2, beginning in verse 2:8. Alternate translation: [any fruit from the trees in the garden?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
serpent	snake
more crafty	the craftiest
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
God	God

Genesis 3:2

ULT	UST
Then the woman said to the serpent, "We may eat from the fruit of the trees of the garden,	*The woman answered him, "No, God said that we may eat fruit from any of the trees in the garden,*

ULT Then the woman said to the serpent
UST The woman answered him

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [The woman answered the snake, saying] or [The woman responded to him] or [The woman replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT We may eat
UST No, {God said that} we may eat

The woman is not including the snake when she says "we" here. Alternate translation: [No, we have permission from God to eat] or [No, God has given us permission to eat]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT from the fruit of
UST fruit from

See how you translated **fruit** in Genesis 1:11–12, 29 1:11–12, 1:29. Alternate translation: [the fruit from]

ULT the tree{s} of the garden
UST any of the tree{s} in the garden

Alternate translation: [all of the trees that are in the garden] or [any tree in the garden]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
serpent	him
fruit	fruit

Genesis 3:3

ULT	UST
except from the fruit of the tree that is in the middle of the garden. God said, 'You must not eat from it, and you must not touch it, or else you will die!'"	*except fruit from the tree that is in the center of the garden. He commanded us not to eat that fruit or even touch it, because if we do, we will die!"*

ULT **except from the fruit of the tree that {is} in the middle of the garden**
UST except fruit from the tree that is in the center of the garden

For some languages it is necessary to put the exception clause first and say, "No, it is only the tree in the middle of the garden that God said we must may not eat any fruit from, but the fruit of all the rest of the trees in the garden we may eat." Notice that if you follow this example, you must combine verses 2 and 3 and put the verse numbers "2–3" in front of the combination. Alternate translation: [except fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the garden] or [except there is one tree that we may not eat fruit from, which is in the center of the garden]

Support Reference: Verse Bridges

ULT **God said, 'You must not eat from it, and you must not touch it, or else you will die**
UST He commanded {us} not to eat that fruit or even touch it, because if we do, we will die

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [God told us to not eat any of that fruit or touch it, or else we will die!]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **or else you will die**
UST because if we do, we will die

Make sure the way you translate this clause fits with whether you translated the first part of the sentence as a direct (**you**) or indirect **we** quote. Alternate translation: [because if you do eat it or touch it, you will die!] or [because if we do eat it or touch it, we will die!"]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fruit	fruit
God	He commanded

Genesis 3:4

ULT	UST
But the serpent said to the woman, "You will not surely die.	*But the snake said to the woman, "That is not true. You will not die.*

> ULT **But the serpent said to the woman**
> UST But the snake said to the woman

See how you translated **serpent** in verses 3:1–2. Alternate translation: [But the snake replied to her] or [But the snake replied]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
serpent	snake

Genesis 3:5

ULT	UST
For God knows that on the day you eat from it, then your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God in knowing good and evil."	*Actually, God knows that as soon as you eat fruit from that tree, you will understand new things, so that you will know what is right and what is wrong just like God does."*

ULT **For God knows**
UST Actually, God knows

The connecting word **For** introduces an explanation here. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Actually, he knows] or [The reason God said that is because he knows]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **that on the day**
UST that as soon as

Alternate translation: [that if]

ULT **you eat from it**
UST you eat {fruit} from that tree

The pronouns **you** and **your** are plural in this verse and refer to the man and the woman. Some languages have a special dual pronoun for this. Consider again how you translated **you** and **your** in verses 1–5. Alternate translation: [you eat any of that fruit]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **then your eyes will be opened**
UST you will understand new things

Consider whether your language has a common expression such as **your eyes will be opened** that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [your mind will be opened] or [you will gain new understanding] or [you will know new things]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and you will be like God in knowing good and evil**
UST so that you will know {what is} right and {what is} wrong just like God does

The word translated as **God** could mean: (1) "God," which is what it means everywhere else in the first 30 chapters of Genesis. Alternate translation: [and as a result you will be like God because you will know what is good and what is evil] or [so that you will know what is good and what is evil, just like God does]; or (2) "gods" or "divine beings" or (3) "angels." See how you translated **good and evil** in Genesis 2:9 and 2:17.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
knows	knows
day	as soon as
God	God
knowing	know
good	right
evil	and {what is} wrong

Genesis 3:6

ULT	UST
And the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable for gaining wisdom. So she took some of its fruit and ate it. Then she also gave some to her husband with her, and he ate it.	*The woman saw that the tree's fruit looked good to eat and that the tree itself was very beautiful. She also wanted to eat the fruit so that it would make her wise. So she picked some of the fruit off the tree and ate it. She also gave some of the fruit to her husband, who was there with her, and he ate it too.*

ULT **And the woman saw that**
UST The woman saw that

Alternate translation: [The woman observed that]

ULT **the tree**
UST the tree's fruit

The word **tree** refers here to the fruit that is produced by that tree. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [the tree produced fruit that] or [the fruit of that tree]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **was good for food**
UST looked good to eat

Alternate translation: [was good to eat]

ULT **and that it {was} pleasant to the eyes**
UST and that the tree {itself} was {very} beautiful

Alternate translation: [and that the tree itself looked very beautiful]

ULT **and {that} the tree was desirable for gaining wisdom**
UST She also wanted {to eat} the fruit so that it would make her wise

Alternate translation: [and she thought that the fruit from the tree would make her wise]

ULT **So she took some of its fruit and ate it**
UST So she picked some of the fruit {off the tree} and ate it

Alternate translation: [So she took some of the fruit off the tree and ate it]

ULT **and he ate it**
UST and he ate {it} too

Alternate translation: [and he ate some too] or [and he also ate it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
good	good
and that … was desirable	She also wanted to eat
fruit	fruit

Genesis 3:7

ULT	UST
Then the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they were naked. So they sewed fig leaves together and made aprons for themselves.	*Suddenly they both understood new things, and they realized that their bodies were bare. So they sewed some fig tree leaves together and made clothes for themselves to cover their nakedness.*

ULT **Then the eyes of them both were opened**
UST Suddenly they both understood new things

An immediate result of their sin was that they realized they were naked, which they had not been aware of before. See how you translated the common expression “eyes … opened” in verse 3:5. Alternate translation: [Immediately it was as if their minds were opened] or [Immediately they both had new understanding]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and they knew**
UST and they realized

Alternate translation: [so that they became aware]

ULT **that they {were} naked**
UST that their bodies {were} bare

The author assumes that his readers will understand that this sense of nakedness led to a sense of shame. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [that their bodies were bare, and they felt ashamed]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **So they sewed … together**
UST So they sewed … together

The word for **sewed** implies here that some type of needle and thread were used. For example, they may have used a thin, sharpened stick for the needle, and plant fibers for the thread. If necessary, you could use a more general term such as “fastened together” or “connected.” Also, some languages have dual pronouns that can be used in verses 7–8 for **they** and **themselves**. Alternate translation: [So they joined together]
Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

ULT **and made aprons for themselves**
UST and made clothes for themselves to cover their nakedness

The narrator assumes that readers will know that these aprons probably covered them from the waist down to somewhere around the knees. Alternate translation: [and used them as aprons to cover their bodies] or [and wore them around their waists to cover their bodies] or [and used them to make clothes for themselves]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
knew	and they realized
fig	fig

Genesis 3:8

ULT	UST
Then they heard the sound of Yahweh God walking in the garden in the breeze of the day, but the man and his wife hid from the presence of Yahweh God among the trees of the garden.	*Late that afternoon, during the cool time of the day, the man and his wife heard Yahweh God's voice as he walked in the garden, but they hid from him behind some trees in the garden.*

ULT **Then they heard**
UST the man and his wife heard

Alternate translation: [Then the man and his wife heard]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the sound of Yahweh God walking**
UST Yahweh God's voice as he walked

This phrase could refer to: (1) the sound of his voice. See UST (2) the sound of God's footsteps. Alternate translation: [the sound of Yahweh God's steps as he walked] Either meaning fits the context well and is followed by many translations.

ULT **in the garden**
UST in the garden

Alternate translation: [around in the garden] or [through the garden]

ULT **in the breeze of the day**
UST Late that afternoon, during the cool time of the day

This common expression refers to the late afternoon or early evening when there is a breeze blowing and it is cooler. For some languages it is more natural to put this time phrase at the beginning of the sentence. Alternate translation: [late in the afternoon, in the breezy time of the day] or [late that day when there was a cool breeze blowing]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **but the man and his wife hid**
UST but they hid

If you use **the man and his wife** earlier in this verse in your translation, consider whether or not a pronoun should be used here. Alternate translation: [so they hid themselves] or [so they tried to hide themselves]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **among the tree{s} of the garden**
UST behind some tree{s} in the garden

Since the garden is already mentioned earlier in verse 8, for some languages it may be more natural to be general here and say "there." Alternate translation: [in the midst of the trees in the garden] or [behind some trees there]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

> ULT **from the presence of Yahweh God**
> UST from him

Alternate translation: [from Yahweh God] or [from his sight]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
in the breeze of	Late that afternoon, during the cool time of
day	day
Yahweh	from him
God	from him

Genesis 3:9

ULT	UST
So Yahweh God called to the man and said to him, “Where are you?”	*So Yahweh God called out to the man, “Adam, where are you?”*

ULT **to the man and said to him**
UST So … called {out} to the man

See the note at Genesis 2:19 about when to start using Adam’s name. Also consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [to the man and asked him] or [to Adam]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Where {are} you**
UST Adam, where are you

Notice that the word **you** is singular here because God is only addressing the man.
Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
called	called out

Genesis 3:10

ULT	UST
And he said, "I heard your sound in the garden, but I was afraid because I was naked, so I hid."	*The man replied, "I heard the sound of you walking in the garden, but I was afraid because I was naked, so I hid from you."*

ULT **And he said**
UST The man replied

Alternate translation: [He answered him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I heard your sound**
UST I heard the sound of you walking

See how you translated **sound** in verse 3:8. Alternate translation: [I heard your voice] or [I heard the sound of your voice as you walked]

ULT **in the garden**
UST in the garden

Alternate translation: [through the garden]

ULT **but I was afraid because I {was} naked, so I hid**
UST but I was afraid because I was naked, so I hid from you

Alternate translation: [but I was naked, so I felt afraid and I hid from you] or [but I was naked and afraid that you would see me, so I hid]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
afraid	afraid

Genesis 3:11

ULT	UST
Then he said, “Who told you that you were naked? Did you eat from the tree that I commanded you not to eat from?”	*Then Yahweh God asked, “Who told you that you were naked? Did you disobey me and eat fruit from the tree from which I ordered you not to eat?”*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Yahweh God asked

Make sure your translation of **he** refers to Yahweh here, not the man. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh God questioned Adam, asking]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Who told you that you {were} naked**
UST Who told you that you were naked

The pronoun **you** is still singular here. Alternate translation: [What made you realize that you were naked?] or [How did you find out that you were naked?]
Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

ULT **that I commanded you not to eat from**
UST from which I ordered you not to eat

For some languages it is more natural to use a direct quote here for Yahweh’s words.
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Genesis 3:12

ULT	UST
Then the man said, "The woman whom you gave to be with me, she gave me fruit from the tree, and I ate it."	*The man replied, "The woman whom you put here to be with me, she is the one who gave me some of that fruit, so I ate it."*

ULT **Then the man said**
UST The man replied

Alternate translation: [But the man replied to him] or [The man answered him]

ULT **The woman whom you gave {to be} with me, she**
UST The woman whom you put here {to be} with me, she is the one who

The pronoun **she** is emphatic in the Hebrew text. That, along with the position of **The woman** at the beginning of the sentence, shows that the man is strongly emphasizing his blame of the woman. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language.
Alternate translation: [The woman whom you put here to live with me, she is the one who] or [It was the woman you gave to me who]

ULT **gave me {fruit} from the tree**
UST gave me some of that fruit

See how you translated **fruit** in verses 3:1–6. Alternate translation: [gave me some fruit from that tree]

ULT **and I ate it**
UST so I ate it

Alternate translation: [That is why I ate it]

Genesis 3:13

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh God said to the woman, "What is this you have done?" And the woman said, "The serpent deceived me, so I ate it."	*Then Yahweh God asked the woman, "What did you do?" The woman replied, "The snake tricked me, so I ate some of the fruit."*

ULT **What {is} this you have done**
UST What did you do

God already knew the answer to this question, but he is giving the woman a chance to confess and explain what she did. God's question probably also implies that he is displeased with what has happened. Alternate translation: [What have you done?] or [Tell me what you have done]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **And the woman said**
UST The woman replied

Alternate translation: [Then the woman answered]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **The serpent**
UST The snake

This phrase is emphasized in the Hebrew text. Alternate translation: [It was the snake that]

ULT **deceived me**
UST tricked me

Alternate translation: [lied to me]

ULT **so I ate it**
UST so I ate some of the fruit

Alternate translation: [so I ate some of that fruit] or [That is why I ate it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
serpent	snake
deceived	tricked me

Genesis 3:14

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh God said to the serpent, "Because you have done this, you are cursed above all the livestock and above every living thing of the field. You will move on your belly, and you will eat dust all the days of your life.	*So Yahweh God said to the snake, "Because you did that, I am cursing you more severely than all the livestock and all the animals in the fields! As a result, you must crawl along the ground on your belly, and you will eat dust with your food for as long as you live.*

ULT **Because you have done this**
UST Because you did that

Alternate translation: [Since you did that] or [Since you tricked the woman]

ULT **you are cursed**
UST I am cursing you

In this context, **cursed** involves God punishing the serpent and its descendants, causing them to suffer by crawling along the ground on their bellies and having a hostile relationship with human beings. Make sure that the way you translate this term does not imply the use of magic. Alternate translation: [you are cursed by me] or [I will cause you to suffer] or [I will punish you]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **above all the livestock**
UST more {severely} than all the livestock

When Adam and Eve sinned and God judged them, the curse and punishment of death and decay also affected everything that was under their authority, including the animals. Here in Genesis 3:14, God puts a more severe curse on the serpent (and his descendants) than he put on the rest of the animals. See how you translated **livestock** in Genesis 1:24–26 and 2:20. Alternate translation: [more harshly than all the tame animals]

ULT **and above every living thing of the field**
UST and all the animals in the fields

See how you translated **every living thing of the field** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [and more harshly than all the creatures of the fields] or [and more harshly than all the wild animals]

ULT **You will move on your belly**
UST As a result, you must crawl {along the ground} on your belly

Alternate translation: [As a result, you will move on the ground on your stomach]

ULT **and you will eat dust**
UST and you will eat dust with your food

Make sure your translation of **you will eat dust** does not imply that dust or dirt is all the snake will eat. Rather it could mean that dirt will get into his mouth when he eats his food, or it could be an common expression meaning that as he slithers along the ground, his mouth will always be close to the dirt on the ground (a position of humility). Also see how you translated **dust** in Genesis 2:7. Alternate translation: [and you will eat dirt with your food]

> ULT **all the days of your life**
> UST for as long as you live

Alternate translation: [your entire life]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
serpent	snake
cursed	cursing
livestock	livestock
days	for as long as you live

Genesis 3:15

ULT	UST
I will also put hostility between you and the woman, and between your offspring and her offspring. He will strike you on the head, and you will strike him on the heel."	*Besides that, I will cause you and your descendants to be enemies with the woman and her descendants. In fact, her descendant will crush your head, and you will bite his heel."*

ULT **I will also put hostility between you and the woman, and between your offspring and her offspring**
UST Besides that, I will cause you and your descendants to be enemies with the woman and her descendants

Alternate translation: [I will also cause you and the woman to be enemies with each other, and your offspring and her offspring to also be enemies]

ULT **He**
UST In fact, her descendant

Here, the pronoun **He** could refer to: (1) the woman's descendant (Jesus), who would one day come to earth as the Messiah. Alternate translation: [In fact, her offspring] or [In fact, one of her descendants]; or (2) the woman's descendants who will constantly be enemies of the snake's descendants. If you follow the first interpretation, this would be the first prophecy in the Bible about the Christ ("the Anointed One" or "the Promised Savior King") who would come to earth and destroy Satan's power (Hebrews 2:14). You could include that information in a footnote.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **will strike you {on} the head, and you will strike him {on} the heel**
UST will crush your head, and you will bite his heel

This is figurative language that Satan will harm the Messiah, but the Messiah will destroy him. For some languages it is better to switch the order of these clauses and say, "In fact, you will bruise the heel of one of her descendants, but he will crush your head." Alternate translation: [will crush your head, and you will bruise his heel]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your offspring	Besides that, I will cause you and your descendants to be enemies with the woman and her descendants
her offspring	Besides that, I will cause you and your descendants to be enemies with the woman and her descendants

Genesis 3:16

ULT	UST
To the woman he said, "To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing; in pain you will bear children. Yet your desire will be for your husband, and he will rule over you."	*Then God said to the woman, "I will greatly increase how much you suffer when you bear children, yes, you will suffer much pain when you give birth. But you will still desire to be with your husband, and he will dominate you."*

ULT **To multiply I will multiply your pain**
UST I will greatly increase how much you suffer

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb **multiply** in order to intensify the idea that it expresses. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the emphasis. Alternate translation: [I will cause you to have much pain] or [I will cause childbirth to be very painful]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **in pain you will bear children**
UST yes, you will suffer {much pain} when you give birth

This clause is the second part of a parallelism, the use of two phrases meaning basically the same thing, which emphasizes the pain and suffering that women will experience when they bear children. If possible, it is best to keep both parts of the parallelism in your translation. Alternate translation: [yes, you will suffer much pain when you give birth] or [yes, bearing children will be very painful for you]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **Yet your desire {will be} for your husband**
UST But you will {still} desire {to be with} your husband

The common expression **your desire will be for your husband** could refer to: (1) sexual desire, which is similar to what "desire" means in Song of Songs 7:10. Alternate translation: [Yet you will still desire to be with your husband]; or (2) desire for control, which is similar to what **desire** means in Genesis 4:7. The interpretation that is not followed in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [And you will want to control your husband]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he will rule over you**
UST and he will dominate you

See how you translated **rule over** in Genesis 1:18. It may be necessary to translate this term differently here because of the negative context of the curse and the consequences of sin. Alternate translation: [and he will control you] or [and he will lord it over you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
multiply	I will greatly increase
bear	when you give birth
will rule	will dominate

Genesis 3:17

ULT	UST
Then to the man he said, "Since you listened to the voice of your wife and ate from the tree that I commanded you, saying, 'You must not eat from it,' the ground is cursed because of you. By painful toil you will eat from it all the days of your life.	*Then God said to Adam, "You did what your wife said and ate fruit from the tree that I commanded you not to eat any fruit from. Because of what you did, I have cursed the ground. As a result, for as long as you live, you will have to work very hard and suffer to grow enough food to eat.*

ULT **Then to the man he said**
UST Then God said to Adam

In the Hebrew text, the phrase **to the man** is emphasized. See how you translated a similar case **to the woman** in verse 3:16. Alternate translation: [Next God said to the man] or [Next Yahweh God turned to Adam and said to him]

ULT **Since you listened to the voice of your wife**
UST You did what your wife said

This phrase means that Adam heard what his wife said to him and then did what she said. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Since you disobeyed me and did what your wife said] or [Since you did what your wife told you to do]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **that I commanded you, saying, 'You must not eat from it**
UST that I commanded you not to eat {any fruit} from

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated this command in verse 3:3. Alternate translation: [from which I told you not to eat any fruit]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **the ground is cursed because of you**
UST Because of what you did, I have cursed the ground

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to break up this long sentence and say, "You did what your wife said and ate fruit from the tree that I commanded you not to eat any fruit from. Because of what you did, I have cursed the ground." Also see how you translated **cursed** in verse 3:14. Alternate translation: [the ground is cursed by me because of what you did] or [I have cursed the ground because you sinned]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **By painful toil you will eat {from} it**
UST As a result … you will have to work {very} hard and suffer {to grow enough food} to eat

Alternate translation: [As a result, only by painful toil will you eat any food from it] or [As a result, you will have to work very hard and suffer to get enough food to eat]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **all the days of your life**
UST for as long as you live

For some languages it is better to put this phrase before the previous clause and say, “As a result, for as long as you live, you will have to work very hard and suffer to grow enough food to eat.” Alternate translation: [every day of your life] or [for your entire life]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cursed	cursed
days	for as long as you live

Genesis 3:18

ULT	UST
And it will produce thorns and thistles for you, and you will eat the plants of the fields.	*In fact, thorn plants and thistle plants and other weeds will grow from the ground and make it difficult for you to grow enough crops in your fields for food.*

ULT **And it will produce thorn{s} and thistles**
UST In fact, thorn plants and thistle plants {and other weeds} will grow from the ground

The thorn and thistle plants represent all types of weeds, which are useless and possibly harmful plants. Alternate translation: [In fact, the ground will produce thorn plants and thistle plants and other weeds]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **for you, and you will eat the plant{s} of the fields**
UST and make it difficult for you to grow {enough} crops in your fields for food

The Hebrew text here could mean: (1) “and make it difficult for you to grow enough crops in the fields for food.” or “so that you will have to work very hard in your fields to produce enough crops to eat.” or (2) “so that your crops will not grow well and you will have to eat wild plants that grow in the open fields to survive.” That difference of interpretation comes from the fact that the Hebrew word **fields** can refer to land that people cultivate or to uncultivated land where wild plants grow.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
thorns	thorn
thistles	thistle

Genesis 3:19

ULT	UST
By the sweat of your nose you will eat bread, until you return to the ground, since from it you were taken. For you are dust, and to dust you will return."	*You will have to work hard and sweat a lot in order to produce enough food to eat, until you die and again become dirt, which I created you from. Yes, I created you out of dirt, so dirt is what you will become again after you die."*

ULT By the sweat of your nose you will eat bread
UST You will have to {work hard and} sweat a lot in order to {produce} {enough} food to eat

The phrase "by the sweat of your brow" is a common expression that refers to hard physical labor. Consider whether or not your language has a similar common expression. Also, bread was one of the main food staples for that time and culture, so the Hebrew word for **bread** is used here as a common expression that refers to all food, not just loaves of bread. Consider whether your language does something similar, using one type of food (such as bread, rice or potatoes) to refer to all food in general. Or you could use a general term like "food," especially if bread is rare or expensive in your language area. Alternate translation: [Only by the sweat of your face will you be able to have enough food to eat] or [You will have to work hard and sweat a lot in order to have enough food to eat]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT until you return to the ground
UST until you {die and} again become dirt

Alternate translation: [until you die and again become dust]

ULT since from it you were taken
UST which I created you from

Alternate translation: [which you were made from by me] or [which I took you from] or [which I made you out of]

ULT For
UST Yes

This sentence rephrases and emphasizes what God just said. Alternate translation: [Indeed]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT you {are} dust
UST I created you out of dirt

Alternate translation: [your bodies were made by me from dust] or [I made you out of dust]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bread	in order to {produce} {enough} food to eat

Genesis 3:20

ULT	UST
Then the man called the name of his wife Eve, because she was the mother of all the living.	*Then Adam named his wife Eve, which means "living," because she would be the mother of everyone who would ever live.*

ULT **Then the man called the name of his wife**
UST Then Adam named his wife

Some translations use Adam's name here because he is naming Eve. See what you did in verse 3:17. Alternate translation: [Then Adam called his wife] or [Then the man gave his wife the name]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Eve**
UST Eve, which means "living

If you include the meaning of Eve's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it is similar to the word in the following clause that has the same meaning (**living**), so that it is clear why Eve was given that name. The meaning of names is important in the Hebrew language, and this translation issue occurs frequently in the book of Genesis.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **because**
UST because

Alternate translation: [He did that because]

ULT **she was the mother of**
UST she would be the mother of

Alternate translation: [she would be the ancestor of]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	Then … named
Eve	Eve

Genesis 3:21

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh God made garments of animal skins for Adam and his wife, and he clothed them.	*Then Yahweh God made some clothes out of animal skins for Adam and his wife, and he put the clothes on them.*

ULT and he clothed them
UST and he put the clothes on them

Alternate translation: [and he dressed them] or [and he put the garments on them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
garments of	some clothes out of
Adam	Adam

Genesis 3:22

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh God said, "Behold, the man has become like one of us in knowing good and evil. And now he must not reach out his hand and also take fruit from the tree of life and eat it and live forever!"	*Then Yahweh God said to himself, "Look! The man and his wife have become like one of us, so that they know what is good and what is evil. So now we must do something so that they do not also pick and eat fruit from the tree that gives people eternal life, which will make them live forever!"*

ULT **Behold**
UST Look

This word expresses emotion and calls attention to what God says next. See how you translated this term in Genesis 1:29. Alternate translation: [Listen]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the man**
UST The man and his wife

Throughout verses 22–24, **the man** represents mankind, which included both the man and the woman at this point. Make sure your translation communicates that clearly in those verses and does not just refer to Adam. Alternate translation: [the man and his wife] or [mankind] or [human beings]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **has become like one of us**
UST have become like one of us

The pronoun **us** is inclusive because God is talking to himself. Alternate translation: [have become like us]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **in knowing good and evil**
UST so that they know {what is} good and {what is} evil

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3:5 and a similar phrase in Genesis 2:9

ULT **And now he must not reach out his hand and also take**
UST So now we must do something so that they do not also pick

See how you translated "took … fruit" in verse 3:6. Alternate translation: [So now, they must not be allowed by us to also pick] or [So we must not allow them to also pick] or [So now we must do something so that they cannot also pick]

ULT **fruit from the tree of life and eat it**
UST and eat {fruit} from the tree that gives people {eternal} life

See how you translated **the tree of life** in Genesis 2:9. Alternate translation: [fruit from the tree of eternal life and eat some of it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
knowing	know
good	good
evil	evil
forever	forever

Genesis 3:23

ULT	UST
So Yahweh God sent him out of the Garden of Eden to work the ground which he had been taken from.	*Then Yahweh God expelled the man and his wife from Eden Garden to work the ground which he had made them from.*

ULT **So Yahweh God sent him**
UST Then Yahweh God expelled the man and his wife

Notice that in verses 22–24, the words "the man," and the pronouns **him**, and **he** all refer to mankind, that is, both the man and the woman. Make sure it is clear in your translation here that both humans were sent out of the garden, not just the man. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh God banished the man and his wife] or [So then Yahweh God forced them to leave]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **out of the Garden of Eden**
UST from Eden Garden

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 2:15. Alternate translation: [the garden in the land of Eden]

ULT **to work the ground**
UST to work the ground

See how you translated **work the ground** in Genesis 2:5 and "work it" in 2:15. Alternate translation: [to farm the land]

ULT **which he had been taken from**
UST which he had made them from

It does not refer to the exact ground that he was made from. See how you translated **taken from** in verse 3:19. Alternate translation: [from which they had been taken by him] or [from which he had taken them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
Eden	Eden

Genesis 3:24

ULT	UST
And after he drove the man out, then he placed on the east side of the Garden of Eden cherubs angels and a flaming sword that was turning in every direction to guard the way of the tree of life.	*After he expelled them, he stationed to the east side of the garden some powerful cherubs angels and a burning sword that was swinging around in all directions to keep everyone away from the path to the tree whose fruit makes people live forever.*

ULT **And after he drove the man out**
UST After he expelled them

Alternate translation: [Then after God drove the man and his wife out of the garden] or [After God banished them from the garden]

ULT **then he placed**
UST he stationed

Alternate translation: [then he stationed] or [then he placed]

ULT **on the east side of the Garden of Eden**
UST to the east {side} of the garden

It is implied that the entrance to the garden is where the cherubs were placed to keep everyone from ever entering the garden again. Consider again how you translated **garden** in Gen 2:8–10, 2:15–16; 3:1–3, 3:8, 3:10 and 3:23–24. Alternate translation: [on the east side of the garden at its entrance] or [at the entrance to the garden, which was on its east side]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and a flaming sword**
UST and a burning sword

Alternate translation: [and a fiery sword] or [and a sword made of flames]

ULT **that was turning in every direction**
UST that was swinging around in all directions

It seems that the sword was swinging by itself since there is no mention of anyone holding it. Alternate translation: [that was turning around in all directions] or [that was flashing back and forth]

ULT **to guard the way of**
UST to keep everyone away from the path to

Alternate translation: [to keep everyone away from the way that leads to] or [so that no one could go near]

ULT **the tree of life**
UST the tree whose fruit makes people live forever

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 2:9 and 3:22. Alternate translation: [the tree of eternal life] or [the tree whose fruit gives people eternal life]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And after he drove … out	After he expelled
Eden	to the east {side} of the garden
cherubs	cherubs
sword	sword

Genesis 4

Genesis 4:1

ULT	UST
Then the man knew Eve his wife, and she conceived and bore Cain. And she said, "I have obtained a man with Yahweh!"	*Then Adam had marital relations with his wife Eve, and she became pregnant and gave birth to a son they named Cain, which means "obtained." They named him that because she said, "Yahweh has enabled me to obtain a son!"*

ULT **Then the man**
UST Then Adam

For a note about when to begin referring to the man as Adam, see 2:19. Alternate translation: [Then the man Adam]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **knew Eve his wife**
UST had {marital} relations with his wife Eve

This phrase is a common expression in Hebrew that means Adam had sexual relations with Eve. Many languages have a similar common expression. Make sure you translate this in a way that is polite and will not offend or embarrass people, especially when read aloud. Alternate translation: [slept with his wife Eve] or [was intimate with his wife Eve]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and she conceived and bore**
UST and she became pregnant and gave birth to

Translate this clause in a way that will not embarrass people, especially when read aloud. Alternate translation: [so that she became pregnant and later gave birth to]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **Cain**
UST a son they named Cain, which means "obtained

You could include the meaning of Cain's name in your translation or in a footnote. See what you did for a similar case in Genesis 3:20.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **And she said, "I have obtained**
UST They named him that because she said … has enabled me to obtain

This sentence explains how **Cain** got his name. Eve's statement, **I have obtained a man with Yahweh** could mean: (1) that Yahweh enabled her to have a child. Alternate translation: [They named him that because Eve had said, "I have gotten]; or (2) that Eve has produced a son. Alternate translation: [They named him that because Eve had said, "I have produced] If you include the meaning of Cain's name earlier in this verse in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches your choice here so that it is clear why he was given that name.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **a man**
UST a son

For some languages it is confusing to refer to a newborn baby as a man. Do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [a male child] or [a boy] or [a baby boy]

ULT **with Yahweh**
UST Yahweh

For some languages it is more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, “With Yahweh’s help I have obtained a son!” or “Yahweh has enabled me to get a son!” Alternate translation: [with help from Yahweh!]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
knew	had {marital} relations
Eve	Eve
conceived	and she became pregnant
bore	and gave birth to
Cain	Cain
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 4:2

ULT	UST
Then she continued on to bear his brother Abel. Now Abel became a keeper of flocks, and Cain became a worker of the ground.	*Then Eve also gave birth to Cain's brother whom they named Abel. When they grew up, Abel became a shepherd, and Cain became a crop farmer.*

ULT **Then she continued on to bear**
UST Then Eve also gave birth to

The idiom **continued on** may mean that Cain and Abel were twins, or Abel may have been born sometime later, when Eve became pregnant again. If possible, translate verse 2 in a way that allows for either interpretation of **continued on**. Alternate translation: [Then she also gave birth to] or [After that, Eve gave birth to]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **his brother**
UST Cain's brother

Some languages have a specific term for "younger brother" that can be used here.
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **Now Abel became**
UST When they grew up, Abel became

This sentence introduces background information for what happens next. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Also, it is implied here that the boys had grown up to be adults. If necessary, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [Now when the boys had grown up, Abel]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **a keeper of flocks**
UST a shepherd

Alternate translation: [was a keeper of sheep] or [raised sheep and goats]

ULT **and Cain**
UST and Cain

The author uses the word **and** here to indicate a contrast between **Abel** and **Cain**. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but Cain]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **became a worker of the ground**
UST became a {crop} farmer

Cain raised crops, not animals. See how you translated a similar phrase **work the ground** in Genesis 2:5. Alternate translation: [was a tiller of the soil] or [was a crop farmer] or [grew food crops]
Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bear	gave birth to
Abel	Abel
Abel	Abel
a keeper of	shepherd
flocks	a shepherd
Cain	Cain
a worker of	a {crop} farmer

Genesis 4:3

ULT	UST
And it happened in the course of days that Cain brought some of the fruit of the ground as an offering to Yahweh.	*As time went by, one day Cain gave some of the crops that he had grown in his fields to Yahweh as a gift to honor him.*

ULT **And it happened in the course of days**
UST As time went by, one day

These phrases introduce an important new event. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Then one day it happened that] or [As time went on one day]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **that Cain brought**
UST Cain gave

Alternate translation: [Cain offered]

ULT **some of the fruit of the ground**
UST some of the crops {that he had grown} in his fields

The word **fruit** is general here and refers to any edible plant or crop that grows as the result of being cultivated. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [some of the crops that he had raised in his fields] or [some of the edible plants that he had harvested from his fields]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **as an offering to Yahweh**
UST to Yahweh as a gift to honor him

The term **offering** refers to something that is given. Alternate translation: [to Yahweh as an gift to worship him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	day
Cain	Cain
fruit	some of the crops {that he had grown} in
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 4:4

ULT	UST
And Abel also brought some of the firstborn of his flocks and some of their fat. And Yahweh looked favorably on Abel and his offering.	*Abel also gave a gift to Yahweh, but what he gave was some of the firstborn animals from his flocks, including some of their best parts. Yahweh was pleased with Abel and his gift.*

ULT **some of the firstborn of his flocks**
UST some of the firstborn animals from his flocks

See how you translated **flocks** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [some of the firstborn animals from his sheep]

ULT **and some of their fat**
UST including some of their best parts

In that culture, fat was considered one of the best parts of an animal to eat. If that is different from how fat is viewed in your language area, that information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and some of the fat portions of the meat] or [and some of their best parts] or [and the best parts of the meat]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And Yahweh looked {favorably} on**
UST Yahweh was pleased with

Alternate translation: [Yahweh was happy with] or [Yahweh accepted]

ULT **Abel and his offering**
UST Abel and his gift

Alternate translation: [Abel and his sacrifice] or [Abel and what he gave to him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abel	Abel
firstborn	firstborn
flocks	flocks
Yahweh	Yahweh
Abel	Abel

Genesis 4:5

ULT	UST
But he did not look favorably on Cain and his offering. So Cain burned with intense anger, and his face fell.	*However, he was not pleased with Cain or his gift. So Cain became extremely angry, and he frowned.*

ULT But he did not look {favorably} on Cain
UST However, he was not pleased with Cain

See how you translated “looked favorably on” in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [But Yahweh was not happy with Cain] or [However, he did not accept Cain]

ULT and his offering
UST or his gift

Alternate translation: [and his gift] or [and what he gave to him]

ULT So Cain burned with intense anger
UST So Cain became extremely angry

Many languages have a similar common expression that fits well here. Alternate translation: [So Cain was extremely angry]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT and his face fell
UST and he frowned

Alternate translation: [and his face showed that he was angry] or [and he scowled] or [and his face showed it]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Cain	Cain
Cain	Cain

Genesis 4:6

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Why are you burning with anger? And why is your face fallen?	*Then Yahweh asked him, "Why are you so angry? And why are you frowning?*

ULT Then Yahweh said to Cain
UST Then Yahweh asked him

The way you translate this quote margin should fit with the way that you translated the following three rhetorical questions. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh asked Cain]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Why are you burning with anger? And why is your face fallen
UST Why are you so angry? And why are you frowning

God is using these rhetorical questions to correct Cain. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Also see how you translated the expressions "burned with … anger" and "face fell" in verse 5. Alternate translation: [Why are you so angry? And why are you scowling?] or [There is no reason for you to be angry and scowling]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Cain	him

Genesis 4:7

ULT	UST
If you do right, will you not be accepted? But if you do not do right, sin is crouching at the door, and its desire is for you, but you must rule over it."	*If you do what is right, I will accept you and your offering. But if you do not do what is right, then sin is like a fierce animal that is waiting outside your door to attack you. It wants to control you, but you must control it so that you do not sin."*

ULT **will {you} not {be} accepted**
UST I will accept {you} and your offering

God uses this rhetorical question here to remind Cain of something that he already knew. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [you know that you will be accepted by me] or [you know that I will be pleased with you and your gift too] or [I will accept you and your gift too]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **But if you do not do right**
UST But if you do not do {what is} right

Alternate translation: [But if you do what is wrong]

ULT **sin is crouching**
UST then sin {is like a fierce animal that} is waiting

In verse 7, sin is treated as if it were alive, like a lion or some other fierce animal which is preparing to attack Cain. Some languages can do the same thing. Other languages cannot do that and must say something like: "then you are in great danger of being tempted to sin, but you must resist and not give in." Alternate translation: [then sin is like a dangerous animal that is waiting] or [then sin will be waiting like a wild animal]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **at the door**
UST outside your door to attack you

Alternate translation: [outside the door of your heart to tempt you]

ULT **and its desire {is} for you**
UST It wants {to control} you

Alternate translation: [Sin wants to destroy you]

ULT **but you must rule over it**
UST but you must control it so that you do not sin

Alternate translation: [but you must master it so that you do not sin] or [but you must keep it from destroying you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
right	right
sin	sin
must rule	must control it so that you do not sin

Genesis 4:8

ULT	UST
Then Cain spoke to Abel his brother. And it happened while they were in the field, then Cain rose up against Abel his brother and killed him.	*But after that, Cain said to his brother Abel, "Let's go out to the field to work together." So they went out to the field, and while they were there, Cain attacked his brother and murdered him.*

ULT **Then Cain spoke**
UST But {after that,} Cain said

After God spoke to Cain, we do not know how long Cain waited before he spoke to Abel; it may have been a few hours or a few days. Alternate translation: [Some time later, Cain spoke]
Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **to Abel his brother**
UST to his brother Abel, "Let's go out to the field {to work} together

This sentence is what the Hebrew text has. Instead of that text, some ancient manuscripts and translations (including the Samaritan Pentateuch, Septuagint, Latin Vulgate, and Syriac) and many modern translations have: "Then Cain said to Abel his brother, 'Let's go out to the field and work together.'" or "Then Cain invited his brother Abel to go out to the field with him to work." Some translation teams follow the way this verse is translated in a well-known translation, such as in the national language or in a neighboring language. Decide what to do in your translation. The textual variant that you do not use in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [with his brother Abel]
Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **And it happened while they were in the field**
UST So {they went out} to the field, and while they were there

For some languages it is necessary to make explicit that Cain and Abel actually went to the field. Alternate translation: [So they went out to the field to work together, but while they were there]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Abel his brother**
UST his brother Abel, "Let's go out to the field {to work} together

The Hebrew text keeps repeating the phrase **Abel his brother** to emphasize the seriousness of Cain's crime. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. See how you translated **brother** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [his own brother Abel] or [his own brother]
Support Reference: Kinship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Cain	Cain
Abel	Abel
Cain	Cain
Abel	הֶבֶל
killed	murdered

Genesis 4:9

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is Abel your brother?" And he replied, "I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?"	*Later Yahweh asked Cain, "Where is your brother Abel?" Cain responded, "I do not know where he is. Is it my job to take care of my brother?"*

ULT **Then Yahweh said to Cain**
UST Later Yahweh asked Cain

Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh asked Cain]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **And he replied**
UST Cain responded

Cain is answering Yahweh rudely. Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language, including whether or not to use a conjunction here. Alternate translation: [Then He said to him] or [He answered him] or [He retorted]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I do not know**
UST I do not know where he is

Alternate translation: [How should I know that?]

ULT **Am I my brother's keeper**
UST Is it my job to take care of my brother

Cain uses this rhetorical question to support the lie that he just told. His response to God is rude and disrespectful. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question communicates that here in your language. Alternate translation: [Am I in charge of my brother?] or [Is it my responsibility to take care of my brother?]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Cain	Cain
Abel	Abel
know	know
Am … keeper	Is it my job to take care of my brother

Genesis 4:10

ULT	UST
Then he said, "What have you done? The voice of your brother's blood is crying out to me from the ground!	*Then Yahweh said to him, "You have done a terrible thing! I see your brother's blood on the ground, and I must punish you for killing him!*

ULT Then he said

UST Then Yahweh said to him

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Yahweh, not Cain. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh asked]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT What have you done

UST You have done a terrible thing

God uses this rhetorical question to condemn what Cain had done. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question works well here in your language. Alternate translation: [What you have done is very horrible!] or [You have done a horrible thing!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT The voice of your brother's blood is crying out to me from the ground

UST I see your brother's blood on the ground, and I must punish you for killing him

In the Hebrew text, blood is spoken of as if it were a living thing that had a voice or could cry out like a person does. If it is not possible to do that in your language, you could say that his brother's blood is "like a voice …" or you could state the meaning plainly.

Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
crying out	I see your brother's blood on the ground, and I must punish you for killing him

Genesis 4:11

ULT	UST
So now you are cursed from the ground, which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand.	*So from now on I am cursing you so that you will not be able to grow food from the ground, which is where your brother's blood spilled out when you murdered him.*

ULT **So now**
UST So from now on

Alternate translation: [Therefore from now on] or [Because of what you did]

ULT **you are cursed**
UST I am cursing you

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Also see how you translated this in Genesis 3:14. Alternate translation: [you are cursed by me]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from the ground**
UST so that you will not be able to grow food from the ground

Alternate translation: [so that you will not be able to grow food from the soil] or [so that you are banished from farming the soil]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood**
UST which is where your brother's blood spilled out

In the Hebrew text, **the ground** is spoken of as if it were a living thing that had a mouth to open. If that is not possible in your language, you could follow one of the alternates above. Alternate translation: [which is covered with blood from your brother]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **from your hand**
UST when you murdered him

Alternate translation: [when you killed him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cursed	cursing

Genesis 4:12

ULT	UST
When you work the ground, it will not continue to yield its strength for you. You will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth."	*Whenever you try to farm the ground, it will no longer produce good crops for you. From now on, you will be an outcast who wanders around on the earth without a permanent home."*

ULT **When**
UST Whenever

Alternate translation: [As a result, whenever]

ULT **you work the ground**
UST you {try to} farm the ground

See how you translated **work the ground** in Genesis 2:5 and 3:23; also see similar phrases in 4:2 and 4:11. Alternate translation: [you try to farm the soil]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **it will not continue to yield its strength for you**
UST it will no longer produce good crops for you

Alternate translation: [it will no longer grow good crops for you] or [it will not grow enough food for you anymore]

ULT **You will be**
UST you will be

Alternate translation: [and you will also]

ULT **You will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth**
UST From now on, you will be an outcast who wanders around on the earth without a permanent home

The phrase **a fugitive and a wanderer** forms a hendiadys, a phrase that expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. Consider what is the best way to translate that phrase in your language. Alternate translation: [be a homeless outcast on the earth] or [be rejected by people so that you have no permanent home and have to move from place to place]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
work	you {try to} farm
earth	earth

Genesis 4:13

ULT	UST
Then Cain said to Yahweh, "My punishment is greater than I can bear.	*Cain replied to Yahweh, "You are punishing me more severely than I can endure.*

ULT **Then Cain said to Yahweh**
UST Cain replied to Yahweh

Alternate translation: [But Cain replied to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **My punishment {is} greater**
UST You are punishing me more severely

Alternate translation: [Your punishment of me will cause me more suffering] or [You are punishing me more harshly]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **than I can bear**
UST than I can endure

Alternate translation: [than I am able to cope with]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Cain	Cain
Yahweh	Yahweh
bear	than I can endure

Genesis 4:14

ULT	UST
Behold, today you are driving me from the surface of the ground, and I will be hidden from your presence. And I will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth, and it will be that everyone who finds me will kill me!”	*Look, you have now banished me from farming the ground, and I will be far away from you. I will be a homeless fugitive on the earth, so that whoever sees me will kill me!”*

ULT **Behold**
UST Look

This term emphasizes what Cain says next. See how you translated this term in Genesis 1:29 and 3:22. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Listen]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **today you are driving me**
UST you have now banished me

See how you translated **drove** in Genesis 3:24. Alternate translation: [today you are forcing me away] or [you have now prevented me]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from the surface of the ground**
UST from {farming} the ground

Alternate translation: [from working the land]

ULT **and I will be hidden from your presence**
UST and I will be far away from you

This clause is probably a common expression that means Cain will be cursed and no longer blessed by God. Alternate translation: [and I will be separated from you] or [and you will no longer bless me]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And I will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth**
UST I will be a homeless fugitive on the earth

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4:12. Alternate translation: [I will be a fugitive who wanders around on the earth without a permanent home] or [I will be a wandering outcast on the earth]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **everyone who finds me will kill me**
UST whoever sees me will kill me

Cain uses generalization and extreme statement here to emphasize his strong emotion. If possible, keep this extreme statement in your translation because it helps communicate how fearful Cain felt. Alternate translation: [anyone who meets me will kill me!]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
today	now
you are driving	you have … banished
earth	earth
kill	kill

Genesis 4:15

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said to him, "For that reason, anyone who kills Cain will suffer vengeance seven times over!" Then Yahweh put a mark on Cain so that everyone who found him would not strike him.	*Yahweh replied to him, "So then, I will warn everyone that I will take vengeance on whoever kills you and punish him seven times more severely than I am punishing you!" Then he put a mark on Cain to warn everyone who met him not to kill him.*

ULT **Then Yahweh said to him**
UST Yahweh replied to him

Alternate translation: [So Yahweh said to him] or [Yahweh said to Cain]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **For that reason**
UST So then

That is what the Hebrew text has. Instead of that text, some ancient translations (such as the Septuagint) and many modern translations have: "Not so." or "That will not happen because." The textual variant that you do not use in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [In that case]
Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **anyone who kills Cain will suffer vengeance**
UST I will warn everyone that I will take vengeance on whoever kills you

What God says here implies that he will do something to prevent people from killing Cain; he is not just talking about punishing them if they kill him. If necessary, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [I will warn everyone that if anyone kills you, I will take revenge on him for you] or [I will make it clear to everyone that I will take revenge on anyone who kills you]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Then Yahweh put a mark on Cain**
UST Then he put a mark on Cain

We do not know exactly how Yahweh marked Cain, so keep your translation of this clause general (like the Hebrew text is). Alternate translation: [Then he put a special symbol on Cain] or [Then he marked Cain with a special mark]

ULT **so that everyone who found him would not strike him**
UST to warn everyone who met him not to kill him

The phrase **strike him** is used here as a common expression that means "kill him." Alternate translation: [so that anyone who saw him would not kill him]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
kills	kills
Cain	you
vengeance	vengeance
Yahweh	יְהוָה
a mark	a mark
Cain	Cain

Genesis 4:16

ULT	UST
Then Cain went away from the presence of Yahweh and lived in the land of Nod, east of Eden.	*Then Cain left Yahweh's presence and lived in the region of Nod, which means "wandering," which was east of the region of Eden.*

ULT Then Cain went away
UST Then Cain left

Alternate translation: [After that, Cain went away]

ULT from the presence of Yahweh
UST Yahweh's presence

Yahweh is everywhere, so this probably means that after talking to Yahweh, Cain left that place. Alternate translation: [from Yahweh] or [from the place where Yahweh had been talking to him]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT and lived
UST and lived

Alternate translation: [and settled] or [and started living]

ULT in the land of Nod
UST in the region of Nod, which means "wandering

The original readers of the Hebrew text knew that the name **Nod** means "wandering." Usually translators transliterate (copy or borrow) the name from the Hebrew text, and they might also include the meaning of the name in the text or in a footnote. If you do that here, the meaning should be similar to how you translated **wanderer** in verses 12 and 14.
Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

ULT east of Eden
UST which was east of {the region of} Eden

Consider again how you translated "the land of Eden" and "the Garden of Eden" in the book of Genesis. See 2:8, 10, 15; 3:23–24; and 4:16. Alternate translation: [which was east of the land called Eden] or [which was east of Eden Land]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Cain	Cain
Yahweh	Yahweh
land	in the region of
Eden	Eden

Genesis 4:17

ULT	UST
Then Cain knew his wife, and she conceived and bore Enoch. And he was building a city, so he called the name of the city after the name of his son Enoch.	*Then Cain had marital relations with his wife, and she became pregnant and gave birth to a son they named Enoch. At that time Cain was building a city, so he named the city after his son Enoch.*

ULT **Then Cain knew his wife**
UST Then Cain had {marital} relations with his wife

See how you translated this common expression in Genesis 4:1. Alternate translation: [Then Cain slept with his wife]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and she conceived and bore**
UST and she became pregnant and gave birth to

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 4:1. Alternate translation: [so that she became pregnant and gave birth to]

ULT **And he was building a city**
UST At that time Cain was building a city

Make sure that your translation of this clause refers to Cain, not Enoch. Alternate translation: [Now at that time, Cain was in the process of constructing a city]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **so he called the name of the city**
UST so he named the city

Alternate translation: [so he called the city]

ULT **after the name of his son Enoch**
UST after his son Enoch

Alternate translation: [Enoch, after his son] or [Enoch, the same name as his son]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Cain	Cain
knew	Then … had {marital} relations
conceived	and she became pregnant
bore	and gave birth to
Enoch	Enoch
called	so he named
Enoch	Enoch

Genesis 4:18

ULT	UST
Then to Enoch was born Irad, and Irad fathered Mehujael, and Mehujael fathered Methushael, and Methushael fathered Lamech.	*When Enoch grew up, he had a son named Irad. Then Irad had a son named Mehujael. Then Mehujael had a son named Methushael. Then Methushael had a son named Lamech.*

ULT **Then to Enoch was born**
UST When Enoch {grew up,} he had

In this record of Cain's descendants, It is implied that many years have gone by between each descendant growing up, getting married, and having his own children. Decide the best way to translate this genealogical record in your language. Alternate translation: [Later on, Enoch fathered] or [When Enoch grew up, he fathered] or [Enoch was the father of]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **Irad**
UST a son named Irad

Alternate translation: [a son whose name was Irad]

ULT **and Irad fathered**
UST Then Irad had

Alternate translation: [Then Irad fathered] or [When Irad grew up, he had] or [Irad was the father of]

ULT **Mehujael**
UST a son named Mehujael

Alternate translation: [a son whose name was Mehujael]

ULT **and Mehujael fathered**
UST Then Mehujael had

Alternate translation: [Mehujael was the father of]

ULT **Methushael**
UST a son named Methushael

Alternate translation: [a son whose name was Methushael]

ULT **and Methushael fathered**
UST Then Methushael had

Alternate translation: [Then Methushael fathered] or [When Methushael grew up, he had] or [Methushael was the father of]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Enoch	Enoch
Then … was born	When Enoch {grew up,} he had
Lamech	Lamech

Genesis 4:19

ULT	UST
Then Lamech took for himself two wives. The name of the one was Adah, and the name of the second was Zillah.	*When Lamech grew up, he married two wives. His first wife's name was Adah, and his other wife's name was Zillah.*

ULT **Then Lamech took for himself two wives**
UST When Lamech {grew up,} he married two wives

In this context, the phrase **took for himself** is a common expression that means "married." Consider whether or not your language has a similar expression. Alternate translation: [Then Lamech grew up, and he chose two women to be his wives] or [When Lamech grew up, he married two women]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lamech	Lamech

Genesis 4:20

ULT	UST
And Adah bore Jabal. He was the father of those who live in tents and own livestock.	*Adah gave birth to a son named Jabal. He grew up and became the first of all those who live in portable shelters and raise livestock for a living.*

ULT **Jabal**
UST a son named Jabal

Alternate translation: [a son whose name was Jabal]

ULT **He was**
UST He {grew up and} became

Alternate translation: [who was] or [who grew up and became]

ULT **the father of {those} who live**
UST the first of {all} those who live

The phrase **father of** is used here as a common expression that means Jabal was the first person to do these things. He originated this way of living, and many people after him followed his example. Alternate translation: [the first of all people who]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bore	gave birth to
tents	in portable shelters
livestock	livestock

Genesis 4:21

ULT	UST
And the name of his brother was Jubal. He was the father of all who play harps and flutes.	*His brother's name was Jubal. He became the first of all those who play harps and flutes.*

ULT **And the name of his brother {was} Jubal**
UST His brother's name was Jubal

Jubal was probably younger than Jabal. See how you translated **brother** in verse 4:2. Alternate translation: [Jabal had a brother named Jubal]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **He was**
UST He became

Alternate translation: [who was] or [He grew up and became]

ULT **the father of all**
UST the first of all those

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 4:20. Alternate translation: [the ancestor of all people who]

ULT **who play harps and flutes**
UST who play harps and flutes

Alternate translation: [play musical instruments called lyres and pipes] or [play stringed instruments and wind instruments]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
harps	harps
flutes	flutes

Genesis 4:22

ULT	UST
And Zillah also bore Tubal Cain, who forged all kinds of tools out of bronze and iron. And the sister of Tubal Cain was Naamah.	*Lamech's other wife Zillah also gave birth to a son named Tubal Cain. He was the first of all those who make all kinds of tools and other things out of bronze and iron. Tubal Cain had a sister whose name was Naamah.*

ULT **also bore**
UST also gave birth to

Alternate translation: [also became pregnant and gave birth to a son, and they named him]

ULT **Tubal Cain**
UST a son named Tubal Cain

Be consistent with how you spell this name both times in verse 4:22. Alternate translation: [Tubal-Cain] or [Tubal-cain] or [Tubalcain]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **who forged**
UST He {was the first of all those who} make

It is probably implied from verses 20–21 that Tubal Cain, like his brothers, was the father or first of all those who had this skill. Alternate translation: [He was the first person to forge] or [He was the first blacksmith, and he forged] or [He was the first of all people who forge]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **all {kinds} of tools out of bronze and iron**
UST all {kinds} of tools {and other things} out of bronze and iron

The word **tools** that is used here in the Hebrew text is general and can include farming tools and weapons and other things that are made out of metal. Alternate translation: [all kinds of tools and other things out of brass and iron] or [all kinds of brass and iron things]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bore	gave birth to
Cain	Cain
bronze	bronze
Tubal	Tubal

Genesis 4:23

ULT	UST
And Lamech said to his wives, "Adah and Zillah, hear my voice. Wives of Lamech, give ear to my words: For I killed a man for my wound, even a young man for my bruise.	*One day, Lamech bragged to his two wives, "Adah and Zillah, listen to what I have to say. My wives, listen to this: I killed a young man for wounding me! In fact, I killed that man just because he bruised me.*

ULT **And Lamech said**
UST One day, Lamech bragged

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this new event. Alternate translation: [One time, Lamech said proudly] or [One day, Lamech boasted]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **to his wives, "Adah and Zillah**
UST to his {two} wives, "Adah and Zillah

Be consistent with how you spelled these names in verses 4:19–20, 4:22–23.

ULT **hear my voice**
UST listen to what I have to say

The phrase **my voice** refers here to the words being said. Consider what is the best way to translate this figure of speech in your language. Alternate translation: [listen to what I am going to tell you]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Wives of Lamech, give ear to my words**
UST My wives, listen to this

This clause forms a parallelism, use of two phrases mean basically the same thing, with the previous clause and emphasizes what Lamech says next. Also, consider whether or not your language has an expression that is similar to **give ear to**. Alternate translation: [My wives, listen to me carefully]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **For I killed a man for my wound, even a young man for my bruise**
UST I killed a young man for wounding me! In fact, {I killed} that man {just} because he bruised me

This could mean: (1) that Lamech killed a young man who bruised him. Alternate translation: [I killed a man for wounding me; he was a young man who bruised me!] or [I killed a young man for wounding me! In fact, I killed that man just because he injured me!]; or (2) that Lamech killed two a man who wounded him and also a man who bruised him. Alternate translation: [I killed a man for wounding me, and I also killed a young man for bruising me] or [A man wounded me, so I killed him. A young man bruised me, so I killed him too!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lamech	Lamech
Lamech	My wives
killed	killed

Genesis 4:24

ULT	UST
If Cain is avenged seven times, then Lamech is avenged seventy-seven times!”	*God will avenge Cain seven times, but I, Lamech avenge myself 77 times!”*

ULT **If Cain is avenged seven times, then Lamech**
UST God will avenge Cain seven times, but {I,} Lamech

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [Since God has promised to avenge Cain seven times, then] or [Cain is avenged by God seven times, but]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **then Lamech {is avenged} seventy-seven times**
UST but {I,} Lamech {avenge myself} 77 times

Lamech is bragging in verses 23 and 24 about how severely he avenges himself. He is not saying that God will avenge him more than he will avenge Cain. Also, each translation team needs to decide how they will handle numbers in the Hebrew text so that readers will not confuse those numbers with verse numbers. For example, it may be best to use words for single and double-digit numbers in the text. Be consistent with how you spelled the name **Lamech** in verses 18–19, 23–24. Alternate translation: [I, Lamech avenge myself seventy-seven times!] or [I avenge myself 77 times!]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Cain	Cain
avenged	avenge
Lamech	Lamech

Genesis 4:25

ULT	UST
Then Adam knew his wife again, and she bore a son, and she called his name Seth, because she had said, "God has appointed for me another offspring in place of Abel, since Cain killed him."	*Then Adam had marital relations with his wife again, and she gave birth to a son, and she named him Seth, which means "given." She named him that because when he was born, she had said, "God has given me another child to replace Abel, whom Cain killed."*

ULT **Then Adam knew his wife again**
UST Then Adam had {marital} relations with his wife again

See how you translated the common expression **knew** in verses 4:1 and 4:17. Alternate translation: [Then Adam slept with his wife Eve again]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and she bore a son**
UST and she gave birth to a son

Alternate translation: [so that she conceived and had a son] or [with the result that she became pregnant and gave birth to a son]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **and she called his name**
UST and she named him

See how you translated a similar phrase in 3:20. Alternate translation: [and she gave him the name]

ULT **because she had said**
UST She named him that because {when he was born,} she had said

What follows is a direct quote of what Eve said that gave Seth his name. Make sure that is clear in your language. Alternate translation: [She named him that because when he was born, she had exclaimed]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **God has appointed for me**
UST God has given me

If you include the meaning of Seth's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate **appointed** here, so that it is clear why he was given that name. Alternate translation: [God has given to me]

ULT **God has appointed for me another offspring in place of Abel, since Cain killed him**
UST God has given me another child to replace Abel, whom Cain killed

For some languages it is necessary to put this phrase first in this clause so that events are in the order that they happened. Alternate translation: [Since Cain killed Abel, God granted me another child to replace him]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Adam	Adam
knew	Then … had {marital} relations
bore	and she gave birth to
called	and she named him
Seth	Seth
God	God
offspring	child
Abel	Abel
Cain	Cain
killed	killed

Genesis 4:26

ULT	UST
And to Seth also a son was born, and he called his name Enosh. Then people began to call on the name of Yahweh.	*Seth also had a son, and he named him Enosh. During that time people began to worship God by using His name Yahweh.*

ULT **And to Seth also a son was born**
UST Seth also had a son

The word order in the Hebrew text here emphasizes Seth. Alternate translation: [Later on, Seth also had a son]

ULT **Then**
UST During that time

Alternate translation: [At that time] or [That is when]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Seth	Seth
was born	had
called	and he named him
call	by using His name
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 5

Genesis 5:1

ULT	UST
This is the written account of the generations of Adam: On the day God created mankind, he made him in the likeness of God.	*Here is the family record of Adam and his descendants: On the day when God created human beings, he made them to be like himself.*

ULT **This is**
UST Here is

Alternate translation: [What follows is]

ULT **the generations of Adam**
UST Adam and his descendants

Alternate translation: [about Adam and his descendants:]

ULT **On the day God created man{kind}, he made him**
UST On the day when God created human beings, he made them

See how you translated **created** in Genesis 1:1, 1:27; 2:4, and “man” in Genesis 1:26–27.
Alternate translation: [On the day that God made human beings, he made them]

ULT **in the likeness of God**
UST to be like himself

God created mankind to be like himself in certain ways, but not to be exactly like him in every way (Genesis 1:26–27). Alternate translation: [in his own likeness]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	Adam and his descendants
Adam	Adam
day	day
God	God
created	created
God	to be like himself

Genesis 5:2

ULT	UST
He created them male and female, and he blessed them and called their name "mankind" on the day they were created.	*He also created them to be male and female, and on the same day that he created them, he blessed them and named them "human beings."*

ULT **He created them male and female**
UST He {also} created them {to be} male and female

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 1:27.

ULT **and called their name**
UST and named them

See how you translated the phrase "called … name" in Genesis 4:17 and 4:25,. Alternate translation: [and called them]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **mankind**
UST human beings

Be consistent here with how you translated this term in verse 5:1.
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **and he blessed them and called their name "man{kind}" on the day they were created**
UST and on the {same} day that he created them, he blessed them and named them "human beings

For some languages, it is clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [and on the same day that they were created, he blessed them and called them human beings]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
created	created
blessed	blessed
called	and named them
day	day
created	created

Genesis 5:3

ULT	UST
And Adam lived 130 years, then he fathered a son in his own likeness, according to his image, and he called his name Seth.	*When Adam was 130 years old, he had a son who was like him in many ways, and he named him Seth.*

ULT **And Adam lived 130 years, then he fathered a son**
UST When Adam was 130 years old, he had a son

Each translation team needs to decide how they are going to write large numbers in the Bible. Many teams use numerals, for example, **130** here in verse 3, especially if the target language has a complicated counting system. Other teams prefer to use words, for example, "one hundred and thirty" here. Be consistent in what you do throughout your translation. Alternate translation: [When Adam had lived 130 years, he had a son] or [When Adam was 130 years old, he fathered a son]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **in his own likeness, according to his image**
UST who was like him in many ways

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that Seth was similar to Adam in many ways. See how you translated similar phrases in Genesis 1:26. Alternate translation: [who was a human being like himself and looked like him]

Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Adam	Adam
years	years
called	and he named him
Seth	Seth

Genesis 5:4

ULT	UST
And the days of Adam after he fathered Seth were 800 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Seth's birth, Adam lived another 800 years. He also had other sons as well as daughters.*

ULT **And the days of Adam after he fathered Seth were**
UST After Seth's birth, Adam lived

Alternate translation: [After he had Seth, he lived] or [After Seth was born, Adam lived]

ULT **800 years**
UST another 800 years

For some languages, it may be more natural to change the clause order of this sentence and say, "Adam lived 800 more years after Seth was born …" Do what is best in your language throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [800 more years]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and he fathered**
UST He {also} had

This clause probably refers to all the other children that Adam had, including those who were born before and after Seth was born. Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Adam also had] or [He was also the father of]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	lived
Adam	Adam
Seth	Seth's
years	years

Genesis 5:6

ULT	UST
And Seth lived 105 years, then he fathered Enosh.	*When Seth was 105 years old, he had a son named Enosh.*

ULT **And Seth lived 105 years**
UST When Seth was 105 years old

The events in verse 6 happened before Adam died (verse 5). So if you use a conjunction here, make sure your translation does not sound like verse 6 happened after Adam died. Alternate translation: [After Seth had lived 105 years] or [After Seth was 105 years old]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **then he fathered Enosh**
UST he had {a son named} Enosh

You could make it explicit in your translation or in a footnote that Enosh was a son. The same thing is true for the rest of the children whose births are mentioned in this chapter (who were all sons). Alternate translation: [he fathered a son named Enosh] or [he had a son they named Enosh] or [he had a son whose name was Enosh]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Seth	Seth
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:7

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Enosh, Seth lived 807 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Enosh's birth, Seth lived another 807 years. He also had other sons as well as daughters.*

ULT **Then after he fathered Enosh, Seth lived**
UST After Enosh's birth, Seth lived

In fact, throughout chapter 5, make sure it is clear in your translation whom each pronoun refers to. Alternate translation: [After he had Enosh, he lived] or [After Enosh was born, Seth lived]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **807 years**
UST another 807 years

Alternate translation: [807 more years]

ULT **and he fathered**
UST He {also} had

See how you translated this phrase and the following one in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Seth also had] or [He was also the father of]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Seth	Seth
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:9

ULT	UST
And Enosh lived ninety years, then he fathered Kenan.	*When Enosh was ninety years old, he had a son named Kenan.*

> ULT **And Enosh lived ninety years**
> UST When Enosh was ninety years old

See how you translated the beginning of a similar new paragraph in this genealogy at verse 6.
Alternate translation: [After Enosh had lived 90 years] or [After Enosh was 90 years old]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years

Genesis 5:10

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Kenan, Enosh lived 815 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Kenan's birth, Enosh lived another 815 years. He also had other sons as well as daughters.*

ULT Then after he fathered Kenan, Enosh lived
UST After Kenan's birth, Enosh lived

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 5:7, and see the notes about that there.
Alternate translation: [After he had Kenan, he lived] or [After Kenan was born, Enosh lived]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT 815 years
UST another 815 years

Alternate translation: [815 more years]

ULT and he fathered
UST He {also} had

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Enosh also had] or [He was also the father of]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:11

ULT	UST
So all the days of Enosh were 905 years, and he died.	*So Enosh lived a total of 905 years, and then he died.*

ULT **and he died**
UST and {then} he died

Alternate translation: [before he died]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	So … lived a total of
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:12

ULT	UST
And Kenan lived seventy years, then he fathered Mahalalel.	*When Kenan was seventy years old, he had a son named Mahalalel.*

ULT **And Kenan lived seventy years**

UST When Kenan was seventy years old

Throughout this chapter, be consistent with how you have decided to handle numbers in the Bible. For example, many translation teams use words for single and double-digit numbers, but use numerals for larger numbers. This strategy helps prevent confusion with verse numbers. This is especially true in translations that use a large font size for verse numbers so that people doing group Bible study can easily be in the same verse together. Alternate translation: [After Kenan had lived seventy years] or [After Kenan was seventy years old]

Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years

Genesis 5:13

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Mahalalel, Kenan lived 840 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Mahalalel's birth, Kenan lived another 840 years. He also had other sons as well as daughters.*

ULT **Then after he fathered Mahalalel, Kenan lived**
UST After Mahalalel's birth, Kenan lived

Alternate translation: [After Kenan had Mahalalel, he lived] or [After Mahalalel was born, Kenan lived]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **840 years**
UST another 840 years

Alternate translation: [840 more years]

ULT **and he fathered**
UST He {also} had

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Kenan at this point in the paragraph.
Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Kenan also had] or [He was also the father of]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:14

ULT	UST
So all the days of Kenan were 910 years, and he died.	*So Kenan lived a total of 910 years, and then he died.*

> ULT **and he died**
> UST and {then} he died

Alternate translation: [before he died]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	So … lived a total of
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:15

ULT	UST
And Mahalalel lived sixty-five years, then he fathered Jared.	*When Mahalalel was sixty-five years old, he had a son named Jared.*

ULT **And Mahalalel lived sixty-five years**
UST When Mahalalel was sixty-five years old

Alternate translation: [After Mahalalel had lived 65 years] or [After Mahalalel was 65 years old]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:16

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Jared, Mahalalel lived 830 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Jared's birth, Mahalalel lived another 830 years. He also had other sons as well as daughters.*

ULT **Then after he fathered Jared, Mahalalel lived**
UST After Jared's birth, Mahalalel lived

Alternate translation: [After he had Jared, he lived] or [After Jared was born, Mahalalel lived]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **830 years**
UST another 830 years

Alternate translation: [830 more years]

ULT **and he fathered**
UST He {also} had

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [He also fathered] or [He was also the father of]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:17

ULT	UST
So all the days of Mahalalel were 895 years, and he died.	*So Mahalalel lived a total of 895 years, and then he died.*

ULT **and he died**
UST and {then} he died

Alternate translation: [before he died]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	So … lived a total of
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:18

ULT	UST
And Jared lived 162 years, then he fathered Enoch.	*When Jared was 162 years old, he had a son named Enoch.*

ULT **And Jared lived 162 years**
UST When Jared was 162 years old

Alternate translation: [After Jared had lived 162 years] or [After Jared was 162 years old]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years
Enoch	Enoch

Genesis 5:19

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Enoch, Jared lived 800 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Enoch's birth, Jared lived another 800 years. He also had other sons as well as daughters.*

ULT **Then after he fathered Enoch, Jared lived**
UST After Enoch's birth, Jared lived

Alternate translation: [After Jared had Enoch, he lived] or [After Enoch was born, Jared lived]

ULT **800 years**
UST another 800 years

Alternate translation: [800 more years]

ULT **and he fathered**
UST He {also} had

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Jared at this point in the paragraph.
Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Jared also had] or [He was also the father of]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Enoch	Enoch's
years	years

Genesis 5:20

ULT	UST
So all the days of Jared were 962 years, and he died.	*So Jared lived a total of 962 years, and then he died.*

> ULT **and he died**
> UST and {then} he died

Alternate translation: [before he died]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	So … lived a total of
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:21

ULT	UST
And Enoch lived sixty-five years, then he fathered Methuselah.	*When Enoch was sixty-five years old, he had a son named Methuselah.*

ULT **And Enoch lived sixty-five years**
UST When Enoch was sixty-five years old

Consider again how you translated double-digit numbers in verses 9, 12, 15, 21. Alternate translation: [After Enoch had lived 65 years] or [After Enoch was 65 years old]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Enoch	Enoch
years	years

Genesis 5:22

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Methuselah, Enoch walked with God 300 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Methuselah's birth, Enoch lived in a close relationship with God for another 300 years. He also had other sons as well as daughters.*

ULT after he fathered Methuselah
UST After Methuselah's birth

Alternate translation: [After he had Methuselah] or [After Methuselah was born]

ULT Then … Enoch walked with God
UST Enoch lived {in a close relationship} with God

The phrase **walked with** is used here as a common expression that means "lived in a close relationship with." Consider whether or not you have a similar expression in your language.
Alternate translation: [Enoch lived faithfully with God] or [Enoch lived in a faithful relationship with God]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT 300 years
UST for {another} 300 years

Alternate translation: [for 300 more years]

ULT and he fathered
UST He {also} had

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Enoch also had] or [He was also the father of]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Enoch	Enoch
God	God
years	years

Genesis 5:23

ULT	UST
So all the days of Enoch were 365 years.	*So Enoch lived a total of 365 years.*

ULT **So all the days of Enoch were 365 years**
UST So Enoch lived a total of 365 years

Make sure that the name **Enoch** is spelled consistently in your translation of verses 18–19, 21–24. Alternate translation: [So he lived a total of 365 years] or [All together he lived 365 years]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	So … lived a total of
Enoch	Enoch
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:24

ULT	UST
And Enoch walked with God, and then he was not there, because God took him away.	*Then while he was still living in a close relationship with God, suddenly he was no longer on earth, because God had taken him away to be with him.*

ULT And Enoch walked with God
UST Then while he was {still} living {in a close relationship} with God

Alternate translation: [All his life Enoch lived in a faithful relationship with God]

ULT and {then} he was not there
UST suddenly he was no longer on earth

Alternate translation: [and suddenly he was not on earth anymore] or [and he suddenly disappeared from earth]

ULT because God took him away
UST because God had taken him away to be with him

It may be more natural to put this clause before the previous clause and say, "… God took him away to be with him, so he was suddenly no longer on earth."
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Enoch	Then while he was {still} living in a close relationship
God	God
God	God

Genesis 5:25

ULT	UST
And Methuselah lived 187 years, then he fathered Lamech.	*When Methuselah was 187 years old, he had a son named Lamech.*

ULT And Methuselah lived 187 years

UST When Methuselah was 187 years old

Consider again how you translated verses in this chapter that are similar in structure to this verse; see verses 6, 9, 12, 15, 18, 21, 25, and part of verses 3 and 28, and see the note about this at verse 6. Alternate translation: [After Methuselah had lived 187 years] or [After Methuselah was 187 years old]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years
Lamech	Lamech

Genesis 5:26

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Lamech, Methuselah lived 782 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Lamech's birth, Methuselah lived another 782 years. He also had other sons as well as daughters.*

ULT **Then after he fathered Lamech, Methuselah lived**
UST After Lamech's birth, Methuselah lived

Alternate translation: [After he had Lamech, he lived] or [After Lamech was born, Methuselah lived]

ULT **782 years**
UST another 782 years

Alternate translation: [782 more years]

ULT **and he fathered**
UST He {also} had

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Methuselah at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [He also fathered] or [He was also the father of]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lamech	Lamech's
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:27

ULT	UST
So all the days of Methuselah were 969 years, and he died.	*So Methuselah lived a total of 969 years, and then he died.*

ULT **and he died**

UST and {then} he died

Alternate translation, without the preceding comma: [before he died]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	So … lived a total of
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:28

ULT	UST
And Lamech lived 182 years, then he fathered a son,	*When Lamech was 182 years old, he had a son,*

> ULT **And Lamech lived 182 years**
> UST When Lamech was 182 years old

Alternate translation: [After Lamech had lived 182 years] or [After Lamech was 182 years old]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lamech	Lamech
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:29

ULT	UST
and he called his name Noah, saying, "This one will comfort us from our labors and from the toil of our hands because of the ground which Yahweh has cursed."	*and he named him Noah which means "rest," because he said, "This son will give us rest from the difficult work that we have to do because Yahweh has cursed the ground."*

ULT **and he called his name**
UST and he named him

Alternate translation: [whom he named]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Noah**
UST Noah which means "rest

If you include the meaning of Noah's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches what Lamech says about him in the following quote so that it is clear why he was given that name.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **saying**
UST because he said

What Lamech says next is the reason why he named his son Noah. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [He named him that because he had said about him]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **This {one} will comfort us**
UST This {son} will give us rest

Alternate translation: [This son will relieve us] or [This son will give us relief]

ULT **from our labors and from the toil of our hands**
UST from the difficult work that we have to do

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize how difficult the work was. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [from the difficult labor and work we have to do with our hands] or [from the agonizing work that we have to do]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **because of the ground which Yahweh has cursed**
UST because Yahweh has cursed the ground

Alternate translation: [as we farm the ground that Yahweh has cursed]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	and he named him
Noah	Noah
Yahweh	Yahweh
cursed	cursed

Genesis 5:30

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Noah, Lamech lived 595 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Noah's birth, Lamech lived another 595 years. He also had other sons as well as daughters.*

ULT **Then after he fathered Noah, Lamech lived**
UST After Noah's birth, Lamech lived

Consider again how you translated verses in this chapter that are similar in structure to this verse; see verses 7, 10, 13, 16, 19, 26, 30, and part of verses 4 and 22. Alternate translation: [After he fathered Noah, he lived] or [After Noah was born, Lamech lived]

ULT **595 years**
UST another 595 years

Alternate translation: [595 more years]

ULT **and he fathered**
UST He {also} had

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Lamech also had] or [He was also the father of]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah's
Lamech	Lamech
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:31

ULT	UST
So all the days of Lamech were 777 years, and he died.	*So Lamech lived a total of 777 years, and then he died.*

> ULT **and he died**
> UST and then he died

Alternate translation: [before he died]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	So … lived a total of
Lamech	Lamech
years	years
years	years

Genesis 5:32

ULT	UST
And Noah was a son of 500 years, then Noah fathered Shem, Ham, and Japheth.	*After Noah was 500 years old, he had sons whose names were Shem, Ham, and Japheth.*

ULT **And Noah was a son of 500 years**
UST After Noah was 500 years old

Here, **a son of 500 years** is a common expression that means "was 500 years old." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And Noah saw his 500th year] or [Noah turned 500 years old]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **then Noah fathered Shem, Ham, and Japheth**
UST he had {sons whose names were} Shem, Ham, and Japheth

Noah's sons were not triplets, but were born in different years after Noah was 500 years old. The way you translate this verse should allow for that meaning.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **then Noah fathered**
UST he had

Consider again how you translated **fathered** in this chapter; see verses 4, 6–7, 9–10, 12–13, 15–16, 18–19, 25–26, 28, 30, 32. Alternate translation: [he fathered]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
years	years
Noah	נֹחַ
Shem	Shem
Ham	Ham
Japheth	Japheth

Genesis 6

Genesis 6:1

ULT	UST
And it happened when mankind began to multiply on the surface of the earth and daughters were born to them,	*Now it happened that people began to multiply in number all over the earth, and they were having daughters.*

ULT **And it happened**
UST Now it happened

The author is using **And it happened** to describe something that was ongoing. This provides the background for other events he will describe that began to happen during this time. Connect this clause to the story in a way that makes it clear in your language that this clause is describing something that was ongoing in the background. The events in Genesis 6:1–2 started happening long before the events in 5:32, so the way your translation begins this verse should allow for that meaning and not begin with a sequence word like “Then.”
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **when**
UST that

Alternate translation: [that as]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **mankind**
UST people

See how you translated **mankind** in Genesis 5:1–2. Alternate translation: [human beings]

ULT **began to multiply**
UST began to multiply in number

Alternate translation: [began to increase in number] or [began to be more numerous]

ULT **on the surface of the earth**
UST all over the earth

Alternate translation: [throughout the world]

ULT **and daughters were born to them**
UST and they were having daughters

Alternate translation: [and they were having many daughters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
multiply	multiply
were born	they were having

Genesis 6:2

ULT	UST
then the sons of God saw the daughters of mankind, that they were beautiful, so they took wives for themselves from any of them that they chose.	*When those girls grew up, the sons of God saw that they were beautiful, so they chose any of them that they wanted and married them.*

ULT **then the sons of God saw**
UST When those girls grew up, the sons of God saw

Alternate translation: [Then those girls grew up, and the sons of God saw]

ULT **then … saw the daughters of mankind, that they {were} beautiful**
UST When those girls grew up … saw that they {were} beautiful

Alternate translation: [saw that the daughters of human beings were beautiful] or [saw that those young women were beautiful] or [saw that they were very beautiful]

ULT **so they took wives for themselves from any {of them} that they chose**
UST so they chose any {of them} that they wanted and married them

Alternate translation: [so they married any of them that they wanted to marry]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the sons of	the sons of
God	God
were beautiful	that they {were} beautiful

Genesis 6:3

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said, "My Spirit will not strive with mankind forever, because they are indeed flesh. Therefore their days will be 120 years."	*Then Yahweh said to himself, "My Spirit will not put up with human beings forever, because they are very corrupt. I will give them 120 years to repent."*

ULT **Then Yahweh said**
UST Then Yahweh said to himself

The implication is that Yahweh is speaking to himself. Only make implied information explicit in your translation if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning or if your language's grammar requires it so that your translation is easier to read and understand. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [So Yahweh said to himself]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **My Spirit**
UST My Spirit

The words **My Spirit** could mean: (1) God is speaking of his spirit or saying "I," which is a way of God referring to himself (Genesis 1:2 is similar) (2) that God is referring to his breath that gives life (as in Genesis 2:71). If the text is not translated literally, the literal text should be put in a footnote.

ULT **will not strive with mankind forever**
UST will not put up with human beings forever

The phrase **will not strive with mankind forever** could mean: (1) that God will not contend with human beings forever. Alternate translation: [will not put up with human beings forever]; or (2) that God will not remain with human beings forever. Alternate translation: [will not dwell among humans forever] The interpretation that is not used in your translation could be put in a footnote.

ULT **because they {are} indeed flesh**
UST because they {are} very corrupt

The word **flesh** is used here as a common expression that means human beings are "mortal" (that is, their bodies will die) and that they are "sinful." The two meanings are interrelated since it is because of sin that their bodies die. In this context, the focus is on their corrupt behavior, which is the reason God will send a flood. Alternate translation: [because they are very sinful] or [because they are only sinful mortals]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Therefore their days will be 120 years**
UST I will give them 120 years to repent

This sentence could mean: (1) that mankind will have 120 years to repent. Alternate translation: [I will give them 120 years to repent]; or (2) that 120 years will be the maximum lifespan. Alternate translation: [From now on, they will have no longer than 120 years.] The first interpretation seems to best fit the context here of God announcing his plan to judge mankind for their sin (verse 7). This would mean that Noah was 480 years old when God said this (about 20 years before he started having sons; Genesis 5:32), since the flood came when he was 600 years old (Genesis 7:6); you could put some of that information in a footnote. The second interpretation does not fit with the fact that after God said this, many people lived much longer than 120 years, so it does not seem likely that length of life was his meaning here.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Spirit	Spirit
forever	forever
days	I will give them
years	years

Genesis 6:4

ULT	UST
The Nephils were on the earth in those days and also after that, when the sons of God went to the daughters of mankind, and they bore children for them. They were the mighty ones who were from long ago, the men of renown.	*People called the Nephils lived on the earth during that time and also later on. That happened when the sons of God had relations with the daughters of human beings, and those women gave birth to children for them. Their children were the Nephils, who were the famous mighty men who lived long ago.*

ULT **The Nephils**
UST People called the Nephils

Most translations transliterate (borrow or copy) the Hebrew word **Nephils** here, treating it as a name. The word means "fallen ones" and probably refers to their fallen (sinful) spiritual state. The Nephils were the descendants of the sons of God and the daughters of mankind. The only other time in the Bible that the Nephils are mentioned is centuries later in Numbers 13:32–33, where they are identified as evil giants. Based on that, some translations translate "the Nephils" as "giants" here in Genesis 6:4. Alternate translation: [Giants called the Nephils] or [Giants]
Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

ULT **in those days and also after that**
UST during that time and also later on

It may be more natural to put this time phrase first in verse 4 and say, "During that time there were Nephils living on the earth, when …"
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **when**
UST That happened when

Alternate translation: [That was when]

ULT **the sons of God**
UST the sons of God

Be consistent here with how you translated this phrase in verse 6:2, and see the important note about that there. Alternate translation: [angels] or [supernatural beings]

ULT **went to**
UST had relations with

Translate this common expression in a way that is polite and will not shame or embarrass people when this verse is read aloud in public. See how you translated a similar expression **knew** in Genesis 4:1, 4:17 and 4:25. Alternate translation: [slept with] or [had sexual relations with]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **the daughters of mankind**
UST the daughters of human beings

See how you translated this phrase in verse 6:2. Alternate translation: [human women]

ULT **They were**
UST Their children were the Nephils, who were

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to here. Alternate translation: [Those children grew up and were the Nephils, who were]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the mighty ones**
UST the … mighty men

Alternate translation: [the powerful men] or [heroes]

ULT **who {were} from long ago**
UST who lived long ago

Alternate translation: [who lived a long time ago] or [who lived many years ago]

ULT **the men of renown**
UST famous

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, “They were the mighty men of renown who were from long ago.” or “They were the famous mighty men who lived a long time ago.” Alternate translation: [who were famous men]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nephils	Nephils
earth	earth
days	during … time
the sons of	the sons of
God	God
bore	and those women gave birth to children
mighty	mighty

Genesis 6:5

ULT	UST
And Yahweh saw that the wickedness of mankind was great on the earth, and that every inclination of the thoughts of their hearts was only evil all day long.	*Yahweh saw that the people on the earth had become very evil, and that everything they thought about and desired was completely evil all the time.*

ULT **And Yahweh saw**
UST Yahweh saw

The verb **saw** is used here as a common expression. Consider whether your language has a similar common expression that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [Yahweh knew] or [Yahweh was aware]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and that every inclination of the thoughts of their hearts**
UST and that everything they thought about and desired

In Hebrew culture the heart is considered the center of thoughts and desires. Consider whether your language has a similar common expression. Alternate translation: [and that every desire they had in their minds] or [and that everything they thought about and wanted]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **all day long**
UST all the time

Alternate translation: [constantly]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
wickedness	evil
earth	earth
evil	evil
day	the time

Genesis 6:6

ULT	UST
So Yahweh was sorry that he had made mankind on the earth, and he was grieved in his heart.	*As a result, he regretted that he had made them to live on the earth, and he felt very sad.*

ULT **that he had made mankind**
UST that he had made them

See how you translated **mankind** in verses 6:1. 3, and 5, and consider whether or not it is best to use a pronoun (**them**) here in your language. Alternate translation: [that he had created them] or [that he had created human beings]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and he was grieved in his heart**
UST and he felt very sad

Consider whether your language has a similar common expression that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [and his heart was filled with pain] or [and he was very sad]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	As a result, he regretted
earth	earth

Genesis 6:7

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said, "I will wipe away mankind whom I created off the surface of the ground, both mankind and animals, and crawling creatures and the birds of the sky, because I am sorry that I made them."	*So he said to himself, "I will completely destroy from the earth all the people whom I created. In fact, I will destroy not only all the people, but also all the animals, including the creatures that crawl on the ground and the birds that fly in the sky, because I regret that I ever made them."*

ULT **Then Yahweh said**
UST So he said to himself

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Also make sure that the way you begin verse 7 fits well with the way you begin verse 6. The implication is that Yahweh is speaking to himself. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Then he said to himself]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **I will wipe away**
UST I will completely destroy

Consider whether your language has a similar common expression that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [I will wash away] or [I will blot out]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **mankind whom I created off the surface of the ground**
UST from the earth {all} the people whom I created

Alternate translation: [all the human beings whom I created, from the surface of the earth]

ULT **both mankind and animals**
UST In fact, {I will destroy} {not only} {all} the people, but also {all} the animals

Alternate translation: [In fact, I will destroy not just all the people, but also all the animals]

ULT **and crawling creatures**
UST including the creatures that crawl on the ground

Alternate translation: [and the creatures that move on the ground]

ULT **and the birds of the sky**
UST and the birds {that fly} in the sky

It might seem that the expression **birds of the sky** contains extra information that would be unnatural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Alternate translation: [and all the birds]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **because I am sorry**
UST because I regret

See how you translated “was sorry” or “regretted” in verse 6:6. Alternate translation: [because I am sad]

ULT **that I made them**
UST that I {ever} made them

Alternate translation: [that I ever created them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	יְהוָֹה
I will wipe away	I will completely destroy
created	created
animals	animals
sky	sky

Genesis 6:8

ULT	UST
But Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh.	*But Yahweh was pleased with Noah.*

ULT **But Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh**
UST But Yahweh was pleased with Noah

The common expression **found favor** means “pleased someone.” And the common expression **in the eyes of** refers to someone’s opinion about something or someone. Consider whether your language has similar expressions that work well here or whether it is better to translate this sentence without a common expression. Alternate translation: [But Noah pleased God] or [However, Yahweh was pleased with Noah]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
favor	But Yahweh was pleased with Noah
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 6:9

ULT	UST
These are the generations of Noah: He was a righteous man. He was without blemish in his generation. Noah walked with God.	*Here is more of the history about Noah and his descendants: Noah was a man who did what was right. Out of all the people living at that time, he was the only one whom God considered blameless, and he lived in a close relationship with God.*

ULT **These {are} the generations of Noah**
UST Here is {more of} the history about Noah and his descendants

Some of Noah's history has already been given in Genesis 5:29, 32, and 6:8. What follows tells more about him. Alternate translation: [This is more of the record of Noah and his family:] or [What follows tells more about Noah and his family:]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **He was**
UST Noah was

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a noun or a pronoun here to refer to Noah.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **a righteous man**
UST a man who did what was right

Alternate translation: [a good man]

ULT **He was without blemish in his generation**
UST Out of all the people living at that time, he was the only one {whom God considered} blameless

This sentence could mean: (1) Among his contemporaries, he alone was faultless in God's eyes. Alternate translation: [Of all the people living at that time, Noah was the only one whom God considered blameless]; or (2) He had a spotless reputation among his contemporaries. The phrase **without blemish** is often used in the Bible to describe animals that have no defects. Here it is used as a common expression meaning that Noah was blameless or faultless in an ethical or moral sense or that he had good integrity, but it does not mean that he was totally sinless. Consider whether your language has a similar common expression that would work well here.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Noah walked with God**
UST and he lived in a close relationship with God

See how you translated this common expression in 5:22, 24. Alternate translation: [and he walked closely with God] or [and he lived in a faithful relationship with God]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	more of the history about Noah and his descendants
Noah	Noah
He was	Noah
righteous	who did what was right
without blemish	he was the only one {whom God considered} blameless
generation	Out of all the people living at that time
Noah	he lived in a close relationship
God	God

Genesis 6:10

ULT	UST
And Noah fathered three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth.	*Eventually Noah had his three sons, whose names were Shem, Ham, and Japheth.*

ULT **And Noah fathered**
UST Eventually Noah had

The fact that Noah fathered these three sons was already mentioned in Genesis 5:32. Make sure that the way you begin this verse in your translation does not sound like he fathered these sons a second time. Alternate translation: [Eventually he had] or [And as mentioned before, he had]

ULT **three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth**
UST his three sons, {whose names were} Shem, Ham, and Japheth

Alternate translation: [three sons, namely Shem, Ham, and Japheth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
Shem	Shem
Ham	Ham
Japheth	Japheth

Genesis 6:11

ULT	UST
Now the earth was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence.	*Now the people on the earth had become wicked according to God's standards, and all over the earth they were doing violent things.*

ULT **Now the earth was corrupt**
UST Now {the people on} the earth had become wicked

The phrase **the earth** is often used in the Bible to refer to all the people on the earth. Consider whether your language can do the same thing, or whether it is necessary to make that implied information explicit. Alternate translation: [Now the people of the earth had become corrupt]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and the earth was filled {with} violence**
UST and all over the earth they were doing violent things

The author uses two phrases which mean basically the same thing in order to emphasize how evil the people on the earth had become. The two clauses are different enough from each other that, if possible, it is best to keep both of them in your translation. Also be consistent with how you translated **the earth** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [and they had filled the earth with their destructive brutality] or [and all over the earth they were forcefully doing harm]
Support Reference: Parallelism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
corrupt	Now … had become wicked
God	God's
earth	earth

Genesis 6:12

ULT	UST
And God saw the earth, and behold, it was corrupted, because all flesh on the earth had corrupted its way.	*God saw how wicked everyone on the earth had become, because all the people on the earth were continually behaving in evil ways.*

ULT **And God saw**
UST God saw

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin this sentence with a conjunction.

ULT **the earth, and behold, it was corrupted**
UST how wicked {everyone on} the earth had become

See how you translated **corrupt** and **the earth** in verse 6:11. Alternate translation: [that everyone on the earth was very wicked] or [how dishonest everyone on the earth had become]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **because all flesh on the earth**
UST because all the people on the earth

The phrase **all flesh** refers here to all people and probably implies that people are mortal (verse 3). Alternate translation: [because everyone living on earth]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **had corrupted its way**
UST were {continually} behaving in evil ways

Alternate translation: [were living wicked lives] or [were continually doing wicked things]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
earth	earth
corrupted	how wicked {everyone on} the earth had become
earth	earth
corrupted	were {continually} behaving in evil

Genesis 6:13

ULT	UST
So God said to Noah, "The end of all flesh has come before me, because the earth is filled with violence because of them. So behold, I am destroying them with the earth.	*So he said to Noah, "I am going to destroy all people, because all over the earth they are doing violent things. In fact, I am going to destroy them and everything else on the earth too.*

ULT **So God said to Noah**
UST So he said to Noah

Alternate translation: [Then God said to Noah]

ULT **The end of all flesh has come before me**
UST I am going to destroy all people

Be consistent here with how you translated **flesh** in verse 12. Alternate translation: [I have decided to put an end to all human beings] or [I am going to destroy all mortals]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **because the earth is filled {with} violence because of them**
UST because all over the earth they are doing violent things

See how you translated **violence** in verse 6:11. Alternate translation: [because they have filled the earth with their brutality] or [because all over the earth they are doing harmful things]

ULT **So behold, I**
UST In fact, I

This phrase draws extra attention to what God says next. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Now listen]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **am destroying them**
UST am going to destroy them

Alternate translation: [I plan to destroy them] or [I will destroy them]

ULT **with the earth**
UST and {everything else on} the earth too

This phrase includes everything on the earth, not just the people. Alternate translation: [as well as everything else on the earth]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	אֱלֹהִים
Noah	Noah
earth	earth
destroying	destroy
earth	earth

Genesis 6:14

ULT	UST
Make an ark for yourself out of gopher wood. Make the ark with rooms, and cover it inside and outside with a covering.	*Therefore you must build a very large boat for yourself and your family out of the best wood for building boats. Build rooms inside the boat, and seal it inside and outside with tar to keep water out.*

ULT **Make**
UST Therefore {you must} build

Alternate translation: [Consequently, you must make]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **an ark**
UST a {very} large boat

The term ark is a Latin word that many translations use for the name of the structure that Noah built. The word refers to a chest or box that is closed on all sides, including the top. In this case, the ark was a very large boat that people and many animals lived in for a year. It had no motor, no oars, no sail, and no rudder. If Noah's boat is already well-known as the ark in your language area, you may choose to borrow the word "ark" as the name of this boat. Decide what is best for your translation. Alternate translation: [a very large houseboat]
Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

ULT **out of gopher wood**
UST out of the best wood for building boats

It is not certain what kind of wood this was, so many translations transliterate (copy or borrow) the Hebrew word **gopher**. Some Bible scholars think it was cypress wood. Alternate translation: [from cypress wood, which is good for building boats]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **Make the ark {with} rooms**
UST Build rooms inside the boat

Alternate translation: [Build the ark with stalls inside] or [Make rooms inside the ark]

ULT **and cover it inside and outside**
UST and seal it inside and outside … to keep water out

Alternate translation: [and completely coat it inside and outside]

ULT **with a covering**
UST with tar

The Hebrew word **covering** is general and does not specify what kind of waterproofing material is being used. However, many translations are more specific than that here and refer to "pitch" or "tar" or some other material made from tree resin or sap that can seal a boat well and keep it from leaking. Alternate translation: [with pitch to keep water out] or [with pitch to keep the boat from leaking]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ark	a {very} large boat
ark	inside the boat
inside	inside

Genesis 6:15

ULT	UST
And this is how you must make it: the length of the ark must be 300 cubits, its width fifty cubits, and its height thirty cubits.	*You must make the boat like this: It must be 140 meters long, twenty-three meters wide, and fourteen meters high.*

ULT **And this {is} how you must make it**
UST You must make the boat like this

Alternate translation: [Build the ark with these dimensions] or [You must build the ark like this:]

ULT **the length of the ark {must be} 300 cubits, its width fifty cubits, and its height thirty cubits**
UST It {must be} 140 meters long, twenty-three meters wide, and fourteen meters high

A cubit was about half a meter (18 inches) long, which was the distance from a man's elbow to the tip of his middle finger. You can: (1) translate cubits into meters or feet, and put the literal text in a footnote; or (2) keep **cubits** in the main text (so that the numbers 300, 50, and 30 are kept) and put what that equals in meters or feet in a footnote. Alternate translation: [It must be 140 meters long, 23 meters wide, and 14 meters high] or [It must be 450 feet long, 75 feet wide, and 45 feet high]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ark	It must be

Genesis 6:16

ULT	UST
Make a window for the ark and finish it to within one cubit from the top. And put the door of the ark in its side. Make a lower, a second, and a third deck.	*Make a half-meter high opening between the top of the walls of the ark and its roof all the way around, to let light and air in. Put a door in the side of the boat, and build three levels on the inside.*

ULT **Make a window for the ark and finish it to within one cubit from the top**

UST Make a half-meter high opening between the top of the walls of the ark and its roof {all the way around}, to let light and air in

The meaning of the Hebrew text is not completely certain here, but God was probably telling Noah to make a one-cubit high window or opening at the top of the outside walls of the ark, just below the roof, all the way around the ark, to let light and air into the ark. See the note about **cubit** in verse 6:15. Alternate translation: [Build a skylight for the boat by finishing the sides of the ark to within one cubit below the top of the ark] or [Build a half-meter high window between the top of the sides of the ark and its roof all the way around, to let light and air in]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT **And put the door of the ark in its side**

UST Put a door in the side of the boat

Some translations begin this sentence without a conjunction (**And** or "Also"). Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Also put a door in the side of the ark] or [Put a door for the ark in its side]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **Make a lower, a second, and a third deck**

UST and build three levels on the inside

Alternate translation: [Build a lower deck, a middle deck, and an upper deck on the inside] or [and build a lower, middle, and upper story on the inside] or [and make three complete floors on the inside]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ark	ark
ark	in the side of the boat

Genesis 6:17

ULT	UST
And I, behold, I am bringing floodwaters on the earth to destroy all flesh that has the breath of life in it from under the heavens. Everything that is on the earth will expire!	*Listen carefully to me: I am going to bring a flood over the whole earth, which will destroy all the creatures under the sky that breathe air. As a result, every living thing that is on land will die!*

ULT **And I, behold, I**
UST Listen {carefully} to me: I

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **I** is emphatic, both by its form and by its position at the beginning of the sentence. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: [Behold, I myself]
Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT **am bringing floodwaters on the earth**
UST am going to bring a flood over the {whole} earth

Alternate translation: [am going to send an excessive water on the whole earth] or [am going to flood the entire earth with water]

ULT **to destroy**
UST which will destroy

See how you translated **destroy** in verse 6:13. Alternate translation: [in order to destroy]

ULT **all flesh**
UST all the creatures

This phrase is general here and includes people and animals, so you may need to translate the phrase differently here from what you did earlier in verses 12–13 (where the focus seems to be on people). Alternate translation: [all the beings] or [every creature]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **that {has} the breath of life in it**
UST that breathe air

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 1:30. Alternate translation: [that breathes air]

ULT **from under the heavens**
UST under the sky

For some languages it may be clearer to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, “to destroy every living thing under the heavens that has the breath of life in it.” Alternate translation: [from under the sky]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Everything that {is} on the earth**
UST As a result, every {living} thing that {is} on land

Alternate translation: [So, every living being that lives on land]

> ULT **will expire**
> UST will die

The verb **expire** (which could also be translated as “exhale” or “breathe out”) is used here as a common expression that means “die.” Consider whether your language has a similar or different expressions that would work well here. Alternate translation: [will breathe out its last breath!] or [will perish!]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
floodwaters	flood
earth	earth
destroy	destroy
breath	breathe air
heavens	sky
earth	land

Genesis 6:18

ULT	UST
But I will establish my covenant with you, so you must go into the ark, you and your sons and your wife and the wives of your sons with you.	*But I will make a special agreement between me and you, so you must get on board the boat, and take your wife, your sons, and your sons' wives with you.*

ULT **But I will establish**
UST But I will make

The word **establish** means to deliberately and formally put something into effect. Alternate translation: [However, I will make] or [However, I will set up]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **so you must go into the ark**
UST so you must get on board the boat

Alternate translation: [so you must enter the ark]

ULT **you and your sons and your wife and the wives of your sons with you**
UST and {take} your wife, your sons, and your sons' wives with you

Alternate translation: [and take with you your wife, your sons, and their wives]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	a {special} agreement between me and you
ark	the boat

Genesis 6:19

ULT	UST
And from every living creature, from all flesh, you must bring two from each kind into the ark to keep alive with you. They must be male and female.	*You must also take into the boat two of every kind of animal, so that they stay alive with you. Each pair must include one male and one female.*

ULT **And from every living {creature}, from all flesh, you must bring two from each {kind} into the ark**

UST You must also take into the boat two of every {kind of} animal

Here, **living creature** refers to any kind of animal that lives and breathes. Alternate translation: [Also, from every kind of thing that lives, yes, from every kind of animal, you must take pairs of each kind into the ark] or [You must also bring into the ark pairs of every kind of living thing, that is, every kind of animal]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And from every living {creature}, from all flesh**

UST also … of every {kind of} animal

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition, and it would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. It may be clearer in your language to connect the phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: [Also, from every kind of thing that lives, yes, from every kind of animal]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **to keep alive with you**

UST so that they stay alive with you

Alternate translation: [in order to keep them alive with you]

ULT **They must be male and female**

UST Each pair must include {one} male and {one} female

Alternate translation: [They must be pairs with one male and one female each] or [Make sure that each pair has one male and one female]

Genesis 6:20

ULT	UST
From the birds according to their kinds, and from the animals according to their kinds, from every moving creature of the ground according to its kind, two from every kind will come to you to keep alive.	*Pairs of every kind of bird and every kind of animal, including every kind of creature that moves on the ground, will come to you so that you keep them alive in the boat.*

ULT **From the birds according to their kinds**
UST kind of bird

Alternate translation: [Males and females of every type of bird]

ULT **and from the animals according to their kinds**
UST and every kind of animal

Alternate translation: [and of every kind of animal]

ULT **from every moving creature of the ground according to its kind**
UST including every kind of creature that moves on the ground

This phrase emphasizes that the birds and animals mentioned in the first half of this verse lived on land. Alternate translation: [including every kind of creature that lives on the land]

ULT **two from every {kind} will come to you**
UST Pairs of every … will come to you

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "Two of every kind of bird and every kind of animal, including every kind of creature that moves on the ground, will come to you …" Alternate translation: [two of every kind of animal will come to you] or [two of each kind of animal will come to you]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **to keep alive**
UST so that you keep them alive in the boat

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these clauses, since the second clause explains the purpose for the action that the previous clause describes. Alternate translation: [to keep them alive on the ark] or [so that you keep them alive in the ark]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
animals	animal

Genesis 6:21

ULT	UST
And you must take with you some of every food that is eaten and store it with you, and it will be food for you and for them.”	*You must also gather all the different kinds of food that people and animals eat and store it on the boat with you, so that there will be enough food for you and your family and for all the animals.”*

ULT **And you**
UST You

Although the pronoun **you** is singular in the Hebrew text in verse 21, it could be translated as plural, since God’s instructions apply to Noah and his family, not just Noah. Or you could make his family explicit. Alternate translation: [You and your family]
Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

ULT **must take with you**
UST must {also} gather

Alternate translation: [must also gather and take]

ULT **some of every food**
UST all the different kinds of food

Alternate translation: [all kinds of food]

ULT **that is eaten**
UST that people and animals eat

Alternate translation: [that is eaten by people and animals] or [that you and all the animals will need]

ULT **and store it with you**
UST and store it {on the boat} with you

Alternate translation: [and put it on the ark with you]

ULT **and it will be food**
UST so that there will be {enough} food

Alternate translation: [This will be the food supply]

ULT **for you**
UST for you and your family

Consider again how you translated the pronoun **you** in this verse.
Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

Genesis 6:22

ULT	UST
And Noah did that; according to all that God had commanded him, so he did.	*So, that is what Noah did; he did everything exactly as God had commanded him to do.*

ULT **And Noah did that**
UST So, {that is what} Noah did

Some translations begin verse 22 without a conjunction. Alternate translation: [Noah did all of that]

ULT **according to all that God had commanded him, so he did**
UST he did everything exactly as God had commanded him to do

Alternate translation: [he did all the things just as God had told him to do]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
God	God

Genesis 7

Genesis 7:1

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said to Noah, "Go into the ark, you and all your household, because I have seen that you are righteous before me in this generation.	*Then after they had finished building the boat, Yahweh commanded Noah, "You and your entire family must go into the boat, because I know that you are the only one among the people living today who is living rightly according to my standards.*

ULT **Then Yahweh said to Noah**
UST Then {after they had finished building the boat,} Yahweh commanded Noah

For some languages it may be necessary to make it explicit that the boat was completed before Yahweh told Noah to enter it. Alternate translation: [Then after they had finished building the ark, Yahweh told Noah] or [After the ark was finished, Yahweh told Noah]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Go into the ark, you and all your household**
UST You and your entire family must go into the boat

See how you translated **ark** in Genesis 6:14–16. Alternate translation: [Board the ark along with your entire family] or [You and your entire family must get into the ark]

ULT **because I have seen**
UST because I know

Alternate translation: [because I have found] or [because I see]

ULT **that you {are} righteous**
UST that you {are} the only one … who is living rightly

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphasized to show that Noah was the only one who was righteous. See how you translated **righteous** in Genesis 6:9. Alternate translation: [that you alone are upright] or [that you are the only one who is living the right way]

ULT **before me**
UST according to my standards

Alternate translation: [in my eyes] or [according to my will]

ULT **in this generation**
UST among the people living today

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse, after "because." Alternate translation: [among the people living today]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Noah	Noah
ark	the boat
your household	your … family
righteous	who is living rightly
generation	among the people living today

Genesis 7:2

ULT	UST
From every clean animal take with you seven pairs, a male and its female, and from every animal that is not clean take two, a male and its female,	*Take with you seven male and female pairs of every kind of pure animal, and one male and female pair of every kind of impure animal.*

ULT **From every clean animal**
UST of every {kind of} pure animal

Alternate translation: [From every kind of animal that is acceptable to sacrifice]

ULT **take with you**
UST Take with you

The pronoun **you** is singular in the Hebrew text, but could be translated as a plural to include Noah's family. Alternate translation: [bring with you]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **seven pairs, a male and its female**
UST seven male and female pairs

See how you translated "male and female" in Genesis 6:19.

ULT **and from {every} animal that {is} not clean**
UST and … every kind of impure animal

Alternate translation: [and from every kind of impure animal] or [and from every kind of animal that is not acceptable to sacrifice]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
animal	animal
animal	animal

Genesis 7:3

ULT	UST
also from every bird of the sky take seven pairs, male and female, to keep their offspring alive on the surface of the whole earth,	*Also take seven male and female pairs of every kind of bird that flies in the sky, so that later their offspring will live all over the earth.*

ULT **from {every} bird of the sky**
UST of {every kind of} bird {that flies} in the sky

Alternate translation: [from every type of bird that flies in the sky] or [from every type of bird]

ULT **take seven pairs, male and female**
UST take seven male and female pairs

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 2. Also, for some languages it may be better to put this phrase earlier in the sentence, as in the UST.
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **to keep {their} offspring alive**
UST so that {later} their offspring will live

Alternate translation: [so that later they will have offspring that will live]

ULT **on the surface of the whole earth**
UST all over the earth

Alternate translation: [and spread all over the earth] or [to repopulate the whole earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sky	sky
their offspring	their offspring
earth	earth

Genesis 7:4

ULT	UST
because in seven more days I will cause it to rain on the earth for forty days and forty nights, and I will wipe every living thing that I have made off the surface of the ground."	*You must do that, because seven days from today I will make it rain continuously all over the earth for forty days and nights. In that way, I will completely destroy from the earth every living creature that I have made."*

ULT **because**
UST You must do that, because

The word translated as **because** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [The reason you must do so is that]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **in seven more days**
UST seven days from today

The phrase **seven more days** could be translated as "another week" here and in verse 11. However, it is probably best to keep the number seven in the text in both places, especially since the number seven often signifies perfection or completion in the Bible, perhaps also here. Alternate translation: [seven days from now]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **I will cause it to rain**
UST I will make it rain continuously

Alternate translation: [I will send rain]

ULT **on the earth**
UST all over the earth

Alternate translation: [all over the world]

ULT **for forty days and forty nights**
UST for forty days and nights

This phrase refers to 40 complete 24-hour days.

ULT **and I will wipe**
UST In that way, I will completely destroy

See how you translated this common expression in 6:7. Alternate translation: [in order to blot out] or [That will wash away]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **every living thing that I have made**
UST every living creature that I have made

See how you translated a similar phrase **living creature** in Genesis 6:19. Alternate translation: [all the living things that I have made]

> ULT **off the surface of the ground**
> UST from the earth

It may be clearer to put this phrase earlier in the sentence and say, “in order to completely destroy from the ground every living creature that I have made.” See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 6:7. Alternate translation: [off the surface of the earth] or [off the land]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
earth	earth
days	days
and I will wipe	In that way, I will completely destroy

Genesis 7:5

ULT	UST
Then Noah did all that Yahweh had commanded him.	*Then Noah did everything exactly as Yahweh had commanded him to do.*

ULT **Then Noah did all that**
UST Then Noah did everything {exactly} as

Alternate translation: [So Noah did everything that] or [So Noah did everything just as]

ULT **Yahweh had commanded him**
UST Yahweh had commanded him to do

See how you translated 6:22, which is similar to 7:5. Alternate translation: [Yahweh had told him to do]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 7:6

ULT	UST
Now Noah was a son of 600 years when the floodwaters came on the earth.	*Noah was 600 years old when the flood covered the earth.*

ULT **Now Noah {was} a son of 600 years**
UST Noah was 600 years old

See how you handled large numbers in Genesis 5 and in Genesis 6:3, and see the note about this at Genesis 5:35. Also see how you translated the common expression “son of … years” in Genesis 5:32. Alternate translation: [He was 600 years old]
Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **when the floodwaters came on the earth**
UST when the flood covered the earth

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, “When the flood waters came on the earth, Noah was 600 years old.” Also, see how you translated **floodwaters** in Genesis 6:17. Alternate translation: [when the earth was covered with deep water]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
years	years
earth	earth

Genesis 7:7

ULT	UST
And Noah and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons went with him into the ark from the presence of the waters of the flood.	*That is when he and his wife, and his sons and their wives went together into the boat so that they would not die in the flood.*

ULT And Noah and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons went with him into the ark

UST That is when he and his wife, and his sons and their wives went together into the boat

Noah and his family entered the ark on the same day that the floodwaters started coming (See verses 7:11–13). See how you translated a similar list of people in Genesis 6:18. Alternate translation: [That is when Noah and his wife, and his sons and their wives, went together into the ark]

ULT from the presence of

UST so that they would not die in

Alternate translation: [because of] or [to escape from] or [to keep them safe from]

ULT the waters of the flood

UST the flood

Alternate translation: [the floodwaters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	נֹחַ
flood	flood

Genesis 7:8

ULT	UST
Pairs from the clean animals and from the animals that are not clean and from the birds and everything that moves on the ground	*Also, every kind of pure animal and every kind of impure animal and every kind of bird, including every kind of creature that lives on land,*

ULT **and everything that moves on the ground**
UST including every {kind of creature} that lives on land

Here, **and everything that moves on the ground** could: (1) include every kind of creature that moves on land. Alternate translation: [which includes every kind of animal that lives on land] According to this interpretation, the rest of verse 8 emphasizes that the clean and unclean animals and birds (verses 2–3, 8) were all creatures that lived on land (which are the creatures that the flood affected). (2) refer to every kind of creature that crawls along the ground. According to that interpretation, the rest of verse 8 refers to a fourth category of creatures besides the clean animals, unclean animals, and birds.

ULT **Pairs from the clean animal{s} and from the animal{s} that are not clean**
UST Also, {every kind of} pure animal and {every kind of} impure animal

See how you translated **clean** and "unclean" animals in verse 7:2. Alternate translation: [Also, every kind of clean animal and every kind of unclean animal]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … animals	animal
the animals	animal

Genesis 7:9

ULT	UST
went two by two to Noah into the ark, male and female, just as God had commanded Noah.	*came in pairs to Noah and went into the boat. They were male and female pairs, which was exactly what God had commanded him to take along.*

ULT **went two {by} two to Noah into the ark**
UST came in pairs to Noah {and went} into the boat

Alternate translation: [came to Noah in pairs and went into the ark] or [came in pairs and entered the ark with Noah]

ULT **male and female**
UST They were male and female pairs

Alternate translation: [Each pair had one male and one female]

ULT **just as God had commanded Noah**
UST which was exactly what God had commanded him to take along

Alternate translation: [which was exactly what God had told Noah to bring along]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
ark	the boat
God	God
Noah	him

Genesis 7:10

ULT	UST
And it happened, after the seven days, then the waters of the flood came on the earth.	*So it happened that when the seven days that God had spoken about had passed, water started to flood the earth.*

ULT And it happened
UST So it happened that

This phrase focuses attention on an important event, the beginning of the flood. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: [Now it came about]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT after the seven days
UST when the seven days {that God had spoken about} had passed

This phrase refers to the seven days which God talked about in verse 4. It does not mean seven days after Noah and the animals went into the ark (verses 7–9); they went into the ark on the same day that the flood started (verse 13). Translate the beginning of this sentence in a way that makes that clear. Alternate translation: [after seven days]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT then the waters of the flood came on
UST water started to flood

Alternate translation: [the floodwaters started to come on] or [water started to cover]

ULT the earth
UST the earth

Alternate translation: [the whole earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
flood	flood
earth	earth

Genesis 7:11

ULT	UST
In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month, on that day all the fountains of the great deep burst open, and the windows of the heavens were opened,	*When Noah was 600 years old, on the seventeenth day of the second month of the year, on that very day all the springs in the deep ocean started pouring out water. God also caused the water in the sky to start pouring down, as if he had opened huge floodgates in the sky,*

ULT **In the six hundredth year of Noah's life**
UST When Noah was 600 years old

Compare how you translated Noah's age in verse 7:6.
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **in the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month**
UST on the seventeenth day of the second month of the year

For some languages it is more natural to switch the phrase order and say which day it is before giving the month. Do what is natural in your language.
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **on that day**
UST on that {very} day

Alternate translation: [on that same day] or [that is the day when]

ULT **all the fountains of**
UST all the springs in

Alternate translation: [all the underground water sources]

ULT **burst open**
UST started pouring out water

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier and say, "water started gushing out of all the fountains in the deep ocean," Alternate translation: [split open] or [started gushed forth water]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and the windows of the heavens were opened**
UST God also caused the water in the sky to start pouring down, as if he had opened {huge} floodgates in the sky

The author is speaking of **the heavens** as if they had **windows** that **were opened** to describe the beginning of a very heavy rainfall; it does not refer to actual windows. Alternate translation: [and all the windows in the sky were opened by God] or [God also caused the water in the heavens to start coming down, as if he had opened huge faucets in the heavens]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
year	years
Noah	Noah
month	month
day	day
month	on the seventeenth day of
day	day
fountains	springs
heavens	sky

Genesis 7:12

ULT	UST
so that the rain fell on the earth forty days and forty nights.	*so that it rained continuously all over the earth for forty days and nights.*

ULT **so that the rain fell**
UST so that it rained continuously

Alternate translation: [so that heavy rain poured continuously]

ULT **on the earth**
UST all over the earth

Alternate translation: [all over the world]

ULT **forty days and forty nights**
UST for forty days and nights

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7:4.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
days	days

Genesis 7:13

ULT	UST
On that same day Noah and Shem and Ham and Japheth, the sons of Noah, and the wife of Noah and the three wives of his sons with them, went into the ark,	*So it was that on the same day that the flood started, Noah and his sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, along with his wife and his sons' three wives all entered the boat.*

ULT **On that same day**
UST So it was that on the same day that the flood started

This is the same day that is mentioned in verse 11, when the flood started. Verses 13–16 repeat what happened, in order to emphasize it. Make sure that a translation does not sound like this is the second (or third) time that Noah and his family and the animals entered the ark. Alternate translation: [So it was that on the very same day that the rain started]

ULT **Noah and Shem and Ham and Japheth, the sons of Noah, and the wife of Noah and the three wives of his sons with them**
UST Noah and his sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, along with his wife and his sons' three wives

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 7:7. Alternate translation: [Noah and his wife and their sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and their three wives all]

ULT **went into the ark**
UST all entered the boat

Alternate translation: [boarded the ark]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
Noah	Noah
Shem	Shem
Ham	Ham
Japheth	Japheth
Noah	his sons
Noah	his wife
ark	the boat

Genesis 7:14

ULT	UST
they and every living thing according to its kind, and every livestock according to its kind, and every moving creature moving on the earth according to its kind, and every bird according to its kind, every bird of every wing.	*They had with them every kind of living creature, including every kind of livestock and every other kind of creature that lives on the land, and every kind of bird and everything else that flies.*

ULT **they and every**
UST They had with them every

Alternate translation: [They took with them every]

ULT **and every livestock according to its kind**
UST including every kind of livestock

Alternate translation: [every kind of tame animal]

ULT **and every moving creature moving on the earth according to its kind**
UST and every {other} kind of creature that lives on the land

This clause could refer to: (1) every other kind of animal that lives on the earth, which seems to fit this context best; (2) every kind of creature that crawls on the ground. Alternate translation: [and every kind of creature that crawls on the ground]

ULT **and every bird according to its kind, every bird of every wing**
UST and every kind of bird {and} everything {else} that flies

This phrase probably refers not only to birds, but also to other creatures that have wings and fly, such as bats and insects. Alternate translation: [and every kind of bird and everything else that has wings] or [and every kind of bird and every other kind of creature that flies]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
livestock	livestock
earth	land

Genesis 7:15

ULT	UST
So they went to Noah into the ark, two by two from all flesh which has in it the breath of life.	*Pairs of every kind of living thing that breathes air came to Noah and went into the boat.*

ULT **So they went to Noah into the ark**
UST came to Noah {and went} into the boat

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 7:9. Alternate translation: [They came to Noah and came into the ark] or [They entered the ark with Noah]

ULT **two {by} two from all flesh**
UST Pairs of every {kind of} living thing

The word **flesh** refers here to any kind of creature or animal. Alternate translation: [pairs of every kind of animal] or [pairs of every kind of living thing]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **which {has} in it the breath of life**
UST that breathes air

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 6:17. For some languages it may be better to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, “Pairs of every kind of living thing that breathes air came to Noah and went into the boat.”
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
ark	the boat
breath	breathes

Genesis 7:16

ULT	UST
And those that went in were male and female from all flesh; they went in just as God had commanded him. Then Yahweh shut him in.	*The animals that went into the boat were male and female pairs from every kind of living thing, which was exactly what God had commanded Noah to take along. Then after they were all inside, Yahweh closed the door of the boat behind them.*

ULT **And those that went in**

UST The animals that went into the boat

Consider whether it is better in your language to use **went** or "came" here. Also consider again how you translated **went** in verses 7, 9, 13, and 15. Alternate translation: [The pairs that came into the ark] or [Those animals]

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **from all flesh**

UST from every {kind of} living thing

See how you translated **all flesh** in verse 7:15. Alternate translation: [of every kind of creature] or [of every kind of living thing]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **they went in just as God had commanded him**

UST which was exactly what God had commanded Noah to take along

See how you translated "just as God commanded him" in verse 7:9. Alternate translation: [which was exactly what God had commanded him to bring along]

ULT **Then Yahweh shut him in**

UST Then {after they were all inside,} Yahweh closed the door {of the boat} behind them

Alternate translation: [After that, Yahweh shut them in the ark] or [Then after they were all inside, Yahweh shut the door of the ark behind him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 7:17

ULT	UST
Then the flood came on the earth for forty days, and the waters increased and lifted the ark so that it rose up off the earth.	*For forty days and forty nights the flood kept getting deeper and deeper all over the earth, and as the water rose, it lifted up the boat so that it floated on the water above the ground.*

ULT **Then the flood came**
UST the flood kept getting deeper and deeper

Some translations begin this sentence without a conjunction. Do what is natural in your language. Also, notice that verses 7:17–20 talk about the forty days and nights that the flood kept getting deeper and deeper. Alternate translation: [After that the floodwaters kept getting deeper and deeper] or [The water kept coming]
Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **for forty days**
UST For forty days and forty nights

For some languages it may be more natural to put this time phrase first in this sentence and say, "For forty days and forty nights the flood kept getting deeper and deeper all over the earth," Also see how you translated this phrase in verse 7:12. Alternate translation: [for 40 days and 40 nights]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and the waters increased**
UST and as the water rose

Alternate translation: [and as the water level rose] or [As the water got deeper and deeper]

ULT **and lifted the ark so that it rose up off the earth**
UST it lifted up the boat so that it floated {on the water} above the ground

Alternate translation: [it lifted up the ark so that it floated on the water high above the earth] or [it made the ark rise up off the ground and float]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flood	flood
earth	earth
days	days
and … increased	and as … rose
ark	the boat
earth	the ground

Genesis 7:18

ULT	UST
And the waters rose and increased greatly on the earth, and the ark went on the surface of the waters.	*So the floodwaters continued to rise and get much deeper all over the earth, while the boat floated safely on the water.*

ULT **And the waters rose**
UST So the floodwaters continued to rise

Verse 18 repeats some of verse 17 to emphasize what happened. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [So the floodwaters continued to rise and get much higher] or [Yes, the water continued …] or [The water continued …]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **on the earth**
UST all over the earth

Alternate translation: [all over the world]

ULT **and the ark went**
UST while the boat floated safely

Alternate translation: [but the ark floated safely] or [so that the ark moved about]

ULT **on the surface of the waters**
UST on the water

Alternate translation: [on the surface of the water] or [on top of the water]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and increased	and get … deeper
earth	earth
ark	the boat

Genesis 7:19

ULT	UST
And the waters rose very greatly on the earth, so that all the high mountains that were under the entire heavens were covered.	*Eventually the water became so deep on the earth that even all the highest mountains everywhere under the sky were under water.*

ULT **And the waters rose very greatly on the earth**
UST Eventually the water became so deep on the earth

Alternate translation: [At last, the waters became very deep over the world, so that] or [Eventually the water became so deep on the world that]

ULT **so that … were covered**
UST that … were under water

For some languages it is better to use an active form of the verb here and say, “Eventually the water became so deep on the earth that it even covered all the highest mountains under the entire sky.” Alternate translation: [were covered by water] or [were submerged in water]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
heavens	sky

Genesis 7:20

ULT	UST
The waters rose fifteen cubits above them, so that the mountains were covered.	*In fact, the water rose at least seven meters above the tops of the highest mountains, so that they were completely under water.*

ULT **The waters rose fifteen cubits above them**

UST In fact, the water rose {at least} seven meters above {the tops of} the {highest} mountains

See how you translated **cubits** in Genesis 6:15–16. Alternate translation: [In fact, the highest mountain tops were covered by at least twenty-two feet of water]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT **so that the mountains were covered**

UST so that they were {completely} under water

See how you translated **were covered** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [so that they were completely covered with water] or [… completely submerged in water] or [… completely under water]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Genesis 7:21

ULT	UST
Then all flesh that moved on the earth expired, including the birds and the livestock and the living things and all the swarming things swarming on the earth, and all mankind.	*Then all the creatures that lived on land died. That included all the birds, the livestock, and the other living creatures, including every kind of creature that lived in large groups on the earth, as well as all the people.*

ULT all flesh
UST all the creatures

This phrase refers to everything listed in verse 21, including people. See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 6:17. Alternate translation: [Then all the beings] or [Then every creature] or [Then every living thing]

ULT that moved on the earth
UST that lived on land

Alternate translation: [that moved on the ground]

ULT Then … expired
UST Then … died

See how you translated this common expression in Genesis 6:17. Alternate translation: [breathed out its last breath] or [perished]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT including the birds and the livestock
UST That included {all} the birds, the livestock

Alternate translation: [including all the birds, the tame animals]

ULT and the living things
UST and the {other} living creatures

[and the wild animals]

ULT and all the swarming things swarming on the earth
UST including every {kind of} creature that lived in large groups on the earth

Alternate translation: [including every kind of animal that lived in large numbers on the earth]

ULT and all mankind
UST as well as all the people

Alternate translation: [in addition to all the human beings]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	land
livestock	livestock
earth	earth

Genesis 7:22

ULT	UST
Everything that had the breath of the spirit of life in its nostrils, everything that lived on dry land, died.	*Every living creature that breathed air and lived on dry land died.*

ULT Everything that {had} the breath of the spirit of life in its nostrils

UST Every living creature that breathed air

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 7:15. Alternate translation: [Every living thing that breathed air]

ULT everything that {lived} on dry land, died

UST and {lived} on dry land died

Alternate translation: [and was on dry land died]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
spirit	breathed

Genesis 7:23

ULT	UST
So he wiped away every living thing that was on the surface of the ground, including mankind and livestock and crawling creatures and also the birds of the sky. So they were wiped off the earth, and only Noah was left and those who were with him in the ark.	*That is how Yahweh completely destroyed all the living creatures that were on the earth, including all people and livestock and all the other creatures that lived on the land and also the birds that flew in the sky. Yes, he completely destroyed everything that lived on the earth, so that the only ones who were still alive were Noah and his family and the animals that were with them in the boat.*

ULT **So he wiped away**
UST That is how Yahweh completely destroyed

See how you translated this common expression in verse 7:4. Alternate translation: [That is how Yahweh washed away] or [In that way, Yahweh blotted out]

ULT **every living thing**
UST all the living creatures

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7:4. Alternate translation: [every living creature] or [all living things]

ULT **that {was} on the surface of the ground**
UST that {were} on the earth

See how you translated **the surface of the ground** in verse 7:4. Alternate translation: [that was on the surface of the earth] or [that were on the land]

ULT **including mankind**
UST including {all} people

See how you translated **mankind** in verse 7:21. Alternate translation: [including all mankind]

ULT **and livestock and crawling creatures**
UST and livestock and {all the other} creatures that lived on the land

Alternate translation: [and all the livestock and all the other animals that moved on the ground] or [and all the animals, including smaller animals that crawl on the ground]

ULT **and also the birds of the sky**
UST and also the birds {that flew} in the sky

Some languages leave out the phrase **of the sky** because it is not natural.

ULT **So they were wiped off the earth**
UST Yes, he completely destroyed everything {that lived} on the earth

See how you translated "wipe … off" in verse 7:4. Alternate translation: [All of them were completely washed off the earth by God] or [He completely destroyed them all from the earth] or [Yes, God completely destroyed everything that lived on the earth]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and only Noah was left**
UST so that the only ones who were still alive were Noah

Alternate translation: [so that only Noah was left alive, along with] or [so that the only ones who were left alive were Noah and] or [Only Noah survived, along with]

ULT **and {those} who {were} with him in the ark**
UST and his family and the animals that were with them in the boat

Alternate translation: [and the people and the animals that were with him in the ark]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
So he wiped away	That is how Yahweh completely destroyed
livestock	livestock
sky	sky
So they were wiped	Yes, he completely destroyed everything {that lived} on
earth	earth
Noah	Noah
ark	in the boat

Genesis 7:24

ULT	UST
And the waters prevailed over the earth for 150 days.	*Deep water continued to cover the entire world for 150 days.*

ULT **And the waters prevailed over**
UST Deep water continued to cover

Alternate translation: [Deep water continued to flood] or [The floodwaters stayed deep over]

ULT **the earth {for} 150 days**
UST the {entire} world {for} 150 days

See how you handled a large number in verse 7:6. Alternate translation: [the entire earth for 150 days]
Support Reference: Numbers

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	the {entire} world
days	days

Genesis 8

Genesis 8:1

ULT	UST
But God remembered Noah and all the living things and all the livestock that were with him in the ark, and God caused a wind to pass over the earth, and the waters subsided.	*But God never forgot Noah and his family and all the animals, both wild and tame, that were with them in the boat. So he caused a wind to blow over the water that was covering the earth, so that the water started to go down.*

ULT **But God remembered**
UST But God never forgot

The phrase **God remembered** is a common expression in the Bible that often means that God was paying special attention to certain people and was about to do something. Make sure that the way you translate this phrase does not imply that God had forgotten about Noah. Alternate translation: [God kept in mind] or [But God did not forget]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Noah**
UST Noah and his family

Noah is the person on whom the author is focusing here, but Noah's family and all the animals are also included. Consider whether or not you need to make that explicit in your translation.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and all the living thing{s} and**
UST and all the animals, both wild and tame

The phrase **all the living things** could mean: (1) all the creatures (2) all the wild animals. See how you translated "living thing" in Genesis 7:14.

ULT **all the livestock that {were} with him in the ark**
UST the animals, both wild and tame, that {were} with them in the boat

Some translations combine this phrase with the previous phrase and say, "and all the animals, both wild and tame, that were with him in the boat." Alternate translation: [all the farm animals that were with him in the ark]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and God caused a wind to pass over**
UST So he caused a wind to blow over

Alternate translation: [and he sent a wind over] or [So God sent a wind to blow over]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the earth**
UST the water that was covering the earth

Alternate translation: [the water that was over the earth]

ULT **and the waters subsided**
UST so that the water {started to} go down

Notice that the floodwaters did not totally recede until verse 14, so the way you translate this clause should allow for that. Alternate translation: [so that the water started to recede] or [so that the water level started to go down]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Noah	Noah
livestock	animals
ark	in the boat
God	אֱלֹהִים
wind	wind
earth	earth

Genesis 8:2

ULT	UST
And the fountains of the deep and the windows of the heavens were closed, and the rain from the heavens was stopped.	*He also caused the springs in the deep ocean to stop gushing out water, and he caused the water to stop pouring from the sky, so that it stopped raining.*

ULT **And the fountains of the deep and the windows of the heavens were closed**
UST He also caused the springs in the deep {ocean} to stop {gushing out water}, and {he caused} the water to stop pouring

See how you translated some of the same words and phrases in Genesis 7:11. Alternate translation: [He also caused the fountains in the deep ocean to stop gushing out water] or [God also stopped the water from gushing out of springs at the bottom of the ocean]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and the rain from the heavens was stopped**
UST from the sky, so that it stopped raining

Consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or a passive verb here and in the previous clause. Alternate translation: [so that rain stopped falling from the sky] or [and he caused the rain to stop pouring from the sky]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fountains	springs
heavens	and {he caused} the water to stop pouring
heavens	sky

Genesis 8:3

ULT	UST
Then the waters receded steadily from the earth, and at the end of the 150 days the waters had decreased,	*Then the water steadily went down from the surface of the land. After the 150 days had passed, the water had gone down*

ULT Then the waters receded steadily
UST Then the water steadily went down

Alternate translation: [Then the floodwaters gradually went down]

ULT from the earth
UST from {the surface of} the land

Alternate translation: [from the surface of the ground]

ULT at the end of the 150 days
UST After the 150 days had passed

Also make sure it is clear in your translation that the 150 days mentioned here in Genesis 8:3 are the same 150 days mentioned in Genesis 7:24, not two different periods of time. Alternate translation: [so that after the 150 days had passed]

ULT the waters
UST the water

Make sure the way you translate this phrase fits with the way you translated the beginning of the verse. Alternate translation: [the water level] or [it]

ULT and … had decreased
UST had gone down

Alternate translation: [had subsided]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	land
days	days

Genesis 8:4

ULT	UST
so that in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month, the ark rested on the mountains of Ararat.	*so much that on the seventeenth day of the seventh month of the year, the boat came to rest on one of the mountains in the Ararat mountain range.*

ULT **so that … rested**
UST so {much} that … came to rest

Alternate translation: [so low that … lay]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month**
UST on the seventeenth day of the seventh month of the year

See how you translated a similar time phrase in Genesis 7:11.
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **so that … the ark rested**
UST so {much} that … the boat came to rest

Alternate translation: [the ark came to rest] or [the ark landed]

ULT **on the mountains**
UST on {one of} the mountains

The ark landed on one mountain in a mountain range. Alternate translation: [on a mountain]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
day	day
month	on the seventeenth day
ark	the boat
Ararat	Ararat

Genesis 8:5

ULT	UST
And the waters continued to decrease until the tenth month. In the tenth month, on the first of the month, the tops of the mountains could be seen.	*The floodwaters continued to go down until on the first day of the tenth month of the year, the peaks of the surrounding mountains became visible above the water.*

ULT **And the waters**
UST The floodwaters

Alternate translation: [Then the water] or [The water]

ULT **continued to decrease**
UST continued to go down

See how you translated **decreased** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [continued to go away] or [kept subsiding]

ULT **until the tenth month. In the tenth month, on the first of the month**
UST until on the first {day} of the tenth month of the year

See how you translated a similar time phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: [until the tenth month of the year. On the first day of that month]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the tops of the mountains**
UST the peaks of the {surrounding} mountains

Alternate translation: [the mountaintops]

ULT **could be seen**
UST became visible above the water

Alternate translation: [could be seen above the water by Noah] or [appeared above the surface of the water]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
month	month

Genesis 8:6

ULT	UST
And it happened at the end of forty days that Noah opened the window of the ark that he had made,	*After forty more days had passed, Noah opened a window in the boat that he had made,*

ULT **And it happened {at} the end of forty days**
UST After forty {more} days had passed

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **that Noah opened the window**
UST Noah opened a window

It is not clear when Noah made this window. It may refer to the opening around the top of the walls of the ark (Genesis 6:16) or a different window that he made sometime later.

ULT **of the ark that he had made**
UST in the boat that he had made

Alternate translation: [that he had made in the ark]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
Noah	Noah
ark	in the boat

Genesis 8:7

ULT	UST
and he sent out the raven, and it kept flying out and returning until the waters dried up from the earth.	*and he released a raven, which kept flying back and forth until the water had dried up more from the land.*

ULT **and he sent out**
UST and he released

Alternate translation: [and he set free]

ULT **the raven**
UST a raven

A **raven** is a large, black scavenger bird that eats whatever it finds, including dead animals. If the people in your language area are not familiar with ravens, you could make a comparison to a similar bird with which they are familiar and say, “a large black bird like a …” Or you could include a footnote that explains what a raven is. Alternate translation: [a large black bird called a raven]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and it kept flying out and returning**
UST which kept flying back and forth

Alternate translation: [which continued flying back and forth outside the boat] or [but it kept flying around outside the boat]

ULT **until the waters**
UST until the water

Alternate translation: [until the floodwaters]

ULT **dried up from the earth**
UST had dried up {more} from the land

This phrase refers to the ground (as verse 8 confirms), not the entire planet. Alternate translation: [had dried up more from the ground]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	land

Genesis 8:8

ULT	UST
Then he sent out the dove from him to see if the waters had subsided from the surface of the ground.	*Meanwhile Noah also released a dove from the boat to find out if the water had gone down from the land.*

ULT **Then he sent out**
UST Meanwhile Noah {also} released

The events in verse 8 happened while the raven was still flying back and forth (verse 7). Consider what conjunction best communicates that in your language. Alternate translation: [And he also sent out] or [He also released]
Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

ULT **the dove from him**
UST a dove from the boat

Alternate translation: [the small gray bird that coos]

ULT **to see if the waters had subsided**
UST to find out if the water had gone down

Alternate translation: [to find out if the floodwaters had receded]

ULT **from the surface of the ground**
UST from the land

Alternate translation: [from the surface of the land] or [from the ground]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dove	dove

Genesis 8:9

ULT	UST
But the dove did not find a resting place for the sole of its foot, so it returned to him in the ark, for the waters were over the face of all of the earth. And he reached out his hand and took it and brought it to him into the ark.	*But water was still covering the entire earth, so the dove did not find anywhere to land and rest. Then it returned to Noah in the boat, and Noah reached out, caught it, and brought it back into the boat.*

ULT **But the dove did not find**
UST so the dove did not find

Consider what is the best way to refer to the dove at this point in the paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: [But the dove could not find] or [But it was not able to find]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **a resting place for the sole of its foot**
UST anywhere to land and rest

In Hebrew the word **dove** is grammatically a feminine noun (for both male and female doves), so some translations say “her feet … she returned …” here. For languages such as English that do not assign grammatical gender to nouns, it is more accurate to use **its** and **it** here, because it is not known whether this dove was male or female. Alternate translation: [anywhere to perch and rest]

ULT **so it returned**
UST Then it returned

Alternate translation: [So it returned] or [So the dove flew back]

ULT **to him in the ark**
UST to Noah in the boat

Alternate translation: [flew back to him at the ark]

ULT **But the dove did not find a resting place for the sole of its foot, so it returned to him in the ark, for the waters {were} over the face of all of the earth**
UST But water was {still} covering the entire earth, so the dove did not find anywhere to land and rest. Then it returned to Noah in the boat

If it would be more natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases, since the second phrase gives the reason for the result that the first phrase describes. Alternate translation: [But since the waters were over the face of all of the earth, the dove did not find a resting place for the sole of its foot, so it returned to him in the ark]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And he reached out his hand**
UST and Noah reached out

Alternate translation: [So he reached out] or [and he reached out]

> ULT **to him into the ark**
> UST and brought it {back} into the boat

Alternate translation: [back to himself in the ark] or [back into the ark]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dove	dove
ark	the boat
earth	earth
ark	the boat

Genesis 8:10

ULT	UST
Then he waited another seven days and again sent out the dove from the ark.	*Noah waited seven more days, then he released the dove from the boat again.*

ULT **Then he waited**
UST Noah waited

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin this sentence with or without a conjunction. Alternate translation: [He waited]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **and again sent out the dove from the ark**
UST then he released the dove from the boat again

Alternate translation: [then he sent the dove out from the ark another time] or [then he released the dove from the ark again]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
dove	dove
ark	the boat

Genesis 8:11

ULT	UST
Then the dove returned to him at evening time, and behold, there was a freshly picked olive leaf in its mouth. So Noah knew that the waters had subsided from the earth.	*That evening the dove returned to him, and he saw that it had a fresh green olive tree leaf in its beak! That is how Noah realized that the water had gone down further from the land.*

ULT **Then the dove returned to him at evening time**
UST That evening the dove returned to him

Alternate translation: [That evening the dove returned to Noah] or [When it was evening, the dove returned to him]

ULT **and behold**
UST and he saw that

Alternate translation: [and surprisingly] or [and Noah saw that]

ULT **there was a freshly picked olive leaf in its mouth**
UST it had a fresh green olive {tree} leaf in its beak

Alternate translation: [it was holding a newly picked green leaf from an olive tree in its beak] or [the dove had a green leaf in its bill that it had just taken from an olive tree]

ULT **So Noah knew**
UST That is how Noah realized

Alternate translation: [Then Noah realized] or [That is how he knew]

ULT **that the waters**
UST that the water

Alternate translation: [that the floodwaters]

ULT **had subsided**
UST had gone down further

See how you translated **subsided** in verse 8, and how you translated three other Hebrew words with similar meanings In verses 1, 3, and 5. Alternate translation: [had receded] or [had gone down more]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **from the earth**
UST from the land

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7. Alternate translation: [from the ground]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dove	dove
olive	olive
Noah	Noah
knew	That is how … realized
earth	land

Genesis 8:12

ULT	UST
Then he waited another seven days, and he sent out the dove, but it did not return to him again.	*Then he waited seven more days and he released the dove again, but this time it did not come back to him again.*

ULT **Then he waited another seven days, and he sent out the dove**
UST Then he waited seven more days and he released the dove again

See how you translated **sent out** in verses 7, 8, and 10. Alternate translation: [He waited another seven days, and then he released the dove again] or [After he waited seven more days, he released the dove again]

ULT **but it did not return to him again**
UST but {this time} it did not come back to him again

Remember to only make implied information explicit in a translation if it helps readers' understanding or if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning or incorrect grammar. Alternate translation: [but this time it did not fly back to him again because it found a dry place to land]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
dove	dove

Genesis 8:13

ULT	UST
So it happened in the six hundred and first year, in the first month, on the first day of the month, the waters were drying up from the earth. Then Noah removed the covering of the ark and looked, and behold, the surface of the ground was drying.	*So it was, when Noah was 601 years old, on the first day of the first month of the year, the water had almost dried up from the land. So Noah took off part of the roof of the boat and looked around, and he saw that much of the land's surface was almost dry.*

ULT **So it happened**
UST So it was

Alternate translation: [So it happened that]

ULT **in the six hundred and first year**
UST when {Noah was} 601 years old

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 7:11.

ULT **in the first {month}, on the first {day} of the month**
UST on the first {day} of the first month of the year

Alternate translation: [in the first month of the year, on the first day of the month]
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **the waters were drying up**
UST the water had {almost} dried up

Make sure your translation of this phrase fits with the fact that the ground was not yet dry enough to get out of the ark. That did not happen until the end of the second month (verse 14).
Alternate translation: [the water was drying up]

ULT **from the earth**
UST from the land

Alternate translation: [from the ground]

ULT **Then Noah removed**
UST So Noah took off

Alternate translation: [So he took off part of] or [made an opening in]

ULT **the covering of the ark**
UST part of the roof of the boat

Alternate translation: [the roof that was covering the ark] or [the roof of the ark]

ULT **and looked**
UST and looked around

Alternate translation: [and looked out]

ULT **and behold**
UST and he saw that

See how you translated this phrase in verse 11. Alternate translation: [and indeed]

ULT **was drying**
UST was {almost} dry

Alternate translation: [was drying off]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
year	years
month	month
earth	land
Noah	Noah
ark	the boat

Genesis 8:14

ULT	UST
Then in the second month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month, the earth was dry.	*Then by the twenty-seventh day of the second month of the year, the land had dried off.*

ULT **Then in the second month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month**
UST Then by the twenty-seventh day of the second month of the year

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **in the seventh month**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. See how you translated similar time phrases in verses 4, 5, and 13.
Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **the earth**
UST the land

Notice that the land was dry here, not the entire earth. Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 3, 7, 11, 13–14. Alternate translation: [the ground]

ULT **was dry**
UST had dried off

In this context **dry** means that the ground was dry enough to walk on and live on without getting stuck in mud. Make sure your translation does not imply that it was so dry (like a desert) that almost nothing would grow on it.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
month	month
day	day
month	לַחֹדֶשׁ
earth	land

Genesis 8:15

ULT	UST
Then God said to Noah, saying,	*Then God commanded Noah,*

> ULT **Then God said to Noah, saying**
> UST Then God commanded Noah

See how you translated **said to Noah** in Genesis 7:1. Alternate translation: [So God said to Noah]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Noah	Noah

Genesis 8:16

ULT	UST
“Go out of the ark, you and your wife and your sons and the wives of your sons with you.	*“Come out of the boat, together with your wife, your sons, and your sons’ wives.*

ULT **Go out of the ark**
UST Come out of the boat

Consider whether “come” or “go” is more natural here in your language. Also, some languages have a special term for getting off a boat that fits well here. Alternate translation: [Come out of the ark] or [Disembark from the ark]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **and the wives of your sons with you**
UST and your sons’ wives

Alternate translation: [and their wives]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ark	the boat

Genesis 8:17

ULT	UST
Bring out with you every living thing that is with you, all flesh, including the birds and the livestock and every creeper creeping on the earth, so that they will abound on the earth and be fruitful and multiply over the earth."	*Bring out all the animals that are with you, all of them, including the birds, tame animals, and every other animal that moves on land. Then they can live all over the earth; yes, they will have many young and increase in number all over the earth."*

ULT **Bring out with you**
UST Bring out

Consider whether "bring" or "take" is more natural here in your language. Alternate translation: [Take with you] or [Take out]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **every living thing that is**
UST all the animals that are

Alternate translation: [all the living things that are]

ULT **with you**

Alternate translation: [with you in the ark] or [in the ark]

ULT **all flesh**
UST all of them

See how you translated **flesh** in Genesis 7:15–16.
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **and every creeper creeping**
UST and every {other} animal that moves

The words **every creeper creeping** could mean: (1) "every other creature that moves," which seems to fit this context best since it is general and includes all the land animals that were not birds or livestock. (2) "and every animal that crawls," which is more specific and refers to animals like lizards, snakes, mice, and other animals that travel close to the ground.
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **and every creeper creeping**
UST and every {other} animal that moves

For emphasis, the speaker is using a construction in which a verb and its object, **creeper creeping**, come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of showing the emphasis. [and every creature that moves about]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **on the earth**
UST on land

Alternate translation: [on the ground]

ULT **so that they will abound on the earth**
UST Then they can live all over the earth

Alternate translation: [Then they can spread all over the world]

ULT **and be fruitful**
UST yes, they will have many young

The rest of verse 17 forms a parallelism with **abound on the earth** that emphasizes filling the earth again with animals. Make sure your translation does not sound like this refers to separate events. Alternate translation: [yes, they will have many offspring]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **and multiply**
UST and increase in number

See how you translated **be fruitful** and **multiply** in Genesis 1:22, 28. Alternate translation: [and become very many]

ULT **over the earth**
UST all over the earth

Alternate translation: [all over the world] or [throughout the earth]

ULT **including the birds and the livestock**
UST including the birds, tame animals

Alternate translation: [including the birds, domestic animals]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
livestock	animals
earth	land
earth	earth
fruitful	yes, they will have many young
multiply	and increase in number
earth	earth

Genesis 8:18

ULT	UST
Then Noah went out, and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons with him.	*So Noah came out of the boat, along with his wife and his sons and their wives.*

ULT **Then Noah went out**

UST So Noah came out of the boat

In a context such as this, your language might say “came” instead of **went**. Alternate translation: [So Noah disembarked from the ark] or [Then Noah got off the ark]

Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons with him**

UST along with his wife and his sons and their wives

See how you translated this list of Noah’s family members (and similar lists) in Genesis 6:18, 7:7, and 8:16. Notice that the order of the people in this list varies in the Hebrew text, perhaps depending on who is in focus in each context. Alternate translation: [together with his wife and his sons and their wives]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah

Genesis 8:19

ULT	UST
Every living thing, every crawling thing and every bird, everything moving on the earth, went out of the ark by their families.	*All the animals, including all the animals that crawl and all the birds and everything else that lives on land, also came out of the boat in groups of their own kind.*

ULT **Every living thing**
UST All the animals

Alternate translation: [Every living creature]

ULT **every crawling thing**
UST including all the animals that crawl

Alternate translation: [including every animal that crawls] or [including all the creatures that crawl]

ULT **everything**
UST and everything else

Alternate translation: [yes, every creature]

ULT **moving on the earth**
UST that lives on land

This phrase refers here to the land masses of **the earth** but not the entire planet. See how you translated this phrase in verse 17. Alternate translation: [that moves on the ground] or [that moves along the ground]

ULT **went out of the ark**
UST also came out of the boat

Consider again how you translated **go** and "went" and "bring" in verses 16–19. Notice that your choices are affected by your perspective: whether the viewpoint is from inside the ark or whether the viewpoint is from outside the ark. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [also came out of the ark]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **by their families**
UST in groups of their own kind

Alternate translation: [grouped by their kinds] or [one family after another]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	land
ark	the boat

Genesis 8:20

ULT	UST
Then Noah built an altar to Yahweh, and he took from every clean animal and from every clean bird, and he offered burnt offerings on the altar.	*Then Noah made an altar out of large stones to offer sacrifices to Yahweh. Next he chose some of every kind of animal and bird that is acceptable to sacrifice, and he killed them and burned their bodies on the altar as an offering to Yahweh to worship him.*

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST to offer sacrifices to Yahweh

Alternate translation: [dedicated to Yahweh] or [to worship Yahweh]

ULT **and he took**
UST Next he chose

Alternate translation: [Then he chose]

ULT **and he offered burnt offerings on the altar**
UST and he {killed them and} burned {their bodies} on the altar as an offering {to Yahweh} to worship him

When animals were sacrificed, they were killed first, not burned alive. Consider whether or not you need to make that information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [and he killed them and offered them as burnt offerings to Yahweh on the altar] or [and he killed them and burned their bodies on the altar as gifts to Yahweh to honor him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
altar	altar
Yahweh	Yahweh
animal	animal
burnt offerings	as an offering {to Yahweh} to worship him
altar	altar

Genesis 8:21

ULT	UST
And Yahweh smelled the pleasant aroma, and Yahweh said in his heart, "Never again will I curse the ground because of mankind, though the inclination of mankind's hearts is evil from their youth. And never again will I strike every living thing as I have done.	*Yahweh smelled the aroma of the offerings and was pleased, and he thought to himself, "Never again will I curse the ground because of mankind's sins, even though everything they desire and think about is evil from the time they are children. And never again will I destroy all living creatures the way I just did.*

ULT **And Yahweh smelled the pleasant aroma**
UST Yahweh smelled the aroma {of the offerings} and was pleased

Alternate translation: [Yahweh smelled the sweet smell of the sacrifices] or [When Yahweh smelled the aroma of the sacrifices, he was pleased]

ULT **and Yahweh said in his heart**
UST and he thought to himself

Consider whether or not your language has this common expression or a similar common expression that would work well here. Alternate translation: [so he said to himself]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Never again will I curse the ground**
UST Never … will I curse the ground

Make sure that your translation of **curse** does not imply the use of magic. Alternate translation: [I will never again curse the earth]

ULT **because of mankind**
UST because of mankind's sins

Alternate translation: [to punish mankind for their sins]

ULT **though the inclination of mankind's hearts {is} evil**
UST even though everything they desire and think about {is} evil

See how you translated **inclination** in a similar phrase in Genesis 6:5. Alternate translation: [even though the desires of their hearts are evil] or [even though everything they desire is evil]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from their youth**
UST from the time they are children

Alternate translation: [from youth onward] or [from the time they are young]

ULT **And never again will I**
UST And never again will I

Alternate translation: [I will never again] or [Nor will I ever again]

ULT **strike**
UST destroy

Consider whether your language has this common expression or a similar expression that fits well here. Alternate translation: [kill]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **every living thing**
UST all living creatures

Alternate translation: [every living creature] or [all living things]

ULT **as I have done**
UST the way I {just} did

Alternate translation: [as I just did]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	יְהוָֹה
curse	curse
evil	evil

Genesis 8:22

ULT	UST
While all of the days of the earth continue, seed time and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease."	*As long as the earth still exists, each year there will always be a season to plant seeds and a season to harvest crops, as well as cold weather and hot weather, summer and winter, and day and night."*

ULT **While all of the days of the earth continue**
UST As long as the earth {still} exists

Alternate translation: [As long as the earth still lasts]

ULT **seed time**
UST a season to plant seeds

Alternate translation: [seed-planting time] or [the time for planting seeds]

ULT **and harvest**
UST and a season to harvest crops

Alternate translation: [and harvest time] or [the time for gathering crops]

ULT **and cold and heat**
UST as well as cold weather and hot weather

These terms form a parallelism with **summer and winter**. If possible, it is best to keep both parts of the parallelism in your translation since each part has a different emphasis. Alternate translation: [cold season and hot season]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **and summer and winter**
UST summer and winter

The seasons of summer and winter may be described differently depending on which part of the world your language area is located in. For example, some translations might use the terms "dry season" and "wet season," depending on what best corresponds to summer and winter in that area.

ULT **shall not cease**
UST each year there will always be

It may be more natural to change the order of this sentence and say, "As long as the earth exists, each year there will always be a season to plant seeds and a time to harvest crops, as well as cold weather and hot weather, winter and summer, and day and night." Alternate translation: [will never stop] or [will always continue to occur each year]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	As long as the earth {still} exists
earth	earth
seed	seeds
harvest	harvest
day	day

Genesis 9

Genesis 9:1

ULT	UST
Then God blessed Noah and his sons and said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth.	*Then God caused Noah and his sons to prosper by saying to them, "Have many children so that you and your descendants will become numerous and live all over the earth.*

ULT and said to them
UST by saying to them

The phrase "blessed … and said" is a Hebrew expression that refers to one event and emphasizes it. It does not refer to two separate events. The words of the blessing are in verses 1–7. See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 1:28. Alternate translation: [He said]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Be fruitful
UST Have many children

Alternate translation: [Bear many children] or [You will bear many children]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT and multiply
UST so that you {and your descendants} will become numerous

See how you translated "be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth" in Genesis 1:28. Alternate translation: [so that you and your descendants will increase greatly in number] or [so that you and your descendants will become very many]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT and fill the earth
UST and live all over the earth

Alternate translation: [and fill the earth with people] or [and inhabit the whole earth] or [and live everywhere on the world]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
blessed	Then … caused … to prosper
Noah	Noah
fruitful	Have many children
multiply	so that you {and your descendants} will become numerous
earth	earth

Genesis 9:2

ULT	UST
And the fear of you and the dread of you will be on every living thing of the earth, including on every bird of the sky, on everything that moves on the ground, and on all the fish of the sea. Into your hand they are given.	*Every living creature on the earth will be afraid and terrified of you, including every bird that flies in the sky, along with every creature that moves on land, and all the fish in the ocean. I have put them all under your authority.*

ULT **And the fear of you and the dread of you will be on every living thing of the earth**
UST Every living creature on the earth will be afraid and terrified of you

The phrase **the fear of you and the dread of you** repeats the same idea in two different ways to emphasize how afraid the creatures will be. For some languages it may be better to combine the phrase and say “very afraid.” Alternate translation: [Every living thing on the earth will be afraid and terrified of you] or [All the animals on earth will be very afraid of you]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **including on every bird of**
UST including every bird {that flies} in

It might seem that the phrase **bird of the sky** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you can shorten it. Consider again how you translated “birds of the sky” earlier in the book of Genesis; see 1:26, 28,30; 2:19–20; 6:7; 7:3, and 7:23. Alternate translation: [including every flying bird] or [including all the birds]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **on everything that moves on the ground**
UST along with every creature that moves on land

Alternate translation: [along with every animal that lives on land] or [as well as all animals that live on land]

ULT **and on all the fish of the sea**
UST and all the fish in the ocean

Alternate translation: [and all the fish in the sea]

ULT **Into your hand they are given**
UST I have put them {all} under your authority

The common expression **Into your hand** means God was again giving mankind the responsibility to manage and control all the rest of what God had created. Consider whether your language has a similar expression that would work well here. Alternate translation: [Into your control they are placed]
Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **Into your hand they are given**
> UST I have put them {all} under your authority

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context suggests that it is God. Alternate translation: [I have put you in charge of them all]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fear	afraid
dread	terrified
earth	earth
sky	sky

Genesis 9:3

ULT	UST
Every moving creature that lives will be for you for food. Just as the green plants, I give you everything.	*From now on every creature that is alive and moves is yours to eat as food. In the same way that I provided you green plants for food, now I provide you everything for food.*

ULT **Every moving creature that lives**
UST From now on every creature that is alive and moves

See how you translated “every moving creature” in Genesis 1:26, and see the note about that there. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways in different contexts. Alternate translation: [From now on every kind of living thing that moves] or [From now on every animal that is alive and moves]

ULT **will be for you for food**
UST is yours {to eat} as food

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of this sentence and say, “You may now have/eat any kind of living creature that moves, for food.” or “I now permit you to eat every kind of living creature that moves.” Alternate translation: [is available for you to eat as food]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Just as the green plants**
UST In the same way that {I provided you} green plants for food

Consider again how you translated **green plants** in Genesis 1:30 and how you translated **plants** in Genesis 1:11–12, 1:19, 2:5, 3:18. and 9:3. Alternate translation: [plants to eat]

ULT **I give you everything**
UST now I provide you everything for food

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase means that God is now permitting people to eat both plants and animals. Alternate translation: [now I give you everything for food] or [so now I permit you to eat everything] or [so now I permit you to eat both plants and animals]

Genesis 9:4

ULT	UST
But you must not eat flesh with its life, that is, its blood.	*However, you must never eat meat that still has its blood in it, which made it live.*

ULT **But**
UST However

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is not contradicting himself here, but rather he is giving an exception to what he said in verse 3. God is putting a limit on the way that people may eat meat. Alternate translation: [You may eat meat, but not when it still has the blood of life in it]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

ULT **you must not eat flesh**
UST you must never eat meat

Alternate translation: [you must never eat animal flesh]

ULT **with its life, {that is,} its blood**
UST that still has its blood {in it}, which made it live

Since life is in the blood, God did not want people to eat meat that still had its blood in it. Rather he wanted them to drain it out first before they cooked it (also see Deuteronomy 12:16, 23). You could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [that still has its life in it, which is in its blood] or [with its blood in it, which made it live] or [that still has its lifeblood in it]

Genesis 9:5

ULT	UST
And surely I will demand your blood for your lives. From the hand of every living thing I will demand it, and from the hand of mankind; from the hand of a man who kills his brother, I will demand the life of the man.	*Also, I definitely require that anyone who murders someone must die. In fact, if any animal kills a human being, I require that it must die. That is also true for human beings: If anyone murders another person, I require that he must die.*

ULT **And surely I will demand your blood for your lives**
UST Also, I definitely require that anyone who murders someone must die

Alternate translation: [Also, I will definitely require an accounting for your lifeblood]

ULT **From the hand of every living thing**
UST In fact, if any animal kills a human being

In this verse, the phrase **the hand of** refers to the animal or the person that is responsible for killing someone. Alternate translation: [From any animal that kills a person]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **I will demand it**
UST I require that it must die

Alternate translation: [I will demand its blood] or [I require it to be killed] or [I demand that it must die]

ULT **and from the hand of mankind**
UST That is also true for human beings

Alternate translation: [and that is also true for human beings]

ULT **from the hand of a man who kills**
UST If anyone murders

Alternate translation: [If a man kills] or [If anyone kills]

ULT **his brother**
UST another person

This phrase is used here as a general reference to any human being, not just biological brothers. Alternate translation: [a fellow human being]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **I will demand the life of the man**
UST I require that he must die

Alternate translation: [I require him to be executed] or [I demand that he must die]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I will demand	I … require
I will demand it	I require that it must die
I will demand	I require

Genesis 9:6

ULT	UST
The one shedding the blood of a man, by mankind his blood must be shed, because in the image of God he made mankind.	*That's right, you must put to death anyone who murders a human being, because God made human beings to be like himself.*

ULT **The one shedding**
UST That's right … anyone who murders

The first half of verse 6 repeats and summarizes verse 5. These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition, and it would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. Alternate translation: [Yes, if anyone]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **The one shedding the blood of**
UST That's right … anyone who murders

The phrase **shedding the blood of** is a common expression that means deliberately killing someone. Blood is an important concept in this passage and throughout the Bible, so if possible, it is best to keep this term in your translation. If that is not possible, you should put the literal text in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Yes, if anyone kills] or [Whoever takes the life of]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a man**
UST a human being

Alternate translation: [a person] or [another human being] or [someone]

ULT **by mankind his blood must be shed**
UST you must put to death

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "That's right, you must put to death anyone who murders a human being, because I, God, made human beings in my own image." Alternate translation: [Yes, by people the blood of this man must be shed]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **by mankind his blood must be shed**
UST you must put to death

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context suggests that it is God. Alternate translation: [people must execute him] or [people must put him to death] or [mankind must execute him]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **because in the image of God he made mankind**
UST because God made human beings to be like himself

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is referring to himself in this clause. See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 1:27. Alternate translation: [because I, God made people in my own image] or [because I created human beings to be like myself]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
image	God made … to be like himself
God	God

Genesis 9:7

ULT	UST
And you, be fruitful and multiply. Abound on the earth and multiply on it."	*Now as for you, have many children so that you and your descendants will become numerous. Spread out all over the earth and become numerous everywhere."*

ULT **And you**
UST Now {as for} you

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic and has an emphatic position in the sentence (before the verb) to introduce a new topic. Consider what is the best way in your language to begin a new paragraph like this. Alternate translation: [And as for you] or [As for you]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **be fruitful**
UST have many children

See how you translated **be fruitful and multiply** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [bear many children]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and multiply**
UST so that you {and your descendants} will become numerous

Alternate translation: [so that you and your descendants become very many] or [so that you have many descendants] or [and increase in numbers]

ULT **Abound on the earth**
UST Spread out all over the earth

Alternate translation: [Live all over the earth]

ULT **on it**
UST everywhere

Alternate translation: [throughout it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fruitful	have many children
multiply	so that you {and your descendants} will become numerous
earth	earth
multiply	and become numerous

Genesis 9:8

ULT	UST
Then God said to Noah and to his sons with him, saying,	*Then God said to Noah and his sons,*

ULT **Then God said**
UST Then God said

Alternate translation: [Then God continued speaking]

ULT **to Noah and to his sons with him, saying**
UST to Noah and his sons

God is still speaking to the same people. This phrase emphasizes what he says next to them.
Alternate translation: [to Noah and his sons, who were with him] or [to them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Noah	Noah

Genesis 9:9

ULT	UST
“And I, behold, I am establishing my covenant with you and with your offspring after you,	*“Listen carefully to me: I am making my agreement with you and your descendants.*

ULT **And I, behold, I**
UST Listen {carefully} to me

See how you translated **behold** in Genesis 1:29, 4:14, and 6:13, 17. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Now listen carefully to me: I]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **am establishing**
UST I am making

See how you translated “establish my covenant with” in Genesis 6:18, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [am instituting] or [am setting up]

ULT **my covenant with you and with your offspring after you**
UST my agreement with you and your descendants

Notice that the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural throughout verses 2–15 since God is speaking to Noah and his sons. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [my special agreement with you and your descendants who come after you] or [my covenant between me and you and your offspring]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	my agreement
your offspring	your descendants

Genesis 9:10

ULT	UST
and with every living creature that is with you: with the birds, with the livestock, and with every living thing of the earth with you, from all that came out of the ark to every living thing of the earth.	*It is also with all the living creatures that are with you, including the birds, the livestock, and all the other living creatures on the earth that are with you. That includes all those that came out of the ark and all the living creatures that will ever live on the earth.*

ULT **and with every living thing of the earth**
UST and all the {other} living creatures on the earth

Alternate translation: [and all the other living things on the earth] or [and all the wild animals]

ULT **from all that came out of the ark**
UST That includes all {those} that came out of the ark

The phrases **from all** and **to every** are used to emphasize that all the animals are included in God's covenant. Consider what is the best way to express that in your language. Alternate translation: [That includes all those that went out of the ark]

ULT **to every living thing**
UST and all the living creatures that will ever live

Alternate translation: [and all the living things] or [and all the animals]

ULT **living thing of the earth**
UST the {other} living creatures on the earth

Alternate translation: [that live on the earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
livestock	livestock
earth	earth
ark	ark
earth	earth

Genesis 9:11

ULT	UST
And I am establishing my covenant with you that never again will all flesh be cut off by the waters of a flood, and never again will there be a flood to destroy the earth."	*My agreement that I am making with you is that never again will all living things die from a flood. I will not use a flood ever again to destroy everything on the earth."*

ULT **that never again will all flesh be cut off**
UST is that never again will all living things die

The phrase **all flesh** refers here to all people and animals. Alternate translation: [that never again will all life be cut off] or [that never again will all living creatures be killed]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **will … be cut off**
UST will … die

Alternate translation: [be killed by] or [be wiped out by]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **by the waters of a flood**
UST from a flood

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 7:10. Alternate translation: [by water from a flood]

ULT **to destroy**
UST to destroy

See how you translated **destroying** in Genesis 7:21. Alternate translation: [that destroys]

ULT **the earth**
UST everything on the earth

This phrase refers here to everything that lives on the earth. Alternate translation: [life on the earth] or [all living creatures on the earth]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	My agreement
flood	flood
flood	flood
destroy	destroy
earth	earth

Genesis 9:12

ULT	UST
Then God said, "This is the sign of the covenant that I am making between me and you and every living creature that is with you, for generations forever:	*Then God continued, "This is how I will show everyone that I have made this agreement with you and with all the living creatures that are with you, as well as with all the people and animals that will ever live:*

ULT **Then God said**
UST Then God continued

God is still talking to the same people, but a quote margin, **Then God said**, is added here to emphasize the new topic, **the sign of the covenant**. For some languages it is more natural to leave this quote margin implied and just have a paragraph break. See what you did for a similar case in verse 9:8. Alternate translation: [Then God also said to them] or [Then God added]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **This {is} the sign of the covenant that I am making**
UST This {is} how I will show {everyone} that I have made this agreement

Alternate translation: [This is how I will remind everyone that I have made this covenant]

ULT **for generations forever**
UST as well as with all the people and animals that will ever live

Alternate translation: [for all future generations:] or [and with all generations to come] or [as well as with all the people and creatures that will ever live]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
sign	how I will show everyone
covenant	that I have made this agreement
generations	as well as with all the people and animals that will ever live
forever	as well as with all the people and animals that will ever live

Genesis 9:13

ULT	UST
I have set my rainbow in the clouds, and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and the earth.	*I will put my rainbow among the clouds in the sky to remind everyone that I have made this agreement with every creature that lives on the earth.*

ULT **I have set my rainbow**
UST I will put my rainbow

Alternate translation: [I have put my rainbow] or [I am placing my rainbow]

ULT **the covenant between me and**
UST that I have made this agreement with

Alternate translation: [the covenant that I made with] or [my pledge to always keep my covenant with]

ULT **the earth**
UST every creature that lives on the earth

Here, **the earth** refers to mankind and all the animals. See how you translated the same phrase in verse 9:11. Alternate translation: [every living thing on the earth]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and it will be the sign of**
UST to remind everyone

See how you translated **the sign of the covenant** in verse 9:12. Alternate translation: [where it will show everyone] or [to show everyone] or [and it will serve as the sign which shows]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my rainbow	my rainbow
sign	to remind everyone
covenant	that I have made this agreement with
earth	earth

Genesis 9:14

ULT	UST
And it will be when I bring clouds over the earth and the rainbow is seen in the clouds,	*So whenever I cause clouds to form in the sky above the earth and a rainbow appears in the clouds,*

ULT And it will be when I bring clouds
UST So whenever I cause clouds to form in the sky

Alternate translation: [So it will happen that whenever I bring clouds together] or [So whenever I cause clouds to appear]

ULT over the earth
UST above the earth

Alternate translation: [in the sky over the earth]

ULT and the rainbow is seen in the clouds
UST and a rainbow appears in the clouds

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a passive or active verb here. Alternate translation: [and a rainbow forms among the clouds] or [and you see a rainbow among the clouds]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth
the rainbow	a rainbow

Genesis 9:15

ULT	UST
then I will remember my covenant that is between me and you and every living creature of all flesh, and never again will waters become a flood to destroy all flesh.	*then I will not forget to keep my agreement that I have established with you and with all living creatures of every kind. I promise that I will never again use a flood to destroy all living creatures.*

ULT **then I will remember my covenant**
UST then I will not forget {to keep} my agreement

See how you translated **remember** in Genesis 8:1. It may need to be translated differently in different contexts. Alternate translation: [then I will remember and keep my covenant] or [then I will not forget to keep my treaty]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **that {is} between me and you**
UST that I have established with you

Alternate translation: [that I have made between me and you] or [that I have made with you]

ULT **and never again will waters become a flood to destroy**
UST I promise that I will never again use a flood to destroy

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this last clause in verse 15 is what God promised in his covenant. Alternate translation: [that never again will there be a flood that destroys] or [I vow that never again will I use a flood to destroy]

ULT **of all flesh**
UST of every kind

Alternate translation: [all life] or [all people and animals]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	my agreement
flood	flood
destroy	destroy

Genesis 9:16

ULT	UST
So the rainbow will be in the clouds, and I will see it to remember the everlasting covenant between God and every living creature, with all flesh that is on the earth."	*Yes, whenever a rainbow appears in the clouds, I will see it and keep my permanent agreement which I have established with all people and all animals that live on the earth."*

ULT **So the rainbow will be**
UST Yes, whenever a rainbow appears

In verse 16, God repeats and emphasizes what he said in verses 12–15. Alternate translation: [So whenever a rainbow forms] or [That is how it will be: Whenever there is a rainbow]

ULT **in the clouds**
UST in the clouds

See how you translated this phrase in verses 9:13–14. Alternate translation: [among the clouds]

ULT **and I will see it**
UST I will see it

Alternate translation: [and I will look at it]

ULT **to remember**
UST and keep

See how you translated **remember** in verse 15. Alternate translation: [and fulfill] or [and not forget to keep]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **between God and**
UST which I have established with

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is referring to himself here. Alternate translation: [between me and] or [which I have made with]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **every living creature, with all flesh**
UST all people and all animals

See how you translated this phrase in verse 15 and how you translated **every living creature** in verses 10 and 12. Alternate translation: [all living beings of every kind]

ULT **that {is} on the earth**
UST that {live} on the earth

Alternate translation: [that are on the earth] or [that live in the world]

> ULT **the everlasting covenant**
> UST my permanent agreement

Alternate translation: [my permanent covenant] or [my covenant that lasts forever] or [my covenant that never ends]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the rainbow	a rainbow
everlasting	my permanent
covenant	agreement
God	which I have established with
earth	earth

Genesis 9:17

ULT	UST
Then God said to Noah, "That is the sign of the covenant that I have established between me and all flesh that is on the earth."	*Then God concluded by saying to Noah, "A rainbow is what I will use to remind everyone that I have made this agreement with all the people and animals that live on the earth."*

ULT **Then God said to Noah**
UST Then God {concluded} by saying to Noah

Alternate translation: [Finally, God said to Noah] or [Then God finished by saying to Noah]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **all flesh that {is} on the earth**
UST all the people and animals that {live} on the earth

Consider again how you translated **all flesh** when it includes people and animals. See Gen 6:12–13, 6:17; 7:21, 9:11, and 9:15–17. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways in different contexts. Alternate translation: [all living creatures] or [all the people and creatures that are on the earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Noah	Noah
sign	what I will use to remind everyone
covenant	that I have made this agreement
earth	earth

Genesis 9:18

ULT	UST
And the sons of Noah who came out of the ark were Shem and Ham and Japheth; and Ham, he was the father of Canaan.	*Noah's sons who came out of the boat after the flood were Shem, Ham, and Japheth; it was Ham who was Canaan's father.*

ULT who came out of the ark
UST who came out of the boat after the flood

Be consistent here with how you translated **ark/boat** in chapters 6–8, and see the note about this at Genesis 6:14. Alternate translation: [who went out from the ark after the flood] or [who disembarked from the vessel] or [who got off the big boat]

ULT And … were Shem and Ham and Japheth
UST were Shem, Ham, and Japheth

Consider what is the best way to list names in your language.

ULT and Ham, he
UST it was Ham who

The pronoun **he** is emphatic here, emphasizing that Ham was the father of Canaan, who is probably mentioned here because he was well known as the ancestor of the Canaanites and the one whom the land of Canaan was named after. Alternate translation: [Ham was the one who]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT was the father of Canaan
UST was Canaan's father

Alternate translation: [fathered Canaan]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
ark	the boat after the flood
Shem	Shem
Ham	Ham
Japheth	Japheth
Ham	Ham
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 9:20

ULT	UST
Now Noah, a man of the soil, began and planted a vineyard.	*After a while, Noah, who was a farmer, planted some grape vines and made wine from the grapes.*

ULT **Now Noah, a man of the soil, began and planted**
UST After a while, Noah, who was a farmer, planted

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce or begin a new episode here. The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “who was a farmer, began farming and planted” or “who was a farmer, was the first man to plant” or (2) “began to be a farmer and planted” or “became a farmer and planted” Alternate translation: [Now later on, Noah]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **a vineyard**
UST some grape vines and made wine from the grapes

It is implied that Noah made wine from the grapes (verse 21). If necessary, you could make that explicit here. Also, if grapes are not known in your language area, you could say “vines with a fruit called grapes,” or you could put in a footnote information about grapes, including how they are squeezed and how the juice is fermented to make wine. Alternate translation: [some grapevines and made wine from the grapes] or [a field with grapevines. And he made wine from the grapes]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
planted	planted
vineyard	some grape vines and made wine from the grapes

Genesis 9:21

ULT	UST
Then he drank some of the wine, and he became drunk, and he uncovered himself inside his tent.	*Then one day he drank too much of the wine, so that he became drunk and was lying naked inside his tent.*

ULT **Then he drank some of the wine**
UST Then {one day} he drank {too much of} the wine

Alternate translation: [One day he drank a lot of the wine]

ULT **and he became drunk, and he uncovered himself**
UST so that he became drunk and was {lying} naked

It is implied from verse 24 that Noah had fallen asleep. Alternate translation: [so that he became so intoxicated that he fell asleep uncovered]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **inside his tent**
UST inside his tent

See how you translated **tent** in Genesis 4:20

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wine	wine
drunk	drunk
tent	tent

Genesis 9:22

ULT	UST
Then Ham, the father of Canaan, saw the nakedness of his father, and he told his two brothers outside.	*Ham, who was Canaan's father, saw that his father was naked, and he went outside and told his two brothers about it.*

ULT **the nakedness of his father**
UST that his father was naked

Alternate translation: [that his father was uncovered]

ULT **and he told his two brothers outside**
UST and he went outside and told his two brothers about it

Alternate translation: [and he went out and told his two brothers that their father was drunk and naked]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Ham	Ham
Canaan	Canaan
and he told	and he … told … about it

Genesis 9:23

ULT	UST
But Shem and Japheth took a garment, and laid it across the shoulders of the two of them and walked backward and covered the nakedness of their father. And their faces were turned away, so that they did not see the nakedness of their father.	*However, Shem and Japheth took a robe, and held it between them at shoulder level and walked backward into the tent and covered their father's naked body with it. As they did that, they kept their faces turned away from him so that they would not see him naked.*

ULT **But Shem and Japheth took**
UST However, Shem and Japheth took

Alternate translation: [Then Shem and Japheth took]

ULT **a garment**
UST a robe

This garment would have probably been fairly large, big enough to cover Noah's body.
Alternate translation: [a cloak]

ULT **and laid it across the shoulders of the two of them**
UST and held it {between them} at shoulder level

Alternate translation: [put it between them over their shoulders]

ULT **and walked backward**
UST and walked backward into the tent

Alternate translation: [and went backward into the tent]

ULT **and covered the nakedness of their father**
UST and covered their father's naked body with it

Alternate translation: [and used it to cover their naked father]

ULT **And their faces were turned away**
UST As they did that, they kept their faces turned away from him

Alternate translation: [As they did that, they kept their eyes looking away from him] or [As they did that, they looked away from him]

ULT **so that they did not see the nakedness of their father**
UST so that they would not see him naked

Consider whether it is better here in your language to refer to Noah with a noun phrase or a pronoun. Alternate translation: [so that they did not see his nakedness] or [so that they did not see him naked]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Shem	Shem
Japheth	Japheth

Genesis 9:24

ULT	UST
Then Noah woke up from his wine, and he learned what his youngest son had done to him,	*Later Noah woke up from being drunk, and he found out that his youngest son Ham had dishonored him.*

ULT **Then Noah woke up**
UST Later Noah woke up

Alternate translation: [Later he woke up]

ULT **from his wine**
UST from being drunk

Alternate translation: [sober from the effects of the wine] or [sober]

ULT **and he learned**
UST and he found out

The text does not say how Noah found out about this, so it is best to not be too specific about that here in your translation. Alternate translation: [and he heard about]

ULT **what his youngest son had done to him**
UST that his youngest son {Ham} had dishonored him

Alternate translation: [that his youngest son Ham had disrespected him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Noah	Noah
wine	from being drunk
and he learned	and he found out

Genesis 9:25

ULT	UST
and he said, "Cursed be Canaan! He will be a slave of slaves for his brothers."	*So he exclaimed about him, "I ask God to curse Ham's son Canaan! Canaan will be the lowest servant for his relatives."*

ULT and he said
UST So he exclaimed about him

Alternate translation: [So he exclaimed about Ham]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Cursed be
UST I {ask God to} curse

Alternate translation: [I hereby ask God to curse] or [May God curse]

ULT Canaan
UST Ham's son Canaan

In verses 25–27, Canaan probably represents Ham and all of Ham's descendants (the Canaanites), who will serve Shem and Japheth and all their descendants. You could put that information in a footnote.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT He will be
UST Canaan will be

Alternate translation: [I proclaim that he will be]

ULT a slave of slaves
UST the lowest servant

The Hebrew word here can mean either **slave** or "servant." Slaves in the Old Testament were usually treated well and were not much different than servants, sometimes even becoming like members of their owner's family. But they were of lower status than their masters, which is part of how Ham's family is being cursed. Alternate translation: [the lowest slave]

ULT for his brothers
UST for his relatives

Verses 26 and 27 show that **his brothers** probably refers here to Shem and Japheth (who were Canaan's uncles) and their descendants.
Support Reference: Kinship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Cursed	curse
Canaan	Canaan
a slave of	servant
slaves	servant

Genesis 9:26

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Praised be Yahweh, the God of Shem! And may Canaan be a slave for him.	*Then Noah said, "Praise Yahweh, who is the God who takes care of Shem! May God cause Canaan to be Shem's servant.*

ULT Then he said
UST Then Noah said

Alternate translation: [Then he also said] or [He also said]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT Praised be Yahweh
UST Praise Yahweh

Although many English translations have "Blessed be" here instead of **Praised be**, the word used in the Hebrew text means "praise" when people are acting towards God (as here), and it means "bless" when God is acting towards people (as in Genesis 1:28; 5:2; 9:1). Alternate translation: [I praise Yahweh]
Support Reference: Blessings

ULT the God of Shem
UST who is the God {who takes care} of Shem

Alternate translation: [who is the God whom Shem worships]

ULT And may Canaan be
UST May God cause Canaan to be

Alternate translation: [May he cause Canaan to be] or [May he make Canaan] or [I ask him to make Canaan]

ULT a slave for him
UST Shem's servant

Alternate translation: [a servant for him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Praised be	Praise
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
Shem	Shem
Canaan	Canaan
a slave	servant

Genesis 9:27

ULT	UST
May God enlarge Japheth, and may he live in the tents of Shem. And may Canaan be a slave for him."	*I also ask God to give Japheth much land and enable him to live together in peace with Shem. May God also cause Canaan to be Japheth's servant."*

ULT **May God enlarge Japheth**
UST I {also} ask God to give Japheth much land

In this context, **Japheth** refers to the territory or land where he lived. Alternate translation: [May God give Japheth more land]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and may he live**
UST and enable him to live

Alternate translation: [and enable him and his family to live]

ULT **in the tents of Shem**
UST together {in peace} with Shem

Alternate translation: [together in harmony with Shem and his family] or [peacefully among Shem and his family]

ULT **And may Canaan be**
UST May God {also} cause Canaan to be

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 26. Alternate translation: [I also ask God to make Canaan] or [Canaan will also be]

ULT **a slave for him**
UST Japheth's servant

Compare how you translated **slave** or "servant" in verses 25–27. Alternate translation: [a servant for him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Japheth	Japheth
tents	together {in peace} with
Shem	Shem
Canaan	Canaan
a slave	servant

Genesis 9:28

ULT	UST
And after the flood, Noah lived 350 years.	*From the time that the flood began, Noah lived another 350 years,*

ULT after the flood
UST From {the time that} the flood began

Notice that this phrase refers to when the flood began, when Noah was 600 years old (Genesis 7:6), not when it ended a year later, when he was 601 years old (Genesis 9:21), since he was 950 when he died (verse 29), not 951. Alternate translation: [after the time that the flood began] or [from the beginning of the flood]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT And … Noah lived 350 years
UST Noah lived {another} 350 years

Alternate translation: [Noah lived 350 more years]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flood	flood
Noah	Noah
years	years
years	years

Genesis 9:29

ULT	UST
So all the days of Noah were 950 years, and he died.	*so that he lived a total of 950 years before he died.*

ULT **So all the days of Noah were**
UST so that he lived a total of

See how you translated Genesis 5:31, which is similar to 9:29. Alternate translation: [so that Noah lived a total of 950 years] or [So all together, Noah lived 950 years]

ULT **and he died**
UST before he died

Alternate translation: [and then he died]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	so that he lived a total of
Noah	so that he lived a total of
years	years
years	years

Genesis 10

Genesis 10:1

ULT	UST
Now these are the generations of the sons of Noah: Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and sons were born to them after the flood.	*This is the record of the names of Noah's sons Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and the descendants they had after the flood was over.*

ULT **Now these {are} the generations of**
UST This is the record of the names of

This sentence begins a new section. Alternate translation: [Here is the list of the names of]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **and sons were born to them**
UST and the descendants they had

The following record includes the names of Noah's sons and grandsons and their descendants (including some of the people groups who came from them). Here, **sons** means "descendants. The author is identifying these people as descendants of their ancestor Noah and his sons. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and their sons and other descendants who were born] or [and the sons they had]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **after the flood**
UST after the flood was over

Alternate translation: [after the flood was gone]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	the record of the names of
Noah	Noah
Shem	Shem
Ham	Ham
Japheth	Japheth
and … were born	and the descendants they had
flood	flood

Genesis 10:2

ULT	UST
The sons of Japheth were Gomer and Magog and Madai and Javan and Tubal and Meshech and Tiras.	*Japheth's sons were Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras.*

ULT **The sons of Japheth were**
UST Japheth's sons were

Throughout this chapter, many translations have a colon (:) instead of **were**.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Japheth	Japheth
and Madai	Madai
and Javan	Javan
Tubal	Tubal

Genesis 10:4

ULT	UST
And the sons of Javan were Elishah and Tarshish, the Kittim and the Dodanim.	*Javan's sons were Elishah and Tarshish, and he was the ancestor of the Kittites and the Dodanites.*

ULT And the sons of Javan were
UST Javan's sons were

Compare how you translated a similar clause in verses 2 and 3.

ULT Elishah and Tarshish
UST Elishah and Tarshish, and he was the ancestor of

These are the names of Javan's sons, but the next two names are the names of people groups that descended from him. Alternate translation, with no comma following: [named Elishah and Tarshish, and he was the ancestor of]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT the Kittim and the Dodanim
UST the Kittites and the Dodanites

Most translation teams transliterate people-group names in the Bible, but handle the suffix endings in different ways. For example, you could: (1) transliterate the Hebrew plural suffix "-im"; or (2) use a suffix that your language has for names of people groups (such as "-ites" in English); or (3) translate "-im" as "people" or "people group." Try to be consistent in how you handle people group names throughout this chapter and the rest of the book of Genesis. Alternate translation: [the Kitt people group and the Dodan people group]

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Javan were	Javan
Tarshish	Tarshish

Genesis 10:5

ULT	UST
From those the coastland peoples spread out into their lands, each with its own language, according to their clans, in their nations.	*From Japheth's descendants came the people groups who lived in regions near the sea. They moved to different places and settled in their own territories, and each group spoke its own language. They each had their own families, which grew and became their own people groups.*

ULT **From those**
UST From Japheth's {descendants} came

This phrase probably refers to Japheth's descendants (verses 2–4), especially since the descendants of his brothers Ham (verse 20) and Shem (verse 31) are summarized in a similar way.

ULT **the coastland peoples spread out**
UST the people groups who lived {in regions} near the sea. They moved to different places and settled

Alternate translation: [came the people groups who lived in regions beside the sea. They moved to different places and settled]

ULT **into their lands**
UST in their {own} territories

Alternate translation: [in their own regions]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **each with its own language**
UST and each {group} spoke its own language

Alternate translation: [They all spoke their own languages]

ULT **according to their clans**
UST They each had their {own} families

Here the term **clans** specifically refers to a group of families who are descended from a common ancestor. If your language has a specific word for clans, it would be appropriate to use it here. Alternate translation: [and each of them lived in their own extended families] or [They each had their own family groups]
Support Reference: Kinship

> ULT **From those the coastland peoples spread out into their lands, each with its own language, according to their clans, in their nations**
> UST From Japheth's {descendants} came the people groups who lived {in regions} near the sea. They moved to different places {and settled} in their {own} territories, and each {group} spoke its own language. They each had their {own} families, which {grew and} became their own people groups

for some languages, it may be clearer to change the order of the phrases in this verse. Alternate translation: [Japheth's descendants spread out and settled near the Mediterranean Sea. They all formed their own family groups, which grew and became their own people groups that spoke their own languages and lived in their own territories]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
peoples	the people groups
lands	in their {own} territories
language	language
clans	They each had their {own} families
nations	which {grew and} became their own people groups

Genesis 10:8

ULT	UST
Cush also fathered Nimrod, who began to be mighty on the earth.	*Cush also had a son named Nimrod, who was the first person on earth to be a powerful ruler.*

ULT **Cush also fathered Nimrod**
UST Cush {also} had {a son named} Nimrod

See how you translated **fathered** in Genesis 6:10, and how you translated a phrase in 10:1 **were born to** that has a similar meaning. Your language may have its own terms or expressions for these relationships. Alternate translation: [Cush also fathered a son named Nimrod]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **mighty**
UST a powerful ruler

There were other mighty men before Nimrod, but apparently he was the first one to have a kingdom (verse 10). Alternate translation: [a powerful warrior] or [a powerful king]

ULT **on the earth**
UST on earth

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier and say, “who was the first man on earth to become a powerful ruler” Alternate translation: [in the world]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **who began to be**
UST who was the first person … to be

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “who was the first person to be” or (2) “who became”

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Cush	Cush
mighty	a powerful ruler
earth	earth

Genesis 10:9

ULT	UST
He was a mighty hunter before Yahweh. For that reason it is said, “Like Nimrod, a mighty hunter before Yahweh.”	*He was also a great hunter whom Yahweh blessed. That is why people say about other great men, “That man is like Nimrod, a great hunter whom Yahweh blessed.”*

ULT **He was a mighty hunter**
UST He was {also} a great hunter

Alternate translation: [Nimrod was also a excellent hunter]

ULT **before Yahweh**
UST whom Yahweh blessed

Alternate translation: [whom Yahweh helped] or [because Yahweh helped him]

ULT **it is said**
UST people say about other great men

This phrase indicates that what follows was a well-known saying that was used by people to praise or compliment other great men by comparing them to Nimrod. Alternate translation: [we have the saying about other great men:]

ULT **before Yahweh**
UST whom Yahweh blessed

Be consistent here with how you translated this phrase earlier in verse 9. Alternate translation: [whom Yahweh helped] or [because Yahweh helped him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mighty	a great
Yahweh	Yahweh
mighty	a great
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 10:10

ULT	UST
And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel and Erech and Akkad and Calneh, in the land of Shinar.	*Nimrod started ruling as king over the cities of Babel, Erech, Akkad, and Calneh, which were all located in the region of Shinar.*

ULT **And the beginning of his kingdom was**
UST Nimrod started ruling as king over

Alternate translation: [The first cities that Nimrod ruled as king were]

ULT **in the land of Shinar**
UST which were {all} {located} in the region of Shinar

Shinar is another name for the land of Babylonia. You could put that information in a footnote.
Alternate translation: [which were all located in the land called Shinar]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kingdom	ruling as king over
Babel	the cities of Babel
land	which were {all} {located} in the region of
Shinar	Shinar

Genesis 10:11

ULT	UST
From that land he went to Asshur, and he built Nineveh and Rehoboth-Ir and Calah	*From the land of Shinar he went to the region of Assyria, where he built the cities of Nineveh, Rehoboth-Ir, Calah,*

ULT From that land
UST From the land of Shinar

Alternate translation: [From that region] or [From the land of Shinar]

ULT he went to Asshur
UST he went to {the region of} Assyria

See how you translated “the land of Assyria” in Genesis 2:14. Alternate translation: [he moved to the land called Asshur]

ULT and he built
UST where he built

Alternate translation: [and there he built]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
to Asshur	Assyria
Nineveh	Nineveh

Genesis 10:12

ULT	UST
and Resen, between Nineveh and Calah, which is the great city.	*and Resen, which is located between the cities of Nineveh and the great city of Calah.*

ULT and Resen, between Nineveh and Calah, which {is} the great city

UST and Resen, {which is located} between {the cities of} Nineveh and the great city of Calah

This could mean: (1) that Resen is located between the cities of Nineveh and the great city of Calah. (2) that Resen is the great city located between the cities of Nineveh and Calah.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nineveh	Nineveh

Genesis 10:13

ULT	UST
And Mizraim fathered the Ludim and the Anamim and the Lehabim and the Naphtuhim	*Mizraim was the ancestor of the Ludites, Anamites, Lehabites, Naphtuhites,*

ULT **And Mizraim fathered**
UST Mizraim was the ancestor of

Alternate translation: [Mizraim was the father of]

ULT **the Ludim and the Anamim and the Lehabim and the Naphtuhim**
UST the Ludites, Anamites, Lehabites, Naphtuhites

Throughout verses 13–18, translate the names of people groups in a way that is clear and natural in your language. See what you did in verse 4. Also consider what is the best way in your language to list the names in these verses. Some languages use a conjunction (like **and**) between names, while other languages only use a conjunction before the last name in the list, with commas between the other names.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Mizraim	Mizraim

Genesis 10:14

ULT	UST
and the Pathrusim and the Casluhim (whom the Philistim came from) and the Caphtorim.	*Pathrusites, Casluhites, and Caphtorites. The Philistines descended from the Casluhites.*

ULT and the Pathrusim and the Casluhim (whom the Philistim came from) and the Caphtorim

UST Pathrusites, Casluhites, and Caphtorites. The Philistines descended from the Casluhites

Alternate translation: [Pathrusites, Casluhites (whom the Philistines came from), and Caphtorites] or [Pathrusites, Casluhites, and Caphtorites. The Philistines came from the Casluhites]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Philistim	Philistines

Genesis 10:15

ULT	UST
And Canaan fathered Sidon his firstborn, then Heth	*Canaan had Sidon who was his firstborn son. He was also the ancestor of the Hittites,*

ULT And Canaan fathered
UST Canaan had

See how you translated **fathered** in verses 10:8 and 10:13.
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT then Heth
UST He was also {the ancestor of} the Hittites

Canaan's son Heth was the ancestor of the Hittites, so some translations use "Hittites" here instead and say, "He was also the ancestor of the Hittites," Alternate translation: [then he had a son named Heth]
Support Reference: Kinship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Canaan	Canaan
Sidon	Sidon
firstborn	firstborn
Heth	Hittites

Genesis 10:16

ULT	UST
and the Jebusites and the Amorites and the Girgashites	*Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites,*

ULT and the Jebusites and the Amorites and the Girgashites
UST Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites

In verses 16–18, the people group names are singular collective nouns in Hebrew (in contrast to the people group names in verses 4, 13–14 that are plural nouns). Most English versions translate these names with a plural "-ites" suffix so that it is clear that these names refer to more than one person. Alternate translation: [and Canaan was also the ancestor of the Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jebusites	Jebusites
Amorites	Amorites
Girgashites	Girgashites

Genesis 10:18

ULT	UST
and the Arvadites and the Zemarites and the Hamathites. And afterward the clans of the Canaanites scattered,	*Arvadites, Zemarites, and Hamathites. Later, those families that descended from Canaan spread out,*

ULT **And afterward**
UST Later

Alternate translation: [As time went by]

ULT **scattered**
UST spread out

Alternate translation: [moved to different places]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hamathites	Hamathites
clans	those families {that descended} from
Canaanites	Canaan
scattered	spread out

Genesis 10:19

ULT	UST
so the borders of the Canaanites were from Sidon, then you go toward Gerar as far as Gaza, then you go to Sodom and Gomorrah and Admah and Zeboiim, as far as Lasha.	*so that the territory where they lived reached from the city of Sidon in the north, all the way south toward the city of Gerar to the city of Gaza, then as far east as the cities of Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboiim, all the way to the city of Lasha.*

ULT **so the border{s} of the Canaanites were**
UST so that the territory where they lived reached

Alternate translation: [and eventually the borders of their land extended] or [so that eventually the land where they lived extended]

ULT **then you go toward Gerar as far as Gaza**
UST all the way {south} toward {the city of} Gerar to {the city of} Gaza

The Canaanites' border reached Gaza but did not extend down to Gerar, which was farther south. Alternate translation: [all the way down toward the city of Gerar to the city of Gaza] or [down to Gaza City, which is on the road to Gerar City]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **as far as Lasha**
UST all the way to {the city of} Lasha

Alternate translation: [until you reach Lasha City]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Canaanites	the territory where they lived
Sidon	Sidon
Gerar	Gerar
Gaza	Gaza
Sodom	Sodom
Gomorrah	Gomorrah

Genesis 10:20

ULT	UST
Those are the sons of Ham according to their clans, according to their languages, in their lands, in their nations.	*Those people were Ham's descendants and each one had his own family. Each family grew and became its own people group that spoke its own language and lived in its own territory.*

ULT **Those are**
UST Those {people} were

The word **Those** refers back to the people listed in verses 6–19. Also, many translations that use "were" (and other past tense verbs) in verses 2–19 and 21–30 use **are** here (and in verses 31 and 32). Alternate translation: [Those are the names of] or [Those men are]

ULT **the sons of Ham**
UST Ham's descendants

Alternate translation: [the descendants of Ham]

ULT **according to their clans**
UST and each one had his own family

See how you translated **clans** in verse 10:5. Alternate translation: [according to their family groups] or [and each one had his own clan] or [and their extended families]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **according to their languages, in their lands, in their nations**
UST Each family {grew and} became its own people group that spoke its own language and lived in its own territory

See how you translated verse 10:5, which has some of the same phrases as verse 20. Alternate translation: [Each family spoke its own language and lived in its own territory and eventually became its own people group] or [Each family multiplied and established its own ethnic group that had its own language and lived in its own region]
Support Reference: Kinship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Ham	Ham
clans	and each one had his own family
languages	language
lands	and lived in its own territory
nations	Each family {grew and} became its own people group

Genesis 10:21

ULT	UST
And sons were also born to Shem; he was the father of all the sons of Eber and the brother of Japheth the elder.	*Shem also had some sons. He was the ancestor of all the descendants of Eber, and his older brother was Japheth.*

ULT **And sons were also born to Shem**
UST Shem also had {some} sons

In the Hebrew text, **to Shem** comes first in this sentence after **And**, to emphasize Shem. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Shem also fathered some sons]

ULT **and the brother of Japheth the elder**
UST and his older brother was Japheth

This could mean: (1) Shem's older brother was Japheth. (2) Shem was Japheth's older brother.
Support Reference: Kinship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sons were … born	had {some} sons
Shem	Shem
Japheth	Japheth

Genesis 10:22

ULT	UST
The sons of Shem were Elam and Asshur and Arpachshad and Lud and Aram.	*Shem's sons were Elam, Asshur, Arpachshad, Lud, and Aram.*

ULT **Elam and Asshur and Arpachshad and Lud and Aram**
UST Elam, Asshur, Arpachshad, Lud, and Aram

The name **Arpachshad** is spelled as "Arphaxad" in many translations. Also, see how you spelled **Lud** in verse 10:13 (who is a different person with the same name). Be consistent with how you spell each name throughout the Bible. Alternate translation: [Elam, Asshur, Arpachshad, Lud and Aram]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Shem	Shem
Elam	Elam
and Asshur	Asshur
Aram	Aram

Genesis 10:23

ULT	UST
And the sons of Aram were Uz and Hul and Gether and Mash.	*Aram's sons were Uz, Hul, Gether, and Mash.*

ULT Uz and Hul and Gether and Mash

UST Uz, Hul, Gether, and Mash

The same person who is called **Mash** here, is referred to as "Meshech" in 1 Chronicles 1:17. To prevent confusion, some translations use "Meshech" here too, or they put that name in a footnote.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Aram	Aram
and Mash	and Mash

Genesis 10:25

ULT	UST
Then two sons were born to Eber. The name of the one was Peleg, because in his days the earth was divided. And the name of his brother was Joktan.	*Then Eber had two sons. The name of the first one was Peleg, which means "division," because during his lifetime the people on the earth divided into separate groups and spread out everywhere. Peleg's younger brother's name was Joktan.*

ULT Then two sons were born to Eber
UST Then Eber had two sons

Alternate translation: [Then Eber fathered two sons]

ULT Peleg
UST Peleg, which means "division

You can put the meaning of Peleg's name in the text or in a footnote so that it is clear why he was given his name. See what you did for a similar case (Noah's name) in Genesis 5:29.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT the earth was divided
UST the people on the earth divided {into separate groups} and spread out everywhere

This phrase refers to the people on the earth and implies that they scattered and lived all over the earth (as specified in Genesis 11:8). Alternate translation: [the people on the earth separated into separate groups and scattered everywhere]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT And the name of his brother {was} Joktan
UST Peleg's {younger} brother's name {was} Joktan

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to in this sentence, especially after reading the previous two sentences.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	during his lifetime
earth	earth

Genesis 10:26

ULT	UST
And Joktan fathered Almodad and Sheleph and Hazarmaveth and Jerah	*Joktan had sons named Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah,*

ULT **And Joktan fathered**

UST Joktan had sons named

Notice that the list of Joktan's sons continues through verse 29. Alternate translation: [Joktan fathered sons named] or [Joktan had the following sons:]

Support Reference: Kinship

Genesis 10:29

ULT	UST
and Ophir and Havilah and Jobab. All those were the sons of Joktan.	*Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab. Those were all Joktan's sons.*

ULT **and Ophir and Havilah and Jobab**
UST Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab

Consider again how you translated lists of names throughout chapter 10.

ULT **All those were**
UST Those {were} all

Alternate translation: [All those were the names of] or [All those men were]

Genesis 10:30

ULT	UST
And their dwelling was from Mesha, then you go to Sephar, the mountains of the east.	*The region where they and their descendants lived reached from the city of Mesha in the west all the way to the city of Sephar, which is in the hill country in the east.*

ULT **And their dwelling was**
UST The region where they {and their descendants} lived reached

Alternate translation: [Their dwelling place] or [Their region] or [The area where they and their descendants lived]

ULT **And … was from Mesha**
UST reached from {the city of} Mesha in the west

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 10:19. Alternate translation: [extended from the city of Mesha in the west]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **then you go to Sephar**
UST all the way to {the city of} Sephar, which is in

Alternate translation: [as far as]

ULT **to Sephar**
UST to {the city of} Sephar, which is in

Sephar might refer to a city, a mountain, or a region (that was named after the city or mountain). Alternate translation: [the town of Sephar, which is in]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **the mountain{s} of the east**
UST the hill country in the east

The word **mountains** could be: (1) a collective noun that refers to mountains or hill country near the town of Sephar. Alternate translation: [the mountain range that is in the east]; or (2) a singular noun that refers to a specific mountain that was called Sephar.

Genesis 10:31

ULT	UST
Those are the sons of Shem according to their clans, according to their languages, in their lands, according to their nations.	*Those people are Shem's descendants and each one had his own family. Each family grew and became its own people group that spoke its own language and lived in its own territory.*

ULT **Those are**
UST Those {people} are

The word **Those** refers here to the people listed in verses 21–30. See how you translated verse 20, which is almost exactly the same as verse 31. Alternate translation: [Those are the names of] or [Those men are]

ULT **according to their clans**
UST and each one had his own family

See how you translated **clans** in verses 10:5 and 10:20. Alternate translation: [and each one had his own clan]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **according to their languages, in their lands, according to their nations**
UST Each family {grew and} became its own people group that spoke its own language and lived in its own territory

Alternate translation: [Each family spoke its own language and lived in its own territory, and eventually became its own people group] or [Each family multiplied and established its own ethnic group that had its own language and lived in its own territory]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Shem	Shem
clans	and each one had his own family
languages	language
lands	and lived in its own territory
nations	Each family {grew and} became its own people group

Genesis 10:32

ULT	UST
Those are the clans of the sons of Noah, according to their generations, in their nations. And from those the nations spread out on the earth after the flood.	*All those family groups descended from Noah's sons. Each family group had its own descendants and became its own people group. In fact, after the flood all the people groups on the earth descended from them and spread out everywhere.*

ULT **Those {are} the clans of the sons of Noah**
UST All those family groups descended from Noah's sons

The word **Those** refers here to everyone who is listed in verses 2–31. Consider again how you translated **clans** in verses 5 and 20, 29, 31–32.

ULT **according to their generations, in their nations**
UST Each family group had its own descendants and became its own people group

Compare how you translated similar phrases in verses 5 and 20, and 31. Alternate translation: [Each clan had its own genealogy and became its own ethnic group]

ULT **And from those the nations spread out on the earth after the flood**
UST In fact, after the flood {all} the people groups on the earth descended from them and spread out everywhere

Consider again how you translated **nations** in verses 10:5 and 10:20, 31–32. If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of the phrases. Alternate translation: [From those people came all the ethnic groups who spread out over the earth after the flood]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
clans	family groups descended from
Noah	Noah
generations	Each family group had its own descendants
nations	and became its own people group
nations	all the people groups
spread out	and spread out everywhere
earth	earth
flood	flood

Genesis 11

Genesis 11:1

ULT	UST
Now the whole earth had one language and the same words.	*Now at first, all the people on the earth spoke the same language, so that everyone understood each other.*

ULT **Now the whole earth had one language**

UST Now {at first,} all {the people on} the earth spoke the same language

The events in verses 11:1–9 happened before the people listed in chapter 10 had their own languages and before they spread out over the earth (Genesis 10:5, 10:19–20, and 10:30–32). You could include some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Now at first, everyone on the earth shared the same language] or [Now for a while, all the people on the earth spoke one language]

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **and the same words**

UST so that everyone understood each other

The phrases **one language** and **the same words** are very similar in meaning and emphasize the fact that everyone spoke the same language. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [and shared the same vocabulary] or [and spoke words everyone knew]

Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth

Genesis 11:2

ULT	UST
And it happened as they migrated from the east, that they found a plain in the land of Shinar and settled there.	*As time passed, they moved from the eastern regions and eventually came to a wide, flat valley in the region of Shinar and stayed there.*

ULT **And it happened**
UST As time passed

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **as they migrated**
UST they moved

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a pronoun (**they**) or a noun phrase **the people** here. Alternate translation: [they traveled] or [the people moved]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **from the east**
UST from the eastern regions

At first after the flood, people lived in the regions around the mountains of Ararat (where the ark had landed). As they began to migrate and spread out to different places (as God had told them to do), they must have headed south at some point since they ended up at the plain of Shinar, which was south of where the Ararat Mountains were. The reference to **the east** probably reflects the viewpoint of the author (Moses), since the Ararat mountains and the plain of Shinar were both far to the east of where he was living. Alternate translation: [around in the eastern regions]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **that they found**
UST and {eventually} came to

Make sure the way you translate this phrase fits with the way you translated the first half of this verse. Alternate translation: [that they discovered] or [that they eventually came to]

ULT **a plain in the land of Shinar**
UST a wide, flat valley in the region of Shinar

This plain was a wide, flat area between mountains. Also be consistent here with how you translated **land of Shinar** in Genesis 10:10. Alternate translation: [a wide flat area in the land called Shinar]

ULT **and settled there**
UST and stayed there

Alternate translation: [and lived there] or [and began to live there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	in the region of
Shinar	Shinar

Genesis 11:3

ULT	UST
Then they said to each other, "Come, let us make bricks and bake them with fire." And they had bricks for stones, and they had tar for mortar.	*Then they urged each other, "Come on, let us work together and make bricks from clay and put them in fire to make them hard." They used bricks to build with instead of stone, and they used tar between the bricks instead of mortar.*

ULT **Then they said to each other**
UST Then they urged each other

The events that are described below probably did not happen immediately after they arrived at the plain. Consider what is the best way to introduce these events in your language. Alternate translation: [Then one day they told each other]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **Come**
UST Come on

Consider whether or not your language has an idiom like this that is used to urge or persuade someone to do something together. Alternate translation: [Give help] or [Together]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **let us make**
UST let us {work together and} make

The pronoun **us** is inclusive here and refers to the people who are talking to each other. Alternate translation: [we should work together and make]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **bricks**
UST bricks from clay

Alternate translation: [some mud blocks] or [some blocks from mud]

ULT **and bake them with fire**
UST and put them in fire to make them hard

Alternate translation: [and harden them with fire] or [and use fire to bake them] or [and put them over fire to make them hard]

ULT **And they had**
UST They used bricks to build with

Alternate translation: [So they did that, and they had] or [They had]

ULT **bricks for stones**
UST They used bricks {to build with} instead of stone

Alternate translation: [blocks to build with instead of stone]

> ULT **and they had tar**
> UST and they used tar between the bricks

Alternate translation: [and they used tar between the blocks]

> ULT **for mortar**
> UST instead of mortar

Alternate translation: [to hold the blocks together]

Genesis 11:4

ULT	UST
Then they said, "Come, let us build a city for ourselves and a tower with its top in the heavens, and let us make a name for ourselves, so that we are not scattered over the face of the whole earth."	*Then they urged each other, "Come on, we should work together and build a city for us to live in that has a very tall building that reaches high into the sky. That way we will become famous, and we will not separate from each other and live all over the earth."*

ULT **Come**
UST Come on

See how you translated this common expression in verse 3.

ULT **let us build**
UST we should {work together and} build

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [let us work together and build]

ULT **and a tower**
UST that has a {very} tall building

Alternate translation: [that has a high tower] or [with a very tall building]

ULT **with its top in the heavens**
UST that reaches high into the sky

Alternate translation: [that reaches high into the heavens] or [that reaches up to heaven]

ULT **and let us make a name for ourselves, so that we are not scattered**
UST That way we will become famous, and we will not separate from each other and live

The phrase **make a name for ourselves** is a common expression. Consider whether or not your language has a similar common expression that would work well here. Also see how you translated the word **scattered** in Genesis 10:18 and Genesis 10:32. Alternate translation: [We should do that to make ourselves famous and to keep us from spreading out] or [That way we will become well-known and we will not separate from each other and live]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **over the face of the whole earth**
UST all over the earth

Alternate translation: [all over the world] or [around the world]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heavens	sky
scattered	separate from each other and live
earth	earth

Genesis 11:5

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh came down to see the city and the tower that the sons of mankind had built.	*But one day Yahweh came down from heaven and looked at the city and the very tall building that the people were building.*

ULT Then Yahweh came down
UST But {one day} Yahweh came down from heaven

Alternate translation: [Then one day Yahweh came down from heaven]

ULT to see the city
UST and looked at the city

The text implies that Yahweh actually looked at the city. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to make that explicit here. Alternate translation: [and inspected the city]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT and the tower
UST and the {very} tall building

See how you translated this word in verse 4.

ULT had built
UST were building

Make sure the way you translate this verb fits with the fact that the people had not yet finished building the city (Genesis 11:8). Alternate translation: [had started building] or [had begun constructing]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 11:6

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said, "Behold, they are one people, and they all have one language. So this is what they have begun to do, and now everything that they plan to do will not be impossible for them.	*Then he said, "Look, they are one people group, and they all speak the same language. This is only the beginning of what they can do together. Soon they will be able to do anything they plan to do.*

ULT **And Yahweh said**
UST Then he said

Consider what is the best way to refer to Yahweh here in your language. Alternate translation: [And he said (to himself)] or [He said]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Behold**
UST Look

This term calls attention to what Yahweh says next. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Listen]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and they all have one language**
UST and they all speak the same language

See how you translated **have one language** in verse 11:1. Alternate translation: [and they all share the same language]

ULT **So this {is} what they have begun to do**
UST This {is} {only} the beginning of what they can do together

Alternate translation: [This is only the start of what they could do together]

ULT **everything that they plan to do will not be impossible for them**
UST they will be able to do anything they plan to do

The words **not** and **impossible** are two negatives that work together to communicate an emphatic positive statement. Consider what is the best way to translate this in your language. Alternate translation: [nothing that they plan to do will be impossible for them] or [anything they attempt to do will be possible for them] or [they can do whatever they try to do]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Then he said

Genesis 11:7

ULT	UST
Come, let us go down and there confuse their language, so that they will not understand each other's language."	*So we must go down there now and mix up their language so that they are not able to understand what they say to each other."*

ULT **Come**
UST So

Alternate translation: [So come on]

ULT **let us go down … there**
UST we must go down there now

Most Bible scholars think the plural pronoun **us** refers here to God and the fact that he is three Persons in one God. So it is best to keep this plural pronoun in your translation. See what you did for similar pronouns in Genesis 1:26. Alternate translation: [let us go to them]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and … confuse their language**
UST and mix up their language

Alternate translation: [and scramble their language]

ULT **so that they will not understand**
UST so that they are not able to understand

Alternate translation: [making them unable to understand] or [so that they cannot understand]

Genesis 11:8

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh scattered them from there over the face of the whole earth, and they stopped building the city.	*In that way, Yahweh caused the people to leave from there and live in different places all over the world, so that they had to stop building the city and the tall building.*

ULT **Then Yahweh scattered them from there**
UST In that way, Yahweh caused the people to leave from there and live in different places

Alternate translation: [So Yahweh did that and caused the people to depart from there and spread out] or [That is how Yahweh made the people leave from there and resettle in other places]

ULT **over the face of the whole earth**
UST all over the world

Alternate translation: [over the surface of the entire earth] or [all over the earth]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and they stopped building**
UST so that they had to stop building

Alternate translation: [so that they had to stop constructing]

ULT **the city**
UST the city and the tall building

For some languages it is better to change the order of clauses in this verse (so that events are in the order that they happened) and say, “In that way, Yahweh caused the people to stop building the city and the tower and to move away from each other, so that eventually they lived all over the world.” Alternate translation: [the city and the tower]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
scattered	In that way … caused … to leave … and live in different places
earth	the world

Genesis 11:9

ULT	UST
For that reason they called its name Babel, because there Yahweh confused the language of the whole earth, and from there Yahweh scattered them over the face of the whole earth.	*That is why the name of the city is Babel, which means "mixed up," because that is where Yahweh mixed up the language that everyone on the earth shared, and in that way he made them spread out from there all over the earth.*

ULT **they called its name**
UST the name of the city is

Alternate translation: [people named the city] or [the name of that city is] or [the city was named]

ULT **Babel**
UST Babel, which means "mixed up

If you include the meaning of **Babel** here in your translation or in a footnote, be consistent with the way you translate **confused** later in this verse and in verse 7.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **because there Yahweh**
UST because that is where Yahweh

Alternate translation: [because it was in that city that Yahweh]

ULT **confused**
UST mixed up

Alternate translation: [scrambled] or [confounded]

ULT **the language of the whole earth**
UST the language that everyone on the earth shared

Alternate translation: [the language that everyone on the earth spoke]

ULT **and from there Yahweh scattered them**
UST and {in that way} he made them spread out from there

Alternate translation: [and in that way Yahweh caused them to scatter]

ULT **over the face of the whole earth**
UST all over the earth

See how you translated this phrase in verses 4 and 8. Alternate translation: [over the surface of the entire earth] or [throughout all the world]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	the name of the city is
Babel	Babel, which means “mixed up
Yahweh	Yahweh
earth	earth
Yahweh	he made them spread out
scattered	he made them spread out
earth	earth

Genesis 11:10

ULT	UST
These are the generations of Shem: Shem was the son of 100 years, then he fathered Arpachshad two years after the flood.	*This is the record of Shem's descendants: Two years after the flood began, when Shem was 100 years old, he had a son named Arpachshad.*

> ULT **Shem {was} the son of 100 years, then he fathered Arpachshad two years after the flood**
>
> UST Two years after the flood {began}, when Shem was 100 years old, he had {a son named} Arpachshad

The phrase **after the flood** probably refers to two years after the flood began, not after it ended; see a similar case in Genesis 9:28. Alternate translation: [Two years after the flood began, when Shem was 100 years old, he had a son named Arpachshad]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	the record of … s descendants
Shem	Shem
Shem	Shem
years	years
years	years
flood	flood

Genesis 11:11

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Arpachshad, Shem lived 500 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Arpachshad was born, Shem lived another 500 years. He also had other sons, as well as daughters.*

ULT **Then after he fathered Arpachshad, Shem lived**
UST After Arpachshad was born, Shem lived

Throughout this section, make sure that names and pronouns (like **he**) are used in a way that is accurate and natural in your language, so that it is always clear who is being referred to. Alternate translation: [After Shem had Arpachshad, Shem lived] or [After Arpachshad was born, Shem lived]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **500 years**
UST another 500 years

See how you translated Genesis 5:7, which has the same sentence structure as 11:11. For some languages, it may be more natural to change the clause order of this sentence and say, “Shem lived 500 more years after Arpachshad was born, and he fathered other sons and daughters.” Do what is best in your language throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [500 more years]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **other sons and daughters**
UST other sons, as well as daughters

Alternate translation: [more sons as well as daughters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Shem	Shem
years	years

Genesis 11:12

ULT	UST
And Arpachshad lived thirty-five years, then he fathered Shelah.	*When Arpachshad was thirty-five years old, he had a son named Shelah.*

> ULT **And Arpachshad lived thirty-five years**
> UST When Arpachshad was thirty-five years old

Make sure that your translation of this clause does not mean that Arpachshad only lived to be thirty-five years old. Also, throughout this chapter, be consistent with how you have decided to handle numbers in the Bible. For example, many translation teams use words for single and double-digit numbers, but use numerals for larger numbers. This strategy helps prevent confusion with verse numbers. This is especially true in translations that use a large font size for verse numbers so that people doing group Bible study can easily see the numbers and be in the same verse together. See what you did in chapter 5. Alternate translation: [When Arpachshad had lived 35 years] or [When Arpachshad was 35 years old]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years

Genesis 11:13

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Shelah, Arpachshad lived 403 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Shelah was born, Arpachshad lived another 403 years. He also had other sons, as well as daughters.*

ULT 403 years
UST another 403 years

Alternate translation: [403 more years]

ULT and he fathered
UST He {also} had

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Arpachshad at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [He also fathered] or [He was also the father of]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT other sons and daughters
UST other sons, as well as daughters

Alternate translation: [more sons, and also daughters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years

Genesis 11:14

ULT	UST
And Shelah lived thirty years, then he fathered Eber.	*When Shelah was thirty years old, he had a son named Eber.*

ULT **And Shelah lived thirty years**
UST When Shelah was thirty years old

Alternate translation: [When Shelah had lived 30 years] or [When Shelah was 30 years old]

ULT **then he fathered Eber**
UST he had {a son named} Eber

Alternate translation: [he fathered a son named Eber] or [he had a son whose name was Eber]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years

Genesis 11:15

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Eber, Shelah lived 403 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Eber was born, Shelah lived another 403 years. He also had other sons, as well as daughters.*

ULT **403 years**
UST another 403 years

Alternate translation: [403 more years]

ULT **and he fathered**
UST He {also} had

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Shelah also had] or [He was also the father of]

ULT **other sons and daughters**
UST other sons, as well as daughters

Alternate translation: [other sons as well as daughters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years

Genesis 11:16

ULT	UST
And Eber lived thirty-four years, then he fathered Peleg.	*When Eber was thirty-four years old, he had a son named Peleg.*

ULT **And Eber lived thirty-four years**
UST When Eber was thirty-four years old

Alternate translation: [When Eber had lived 34 years] or [When Eber was 34 years old]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years

Genesis 11:17

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Peleg, Eber lived 430 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Peleg was born, Eber lived another 430 years. He also had other sons, as well as daughters.*

ULT **430 years**
UST another 430 years

Alternate translation: [430 more years]

ULT **and he fathered**
UST He {also} had

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to **Eber** at this point in the paragraph.
Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Eber also had] or [He was also the father of]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **other sons and daughters**
UST other sons, as well as daughters

Alternate translation: [more sons, as well as daughters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years

Genesis 11:18

ULT	UST
And Peleg lived thirty years, then he fathered Reu.	*When Peleg was thirty years old, he had a son named Reu.*

ULT **And Peleg lived thirty years**
UST When Peleg was thirty years old

Alternate translation: [When Peleg had lived 30 years] or [When Peleg was 30 years old]

ULT **then he fathered Reu**
UST he had {a son named} Reu

Alternate translation: [he fathered a son named Reu] or [he had a son whose name was Reu]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years

Genesis 11:19

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Reu, Peleg lived 209 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Reu was born, Peleg lived another 209 years. He also had other sons, as well as daughters.*

ULT **209 years**
UST another 209 years

Alternate translation: [209 more years]

ULT **and he fathered**
UST He {also} had

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Peleg also had] or [He was also the father of]

ULT **other sons and daughters**
UST other sons, as well as daughters

Alternate translation: [more sons, as well as daughters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years

Genesis 11:20

ULT	UST
And Reu lived thirty-two years, then he fathered Serug.	*When Reu was thirty-two years old, he had a son named Serug.*

ULT **And Reu lived thirty-two years**
UST When Reu was thirty-two years old

Alternate translation: [When Reu had lived 32 years] or [When Reu was 32 years old]

ULT **then he fathered Serug**
UST he had {a son named} Serug

Alternate translation: [he fathered a son named Serug] or [he had a son whose name was Serug]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years

Genesis 11:21

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Serug, Reu lived 207 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Serug was born, Reu lived another 207 years. He also had other sons, as well as daughters.*

ULT 207 years
UST another 207 years

Alternate translation: [207 more years]

ULT and he fathered
UST He {also} had

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Reu at this point in the paragraph.
Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Reu also had] or [He was also the father of]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT other sons and daughters
UST other sons, as well as daughters

Alternate translation: [other sons as well as daughters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
years	years

Genesis 11:22

ULT	UST
And Serug lived thirty years, then he fathered Nahor.	*When Serug was thirty years old, he had a son named Nahor.*

ULT **And Serug lived thirty years**
UST When Serug was thirty years old

Alternate translation: [When Serug had lived 30 years] or [When Serug was 30 years old]

ULT **then he fathered Nahor**
UST he had {a son named} Nahor

Alternate translation: [he fathered a son named Nahor] or [he had a son whose name was Nahor]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
Nahor	Nahor

Genesis 11:23

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Nahor, Serug lived 200 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Nahor was born, Serug lived another 200 years. He also had other sons, as well as daughters.*

ULT **200 years**
UST another 200 years

Alternate translation: [200 more years]

ULT **and he fathered**
UST He {also} had

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Serug also had] or [He was also the father of]

ULT **other sons and daughters**
UST other sons, as well as daughters

Alternate translation: [other sons as well as daughters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nahor	Nahor
years	years

Genesis 11:24

ULT	UST
And Nahor lived twenty-nine years, then he fathered Terah.	*When Nahor was twenty-nine years old, he had a son named Terah.*

ULT **And Nahor lived twenty-nine years**
UST When Nahor was twenty-nine years old

Alternate translation: [When Nahor had lived 29 years] or [When Nahor was 29 years old]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nahor	Nahor
years	years
Terah	Terah

Genesis 11:25

ULT	UST
Then after he fathered Terah, Nahor lived 119 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.	*After Terah was born, Nahor lived another 119 years. He also had other sons, as well as daughters.*

ULT Then after he fathered Terah, Nahor lived
UST After Terah was born, Nahor lived

Alternate translation: [After he had Terah, he lived]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT 119 years
UST another 119 years

Alternate translation: [119 more years]

ULT and he fathered
UST He {also} had

Alternate translation: [and he also had] or [Nahor also had] or [He was also the father of]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT other sons and daughters
UST other sons, as well as daughters

Consider again how you translated verses 11:11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23, 25, which all have the same sentence structure. Alternate translation: [more sons as well as daughters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Terah	Terah
Nahor	Nahor
years	years
years	years

Genesis 11:26

ULT	UST
And Terah lived seventy years, then he fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran.	*After Terah was seventy years old, he had sons whose names were Abram, Nahor, and Haran.*

ULT **And Terah lived seventy years, then he fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran**

UST After Terah was seventy years old, he had {sons whose names were} Abram, Nahor, and Haran

Your translation needs to allow for the fact that Terah's sons were not triplets (just as Noah's sons were not triplets; see 15:32), rather, he started having children after he turned seventy and his sons were born in different years after that. In fact, Abram was not born until Terah was at least 130 years old (11:321, 12:4–5; Acts 7:4), and he was probably Terah's youngest son. Abram is listed first (instead of Haran or Nahor) probably because of his importance as the one whom Yahweh made His covenant with. Some of this information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [After Terah had lived 70 years, his wife birthed three sons.] or [After Terah turned 70 years old]

Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **then he fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran**

UST he had {sons whose names were} Abram, Nahor, and Haran

Alternate translation: [he had sons named Abram, Nahor, and Haran] or [he fathered sons whose names were Abram, Nahor, and Haran]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Terah	Terah
years	years
Abram	Abram
Nahor	Nahor
Haran	Haran

Genesis 11:27

ULT	UST
Now these are the generations of Terah: Terah fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran; and Haran fathered Lot.	*Here is the history about Terah and his descendants: Terah's sons were Abram, Nahor, and Haran. Haran had a son whose name was Lot.*

ULT **Now these {are} the generations of Terah**
UST Here is the history about Terah and his descendants

This section is different from the previous section. What follows is a history about Terah's descendants (especially Abram); it is not a genealogy or list of names. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 6:91. Alternate translation: [This is the account about Terah and his family:]

ULT **Terah fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran**
UST Terah's sons were Abram, Nahor, and Haran

Alternate translation: [Terah had sons named Abram, Nahor, and Haran;]

ULT **and Haran fathered Lot**
UST Haran had a son {whose name was} Lot

Alternate translation: [and Haran had a son named Lot] or [and Haran had a son whose name was Lot]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	the history about Terah and his descendants
Terah	Terah
Terah	Terah's
Abram	Abram
Nahor	Nahor
Haran	Haran
Haran	Haran
Lot	Lot

Genesis 11:28

ULT	UST
And Haran died in the presence of Terah his father, in the land of his birth, in Ur of the Chaldeans.	*While his father was still alive, Haran died in the land where he was born, in the city of Ur where the Chaldean people lived.*

ULT **And Haran died in the presence of Terah his father**
UST While his father was still alive, Haran died

Alternate translation: [Later, Haran died while he was with his father Terah] or [While his father Terah was still alive, Haran died]

ULT **in the land of his birth … Chaldeans**
UST in the land where he was born

Alternate translation: [in his native land]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Haran	Haran
Terah	While his father was still alive
land	land
Ur	Ur
the	Chaldean

Genesis 11:29

ULT	UST
And Abram and Nahor took wives for themselves. The name of Abram's wife was Sarai, and the name of Nahor's wife was Milcah, the daughter of Haran, the father of Milcah and the father of Iscah.	*Meanwhile Abram and Nahor each married a wife. Abram's wife was named Sarai, and Nahor's wife was Milcah. Milcah and her sister Iscah were the daughters of Nahor's brother Haran.*

ULT **And Abram and Nahor took wives for themselves**
UST Meanwhile Abram and Nahor each married a wife

Alternate translation: [During that time, Abram and Nahor each got married]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
Nahor	Nahor
Abram	Abram
Sarai	Sarai
Nahor	Nahor
Haran	Haran

Genesis 11:30

ULT	UST
But Sarai was barren; she did not have a child.	*But Sarai was not able to become pregnant, so she did not have any children.*

ULT **But Sarai was barren**

UST But Sarai was not able to become pregnant

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information about Sarai. Alternate translation: [Now Sarai was unable to conceive] or [Sarai was unable to get pregnant]

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **she did not have a child**

UST so she did not have any children

For some languages it may be better to switch the order of the clauses in this verse and say, “But Sarai did not have any children, because she was not able to conceive.” Alternate translation: [she was childless]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarai	Sarai
barren	But Sarai was not able to become pregnant

Genesis 11:31

ULT	UST
Then Terah took Abram his son, and Lot, Haran's son, his son's son, and Sarai his daughter-in-law, the wife of his son Abram, and they went out together from Ur of the Chaldeans to go to the land of Canaan. But they came to Haran, and they settled there.	*Then one day, Terah gathered his son Abram and his grandson Lot, who was Haran's son, and his daughter-in-law Sarai, who was Abram's wife, and they all left from the city of Ur where the Chaldean people lived to travel to the region of Canaan. But when they arrived at the city of Haran, they decided to live there instead.*

ULT **Then Terah took**
UST Then {one day,} Terah gathered

Consider what is the best way to begin this new paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: [One day, Terah called together]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **Abram his son**
UST his son Abram

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this phrase that **his son** refers to Abram, not another person.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and Lot, Haran's son, his son's son**
UST and his grandson Lot, {who was} Haran's son

The phrases "Lot," "Haran's son," and **his son's son** all refer to Lot. Make sure that is clear in your translation and that it does not sound like three people.
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **and Sarai his daughter-in-law**
UST and his daughter-in-law Sarai

The phrases "Sarai," "his daughter-in-law," and **the wife of his son Abram** all refer to Sarai. Make sure that is clear in your translation.
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **and they went out together**
UST and they {all} left

Alternate translation: [and all of them set out together] or [Then they all departed]

ULT **from Ur of the**
UST from {the city of} Ur

See the note at 10:19 about how to translate the names of cities. Alternate translation: [from Ur City]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT Chaldeans
UST where the Chaldean people lived

See how you translated this phrase in verse 28. Alternate translation: [of the Chaldeans] or [where the Kasdim people lived]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT to go to the land of Canaan
UST to travel to the region of Canaan

Alternate translation: [to go to the region of Canaan] or [to go to Canaan Land]

ULT But they came to Haran
UST But when they arrived at {the city of} Haran

The city of Haran was not in the land of Canaan; rather, it was around 450 kilometers (280 miles) northeast of there. The author uses the word **But** here to indicate a strong contrast between what was expected and what happened. In your translation, indicate this strong contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [But on the way there, they came to the city of Haran, and] or [But along the way, when they stopped at the city of Haran]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT and they settled there
UST they decided to live there instead

Alternate translation: [they stayed there instead] or [they decided to settle there instead]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Terah	Terah
Abram	Abram
Lot	Lot
Haran	Haran
Abram	Abram
Ur	Ur
Chaldeans	Chaldean
land	to the region of
Canaan	Canaan
Haran	Haran

Genesis 11:32

ULT	UST
And the days of Terah were 205 years, then Terah died in Haran.	*Then many years later, when Terah was 205 years old, he died there in the city of Haran.*

ULT And the days of Terah were 205 years

UST Then {many years later,} when Terah was 205 years old

Alternate translation: [When Terah reached the age of 205 years]

ULT in Haran

UST in {the city of} Haran

Alternate translation: [in Haran City]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	Then {many years later,} when … was
Terah	Terah
years	years
years	years
Terah	he died there
Haran	Haran

Genesis 12

Genesis 12:1

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said to Abram, "You yourself must go from your land and from your relatives and from the house of your father, to the land that I will show you.	*One day Yahweh commanded Abram, "You must move away from your homeland and your relatives, including your father's family, and move to the land that I will guide you to.*

ULT **Then Yahweh said to Abram**
UST One day Yahweh commanded Abram

Consider what is the best way to begin this new section in your language. Also, make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits with what Yahweh says in the following quote.
Alternate translation: [Then one day Yahweh told Abram]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **You yourself must go from your land**
UST You must move away from your homeland

Alternate translation: [Get yourself away from your country] or [You must depart from the land where you are living]

ULT **and from your relatives**
UST and your relatives

Alternate translation: [and your people]

ULT **and from the house of your father**
UST including your father's family

The phrase **the house** refers here to everyone who was a member of Terah's household.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to the land**
UST and move to the land

Alternate translation: [and go to the place]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Abram	Abram
land	from your homeland
and from your relatives	and your relatives
house	including … s family
land	land

Genesis 12:2

ULT	UST
And I will make you into a great nation, and I will bless you, and I will make your name great, and you shall be a blessing.	*I will make you and your descendants become an important people group, and I will cause you all to prosper. I will make you well-known, and you and your descendants will bless many people.*

ULT **And I will make you**
UST I will make you {and your descendants} become

Alternate translation: [I will transform you]

ULT **into a great nation**
UST an important people group

Alternate translation: [a large people group] or [a large, important ethnic group]

ULT **and I will make your name great**
UST I will make you well-known

Alternate translation: [I will make you important and famous]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
nation	an … people group
bless	and I will cause you {all} to prosper
blessing	bless

Genesis 12:3

ULT	UST
And I will bless those who bless you, but whoever curses you I will curse. And in you all the families of the earth will be blessed."	*I will bless everyone who blesses you, but I will curse anyone who curses you. I will bless all the people on the earth through you."*

ULT **but whoever curses you I will curse**
UST but I will curse anyone who curses you

See how you translated **curse** in Genesis 8:21

ULT **in you**
UST I will … through you

The phrase **in you** refers to Abram and his descendants, including, ultimately, the Messiah. In other words, God's promise in this verse is part of his wonderful news (the gospel message) for all people (Galatians 3:8–9) and is a prophecy about the Messiah, who was one of Abraham's descendants (Matthew 1:1, Genesis 22:18, and Galatians 3:16). God blessed all people on earth by sending his Son Jesus (the Messiah/Christ) to die in their place and pay for all their sins (John 3:16–18, 1 Timothy 2:3–6), so that they could have a close relationship with him/God and be part of his family forever. God repeats this great promise in Genesis 18:18; 22:18; 26:4; 28:14. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [through you and your offspring,] or [because of you and your offspring,] or [by means of you and your offspring,]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And in you all the families of the earth will be blessed**
UST I will bless all the people on the earth through you

The expression **will be blessed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [And in you I will bless all the families of the earth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bless	bless
bless	blesses
but whoever curses you	but … anyone who curses you
curse	curse
the families of	the people on
blessed	bless

Genesis 12:4

ULT	UST
Then Abram went, just as Yahweh had told him, and Lot went with him. And Abram was the son of seventy-five years when he departed from Haran.	*So Abram left the city of Haran exactly as Yahweh had commanded him to do, and his nephew Lot went with him. Abram was seventy-five years old when he left from there.*

ULT **Then Abram went, just as Yahweh had told him**
UST So Abram left {the city of Haran} exactly as Yahweh had commanded him to do

Consider what is the best way in your language to begin this sentence so that it shows that Abram is now doing what God had just commanded him to do in 12:1. Alternate translation: [And Abram left the city of Haran, just as Yahweh had told him to do] or [Then Abram did what Yahweh had told him to do and left the city of Haran]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **and Lot went with him**
UST and {his nephew} Lot went with him

Alternate translation: [and his nephew Lot left with him]

ULT **And Abram**
UST Abram

Many translations omit the conjunction **And** or "Now" here. Alternate translation: [Now Abram]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **was the son of**
UST was seventy-five years old

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 5:32 and 11:10. Alternate translation: [was 75 years old]

ULT **when he departed**
UST when he left

Alternate translation: [when he set out]

ULT **from Haran**
UST from there

Alternate translation: [from the city of Haran]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
Yahweh	Yahweh
Lot	Lot
Abram	Abram
years	years
years	years
Haran	from there

Genesis 12:5

ULT	UST
And Abram took Sarai his wife and Lot the son of his brother and all their possessions that they had accumulated and the people whom they had acquired in Haran, and they set out to go to the land of Canaan. Then they came to the land of Canaan.	*He took with him his wife Sarai and his nephew Lot and everything that they owned, including servants and everything else they had acquired in the city of Haran, and they all started traveling to the region of Canaan. When they arrived there,*

ULT **And Abram took Sarai his wife**
UST He took {with him} his wife Sarai

In a context such as this, your language might say "brought" instead of **took**. Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Sarai** in Genesis 11:29–31. Alternate translation: [He brought with him his wife Sarai]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **and Lot the son of his brother**
UST and his nephew Lot

For some languages it is more natural to make **son of his brother** or "his nephew" explicit in verse 4 (where Lot is first mentioned in this section) and leave it implied here in verse 5.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and all their possessions that they had accumulated and the people whom they had acquired**
UST and everything that they owned, including servants {and everything else} they had acquired

The word **possessions** is general here and includes slaves, animals, furniture, clothes, and money, but none in particular. Alternate translation: [everything that they owned, including slaves and everything else they had gotten]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **in Haran**
UST in {the city of} Haran

Alternate translation: [in the city of Haran] or [in Haran City]

ULT **to the land of Canaan**
UST to the region of Canaan

Alternate translation: [to the land called Canaan] or [to Canaan Land]

ULT **Then they came to the land of Canaan**
UST When they arrived there

Alternate translation: [Then they arrived in Canaan] or [When they reached Canaan] or [When they got there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	He
Sarai	Sarai
Lot	Lot
Haran	Haran
land	to the region of
Canaan	Canaan
land	When they arrived there
Canaan	When they arrived there

Genesis 12:6

ULT	UST
Then Abram passed through the land as far as the place of Shechem, to the terebinth tree of Moreh. And the Canaanites were in the land at that time.	*they traveled through that region as far as the city of Shechem, to Moreh's oak tree. At that time the Canaanites were still living in that land,*

ULT **Then Abram passed**
UST they traveled

Abram is the only one named here because he is in focus. However, your translation should not sound like he traveled alone in verse 6. Also make sure that the way you begin this verse in your translation fits with the way you ended verse 5. Alternate translation: [Abram went] or [Abram and his family went] or [they went]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **through the land**
UST through that region

See how you translated **land** in verse 5. Alternate translation: [through that land]

ULT **as far as**
UST as far as

Alternate translation: [until they arrived at]

ULT **the place of Shechem**
UST the city of Shechem

Alternate translation: [the sacred place at the city of Shechem]

ULT **to the terebinth tree of Moreh**
UST to Moreh's oak tree

Moreh is probably the name of the person who owned the land where the terebinth tree was. A terebinth tree is a large, broadleaf, flowering tree in the cashew family that can grow to a height of 5 to 12 meters (16 to 40 feet). The Hebrew words for "oak" and **terebinth** are similar, so many translations (including LXX) translate this as "oak tree" here. Notice, however, that oak trees and terebinth trees are from two different families of trees.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **And the Canaanites {were} in the land at that time**
UST At that time the Canaanites were {still living} in that land

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to put the time phrase **at that time** first in this sentence. Alternate translation: [At that time the Canaanites were still living in that region]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	they traveled
land	through that region
Shechem	Shechem
the terebinth tree of	oak
Canaanites	Canaanites
land	land

Genesis 12:7

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh appeared to Abram and said, "To your offspring I will give this land." So he built an altar there to Yahweh, who had appeared to him.	*but Yahweh came to Abram and said to him, "I will give this land to your descendants." So Abram built an altar out of large stones in that place and burned sacrifices on it to worship Yahweh, because Yahweh had appeared to him there.*

ULT **Then Yahweh appeared to Abram**
UST but Yahweh came to Abram

Notice that the text does not specify in what form or in what way God appeared to Abram, so your translation should not do that either. Also, Yahweh's promise in verse 7 to give Canaan to Abram's descendants contrasts with the fact that the Canaanites were still occupying that region (verse 6). Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh made his presence known to Abram] or [but Yahweh visited Abram]

ULT **and said**
UST and said to him

Alternate translation: [and promised to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **To your offspring I will give this land**
UST I will give this land to your descendants

In the Hebrew text, the phrase "to your offspring" is emphasized by its position at the beginning of this quote. However, for some languages it may be clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses and say, "I will give this land to your descendants." Alternate translation: [I will give this land to your offspring]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **So he built an altar**
UST So Abram built an altar out of large stones

Consider what is the best way to refer to Abram here in your language. Alternate translation: [So he made an altar out of large stones] or [So he built a sacrifice mound with stones]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **there**
UST in that place

Alternate translation: [near the tree]

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST and burned sacrifices on it to worship Yahweh

Alternate translation: [and burned sacrifices on it to thank and worship Yahweh]

> ULT **who had appeared to him**
> UST because Yahweh had appeared to him there

See how you translated **appeared** earlier in verse 7. Alternate translation: [who had come to him there] or [because he had come to him there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Abram	Abram
To your offspring	to your descendants
land	land
altar	altar
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 12:8

ULT	UST
Then from there he went on to the mountains to the east of Bethel and pitched his tents, with Bethel on the west and Ai on the east. And there he built an altar to Yahweh, and he called on the name of Yahweh.	*From the city of Shechem, Abram and his family moved south to the hill country that was east of the town of Bethel. They set up their tents between Bethel to the west and the town of Ai to the east. There Abram built another altar and burned sacrifices on it to worship Yahweh, and he addressed Yahweh by his name as he worshiped him.*

ULT **Then from there he went on**
UST From {the city of} Shechem, Abram {and his family} moved south

Alternate translation: [From the place of Shechem, he and his family moved south to]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to the mountains to the east of Bethel**
UST to the hill country that was east of {the town of} Bethel

Alternate translation: [the mountainous region east of the town of Bethel]

ULT **and pitched his tents**
UST They set up their tents

Moses is using the phrase **pitched his tents** as a common expression of his culture to mean "set up his tents." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and put up his tents there] or [They set up their camp]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **with Bethel on the west and Ai on the east**
UST between Bethel to the west and {the town of} Ai to the east

Alternate translation: [Bethel was to the west of them and the town of Ai was to the east]

ULT **And there he built**
UST There Abram built

Alternate translation: [There he made]

ULT **an altar**
UST another altar

See how you translated **altar** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [another sacrifice mound]

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST and burned sacrifices on it to worship Yahweh

See how you translated **to Yahweh** in verse 7.

ULT **and he called on the name of Yahweh**
UST and he addressed Yahweh by {his} name as he worshiped him

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 4:26. Alternate translation: [and he praised him by name] or [he addressed him by his name as he praised him] or [he praised him]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel
tents	tents
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel
Ai	Ai
altar	altar
Yahweh	Yahweh
called	and he addressed Yahweh by {his} name as he worshiped him
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 12:9

ULT	UST
Then Abram set out and continued to travel toward the Negeb.	*Then Abram and his family moved from place to place southward until they reached the Negeb Desert.*

ULT Then Abram set out and continued to travel
UST Then Abram {and his family} moved from place to place

Alternate translation: [After that, he and his family traveled in stages] or [Then he and his family moved from place to place]

ULT toward the Negeb
UST southward until they reached the Negeb Desert

The Hebrew word **Negeb** can mean “south” or “dry country,” so some translations translate the meaning. But most translations transliterate the Hebrew name (as **Negeb** or “Negeb”) as they do with other names in the Bible. Alternate translation: [south toward the Negeb Wilderness] or [southward until they reached the Southern Wilderness]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
Negeb	Negeb

Genesis 12:10

ULT	UST
Then there was a famine in the land, so Abram went down to Egypt to sojourn there because the famine was heavy in the land.	*Now there was a serious food shortage in that region. It was so severe that Abram and his family left there and went down to the country of Egypt to live for a while.*

ULT **Then there was**
UST Now there was

This clause gives the setting for the rest of the sentence. Translate this in a way that is natural in your language.

ULT **in the land**
UST in that region

Alternate translation: [in that area] or [in the Negeb Desert]

ULT **so Abram went down**
UST Abram {and his family} {left there and} went down

The phrase **went down** refers to the fact that Egypt is lower in elevation than Canaan (verse 12:5). It is also located southwest of Canaan. Alternate translation: [so Abram and his family traveled southwest] or [so Abram and his family moved further south]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to Egypt**
UST to {the country of} Egypt

Alternate translation: [to the land of Egypt]

ULT **to sojourn there**
UST to live for a while

Alternate translation: [to live there for a time]

ULT **because the famine {was} heavy**
UST It was so severe that

Alternate translation: [because the food shortage was very severe]

ULT **in the land**
UST in that region

For some languages it may be more natural to put **in the land** near the beginning of this verse and say, “Now in that region there was a famine that was so severe that Abram and his family left there and went down to the country of Egypt to live for a while.” Alternate translation: [in that land] or [in the Negeb Desert so they could not survive there]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
famine	a serious food shortage
land	in that region
Abram	Abram
Egypt	Egypt
famine	הָרָעָב
land	בָּאָרֶץ

Genesis 12:11

ULT	UST
And it happened that as he was about to enter Egypt, then he said to Sarai his wife, "Behold please, I know that you are a woman beautiful in appearance.	*Just before they arrived in Egypt, Abram said to his wife Sarai, "Please listen to me: you are a very beautiful woman.*

ULT **And it happened that as he was about to enter Egypt**
UST Just before they arrived in Egypt

Alternate translation: [As they approached Egypt]

ULT **then he said to Sarai his wife**
UST Abram said to his wife Sarai

Alternate translation: [he told his wife Sarai]

ULT **Behold please**
UST Please listen to me

The author is using the term **Behold** to focus Sarai's attention on what he is about to say to her. Your language may have a comparable expression that you could use in your translation.
Alternate translation: [Listen please] or [Please listen to this:]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **I know that you {are} a woman beautiful in appearance**
UST you {are} a very beautiful woman

Alternate translation: [I know that you are a very beautiful woman]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt
Sarai	Sarai
know	יָדַעְתִּי

Genesis 12:12

ULT	UST
So it will happen when the Egyptians see you, then they will say, 'This is his wife,' and they will kill me but let you live.	*When the people in Egypt see you with me, they will say that you are my wife. Then they will kill me and let you live so that they can take you.*

ULT **So it will happen when**
UST When

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin this sentence with or without a conjunction (**So**). Alternate translation: [So when]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the Egyptians**
UST the people in Egypt

Alternate translation: [the people of Egypt]

ULT **see you**
UST see you with me

Alternate translation: [notice you with me]

ULT **then they will say, 'This {is} his wife**
UST they will say that you are my wife

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [they will know that you are my wife]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **and they will kill me but let you live**
UST Then they will kill me and let you live so that they can take you

The term translated as **and** indicates that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Alternate translation: [Then they will kill me but let you live, so that they can have you]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egyptians	Egypt
kill	kill

Genesis 12:13

ULT	UST
Please say that you are my sister so that it will go well for me for your sake and my life will live because of you."	*So please tell people that you are my sister so that they will treat me well because of you and let me live."*

ULT **that you {are} my sister**
UST that you {are} my sister

If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this as a direct quotation. Consider whether an indirect quote or direct quote is best here in your language. Alternate translation, following a comma: ["I am his sister"]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **so that it will go well for me**
UST so that they will treat me well

Alternate translation: [so that I will be treated well] or [so that people will treat me well]

ULT **and my life will live because of you**
UST and let me live

For some languages it is not natural to include the phrase **because of you** here, because it repeats the same idea as **for your sake** in the previous clause. Alternate translation: [and my life will be spared by them] or [and they will spare my life] or [and they will let me live]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
it will go well	they will treat … well

Genesis 12:14

ULT	UST
Then it happened, when Abram came into Egypt, then the Egyptians saw the woman, that she was very beautiful.	*That is exactly what happened: When Abram and his family arrived in the country of Egypt, the people there noticed that Sarai was truly very beautiful.*

ULT when Abram came into Egypt
UST When Abram {and his family} arrived in {the country of} Egypt

Although Abram is in focus here, your translation should not sound like he was traveling alone.
Alternate translation: [When Abram and his family entered the land of Egypt]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT then the Egyptians saw
UST the people there noticed

Alternate translation: [the Egyptian people saw] or [the people living there observed]

ULT the woman, that she {was} very beautiful
UST that Sarai was {truly} very beautiful

Alternate translation: [that the woman with him was indeed very beautiful] or [that Sarai was indeed very beautiful]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
Egypt	Egypt
Egyptians	the people there

Genesis 12:15

ULT	UST
And the officials of Pharaoh saw her, so they praised her to Pharaoh, and the woman was taken into Pharaoh's house.	*When some officers under Pharaoh the king of Egypt noticed her, they highly recommended her to him. So he had them bring her to his palace to be one of his wives.*

ULT **And the officials of Pharaoh saw her**
UST When some officers under Pharaoh {the king of Egypt} noticed her

The term **officials** is general and refers to leaders or rulers who were under Pharaoh and served him. Alternate translation: [Some of the officers who ruled under the Egyptian king spotted her] or [When some officials of Pharaoh the king of Egypt saw her]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **so they praised her to Pharaoh**
UST they highly recommended her to him

Alternate translation: [so they told him how beautiful she was]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and the woman was taken**
UST So he had them bring her

If your language does not use a passive form like **was taken**, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and they brought the woman] or [So he had them bring Sarai]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **into Pharaoh's house**
UST to his palace to be one of his wives

Alternate translation: [into Pharoah's palace to become his wife]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
officials	some officers under
Pharaoh	king of Egypt
praised	they highly recommended
Pharaoh	him
Pharaoh	to his palace to be one of his wives
house	to his palace to be one of his wives

Genesis 12:16

ULT	UST
Then he treated Abram well for her sake, so that he had flocks and herds and male donkeys and male slaves and female slaves and female donkeys and camels.	*The king thought that Abram was Sarai's brother, so he treated him well. He gave him many sheep and cattle, as well as men and women servants, male and female donkeys, and camels.*

ULT **Then he treated Abram well for her sake, so that he had**
UST The king thought that Abram was Sarai's brother, so he treated him well. He gave him

The first pronoun **he**, used in **he treated**, refers to the king. The second use of the pronoun **he** refers to Abram. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [so that Abram had] or [and Abram acquired from him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **flock{s} and herds**
UST many sheep and cattle

Alternate translation: [flocks of sheep and herds of cattle]

ULT **and male donkeys and male slaves and female slaves and female donkeys**
UST as well as men and women servants, male and female donkeys

Alternate translation: [as well as men and women servants, and male and female donkeys]

ULT **and camels**
UST and camels

Alternate translation: [and larger load-bearing animals called camels]

ULT **Then he treated Abram well for her sake**
UST The king thought that Abram was Sarai's brother, so he treated him well

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh treated Abram well because of her]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
he treated … well	he treated him well
Abram	he treated him well
flocks	many sheep
and herds	cattle
donkeys	donkeys
and male slaves	servants
and female slaves	servants
donkeys	donkeys
camels	camels

Genesis 12:17

ULT	UST
But Yahweh struck Pharaoh and his house with great plagues on account of Sarai the wife of Abram.	*But since King Pharaoh had taken Abram's wife Sarai, Yahweh afflicted the king and his family with severe illnesses.*

ULT **with great plagues**
UST with severe illnesses

Alternate translation: [with severe diseases]

ULT **on account of Sarai the wife of Abram**
UST since {King} Pharaoh had taken Abram's wife Sarai

For many languages it is clearer and more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "But since King Pharaoh had taken Abram's wife Sarai, Yahweh afflicted the king and his family with severe illnesses."

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Pharaoh	the king
house	his family
Sarai	Sarai
Abram	Abram

Genesis 12:18

ULT	UST
So Pharaoh called for Abram and said, "What is this you have done to me? Why did you not tell me that she was your wife?	*So the king summoned Abram before him and said to him, "You have treated me very badly! You should have told me that Sarai is your wife!*

ULT and said
UST and said to him

Make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits with the way that you translate the following quote. Alternate translation: [and asked him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT What {is} this you have done to me
UST You have treated me very badly

Pharaoh uses rhetorical questions in verses 18 and 19 to express his anger at what Abram had done; he does not expect Abram to answer him. Some languages must use statements or exclamations here instead. Alternate translation: [You have treated me very badly!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT Why did you not tell me that she {was} your wife
UST You should have told me that Sarai {is} your wife

Alternate translation: [You should have informed me that she is your wife!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
called	So … summoned … before him
Abram	Abram

Genesis 12:19

ULT	UST
Why did you say, ‘She is my sister,’ so that I took her to me as a wife? Now then, behold, your wife. Take her and go!”	*You should not have said that she is your sister, so that I ended up taking her to be my wife! So now, here is your wife. Take her and leave my country!”*

ULT **Why did you say, ‘She {is} my sister**
UST You should not have said that she {is} your sister

Pharaoh uses this rhetorical question to scold Abram and express his anger at him. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Also consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [Why did you say that she is your sister?] or [You should not have pretended that she is your sister!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **so that I took her to me as a wife**
UST so that I ended up taking her to be my wife

Alternate translation: [so that I chose her to be a wife!] or [I believed you and took her to be my wife!]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Now then**
UST So now

Alternate translation: [Now therefore]

ULT **behold, your wife**
UST here is your wife

Alternate translation: [here is your wife back]

ULT **behold, your wife**
UST here is your wife

Pharaoh is using the term **behold** to focus Abram’s attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you could use in your translation. Alternate translation: [look, I return your wife]
Support Reference: Metaphor

Genesis 12:20

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh commanded his men concerning him, and they sent him away and his wife and everything that belonged to him.	*Then King Pharaoh ordered some of his soldiers to make sure that Abram left, so they forced him to leave the country, along with his wife and everything that he owned.*

ULT **his men**
UST some of his soldiers

Alternate translation: [some of his men]

ULT **concerning him**
UST to make sure that Abram left

Throughout this verse, make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to. Alternate translation: [about Abram] or [with regard to Abram]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and they sent him away**
UST so they forced him to leave the country

Alternate translation: [so they deported him from their country] or [so they expelled him from Egypt]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **and everything that {belonged} to him**
UST and everything that he owned

The phrase **everything that belonged to him** represents all the possessions that Abram owned, including his slaves, animals, and everything else that he owned, but it does not refer to any one particular possession. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a more natural expression. Alternate translation: [and all that he had] or [all his possessions]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 13

Genesis 13:1

ULT	UST
Then Abram went up from Egypt, he and his wife and everything that belonged to him, and Lot with him, to the Negeb.	*So Abram left the country of Egypt and traveled back to the Negeb Desert. He took with him his wife and everything that they owned, and also his nephew Lot.*

ULT **Then Abram went up from Egypt, he and his wife and everything that {belonged} to him, and Lot with him, to the Negeb**

UST So Abram left {the country of} Egypt {and traveled} {back} to the Negeb {Desert}. {He took} with him his wife and everything that they owned, and also {his nephew} Lot

For many languages it is more natural to put the phrase **to the Negeb** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [Then Abram went up from Egypt and traveled back to the Negeb Wilderness, along with his wife and everything that belonged to him. His nephew Lot also went with them]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Then Abram went up from Egypt**

UST So Abram left {the country of} Egypt

The Negeb Wilderness (or Desert) is northeast in direction from Egypt and is higher in elevation, so **Abram went up from Egypt**. Compare how you translated **down** in 12:10 when Abram traveled in the opposite direction. Alternate translation: [So Abram went northeast from the country of Egypt] or [Then Abram departed from the land of Egypt]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
Egypt	Egypt
Lot	Lot
Negeb	Negeb

Genesis 13:2

ULT	UST
And Abram was very wealthy in livestock, in silver, and in gold.	*By that time Abram had become very rich, so that he owned many livestock and much silver and gold.*

ULT And Abram
UST By that time Abram

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information about Abram. Alternate translation: [Now] or [By then, Abram]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT in silver, and in gold
UST and {much} silver and gold

In this context, “silver and gold” includes the metals themselves as well as objects made out of the metals, but not coins (since coins did not exist at that time). See how you translated **gold** in Genesis 2:11.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
livestock	livestock
silver	silver
gold	gold

Genesis 13:3

ULT	UST
Then he went on his journeys from the Negeb as far as Bethel, to the place where his tents had been at the beginning, between Bethel and Ai,	*From the Negeb Desert he and his family traveled from place to place northward until they came to the town of Bethel, to the place where he had lived in tents before, between the towns of Bethel and Ai.*

ULT **from the Negeb**
UST From the Negeb Desert

See how you translated **the Negeb**, the name of a desert place, in verse 1. Alternate translation: [From the Southern Desert]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Then he went on his journeys**
UST he {and his family} traveled from place to place northward

It is assumed that his whole family is traveling with Abram. Consider whether or not you need to make that explicit in your language. Alternate translation: [Abram and his family moved from place to place northward] or [Abram and his family continued traveling northward]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **at the beginning**
UST before

Alternate translation: [previously] or [the first time he was there]

ULT **Then he went on his journeys from the Negeb as far as Bethel, to the place where his tents had been at the beginning, between Bethel and Ai**
UST From the Negeb {Desert} he {and his family} traveled from place to place {northward} {until they came} to {the town of} Bethel, to the place where he had lived in tents before, between {the towns of} Bethel and Ai

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put the phrase **between Bethel and Ai** earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [Then from the Negeb Desert, Abram and his family continued traveling northward until they came to the place between the towns of Bethel and Ai where they had camped in tents previously]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Negeb	Negeb
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel
tents	tents
Bethel	Bethel
Ai	Ai

Genesis 13:4

ULT	UST
to the place of the altar that he had made there at first, and there Abram called on the name of Yahweh.	*That was the same place where he had previously built an altar. There again he sacrificed animals on the altar and worshiped Yahweh by name.*

ULT **to the place of the altar that he had made there at first**
UST That was the {same} place where he had previously built an altar

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also see how you translated **altar** in Genesis 8:20 and Genesis 12:7–8. Alternate translation: [to the same site where he had made an altar before] or [That is the same site where he had first made an altar]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
altar	altar
Abram	There {again} he {sacrificed animals on the altar and} worshiped
called	There {again} he {sacrificed animals on the altar and} worshiped
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 13:5

ULT	UST
Now Lot, who was traveling with Abram, also had flocks and herds and tents.	*Lot was traveling with his uncle Abram, and he and his family also owned many sheep and cattle, as well as many tents.*

ULT **Now Lot, who was traveling with Abram, also had**
UST Lot was traveling with {his uncle} Abram, and he {and his family} also owned

The word **Now** introduces more background information for the new episode. For some languages it is more natural to leave **Now** implied and just use a paragraph break. Alternate translation: [Lot was traveling with his uncle, Abram, and he and his family also had]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lot	Lot
Abram	Abram
flocks	many sheep
and herds	cattle
tents	tents

Genesis 13:6

ULT	UST
But the land could not support them while they stayed together, because their possessions were great, so that they were not able to stay together.	*In fact, there was not enough land to have enough food and water for both families and their animals if they lived in the same area. They each owned so many servants and animals that it was not possible for them to all live near each other.*

ULT **But the land could not support them**
UST In fact, there was not enough land to have enough food and water for both families and their animals

Alternate translation: [As a result, the land could not provide them all with the necessary food and water] or [In fact, there was not enough land to provide adequate food and water for both families and all their animals]

ULT **while they stayed together**
UST if they lived in the same area

Alternate translation: [if they lived near each other]

ULT **because their possessions were great**
UST They each owned so many servants and animals

The phrase **their possessions** represents all that they owned in general, not one particular possession. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a more natural expression. Their livestock required much land to graze and much water to drink. The word “possessions” may also include their many servants. Alternate translation: [because their belongings were so abundant] or [because they owned so many servants and livestock] or [They each owned so many servants and livestock]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **so that they were not able to stay together**
UST that it was not possible for them to {all} live near each other

The words translated as **so that** indicate that what follows is a result of what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a result of what came before. Also see how you translated **stayed together** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [that they could not all live in the same area]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land

Genesis 13:7

ULT	UST
Then there was strife between the herdsmen of Abram's livestock and the herdsmen of Lot's livestock. And the Canaanites and the Perizzites were living in the land then.	*As a result, the men who took care of Abram's livestock and the men who took care of Lot's livestock started to argue with each other. Besides that, the Canaanites and the Perizzites were also living in that land at that time.*

ULT **Then there was**
UST As a result … started

Alternate translation: [At that time there was]

ULT **Then there was strife**
UST As a result … started to argue

The Hebrew word for **strife** is general in meaning and can include arguing and fighting. Some languages have a common expression for this that fits well here. Alternate translation: [there was arguing] or [Then quarreling erupted]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **And the Canaanites**
UST Besides that, the Canaanites

Alternate translation: [Also, the Canaanites] or [In addition, the Canaanites]

ULT **And the Canaanites and the Perizzites**
UST Besides that, the Canaanites and the Perizzites

See how you translated the names of people groups in Genesis 10, and see how you translated **the Canaanites** in Genesis 12:6. Alternate translation: [the Canaanite people and the Perizzite people] or [the descendants of Canaan and Perez]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **And the Canaanites and the Perizzites were living in the land then**
UST Besides that, the Canaanites and the Perizzites were {also} living in that land at that time

For some languages it is more natural to put this time phrase earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [At that time the Canaanites the and Perizzites were living in the land]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
strife	argue
the herdsmen of	the men who took care of
Abram	Abram
livestock	livestock
the herdsmen of	the men who took care of
Lot	Lot
livestock	livestock
Canaanites	Canaanites
Perizzites	Perizzites
land	land

Genesis 13:8

ULT	UST
So Abram said to Lot, "Please do not let there be strife between me and you, or between my herdsmen and your herdsmen, because we are men, brothers.	*Finally one day Abram said to Lot, "Please, since we are close relatives, we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue.*

ULT So Abram said to Lot
UST Finally {one day} Abram said to Lot

Alternate translation: [Then one day Abram spoke to Lot, saying]

ULT Please do not let there be
UST Please … we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue

Alternate translation: [Please, we should not allow] or [We need to take action in order to prevent]

ULT between me and you
UST Please … we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue

Alternate translation: [between you and me] or [between us]

ULT or between my herdsmen and your herdsmen
UST Please … we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue

See how you translated **herdsmen** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [or between the men tending my livestock and the men tending your livestock] or [or between our herdsmen]

ULT So Abram said to Lot, "Please do not let there be strife between me and you, or between my herdsmen and your herdsmen, because we {are} men, brothers
UST Finally {one day} Abram said to Lot, "Please, since we {are} close relatives, we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue

For some languages it may be better to put the clause **because we are men, brothers** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [Abram spoke to lot, saying, "Please, since we are close relatives, we must do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
Lot	Lot
strife	argue
my herdsmen	Please … we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue
your herdsmen	Please … we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue

Genesis 13:9

ULT	UST
Is not the whole land before you? Please separate from me. If you go to the left, then I will go right, or if you go to the right, then I will go left."	*Look, the entire land is available to you to choose from. Please choose where you want to live, and let's live in separate places. If you choose the land to the left of here, then I will take the land to the right. Or if you choose the land to the right of here, then I will take the land to the left."*

ULT **Is not the whole land before you**
UST Look, the entire land is available to you to choose from

Abram is using a rhetorical question to emphasize his point. He does not expect an answer from Lot. If that is not clear, you can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: [You can choose to live anywhere in this entire land!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Please separate from me**
UST Please {choose where you want to live, and} let's live in separate places

Make sure it is clear in your translation of verse 9 that Abram is being kind to Lot rather than being mean or rude.
Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **If {you go to} the left**
UST If {you choose} {the land to} the left of here

Alternate translation: [if you decide to live in the land to our left]

ULT **then I will go right**
UST then I will take {the land to} the right

Alternate translation: [then I will choose the land to the right] or [then I will live in the land to our right]

ULT **or if {you go to} the right**
UST Or if {you choose} {the land to} the right of here

Alternate translation: [Or if you decide to live in the land to our right]

ULT **then I will go left**
UST then I will take {the land to} the left

Alternate translation: [then I will choose the land to the left] or [then I will live in the land to our left]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land

Genesis 13:10

ULT	UST
Then Lot lifted his eyes and saw all the plain of the Jordan as you go toward Zoar, that all of it was well-watered, like Yahweh's garden, like the land of Egypt, before Yahweh destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.	*Lot looked all around and he noticed that the entire Jordan River Valley, all the way to the town of Zoar, had plenty of water. It was lush and green like the garden that Yahweh had planted or like the country of Egypt. That is what it was like before Yahweh destroyed the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah, which were also in that valley.*

ULT **Then Lot lifted his eyes**
UST Lot looked {all} around

Moses is using **lifted his eyes** as a common expression of his culture to mean "looked around." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [So Lot looked all around] or [Lot observed the land carefully]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and saw all the plain of the Jordan as you go {toward} Zoar, that all of it**
UST and he noticed that the entire Jordan {River} Valley, all the way to {the town of} Zoar

The word **Jordan** is the name of a river. The **plain of the Jordan** is the wide, flat valley through which the Jordan River flows between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. Alternate translation: [and he observed that the whole Jordan River Valley, all the way to the town of Zoar,]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **was well-watered**
UST had plenty of water

Alternate translation: [had a lot of water]

ULT **like Yahweh's garden**
UST It was lush and green like the garden that Yahweh had planted

See how you translated **garden** in Genesis 3:23–24. This phrase refers to the Garden of Eden. You could put that information in a footnote.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lot	Lot
Jordan	Jordan {River
Zoar	Zoar
Yahweh	Yahweh
land	or like the country of
Egypt	Egypt
Yahweh	Yahweh
destroyed	destroyed
Sodom	Sodom
Gomorrah	Gomorrah

Genesis 13:11

ULT	UST
So Lot chose for himself all the plain of the Jordan, and Lot traveled to the east, and they separated from each other.	*So Lot chose the entire Jordan River Valley for himself. Then he left Abram and moved to the east to live there. After that, Abram and Lot lived in separate places.*

ULT and Lot traveled
UST Then he {left Abram and} moved

Consider whether it is better in your language to use Lot's name or a pronoun to refer to him here. Alternate translation: [and he moved] or [Then Lot left Abram and moved]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT and they separated from each other
UST After that, Abram and Lot lived in separate places

Consider what is the best way to refer to Abram and Lot at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [So in this way they lived separately from each other] or [That is how Abram and Lot began living in separate places]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT So Lot chose for himself all the plain of the Jordan
UST So Lot chose the entire Jordan {River} Valley for himself

See how you translated **plain of the Jordan** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Then Lot chose the whole Jordan River Plain for himself] or [Then Lot decided to live in the valley that surrounded the Jordan River]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lot	Lot
Jordan	Jordan {River
Lot	Then he {left Abram and} moved

Genesis 13:12

ULT	UST
Abram settled in the land of Canaan, and Lot settled in the cities of the plain and moved his tents as far as Sodom.	*Abram stayed where he was in the region of Canaan, while Lot lived in another part of the region among the cities in the Jordan River valley and eventually moved his tents to the city of Sodom and stayed there.*

ULT **Abram settled**
UST Abram stayed where he was

Alternate translation: [Abram settled where he was] or [Abram continued to live]

ULT **in the land of Canaan**
UST in the region of Canaan

Alternate translation: [in that part of the land of Canaan]

ULT **and Lot settled**
UST while Lot lived

Alternate translation: [but Lot lived]

ULT **in the cities of the plain**
UST in another part of the region among the cities in the {Jordan River} valley

As Lot traveled, he probably lived in several different cities in the Jordan River Valley until he eventually settled in the city of Sodom Genesis 14:12. Alternate translation: [in another part of the land in the cities of the Jordan River valley] or [in another part of the land in the cities in the valley surrounding the Jordan River]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and moved his tents as far as**
UST and {eventually} moved his tents to

Alternate translation: [He eventually pitched his tents in] or [and eventually moved his tents near]

ULT **Sodom**
UST the city of Sodom and stayed there

Alternate translation: [the city of Sodom, and he settled there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
Lot	Lot
tents	tents
Sodom	Sodom

Genesis 13:13

ULT	UST
Now the men of Sodom were exceedingly wicked and sinful against Yahweh.	*But the people who lived in the city of Sodom were extremely wicked and were always sinning against Yahweh.*

ULT **Now the men of Sodom**
UST But the people {who lived} in {the city of} Sodom

The conjunction “Now” introduces background information that builds suspense for what happens to the people of Sodom later in Genesis (chapters 18–19). Consider what is the best way to begin this verse in your language.
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **Now the men of Sodom**
UST But the people {who lived} in {the city of} Sodom

The phrase **the men of Sodom** probably has a general meaning here that includes all the people of Sodom, though especially the men.
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **and sinful against Yahweh**
UST and were {always} sinning against Yahweh

Some translations treat the phrase **wicked and sinful** as a hendiadys that means “wicked sinners,” but it is best to keep the two parts of this phrase separate (like the Hebrew text does) to emphasize the people’s evil character and behavior. Alternate translation: [were terrible sinners against Yahweh] or [were always rebelling against Yahweh]

ULT **were exceedingly wicked**
UST were extremely wicked

Alternate translation: [were very evil]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sodom	Sodom
wicked	wicked
sinful	sinning
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 13:14

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said to Abram, after Lot had separated from him, "Lift up your eyes please from the place where you are, and look northward and southward and eastward and westward,	*After Lot had left Abram, Yahweh said to Abram, "Look all around you from the place where you live. Look north, south, east, and west.*

ULT **Lift up your eyes please**
UST Look {all} around you

The Hebrew word for **please** is used to show politeness when making a proposal or to soften a command. It can also be translated as "now" or omitted, depending on the context. Your translation here should not sound like God is begging. See how you translated the common expression "lifted his eyes" in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Look around now]
Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **Lift up your eyes please from the place where you {are}, and look**
UST Look {all} around you from the place where you {live}. Look

For some languages it is more natural to put this phrase first in this quote. Alternate translation: [From where you are standing, lift up your eyes please and look all around you,]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **northward and southward and eastward and westward**
UST north, south, east, and west

Alternate translation: [in all directions: north, south, east, and west] or [around you in every direction]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Abram	Abram
Lot	Lot
and southward	south

Genesis 13:15

ULT	UST
because all the land that you see I will give to you and to your offspring forever.	*All the land that you see I will give to you and your descendants to own forever.*

ULT **because all the land that you see**
UST All the land that you see

Alternate translation: [All that land, everything in sight]

ULT **I will give to you and to your offspring**
UST I will give to you and your descendants

See how you translated **offspring** in Genesis 12:7.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
and to your offspring	and your descendants
forever	forever

Genesis 13:16

ULT	UST
And I will make your offspring like the dust of the earth, which if anyone were able to count the dust of the earth, your offspring could also be counted.	*In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be as numerous as the specks of dust on the earth. No one will be able to count how many descendants you have, just as no one can count how many specks of dust there are.*

ULT **And I will make your offspring like the dust of the earth, which if anyone were able to count the dust of the earth, your offspring could also be counted**

UST In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be as {numerous as} the {specks of} dust on the earth. No one will be able to count how many descendants you have, just as no one can count how many {specks of} dust there are

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the last two clauses. Alternate translation: [No one will be able to count how many offspring you have, just as no one can count how many particles of dirt there are]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And I will make your offspring**

UST In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be

Alternate translation: [For I will also cause your descendants to be] or [In fact, I will also give you so many offspring that they will seem]

ULT **like the dust of the earth**

UST as {numerous as} the {specks of} dust on the earth

See how you translated **dust** in Genesis 3:19. Alternate translation: [as numerous as the specks of dirt on the earth]

ULT **which if anyone were able to count**

UST just as no one can count how many {specks of} dust there are

The Hebrew text has a contrary-to-fact clause here which implies that it is impossible for anyone to count all the specks of dust. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [just as it is impossible to count] or [just as no one is able to count]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

ULT **like the dust of the earth**

UST as {numerous as} the {specks of} dust on the earth

The expression **the dust of the earth** contains extra information that may be unnatural to express in some languages. For some languages it is not natural to repeat “of the earth” here. If this is true of your language, you could shorten the expression, doing what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [to be as many as all the dirt specks] or [to be as plentiful as how many specks of dirt there are]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your offspring	In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be
earth	earth
earth	just as no one can count how many {specks of} dust there are
your offspring	No one will be able to count how many descendants you have

Genesis 13:17

ULT	UST
Get up and walk through the land, through its length and through its width, because to you I am giving it."	*So now, start walking through the land in all directions. Go throughout the entire land and look it over, because I am giving it all to you."*

ULT **Get up and walk**
UST So now, start walking

The phrase **Get up** may imply that Abram was sitting down, but it probably just means that God is telling him to start walking through the land. Alternate translation: [Now go walk]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **through the land**
UST through the land in all directions

Alternate translation: [all over the land]

ULT **through its length and through its width**
UST Go throughout the entire land and look it over

Speaker is referring to all of the land by naming two extremes, walking **through its length and through its width**. Alternate translation: [from end to end and side to side] or [Walk throughout the entire land, looking it over]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **because to you I am giving it**
UST because I am giving it {all} to you

In the Hebrew text, the phrase **to you** is before the verb to emphasize that God is giving it to Abram. In your translation, communicate this emphasis in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [because you are the one I am giving it to] or [for it is to you that I am giving it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land

Genesis 13:18

ULT	UST
So Abram moved his tents and went and settled by the terebinth trees of Mamre that were near Hebron, and there he built an altar to Yahweh.	*Then Abram obeyed Yahweh and moved his tents and settled near the oak trees on the land owned by a man named Mamre, near the city of Hebron. There he built an altar out of stones and burned sacrifices on it to thank and worship Yahweh.*

ULT **So Abram moved his tents**
UST Then Abram {obeyed Yahweh and} moved his tents

Abram obeyed God, but we do not know if he did everything that God commanded (verse 17) before he moved his tents near Hebron (verse 18), or if moving his tents was the first step in obeying what God told him to do. It is best to keep this general in your translation (as the Hebrew text does). Also see how you translated the phrase **moved his tents** in verse 12. Alternate translation: [Then Abram did what Yahweh commanded and moved his tents] or [Abram obeyed Yahweh and relocated his tents]

ULT **and went and settled**
UST and settled

Alternate translation: [and went to live]

ULT **by the terebinth trees of Mamre**
UST near the oak trees {on the land} owned by {a man named} Mamre

See how you translated **terebinth** in Genesis 12:6. Alternate translation: [near the terebinth trees on the land owned by a man named Mamre]

ULT **and there he built an altar**
UST There he built an altar out of stones

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:7–8

ULT **to Yahweh**
UST and burned sacrifices on it to {thank and} worship Yahweh

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:7 and how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 8:20 and 12:8. Alternate translation: [and offered sacrifices on it to thank and worship Yahweh]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
tents	tents
by the terebinth trees of	oak
Hebron	Hebron
altar	altar
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 14

Genesis 14:1

ULT	UST
Now it happened in the days of Amraphel king of Shinar, Arioch king of Ellasar, Chedorlaomer king of Elam, and Tidal king of the Goiim,	*During that time Amraphel was the king over the land of Shinar, Arioch was the king over Ellasar, Chedorlaomer was the king over the land of Elam, and Tidal was the king over the Goiim people.*

ULT **Now it happened in the days of**
UST During that time

Alternate translation: [Then it happened that during the time when]

ULT **Amraphel king of**
UST Amraphel was the king over

The term **king** refers to the highest ruler or leader over a kingdom, which at that time was often just a city, a small region or a people group. Translate this with the best word for that in your language. Also see how you translated **Shinar** in Genesis 10:10 and 11:2. Alternate translation: [Amraphel was the ruler over] or [King Amraphel was ruling]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **Shinar**
UST the land of Shinar

Alternate translation: [the region of Shinar]

ULT **Chedorlaomer king of**
UST Chedorlaomer was … king over the

In Hebrew this king's name is pronounced **Chedorlaomer**. However in many translations it is spelled "Kedorlaomer." Be consistent with your choice throughout this chapter. Also, **Elam** refers to the land where the descendants of Shem's son Elam lived (Genesis 10:22). Alternate translation: [Chedorlaomer was the ruler over] or [King Chedorlaomer was ruling]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Elam**
UST land … Elam … the

Alternate translation: [the land of the Elamites]

ULT **and Tidal king of**
UST and Tidal was … king over the

Most translation teams transliterate the name "Goyim" (as they do other names in the Bible). Some translations translate its meaning and say, "the nations." Alternate translation: [and Tidal was the ruler over] or [and King Tidal was ruling]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

> ULT **the Goiim**
> UST Goiim people

Most translation teams transliterate the name “Goyim” (as they do other names in the Bible). Some translations translate its meaning and say “the peoples.”

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	During that time
king	king
Shinar	Shinar
king	king
king	king
Elam	Elam
king	king

Genesis 14:2

ULT	UST
they made war against Bera king of Sodom, and against Birsha king of Gomorrah, Shinab king of Admah, and Shemeber king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela, which is Zoar.	*Those four kings joined forces and went to war against five other kings, including Bera who was the king over the city of Sodom, Birsha who was the king over the city of Gomorrah, Shinab who was the king over the city of Admah, Shemeber who was the king over the city of Zeboyim, and the king over the town of Bela, which is also called Zoar.*

ULT **they made war against**
UST Those {four} kings {joined forces and} went to war against

Alternate translation: [those four kings became allies and made war] or [those four kings joined forces and went to war]

ULT **Bera king of**
UST five other kings, including Bera {who was} the king over

Alternate translation: [Bera who was the ruler over] or [King Bera who was ruling]

ULT **and against Birsha king of**
UST Birsha {who was} the king over

Alternate translation: [Birsha who was the ruler over] or [King Birsha who was ruling]

ULT **Shinab king of**
UST Shinab {who was} the king over

Alternate translation: [Shinab who was the ruler over] or [King Shinab who was ruling]

ULT **and Shemeber king of**
UST Shemeber {who was} the king over

Alternate translation: [Shemeber who was the ruler over] or [King Shemeber who was ruling]

ULT **and the king of**
UST and the king over

Alternate translation: [and the ruler over] or [and the ruler who was ruling]

ULT **which {is} Zoar**
UST which {is also called} Zoar

This town is first mentioned in Genesis 13:10, but it was not actually named Zoar until later (Genesis 19:22). You may want to put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [which is now called Zoar] or [which was later called Zoar] or [that is, Zoar]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
king	king
Sodom	Sodom
king	king
Gomorrah	Gomorrah
king	king
king	king
king	king
Zoar	Zoar

Genesis 14:3

ULT	UST
All these joined together in the Valley of Siddim, which is now the Sea of Salt.	*Those five kings all united their armies as allies and fought against the four kings in the Siddim Valley, where the Salt Sea is now.*

ULT **All these**
UST Those {five kings} all

Consider whether it is necessary to make it explicit in your translation that **these** refers to the five kings just mentioned in verse 2. Alternate translation: [These five kings all]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **joined together**
UST united their armies {as allies} and fought against the four kings

Alternate translation: [combined their forces as partners and made war against the four kings]

ULT **which {is now} the Sea of Salt**
UST where the Salt Sea is now

The Hebrew word for “sea” can also refer to a large lake. The Salt Sea, also known as the Dead Sea, is about 31 miles (50 kilometers) long and 9 miles (15 kilometers) wide. Use a term in your language for a body of water that size. Alternate translation: [which later became the Salt Sea]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Sea of	Salt Sea

Genesis 14:4

ULT	UST
For twelve years they had served Chedorlaomer, but the thirteenth year they rebelled.	*For twelve years the five kings had paid tribute to King Chedorlaomer, but in the thirteenth year they started to rebel against him.*

ULT For twelve years
UST For twelve years

This paragraph (verses 4–9) is a flashback that tells the events that led up to the war (verses 1–3). Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information. Alternate translation: [This is what happened: For twelve years] or [This is why they were fighting: During twelve years]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT they had served
UST the five kings had paid tribute to

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to the five kings (listed in verse 2) at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [the five kings had paid taxes to] or [the five kings had been subject to] or [they had been ruled by]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT but the thirteenth year
UST but in the thirteenth year

Alternate translation: [but sometime in the thirteenth year]

ULT they rebelled
UST they started to rebel against him

Alternate translation: [they began to revolt against him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
served	the five kings had paid tribute to
year	year
rebelled	rebel

Genesis 14:5

ULT	UST
Then in the fourteenth year, Chedorlaomer and the kings who were with him went and struck the Raphaites in Ashteroth-Karnaim and the Zuzites in Ham and the Emites in Shaveh-Kiriathaim	*Then during the fourteenth year King Chedorlaomer and the three kings who were his allies united their armies and went to war against all their enemies. First they defeated the Raphaites in the city of Ashteroth-Karnaim, then the Zuzites in the city of Ham, the Emites in the city of Shaveh-Kiriathaim,*

ULT **Chedorlaomer**
UST King Chedorlaomer

Alternate translation: [King Chedorlaomer]

ULT **who {were} with him**
UST who {were} his allies

Alternate translation: [who were allied with him] or [who were his partners]

ULT **went**
UST united their armies and went {to war} against all their enemies

Verses 5–7 list more enemies of King Chedorlaomer; these are in addition to the five kings mentioned in verses 2–4. Consider whether or not to make it explicit in your translation here that they were fighting all their enemies. Alternate translation: [combined their armies and went to fight against all their enemies]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and struck**
UST First they defeated

Alternate translation: [First, they conquered]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the Raphaites**
UST the Raphaites

See how you translated the names of people groups in Genesis 10:4, 13–18, and see the note about that at 10:4. Alternate translation: [the Rapha people]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and the Zuzites**
UST then the Zuzites

Alternate translation: [and the Zuzites] or [and the Zuz people]

ULT **the Emites**
UST the Emites

Alternate translation: [the Em people]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
year	year
kings	kings

Genesis 14:6

ULT	UST
and the Horites in their hill country of Seir as far as El Paran, which is by the wilderness.	*and the Horites who lived in the Seir Mountains all the way to the city of El Paran, which is located near the desert.*

ULT **and the Horites**
UST and the Horites

Alternate translation: [and the Hor people]

ULT **in their hill country of Seir**
UST who lived in the Seir Mountains

Alternate translation: [who lived in the hill country of the region of Seir] or [who lived in the Seir Hills]

ULT **which {is} by**
UST which {is located} near

Alternate translation: [which is located beside] or [which is on the edge of]

ULT **the wilderness**
UST the desert

A wilderness is a dry, rocky area where few plants grow and few people live. See how you translated **wilderness** in Genesis 12:9 and 13:1,3 (if you made that explicit in those verses).
Alternate translation: [a desert]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	desert

Genesis 14:7

ULT	UST
Then they turned back and came to En Mishpat, which is Kadesh, and they struck the entire territory of the Amalekites and also the Amorites, who were living in Hazezon Tamar.	*Next those four kings and their armies turned around and went to the city of En Mishpat, which is also called Kadesh. They conquered the entire territory where the Amalekites lived, as well as the Amorites, who lived in the city of Hazezon Tamar.*

ULT **Then they turned back**
UST Next those {four} kings {and their armies} turned around

Alternate translation: [Next the four kings and their armies]

ULT **Then they turned back**
UST Next those {four} kings {and their armies} turned around

Alternate translation: [started to return home]

ULT **which {is} Kadesh**
UST which {is also called} Kadesh

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [which is now called Kadesh] or [which was later called Kadesh] or [that is, Kadesh]

ULT **and they struck**
UST They conquered

Alternate translation: [They defeated]

ULT **the entire territory of the Amalekites**
UST the entire territory where the Amalekites lived

Alternate translation: [the whole area where the Amalekites lived] or [… where the Amalek people group lived]

ULT **and also the Amorites**
UST as well as the Amorites

Be consistent here with how you translated **Amorites** in Genesis 10:16. Alternate translation: [as well as the Amor people group]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Amalekites	Amalekites
Amorites	Amorites
in Hazezon	in {the city of} Hazezon

Genesis 14:8

ULT	UST
Then the king of Sodom, and the king of Gomorrah, and the king of Admah, and the king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela, which is Zoar, went out into the Valley of Siddim and arranged themselves for battle	*Then the king over the city of Sodom, the king over the city of Gomorrah, the king over the city of Admah, the king over the city of Zeboiim, and the king over the town of Bela, which is also called Zoar, marched out with their armies into the Siddim Valley and got ready to fight*

ULT **Then … went out**
UST Then … marched out with their armies

Verse 8 is talking about the same battle that is mentioned in verse 2, except it leaves out the names of the kings. Make sure in your translation that it does not sound like a different battle.
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **the king of Sodom, and the king of Gomorrah, and the king of Admah, and the king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela**
UST the king over {the city of} Sodom, the king over {the city of} Gomorrah, the king over {the city of} Admah, the king over {the city of} Zeboiim, and the king over {the town of} Bela

Be consistent in verse 8 with how you spelled the names of these cities in verse 2 and in Genesis 10:19. Alternate translation: [the kings over the cities of Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Bela]

ULT **which {is} Zoar**
UST which {is also called} Zoar

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [which is now called Zoar] or [that is, Zoar]

ULT **Then … went out**
UST Then … marched out with their armies

Alternate translation: [went out with their armies]

ULT **into the Valley of Siddim**
UST into the Siddim Valley

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3.

ULT **and arranged themselves for battle**
UST and got ready to fight

The phrase **and arranged themselves for battle** could mean: (1) that they took their positions for battle. Alternate translation: [and prepared to fight]; or (2) that they joined together in battle. Alternate translation: [began to wage war]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
king	king
Sodom	Sodom
king	king
Gomorrah	Gomorrah
king	king
king	king
Zoar	Zoar

Genesis 14:9

ULT	UST
against Chedorlaomer king of Elam, and Tidal king of Goiim, and Amraphel king of Shinar, and Arioch king of Ellasar, four kings against the five.	*against Chedorlaomer who was the king over the land of Elam, Tidal who was the king over the Goiim, Amraphel who was the king over the land of Shinar, and Arioch who was the king over the kingdom of Ellasar. Then the four kings attacked the five kings and started defeating them.*

ULT **against Chedorlaomer king of**
UST against Chedorlaomer {who was} the king over

The same kings (and the places they ruled) that are listed here in verse 9 are listed in verse 1, but in a different order. Be consistent here with how you spelled the names there. Alternate translation: [against Chedorlaomer who was the ruler over] or [against King Chedorlaomer who was ruling]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Elam**
UST the land of Elam

Alternate translation: [the region of Elam]

ULT **and Tidal king of**
UST Tidal {who was} the king over

Alternate translation: [Tidal who was the ruler over] or [King Tidal who was ruling]

ULT **Goiim**
UST the Goiim

Be consistent here with how you translated this people group name in verse 1. Alternate translation: [the Goyim people]

ULT **and Amraphel king of**
UST Amraphel {who was} the king over

Alternate translation: [Amraphel who was the ruler over] or [King Amraphel, who was ruling]

ULT **Shinar**
UST the land of Shinar

Alternate translation: [the region of Shinar]

ULT **and Arioch king of**
UST and Arioch {who was} the king over

Alternate translation: [and Arioch, who was the ruler over] or [and King Arioch, who was ruling]

ULT **Ellasar**
UST the kingdom of Ellasar

Alternate translation: [the city of Ellasar]

ULT **four kings against**
UST Then the four kings attacked

Alternate translation: [It was four kings who started fighting against] or [Then those four kings attacked]

ULT **the five**
UST the five {kings} and started defeating them

It is implied in verse 10 that the four kings were gaining the victory over the five kings. If that is not clear, you could make that explicit here.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
king	king
Elam	Elam
king	king
king	king
Shinar	Shinar
king	king
kings	kings

Genesis 14:10

ULT	UST
Now the Valley of Siddim had many tar pits, and the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled, and they fell there. And those who remained fled to the hill country.	*Now there were many tar pits in the Siddim Valley. As the kings over the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah and their soldiers were running away from the battle, some of their soldiers died there in the tar pits. Those who escaped ran away to the mountains to hide.*

ULT **Now the Valley of Siddim {had} many tar pits**
UST Now there were many tar pits in the Siddim Valley

The word **Now** indicates a change of topic and introduces background information. For some languages it is more natural to omit that word and just use a paragraph break. Also be consistent here with how you translated **the Valley of Siddim** in verses 3 and 8, and how you translated **tar** in Genesis 11:3. Alternate translation: [The Siddim Valley was full of tar pits] or [There were many tar pits in the Siddim Valley]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **and the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled**
UST As the kings over {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah {and their soldiers} were running away from the battle

It is assumed here that the kings were accompanied by their armies. If that is not understood, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [The kings of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah and their armies ran away from the battle]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and they fell there**
UST some {of their soldiers} died there in the tar pits

The idiom **they fell there** could mean: (1) that they died there because of the tar pits. Alternate translation: [some of their soldiers were died from falling into the tar pits] or [they fell into the tar pits and died]; or (2) that some jumped into the tar pits to hide, but died in the pit. Alternate translation: [and those who tried to hide in the tar pits died there]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and they fell there**
UST some {of their soldiers} died there in the tar pits

By **they**, the author means the king of **Gomorrah** but not the king of **Sodom**, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Notice that the king of Sodom is still alive in verse 17, so the pronoun **they** probably does not include him here, depending on how you translate **fell there**.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **And those who remained**
UST Those who escaped

The phrase **And those who remained** could mean: (1) those who were left. Alternate translation: [And those who had not died]; or (2) the other three kings and their armies. Alternate translation: [And the three other kings and their armies]

ULT **to the hill country**
UST to the mountains to hide

See how you translated **hill country** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [to the hills to hide there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pits	pits
kings	kings
Sodom	Sodom
Gomorrah	Gomorrah

Genesis 14:11

ULT	UST
Then they took all the possessions of Sodom and Gomorrah and all their food, and left.	*Then the four kings seized all the people's belongings in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah, including all their food, and carried it away.*

ULT **Then they took**
UST Then the four kings seized

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to the four kings at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [Then the four kings took by force]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **all the possessions of Sodom and Gomorrah**
UST all the {people's} belongings in {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah

The phrase **Sodom and Gomorrah** refers here to the people who lived in those cities. Consider what is the best way to refer to those people here in your language. Alternate translation: [all the possessions from the people of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and all their food**
UST including all their food

Alternate translation: [even all their food] or [as well as all their food]

ULT **and left**
UST and carried it away

Alternate translation: [and left with it all] or [and carried it all away with them] or [and went on their way]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Then they took	seized
Sodom	Sodom
Gomorrah	Gomorrah

Genesis 14:12

ULT	UST
And they took Lot and his possessions, the son of Abram's brother, when they left, since he was living in Sodom.	*They also carried off Abram's nephew Lot and his belongings, since he was living in the city of Sodom.*

ULT **And they took**
UST They also carried off

Alternate translation: [They also took with them] or [The four kings also captured]

ULT **And they took Lot and his possessions, the son of Abram's brother, when they left, since he was living in Sodom**
UST They also carried off Abram's nephew Lot and his belongings, since he was living in {the city of} Sodom

For some languages it may be more clear or more natural to put this phrase first in this sentence. Alternate translation: [Since Abram's nephew Lot was also living in the city of Sodom, the four kings captured him too, along with his possessions]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And they took	They also carried off
Lot	Lot
Abram	Abram
Sodom	Sodom

Genesis 14:13

ULT	UST
Then someone who escaped came and reported to Abram the Hebrew. And he was living by the terebinth trees of Mamre the Amorite, the brother of Eshcol and the brother of Aner, and they were owners of a covenant with Abram.	*But someone from Sodom escaped from the battle and went to Abram the Hebrew and reported to him what had happened. At that time Abram was still living near the oak trees that were owned by Mamre the Amorite, who was the brother of Eshcol and Aner. Those three men had made a pact with Abram to be his allies.*

ULT **And he**
UST At that time Abram

The words **And he** introduce background information about Abram as part of the setting for what happens next. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Now at that time he] or [At that time he]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **was living by the terebinth trees of Mamre**
UST was {still} living near the oak trees that were owned by Mamre

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 13:18. Alternate translation: [was still living by the oak trees that were owned by Mamre] or [was still living by the oak trees on the land owned by Mamre]

ULT **the Amorite**
UST the Amorite

See how you translated **Amorites** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [who was a member of the Amorite people group]

ULT **the brother of Eshcol and the brother of Aner**
UST who was the brother of Eshcol and Aner

Alternate translation: [whose brothers were Eshcol and Aner]

ULT **owners of a covenant with Abram**
UST had made a pact with Abram to be his allies

Alternate translation: [partners in a covenant with Abram to be his allies] or [allies in a pact they made together, pledging that they would help each other against their enemies]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
reported	reported
Abram	Abram
Hebrew	Hebrew
by the terebinth trees of	oak
Amorite	Amorite
covenant	had made a pact with Abram to be his allies
Abram	Abram

Genesis 14:14

ULT	UST
And when Abram heard that his relative had been taken captive, then he led out his 318 trained men who had been born in his house, and he pursued his enemies as far as Dan.	*When Abram heard that the four kings had captured his nephew Lot, he called together 318 of his servants who had been born in his household and were skilled warriors. Then together with his allies they chased after the four kings and their armies all the way to the town of Dan.*

ULT **And when Abram heard**
UST When Abram heard

Alternate translation: [When Abram found out] or [And when Abram learned]

ULT **that his relative had been taken captive**
UST that {the four kings} had captured his nephew Lot

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [that the enemy had captured his nephew]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **then he led out**
UST he called together

Alternate translation: [he assembled for battle] or [he summoned for battle]

ULT **his 318 trained men who had been born in his house**
UST 318 of his servants who had been born in his household and were skilled warriors

It is clear from verse 15 that these men were Abram's servants. Alternate translation: [318 of the servants who had been born in his household and were trained warriors] or [318 of his servants born in his household whom he had trained to fight]

ULT **and he pursued his enemies**
UST Then {together with his allies} they chased after the four kings and their armies

In this sentence the pronoun **he** refers to Abram and all those who had united with him as his allies. Alternate translation: [Then he and his men and his allies went after the invaders] or [Then, together with his allies, they all pursued the four kings and their armies]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **as far as**
UST all the way to

Alternate translation: [until they caught up with them at]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
captive	the four kings had captured
who had been born in	his servants who had been born in his household
house	his servants who had been born in his household
Dan	Dan

Genesis 14:15

ULT	UST
Then he divided against them during the night, he and his servants, and struck them and pursued them to Hobah, which is north of Damascus.	*There during the night Abram and his men divided into groups, surprise attacked the four kings and their soldiers, and defeated them. Then they chased them as far as the town of Hobah, which is located north of the city of Damascus.*

ULT **Then he divided against them during the night, he and his servants**
UST There during the night Abram and his men divided {into groups}, {surprise} attacked the {four} kings and their soldiers

Alternate translation: [Then during the night he and his servants divided into groups and unexpectedly assaulted the four kings and their soldiers]

ULT **and struck them**
UST and defeated them

Alternate translation: [and routed them]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and pursued them**
UST Then they chased them

Alternate translation: [and followed after them]

ULT **to Hobah**
UST as far as {the town of} Hobah

Alternate translation: [all the way to the town of Hobah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servants	and his men
Damascus	Damascus

Genesis 14:16

ULT	UST
And he brought back all the possessions, and he also brought back his relative Lot and his possessions, and also the women and the other people.	*As a result, Abram recovered all the people's belongings that the four kings had taken. He also rescued his nephew Lot and his belongings, as well as the women and all the other people whom the kings had captured.*

ULT **And he brought back**
UST As a result, Abram recovered

Alternate translation: [As a result, he got back] or [He recovered]

ULT **and he also brought back**
UST He also rescued

Alternate translation: [He also got back] or [He also recovered]

ULT **and his possessions**
UST and his belongings

Alternate translation: [and all that he owned]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lot	Lot

Genesis 14:17

ULT	UST
Then the king of Sodom came out to meet him in the Valley of Shaveh, which is the King's Valley, after he returned from striking Chedorlaomer and the kings who were with him.	*After Abram defeated King Chedorlaomer and the other three kings who were Chedorlaomer's allies, he started to return home. When he reached the Shaveh Valley, which is also called the King's Valley, the king over the city of Sodom came there and welcomed him.*

ULT **Then the king of Sodom came out**
UST the king over {the city of} Sodom came there

Alternate translation: [Then the king over the city of Sodom]

ULT **Then the king of Sodom came out**
UST the king over {the city of} Sodom came there

Consider whether **came** or "went" is more natural here in your language. Alternate translation: [Then the king over the city of Sodom went out]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **to meet him**
UST and welcomed him

Alternate translation: [to greet Abram] or [and welcomed the victor]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **in the Valley of Shaveh**
UST When he reached the Shaveh Valley

Alternate translation: [in the Shaveh Valley]

ULT **after he returned**
UST After … he started to return home

When Abram reached the Shaveh Valley, he was still about 20 miles (30 kilometers) north of his home, which was near the city of Hebron (Gen 13:18). Alternate translation: [as he was returning home] or [as he was going back home]

ULT **from striking**
UST Abram defeated

See how you translated **struck** in verse 15. Alternate translation: [after defeating] or [after he defeated]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Chedorlaomer**
UST King Chedorlaomer

Be consistent here with how you spelled this name previously in this chapter; see verses 1, 4–5, 9, 17. Alternate translation: [King Chedorlaomer and his army]

ULT **and the kings**
UST and the {other} {three} kings

Alternate translation: [and the armies of the other three kings]

ULT **Then the king of Sodom came out to meet him in the Valley of Shaveh, which {is} the King's Valley, after he returned from striking Chedorlaomer and the kings who {were} with him**
UST After Abram defeated {King} Chedorlaomer and the {other} {three} kings who were Chedorlaomer's allies, he started to return {home}. When he reached the Shaveh Valley, which {is also called} the King's Valley, the king over {the city of} Sodom came there and welcomed him

For some languages it may be better to put the clauses of this verse in the order that the events actually happened. Alternate translation: [After Abram defeated King Chedorlaomer and the other three kings who were Chedorlaomer's allies, Abram started to return home. When Abram reached the Shaveh Valley, that is, the King's Valley, the king over the city of Sodom went there and greeted him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
king	king
Sodom	Sodom
King	King
kings	kings

Genesis 14:18

ULT	UST
Then Melchizedek the king of Salem brought out bread and wine. And he was a priest to God Most High.	*Melchizedek who was the king over the city of Salem also came there, and he brought food and wine for Abram and his men to eat and drink. King Melchizedek was also a priest who served the God who is greater than all other gods.*

ULT Then Melchizedek the king of Salem

UST Melchizedek {who was} the king over {the city of} Salem also came there, and he

Salem is the short name for the city of Jerusalem (See: Psalm 76:2). The Shaveh Valley, where Melchizedek met Abram, was located just east of Jerusalem. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Then Melchizedek who was the king over the city of Salem, also went there, and he]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Melchizedek	Melchizedek
Melchizedek	Melchizedek
king	king
bread	food and wine for Abram and his men to eat and drink
wine	wine
priest	priest
God	God
Most High	who is greater than all other gods

Genesis 14:19

ULT	UST
And he blessed him and said, "May Abram be blessed by God Most High, the Possessor of heaven and earth.	*So he blessed Abram by saying to him, "May the greatest God, who owns heaven and earth, bless you.*

ULT **And he blessed him and said**
UST So he blessed Abram by saying to him

Make sure your translation of **blessed him and said** refers to the same event, not two separate events. Alternate translation: [He blessed Abram, saying] or [So Melchizedek blessed Abram, saying]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **May Abram be blessed**
UST May the greatest God … bless you

Alternate translation: [I pray that you, Abram, will be blessed]

ULT **May Abram be blessed by God Most High, the Possessor of heaven and earth**
UST May the greatest God, who owns heaven and earth, bless you

For some languages it may be better to switch the order of phrases in this sentence. Alternate translation: [May the greatest God, who owns heaven and earth, bless Abram] or [I pray that the most powerful God, who created heaven and earth, will bless you, Abram]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the Possessor of heaven and earth**
UST who owns heaven and earth

The Hebrew word for **Possessor** also means "Creator," which is used in many translations. Whichever one you do not use in the text you could put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [who is the Owner of heaven and earth] or [who created heaven and earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blessed	blessed
Abram	May the greatest God … bless you
blessed	bless
God	God
Most High	May the greatest God … bless you
heaven	heaven
earth	earth

Genesis 14:20

ULT	UST
And praised be God Most High, who delivered your enemies into your hand!" Then he gave to him a tenth of everything.	*Praise the greatest God, because he enabled you to defeat your enemies!" Then Abram gave King Melchizedek ten percent of everything that he had recovered in the battle.*

ULT **And praised be**
UST Praise

See how you translated "Praised be" in Genesis 9:26. Alternate translation: [Give praise to] or [Let everyone praise]

ULT **who delivered your enemies into your hand**
UST because he enabled you to defeat your enemies

The phrase **delivered your enemies into your hand** is a common expression. Consider whether your language has a similar common expression that fits well here. Alternate translation: [because he gave you victory over your enemies!]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Then he gave to him**
UST Then Abram gave {King} Melchizedek

The pronoun **he** refers to Abram and the pronoun **him** refers to Melchizekek. If this is not clear for your readers, you could use the persons' names here, as modelled by the UST.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **a tenth**
UST ten percent

Alternate translation: [one tenth]

ULT **of everything**
UST of everything that he had recovered in the battle

The author assumes that his readers will understand that **everything** means all that Abram recovered and brought back with him to return to Sodom. It does not mean everything that exists. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [of everything that he had captured in the battle] or [of all the plunder he had brought back from the battle]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And praised be	Praise
God	God
Most High	greatest
delivered	because he enabled you to defeat your enemies
enemies	enemies
tenth	ten percent

Genesis 14:21

ULT	UST
Then the king of Sodom said to Abram, "Give to me the people, but the possessions take for yourself."	*After that, the king over the city of Sodom said to Abram, "Please return to me the people whom you rescued, but keep for yourself their belongings that you recovered."*

ULT Then the king of Sodom said to Abram
UST After that, the king over {the city of} Sodom said to Abram

Alternate translation: [Then the king of Sodom requested of Abram] or [After that, the king over the city of Sodom urged Abram]

ULT Give to me
UST Please return to me

Make sure in your translation that the king of Sodom's request to Abram sounds polite, not rude or demanding. Alternate translation: [Please give to me]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT the people
UST the people whom you rescued

Alternate translation: [my people whom you saved] or [the people from Sodom whom you rescued]

ULT but the possessions take for yourself
UST but keep for yourself {their} belongings that you recovered

Alternate translation: [but the plunder you should keep for yourself] or [but take for yourself the belongings that you recovered]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
king	king
Sodom	Sodom

Genesis 14:22

ULT	UST
But Abram said to the king of Sodom, "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth,	*But Abram replied to him, "I raise my hand and swear to Yahweh, who is the greatest God and the One who owns heaven and earth,*

ULT **I raise my hand to Yahweh**
UST I raise my hand {and swear} to Yahweh

It was the custom that when a person made an oath, he raised his hand as an appeal to God to witness his oath, to hold him accountable, and to punish him if he were to break his oath. If this would not be clear to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [As a witness to this oath, I call on Yahweh]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **I raise my hand to Yahweh**
UST I raise my hand {and swear} to Yahweh

The phrase **I raise my hand to Yahweh** begins an oath formula. Use a natural way in your language to express an oath. Alternate translation: [I pledge before Yahweh]
Support Reference: Oath Formulas

ULT **God Most High**
UST who is the greatest God

Alternate translation: [who is the highest God]

ULT **the possessor of heaven and earth**
UST and the One who owns heaven and earth

Alternate translation: [and the owner of heaven and earth] or [and the one who created heaven and earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
king	him
Sodom	him
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
Most High	greatest
heaven	heaven
earth	earth

Genesis 14:23

ULT	UST
if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that belongs to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.'	*that I will not accept anything that is yours or your people's, not even a piece of string or the strap from a sandal. That way you can never say that you were the one who made me rich.*

ULT **if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal**
UST not even a {piece of} string or the strap from a sandal

Abram is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You could supply these words from later in the sentence if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [if I take anything from a thread even to the strap of a sandal]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you**
UST that I will not {accept} anything that is yours {or your people's}, not even a {piece of} string or the strap from a sandal

According to custom, Abram is leaving out the part of his oath that tells what Yahweh will do to him if he does the things that he mentions in his oath. Because of the power of spoken words, people left that part to be understood silently. You could supply these words if it would be clearer and not offensive in your language. Alternate translation: [if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or I take from anything that belongs to you, may Yahweh punish me severely] or [if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or I take from anything that belongs to you, may Yahweh punish me severely, may Yahweh strike me dead]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **from a thread even to the strap of a sandal**
UST a {piece of} string or the strap from a sandal

In order to make the point that he does not want anything from the king of Sodom, Abram is mentioning things that are so small and insignificant that no one would want them. Alternate translation: [even a thread or the strap from a sandal] or [even something as small as a piece of string or a sandal strap]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **or if I take from anything**
UST that I will not {accept} anything

This clause emphasizes Abram's point by repeating the meaning of the previous phrase in different words. Consider what is the best way to emphasize a point in your language. Alternate translation: [No, I will not keep anything]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you**

UST that I will not {accept} anything that is yours {or your people's}, not even a {piece of} string or the strap from a sandal

For some languages, it may be clearer and more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [that I will not keep anything that belongs to you or your people, not even something as small as a piece of thread or a sandal strap]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **I made Abram rich**

UST that you {were the one who} made me rich

In the clause **I made Abram rich**, the Hebrew pronoun that refers to the king of Sodom is emphatic. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Also consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [I am the one who made Abram wealthy!]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sandal	sandal
Abram	that you {were the one who} made me rich

Genesis 14:24

ULT	UST
I will take nothing, except what the young men have eaten and the share of the other men who went with me: Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre. Let them take their share."	*So I will only keep what my warriors ate and the part of the plunder that Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre deserve for being my allies. Please let them have their part of the plunder."*

ULT **I {will take} nothing, except**
UST So I {will} only keep

If, in your language, it would appear that Abram was making a statement here and then contradicting it, you could reword this to avoid using an exception clause. Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this exception sentence. Alternate translation: [So I will keep nothing more than] or [So I will only accept]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

ULT **what the young men have eaten**
UST what my warriors ate

These young men were Abram's trained servants or warriors who are mentioned in verses 14–15. Alternate translation: [what my servants who fought with me have eaten] or [what my men ate]

ULT **and the share of the other men who went with me: Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre**
UST and the part {of the plunder} that Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre deserve for being my allies

Alternate translation: [and the share of the plunder that Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre deserve for being my allies] or [and what Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre deserve for helping me in the battle]

ULT **Let them take**
UST Please let them have

Abram is being polite, but make sure in your translation that he does not sound like he is begging, especially since he is a mighty warrior. Alternate translation: [Please let them take] or [Please give them]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **their share**
UST their part of the plunder

Alternate translation: [their share of the plunder] or [their part of what we recovered]

Genesis 15

Genesis 15:1

ULT	UST
After those things, the word of Yahweh came to Abram in a vision, saying, "Do not be afraid, Abram! I am a shield for you; your reward will be very great."	*After that, Yahweh said to Abram in a vision, "Abram, do not be afraid. I will protect you, and I will give you a very great reward."*

ULT **After those things**
UST After that

Alternate translation: [After those events happened]

ULT **I {am} a shield for you**
UST I will protect you

God is like **a shield** to Abram since he protects him. Consider what is the best way to translate this image in your language. Alternate translation: [I am your shield] or [I protect you like a shield] or [I will shield you]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **your reward will be very great**
UST and I will give you a very great reward

The clause **your reward will be very great** could mean: (1) "and your reward from me will be very great." Alternate translation: [and I will give you a very great reward]; or (2) "and I am your very valuable reward." The context (verse 2) shows that the first interpretation is what Abram understood God to be saying.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Abram	Abram
vision	vision
afraid	afraid
Abram	Abram
shield	will protect you
reward	reward

Genesis 15:2

ULT	UST
But Abram said, "My Lord Yahweh, what will you give to me, since I go childless, and the son of the inheritance of my house is the Damascan, Eliezer?"	*But Abram said to him, "Yahweh my Master, even if you reward me greatly, that will not benefit me, since I still have no children. So when I die, the one who will inherit all that I have is my servant Eliezer who is a foreigner from the city of Damascus."*

ULT **But Abram said**
UST But Abram said to him

The way you translate this quote margin may depend on how you translate the following rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [But Abram asked him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **My Lord Yahweh**
UST Yahweh my Master

The phrase **My Lord** means that Yahweh owns Abram and has complete authority over him, just as a master (at that time) had complete authority over his servant or slave. Alternate translation: [My Master Yahweh] or [Yahweh my Lord]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **My Lord Yahweh, what will you give to me, since I go childless, and the son of the inheritance of my house {is} the Damascan, Eliezer**
UST Yahweh my Master, even if you reward me greatly, {that will not benefit me}, since I still have no children. So {when I die,} the one who will inherit all that I have {is} {my servant} Eliezer {who is} {a foreigner} from {the city of} Damascus

Abram uses this rhetorical question to show that he is lamenting that he has no children. Make sure in your translation that he does not sound rude. Alternate translation: [My Lord Yahweh, any reward that you give to me that would not benefit me, because the son of the inheritance of my house {is} the Damascan, Eliezer!] or [My Lord Yahweh, even if you reward me greatly, that will not help me since my heir is my servant Eliezer of Damascus.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **and the son of the inheritance of**
UST So {when I die,} the one who will inherit

The phrase **son of the inheritance** is used here as a common expression meaning "inheritor" or "heir"; it does not refer to an actual son. Consider whether or not your language has a similar expression. Alternate translation: [for after I die, the heir of] or [Because when I die, the one who will own]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **my house**
UST all that I have

This phrase refers here to all of Abram's belongings. Alternate translation: [my estate] or [all that I own]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

> ULT **is the Damascan, Eliezer**
> UST is {my servant} Eliezer {who is} {a foreigner} from {the city of} Damascus

In the Hebrew text, Abram emphasizes the fact that Eliezer was from Damascus, which means he was a foreigner from a foreign city, not a blood relative. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Also, note how you translated “the city of Damascus” in Genesis 14:15. Alternate translation: [is my foreign servant, Eliezer, who is from Damascus]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
Lord	Master
Yahweh	Yahweh
house	all that I have
is the Damascan	Damascus

Genesis 15:3

ULT	UST
Then Abram said, "Behold, to me you have given no seed, and behold, a servant of my house is my heir!"	*Then Abram continued, "That's right, you have not given me any children, so that now when I die, one of my household servants will inherit everything I own!"*

ULT **Then Abram said**
UST Then Abram continued

Some languages omit these words because the same speaker is still speaking to the same audience. Alternate translation: [And he added]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold**
UST That's right

Some translations omit this phrase to prevent Abram from sounding rude. Alternate translation: [Look]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **to me you have given no seed**
UST you have not given me any children

In the Hebrew text **to me** is before **you have given no seed** to emphasize Abram's lack of an heir related to him. Do what is natural in your language. [you have given no offspring to me]

ULT **and behold**
UST so that now when I die

Alternate translation: [so that now after I die]

ULT **a servant of my house**
UST one of my household servants

Alternate translation: [a servant from my household]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
seed	any children
house	one of my household servants
heir	inherit

Genesis 15:4

ULT	UST
Then behold, the word of Yahweh came to him, saying, "That man will not be your heir, but rather a son who comes from your bowels, he will be your heir."	*But immediately Yahweh said to Abram, "No, your servant Eliezer will not inherit your property, rather it will be your very own biological son who will inherit it."*

ULT **Then behold**
UST But immediately

Alternate translation: [Immediately]

ULT **the word of Yahweh {came} to him, saying**
UST Yahweh said to Abram

See how you translated this common expression in verse 1. It may be necessary to translate it differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [Yahweh told him]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a son who comes from your bowels, he**
UST it will be your very own {biological} son who

The phrase **comes from your bowels** is a common expression that refers to fathering a child. Make sure your translation of this clause does not imply that Abram would give birth to a son. Alternate translation: [a son whom you father]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
heir	inherit
heir	inherit

Genesis 15:5

ULT	UST
Then he brought him outside and said, "Please look at the heavens and count the stars, if you are able to count them." Then he said to him, "So will your offspring be."	*Then Yahweh took Abram outside his tent and said to him, "Look up at the night sky and count how many stars there are, if in fact you are able to count them all." While Abram was looking at the stars, Yahweh said to him, "That is how many descendants you will have."*

ULT **Then he brought him**
UST Then Yahweh took Abram

Consider what is the clearest way in your language to refer to Yahweh and Abram at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh led Abram]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **outside**
UST outside his tent

Abram was probably inside a tent, not inside a house. But if possible, it is best to leave this implied in a translation (as the Hebrew text does).
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Please look**
UST Look up

See how you translated **please** in Genesis 13:14. Make sure your translation does not sound as though God is begging Abram. Alternate translation: [Now look upward]
Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **and count the stars, if you are able to count them**
UST and count how many stars there are, if {in fact} you are able to count them all

God's point here is that there are so many stars that no one could ever count them all. He is not questioning Abram's ability to count. Consider what is the best way to translate this contrary-to-fact statement in your language. Alternate translation: [and try to count how many stars there are, if in fact, anyone could possibly count all of them] or [There are so many stars that no one could ever count them all]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

ULT **Then he said to him**
UST While Abram was looking at the stars, Yahweh said to him

Throughout this chapter, make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking to whom. Always use pronouns and nouns in a way that is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [While Abram was looking at the stars, Yahweh said to Abram] or [So as Abram looked up at the stars, Yahweh told him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heavens	sky
your offspring	descendants you will have

Genesis 15:6

ULT	UST
And he trusted in Yahweh, and he counted it to him as righteousness.	*Abram trusted Yahweh, and because of that, Yahweh considered him to be righteous.*

ULT **And he trusted**
UST Abram trusted

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abram is the subject in the first phrase of this verse, not Yahweh (who was the last subject in verse 5). Many translations omit the conjunction **And** here. Alternate translation: [Abram believed Yahweh] or [He believed what Yahweh said to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and he counted it to him {as} righteousness**
UST and because of that, Yahweh considered him to be righteous

Notice that Yahweh, referred to as **he**, is now the subject again. Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking to whom here and throughout this section. Alternate translation: [and so Yahweh credited it to Abram as righteousness] or [and because of that, Yahweh reckoned Abram to be righteous] or [so Yahweh considered Abram to have a right relationship with him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And he trusted	Abram trusted
Yahweh	Yahweh
righteousness	righteous

Genesis 15:7

ULT	UST
Then he said to him, "I am Yahweh who brought you out of Ur of the Chaldeans to give to you this land to possess it."	*Then Yahweh said to him, "I am Yahweh who brought you here from the city of Ur that the Chaldeans rule, to give this land to you to own."*

ULT Then he said to him
UST Then Yahweh said to him

Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh said to Abram]

ULT I {am} Yahweh who brought you out of Ur of
UST I am Yahweh who brought you {here} from {the city of} Ur

Alternate translation: [I am Yahweh who led you here from the city of Ur]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT the Chaldeans
UST that the Chaldeans rule

See how you translated "Ur of the Chaldeans" in Genesis 11:28, 31, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [which is ruled by the Chaldeans] or [that the Chaldeans rule] or [where the Chaldeans live]

ULT to possess it
UST to own

Alternate translation: [as your homeland] or [to be your own]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Ur	Ur
Chaldeans	Chaldeans
land	land
possess	to own

Genesis 15:8

ULT	UST
Then he said, "My Lord Yahweh, how will I know that I will possess it?"	*But Abram asked him, "Yahweh my Master, how can I be sure that this land will be mine?"*

ULT **Then he said**
UST But Abram asked him

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abram is the one speaking here, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: [Then Abram said to him] or [But he asked Yahweh]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **My Lord Yahweh**
UST Yahweh my Master

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [My Master Yahweh] or [Yahweh my Lord]

ULT **how will I know**
UST how can I be sure

Alternate translation: [how can I be certain]

ULT **that I will possess it**
UST that this land will be mine

Alternate translation: [that I will possess this territory?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Master
Yahweh	Yahweh
know	can I be sure
possess	this land will be mine

Genesis 15:9

ULT	UST
Then he said to him, "Bring to me a three-year-old heifer and a three-year-old she-goat and a three-year-old ram and a turtledove and a young pigeon."	*Yahweh replied, "Bring me a heifer, a female goat and a male sheep, each of which is three years old, as well as a dove and a young pigeon."*

ULT **Then he said to him**
UST Yahweh replied

Alternate translation: [Yahweh said to him]

ULT **a three-year-old heifer**
UST a heifer

Alternate translation: [a cow that is three years old]

ULT **and a three-year-old she-goat**
UST a female goat

Alternate translation: [a female goat that is three years old]

ULT **and a three-year-old ram**
UST and a male sheep, each of which is three years old

For some languages it may be more natural to shorten this list of animals and say, "Bring to me a young cow, a female goat, and a male sheep, each of which is three years old," Alternate translation: [and a male sheep that is three years old]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heifer	heifer
and a … she-goat	goat
ram	sheep
turtledove	dove

Genesis 15:10

ULT	UST
So he brought all those to him. Then he cut them in two down the middle and laid the halves opposite to each other, but the birds he did not cut in two.	*So the next day Abram brought all those animals to Yahweh and killed them. Then he cut the animals' bodies in half lengthwise and placed each half a short space across from the other half in two rows, except for the birds, which he did not cut in half.*

ULT **So he brought**
UST So {the next day} Abram brought

Alternate translation: [Obeying Yahweh, during the following day Abram gathered]

ULT **all those to him**
UST all those {animals} to Yahweh and killed them

Some languages need to make explicit that Abram brought the animals and killed the animals first, before cutting them in half. Alternate translation: [all those animals to him and killed them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

ULT **down the middle**
UST in half lengthwise

The author assumes that readers will know that Abram probably cut the animals down the middle lengthwise, which means that each half had one front leg and one back leg. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [into two parts lengthwise]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

---

ULT **but the birds he did not cut in two**
UST except for the birds, which he did not cut in half

The author uses the word **but** here to indicate a contrast between what he did to the bodies of the animals and what he did to the bodies of the birds. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but he did not divide the bodies of the birds in two] or [except for the birds, which he did not cut in two]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

Genesis 15:11

ULT	UST
Then birds of prey came down on the carcasses, and Abram drove them away.	*Then some vultures flew down and landed on the animal bodies to eat them, but Abram chased them away.*

ULT Then birds of prey came down

UST Then {some} vultures flew down and landed

This phrase refers to large birds that eat dead animal meat. Examples of these birds include vultures, buzzards, condors, eagles, and crows. Alternate translation: [Then some birds of prey landed] or [Then some vultures swooped down and landed] or [Then some meat-eating birds]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram

Genesis 15:12

ULT	UST
And it happened, the sun was setting and a deep sleep fell on Abram, and behold, terror and great darkness fell on him.	*Later, as the sun was going down, Abram fell into a deep sleep, and suddenly, it became completely dark, and he became terrified.*

ULT **And it happened**
UST Later

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **the sun was setting**
UST as the sun was going down

Alternate translation: [when the sun was going out of sight] or [as it began to become night]

ULT **and a deep sleep fell on Abram**
UST Abram fell into a deep sleep

See how you translated a similar common expression in Genesis 2:21. Alternate translation: [Abram went into a sound sleep] or [Abram went soundly asleep]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and behold**
UST and suddenly

Alternate translation: [Then suddenly]

ULT **terror {and} great darkness fell on him**
UST it became completely dark, and he became terrified

Alternate translation: [a great terrifying darkness came over him] or [terrible misery and fear came upon Abram]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
terror	terrified

Genesis 15:13

ULT	UST
Then he said to Abram, "Know for certain that your offspring will be strangers in a land that does not belong to them, and they will serve them, and they will afflict them 400 years.	*Then Yahweh said to him, "I want you to know that your descendants will live as foreigners in a country that is not their own. They will serve the people of that country as slaves, and those people will treat them cruelly for 400 years.*

ULT **Know for certain that**
UST I want you to know that

Alternate translation: [You can be sure that]

ULT **will be strangers**
UST will live as foreigners

The author assumes that readers will know to whom he refers with the word **strangers**. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. The word **strangers** refers to people who live temporarily in a city, country, or region, but they do not settle there permanently. Alternate translation: [will live as sojourners]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **that {does} not {belong} to them**
UST that is not their own

Alternate translation: [that is not their home]

ULT **and they will serve them**
UST They will serve the people {of that country} as slaves

Make sure that your translation of these pronouns clearly communicates to whom they refer. Alternate translation: [Your descendants will serve the people in that land as slaves] or [Your offspring will be slaves for the people who live in that land]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and they will afflict them**
UST and those people will treat them cruelly

Notice that in the final clause, the pronoun **they** refers to the citizens in the country where Abram's descendants will sojourn, and **them** refers to Abram's descendants. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [and the citizens will oppress your offspring] or [and the people of that land will mistreat your descendants]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **Know for certain that your offspring will be strangers in a land {that} {does} not {belong} to them, and they will serve them, and they will afflict them 400 years**
> UST I want you to know that your descendants will live as foreigners in a country that is not their own. They will serve the people {of that country} {as slaves}, and those people will treat them cruelly for 400 years

The final phrase refers to how long Abram's descendants would live in a land that is not theirs, not how long they would be oppressed, which was less than half of those 400 years. To make that clear in your translation, you could move this phrase earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [I want you to know that for 400 years your offspring will live in a land that is not their own, and the people of that country will oppress them]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	to him
Know	know
for certain	know
your offspring	your descendants
land	in a country
serve	serve
years	years

Genesis 15:14

ULT	UST
But also, the nation that they serve I will judge, and after that they will come out with great possessions.	*But I will punish those people whom they serve. After that, your descendants will leave that country and take many riches with them.*

ULT **But also**
UST But

Moses uses the word **But** here to indicate a contrast between **serve** and **come out**. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [However]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **the nation**
UST those people

Alternate translation: [the people of that nation] or [the people]

ULT **that they serve**
UST whom they serve

Alternate translation: [whom they serve as slaves] or [who made them slaves]

ULT **But also, the nation that they serve I will judge**
UST But I will punish those people whom they serve

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [But I will also punish the people of the nation that they serve]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and after that**
UST After that

Alternate translation: [Then]

ULT **they will come out**
UST your descendants will leave that country

Alternate translation: [your offspring will leave that land]

ULT **with great possessions**
UST and take many riches with them

See how you translated **possessions** in Genesis 14:16, 21. Alternate translation: [with much wealth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
nation	those people
serve	serve
judge	will punish

Genesis 15:15

ULT	UST
And you, you will go to your fathers in peace; you will be buried at a good old age.	*As for you, after you have lived a good long life, you will die peacefully and join your ancestors who have died before you.*

ULT **And you**
UST As for you

For emphasis in the Hebrew text, Moses places the pronoun **you** in an emphatic position in the sentence (before the verb) to change the topic. This adds emphasis to what he is saying. If your language uses explicit pronouns for emphasis, you may want to use that construction in your translation. Other languages may have other ways of bringing out this emphasis. Do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Now as for you]
Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT **you will go to your fathers in peace**
UST you will die peacefully and join your ancestors who have died before you

This clause is a euphemism that refers to Abram's death. However, it is best to translate the clause as literally as possible, since it implies the important information that people are still alive after they have died on earth. Also, notice that the term **fathers** refers here to ancestors who have died, not those who are still alive on earth. Alternate translation: [you will be at peace when you die and join your forefathers who have gone before you]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **you will be buried at a good old age**
UST after you have lived a good long life

This clause is a euphemism that refers to Abram's death. Make sure in your translation that it does not sound like he will be buried alive. Alternate translation: [you will join your ancestors when you have grown very old]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **you will go to your fathers in peace; you will be buried at a good old age**
UST after you have lived a good long life, you will die peacefully and join your ancestors who have died before you

For some languages it may be more natural to change the order of this sentence. Alternate translation: [after you have lived a good long life, you will die peacefully and join your ancestors who have died before you]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
peace	you will die peacefully and join your ancestors who have died before you
buried	after you have lived a good long life
good	good

Genesis 15:16

ULT	UST
Then in the fourth generation they will come back here, because the sin of the Amorites will not be complete until then."	*Then four generations later, your descendants will return here to live, because that is when the Amorites will have sinned as much as I will allow before I take away their land and give it to your descendants."*

ULT **they will come back here**

UST your descendants will return here to live

Alternate translation: [your descendants will come back to this land and dwell here]

ULT **because the sin of the Amorites {will} not {be} complete until then**

UST because that is when the Amorites will have sinned as much as I will allow before I take away their land and give it to your descendants

God planned to give the Amorites' land to Abram's descendants because of the Amorites' sin. Consider whether or not to include that implied information in your translation or in a footnote. Also, see how you translated the names of people groups in Genesis 10:13–18. Alternate translation: [for by then the Amorite people will have sinned to the limit will allow. Then I take away their land and give it to your descendants] or [and I will give them the land of the Amor people, whose sin will have reached its limit by then]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generation	generations
the sin of	that is when the Amorites will have sinned as much as I will allow before I take away their land and give it to your descendants
Amorites	Amorites

Genesis 15:17

ULT	UST
And it happened, the sun went down and darkness came, and behold, there was a smoking fire pot and a flaming torch that passed between those pieces.	*When the sun had set, it became very dark. Then suddenly a clay pot appeared that was full of burning coals and had smoke coming from it, and also a blazing torch, and they both went between the animal halves.*

ULT **And it happened**
UST When

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **the sun went down**
UST the sun had set

Alternate translation: [after the sun had gone down] or [after the sun had set]

ULT **and darkness came**
UST it became {very} dark

This Hebrew word for **darkness** implies that it was darker than normal, so that not even light from the moon and stars was visible. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and it was extremely dark]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and behold**
UST Then suddenly

Alternate translation: [and suddenly]

ULT **and a flaming torch**
UST and also a blazing torch

Alternate translation: [and also a burning firebrand]

ULT **between those pieces**
UST between the {animal} halves

Alternate translation: [between the two rows of animal parts]

Genesis 15:18

ULT	UST
On that day Yahweh cut a covenant with Abram, saying, "To your offspring I have given this land, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the Euphrates River,	*At that time Yahweh made a special agreement with Abram and said, "I am giving your descendants this land, which extends from Egypt's river in the south to the great Euphrates River in the north.*

ULT **On that day**
UST At that time

By **On that day**, the author refers generally here to a 24-hour day; it does not refer to daytime; it is still nighttime at this point (See: verse 17). You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [On that very day]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Yahweh cut a covenant**
UST Yahweh made a {special} agreement

To **cut a covenant** means to make a covenant. The terminology refers to ancient rituals around making covenants, which is illustrated in Genesis 15. See the imagery and how you translated there. Alternate translation: [Yahweh established a formal, binding agreement]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **To your offspring I have given this land**
UST I am giving your descendants this land

In the Hebrew text, **To your offspring** is first in this quote to emphasize Abram's descendants. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I am giving your offspring this land] or [I hereby give this land to your offspring]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **from the river of Egypt**
UST which extends from Egypt's river in the south

This phrase probably refers to the Wadi El-Arish (not the Nile River), which is on the border between Egypt and Israel. It is best in a translation to leave this general, as the Hebrew text does.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the great river, the Euphrates River**
UST to the great Euphrates River in the north

Alternate translation: [to the big Euphrates River in the north]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	At … time
Yahweh	Yahweh
covenant	a {special} agreement
Abram	Abram
To your offspring	your descendants
land	land
Egypt	Egypt
Euphrates	Euphrates River

Genesis 15:19

ULT	UST
the land of the Kenites and the Kenizzites and the Kadmonites	*That includes the land which belongs to the Kenites, the Kenizzites, the Kadmonites,*

ULT **the land of**

UST That includes the land which belongs to

Alternate translation: [including the land which is owned by]

ULT **the land of the Kenites and the Kenizzites and the Kadmonites**

UST That includes {the land which belongs to} the Kenites, the Kenizzites, the Kadmonites

In a list of people group names like this (verses 19–21), for some languages it is more natural to leave out **and the** most of the time, replacing those words with a comma. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Kenites, Kenizzites, Kadmonites]

Genesis 15:20

ULT	UST
and the Hittites and the Perizzites and the Rephaim	*the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaim,*

ULT **and the Hittites and the Perizzites and the Rephaim**
UST the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaim

Be consistent here with how you translated **the Hittites** in Genesis 10:15, **the Perizzites** in Genesis 13:7, and “the Raphaites” in Genesis 14:5. Alternate translation: [the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Raphaites] or [Hittites, Perizzites, Raphaites]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hittites	Hittites
Perizzites	Perizzites

Genesis 15:21

ULT	UST
and the Amorites and the Canaanites and the Girgashites and the Jebusites.”	*the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Girgashites, and the Jebusites.”*

ULT **and the Amorites and the Canaanites and the Girgashites and the Jebusites**
UST the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Girgashites, and the Jebusites

Be consistent here with how you translated **the Amorites** in verse 18 and **Amorites**, **Canaanites**, **Girgashites**, and **Jebusites** in Genesis 10:15–18. Alternate translation: [Amorites, Canaanites, Girgashites, and Jebusites]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Amorites	Amorites
Canaanites	Canaanites
Girgashites	Girgashites
Jebusites	Jebusites

Genesis 16

Genesis 16:1

ULT	UST
Now Sarai, the wife of Abram, had not born children for him, but she had an Egyptian maidservant, and her name was Hagar.	*Now Abram's wife Sarai had still not given birth to any children for him, but she owned an Egyptian servant woman whose name was Hagar.*

ULT **Now Sarai, the wife of Abram**
UST Now Abram's wife Sarai

This verse begins a new topic by giving background information about Sarai. Some languages have a special conjunction for this. Other languages do not use a conjunction here.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **had not born {children} for him**
UST had {still} not given birth {to any children} for him

Sarai's barrenness is first mentioned in Genesis 11:30. Alternate translation: [still had not birthed any children for him]

ULT **an Egyptian maidservant**
UST an Egyptian servant woman

See how you translated "female slaves" in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [an Egyptian slave woman] or [a female slave from the country of Egypt]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarai	Sarai
Abram	Abram
had … born children	had … given birth to any children
Egyptian	Egyptian
maidservant	servant
Hagar	Hagar

Genesis 16:2

ULT	UST
So Sarai said to Abram, "Behold please, Yahweh has prevented me from bearing children. Please go to my maidservant. Perhaps I can be built up from her." And Abram listened to the voice of Sarai.	*So she told Abram, "Please listen to this: As you know, Yahweh has not allowed me to have any children, so please have marital relations with my servant woman Hagar so that maybe I can have a family through her children." Abram agreed to do what Sarai requested.*

ULT **So Sarai said to Abram**
UST So she told Abram

Alternate translation: [Then she told Abram]

ULT **Behold please**
UST Please listen to this

Sarai is using the term **Behold** to focus Abram's attention on what she is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Also, see how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:11. Alternate translation, as a complete sentence: [Hear me, please.] or [Please listen to me]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Yahweh has prevented me from bearing children**
UST As you know, Yahweh has not allowed me to have {any} children

Alternate translation: [Since Yahweh has not permitted me to bear any children] or [As you know, Yahweh has not permitted me to bear any children, so]

ULT **Please go to**
UST so please have {marital} relations with

See how you translated the idiom "went to" in Genesis 6:4. Alternate translation: [Please sleep with] or [Please have sexual relations with]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **my maidservant**
UST my servant woman Hagar

See how you translated **maidservant** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [my slave woman Hagar]

ULT **Perhaps**
UST so that maybe

Alternate translation: [Maybe] or [so that perhaps]

ULT **I can be built up from her**
UST I can have a family through her children

Alternate translation: [I can build a family through her children] or [she can have children for me so that I can build a family]

ULT **And Abram listened to the voice of Sarai**
UST Abram agreed to do what Sarai requested

The author is using the term **voice** to mean her words. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Abram heeded Sarai's request] or [So Abram listened to the request made by Sarai]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarai	So she told
Abram	Abram
Yahweh	Yahweh
bearing	to have {any} children
maidservant	servant
Abram	Abram
Sarai	Sarai

Genesis 16:3

ULT	UST
So Sarai, the wife of Abram, took Hagar, her Egyptian maidservant, at the end of ten years that Abram had lived in the land of Canaan, and gave her to Abram her husband as a wife for him.	*So Abram's wife Sarai gave her Egyptian servant Hagar to her husband Abram to be his second wife. This happened after Abram and Sarai had lived in the region of Canaan for ten years.*

ULT **So Sarai, the wife of Abram, took**
UST So Abram's wife Sarai

In the Hebrew text, the phrase "Abram's wife" is repeated (in verses 1 and 3) to emphasize Sarai's relationship to Abram in contrast to the relationship of Hagar. For some languages it is redundant to repeat that phrase, and so they leave it implied here. However, if possible, it is best to keep this repetition in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then Sarai took]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **Hagar, her Egyptian maidservant**
UST her Egyptian servant Hagar

The word **Egyptian** is repeated (in verses 1 and 3) to emphasize the fact that Hagar was a foreigner. If possible, it is best to keep this repetition in your translation. Alternate translation: [her Egyptian servant woman Hagar] or [her servant Hagar]

ULT **and gave her to Abram her husband as a wife for him**
UST gave … to her husband Abram to be his {second} wife

For most languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, "So Abram's wife Sarai gave her servant Hagar to her husband Abram to be his second wife. This happened after Abram and Sarai had lived in the land of Canaan for ten years." Make sure your translation does not sound like verse 3 happened ten years after Abram agreed to sleep with Hagar. Alternate translation: [and she gave her servant to her husband Abram to be his second wife]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarai	Sarai
Abram	Abram
Hagar	Hagar
Egyptian	Egyptian
maidservant	servant
years	years
Abram	Abram
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
Abram	Abram

Genesis 16:4

ULT	UST
Then he went to Hagar, and she conceived. And she saw that she had conceived, and her mistress was despised in her eyes.	*Then Abram had marital relations with Hagar, and she became pregnant. But when she realized that she was pregnant, she started to disrespect her mistress Sarai.*

ULT **Then he went to Hagar**
UST Then Abram had {marital} relations with Hagar

See how you translated the idiom “go to,” the past tense of **went to**, in verse 2. Also, consider whether it is better in your language to refer to Abram by his name or by a pronoun here at the beginning of this paragraph. Alternate translation: [So Abram slept with Hagar] or [So he had sexual relations with Hagar]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and she conceived**
UST and she became pregnant

If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [and as a result she became pregnant] or [and so she conceived]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **And she saw that she had conceived**
UST But when she realized that she was pregnant

The word **saw** is used here as an idiom that means “realized” or “perceived.” Consider whether or not you have a similar idiom in your language that would work well here. Alternate translation: [She knew that she was pregnant]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and her mistress was despised in her eyes**
UST she started to disrespect her mistress Sarai

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [and she despised her owner Sarai] or [and she treated her owner Sarai with contempt] or [she started to look down on her mistress Sarai]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and her mistress was despised in her eyes**
UST she started to disrespect her mistress Sarai

The phrase **despised in her eyes** is an idiom that refers to Hagar’s attitude and disrespectful actions toward Sarai. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Alternate translation: [and her mistress was treated with contempt]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hagar	Hagar
conceived	and she became pregnant
conceived	she was pregnant

Genesis 16:5

ULT	UST
Then Sarai said to Abram, "My wrong is on you! I myself put my maidservant into your arms, but she sees that she has conceived, and I am despised in her eyes! May Yahweh judge between me and you!"	*So Sarai complained to Abram, "It is your fault that I am suffering! I gave my servant to you to sleep with, but now that she realizes that she is pregnant, she disrespects me! I ask Yahweh to judge whether it is you or I who is responsible for this!"*

ULT **My wrong {is} on you**
UST It is your fault that I am suffering

Alternate translation: [I am being mistreated because of you!] or [It is your fault that I am being treated wrongly]

ULT **I myself put my maidservant into your arms**
UST I gave my servant to you to sleep with

The idiom **put my maidservant into your arms** refers to Abram's sexual relationship with Hagar. Make sure that your translation of this clause is not offensive to your readers. Alternate translation: [I gave my servant to you to be your wife] or [I allowed my servant to have marital relations with you]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and I am despised in her eyes**
UST she disrespects me

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Also see how you translated a similar clause in verse 4. Alternate translation: [she despises me!] or [she treats me with disdain]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **May Yahweh judge between me and you**
UST I ask Yahweh to judge whether it is you or I who is responsible for this

Sarai assumes that Abram will know that as the head of the household, he is responsible to rebuke Hagar and require her to respect Sarai. You could say that explicitly or put that information in a footnote if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [I ask Yahweh to decide which one of us is responsible for this] or [May Yahweh decide who is wrong, you or me]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarai	Sarai
Abram	Abram
wrong	It is your fault that I am suffering
maidservant	servant
conceived	she is pregnant
Yahweh	Yahweh
judge	judge

Genesis 16:6

ULT	UST
Then Abram said to Sarai, "Behold, your maidservant is in your hand. Do to her what is good in your eyes." Then Sarai afflicted her, and she fled from her face.	*Abram replied to her, "Listen, you are in charge of your servant. Do with her whatever you think is best." Then Sarai treated Hagar so harshly that she ran away from home to get away from her.*

ULT **Then Abram said to Sarai**
UST Abram replied to her

Alternate translation: [But Abram said to her]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold**
UST Listen

Abram is using the term **Behold** to focus Sarai's attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Look]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **your maidservant {is} in your hand**
UST you are in charge of your servant

The phrase **in your hand** is an idiom that refers to having control or authority over someone. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Also see how you translated **maidservant** in verses 1–3, 5. Alternate translation: [your slave woman is under your authority] or [you have authority over your slave]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Do to her**
UST Do with her

Alternate translation: [So you can do to her]

ULT **what {is} good in your eyes**
UST what{ever} you think is best

The phrase **in your eyes** is an idiom that refers to Sarai's opinion. See how you translated a similar idiom **in her eyes** in verses 4 and 5. Alternate translation: [whatever you decide is good] or [whatever pleases you]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Then Sarai afflicted her**
UST Then Sarai treated Hagar so harshly

See how you translated **afflict** in Genesis 15:13. Alternate translation: [So Sarai oppressed her greatly] or [So Sarai treated her very badly]

> ULT **and she fled from her face**
> UST that she ran away {from home to get away} from her

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Hagar is the one who fled, not Sarai. Alternate translation: [and Hagar ran away from Sarai]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
Sarai	her
maidservant	servant
good	best
Sarai	Sarai

Genesis 16:7

ULT	UST
Then the angel of Yahweh found her at a spring of water in the wilderness, at the spring beside the road of Shur.	*Then one of Yahweh's angels came to Hagar by a spring of water in the desert. It was the spring by the road to the city of Shur.*

ULT Then the angel of Yahweh found her
UST Then one of Yahweh's angels came to Hagar

Make sure that the way you translate **found** does not sound like the angel encountered Hagar accidentally. Rather, he knew where she was and went to her intentionally. Also, this messenger from Yahweh was an angel, not a human being. Alternate translation: [But an messenger sent from Yahweh met Hagar]

ULT at a spring of water
UST by a spring of water

Alternate translation: [beside a spring of water] or [beside a spring]

ULT in the wilderness
UST in the desert

See how you translated **wilderness** in Genesis 14:6

ULT at the spring
UST It was the spring

Alternate translation: [She was at the spring]

ULT beside the road of Shur
UST by the road to {the city of} Shur

Alternate translation: [that was by the road that goes to the city of Shur] or [that was by the road near the city of Shur]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angels
Yahweh	Yahweh
spring	spring
wilderness	desert
spring	spring

Genesis 16:8

ULT	UST
And he said, “Hagar, maidservant of Sarai, where have you come from, and where are you going?” And she said, “I am fleeing from the face of Sarai, my mistress.”	*And the angel asked her, “Hagar, who serves Sarai, where are you coming from, and where are you headed?” She answered him, “I am running away from my mistress, Sarai.”*

ULT **And he said**

UST And the angel asked her

The angel asked Hagar a question, so for some languages it is better to use a word like “asked” here. Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [And the angel inquired of her] or [The angel asked her]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I am fleeing from the face of Sarai, my mistress**

UST I am running away from my mistress, Sarai

See how you translated “fled from her face” in verse 6 and how you translated **mistress** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [I am running away from my owner, Sarai]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hagar	Hagar
maidservant	serves
Sarai	Sarai
Sarai	Sarai

Genesis 16:9

ULT	UST
Then the angel of Yahweh said to her, "Return to your mistress and submit under her hands."	*But Yahweh's angel told her, "Go back home to your mistress and humbly obey her as her servant."*

ULT **Then the angel of Yahweh said to her**
UST But Yahweh's angel told her

Consider what is the best way to begin this verse in your translation after what Hagar said in verse 8. Alternate translation: [The angel told Hagar]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **Return to your mistress**
UST Go back {home} to your mistress

See how you translated **mistress** in verses 4 and 8. Alternate translation: [Go back to your owner]

ULT **and submit under her hands**
UST and {humbly} obey her as her servant

The angel is using **under her hands** as a common expression of this culture to mean "under her authority." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. See how you translated a similar idiom **in your hand** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [and humbly submit yourself to her authority]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 16:10

ULT	UST
Then the angel of Yahweh said to her, "I will greatly increase your offspring, so that they cannot be counted, because of their abundance."	*Then the angel added, "I Yahweh will give you so many descendants that no one will be able to count them all, because there will be so many of them."*

ULT Then the angel of Yahweh said to her
UST Then the angel added

Some languages do not include the quote margins here and in verse 11, because the angel is still talking to Hagar. However, the repeated quote margins could be there to emphasize what the angel says next or to show that he paused or that he is changing the topic. Alternate translation: [Then the angel told her] or [Then he continued]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT I will greatly increase your offspring
UST I {Yahweh} will give you so many descendants

The pronoun **I** refers to Yahweh here. So either the angel was representing Yahweh and speaking Yahweh's words to Hagar or it was Yahweh himself who had taken on the form of an angel. Alternate translation: [I, Yahweh, will greatly multiply the number of your offspring so that]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT because of their abundance
UST because there will be so many of them

Alternate translation: [because of their large number]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
Yahweh	the angel
I will … increase	I {Yahweh} will give you so many descendants
your offspring	I {Yahweh} will give you so many descendants

Genesis 16:11

ULT	UST
Then the angel of Yahweh said to her, "Behold, you are pregnant, and you will bear a son, and you will call his name Ishmael, because Yahweh has listened to your misery.	*Then the angel also told her, "Listen, as you know, you are pregnant. You will have a son, and you are to name him Ishmael, which means 'God listens,' because Yahweh listened to you when you were suffering and has helped you.*

ULT **Behold, {you are} pregnant, and you will bear a son**
UST Listen, {as you know,} you are pregnant. You will have a son

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Hagar already knew that she was pregnant but did not know she would have a son or what she should name him. Alternate translation: [Look, as you know, you are expecting a child. You will bear a son] or [Look, you are pregnant with a son]

ULT **and you will call his name**
UST and you are to name him

Alternate translation: [give him the name]

ULT **Ishmael**
UST Ishmael, which means 'God listens

Some translation teams make the meaning of Ishmael's name explicit in their translation. Other teams put the meaning of his name in a footnote. See what you did for similar cases in Genesis 3:20, 4:1, 16, 25, 6:29, 10:25, and 11:9.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **because Yahweh has listened to**
UST because Yahweh listened to

If you included the meaning of Ishmael's name earlier in this verse, make sure it fits with how you translate this clause. Alternate translation: [because Yahweh heard] or [because Yahweh paid attention to]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **your misery**
UST you when you were suffering and has helped you

The word that means **listened to** implies here that God also took action to help Hagar. Alternate translation: [your cries of misery and has helped you]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
Yahweh	the angel
you are pregnant	as you know, you are pregnant
bear	You will have
call	and you are to name him
Ishmael	Ishmael
Yahweh	Yahweh
your misery	you when you were suffering and has helped you

Genesis 16:12

ULT	UST
And he will be a wild donkey of a man, his hand against everyone and the hand of everyone against him, and he will live in the faces of all of his brothers."	*When Ishmael grows up, he will be proud and free like a wild donkey. He will fight against everyone, and everyone will fight against him. In fact, he will even be hostile toward all his relatives."*

ULT **And he**
UST When Ishmael grows up, he

The pronoun **he** is emphatic here to emphasize Ishmael. Make sure that your translation refers here to Ishmael, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: [As for Ishmael, when he grows up, he]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **will be a wild donkey of a man**
UST will be {proud and free} {like} a wild donkey

The angel compares Ishmael to a wild donkey. Consider whether or not your language can use a similar image or a comparison here. Alternate translation: [will be like a untamed donkey that no one can control] or [will not be ruled by anyone else]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **his hand against everyone and the hand of everyone against him**
UST He will fight against everyone, and everyone will fight against him

Alternate translation: [He will be enemies with everyone]

ULT **and he will live in the faces of**
UST In fact, he will {even} be hostile toward

The rest of this verse forms a parallelism with the first half, emphasizing what Ishmael (and his descendants) will be like. Try to keep both parts of the parallelism in your translation, since each part has a different focus and the second part adds important information. Alternate translation: [Yes he will even fight against]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **all of his brothers**
UST all his relatives

The word **brothers** is used here to refer to relatives in general. Consider what is the best way to translate this synecdoche in your language. Alternate translation: [all of his own relatives] or [all of his own family members]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
donkey	donkey

Genesis 16:13

ULT	UST
Then she called the name of Yahweh who had spoken to her, "You are El Roi," because she said, "Have I really seen here the back of the one who sees me?"	*After Yahweh spoke to Hagar, she called him El Roi, which means "the God who sees." She named him that, because she had exclaimed to herself, "I just now saw the back of God who sees me!"*

ULT **Then she called the name of Yahweh who had spoken to her, "You {are} El Roi**
UST After Yahweh spoke to Hagar, she called him El Roi, which means "the God who sees

Some translations transliterate (copy or borrow) the name **El Roi** from the Hebrew, some translate its meaning, and some do both. Decide what is best in your language.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **because she said**
UST She named him that, because she had exclaimed to herself

Alternate translation: [She named him that, because she had said to herself]

ULT **Have I really seen here the back of {the one who} sees me**
UST I just now saw the back of {God who} sees me

Hagar's rhetorical question shows surprise and amazement. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your translation. Alternate translation: [How can it be that I was able to look at the back of the God who looks after me?] or [I just now saw the back of him who sees me!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	called
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 16:14

ULT	UST
For that reason they call the well Beer Lahai Roi. Behold, it is between Kadesh and Bered.	*That is why the name of that well is Beer Lahai Roi, which means "Well of the Living One, who sees me." It is still there between the cities of Kadesh and Bered.*

ULT **For that reason**
UST That is why

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 11:9.

ULT **they call the well**
UST the name of that well is

Frequently in the Hebrew text, this phrase has a general meaning and does not refer to someone specific. Also, this well is the same as the spring in verse 7. For some languages, it may be necessary to translate these words the same way so that it is clear that they refer to the same place. Alternate translation: [the well is named] or [people call that well] or [the name of the well is]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Behold**
UST It is {still} there

The author is using the term **Behold** to focus his reader's attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Look, that well is still there;]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **it is between Kadesh and Bered**
UST between {the cities of} Kadesh and Bered

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Kadesh** in Genesis 14:7

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
call	the name of that well is
well	well

Genesis 16:15

ULT	UST
Then Hagar bore a son for Abram, and Abram called the name of his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.	*Then Hagar returned home and gave birth to a son for Abram, and Abram named his son Ishmael.*

ULT Then Hagar bore a son for Abram
UST Then Hagar {returned home and} gave birth to a son for Abram

Alternate translation: [After that, she returned home and gave birth to a son for Abram]

ULT and Abram called the name of his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael
UST and Abram named his son Ishmael

Alternate translation: [and he called his son, whom she bore, Ishmael] or [and he named their son Ishmael]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hagar	Hagar
bore	Then … returned home and gave birth to
Abram	Abram
Abram	Abram
called	and Abram named
Hagar	his son
bore	his son
Ishmael	Ishmael

Genesis 16:16

ULT	UST
And Abram was a son of 86 years when Hagar bore Ishmael for Abram.	*Abram was 86 years old when Hagar had Ishmael for him.*

ULT **And Abram was**
UST Abram was

For some languages it is more natural to omit the conjunction here.
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **a son of**
UST 86 years old

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 5:32.
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
years	years
years	years
Hagar	Hagar
bore	when … had
Ishmael	Ishmael
Abram	for him

Genesis 17

Genesis 17:1

ULT	UST
Then Abram was a son of ninety-nine years, and Yahweh appeared to Abram and said to him, "I am God Almighty. Walk before me and be without blemish.	*Years later, when Abram was ninety-nine years old, Yahweh came to him and told him, "I am God who is all-powerful. Live in a way that pleases me so that you will be blameless.*

ULT **Then Abram was a son of ninety-nine years**
UST Years later, when Abram was ninety-nine years old

Thirteen years have passed between the last verse of chapter 16 and the first verse of chapter 17. Consider what is the best way in your language to begin this new section. See how you translated "was a son of … years" in Gen 5:32. Alternate translation: [It was thirteen years later that Abram was 99 years old]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **and Yahweh appeared to Abram**
UST Yahweh came to him

See how you translated this clause in Gen 12:7. Alternate translation: [Yahweh appeared to him] or [Yahweh visited him]

ULT **I {am} God Almighty**
UST I {am} God {who is} all-powerful

Most translation teams translate the meaning of God's title here (**God Almighty**). A few teams transliterate the title as "El Shaddai" (as if it were a personal name) and put the meaning of the title in a footnote. Abram already knew that God's personal name is Yahweh (Genesis 12:8; 15:7–8), so he would have understood that God was using a title here (not a personal name). The title **God Almighty** emphasizes God's authority and power. You could include a transliteration of this title in a footnote. Alternate translation: [I am Almighty God] or [I am the all-powerful God]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Walk before me**
UST Live in a way that pleases me

Walk before me is an idiom that means to habitually live according to God's will. Alternate translation: [Walk in my presence] or [Live according to my will]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and be**
UST so that you will be

Alternate translation: [and yes, you must be]

> ULT **without blemish**
> UST blameless

See how you translated this idiom in Genesis 6:9. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [without fault] or [upright]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
years	years
years	years
Yahweh	Yahweh
Abram	him
God	God
Almighty	who is all-powerful
without blemish	blameless

Genesis 17:2

ULT	UST
And I will make my covenant between me and you, and I will multiply you very greatly.”	*I will establish my agreement with you, and I will increase the number of your descendants so that they are very numerous.”*

ULT **and I will multiply you very greatly**
UST and I will increase {the number of} your descendants so that they are very numerous

Alternate translation: [and I will cause you to have very many descendants] or [and I will increase the number of your descendants so that they are exceedingly numerous]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	my agreement
multiply	and I will increase

Genesis 17:3

ULT	UST
Then Abram fell on his face, and God spoke with him, saying,	*When Abram heard that, he bowed with his face to the ground before God to show respect, and God continued speaking to him,*

ULT **Then Abram fell on his face**
UST When Abram {heard that, he} bowed with his face to the ground {before God} to show respect

Make sure that the translation of this clause, **Abram fell on his face**, does not sound like Abram fell down accidentally. Rather, he intentionally threw himself to the ground out of deep respect for God. Alternate translation: [Then Abram prostrated himself before God]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and God spoke with him, saying**
UST and God continued speaking to him

Some translations omit **saying** here because it is not natural in those languages. Alternate translation: [and God spoke to him and said] or [and God added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abram	Abram
God	God

Genesis 17:4

ULT	UST
“Me, behold, my covenant will be with you, and you shall be the father of an assembly of nations.	*“Listen, this is what I will do to fulfill my agreement with you: I will make you a community of peoples.*

ULT **Me, behold, my covenant will be with you, and you shall be**
UST Listen, this is what I will do to fulfill my agreement with you: I will make you

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **Me** is emphatic both in form and in sentence position. **Me, behold** is similar to **Behold, me**, which means “I am about to.” Use a natural way in your language to emphasize that Yahweh is the one doing this. Alternate translation: [As for me, I am about to fulfill my covenant with you, that you will be] or [On my part, I am about to fulfill my covenant with you: I will make you]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the father of**
UST of

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 4:20, 21, 10:21.

ULT **an assembly of nations**
UST a community … peoples

Alternate translation: [a large number of]

ULT **an assembly of nations**
UST a community … peoples

Alternate translation: [ethnic groups]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	my agreement
nations	a community … peoples

Genesis 17:5

ULT	UST
And your name will not be called Abram anymore, but your name will be Abraham, because I have made you the father of a multitude of nations.	*So your name will no longer be Abram. Rather, from now on it will be Abraham, because you will be the ancestor of many people groups.*

ULT **And your name will not be called Abram anymore**
UST So your name will no longer be Abram

Alternate translation: [So your name will not be Abram anymore]

ULT **but your name will be Abraham**
UST Rather, {from now on} it will be Abraham

Alternate translation: [Instead, from now on it will be Abraham] or [Rather, I am changing it now to Abraham]

ULT **because I have made you**
UST because you will be

Yahweh is using the past tense to describe something that is going to happen in the future in order to show that the event will certainly happen. If it would be clearer in your language, you could use the future tense. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [because I will make you]
Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	So … will no longer be
Abram	Abram
Abraham	Abraham
nations	people groups

Genesis 17:6

ULT	UST
And I will make you very, very fruitful, and I will make you into nations, and kings will come from you.	*Yes, I will give you many, many descendants, so that you will become the ancestor of many people groups. In fact, some of your descendants will be kings.*

ULT And I will make you very, very fruitful
UST Yes, I will give you many, many descendants

This verse elaborates on the last part of verse 5; it does not refer to different events. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [Yes, I will make you exceedingly fruitful] or [I will give you very many offspring]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT and I will make you into nations
UST so that you will become {the ancestor of many} people groups

Alternate translation: [so that you will be the father of many ethnic groups] or [and I will cause your descendants to become many ethnic groups]

ULT and kings will come from you
UST In fact, some of your descendants will be kings

See how you translated **king** in Genesis 14:1–5. Alternate translation: [In fact, there will be kings who descend from you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fruitful	Yes, I will give you many, many descendants
nations	the ancestor of many people groups
kings	kings

Genesis 17:7

ULT	UST
And I will establish my covenant between me and you and your offspring after you throughout their generations as an eternal covenant, to be God to you and to your offspring after you.	*I will establish my agreement with you and all your descendants who live after you for all generations to come. It will be an agreement that never ends, that I will be your God and the God of all your descendants.*

ULT **And I will establish my covenant between me and you**
UST I will establish my agreement with you

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 2. The pronouns **you** and **your** are singular in this clause and also later in this verse. Alternate translation: [I will make my covenant with you]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **to be God to you and to your offspring after you**
UST that I will be your God and {the God} of {all} your descendants

Alternate translation: [that I will be the God who takes care of you and all your descendants] or [that I will be the God whom you and all your descendants worship]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	my agreement
your offspring	all your descendants
generations	generations
eternal	that never ends
covenant	It will be an agreement
God	God
and to your offspring	and {the God} of {all} your descendants

Genesis 17:8

ULT	UST
And I will give to you and to your offspring after you the land of your sojournings, all the land of Canaan, as an eternal possession, and I will be God to them."	*I will also give to you and your descendants this land where you have been living as a foreigner, yes, the entire region of Canaan. They will own it forever, and I will be their God."*

ULT **and I will be God to them**
UST and I will be their God

See how you translated the phrase "be God to you" in verse 7. Alternate translation: [and I will be the God who takes care of them] or [I will be the God whom they worship]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and to your offspring	and your descendants
land	land
land	the … region of
Canaan	Canaan
eternal	forever
possession	They will own it
God	God

Genesis 17:9

ULT	UST
Then God said to Abraham, "And you, you must keep my covenant, you and your offspring after you throughout their generations.	*Then God continued, "Now as for your part in this agreement, you must obey me. That applies to you as well as all your descendants for all generations to come.*

ULT **Then God said to Abraham**
UST Then God continued

Some languages leave out this quote margin, because God is still speaking to the same person. See what you did for similar cases in Genesis 16:10–11.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **And you**
UST Now as for your part in this agreement

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic both in form and in sentence position to shift the focus from talking about God's part in the covenant (verses 4–8) to talking about Abraham's part. Translate this phrase in a way that shows this change in focus. Alternate translation: [As for you] or [Now as for your part in my covenant] or [Your responsibility in my agreement is that]

ULT **you must keep my covenant**
UST you must obey me

Alternate translation: [you must fulfill all the requirements of my agreement]

ULT **throughout their generations**
UST for {all} generations to come

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7, and a similar phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: [including all generations to come] or [for all future generations]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Abraham	Then God continued
you must keep	you must obey me
covenant	you must obey me
and your offspring	as well as {all} your descendants
generations	generations

Genesis 17:10

ULT	UST
This is my covenant which you must keep, between me and you and your offspring after you: Every male among you must be circumcised.	*This is what I require in my agreement with you and your descendants, which you all must obey: You must circumcise all males who live among you.*

ULT **which you must keep**
UST which you {all} must obey

The pronoun **you** is plural here because Yahweh is addressing Abraham and all his future offspring, even though they do not yet exist, so use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [which you and all of your future descendants]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **between me and you and**
UST with you and

The pronoun **you** is plural here and probably refers to Abraham and his family or household. Alternate translation: [the covenant that is between me and you all, including] or [the covenant I have made with all of you, including]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **your offspring after you**
UST your descendants

Notice that the pronouns **your** and **you** are singular here because they refer to Abraham. So use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [your descendants who will live after you:] or [all your descendants:]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **This {is} my covenant which you must keep, between me and you and your offspring after you**
UST This is {what I require in} my agreement with you and your descendants, which you {all} must obey

It may be clearer or more natural to change the order of some of the clauses in this sentence. Alternate translation: [This is what I require in my covenant with you and your descendants who will live after you, which you all must keep]
Support Reference: Information Structure

> ULT **Every male among you must be circumcised**
> UST You must circumcise all males {who live} among you

Circumcision involves cutting the foreskin off the penis of a boy or man. Translate this clause in a way that does not offend or embarrass people. Some languages may need to be more discreet and say something general like “must cut off the male skin” or “must follow the male skin-cutting custom.” It may be necessary to include a footnote and an explanation in the glossary about this so that people understand what circumcision is, especially in areas where people cut their skin on other parts of the body for other reasons. Alternate translation: [You must cut off the male foreskin of every boy and man who lives among you]

Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	what I require in my agreement
you must keep	you {all} must obey
your offspring	your descendants
circumcised	circumcise

Genesis 17:11

ULT	UST
Indeed, you must be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskins, and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and you.	*Yes, you must circumcise the foreskins of all the males among you, and that custom will remind you all that I made this agreement with you.*

ULT **Indeed, you must be circumcised {in} the flesh of your foreskins**
UST Yes, you must circumcise the foreskins of {all the males among} you

Notice that in the Hebrew text, the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural in this verse. Also, be consistent here with how you translated **circumcise** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Yes, all the males among you must have your foreskins cut off] or [Indeed, you must cut off the foreskin of all the males among you]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and you**
UST and that {custom} will remind {you all} that {I made} this agreement with you

The pronoun **you** is plural here. Alternate translation: [and that practice will show you all that I made my covenant with you]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
circumcised	circumcise
sign	and that {custom} will remind {you all} that
covenant	I made this agreement

Genesis 17:12

ULT	UST
So a son of eight days must be circumcised, every male among you throughout your generations, the one born in your house and the one bought with money from any son of a foreigner, who is not your offspring.	*For all future generations you must circumcise every baby boy who is eight days old, as well as all other males among your people. That includes males from your own family as well as those who are not your descendants but are servants whom you bought from foreigners.*

ULT **So a son of eight days must be circumcised**
UST you must circumcise {every} baby boy who is eight days old

If your language does not use this passive form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [You must circumcise every eight-day-old baby boy] or [So you must circumcise every eight-day-old baby boy]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **every male**
UST as well as all {other} males

The words **every male** could mean: (1) "and every other male." Alternate translation: [as well as all other males]; or (2) "yes, every male child." The following context suggests that this phrase includes males of all ages, not just babies, since male slaves who were bought would especially include adult males.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **So a son of eight days must be circumcised, every male among you throughout your generations**
UST For all {future} generations you must circumcise {every} baby boy who is eight days old, {as well as} all {other} males among your people

It may be more natural to put this phrase at the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [For all future generations you must circumcise every baby boy who is eight days old, as well as all other males among your people]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the one born in {your} house**
UST That includes males from your own family

This phrase refers to Abraham's future sons, including Isaac (Genesis 21:4) and his concubines' sons (25:6), and may also refer to the sons of Abraham's servants. Alternate translation: [including males who are born in your family] or [That includes those from your own family]

ULT **and the one bought with money from any son of a foreigner, who {is} not your offspring**
UST as well as those who {are} not your descendants but {are servants whom you} bought from foreigners

Alternate translation: [and those whom you buy from foreigners as slaves, and who are not your descendants] or [as well as those who are not your offspring but are slaves whom you have bought from foreigners]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
circumcised	circumcise
generations	generations
the one born in	That includes males from your own family
house	That includes males from your own family
money	as well as … but {are servants whom you} bought
foreigner	foreigners
your offspring	descendants

Genesis 17:13

ULT	UST
He must surely be circumcised, the one born in your house and the one bought with your money. So my covenant will be in your flesh as an eternal covenant.	*Yes, you must definitely circumcise all of them, regardless of whether they are sons from your own family or servants whom you have bought. That is how you must mark my agreement on your bodies to show that it is an agreement that never ends.*

ULT **He must surely be circumcised**
UST Yes, you must definitely circumcise {all of} them

The author is repeating forms of the verb **circumcising** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [Yes, you must surely circumcise all of them]

Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **the one born in your house and the one bought with your money**
UST regardless of whether they are sons from your own family or servants whom you have bought

See how you translated these phrases in verse 12. It may be best to translate them in a slightly different way here because of the repetition. Alternate translation: [including those who are born in your household as well as those whom you buy as a slave] or [regardless of whether they are males from your own household or slaves whom you have bought]

ULT **in your flesh**
UST on your bodies

The word **flesh** refers here to the body in general. Translate this in a way that is clear and natural in your language.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
circumcised	circumcise
the one born in	regardless of whether they are sons from your own family
house	regardless of whether they are sons from your own family
your money	or servants whom you have bought
covenant	my agreement
eternal	that never ends
covenant	to show that it is an agreement

Genesis 17:14

ULT	UST
And as for an uncircumcised male who is not circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin, indeed that person must be cut off from his people; he has broken my covenant.”	*In fact, if any man refuses to let you circumcise him, you must send him away and not allow him to associate with my people, because he has disobeyed what I require in my agreement.”*

ULT **And {as for} an uncircumcised male who is not circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin**
UST In fact, if any man refuses to let you circumcise him

In this context, **uncircumcised male** refers to men who refuse to be circumcised, not baby boys. Alternate translation: [But as for every man who is not circumcised] or [In fact, if a man refuses to let you circumcise him] or [If a man refuses to be circumcised]

ULT **indeed that person must be cut off from his people**
UST you must {send him away and} not allow him to associate with my people

The phrase **cut off from his people** is an idiom which means that the person is an outcast of society and can no longer associate closely with other people in that society. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that would work well here. Alternate translation: [that person must be sent away and not be allowed to fellowship with his people] or [you must send him away and not allow him to fellowship with his people]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **he has broken**
UST because he has disobeyed

This phrase has the opposite meaning of “keep” or “obey” in verse 9. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom like **broken** that means to not do what has been agreed upon or to disobey what was commanded. Alternate translation: [because he has not kept]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
uncircumcised	In fact, if any man
circumcised	circumcise
covenant	what I require in my agreement

Genesis 17:15

ULT	UST
Then God said to Abraham, "As for Sarai your wife, do not call her name Sarai, because her name will be Sarah.	*God also told Abraham, "As for your wife Sarai, do not call her Sarai anymore. Rather, from now on her name will be Sarah.*

ULT **Then God said to Abraham**
UST God {also} told Abraham

Alternate translation: [Later God also said to Abraham]

ULT **As for Sarai your wife**
UST As for your wife Sarai

This phrase is placed first in this quote in order to change the focus to Sarai and emphasize her. Consider what is the best way to do this in your language.

ULT **do not call her name Sarai**
UST do not call her Sarai anymore

Alternate translation: [her name will no longer be Sarai]

ULT **because her name {will be} Sarah**
UST Rather, {from now on} her name will be Sarah

Alternate translation: [because from now on her name will be Sarah] or [Rather, her name is now Sarah] or [Rather, from now on it will be Sarah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Abraham	Abraham
Sarai	Sarai
call	call
Sarai	Sarai
Sarah	Sarah

Genesis 17:16

ULT	UST
And I will bless her, and I will also give to you a son from her. Indeed, I will bless her and she will become nations; kings of peoples will come from her."	*I will bless her, and I will definitely enable her to bear a son for you. In fact, I will bless her so that she will have many descendants that will become many people groups, and some of her descendants will even be kings who rule over people groups."*

ULT **and I will also give to you a son from her**
UST and I will definitely enable her to bear a son for you

Alternate translation: [and I will definitely enable her to have a son for you] or [and I will definitely give you a son by her]

ULT **Indeed, I will bless her**
UST In fact, I will bless her

Alternate translation: [Yes, I will bless her]

ULT **and she will become nations**
UST so that she will {have many descendants that will} become {many} people groups

See how you translated **nations** in verses 4–6. Alternate translation: [so that she will become the mother of many ethnic groups] or [so much that she will have many descendants that will form new ethnic groups]

ULT **kings of peoples will come from her**
UST and some of her descendants will {even} be kings {who rule} over people groups

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 6. Alternate translation: [and kings over peoples will descend from her] or [and some of her descendants will even be kings who rule over many ethnic groups]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bless	bless
bless	bless
nations	many people groups
kings	kings

Genesis 17:17

ULT	UST
Then Abraham fell on his face, and he laughed and said in his heart, "Will a child be born to a son of 100 years? And will Sarah, who is a daughter of ninety years, bear a child?"	*When Abraham heard that, he bowed with his face to the ground before God to respect him, but he laughed silently and thought to himself, "How can a hundred-year-old man like me father a child? And how can Sarah, who is ninety years old, still have a baby?"*

ULT **Then Abraham fell on his face**
UST When Abraham {heard that, he} bowed with his face to the ground {before God} to respect him

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 3. Alternate translation: [When Abraham heard that, he bowed with his face to the ground before God to show respect] or [Then Abraham prostrated himself before God to show him respect]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and he laughed and said in his heart**
UST but he laughed {silently} and thought to himself

The phrase **said in his heart** is an idiom that refers to something Abraham thought, but did not say out loud. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: [but he laughed to himself and thought]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Will {a child} be born to a son of 100 years**
UST How can a hundred-year-old man {like me} father a child

Abraham uses the rhetorical questions in verse 17 to express strong disbelief. If that is not clear in your language, you could translate the rhetorical questions as statements, with or without a tag question. Alternate translation: [A hundred-year-old man like myself cannot father a son!] or [It is impossible for a hundred-year-old man like me to father a son!] or [A hundred-year-old man like me cannot father a child, can he?]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **And will Sarah, who is a daughter of ninety years, bear a child**
UST And how can Sarah, who is ninety years old, {still} have a baby

Alternate translation: [Sarah, who is 90 years old, cannot still have a baby!] or [It certainly is not possible for a 90-year-old woman like Sarah to still bear a baby!] or [And a 90-year-old woman like Sarah cannot give birth to a baby, can she?]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Sarah	Sarah
years	years
bear	still have a baby

Genesis 17:18

ULT	UST
Then Abraham said to God, "If only Ishmael might live before you!"	*So Abraham said to God, "Please let Ishmael be the one whom you bless as my heir!"*

ULT **Then Abraham said to God**
UST So Abraham said to God

Alternate translation: [So he said to God]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **If only Ishmael**
UST Please let Ishmael

Consider what is the best way to express this strong wish or hope in your language. Alternate translation: [Oh, that Ishmael]

ULT **might live before you**
UST be the one whom you bless as my heir

This idiom means to live under God's care and be blessed by him. Alternate translation: [live in your presence!]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
God	God
Ishmael	Ishmael

Genesis 17:19

ULT	UST
Then God said, "No, Sarah your wife is bearing a son for you, and you will call his name Isaac. And I will establish my covenant with him as an eternal covenant for his offspring after him.	*God replied, "Yes, but it is your wife Sarah who will give birth to a son for you. You must name him Isaac. He is the one I will establish my agreement with, as a permanent agreement that I will also keep with all his descendants who live after him.*

ULT **Then God said**
UST God replied

Alternate translation: [God said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **No**
UST Yes, but

Alternate translation: [No, rather] or [Yes, however]

ULT **Sarah your wife**
UST it is your wife Sarah who

Here God emphasizes what he said in verse 16 about Sarah. Alternate translation: [as I said, your wife Sarah is the one who]

ULT **is bearing a son for you**
UST will give birth to a son for you

Alternate translation: [will bear you a son]

ULT **and you will call his name Isaac**
UST You must name him Isaac

See how you translated "call her name" in verse 15. Alternate translation: [and you must name him Isaac] or [You must give him the name Isaac]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **And I will establish my covenant with him**
UST He {is the one} I will establish my agreement with

Alternate translation: [I will make my covenant with him] or [It is with him that I will establish my covenant]

ULT **as an eternal covenant**
UST as a permanent agreement

Alternate translation: [as an unending covenant]

> ULT **for his offspring after him**
> UST that I will also keep with {all} his descendants {who live} after him

Alternate translation: [that will also be for all his offspring who live after him] or [that I will also keep with all his offspring who live after him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Sarah	Sarah
bearing	will give birth to
call	You must name him
Isaac	Isaac
covenant	my agreement
eternal	permanent
covenant	as a … agreement
for his offspring	that I will also keep with {all} his descendants

Genesis 17:20

ULT	UST
And as for Ishmael, I have heard you. Behold, I will bless him, and I will make him fruitful and multiply him very greatly. He will father twelve rulers, and I will make him into a great nation.	*I also heard what you asked me to do for Ishmael. So this is what I will do: I will also bless him, and I will give him many children and greatly increase the number of his descendants. In fact, he will be the father of twelve sons who become powerful leaders, and I will make him the ancestor of a large people group.*

ULT **And as for Ishmael, I have heard you**
UST I also heard what you asked me to do for Ishmael

Alternate translation: [As for Ishmael, I have heard your request for him]

ULT **Behold**
UST So this is what I will do

Alternate translation: [So behold] or [So here is what I will do:]

ULT **and multiply him very greatly**
UST and greatly increase {the number of} his descendants

Alternate translation: [so that he has a great many descendants]

ULT **He will father**
UST In fact, he will be the father of

Alternate translation: [In fact, he will have]

ULT **twelve rulers**
UST twelve {sons who become} {powerful} leaders

Many translations have “princes” here, but these Ishmaelite rulers were not actually sons of a king, so it is better to use a more general term in your translation. Alternate translation: [twelve sons who become chiefs] or [twelve sons who will be great leaders]

ULT **and I will make him into a great nation**
UST and I will make him {the ancestor of} a large people group

Alternate translation: [and I will make him the father of a great ethnic group] or [and I will make him and his descendants become a great ethnic group]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Ishmael	Ishmael
bless	bless
fruitful	and I will give him many children
multiply	and greatly increase {the number of} his descendants
rulers	powerful leaders
nation	the ancestor of a … people group

Genesis 17:21

ULT	UST
However, my covenant I will establish with Isaac, whom Sarah will bear for you by this time in the next year.”	*But I will establish my agreement with your son Isaac. Sarah will give birth to him at this time next year.”*

ULT **However, my covenant I will establish**
UST But I will establish my agreement

In the Hebrew text, the phrase **my covenant** is put before the verb in order to change the topic to God’s covenant. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Also consider again how you translated **covenant** in verses 2, 4, 7, 9–11, 13–14, 19, 21. Alternate translation: [But I will make my covenant]

ULT **whom Sarah will bear for you**
UST Sarah will give birth to him

Also, see how you translated “is bearing … for you” in verse 19. Alternate translation: [whom Sarah will give birth to for you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	But … my agreement
Isaac	Isaac
Sarah	Sarah
bear	will give birth to
by … time	at … time
year	year

Genesis 17:22

ULT	UST
Then he finished speaking with him, and God went up from Abraham.	*After he had finished talking to Abraham, God left him and ascended to heaven.*

ULT **Then he finished speaking with him**
UST After he had finished talking to Abraham

See how you translated “spoke with him” in verse 3. Alternate translation: [When God had finished speaking with Abraham]

ULT **and God went up from Abraham**
UST God left him and ascended to heaven

Consider whether to use a noun or a pronoun to refer to God and Abraham at each point in this verse. Do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [he went up from Abraham to heaven] or [he left him and ascended to heaven] or [he left him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Abraham	him and ascended to heaven

Genesis 17:23

ULT	UST
Then Abraham took Ishmael his son and all those born in his house and everyone bought with his money, every male among the men of Abraham's house, and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskins on that very day, just as God had told him.	*Then Abraham gathered his son Ishmael and all the other males who were born in his household and all his male servants whom he had bought, yes, every male in his household. Then on that same day he circumcised them, exactly as God had commanded him to do.*

ULT **Then Abraham took**
UST Then Abraham gathered

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham brought together]

ULT **and everyone bought with his money**
UST and all {his male servants} whom he had bought

Alternate translation: [as well as all the male slaves whom he had bought]

ULT **every male among the men of Abraham's house**
UST yes, every male in his household

The phrase **every male among the men of Abraham's house** refers to everyone mentioned in the first half of this verse, including all males of all ages, not just men.

ULT **and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskins on that very day**
UST Then on that same day he circumcised them

Alternate translation: [and on that same day he cut off their foreskins]

ULT **Then Abraham took Ishmael his son and all those born in his house and everyone bought with his money, every male among the men of Abraham's house, and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskins on that very day, just as God had told him**
UST Then Abraham gathered his son Ishmael and all the {other} males who were born in his household and all {his male servants} whom he had bought, {yes,} every male in his household. Then on that same day he circumcised them, exactly as God had commanded him to do

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse. Alternate translation: [Then that very day, Abraham did just as God had commanded him to do: He took Ishmael his son and all those born in his house and everyone bought with his money, every male among the men of Abraham's house, and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskins]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Ishmael	Ishmael
those born in	the {other} males who were born in
house	his household
his money	his male servants whom he had bought
Abraham	in his household
house	in his household
circumcised	circumcised
day	day
God	God

Genesis 17:24

ULT	UST
And Abraham was a son of 99 years when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin,	*Abraham was 99 years old when he was circumcised,*

ULT **And Abraham**
UST Abraham

The information in verses 24 and 25 is background information. Many languages have a specific conjunction or transitional phrase that is used to introduce this kind of information. Alternate translation: [Now Abraham]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **was a son of 99 years**
UST was 99 years old

Here, **a son of 99 years** is a common expression that means "was 99 years old." If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [was ninety-nine years old]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin**
UST when he was circumcised

The expression **he was circumcised** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [when someone cut off his foreskin]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
years	years
circumcised	circumcised

Genesis 17:25

ULT	UST
and Ishmael his son was a son of thirteen years when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.	*and his son Ishmael was thirteen years old when Abraham circumcised him.*

ULT **and Ishmael his son**
UST and his son Ishmael

Alternate translation: [His son Ishmael]

ULT **was a son of thirteen years**
UST was thirteen years old

Alternate translation: [was 13 years old]

ULT **when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin**
UST when {Abraham} circumcised him

The expression **he was circumcised** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [when someone cut his foreskin off] or [when he circumcised him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Ishmael	Ishmael
years	years
circumcised	circumcised

Genesis 17:26

ULT	UST
On that very day Abraham was circumcised, and Ishmael his son.	*So it was, on that same day both Abraham and his son Ishmael were circumcised.*

ULT **On that very day**
UST So it was, on that same day

Verses 26 and 27 repeat what happened in verse 23 to emphasize what happened. The author assumes that readers will know that Abraham and Ishmael were circumcised twice. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [So it was, on that very day]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Abraham was circumcised, and Ishmael his son**
UST both Abraham and his son Ishmael were circumcised

The expression **was circumcised** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [someone circumcised Abraham, and Abraham circumcised his son Ishmael]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Abraham was circumcised, and Ishmael his son**
UST both Abraham and his son Ishmael were circumcised

Moses is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [Abraham was circumcised, and Ishmael his son was circumcised.]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
Abraham	Abraham
circumcised	circumcised
Ishmael	Ishmael

Genesis 17:27

ULT	UST
And all the males of his house, the one born in his house and the one bought with money from the son of a foreigner, were circumcised with him.	*And all the other males in Abraham's household, including those who had been born in his household as well as those whom he had bought as servants from foreigners, were also circumcised.*

ULT **the one born in his house**
UST including those {who had been} born in his household

See how you translated this phrase in verses 12 and 23.

ULT **and the one bought with money**
UST as well as those {whom he had} bought as servants

See how you translated a similar clause in verses 12 and 23. Alternate translation: [as well as those whom he had bought as slaves]

ULT **from the son of a foreigner**
UST from foreigners

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12.

ULT **And all the males of his house, the one born in his house and the one bought with money from the son of a foreigner, were circumcised with him**
UST And all the {other} males in Abraham's household, {including} those {who had been} born in his household as well as those {whom he had} bought {as servants} from foreigners, were also circumcised

For some languages it may be better to move this phrase earlier in this verse. Also, consider again how you translated **circumcised** in verses 10–14, 23–27. Alternate translation: [And all the other males in his household were circumcised with him, the one born in his house and the one bought with money from the son of a foreigner]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	Abraham's household
the one born in	including those {who had been} born in
house	his household
money	as well as those {whom he had} bought as servants
foreigner	foreigners
circumcised	circumcised

Genesis 18

Genesis 18:1

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh appeared to him by the terebinth trees of Mamre, and he was sitting at the opening of the tent in the heat of the day.	*Then one day Yahweh appeared again to Abraham at the oak trees on Mamre's land, while he was sitting at the entrance of his tent during the hottest part of the day.*

ULT **Then Yahweh appeared to him**
UST Then {one day} Yahweh appeared {again} to Abraham

See how you translated **appeared** in Genesis 12:7 and 17:1. Also, consider whether it is better to refer to Abraham here with a pronoun or with his name in your language. Alternate translation: [Then one day Yahweh came again to him] or [One day Yahweh visited Abraham again]

ULT **by the terebinth trees of Mamre**
UST at the oak trees on Mamre's land

See how you translated **terebinth trees** in Genesis 12:6 and also in Genesis 13:18, 14:13.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and he was sitting**
UST while he was sitting

Alternate translation: [and Abraham was seated]

ULT **at the opening of the tent**
UST at the entrance of his tent

Moses assumes that readers will know about **the opening of the tent**, that the entrance to the tent could be closed by a large piece of cloth or animal skin which hung in the entryway. A tent did not have a solid wood door such as a house has. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [at the cloth-covered doorway of his tent] or [at the way by which to enter the tent]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in the heat of the day**
UST during the hottest part of the day

Alternate translation: [during the warmest time of the day]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
by the terebinth trees of	oak
tent	tent
day	day

Genesis 18:2

ULT	UST
And he lifted his eyes and looked, and behold, three men were standing nearby him. And when he saw them, he ran from the entrance of the tent to meet them and bowed himself to the ground,	*Abraham looked up and saw that there were three men standing a short distance away. As soon as he saw them, he jumped up and hurried to them to greet them. Then he bowed before them with his face to the ground to show respect,*

ULT **And he lifted his eyes and looked**
UST Abraham looked up

See how you translate this phrase in Gen 13:10. Alternate translation: [He looked up]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and behold, three men were standing**
UST and saw that there were three men standing

Alternate translation: [and indeed, he noticed that there were three men standing] or [and was surprised to see three men standing]

ULT **nearby him**
UST a short distance away

Translate this phrase in a way that fits with the fact that the men were far enough away from Abraham that he could run over to them (as he did in the next sentence). Alternate translation: [not too far away from him]

ULT **And {when} he saw them**
UST As soon as he saw them

Alternate translation: [When he saw them]

ULT **he ran from the entrance of the tent**
UST he {jumped up and} hurried to them

Alternate translation: [he got up from where he was and quickly went] or [he got up and ran to them]

ULT **to meet them**
UST to greet them

Alternate translation: [to welcome them]

ULT **and bowed himself to the ground**
UST Then he bowed {before them} {with his face} to the ground to show respect

Compare how you translated a phrase that has a similar meaning **fell on his face** in Genesis 17:3, 17. Alternate translation: [and he bowed low before them with his forehead to the ground to show respect] or [Then he prostrated himself on the ground in front of them to show respect]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tent	he {jumped up and} hurried to them
bowed	bowed
to the ground	Then he bowed {before them} {with his face} to the ground to show respect

Genesis 18:3

ULT	UST
and he said, "My lords, if I have found favor in your eyes, please do not pass by your servant.	*and he said to them, "Sirs, if you consider me worthy to be your host, please do not leave here without letting me serve you as my guests.*

ULT and he said
UST and he said to them

Alternate translation: [and said to them]

ULT My lords
UST Sirs

Abraham uses **lords** here as a polite address to the three men. The Hebrew word "lord" can also be a reference to God, but notice that at this point Abraham probably thought he was talking to men or angels. It was not until later that he realized that one of them was Yahweh (verse 14). Alternate translation: [My masters] or [Gentlemen]

Support Reference: Politeness

ULT if I have found favor in your eyes
UST if you consider me worthy to be your host

The pronoun **your** is singular here in the Hebrew text, and also in the next clause. It could be that Abraham is addressing each of the three men simultaneously, or that he is addressing their leader or spokesman. Alternate translation: [if you are satisfied with me] or [if you would honor me with your presence]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT please do not pass by your servant
UST please do not leave here without letting me serve you as my guests

Abraham refers to himself as a servant here in order to show respect to his guests. Alternate translation: [please stay here for a while as my guests]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lords	Sirs
favor	you consider me worthy to be your host
servant	serve

Genesis 18:4

ULT	UST
Please let a little water be brought. Then you can wash your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree.	*Please let me bring you some water, so that you all can wash the dust off your feet, and then rest under the shade of this tree.*

ULT **Please let a little water be brought**
UST Please let me bring {you} some water

Saying **a little** was a polite way of showing generosity. Make sure your translation does not sound here like Abraham was only offering the men a tiny bit of water; he or his servants were going to bring them enough water to wash their feet. Alternate translation: [Let my servants bring you some water]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Then you can wash your feet**
UST so that you {all} can wash {the dust off} your feet

People wore sandals, and their feet would get dusty when they traveled. So it was customary to offer guests water to wash the dust off their feet. Also, notice that the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural here in the Hebrew text. Alternate translation: [That way you all can wash the dust off your feet]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and rest yourselves**
UST and then rest

Alternate translation: [and then relax here]

Genesis 18:5

ULT	UST
And I will bring a morsel of bread so that you can refresh your hearts before you go away, since you have come to your servant." And they said, "Alright, do as you have said."	*Since you are here with me, let me also bring some food for you to eat. That way you can regain your strength before you continue on your way." They replied to him, "Okay, do what you have proposed."*

ULT **And I will bring**
UST let me {also} bring

Alternate translation: [I will also get you] or [Let me also get you]

ULT **a morsel of**
UST some

Saying **a morsel** was a polite way of showing generosity. Make sure your translation does not sound here like Abraham was only offering the men a tiny bit of bread; he was going to give them plenty of food to eat. Alternate translation: [a little bit of]

ULT **bread**
UST food {for you} to eat

Since bread was a common staple of their diet, it is often used in the Bible to refer to food in general. Alternate translation: [bread for you to eat]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **so that you can refresh your hearts**
UST That way you can regain your strength

Notice that the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural in this quote in the Hebrew text and refer to Abraham's three guests. Alternate translation: [Then you can be refreshed]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **before you go away**
UST before you continue on your way

Alternate translation: [and then continue on your way] or [before you continue traveling]

ULT **since you have come to your servant**
UST Since you are here with me

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause at the beginning of this verse and say, "Since you are here with me, let me also bring some food …" Alternate translation: [now that you have come to me] or [since you are here with me]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And they said**
UST They replied to him

Alternate translation: [So they said to him] or [The men replied to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Alright**
UST Okay

The word used here in the Hebrew text shows agreement or acceptance. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Very well] or [That is good]

ULT **do as you have said**
UST do what you have proposed

Alternate translation: [do what you have suggested]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bread	food {for you} to eat
servant	with me

Genesis 18:6

ULT	UST
Then Abraham hurried into the tent to Sarah and said, "Hurry! Prepare three seahs of fine flour. Knead it and make loaves."	*So Abraham quickly went to Sarah inside their tent and told her, "Quickly get three batches of our best flour and bake some bread."*

ULT **into the tent to Sarah**
UST to Sarah inside their tent

Alternate translation: [to Sarah inside the tent]

ULT **and said**
UST and told her

Alternate translation: [and said to her]

ULT **Hurry! Prepare**
UST Quickly get

Alternate translation: [Quickly use] or [Quickly prepare]

ULT **three seahs of**
UST three batches

It is believed that **three seahs** was equivalent to over 20 liters. It was enough flour to make bread for many people, just as the calf (verse 7) provided enough meat for many people and showed generous hospitality. Besides Abraham's guests, others in his household may have also joined in eating the feast. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this in terms of modern measurements, either in the text or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [three large scoops]
Support Reference: Biblical Volume

ULT **fine flour**
UST of our best flour

Alternate translation: [of good quality flour] or [of the best flour]

ULT **Knead {it} and make loaves**
UST and bake {some} bread

The Hebrew word for **loaves** here is often translated as "cakes," which probably refers to their flat, round shape (similar to biscuits). However, make sure your translation of this word does not sound like a dessert, because this bread was not sweet. Alternate translation: [Knead the dough and make it into loaves] or [and bake some loaves of flat bread] or [and make some bread]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
tent	tent
Sarah	Sarah

Genesis 18:7

ULT	UST
Then Abraham ran to the herd and selected a tender and choice calf. Then he gave it to a servant and he hurried to prepare it.	*Then he ran outside to his herd of cattle and chose one of his best calves that would be good to eat. Then he took it to one of his servants, and the servant quickly butchered it and cooked it.*

ULT **and selected**
UST and chose

Alternate translation: [and picked out]

ULT **a tender and choice calf**
UST one of his best calves that would be good to eat

Alternate translation: [one of his best calves that would be tasty to eat]

ULT **Then he gave it**
UST Then he took it

The word **gave** means Abram brought the calf to his servant and put him in charge of preparing its meat for a meal. Make sure your translation does not sound like the calf was a gift.
Alternate translation: [Then he took the calf] or [Then he turned it over]

ULT **and he hurried to prepare it**
UST and the servant quickly butchered it and cooked it

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this clause refers to the servant, not Abraham.
Alternate translation: [and his servant quickly prepared it] or [who quickly slaughtered it and roasted it]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	he ran outside
the herd	cattle
and choice	good
calf	one of his best calves
servant	servants

Genesis 18:8

ULT	UST
Then he took curds and milk and the calf that he had prepared, and he set it before them. Then he stood by them under the tree and they ate.	*Then Abraham brought some yogurt and milk and the meat that his servant had prepared, and he put it all before his three guests to eat. Then he stood nearby them where they were sitting under the tree and served them while they ate.*

ULT **Then he took**
UST Then Abraham brought

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Abraham, not his servant. Alternate translation: [Then he got]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **curds**
UST some yogurt

This term refers to churned, fermented milk that has curdled. Alternate translation: [some curds]

ULT **and milk**
UST and milk

Alternate translation: [along with milk] or [as well as milk]

ULT **and the calf**
UST and the meat

Alternate translation: [and the meat from the calf]

ULT **that he had prepared**
UST that his servant had prepared

Alternate translation: [that he had his servant prepare] or [that the servant had cooked]

ULT **and he set it before them**
UST and he put it {all} before his {three} guests to eat

Since verse 2 was the last time the three men were mentioned, it may be clearer and more natural to make them explicit here. Alternate translation: [and he served all of it to the three men to eat] or [and he set it all before his three guests to eat]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and they ate**
UST and served them while they ate

As the host, Abraham stood nearby his guests in order to wait on them and make sure they had everything that they needed. Alternate translation: [and waited on them while they ate]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
calf	and the meat

Genesis 18:9

ULT	UST
Then they said to him, "Where is Sarah your wife?" And he said, "Behold, in the tent."	*Then one of the men asked Abraham, "Where is your wife Sarah?" Abraham answered, "She is there in the tent."*

ULT Then they said to him
UST Then {one of} the men asked Abraham

The Hebrew text uses a plural pronoun here (**they**) to refer to one of the three men who spoke to Abraham on behalf of them all (See verse 10). Many languages can use **they** or "the men" in the same way. Make sure your translation of this quote margin does not sound like all three of the men spoke at the same time. Alternate translation: [Then one of the men asked him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT And he said
UST Abraham answered

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham is the one speaking here. Alternate translation: [He answered him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Behold, in the tent
UST She is there in the tent

Alternate translation: [She is there inside the tent]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarah	Sarah
tent	tent

Genesis 18:10

ULT	UST
Then he said, "I will surely return to you at the time of life, and behold, Sarah your wife will have a son." And Sarah was listening at the opening of the tent, and it was behind him.	*Then the man said to Abraham, "I will definitely come back here to visit you at this time next year. When I do, your wife Sarah will have a baby son." Now Sarah was listening inside the entrance of the tent, which was behind the man.*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then the man said to Abraham

This phrase refers to the man in verse 9 who spoke on behalf of himself and the other two men. We find out in verse 13 that the man was actually Yahweh. However, at this point Abraham and Sarah probably did not yet know who he was, so it is better to not specify who he was here, in order to keep that suspense in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then that man]

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then the man said to Abraham

Alternate translation: [said to him] or [spoke again to Abraham]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I will surely return**
UST I will definitely come back here

Alternate translation: [I will certainly come back]

ULT **to you**
UST to visit you

Alternate translation: [to you here]

ULT **at the time of life**
UST at this time next year

For some languages it may be more natural to move this time phrase to the beginning of this quote and say, "Next year at this time I will surely return …" Alternate translation: [at this season next year] or [next year at this time]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and behold**
UST When I do

Alternate translation: [and when I do] or [At that time]

ULT **Sarah your wife will have a son**
UST your wife Sarah will have a {baby} son

This means that Sarah would have a son with her when Yahweh returns. It does not mean that she would give birth at that time. Alternate translation: [your wife Sarah will have a baby boy with her] or [your wife Sarah will already have a baby son]

ULT **And Sarah was listening**
UST Now Sarah was listening

This sentence gives information about something that was happening while the man was talking. Translate this in a way that makes that clear in your language. Alternate translation: [Now Sarah was eavesdropping] or [Sarah was eavesdropping]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **at the opening of the tent**
UST inside the entrance of the tent

See how you translated “the entrance of the tent” in verse 1. Alternate translation: [inside the doorway of the tent]

ULT **and it {was} behind him**
UST which was behind the man

Notice that the pronoun **it** refers to the entrance to the tent (where Sarah was). Alternate translation: [which was right behind]

ULT **was behind him**
UST was behind the man

The pronoun **him** is ambiguous here. It could refer to: (1) “the man” or (2) “Abraham” Alternate translation: [was behind Abraham]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarah	Sarah
Sarah	Sarah
tent	tent

Genesis 18:11

ULT	UST
Now Abraham and Sarah were old, advanced in days; the way of women had ceased to be with Sarah.	*She and Abraham were already very old, so that Sarah was far past the age that she could have children.*

ULT Now Abraham and Sarah
UST She and Abraham

This verse gives background information that is important to what happens next. Some languages use a conjunction such as **Now** here to introduce this kind of information, while other languages omit the conjunction, especially if **Now** is used to begin the last sentence in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Abraham and she] or [Sarah and Abraham]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT were old, advanced in days
UST were {already} very old

Alternate translation: [were already quite old] or [were very elderly]

ULT the way of women had ceased to be with Sarah
UST so that Sarah was {far} past the age that she could have children

The Hebrew text has an idiom here that is a polite way of saying that Sarah had reached menopause and so was not able to have children. Other languages may have a similar idiom. Make sure your translation of this clause will not offend or embarrass people when it is read aloud in public. Alternate translation: [so that she was much older than the normal age for bearing children] or [so that she was far past the time that she could bear children]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Sarah	She and
Sarah	Sarah

Genesis 18:12

ULT	UST
So Sarah laughed within herself and said, "After I am worn out, will I have pleasure? And my lord is old!"	*So she laughed to herself in disbelief and said to herself, "It does not seem possible that I could experience the pleasure of having a child now that I am too old to conceive. Besides that, my husband is also very old!"*

ULT **So Sarah laughed within herself**
UST So she laughed to herself in disbelief

See how you translated **laughed** in Genesis 17:17 where Abraham also laughed to himself.
Alternate translation: [So Sarah laughed to herself in disbelief]

ULT **and said**
UST and said to herself

Alternate translation: [and thought to herself] or [and asked herself]

ULT **After I am worn out**
UST now that I am too old to conceive

Alternate translation: [Since my body is now worn out] or [Now that I am too old to conceive]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **will I have pleasure**
UST It does not seem possible that I could experience the pleasure of having a child

Sarah uses a rhetorical question to express her strong emotion and disbelief. Consider whether or not it is best to use a rhetorical question here in your language. Alternate translation: [will I still have this pleasure?]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **And my lord {is} old**
UST Besides that, my husband is {also} {very} old

The phrase **my lord** is a title of respect that Sarah uses to refer to Abraham as her husband.
Alternate translation: [Besides that, my master is also too old!]
Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarah	So she laughed … in disbelief
pleasure	It does not seem possible that I could experience the pleasure of having a child
lord	Besides that, my husband

Genesis 18:13

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said to Abraham, "Why is it that Sarah laughed, saying, 'Will I really bear a child when I am old?'	*But Yahweh asked Abraham, "Sarah should not have laughed and said to herself that she is too old to have a child!*

ULT **Then Yahweh said to Abraham**
UST But Yahweh asked Abraham

The way you translate this quote margin will depend on whether you translate the rest of this verse as a rhetorical question or a statement. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh asked Abraham]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Why {is it} that Sarah laughed, saying**
UST Sarah should not have laughed and said to herself

Yahweh uses rhetorical question in verses 13–14 to confront Sarah's disbelief and to emphasize that nothing is too difficult for God to do. Consider whether or not it is best to use rhetorical questions here in your language. Alternate translation: [Why did Sarah laugh to herself and say] or [Sarah should not have laughed and thought to herself] or [Sarah should not have laughed, thinking]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Will I really bear {a child} when I am old**
UST that she is too old to have a child

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to make this embedded quote a direct or indirect quote. Make sure that your translation of **I** refers here to Sarah, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: [I am too old to bear a child!]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Abraham	Abraham
Sarah	Sarah
bear	that she is too old to have a child

Genesis 18:14

ULT	UST
Is anything too hard for Yahweh? At the appointed time I will return to you, at the time of life, and Sarah will have a son."	*Nothing is too difficult for Yahweh to do! At the time that I have set, I will return to you here. Yes, I will come at this time next year, and Sarah will already have a son."*

ULT Is anything too hard for Yahweh
UST Nothing is too difficult for Yahweh to do

Alternate translation: [Is there anything that is too hard for Yahweh to do?] or [Nothing is too hard for Yahweh to do!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT At the appointed time
UST At the time that I have set

Alternate translation: [At the time that I have decided]

ULT I will return to you
UST I will return to you here

Consider how you translated this in verse 10. Alternate translation: [I will come back here to visit you]

ULT at the time of life
UST Yes, I will come at this time next year

See how you translated this idiom in verse 10. Also, for some languages it may be better to put this phrase right after the first time phrase in this verse and say, "At the time that I have decided, which will be this time next year, I will return here to visit you," Alternate translation: [Yes, I will return at this time next year] or [—it will be at this time next year—]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT and Sarah will have a son
UST and Sarah will {already} have a son

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 10. Alternate translation: [and Sarah will have a baby son with her] or [and Sarah will already have a baby boy]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
hard	is too difficult … to do
Yahweh	Yahweh
appointed	At the time that I have set
Sarah	Sarah

Genesis 18:15

ULT	UST
But Sarah denied it by saying, "I did not laugh," because she was afraid. But he said, "No, but you did laugh."	*When Sarah heard that, she was afraid, so she lied to him and said, "I did not laugh." But Yahweh replied, "That is not true. You did laugh."*

ULT **But Sarah denied it**
UST so she lied to him

The Hebrew verb here includes the meaning of lying or deceiving. Alternate translation: [But Sarah lied to him]

ULT **by saying**
UST and said

Notice that the verbs **denied** and **saying** refer to the same event, not two separate events. Make sure that is clear in your translation.

ULT **I did not laugh," because she was afraid**
UST When Sarah heard that, she was afraid … I did not laugh

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, for some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "When Sarah heard that, she was afraid, so she lied to him and said, 'I did not laugh.'" Alternate translation: [that she did not laugh. She said that, because she was afraid]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **But he said**
UST But Yahweh replied

Alternate translation: [But he replied to her]

ULT **No, but you did laugh**
UST That is not true. You did laugh

Consider whether Yahweh's reply to Sarah here should begin with **No** or "Yes" in your language. Alternate translation: [Yes, you did laugh]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarah	so she lied to him
afraid	afraid

Genesis 18:16

ULT	UST
Then the men got up from there and looked down toward Sodom. And Abraham went with them to send them off.	*When they had finished eating, the three men got up to leave and started walking down toward the city of Sodom. Abraham escorted them for a while to see them on their way.*

ULT **Then the men got up from there**
UST When they had finished eating, the {three} men got up to leave

Alternate translation: [After they had finished eating, the three men got up to leave]

ULT **and looked down toward Sodom**
UST and started walking down toward {the city of} Sodom

This phrase reflects the fact that the city of Sodom was lower in elevation than the city of Hebron, where Abraham was living. Alternate translation: [and started heading down toward the city of Sodom]

ULT **And Abraham went with them**
UST Abraham escorted them for a while

Alternate translation: [Abraham walked with them for a while] or [Abraham accompanied them for a while]

ULT **to send them off**
UST to see them on their way

Alternate translation: [as they were leaving]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sodom	Sodom
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 18:17

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said, "Should I hide from Abraham what I am doing?	*Then Yahweh thought to himself, "Should I keep secret from Abraham what I am about to do to the city of Sodom?*

ULT **And Yahweh said**
UST Then Yahweh thought to himself

The context implies that Yahweh said this to himself, without Abraham hearing him. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 11:6. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh said to himself]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Should I hide from Abraham**
UST Should I keep secret from Abraham

Alternate translation: [I will not conceal from Abraham] or [I will tell Abraham]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **what I am doing**
UST what I am about to do to the city of Sodom

Whether you end this sentence with a question mark or a period will depend on how you choose to translate this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [what I am going to do to the city of Sodom]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 18:18

ULT	UST
And Abraham will surely become a great and mighty nation, and in him all the nations of the earth will be blessed.	*After all, he and his descendants will definitely become a great and powerful people group, and through them I will bless all the people groups in the world.*

ULT And Abraham will surely become
UST After all, he {and his descendants} will definitely become

Some translations begin a new sentence here. Other translations continue the rhetorical question (or statement) in verse 17 to the end of verse 18 and say, "since Abraham will …" or "seeing that he will …" Alternate translation: [he will surely be the ancestor of] or [After all, Abraham and his descendants will surely multiply and become]

ULT a great and mighty nation
UST a great and powerful people group

See how you translated "great nation" in Genesis 12:2. Alternate translation: [a great and powerful ethnic group]

ULT in him
UST through them

This phrase refers to Abraham and his descendants, including ultimately the Messiah. See the note about this at Genesis 12:3. Alternate translation: [and through him] or [and because of him] or [and by means of him]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT and in him all the nations of the earth will be blessed
UST and through them I will bless all the people groups in the world

The expression **will be blessed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [and in him I will bless all the nations of the earth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	After all, he and his descendants
mighty	and powerful
nation	people group
nations	the people groups in
earth	the world
blessed	bless

Genesis 18:19

ULT	UST
For I have known him so that he will command his children and his house after him, and they will keep the way of Yahweh by doing righteousness and justice, so that Yahweh will bring about for Abraham what he has said to him."	*In fact, I have chosen him so that he will train his children and his descendants, so that they will live the way I want them to live and do what is right and treat people justly. Therefore I will do for him everything I have promised him that I will do."*

ULT **For**
UST In fact

Alternate translation: [Indeed]

ULT **I have known him**
UST I have chosen him

Consider whether or not your language has an idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: [I have chosen Abraham]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **so that he will command his children**
UST so that he will train his children

Alternate translation: [so that he will guide his children]

ULT **and his house after him**
UST and his descendants

Alternate translation: [grandchildren, and other descendants who will live after him]

ULT **and they will keep the way of Yahweh**
UST so that they will live the way I want them to live

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is speaking about himself here.
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **by doing righteousness and justice**
UST and do what is right and treat people justly

Alternate translation: [and do what is right and just in my eyes] or [and do what is right including treat people justly]

ULT **so that**
UST so that

Alternate translation: [So]

ULT **Yahweh will bring about**
UST I will do

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is referring to himself here. Alternate translation: [I will accomplish]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **for Abraham what he has said to him**
UST for him everything I have promised him that I will do

The pronoun **he** refers to Yahweh here. Make sure the way you use nouns and pronouns throughout this verse makes it clear in your language who is speaking and who is being referred to. Alternate translation: [for him what I have promised him that I will do]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
known	I have chosen him
house	and his descendants
Yahweh	I want them to live
righteousness	what is right
justice	and treat people justly
Yahweh	I
Abraham	him

Genesis 18:20

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said, "Because the outcry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and because their sin is very grievous,	*So Yahweh said to Abraham, "I have heard that the people of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah have become very evil, and they are sinning very terribly.*

ULT **Then Yahweh said**
UST So Yahweh said to Abraham

Alternate translation: [So Yahweh told Abraham]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Because the outcry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and because their sin is very grievous**
UST I have heard that {the people of} {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah have become very evil, and they are sinning very terribly

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the phrase **Sodom and Gomorrah** refers to the people in those cities. Also, in the Hebrew text this sentence continues into verse 21. Alternate translation: [I have heard many terrible accusations against the people of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah because they are sinning so grievously So] or [I have heard many people crying out against the people in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah because they are committing very evil things]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
outcry	I have heard that … have become very evil
Sodom	Sodom
Gomorrah	Gomorrah
sin	sinning

Genesis 18:21

ULT	UST
I will go down now and see whether they have done altogether according to its outcry that has come to me. And if not, I will know."	*I must go down to those cities now to determine whether or not they are guilty of everything that I have heard against them. If they are not guilty, then I will know it and I will not punish them."*

ULT **I will go down now**
UST I must go down {to those cities} now

The cities of Sodom and Gomorrah were both lower in elevation than the city of Hebron. See what you did for a similar case in verse 16. Alternate translation: [I am going to those cities now]

ULT **and see**
UST to determine

Alternate translation: [to investigate] or [in order to find out]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **whether they have done altogether according to its outcry**
UST whether {or not} they are guilty of everything

Alternate translation: [whether or not the people in those cities are guilty of everything] or [if the people there have done all the terrible sins]

ULT **that has come to me**
UST that I have heard against them

Alternate translation: [that I have heard about them] or [that I have heard they are guilty of]

ULT **And if not**
UST If {they are} not guilty

Alternate translation: [If those things are not true]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
outcry	whether or not
know	know

Genesis 18:22

ULT	UST
Then the men turned away from there and went toward Sodom, and Abraham was still standing before Yahweh.	*Then the other two men left and continued walking toward the city of Sodom, while Abraham remained there with Yahweh.*

ULT **Then the men turned away from there**
UST Then the {other two} men left

Alternate translation: [Then the other two men left from there]

ULT **toward Sodom**
UST toward {the city of} Sodom

Alternate translation: [and continued heading toward the city of Sodom] or [and headed toward the city of Sodom]

ULT **and Abraham was still standing**
UST while Abraham remained there

Alternate translation: [and Abraham stood there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sodom	Sodom
Abraham	Abraham
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 18:23

ULT	UST
Then Abraham approached him and said, "Will you really sweep away the righteous with the wicked?	*Then Abraham stepped closer to Yahweh and asked him, "Certainly you will not destroy righteous people along with wicked people, will you?*

ULT **Then Abraham approached him**
UST Then Abraham stepped closer to Yahweh

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham came closer to him]

ULT **and said**
UST and asked him

Alternate translation: [and said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Will you really sweep away**
UST Certainly you will not destroy … will you

Abraham uses a rhetorical question here to express his strong feelings and concern about what Yahweh told him. Consider whether or not it is clear and natural to use a rhetorical question here in your language. Make sure it does not sound like Abraham is angry or being rude. See how you translated a similar idiom **wipe away** in Genesis 6:7. Alternate translation: [Would you indeed wipe out] or [Surely you would not destroy]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **the righteous**
UST righteous people

Alternate translation: [the good people in the city]

ULT **with**
UST along with

Alternate translation: [together with] or [when you destroy]

ULT **Will you really sweep away the righteous with the wicked**
UST Certainly you will not destroy righteous {people} {along} with wicked {people}, will you

The way you translate this rhetorical question will determine what punctuation mark you end this sentence with. If you use an exclamation point here, make sure it does not sound like Abraham was angry, shouting, or being disrespectful. Alternate translation: [Please do not sweep away the righteous with the wicked.] or [Surely you would not sweep away the righteous with the wicked!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
sweep	Certainly you will not destroy … will you
righteous	righteous
wicked	wicked

Genesis 18:24

ULT	UST
Suppose there are fifty righteous in the city. Will you really sweep away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous who are in it?	*What will you do if there are fifty righteous people living in the city of Sodom? Will you really still destroy all the people in the city rather than let them all live because of the fifty upright people who live there?*

ULT **Suppose**
UST What {will you do} if

Abraham says **Suppose** to introduce an imaginary situation to help explain his request to God. Use a natural method in your language for introducing an imaginary situation. Alternate translation: [Perhaps you would find that]
Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **Will you really sweep away**
UST Will you really {still} destroy

Abraham is using the question form to persuade God not to destroy a city that may contain innocent people. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. See how you translated this phrase in verse 23. Alternate translation: [Surely you will not still kill all the people]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **and not spare the place**
UST all the people in the city rather than let them all live

Alternate translation: [and not preserve the city]

ULT **for the sake of**
UST because of

Alternate translation: [in order to save]

ULT **Will you really sweep away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous who {are} in it**
UST Will you really {still} destroy {all the people in} the city rather than let them all live because of the fifty upright {people} who live there

Abraham is using the question form to speak to God about preserving the innocent. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [Surely you will not really sweep away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous who are in it!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
righteous	righteous
sweep	Will you really {still} destroy
righteous	upright

Genesis 18:25

ULT	UST
Far be it from you to do something like that, killing the righteous with the wicked, so that the righteous are like the wicked! Far be it from you! Will the one who judges all the earth not do justice?"	*Certainly you would never do such a thing as kill righteous people together with evil people, so that you are treating them both the same way! Certainly you would never do such a thing! As the Judge over everyone on the earth, certainly you will treat people justly."*

ULT **Far be it from you**
UST Certainly you would never

This idiom expresses emphatically that Abraham does not believe Yahweh would do this. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Make sure that Abraham sounds respectful in your translation. Alternate translation: [Surely you would never] or [It seems impossible that you would ever] or [I hope that you would never]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the righteous**
UST righteous people

See how you translated this phrase in verse 23. Alternate translation: [good people]

ULT **with**
UST together with

Alternate translation: [along with] or [when you destroy]

ULT **the wicked**
UST evil people

See how you translated **the wicked** in verse 23. Alternate translation: [wicked people]

ULT **so that the righteous are like the wicked**
UST so that you are treating them both the same way

If exclamation points are used in this chapter, make sure it does not sound like Abraham is angry, shouting, or being disrespectful. Alternate translation: [so that good people are punished by you as if they were evil!]

ULT **Far be it from you**
UST Certainly you would never

See how you translated a similar phrase at the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [Surely you would never do such a thing!] or [It seems impossible that you would ever do such a thing!] or [I hope that you would never do such a thing!]

> ULT **Will the one who judges all the earth not do justice**
> UST As the Judge over everyone on the earth, certainly you will treat people justly

Alternate translation: [You are the one who judges all the people on the earth. Surely you will do what is right!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
righteous	righteous
wicked	evil
righteous	so that you are treating them both the same way
wicked	so that you are treating them both the same way
judges	Judge
earth	earth
justice	certainly you will treat people justly

Genesis 18:26

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said, "If I find in Sodom fifty righteous in the city, then I will spare the whole place for their sake."	*Yahweh replied to him, "If there are fifty righteous people living in the city of Sodom, then I will spare the whole city and everyone who lives there because of them."*

ULT **Then Yahweh said**
UST Yahweh replied to him

Make sure that the various quote margins in this long conversation (verses 23–32) are clear and natural in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh answered him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **in Sodom fifty righteous in the city**
UST fifty righteous {people} {living} in the city of Sodom

Alternate translation: [50 godly people living in the city of Sodom]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **then I will spare the whole place**
UST then I will spare the whole city and everyone who lives there

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is referring here to the city of Sodom as well as the people who live there, not just the city. Alternate translation: [then I will spare the entire city and everyone who lives there] or [then I will not destroy the city or anyone in it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for their sake**
UST because of them

Alternate translation: [for the sake of those righteous people] or [in order to save those good people]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Sodom	Sodom
righteous	righteous
then I will spare	then I will spare

Genesis 18:27

ULT	UST
Then Abraham spoke up and said, "Behold, please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to my Lord, although I am dust and ashes.	*Then Abraham spoke up again and asked Yahweh, "My Lord, please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly, even though I am as insignificant as dirt and ashes compared to you.*

ULT **Then Abraham spoke up**
UST Then Abraham spoke up again

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham responded]

ULT **and said**
UST and asked Yahweh

Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and asked him]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Behold, please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to**
UST please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly

The idiom **taken it upon myself** means that Abraham has decided to do something and is acting boldly. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: [Listen, please, since I have been bold to speak to you] or [Please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **I have taken it upon myself to speak to my Lord**
UST My Lord, please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly

Even though Abraham realizes by now that he is talking to Yahweh directly, he is speaking of him in the third person as **my lord** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form in the second person. Use a respectful term in your translation that is appropriate for him to use when he refers to Yahweh here and in the rest of this chapter. Alternate translation: [my Master] or [Master]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **although I**
UST even though I

Alternate translation: [in spite of the fact that]

ULT **although I {am} dust and ashes**
UST even though I am {as insignificant as} dirt and ashes compared to you

See how you translated **dust** in Genesis 2:7 and 3:19. Alternate translation: [I am as unimportant as dust and ashes compared to you] or [I am nothing compared to you] or [I have no status compared to you]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Lord	Lord

Genesis 18:28

ULT	UST
Suppose the fifty righteous lack five? Will you destroy the whole city because of five?" And he said, "I will not destroy it if I find forty-five there."	*But what will you do if there are only forty-five righteous people in the city instead of fifty? Will you destroy the whole city and everyone in it if there are five people too few who are righteous?" Yahweh answered, "I will not destroy the city if there are forty-five righteous people living there."*

ULT **Suppose**
UST But what {will you do} if

See how you translated this term in verse 24. Alternate translation: [But suppose that]

ULT **the fifty righteous lack five**
UST there are only forty-five righteous {people} {in the city} instead of fifty

Alternate translation: [there are five fewer than 50 righteous people living in the city?] or [there are only 45 righteous people in the city instead of 50?]

ULT **Will you destroy the whole city**
UST Will you destroy the whole city and everyone in it

See how you translated "the whole place" in verse 26. Alternate translation: [Will you still destroy the whole city and everyone in it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **because of five**
UST if there are five people too few who are righteous

Alternate translation: [because the number of righteous people is five persons low?]

ULT **And he said**
UST Yahweh answered

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is speaking here, not Abraham. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh said to him] or [Yahweh answered him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I will not destroy it if I find forty-five there**
UST I will not destroy the city if there are forty-five {righteous people} {living} there

Make sure it is clear in your translation what "45" refers to. Alternate translation: [I will not destroy the city if there are 45 righteous people living there] or [if I find 45 righteous people living in the city, I will not destroy it]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
righteous	righteous
destroy	destroy
destroy	destroy

Genesis 18:29

ULT	UST
Then he continued again to speak to him and said, “Suppose forty are found there?” And he said, “I will not do it for the sake of the forty.”	*Then Abraham spoke again to Yahweh and asked, “What will you do if there are only forty righteous people in the city? Will you destroy it then?” Yahweh answered, “I will not destroy the city, in order to save the forty righteous people.”*

ULT **Then he continued again to speak to him**
UST Then Abraham spoke again to Yahweh

Alternate translation: [Then he spoke again to him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and said**
UST and asked

Alternate translation: [and asked him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Suppose**
UST What {will you do} if

Alternate translation: [Suppose that]

ULT **forty are found**
UST there are {only} forty righteous people

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [only 40 righteous people are found by you] or [you find only 40 righteous people] or [there are only 40 righteous people]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **there**
UST in the city? Will you destroy it then

Alternate translation: [living there?] or [living in the city? Will you destroy it then?]

ULT **And he said**
UST Yahweh answered

Alternate translation: [And Yahweh replied] or [He answered him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **for the sake of**
UST in order to save

Alternate translation: [because of]

> ULT **the forty**
> UST the forty righteous people

Alternate translation: [the 40 righteous people] or [those 40 people]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

Genesis 18:30

ULT	UST
Then he said, “Please do not let my Lord be angry, and let me speak: Suppose thirty are found there?” And he said, “I will not do it if I find thirty there.”	*Then Abraham pleaded with him, “My Lord, please do not be angry with me, but let me ask you another question: What will you do if there are only thirty righteous people living there?” He replied, “I will not destroy the city if there are thirty righteous people there.”*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Abraham pleaded with him

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham is speaking here, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham asked him] or [Then Abraham pleaded with Yahweh]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Please do not let my Lord be angry**
UST My Lord, please do not be angry with me

Even though Abraham is addressing Yahweh directly, he is speaking of him in the third person as **my Lord** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form in the second person. Alternate translation: [My Master, please do not be angry at me]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and let me speak**
UST but let me ask {you} another question

Alternate translation: [but let me say something else:] or [rather let me ask you another question:]

ULT **Suppose**
UST What {will you do} if

Alternate translation: [Suppose that]

ULT **thirty are found**
UST there are {only} thirty righteous people

If you use the numeral “30” here in your translation, make sure that it will not get confused with the verse number. Alternate translation: [only 30 righteous people are found] or [you find only 30 righteous people] or [there are only 30 righteous people]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **there**
UST living there

Alternate translation: [living in the city?]

ULT **And he said**
UST He replied

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is speaking here, not Abraham. Alternate translation: [Yahweh replied] or [He answered him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **I will not do it if I find thirty there**
UST I will not destroy {the city} if there are thirty {righteous people} there

See how you translated a similar sentence at the end of verse 28. Alternate translation: [I will not destroy the city if I find 30 righteous people living there] or [If I find 30 righteous people living in the city, I will not destroy it]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord

Genesis 18:31

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Behold, please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to my Lord. Suppose twenty are found there?" And he said, "I will not destroy it for the sake of the twenty."	*Then Abraham asked him, "My Lord, please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly. What will you do if there are only twenty righteous people living in the city?" Yahweh replied, "I will not destroy the city, in order to save the twenty righteous people."*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Abraham asked him

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham is speaking here, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham said to him] or [Then Abraham asked Yahweh]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold, please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to my Lord**
UST My Lord, please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly

See how you translated this clause in verse 27. Alternate translation: [Listen, please, since I have been bold to speak to you, my Lord] or [My Lord please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **Suppose**
UST What {will you do} if

Alternate translation: [Suppose that]

ULT **twenty are found**
UST there are {only} twenty righteous people

Alternate translation: [only 20 righteous people are found by you] or [you find only 20 righteous people] or [there are only 20 righteous people]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **there**
UST living in the city

Alternate translation: [living there?]

ULT **And he said**
UST Yahweh replied

Alternate translation: [He replied] or [Then he answered him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **for the sake of**
UST in order to save

Alternate translation: [because of]

ULT **the twenty**
UST the twenty righteous people

Alternate translation: [the 20 righteous people] or [those 20 people]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
destroy	destroy

Genesis 18:32

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Please do not let my Lord be angry, and let me speak just once more: Suppose ten are found there?" And he said, "I will not destroy it for the sake of the ten."	*Then Abraham said, "My Lord, please do not be angry with me, but let me ask you just one more thing: What will you do if there are only ten righteous people in the city?" Yahweh answered him, "I will not destroy the city, in order to save the ten righteous people."*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Abraham said

Alternate translation: [Finally he said to him] or [Then he asked him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Please do not let my Lord be angry**
UST My Lord, please do not be angry with me

Consider again how you translated **my Lord** in verses 27, 30–32. Contrast that to verse 3, where Abraham probably used the term before he realized that he was talking to Yahweh.
Alternate translation: [My Master, please do not be angry at me]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and let me speak just once more**
UST but let me ask {you} just one more thing

Alternate translation: [rather, let me say one more thing:] or [and let me ask you just one more thing]

ULT **Suppose**
UST What will you do

Consider again how you translated the term **Suppose** in verses 24 and 28 and how you translated the sentence "Suppose only …righteous people are found there?" in verses 29–32.
Alternate translation: [Suppose that]

ULT **ten are found**
UST if there are {only} ten righteous people

Consider again how you translated **found** and "find" in verses 26, 28–32. Alternate translation: [only ten righteous people are found] or [you find only ten righteous people]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **there**
UST in the city

Alternate translation: [living there?] or [living in the city? Will you destroy it then?]

ULT **And he said**
UST Yahweh answered him

Consider again how you referred to Yahweh and Abraham in your translation throughout this dialogue (verses 23–32). It is a good idea to read this conversation aloud at a regular speed and listen to make sure that all quote margins are natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh replied] or [He answered him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **for the sake of**
UST in order to save

Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 24, 26, 29, 31, 32. Alternate translation: [because of]

ULT **the ten**
UST the ten righteous people

Consider again whether you used words or numerals for the numbers throughout verses 24–32. Also consider again how you translated “righteous people” and “righteous people” in verses 23–32. Alternate translation: [those ten righteous people]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
destroy	destroy

Genesis 18:33

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh left as soon as he finished speaking to Abraham, and Abraham returned to his place.	*When Yahweh had finished talking with Abraham, he left him, and Abraham returned home.*

ULT **Then Yahweh left as soon as he finished speaking to Abraham**
UST When Yahweh had finished talking with Abraham, he left him

Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh left Abraham as soon as he finished speaking with him]

ULT **and Abraham returned to his place**
UST and Abraham returned home

Alternate translation: [and Abraham went home]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Abraham	Abraham
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 19

Genesis 19:1

ULT	UST
Then the two angels came to Sodom in the evening, and Lot was sitting at the gate of Sodom. And Lot saw them, and he got up to meet them and bowed down with nose to the ground.	*That evening the two angels arrived at the city of Sodom, while Lot was sitting at the gate of the city. When Lot saw them, he stood up and greeted them and then bowed before them with his face to the ground to show respect.*

ULT **Then the two angels came to Sodom in the evening**
UST That evening the two angels arrived at {the city of} Sodom

See how you translated **angel** in Genesis 16:7–11.

ULT **at the gate of Sodom**
UST at the gate of the city

Cities like Sodom had stone walls built around them, with entrance gates (that were closed at night) to protect the people in the city from enemies. Alternate translation: [by the gate of the city] or [at the city gate]

ULT **And Lot saw them, and he got up**
UST When Lot saw them, he stood up

Some languages have a special dual pronoun that can be used throughout verses 1–19 to refer to the two angels. Alternate translation: [When Lot saw them, he got up]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **to meet them**
UST and greeted them

Alternate translation: [to greet them]

ULT **and bowed down {with} nose to the ground**
UST and {then} bowed {before them} with {his} face to the ground to show respect

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 18:2. Alternate translation: [and then bowed before them with his forehead to the ground to show respect] or [and then kneeled in front of them and bowed his forehead to the ground to show them respect]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
Sodom	Sodom
Lot	Lot
gate	gate
Sodom	the city
Lot	Lot
bowed down	bowed
to the ground	to the ground to show respect

Genesis 19:2

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Behold, please, my lords: Please turn aside to the house of your servant and spend the night, and wash your feet. Then you can get up early and go on your way." But they said, "No, rather we will spend the night in the street."	*Then he said to them, "Sirs, please listen to this: Please come to my house so that I can serve you and you can lodge for the night there. That way too you can wash the dust off your feet. Then tomorrow morning you can get up early and continue traveling." But the two angels replied, "Thank you, but we will just stay in the public square tonight."*

ULT **Behold, please, my lords**
UST Sirs, please listen to this

See how you translated **Behold, please** in Genesis 18:27. Also see how you translated "my lord" in Genesis 18:3. At this point, Lot probably did not know that these were angels, because they looked like men. Alternate translation: [Listen to me please, my lords] or [Sirs please listen to this:]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **Please turn aside to**
UST Please come to

Lot is being urgent here (using **please** twice), probably because he knows how dangerous the city is. Translate this quote in a way that communicates this urgency. Alternate translation: [Please stop in at]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **the house of your servant and spend the night**
UST my house so that I can serve you and you can lodge for the night there

Lot refers to himself as **your servant** here to show respect to the two men and to politely offer to host them as his guests.
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and spend the night, and wash your feet**
UST and you can lodge for the night {there}. {That way} too {you can} wash {the dust off} your feet

See how you translated **wash your feet** in Genesis 18:4. Alternate translation: [You can wash the dust off your feet and stay for the night there]

ULT **Then you can get up early**
UST Then {tomorrow morning} you can get up early

Alternate translation: [Then early in the morning you can get up]

ULT **and go on your way**
UST and continue traveling

Alternate translation: [and continue on your way]

ULT **But they said**
UST But the two angels replied

Alternate translation: [The two angels said to him]

ULT **No, rather**
UST Thank you, but

Abraham is responding to the angels with the courteous expression that a person in this culture would use to respond to a superior. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. The angels' reply should sound polite and respectful in your translation, not rude or disrespectful. For example, in some cultures it is not polite to say **No** too directly. Alternate translation: [No, thank you, rather] or [That is kind of you, but]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **we will spend the night in the street**
UST we will {just} stay in the public square tonight

This refers to a public, outdoor place inside the city, perhaps the open place inside the city gate where people would meet. Alternate translation: [we will just stay in the city square tonight] or [we plan to stay the night in the square]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lords	Sirs
house	house
servant	serve

Genesis 19:3

ULT	UST
But he urged them strongly, so that they turned aside with him and entered into his house. Then he prepared a feast for them, and he baked unleavened bread, and they ate.	*However Lot continued to urgently invite them until they finally agreed and went with him to his house. Then Lot prepared a big meal for them, including some flat bread, and they sat down and ate the meal.*

ULT **But he urged them strongly**
UST However Lot continued to urgently invite them

Alternate translation: [But Lot insisted urgently] or [However he continued to urge them earnestly] or [However he continued to urgently invite them]

ULT **so that they turned aside with him**
UST until they {finally agreed and} went with him

Alternate translation: [until he finally convinced them and they went with him]

ULT **and entered into his house**
UST to his house

Alternate translation: [to his house and entered it]

ULT **Then he prepared a feast for them**
UST Then Lot prepared a big meal for them

Lot probably had his wife or servants prepare the meal (as Abraham did in Genesis 18:6–7). It is common in the Bible to say that a leader or head of household (as here) did something, when in reality he had it done by someone else who was under his authority. Alternate translation: [Then he made a big meal for them] or [Then Lot had a big meal prepared for them]

ULT **and he baked unleavened bread**
UST including {some} flat bread

Alternate translation: [including some bread without yeast in it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	house
feast	a big meal
unleavened bread	including {some} flat bread

Genesis 19:4

ULT	UST
Before they lay down, then the men of the city, the men of Sodom, surrounded the house, from the young and to the old, all the people from the edges.	*But after supper, before they could lie down to sleep, all the men in the city of Sodom surrounded Lot's house, including men of all ages. In fact, all the people from every part of the city were there.*

ULT **Before they lay down**
UST But {after supper,} before they could lie down to sleep

Alternate translation: [But after the meal, before they could lie down to sleep] or [After that, before they could go to bed for the night]

ULT **then the men of the city, the men of Sodom**
UST all the men in the city of Sodom

Alternate translation: [all the men of the city of Sodom]

ULT **from the young and to the old**
UST including men of all ages

The phrase **from the young and to the old** refers to all the men of the city of Sodom, including the young and the old and everyone in between. Consider what is the best way to translate this phrase in your language. Alternate translation: [from the youngest to the oldest]
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **all the people from the edges**
UST In fact, all the people from every part of the city were there

This phrase is generalization or exaggeration used to emphasize that a very large number of people from the city were there. Consider whether or not your language can do the same thing. Alternate translation: [In fact, all the people from every section of the city were there] or [so that people from the entire city were there] or [In fact, everyone from all parts of the city had come there]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sodom	Sodom
house	house

Genesis 19:5

ULT	UST
Then they called to Lot and said to him, "Where are the men who came to you tonight? Bring them out to us so that we can know them!"	*Then they shouted to Lot, "Where are the two men who came to lodge with you tonight? Bring them outside to us so that we can have relations with them!"*

ULT **Then they called**
UST Then they shouted

Here the author is using the pronoun **they** in a general sense, not to refer to specific people. Use an expression for this that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Then the mob of people called out] or [Then the men shouted]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **who came to you tonight**
UST who came to lodge with you tonight

Alternate translation: [who came to your house tonight?]

ULT **Bring them out to us**
UST Bring them outside to us

Alternate translation: [Bring them to us out here] or [We demand that you bring them out here to us]

ULT **so that we can know them**
UST so that we can have relations with them

In Hebrew the verb **know** is often used as an idiom that means "have sex with" (as in Genesis 4:1, 25). Here it refers to homosexual activities and raping the two men. Translate this in a way that is not too offensive to be read aloud in public. Alternate translation: [so that we can have sex with them!]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	Then they shouted
Lot	Lot
know	so that we can have relations

Genesis 19:6

ULT	UST
Then Lot went out to them at the entrance and shut the door behind him,	*But Lot went outside near the doorway to talk to them, and he closed the door of the house behind him.*

ULT **Then Lot went out to them at the entrance**
UST But Lot went outside near the doorway {to talk} to them

Alternate translation: [But Lot went outside near the entrance to talk to them]

ULT **and shut the door behind him**
UST and he closed the door {of the house} behind him

Alternate translation: [and he shut the door of the house behind him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lot	Lot

Genesis 19:7

ULT	UST
and he said, "Please, my brothers, do not do evil!	*Then he pleaded with them, "I beg you, my friends, do not do such an evil thing!*

ULT **and he said**
UST Then he pleaded with them

Alternate translation: [Then he said to them] or [and he pleaded with them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Please, my brothers**
UST I beg you, my friends

The phrase **my brothers** is used here as a polite address that implies a close relationship. Lot uses this common expression to try to get the men of Sodom to not harm his guests. The men were not his actual brothers. For some languages it is more natural to put **my brothers** (or "my friends") first in this quote. Alternate translation: [No, please, my friends] or [I beg you, my brothers] or [No, my brothers please]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **do not do evil**
UST do not do such an evil thing

Alternate translation: [do not do this evil!] or [do not do such an wicked thing!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
evil	evil

Genesis 19:8

ULT	UST
Behold, please: I have two daughters who have not known a man. Please let me bring them out to you, and you do to them as is good in your eyes. But do not do anything to these men, because for that reason they have come under the shadow of my rafters."	*Listen to this please: My two daughters have never had marital relations with a man. Allow me to bring them out to you instead so that you can do with them whatever you want. But do not harm these men, because they are my guests and I am responsible for their safety."*

ULT **Behold, please**
UST Listen {to this} please

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [Listen to me please:] or [Please listen to me]

ULT **have not known a man**
UST have never had {marital} relations with a man

See how you translated the idiom "knew" in verse 5 and Genesis 4:1, though it may need to be translated in different ways depending on the context. Alternate translation: [have not had sexual relations with a man] or [have never slept with a man] or [are virgins]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **Please let me bring them out to you, and you do to them**
UST Allow me to bring them out to you {instead} so that you can do with them

Alternate translation: [Allow me to bring them out to you instead so that you may do to them] or [If you will let me bring them out here to you, then you may do to them]

ULT **as {is} good in your eyes**
UST whatever you want

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 16:6. Alternate translation: [whatever you like] or [whatever pleases you]

ULT **But do not do anything to these men**
UST But do not harm these men

Alternate translation: [But you must not do anything to harm these men] or [But do not violate these men]

ULT **because for that {reason} they have come under the shadow of my rafters**
UST because they are my guests and I am responsible for their safety

Alternate translation: [because they have come under the shelter of my roof] or [because they are my guests and I am responsible for their well-being]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
known	have never had {marital} relations with

Genesis 19:9

ULT	UST
But they said, “Get back!” Then they said, “This one came to sojourn, and now he is judging us! We will treat you worse than them!” Then they pressed hard against the man Lot and came near to break down the door.	*But the men of Sodom shouted at him, “Get out of our way!” Then they complained to each other, “This guy came here as a foreigner, and now he thinks that he can judge us!” Then they shouted at Lot, “We will do worse things to you than we do to your two guests!” Then they started shoving hard against Lot and surged forward to break through the door of his house.*

ULT **But they said**
UST But the men of Sodom shouted at him

Alternate translation: [But the men of Sodom responded to him] or [But the men of Sodom shouted at Lot]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Get back**
UST Get out of our way

Alternate translation: [Stand aside!] or [Get out of the way!]

ULT **Then they said**
UST Then they complained to each other

Alternate translation: [Then they said to each other]

ULT **This one came**
UST This guy came here

The phrase “this one” shows disdain and disrespect for Lot. If possible, use a similar term in your language here.

ULT **to sojourn**
UST as a foreigner

See how you translated **sojourn** in Genesis 12:10. Here it has the negative meaning that Lot does not belong there. Alternate translation: [to live temporarily] or [as a outsider]

ULT **We will treat you worse than them**
UST Then they shouted at Lot, “We will do worse things to you than {we do} to your {two} guests

Here the crowd switches from talking to each other to shouting at Lot. Decide whether or not that needs to be explicit in your translation.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Then they pressed hard against the man Lot**
UST Then they started shoving hard against Lot

Alternate translation: [Then they started shoving hard against him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and came near to break down the door**
UST and surged forward to break through the door of his house

Alternate translation: [and moved forward to break down the door of his house]

ULT **and now he is judging us**
UST and now he thinks that he can judge us

Alternate translation: [and now he wants to judge us!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
judging	judge
We will treat … worse	Then they shouted at Lot, “We will do worse things to you
Lot	Lot

Genesis 19:10

ULT	UST
But the men reached out their hands and brought Lot into the house to them and shut the door.	*But Lot's two guests opened the door, reached outside and quickly pulled him back into the house with them and closed the door.*

ULT and brought Lot
UST and {quickly} pulled him

Alternate translation: [and quickly pulled Lot]

ULT and shut the door
UST and closed the door

Alternate translation: [and slammed the door shut]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lot	him
house	house

Genesis 19:11

ULT	UST
Then they struck the men who were at the entrance of the house with blindness, from the small and to the great, so that they became weary trying to find the door.	*Then those two men who were angels caused the men who were at the door of the house to be blind, including every last one of them, so that they exhausted themselves groping around trying to find the door.*

ULT **Then they struck the men who {were at} the entrance of the house with blindness**

UST Then those two men {who were angels} caused the men who {were at} the door of the house to be blind

Alternate translation: [Then those two guests who were angels caused the men of Sodom who were outside the door of the house to be blind]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from the small and to the great**

UST including every last one of them

This phrase **from the small and to the great** refers to all the men who were outside the house, including the young and the old and everyone in between. See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: [from the youngest to the oldest]

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **so that they became weary {trying} to find the door**

UST so that they exhausted themselves {groping around} trying to find the door

Alternate translation: [so that they wearied themselves fumbling around trying to find the door] or [so that they could not see the door and gave up trying to find it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	house

Genesis 19:12

ULT	UST
Then the men said to Lot, "Who else belongs to you here, a son-in-law or your sons or your daughters or anyone else who belongs to you in the city? Take them out from this place,	*Then the two angels asked Lot, "Do you have any other relatives here in Sodom? If you have sons-in-law or sons or daughters or any other members of your family here, then quickly get them away from this city,*

ULT **Then the men said to Lot**
UST Then the {two} angels asked Lot

Alternate translation: [Then the two men asked Lot]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Who else {belongs} to you here**
UST Do you have any other relatives here in Sodom

Alternate translation: [What other family members do you have here] or [Do you have any other relatives here in this city]

ULT **or anyone {else} who {belongs} to you**
UST or any {other} members of your family

Alternate translation: [or any other relatives]

ULT **in the city**
UST here

Alternate translation: [in this city]

ULT **Take {them} out**
UST then {quickly} get them away

Alternate translation: [then quickly take them out]

ULT **from this place**
UST from this city

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase fits well with the ways that you refer to the city of Sodom earlier in this verse and in the next verse. It may help to read the entire verse aloud to make sure everything is clear and sounds natural in your language. Alternate translation: [from here]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lot	Lot

Genesis 19:13

ULT	UST
because we are destroying this place. For their outcry before Yahweh is great, so Yahweh has sent us to destroy it."	*because we are about to destroy it. Yahweh has heard that the people of this city are guilty of serious sins, so he has sent us to destroy the city."*

ULT because we are destroying
UST because we are about to destroy

The pronoun **we** refers here only to the two angels, not Lot or anyone else. Alternate translation: [because we are going to destroy]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT this place
UST it

The way you translate this phrase will depend on how you translated the end of verse 12.

ULT For their outcry before Yahweh {is} great
UST Yahweh has heard that the people of this city are guilty of serious sins

The pronoun **their** refers to the people of Sodom, not Lot's relatives, who were the last ones referred to (verse 12). It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. See how you translated **outcry** in Genesis 18:20–21. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Yahweh has heard that the people of this city are guilty of terrible sins] or [Yahweh has heard serious accusations against the people who live here]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT to destroy it
UST to destroy the city

Make sure the way you translate this phrase fits with how you translated the first part of this sentence. Alternate translation: [to destroy them and their city]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
destroying	destroy
outcry	Yahweh has heard that the people of this city are guilty of serious sins
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	so he has sent us

Genesis 19:14

ULT	UST
Then Lot went out and spoke to his sons-in-law who were to take his daughters, and he said, "Get up, get out of this place, because Yahweh is destroying the city!" But it seemed like he was joking in the eyes of his sons-in-law.	*So Lot went to his future sons-in-law who were engaged to his daughters, and he warned them, "Hurry up and leave this city, because Yahweh is about to destroy it!" But his sons-in-law thought that he was joking, so they ignored him.*

ULT **Then Lot went out and spoke to**
UST So Lot went to

Alternate translation: [So Lot went and spoke to] or [So Lot went to speak to] or [So went to]

ULT **who were to take his daughters**
UST who were engaged to his daughters

The word **take** is used here as an idiom that means to marry. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to translate this as an idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [who were going to marry his daughters]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he said**
UST and he warned them

Alternate translation: [and he said to them] or [and he urged them] or [He told them]

ULT **Get up**
UST Hurry up and

This phrase communicates urgency here. Alternate translation: [Come on! We must]

ULT **get out of**
UST leave

Alternate translation: [get away from] or [flee from]

ULT **because Yahweh is destroying**
UST because Yahweh is about to destroy

See how you translated "are destroying" in verse 13. Alternate translation: [because Yahweh is going to destroy]

ULT **the city**
UST it

Alternate translation: [the place!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lot	Lot
Yahweh	Yahweh
destroying	destroy

Genesis 19:15

ULT	UST
Then when the dawn came, the angels urged Lot, saying, "Get up, take your wife and your two daughters who are here, so that you are not swept away in the punishment of the city."	*Early the next morning, the two angels urged Lot, "Hurry up and take your wife and your two daughters out of the city so that you will not die when God punishes the people of the city."*

ULT **Then when the dawn came**
UST Early the next morning

Dawn is the time before sunrise when it starts getting light. Alternate translation: [Very early the next morning]

ULT **Get up**
UST Hurry up and

Alternate translation: [You must quickly]

ULT **take your wife and your two daughters who are here**
UST take your wife and your two daughters out of the city

Alternate translation: [get your wife and two daughters away from the city] or [leave the city with your wife and two daughters]

ULT **so that you are not swept away**
UST so that you will not die

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Also, see how you translated the idiom "sweep away" in Genesis 18:23–24. Alternate translation: [so that you will not be destroyed] or [or else you will be destroyed]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **in the punishment of the city**
UST when {God} punishes {the people of} the city

Alternate translation: [when the people of the city are punished by God] or [when God punishes the people in the city]

ULT **the angels urged Lot, saying**
UST the {two} angels urged Lot

See how you translated **angels** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [the two messengers urged Lot]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
Lot	Lot
you are … swept away	you will … die

Genesis 19:16

ULT	UST
But he lingered, so the men grabbed his hand and the hand of his wife and the hands of his two daughters, because of Yahweh's mercy for him, and brought him out and set him outside the city.	*Lot hesitated, but Yahweh was being merciful to him, so the two men took hold of Lot's hand and the hands of his wife and two daughters and led them out of the city.*

ULT **so the men grabbed his hand and the hand of his wife and the hand{s} of his two daughters**

UST so the {two} men took hold of Lot's hand and the hands of his wife and two daughters

Alternate translation: [so the two men took hold of his hand and the hands of his wife and two daughters] or [so they took him and his wife and two daughters by the hand]

ULT **and brought him out and set him**

UST and led them

Alternate translation: [and led him safely]

ULT **because of Yahweh's mercy for him**

UST but Yahweh was being merciful to him

For some languages it may be better to put this phrase last in verse 16 so that it does not interrupt the flow of the sentence. Or it may be better to put this phrase earlier in the sentence and say, "Lot hesitated, but Yahweh was being merciful to him, so the two men took hold of Lot's hand and the hands of his wife and two daughters and led them out of the city." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [because Yahweh was being kind to him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **But he lingered**

UST Lot hesitated

Consider what is the best way to refer to Lot at this point in the paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: [But Lot did not leave immediately] or [Lot delayed]

Support Reference: Pronouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
so … grabbed	so … took hold of
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 19:17

ULT	UST
And it happened when they had brought them out to the outside, then he said, "Flee for your life! Do not look behind you, and do not stop anywhere in the plain! Escape to the mountains so that you are not swept away!"	*As soon as the angels had taken them outside the city, one of them said to Lot, "Run away from here as fast as you can! Do not look behind you, and do not delay in the valley for any reason! Go quickly to the hill country, or else you will die!"*

ULT **And it happened when they had brought them out to the outside**
UST As {soon as} the angels had taken them outside the city

See how you translated **brought** in verse 16. Alternate translation: [As soon as the angels had led them outside the city]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **then he said**
UST one of them said to Lot

Alternate translation: [one of them said to them] or [one of the angels said to Lot]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Flee for your life**
UST Run away from here as fast as you can

Alternate translation: [Run for your lives!] or [Run to save your lives!]

ULT **Do not look behind you**
UST Do not look behind you

Alternate translation: [Do not look behind you at Sodom] or [Do not look back at the city]

ULT **and do not stop anywhere in the plain**
UST and do not delay in the valley for any reason

This plain or valley was a wide, flat area between mountains. See how you translated **plain** in Genesis 13:10–12. Alternate translation: [and do not delay anywhere in the plain] or [and do not stop in the plain for any reason!]

ULT **Escape**
UST Go quickly

Alternate translation: [Hurry]

ULT **to the mountains**
UST to the hill country

The phrase **to the mountains** could mean: (1) "to the hills." Alternate translation: [to that mountain range]; or (2) "to that mountain." Alternate translation: [to that mountain]

> ULT **so that you are not swept away**
> UST or else you will die

See how you translated this clause in verse 15. Alternate translation: [so that you will not be destroyed!] or [so that you will not die!]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you are … swept away	you will die

Genesis 19:18

ULT	UST
Then Lot said to them, "Please, no, my lords!	*But Lot replied to them, "I beg you, sirs, do not make us do that.*

ULT **Then Lot said to them**

UST But Lot replied to them

Some languages have a special dual pronoun for **them** that fits well here. Alternate translation: [But Lot pleaded with them]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **Please, no, my lords**

UST I beg you, sirs, do not make us do that

See how you translated "my lords" in verse 2. Alternate translation: [Please, my masters, do not make us go that far!]

Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lot	Lot
lords	sirs

Genesis 19:19

ULT	UST
Behold, please: Your servant has found favor in your eyes, and you have magnified your mercy that you have shown to me by saving my life. But I am not able to escape to the mountains, because the disaster will overtake me and I will die.	*Listen to me please: You have treated me well even though I am unimportant, and you have been very kind to me and saved my life. But I am not able to run all the way to the mountains before the disaster occurs and kills me.*

ULT **Behold, please**
UST Listen {to me} please

Lot is using the term **Behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Listen to this please:] or [Please listen to me]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Your servant has found favor in your eyes**
UST You have treated me well even though I am unimportant

The phrase "your servant" does not mean that Lot is actually a servant for the angels, but rather, it is a humble way for Lot to refer to himself and show respect to them. See how you translated that phrase in verse 2. Also see how you translated the idiom "found favor in … eyes" in Genesis 6:8 and 18:3. Alternate translation: [I, your servant, have been treated well by you] or [You have treated me kindly even though I am unimportant]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **But I am not able to escape to the mountains**
UST But I am not able to run {all the way} to the mountains

See how you translated **the mountains** in verse 17. Alternate translation: [But I am not able to flee all the way to the hills] or [But there is no way that I can make it safely all the way to the hills] or [But the hills are too far away for me to make it there safely]

ULT **because the disaster will overtake me and I will die**
UST before the disaster occurs and kills me

The word **disaster** is talked about as if it could act in human ways. Consider whether or not it would be clear and natural to do that here in your language. Alternate translation: [before the disaster catches up with me and kills me] or [before the disaster strikes and kills me]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	You have treated me well even though I am unimportant
favor	You have treated me well even though I am unimportant
the disaster	the disaster

Genesis 19:20

ULT	UST
Behold, please: That town there is near to flee to, and it is a little one. Please let me escape there. Is it not a little one? Then my life will live."	*So listen to this please: That town up ahead is near enough to run to in time, and it is just a small town. Please let us run there, and do not destroy it. After all, it is very small. Then we can stay alive."*

ULT **Behold, please**
UST So listen {to this} please

Consider again how you translated **Behold, please** in verses 2, 8, 19–20. It may be necessary to translate it in slightly different ways, depending on the context.

ULT **That town there**
UST That town up ahead

The Hebrew word for **town** here (and in verses 21–23) can refer to either a city or a town, depending on the context. Many translations have "town," or even "village," here because the place was very small (verses 20, 22). Many other translations have "city" here instead, but that does not fit the context. Alternate translation: [That town over there]

ULT **is near to flee to**
UST is near {enough} to run to in time

Alternate translation: [is close enough to run to in time]

ULT **and it {is} a little one**
UST and it {is} {just} a small town

Alternate translation: [and it is only a small town] or [and it is little]

ULT **Please let me escape there**
UST Please let us run there, and do not destroy it

Alternate translation: [Please let us flee there, and do not destroy it]

ULT **Is it not a little one**
UST After all, it is very small

This rhetorical question implies that it will not matter if such a small town like Zoar is not destroyed. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question works well here in your language. Alternate translation: [After all, it is only a small place]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Then my life will live**
UST Then we can stay alive

Lot says "my life," but he is probably also including his family who is with him. Alternate translation: [Then I can stay alive] or [If you let us go there, then my family and I will live] or [If you allow that, our lives will be spared]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

Genesis 19:21

ULT	UST
Then he said to him, "Behold, I have also lifted up your face concerning this thing, so I will not overthrow the town that you are talking about.	*The angel replied to Lot, "Alright, I will allow you to go to the small town that you are talking about, and I will not destroy it.*

ULT **Then he said**
UST The angel replied

This phrase probably refers to the same angel who spoke to Lot in verse 17. Make sure it does not sound like Lot is the one speaking here. Alternate translation: [The angel said]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Behold**
UST Alright

Alternate translation: [Listen] or [Here is what I will do:]

ULT **I have also lifted up your face concerning this thing**
UST I will allow you to go to

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate the idiom **lifted up your face** here. Alternate translation: [I will grant your request] or [I will permit you to do what you have requested]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **so I will not overthrow**
UST and I will not destroy it

Alternate translation: [so I will not overturn]

ULT **the town that you are talking about**
UST the {small} town that you are talking about

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in the sentence and say, "I will allow you to go to the small town that you are talking about, and I will not destroy it." Alternate translation: [the small town that you mentioned]
Support Reference: Information Structure

Genesis 19:22

ULT	UST
Hurry up, escape there, because I am not able to do a thing until you go there.” For that reason they called the name of the town Zoar.	*But hurry up now and run there, because I cannot destroy anything until you get there.” Since Lot said the town was small, the name of the town is Zoar which means “small”.*

ULT **Hurry up**
UST But hurry up now and

Alternate translation: [But go quickly now and]

ULT **escape there**
UST run there

Consider again how you translated **escape** in verses 17, 19–20, 22. Alternate translation: [flee there] or [flee to that town]

ULT **because I am not able to do**
UST because I cannot destroy

This clause implies that Yahweh will not allow the angel to destroy anything until Lot and his family arrive safely in the town of Zoar. Alternate translation: [because I am not allowed to do anything] or [because I must wait to do anything] or [because God will not allow me to do anything]

ULT **until you go there**
UST until you get there

Alternate translation: [until you reach there safely] or [until you are safely there]

ULT **For that reason**
UST Since Lot said the town was small

This phrase refers back to what Lot said in verse 20, not what the angel just said. Alternate translation: [That is why] or [Since Lot said the town was little]

ULT **they called the name of the town**
UST the name of the town is

See how you translated **they called the name** in Genesis 11:9 and 16:14. Alternate translation: [the town was called] or [they called that town]

ULT **Zoar**
UST Zoar which means “small

If this implied information is included in your translation or in a footnote, be consistent here with how you translated the word “little” or “small” in verse 20.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	the name of … is
Zoar	Zoar

Genesis 19:23

ULT	UST
The sun rose over the land and Lot came to Zoar.	*The sun was rising over the land as Lot and his family reached the town of Zoar.*

ULT **The sun rose over the land**
UST The sun was rising over the land

Make sure that the way verse 23 begins in your translation fits with the way verse 15 begins, which refers to the same day.

ULT **and Lot**
UST as Lot and his family

In that culture the father was often the only one mentioned and the other family members were assumed to be with him. Alternate translation: [when Lot and his family]
Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

ULT **came to Zoar**
UST reached {the town of} Zoar

Alternate translation: [arrived in the town of Zoar] or [reached the town of Zoar]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
Lot	Lot
Zoar	Zoar

Genesis 19:24

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh rained down on Sodom and Gomorrah brimstone and fire from Yahweh out of the heavens,	*Then Yahweh caused fire and burning rocks to fall like heavy rain from the sky on the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.*

ULT **Then Yahweh rained down on Sodom and Gomorrah brimstone and fire**

UST Then Yahweh caused fire and burning rocks to fall like {heavy} rain … on {the cities of} Sodom and Gomorrah

The word **brimstone** refers to sulfur, which is a type of rock that is highly flammable. When it burns, it produces smoke, intense heat, and a bad smell like rotten eggs. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh poured down burning sulfur and fire on the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah] or [Then Yahweh caused fire and burning sulfur to pour down on the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah]

ULT **from Yahweh out of the heavens**

UST from the sky

Some translations omit the phrase **from Yahweh** since Yahweh is already mentioned earlier as the one doing this. Also, for some languages it may be better to change the order of phrases in this verse and say, “Then Yahweh caused fire and burning sulfur to fall like heavy rain from the heavens on the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.” Alternate translation: [from himself in heaven] or [from out of the sky]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Sodom	Sodom
Gomorrah	Gomorrah
Yahweh	יְהוָה
heavens	sky

Genesis 19:25

ULT	UST
and he overthrew those cities and all of the plain, including all the inhabitants of the cities and the vegetation of the ground.	*In that way, he completely destroyed those two cities and the rest of the valley, including everyone who lived in the cities and all the plants in the area.*

ULT **and he overthrew**
UST In that way, he {completely} destroyed

See how you translated a phrase with a similar meaning **swept away** in verses 15 and 17. Alternate translation: [and (so) Yahweh completely destroyed] or [In that way, Yahweh completely destroyed] or [That is how Yahweh completely destroyed]

ULT **and all of the plain**
UST and the rest of the valley

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah were also in the plain, not separate from it. Alternate translation: [and the whole valley] or [and the rest of the plain]

ULT **including all the inhabitants of the cities**
UST including everyone who lived in the cities

This phrase refers to Sodom and Gomorrah and at least two other cities in the valley (Deuteronomy 29:23). Alternate translation: [including all the people who lived in the cities of that valley] or [including everyone who lived in the cities there]

ULT **and the vegetation**
UST and {all} the plants

Alternate translation: [and even all the plants]

ULT **and the vegetation of the ground**
UST and {all} the plants in the area

Alternate translation: [that were growing on the land] or [of the area]

Genesis 19:26

ULT	UST
But his wife from behind him looked back, and she became a pillar of salt.	*But Lot's wife, who was walking behind him, glanced back at the city, and immediately she turned into a statue of solid salt rock.*

ULT **But his wife from behind him looked back**
UST But Lot's wife, {who was} {walking} behind him, glanced back at the city

Alternate translation: […looked back at Sodom]

ULT **and she became**
UST and {immediately} she turned into

Alternate translation: [and immediately her body turned into] or [and immediately Yahweh turned her into]

ULT **a pillar of salt**
UST a statue of {solid} salt rock

Alternate translation: [a column of solid salt rock and she died] or [salt rock that was in the shape of a column]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pillar	a statue of

Genesis 19:27

ULT	UST
Abraham got up early in the morning and went to the place where he had stood before Yahweh,	*Early that same morning, Abraham got up and returned to the place where he had stood with Yahweh the previous day.*

ULT **Abraham got up early in the morning**
UST Early that same morning, Abraham got up

Some translations translate this as the next morning, but it is more likely that this was the same day when Lot arrived in Zoar and Yahweh destroyed the cities in the valley (verse 23).
Alternate translation: [Meanwhile, Abraham got up early that same morning]

ULT **and went to the place**
UST and returned to the place

Alternate translation: [and returned to the spot]

ULT **where he had stood before Yahweh**
UST where he had stood with Yahweh the previous day

Alternate translation: [where he had been with Yahweh the previous day]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 19:28

ULT	UST
and he looked down toward Sodom and Gomorrah and toward all the surface of the land of the plain. And he saw that, behold, smoke was rising from the land like smoke from a furnace.	*He looked down at the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah and all the rest of the valley. There in front of him, he saw that lots of thick smoke was billowing up over the land like smoke from a huge fire.*

ULT **and he looked down**
UST He looked down

Also, make sure it is clear that Abraham, not Yahweh, is being referred to here. Alternate translation: [Then he looked down]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **toward**
UST at

Alternate translation: [in the direction of]

ULT **and toward all the surface of the land of the plain**
UST and all {the rest of} the valley

Alternate translation: [and all the rest of the plain]

ULT **And he saw that, behold**
UST There in front of him, he saw that

Alternate translation: [And he was amazed to see that]

ULT **smoke was rising from the land**
UST lots of thick smoke was billowing up over the land

Alternate translation: [lots of thick smoke was billowing up from the land] or [a large amount of smoke was …]

ULT **like smoke from a furnace**
UST like smoke from a {huge} fire

During that time period, a furnace was heated by fire. Alternate translation: [like smoke that comes from the fire in a large oven]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sodom	Sodom
Gomorrah	Gomorrah
land	the valley
land	land

Genesis 19:29

ULT	UST
So it was, when God destroyed the cities of the plain, that God remembered Abraham and sent Lot out of the middle of the overthrow, when he overthrew the cities which Lot had lived in.	*When God destroyed the cities in the valley, he did not forget Abraham or his request. So he saved Lot from the catastrophe that he had sent to completely destroy the cities where Lot had been living.*

ULT **So it was, when God destroyed**
UST When God destroyed

See how you translated **destroyed** in verses 13–14, 17. Alternate translation: [So it was that when God destroyed]

ULT **the cities of the plain**
UST the cities in the valley

Consider again how you translated **plain** in Genesis 13:10–12; 19:17, 25, 28, 29. Alternate translation: [the cities on the plain] or [the cities in the plain]

ULT **that God remembered Abraham**
UST he did not forget Abraham or his request

Make sure your translation of this clause does not imply that God forgot Abraham. See how you translated **God remembered** in Genesis 8:1. Alternate translation: [he kept Abraham and his request in mind]

ULT **and sent Lot out of the middle of**
UST So he saved Lot from

Alternate translation: [and brought Lot safely away from] or [So he rescued Lot from]

ULT **the overthrow**
UST the catastrophe

Alternate translation: [the disaster]

ULT **when he overthrew the cities**
UST that he had sent to {completely} destroy the cities

Alternate translation: [when he completely destroyed the cities] or [that he had used to completely destroy the cities]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
destroyed	destroyed
God	אֱלֹהִים
Abraham	Abraham
Lot	Lot
Lot	Lot

Genesis 19:30

ULT	UST
Then Lot went up from Zoar and settled in the mountains, and his two daughters were with him, because he was afraid to settle in Zoar. So he lived in a cave, he and his two daughters.	*After that, Lot was afraid to stay in the town of Zoar, so he and his two daughters moved from there to the mountains, where they lived in a cave.*

ULT **Then Lot went up from Zoar and settled in the mountain{s}, and his two daughters {were} with him**

UST After that, Lot … so he and his two daughters moved from there to the mountains

Be consistent here with how you translated **the mountains** in verses 17 and 19. Alternate translation: [After that, Lot moved with his two daughters from the town of Zoar up into the hills and settled there] or [Sometime later, Lot and his two daughters left the town of Zoar and moved to the hills]

ULT **because he was afraid to settle in Zoar**

UST was afraid to stay in {the town of} Zoar

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "Lot was afraid to settle in the town of Zoar, so he and his two daughters moved from there to the mountains, where they lived in a cave." Also, be consistent with how you spelled **Zoar** throughout the book of Genesis. See 13:10; 14:2, 8; 19:22–23, 30. Alternate translation: [because he was afraid to stay in the town of Zoar]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **So he lived in a cave, he and his two daughters**

UST so he and his two daughters … where they lived in a cave

Alternate translation: [So he and his two daughters lived in a cave in the hills]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lot	Lot
Zoar	from there
afraid	afraid
Zoar	Zoar

Genesis 19:31

ULT	UST
Then the firstborn said to the younger, "Our father is old, and there is not a man on the earth to come to us as is the way of all the earth.	*Then one day his older daughter said to his younger daughter, "Our father is elderly, and there are not any men around here to marry us, which is the custom that people have everywhere else in the world.*

ULT **Then the firstborn said to**
UST Then {one day} {his} older {daughter} said to

Alternate translation: [Then one day his oldest daughter said to]

ULT **the younger**
UST his younger daughter

Alternate translation: [his younger one] or [her younger sister] or [her sister]

ULT **Our father is old**
UST Our father is elderly

In some cultures, it is not polite to call someone **old**. Translate this clause in a way that is accurate and acceptable in your language area. Alternate translation: [Our father is getting along in years]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **and there is not a man**
UST and there are not any men

Alternate translation: [and there is no man]

ULT **on the earth**
UST around here

Lot's daughter is exaggerating here, to emphasize her point. Alternate translation: [in this land]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **to come to us**
UST to marry us

See how you translated the idiom "went to" in Genesis 6:4, which is the same meaning as **come to** here. Alternate translation: [to be with us]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **as {is} the way of all the earth**
UST which {is} the custom {that people have} everywhere else in the world

Alternate translation: [as is the way of all the people on the earth] or [which is normal for people all over the earth]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	around here
earth	the world

Genesis 19:32

ULT	UST
Come on, let us get our father to drink wine, and let us lie with him so that we will give life to offspring through our father.”	*So come on, we should get our father drunk on wine. Then we can have sexual relations with him so that we can continue our family line with him.”*

ULT **Come on**
UST So come on

See how you translated this in Genesis 14:7.

ULT **let us get our father to drink wine**
UST we should get our father drunk on wine

Consider what is the best way to translate this proposal or suggestion in your language.

ULT **and let us lie with him**
UST Then we can have {sexual} relations with him

Alternate translation: [and then we should sleep with him] or [Then we can have physical relations with him]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **so that we will give life to**
UST so that we can continue

Alternate translation: [That way we can have descendants] or [so that we can preserve our family line]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **through our father**
UST with him

Alternate translation: [by our father] or [through him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wine	wine
offspring	our family line

Genesis 19:33

ULT	UST
So they got their father to drink wine on that night, and the firstborn went and lay with her father, but he did not know when she lay down or when she got up.	*So that night Lot's daughters got their father drunk on wine. Then the older daughter went to him and had relations with him. But he was so drunk that he was not even aware that she got in bed with him or that she left.*

ULT **So they got their father to drink wine on that night**
UST So that night Lot's daughters got their father drunk on wine

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Lot's daughters at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: [So his daughters got their father drunk on wine that very night]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and the firstborn went**
UST Then the older {daughter} went to him

Alternate translation: [Then his oldest daughter went to him]

ULT **and lay with her father**
UST and had relations with him

Make sure that the way you translate the euphemism **lay with** will not be too offensive to be read aloud in public. Alternate translation: [and slept with him]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **when she lay down or when she got up**
UST that she got in bed {with him} or that she left

Alternate translation: [that she had been with him]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wine	wine
know	he was … even aware

Genesis 19:34

ULT	UST
And it happened on the next day that the firstborn said to the younger, "Behold, last night I lay with my father. Let us get him to drink wine again tonight. Then you go lie with him so that we will give life to offspring through our father."	*The next day Lot's older daughter said to his younger daughter, "Listen, last night I had sexual relations with our father. Tonight we should get him drunk on wine again. Then you also should go and have relations with him so that we can continue our family line with him."*

ULT **And it happened on the next day**
UST The next day

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development. Alternate translation: [The following day, it happened]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **the younger**
UST his younger daughter

The author is using the adjective **younger** as a noun to mean a certain person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. See how you translated this phrase in verse 31. Alternate translation: [his secondborn] or [her younger sister] or [her sister]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **Behold, last night**
UST Listen, last night

For some languages it may be more natural to put this time phrase (**last night**) last in this sentence.
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **I lay with my father**
UST I had {sexual} relations with our father

See how you translated **lay with** in verse 33. Alternate translation: [I slept with our father] or [I had physical relations with our father]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **Let us get him to drink wine again tonight**
UST Tonight we should get him drunk on wine again

Consider whether it is better in your language to put the time word **tonight** first or last in this clause. Alternate translation: [Tonight we should get him drunk again]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **lie with him**
UST have relations with him

Alternate translation: [sleep with him]

ULT **so that we will give life**
UST so that we can continue

See how you translated the last clause in verse 32, which is the same as the rest of verse 34.
Alternate translation: [so that we can have descendants] or [so that we can preserve our family line]

ULT **through our father**
UST with him

Alternate translation: [by our father] or [through him]
Support Reference: Pronouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wine	wine
to offspring	our family line

Genesis 19:35

ULT	UST
So on that night also they got their father to drink wine. Then the younger went and lay with him, but he did not know when she lay down or when she got up.	*So that night Lot's daughters got their father drunk on wine again. Then the younger daughter went to him and had relations with him. And once again he was so drunk that he was not aware that she got in bed with him or that she left.*

ULT **Then the younger went and lay with him**
UST Then the younger {daughter} went {to him} and had relations with him

Alternate translation: [Then his younger daughter went to him and slept with him] or [Then his younger daughter went to him and had sexual relations with him]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **but he did not know**
UST And {once again} {he was so drunk that} he was not aware

See how you translated the last clause in verse 33, which is similar to the rest of verse 35.
Alternate translation: [but he was not even aware] or [But he was completely unaware]

ULT **when she lay down or when she got up**
UST that she got in bed {with him} or that she left

Alternate translation: [that she had been with him]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wine	wine
know	he was so drunk that he was … aware

Genesis 19:36

ULT	UST
So both of the daughters of Lot conceived from their father.	*In that way, both of Lot's daughters became pregnant from having relations with their father.*

ULT **So both of the daughters of Lot conceived**
UST In that way, both of Lot's daughters became pregnant

Alternate translation: [As a result, both sisters got pregnant]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lot	Lot
conceived	In that way … became pregnant

Genesis 19:37

ULT	UST
Then the firstborn bore a son, and she called his name Moab. He is the father of the Moabites to this day.	*Later his older daughter gave birth to a son, and she named him Moab, which means "from my father." He became the ancestor of the Moabite people who are still living today.*

ULT **Then the firstborn bore a son**
UST Later his older {daughter} gave birth to a son

Alternate translation: [Months later, the oldest daughter had a son]

ULT **Moab**
UST Moab, which means "from my father

You can include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote. Some translations put this implied information in parentheses.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **He {is} the father of**
UST He {became} the ancestor of

Alternate translation: [He was the ancestor of]

ULT **the Moabites to this day**
UST the Moabite people {who are still living} today

The phrase, **to this day** or "today" refers to the time when Moses wrote the book of Genesis, which was hundreds of years after Lot and his daughters lived and died. Alternate translation: [the people group who are called the Moabites today]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bore	Later … gave birth to
called	and she named him
Moab	Moab
Moabites	Moabite
day	today

Genesis 19:38

ULT	UST
Then the younger, she also bore a son, and she called his name Ben-Ammi. He is the father of the sons of Ammon to this day.	*Lot's younger daughter also gave birth to a son, and she named him Ben-Ammi, which means "son of my people." He became the ancestor of the Ammonite people who are still living today.*

ULT **bore a son**
UST gave birth to a son

See how you translated the last half of verse 37, which is the same as the rest of verse 38, except for the names. Alternate translation: [had a son]

ULT **and she called his name**
UST and she named him

Alternate translation: [and she called him] or [whom she named]

ULT **Ben-Ammi**
UST Ben-Ammi, which means "son of my people

You can include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote. Some translations put this implied information in parentheses.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **He {is} the father of**
UST He {became} the ancestor of

Alternate translation: [He was the forefather of]

ULT **the sons of Ammon to this day**
UST the Ammonite people {who are still living} today

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 37. Alternate translation: [the people group who are called the Ammonites today]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bore	gave birth to
called	and she named him
Ammon	Ammonite
day	today

Genesis 20

Genesis 20:1

ULT	UST
Then Abraham traveled from there to the land of the Negeb, and he settled between Kadesh and Shur and sojourned in Gerar.	*Meanwhile Abraham and his family left from the place where they were living and moved south to the Negeb Desert area. There they lived between the cities of Kadesh and Shur, and they stayed for a while in the city of Gerar.*

ULT Then Abraham traveled
UST Meanwhile Abraham {and his family} left

Consider what is the best way to introduce this new episode in your language, where the focus shifts to Abraham. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham and his family left]

ULT from there
UST from the place where they were living

Abraham and Sarah had been living by the trees of Mamre, near the city of Hebron (Genesis 13:18; 18:1). Alternate translation: [from the place where he were living] or [from near the city of Hebron]

ULT to the land of the Negeb
UST and moved south to the Negeb {Desert} area

See how you translated "the Negeb Wilderness" in Genesis 12:9 (note); 13:1, 3. Alternate translation: [and went south to the Negeb Desert area]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT and he settled between Kadesh and Shur
UST There they lived between {the cities of} Kadesh and Shur

Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Kadesh** in Genesis 14:7 and **Shur** in 16:7. Alternate translation: [There he lived between the cities of Kadesh and Shur]

ULT and sojourned in Gerar
UST and they stayed for a while in {the city of} Gerar

See how you translated **sojourn** in Genesis 12:10. Also be consistent here with how you translated **Gerar** in Genesis 10:19. Alternate translation: [and they stayed there for a while as foreigners, in the city of Gerar] or [and they stayed in the city of Gerar for a while]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
land	and moved south to the Negeb {Desert} area
Negeb	Negeb
Kadesh	Kadesh
Gerar	Gerar

Genesis 20:2

ULT	UST
And Abraham said about Sarah his wife, "She is my sister." So Abimelech the king of Gerar sent for Sarah and took her.	*While they were there, Abraham told people that his wife Sarah was his sister. So one day Abimelech, who was the king of Gerar, had some of his servants bring Sarah to his home to be his wife.*

ULT **And Abraham said about Sarah his wife, "She {is} my sister**

UST While they were there, Abraham told {people} that his wife Sarah {was} his sister

Sarah was Abraham's younger sister (Genesis 19:19). Some languages use special words for **sister** and "brother" in Genesis 12:13, 19; 20:2, 5, 12–13, 16, to distinguish when someone is younger or older than his or her sibling. Alternate translation: [While they were there, he told people that his wife Sarah was his sister] or [While they were there, he told people that Sarah was his sister, not his wife]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **So Abimelech the king of Gerar sent for Sarah and took her**

UST So {one day} Abimelech, {who was} the king of Gerar, had {some of his servants} bring Sarah {to his home} to be his wife

The city of Gerar was the Philistines' capital city where King Abimelech ruled from (Genesis 21:2, 32; 26:1). Alternate translation: [So one day Abimelech, who was the king over the city of Gerar, had some of his servants bring Sarah to his home to be his wife] or [So one day King Abimelech, who ruled the Philistines from the city of Gerar, had Sarah brought to him to be his wife]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Sarah	Sarah
Abimelech	Abimelech
king	king
Gerar	Gerar
Sarah	Sarah

Genesis 20:3

ULT	UST
But God came to Abimelech in a dream in the night and said to him, "Behold, you are dead because of the woman whom you have taken, because she is married to a husband!"	*But that night God appeared to King Abimelech in a dream and warned him, "Listen, you are about to die because the woman whom you have taken to be your wife is already married to someone else!"*

ULT **But God came to Abimelech in a dream**
UST But … God appeared to {King} Abimelech in a dream

For some languages it is necessary to use an honorific title for a king each time (or most of the time) that he is referred to by name, in order to show him proper respect. Do what is best in your language throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [But God appeared to King Abimelech in a dream]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **in the night**
UST that night

It may be more natural to put this time phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "But that night God appeared to King Abimelech in a dream …" Alternate translation: [during the night] or [by night]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and said to him**
UST and warned him

Alternate translation: [and told him]

ULT **Behold, you are dead**
UST Listen, you are about to die

God is using the present tense to describe something that is going to happen in the future in order to warn that the event could happen soon. If it would be clearer in your language, you could use the future tense. Make sure that the way you translate this clause does not make it sound like King Abimelech is already dead. Alternate translation: [Hear me warn you, you are a dead man]
Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

ULT **because of the woman whom you have taken, because she**
UST because the woman whom you have taken to be your wife

See how you translated **took** in verse 2.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Abimelech	Abimelech
dream	dream

Genesis 20:4

ULT	UST
Now Abimelech had not gone near to her, so he said, "My Lord, will you kill even a righteous nation?	*However, Abimelech had not yet slept with Sarah, so he asked God, "Lord, will you kill me and my people even if we are innocent?*

ULT **Now Abimelech**
UST However, Abimelech

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information. Alternate translation: [Now King Abimelech]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **had not gone near to her**
UST had not {yet} slept with Sarah

Translate this clause in a way that will not be offensive or embarrassing in your language when it is read aloud in public. See how you translated a different phrase in Genesis 19:31 **come to us** that has the same meaning. Alternate translation: [had not yet slept with her] or [had not had marital relations with Sarah]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **so he said**
UST so he asked God

The way you translate this quote margin will depend on how you translate the rhetorical question that follows it.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **My Lord**
UST Lord

See how you translated this title of respect for God in Genesis 18:27, 30–32. Alternate translation: [My Master] or [Master]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **will you kill even a righteous nation**
UST will you kill {me and} my people even if {we are} innocent

King Abimelech uses a rhetorical question here to express his desperate concern. Abimelech is saying in a dramatic way that if God kills him, he will destroy the innocent nation that Abimelech leads as their king. Make sure in your translation that he sounds humble and not angry or rude. Alternate translation: [please do not kill me and the people I rule, since we are righteous.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **righteous**
UST we are innocent

Consider again how you translated the word **righteous** in the book of Genesis. See 6:9, 7:1, 18:23–26, 28; 20:4. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [we are actually righteous]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
Lord	Lord
kill	kill
righteous	we are innocent
nation	me and my people

Genesis 20:5

ULT	UST
Did not he himself say to me, ‘She is my sister’? And she herself also said, ‘He is my brother.’ I did this in the integrity of my heart and in the innocence of my hands!”	*Abraham himself told me that Sarah was his sister. And she herself also said that he was her brother. So I took her to be my wife with a pure conscience, and I did not know that I was doing anything wrong!”*

ULT **Did not he himself say to me, ‘She {is} my sister**
UST Abraham himself told me that Sarah was his sister

Abimelech uses another rhetorical question here as he continues to defend his actions. Also, see how you translated **sister** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [He himself told me that she was his sister!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **And she herself also said, ‘He {is} my brother**
UST And she herself also said that he was her brother

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [And Sarah herself also claimed that he was her brother]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **I did this**
UST So I took her to be my wife

Alternate translation: [So I did what I did]

ULT **in the integrity of my heart**
UST with a pure conscience

Alternate translation: [with a clear conscience] or [with pure motives]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and in the innocence of my hands**
UST and I did not know that I was doing anything wrong

Abimilech’s statement, **in the innocence of my hands**, means that he was not aware of any wrongdoing in his actions. If you use an exclamation point here in your translation, make sure it does not mean that King Abimelech is angry or being rude; rather, he is desperate. Alternate translation: [and with clean hands!]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
integrity	with a pure conscience
and in the innocence	and I did not know that I was doing anything wrong

Genesis 20:6

ULT	UST
Then God said to him in the dream, "Yes, I know that in the integrity of your heart you did this, and indeed I kept you from sinning against me. For that reason I did not allow you to touch her.	*God replied to him in the dream, "Yes, I realize that it was with a pure conscience that you took Sarah to be your wife. In fact, I am the one who kept you from sinning against me. That is why I did not let you sleep with her.*

ULT **Yes, I know that**
UST Yes, I realize that

Alternate translation: [Yes, I know that it was] or [I am aware that it was]

ULT **in the integrity of your heart**
UST it was with a pure conscience that

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: [with a clear conscience] or [with pure motives]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **you did this**
UST you took Sarah to be your wife

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this phrase before the previous one and say, "Yes, I realize that you did this with pure motives …" Alternate translation: [that you did this] or [that you took her to be your wife]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and indeed I kept you from sinning against me**
UST In fact, I {am the one who} kept you from sinning against me

In the Hebrew text, **I** is an emphatic pronoun. Try to communicate that emphasis in a natural way in your translation. Alternate translation: [and in fact, it is I who kept you from doing this sin against me] or [In fact, I am the one who prevented you from sinning against me]

ULT **I did not allow you**
UST I did not let you

Alternate translation: [I did not permit you to]

ULT **to touch her**
UST sleep with her

See how you translated the idiom "gone near to her" in verse 4, which has a meaning that is similar to the idiom here. Also, for some languages it may be better to change the order of these clauses and say, "I am the one who did not allow you to touch her so that you would not sin against me." Alternate translation: [have sexual relations with her] or [do anything to her]
Support Reference: Information Structure

> ULT **Then God said to him in the dream**
> UST God replied to him in the dream

Alternate translation: [God answered King Abimelech in the dream]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
dream	dream
know	realize
integrity	it was with a pure conscience that
sinning	sinning

Genesis 20:7

ULT	UST
So now, return the wife of the man because he is a prophet, and he will pray for you, and you will live. But if you do not return her, know that you will surely die, you and all who belong to you!"	*Now then, you must give Abraham's wife back to him. He is a spokesman for me, so he will ask me to be merciful to you, so that you will not die. However, if you refuse to give Sarah back to him, you can be sure that you and all your people will definitely die!"*

ULT **return the wife of the man**
UST you must give Abraham's wife back to him

Alternate translation: [return her to her husband Abraham]

ULT **because he {is} a prophet**
UST He is a spokesman for me

Also, a prophet is someone who speaks for someone else. In this case, Abraham serves as an intercessor and speaks for God and prays what God wants him to say (verses 7, 17). Avoid a translation of this term that focuses on telling the future, which is only one of the things that a prophet might do. Alternate translation: [He is a prophet for me]

ULT **and he will pray for you**
UST so he will ask me to be merciful to you

Alternate translation: [so he will ask me to be kind to you]

ULT **and you will live**
UST so that you will not die

Alternate translation: [and I will let you live]

ULT **But if you do not**
UST However, if you refuse

Alternate translation: [But if you will not]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **return her**
UST to give Sarah back to him

Alternate translation: [give her back to him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **know that**
UST you can be sure that

Alternate translation: [you need to know that] or [be aware that]

> ULT **you will surely die, you and all who {belong} to you**
> UST you and all your people will definitely die

The phrase **all who belong to you** refers to King Abimelech's people, whom he referred to in verse 4. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [you and all your people will surely die!] or [I will surely kill you and all your people!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
prophet	He is a spokesman for me
pray	so he will ask me to be merciful to you
know	you can be sure

Genesis 20:8

ULT	UST
So Abimelech got up early in the morning and called for all of his servants, and he told all those things in their ears, and the men were very afraid.	*Early the next morning King Abimelech got up and called together all of his officials. He told them everything that had happened, and they were very afraid that God would punish them.*

ULT **and called**
UST and called together

Alternate translation: [summoned]

ULT **for all of his servants**
UST all of his officials

Alternate translation: [all his officials and other servants]

ULT **and he told all those things in their ears**
UST He told them everything that had happened

Alternate translation: [Then he told them about everything that God had said to him in the dream] or [He told them everything that had happened]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **So Abimelech got up early in the morning**
UST Early the next morning {King} Abimelech got up

Alternate translation: [So the next morning King Abimelech got up early]

ULT **and the men were very afraid**
UST and they were very afraid that God would punish them

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to King Abimelech's servants at each point in this verse. Alternate translation: [and they felt terrified] or [When they heard that, they were very afraid that God would kill them] or [As soon as they heard that, the men were very afraid of what might happen next]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
called	called
servants	his officials
afraid	afraid

Genesis 20:9

ULT	UST
Then Abimelech called for Abraham and said to him, "What have you done to us? And how have I sinned against you so that you brought a great sin on me and on my kingdom? You have done deeds to me that should not be done!"	*Then the king summoned Abraham and scolded him by saying, "You have treated us very badly! I never did anything wrong to you, and yet you have caused me and the people whom I rule to be guilty of sinning terribly! You have wronged me in ways that should never be done to anyone!"*

ULT **Then Abimelech called for Abraham and said to him, "What have you done to us? And how have I sinned against you so that you brought a great sin on me and on my kingdom? You have done deeds to me that should not be done**

UST Then the king summoned Abraham and scolded him {by saying}, "You have treated us very badly! I never did anything wrong to you, and yet you have caused me and the people whom I rule to be guilty of sinning terribly! You have wronged me in ways that should never be done to anyone

In this verse, the pronouns **him** and **you** refer to **Abraham**, while the pronouns **I**, **me**, and **us** refer to **Abimilech**. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Then Abimelech called for Abraham and said to him, "What have you done to us? And how have I sinned against you, Abraham, so that you brought a great sin on me, King Abimelech, and on my kingdom? Abraham, you have done deeds to me that should not be done]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and said to him**

UST and scolded him by saying

The way you translate this quote margin will depend on how you translate the rhetorical question that follows it. Alternate translation: [and asked him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **What have you done to us**

UST You have treated us very badly

Abimelech uses two rhetorical questions here to express his anger and to rebuke Abraham for what he had done. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [You have treated us unjustly!] or [What you have done to us is not right!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **And how have I sinned against you so that**

UST I never did anything wrong to you, and yet

Alternate translation: [What did I do wrong to you so that] or [I never did anything wrong to you, but yet]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **you brought a great sin on me and on my kingdom**
UST you have caused me and the people whom I rule to be guilty of sinning terribly

Make sure your punctuation here fits with how you translate this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [you brought on me and my people the guilt of a terrible sin!] or [you have caused me and the kingdom that I rule to be guilty of sinning terribly!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **You have done deeds to me that should not be done**
UST You have wronged me in ways that should never be done to anyone

Alternate translation: [No one should ever wrong someone the way you have wronged me!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	the king
called	Then … summoned
Abraham	Abraham
sinned	I never did anything wrong to you
sin	sinning
kingdom	and the people whom I rule

Genesis 20:10

ULT	UST
Then Abimelech said to Abraham, "What were you looking for when you did this thing?"	*Finally, King Abimelech asked him, "What motivated you to do what you did?"*

ULT **Then Abimelech said to Abraham**
UST Finally, {King} Abimelech asked him

For some languages it is more natural here to omit this quote margin, because the same person is still talking to the same person. However, the words emphasize what King Abimelech says next and may indicate that there was a pause between what he said in verse 9 and in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Then Abilelech continued by asking Abraham]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **What were you looking for when you did**
UST What motivated you to do

Alternate translation: [What did you expect to benefit from doing] or [What were your reasons for doing]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **this thing**
UST what you did

Alternate translation: [this terrible thing?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
Abraham	him

Genesis 20:11

ULT	UST
And Abraham answered, "Because I said, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, so they will kill me because of my wife.'	*Abraham answered him, "I did it, because I thought that there was certainly no one in this city who revered God, so I was afraid they would kill me to get my wife for themselves.*

ULT **And Abraham answered**
UST Abraham answered him

Alternate translation: [Abraham replied to him]

ULT **Because**
UST I did it, because

Alternate translation: [I did it because]

ULT **I said, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, so they will kill me because of my wife**
UST I thought that there was certainly no one in this city who revered God, so {I was afraid} they would kill me to get my wife for themselves

The **fear of God** is an important theme in the Bible. It is a complex term that means to recognize how holy and powerful God is and to deeply respect and honor him by obeying and worshiping him. Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [I thought that there was certainly no one in this place who obeyed God, so I was afraid that they would kill me in order to take my wife for themselves]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
fear	no one … who revered
God	God
kill	kill

Genesis 20:12

ULT	UST
And also she truly is my sister, the daughter of my father but not the daughter of my mother, and she became my wife.	*Besides that, Sarah actually is my half-sister. We have the same father, but different mothers, and after we grew up, we got married.*

ULT **And also**
UST Besides that

Alternate translation: [In addition to that]

ULT **she truly {is} my sister**
UST Sarah actually {is} my half-sister

Alternate translation: [it is true that she is my sister] or [she actually is my sister]

ULT **the daughter of my father but not the daughter of my mother**
UST We have the same father, but different mothers

Alternate translation: [because she and I have the same father, but not the same mother]

ULT **and she became my wife**
UST and {after we grew up,} we got married

Alternate translation: [and when we were old enough, I married her]

Genesis 20:13

ULT	UST
And it happened when God caused me to wander from the house of my father, then I said to her, ‘This is your kindness that you can do for me: At every place where we go, say about me, “He is my brother.”’”	*Years later when God told me to leave my father’s family, I asked her to do me a favor and tell people wherever we go that I am her brother.”*

ULT **And it happened**
UST Years later

Alternate translation: [It happened that]

ULT **when God caused me to wander**
UST when God told me to leave

Alternate translation: [when God commanded me to leave] or [when God led me to travel away from]

ULT **from the house of my father**
UST my father’s family

See how you translated “house of … father” in Genesis 12:1. Alternate translation: [the place where my father and other relatives were living]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **then I said to her**
UST I asked her

Alternate translation: [I told her]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **This {is} your kindness that you can do for me: At every place where we go, say about me, “He {is} my brother**
UST to do me a favor and tell people wherever we go that I {am} her brother

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate these embedded quotes as direct or indirect quotes. Alternate translation: [to please do me a special favor and tell people wherever we go that I am her brother]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
house	s family
your kindness	to do me a favor

Genesis 20:14

ULT	UST
Then Abimelech took flocks and herds and men slaves and women slaves and gave them to Abraham, and he returned Sarah his wife to him.	*Then King Abimelech brought many sheep and cattle and male and female servants to Abraham and gave them all to him. He also gave Abraham's wife Sarah back to him.*

ULT flocks and herds
UST many sheep and cattle

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [flocks of sheep and herds of cattle]

ULT and men slaves and women slaves
UST and male and female servants to Abraham

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [and men and women slaves to Abraham] or [and male and female slaves to Abraham]

ULT and gave them to Abraham
UST and gave {them all} to him

Alternate translation: [and gave them all to Abraham]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT and he returned Sarah his wife to him
UST He {also} gave Abraham's wife Sarah back to him

Also, see how you translated **return** twice in verse 7. Alternate translation: [He also gave back to Abraham his wife Sarah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
flocks	sheep
and herds	cattle
and men slaves	servants
and women slaves	servants
Abraham	to him
Sarah	Sarah

Genesis 20:15

ULT	UST
Then Abimelech said, "Behold, my land is before you. Settle wherever is good in your eyes."	*Then King Abimelech said to him, "Look, my land is available to you. Live wherever you decide is best."*

ULT Then Abimelech said
UST Then {King} Abimelech said to him

Alternate translation: [Then he said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Behold
UST Look

Alternate translation: [Listen]

ULT my land {is} before you
UST my land {is} available to you

See how you translated the idiom "before your face" in Genesis 13:9. Alternate translation: [my land is in front of you]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT Settle
UST Live

See how you translated this verb in verse 1. Alternate translation: [You may live] or [I invite you to live]

ULT wherever {is} good in your eyes
UST wherever you decide {is} best

See how you translated the idiom **good in your eyes** in Genesis 19:8. You may need to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [wherever you decide is best for you] or [wherever you want]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
land	land
good	best

Genesis 20:16

ULT	UST
And to Sarah he said, "Behold, I have given 1, 000 shekels of silver to your brother. Behold, that is for you a covering of the eyes before all who are with you, so that you are vindicated for everything."	*Then he turned to Sarah and said, "Listen, I have given 12 kilos of silver to your brother. I am doing this so that everyone knows you did nothing wrong, and to compensate you for everything that has happened to you."*

ULT **Behold**
UST Listen

Alternate translation: [Look] or [Listen to this:]

ULT **I have given 1,000 {shekels of} silver to your brother**
UST I have given 12 {kilos of} silver to your brother

Coins did not exist at that time. Rather, people paid each other with shekels of silver or gold shekels, which was a weight measurement. A thousand shekels of silver was about 25 pounds (11.5 kilos) of silver. Many translation teams like to keep the same numbers that are in the Hebrew text in their translation, and then in a footnote give the equivalent amount in their own currency. Other teams put the equivalent amount in the text and put the literal phrase in a footnote. Alternate translation: [I have given 1,000 pieces of silver to your brother] or [I have given your brother 1,000 pieces of silver]
Support Reference: Biblical Money

ULT **Behold, that is**
UST I am doing this

Alternate translation: [I am doing this] or [The reason I am doing that is]

ULT **for you a covering of the eyes before all who {are} with you**
UST so that everyone knows you did nothing wrong

The phrase **a covering of the eyes** is an idiom which means that King Abimelech's payment to Abraham "covered" (that is, "protected") Sarah's good reputation and showed that she was innocent. Alternate translation: [to show everyone that you are innocent of any wrongdoing] or [to show to everyone that you are an honorable woman]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **so that you are vindicated for everything**
UST and to compensate you for everything that has happened to you

Alternate translation: [and to make it clear that you are not at fault for anything that happened]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And to Sarah he said**
UST Then he {turned} to Sarah {and} said

Alternate translation: [Then King Abimelech said to Sarah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarah	Sarah
silver	silver

Genesis 20:17

ULT	UST
Then Abraham prayed to God, and God healed Abimelech and his wife and his slave women, so that they bore children,	*Then Abraham asked God to be merciful to the king. So God healed King Abimelech, as well as his wife and his female servants, and they were able to have children again.*

ULT and God healed Abimelech
UST So God healed {King} Abimelech

Alternate translation: [So God healed him]

ULT and his wife and his slave women
UST as well as his wife and his female servants

Alternate translation: [and the king's wife and his slave women]

ULT so that they bore children
UST and they were able to have children again

Alternate translation: [and they were able to conceive and bear children again]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
prayed	Then … asked … to be merciful to the king
God	God
God	God
Abimelech	Abimelech
and his slave women	servants
bore	and they were able to have children again

Genesis 20:18

ULT	UST
because Yahweh had completely closed up every womb in the house of Abimelech because of Sarah, the wife of Abraham.	*Previously Yahweh had kept all the women in Abimelech's household from conceiving because he had taken Abraham's wife Sarah.*

ULT **because Yahweh**
UST Previously Yahweh

Alternate translation: [because previously Yahweh]

ULT **had completely closed up every womb in the house of Abimelech**
UST had kept all the women in Abimelech's household from conceiving

Consider again how often you need to use the honorific title "King" with Abimelech's name in this chapter in your language.
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **because of**
UST because he had taken

Alternate translation: [on account of] or [to punish him for taking]

ULT **Sarah, the wife of Abraham**
UST Abraham's wife Sarah

For some languages, it may be more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence (which begins in verse 17) and say, "Before this, Yahweh had completely closed up every womb in the household of King Abimelech because he had taken Abraham's wife Sarah. Then Abraham prayed …" If the order is changed, it will be necessary to combine these two verses and to put the verse numbers "17–18" in front of the sentence. Some translation teams have decided that they will never combine verses like that. Other teams have decided that occasionally it is acceptable to do that if it makes the meaning clearer.
Support Reference: Verse Bridges

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
womb	the women
house	in … s household
Abimelech	Abimelech
Sarah	Sarah
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 21

Genesis 21:1

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh visited Sarah as he had said, and Yahweh did for Sarah as he had said,	*Then Yahweh blessed Sarah just as he had said he would. Yes, he did for her exactly what he had promised to do.*

ULT **Then Yahweh visited Sarah as he had said**

UST Then Yahweh blessed Sarah {just} as he had said he would

The word **visited** is used here as an idiom that means God blessed Sarah and was kind to her (by enabling her to have a son). The same idiom is used in 1 Samuel 2:21 and Luke 1:68. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh blessed Sarah as he had promised that he would] or [Then Yahweh was gracious to Sarah, just as he had promised he would be]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and Yahweh did for Sarah**

UST Yes, he did for her

The two halves of verse 1 form a parallelism to emphasize what God did for Sarah. In your translation it is best, if possible, to keep both parts of the parallelism, since each part has a different emphasis. Alternate translation: [Yes, Yahweh did for her]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **as he had said**

UST just as he had said he would

Alternate translation: [just as he had said he would do]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Sarah	Sarah
Yahweh	Yes, he did
Sarah	for her

Genesis 21:2

ULT	UST
so that Sarah conceived and bore a son for Abraham in his old age, at the appointed time which God had told him.	*So Sarah became pregnant and at the time God had appointed, she gave birth to a son for Abraham when he was old, just as God had promised him that she would.*

ULT so that Sarah conceived
UST So Sarah became pregnant

Translate this clause in a way that is not offensive or awkward, especially when read aloud in public. Alternate translation: [So she became pregnant] or [As a result, Sarah conceived]

ULT and bore a son
UST and … she gave birth to a son

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a son] or [and had a son]

ULT which God had told him
UST just as God had promised him that she would

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, “So Sarah became pregnant, and at the time God had set, she gave birth to a son for Abraham when he was old, just as God had promised him that she would.” Alternate translation: [when God had told him it would happen]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarah	Sarah
conceived	So … became pregnant
bore	and … she gave birth to
Abraham	Abraham
appointed	appointed
God	God

Genesis 21:3

ULT	UST
And Abraham called the name of his son who was born to him, whom Sarah bore for him, Isaac.	*Then Abraham named his son Isaac, the son whom Sarah had given birth to.*

ULT And Abraham called the name of his son who was born to him
UST Then Abraham named his son

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham called his son]

ULT whom Sarah bore for him, Isaac
UST Isaac, {the son} whom Sarah had given birth to

Many translations include the meaning of Isaac's name, either in the text or in a footnote.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
called	Then Abraham named
who was born	הַנּוֹלַד
Sarah	Sarah
bore	had given birth to
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 21:4

ULT	UST
And Abraham circumcised his son Isaac, a son of eight days, just as God had commanded him.	*Also, when Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him, which was exactly what God had commanded him to do.*

ULT **his son Isaac**
UST him

Consider what is the best way to refer to Isaac at this point in the paragraph, in your language. Alternate translation: [his son]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And Abraham circumcised his son Isaac, a son of eight days, just as God had commanded him**
UST Also, when Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him, which was exactly what God had commanded him to do

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase first in this verse. Alter and say, “Also, when Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him,” Alternate translation: [who was eight days old] or [when he was eight days old]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **just as God had commanded him**
UST which was exactly what God had commanded him to do

Alternate translation: [He did exactly what God had commanded him to do]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
circumcised	circumcised
Isaac	him
days	days
God	God

Genesis 21:5

ULT	UST
And Abraham was a son of 100 years when Isaac his son was born to him.	*Abraham was 100 years old when his son Isaac was born.*

ULT **And Abraham {was} a son of 100 years**
UST Abraham {was} 100 years old

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 17:17.

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **when Isaac his son was born to him**
UST when his son Isaac was born

Alternate translation: [when Isaac was born]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
years	years
Isaac	Isaac
when … was born	when … was born

Genesis 21:6

ULT	UST
And Sarah said, "God has brought laughter to me! Everyone who hears will laugh with me!"	*When he was born, Sarah exclaimed, "God has made me laugh for joy! Everyone who hears about this will laugh for joy with me!"*

ULT **And Sarah said**
UST When he was born, Sarah exclaimed

Alternate translation: [When Isaac was born, Sarah said]

ULT **God has brought laughter to me**
UST God has made me laugh for joy

Alternate translation: [God has enabled me to rejoice and laugh!]

ULT **Everyone who hears**
UST Everyone who hears about this

Alternate translation: [Everyone who finds out what he has done for me]

ULT **will laugh with me**
UST will laugh {for joy} with me

Alternate translation: [will rejoice and laugh with me!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarah	Sarah
God	God

Genesis 21:7

ULT	UST
And she said, "Who would have said to Abraham that Sarah would nurse children? Yet I have born a son in his old age!"	*She also exclaimed, "No one would have even thought of telling Abraham that I would have children. Yet I have given birth to a son for him when he is old!"*

ULT **And she said**
UST She also exclaimed

Alternate translation: [Then she added] or [She also said]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Who would have said to Abraham**
UST No one would have {even thought of} telling Abraham

Sarah uses a rhetorical question here to express great joy and amazement. Some languages must use a statement or exclamation here instead. Alternate translation: [No one would have ever told Abraham] or [No one would have ever thought of telling Abraham]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **that Sarah would nurse children**
UST that I would have children

Alternate translation: [that I would bear children]

ULT **Yet**
UST Yet

Alternate translation: [But yet] or [In spite of that]

ULT **I have born a son**
UST I have given birth to a son for him

See how you translated **bear** in Genesis 18:13. Alternate translation: [I have had a son for him]

ULT **in his old age**
UST when he is old

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. You may need to translate it in a different way here because of the slightly different context. Alternate translation: [even though he is old!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Sarah	that I would have children
I have born	I have given birth to

Genesis 21:8

ULT	UST
Then the child grew and was weaned, and Abraham made a great feast on the day Isaac was weaned.	*Isaac grew as a child and reached the age when his mother stopped nursing him. When that happened, Abraham held a big feast to celebrate.*

ULT **Then the child grew**
UST Isaac grew as a child

Alternate translation: [The boy Isaac grew]

ULT **and was weaned**
UST and reached the age when his mother stopped nursing him

Children in that culture were often weaned around the age of three. Translate **weaned** in a way that will not embarrass or offend people. Alternate translation: [and his mother weaned him] or [and reached the age when his mother stopped breast-feeding him]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and Abraham made a great feast on the day Isaac was weaned**
UST When that happened, Abraham held a big feast to celebrate

Alternate translation: [When that happened, Abraham held a elaborate feast to celebrate] or [On that same day, Abraham had his servants prepare an elaborate feast to celebrate]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
feast	feast
day	When that happened
Isaac	When that happened

Genesis 21:9

ULT	UST
And Sarah saw that the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had born for Abraham, was mocking.	*But during the feast Sarah noticed that Ishmael, the son of her Egyptian handmaid Hagar and Abraham, was making fun of Isaac.*

ULT **And Sarah saw**
UST But {during the feast} Sarah noticed

Alternate translation: [But at the feast Sarah saw]

ULT **that the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had born for Abraham**
UST that {Ishmael,} the son of {her} Egyptian {handmaid} Hagar and Abraham

Also see how you translated “have born” in verse 8. Alternate translation: [that the son whom Hagar, her handmaid from the country of Egypt, had given birth to for Abraham]

ULT **was mocking**
UST was making fun of Isaac

Alternate translation: [was mocking Isaac] or [was laughing at Isaac]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarah	Sarah
Hagar	Hagar
Egyptian	Egyptian
she had born	her Egyptian handmaid … and Abraham
Abraham	Abraham
mocking	was making fun of Isaac

Genesis 21:10

ULT	UST
So she said to Abraham, "Drive away that slave woman and her son, because the son of that slave woman will not inherit with my son, with Isaac!"	*So she was angry and told Abraham, "Get rid of that servant woman and her son! Her son must never share any part of what my son Isaac inherits from you!"*

ULT **So she said to Abraham**
UST So she {was angry and} told Abraham

Alternate translation: [So she was upset and told Abraham]

ULT **Drive away**
UST Get rid of

Alternate translation: [Send away]

ULT **that slave woman**
UST that servant woman

See how you translated "slave women" in Genesis 20:17. Some languages may have a single word (as Hebrew does) that means this. Alternate translation: [that female slave]

ULT **and her son**
UST and her son

Alternate translation: [along with her son!]

ULT **because the son of that slave woman**
UST Her son

Alternate translation: [The son of that slave woman]

ULT **will not inherit with my son, with Isaac**
UST must never share {any part of} what my son Isaac inherits from you

Alternate translation: [will never inherit any part of what our son Isaac inherits from you!] or [will not get anything from you! Only my son Isaac should inherit your estate!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Drive away	Get rid of
slave woman	servant
slave woman	Her son
will … inherit	must … what … inherits from you
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 21:11

ULT	UST
And the matter was very distressing in the eyes of Abraham on account of his son.	*Abraham was very upset about that, because Ishmael was also his son and he cared about him too.*

ULT **And the matter was very distressing in the eyes of Abraham**
UST Abraham was very upset about that

Alternate translation: [Abraham felt very grieved about that] or [What Sarah said grieved Abraham very much]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **on account of his son**
UST because {Ishmael} was {also} his son and he cared about him too

Alternate translation: [because of his son Ishmael] or [because he also cared about his son Ishmael]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And … was … distressing	Abraham was very upset about that
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 21:12

ULT	UST
But God said to Abraham, "Do not be distressed in your eyes because of the boy and because of your slave woman. All that Sarah says to you, listen to her voice, because in Isaac, offspring will be called yours.	*But God told him, "Do not be upset about the boy or your servant woman. Rather, listen to everything Sarah tells you to do, and do it, because Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of your descendants whom I promised to you.*

ULT **But God said to Abraham**
UST But God told him

Alternate translation: [Then God said to him] or [Then God told him]

ULT **Do not be distressed in your eyes**
UST Do not be upset

See how you translated **distressing** in verse 11. Alternate translation: [Do not be sad] or [Do not let yourself be upset]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **because of the boy and because of your slave woman**
UST about the boy or your servant woman

Ishmael was about 17 years old at this time, so in verses 12–16 use terms for him in your language that fit with that fact. Alternate translation: [about the boy or your slave woman]

ULT **All that Sarah says to you, listen to her voice**
UST Rather, listen to everything Sarah tells you {to do}, and do it

The word **listen** means to hear and do what is being asked. Also, the phrase **her voice** refers to Sarah and what she said. Alternate translation: [Rather, listen to whatever Sarah tells you to do, and do it] or [Do everything that Sarah told you to do]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **because in Isaac, offspring will be called yours**
UST because Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of your descendants whom I promised to you

Alternate translation: [because it is in Isaac that the descendants I promised you will be reckoned] or [because Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of the descendants that I promised to give you] or [because the offspring that I promised to you will come from Isaac]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Abraham	him
Do … be distressed	Do … be upset
your slave woman	servant
Sarah	Sarah
Isaac	Isaac
offspring	Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of your descendants whom I promised to you
called	Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of your descendants whom I promised to you

Genesis 21:13

ULT	UST
And the son of the slave woman I will also make into a nation, because he is your offspring."	*But I will also make your servant woman's son become the ancestor of a large people group, because he is your son."*

ULT **And the son of the slave woman I will also make**
UST But I will also make your servant woman's son

Alternate translation: [But I will also make the son of your servant woman]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **into a nation**
UST become {the ancestor of} a {large} people group

Alternate translation: [become the ancestor of an important people group]

ULT **because he {is} your offspring**
UST because he is your son

For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to put this "because …" clause earlier in this sentence and say, "And/But because/since the son of your slave/servant woman is your offspring/son, I will also make him into a great/important/large people/ethnic group." Alternate translation: [since he is your descendant]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the slave woman	servant
nation	become {the ancestor of} a {large} people group
your offspring	your son

Genesis 21:14

ULT	UST
Then Abraham got up early in the morning, and took bread and a skin of water and gave them to Hagar, putting them on her shoulder. Then he gave her the child and sent her away, and she left and wandered in the wilderness of Beersheba.	*Early the next morning Abraham got up, brought some food and a leather container full of water to Hagar and put them on her back. Then he sent her off with the boy, and they left and wandered around in the desert near the city of Beersheba.*

ULT **Then Abraham got up early in the morning**
UST Early the next morning Abraham got up

Alternate translation: [So Abraham got up early the next morning]

ULT **and took bread**
UST brought {some} food

This phrase may refer to bread or more generally to food. Alternate translation: [got some food]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **and a skin of water**
UST and a leather container {full} of water

The word **skin** refers here to an animal skin or hide. Alternate translation: [and a leather bag full of water] or [and a full water bag made of animal hide] or [and a water bag full of water]

ULT **and gave them to Hagar, putting them on her shoulder**
UST to Hagar {and} put them on her back

Alternate translation: [to Hagar and put them on her shoulder]

ULT **Then {he gave her} the child and sent her away**
UST Then he sent her off with the boy

Alternate translation: [Then he sent her and the boy away] or [Then he sent her off with the youth]

ULT **and she left and wandered**
UST and they left and wandered around

Alternate translation: [and she left and wandered around] or [and they wandered around]

ULT **in the wilderness of Beersheba**
UST in the desert near {the city of} Beersheba

Sometimes in the Bible a place is identified by the well-known name it will be called later. That is the case in this verse, since Beersheba is not given its name until verse 31. Alternate translation: [in the Beersheba Desert] or [in the desert near the city that was later called Beersheba]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
bread	some food
Hagar	Hagar
wilderness	desert
Beersheba	Beersheba
Beersheba	Beersheba

Genesis 21:15

ULT	UST
And when the water from the skin was gone, then she threw the child under one of the bushes,	*When they had finished all the water in the container, she left her son under the shade of a bush.*

ULT **And when the water from the skin was gone**
UST When they had finished {all} the water in the container

See how you translated **skin** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [When they had drunk all the water that they had in the water container] or [When there was no more water in the water skin] or [When the water bag was empty]

ULT **then she threw**
UST she left

Make sure your translation of this idiom does not mean that Hagar literally threw Ishmael through the air. Alternate translation: [Hagar hurriedly put]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the child**
UST her son

Alternate translation: [the boy]

ULT **under one of the bushes**
UST under {the shade of} a bush

Alternate translation: [under the shade of one of the bushes there] or [under the shade of a nearby bush]

Genesis 21:16

ULT	UST
and she went and sat down by herself at a distance, as far away as they shoot a bow, because she said, "Do not let me look on the death of the child!" And as she sat at a distance, then she lifted her voice and sobbed.	*She thought to herself, "I cannot bear to watch my son die." So she went away from him and sat down by herself, about as far away as someone can shoot an arrow. Then she started crying loudly.*

ULT **and she went and sat down by herself at a distance**
UST So she went {away from him} and sat down by herself

Alternate translation: [Then she went away from him and sat down by herself]

ULT **as far away as they shoot a bow**
UST about as far away as someone can shoot an arrow

If you do not translate the text literally, the literal text could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [about as far away as someone can shoot a bow] or [about a hundred yards away]
Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT **because she said**
UST She thought to herself

Alternate translation: [because she said to herself] or [She said to herself]

ULT **Do not let me look on the death of the child**
UST I cannot {bear to} watch my son die

Consider whether it is better to use a noun (**death**) or a verb (**die**) in your translation here. Also, see how you translated **child** in verses 14 and 15. Alternate translation: [I cannot bear to see my son die!]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **And {as} she sat at a distance, then she lifted her voice and sobbed**
UST Then she started crying loudly

For some languages it may be more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse (so that the events are in the order that they actually occurred) and say, "She thought to herself, 'I cannot bear to watch/see my son die.' So she went away from him and sat down by herself, about as far away as someone can shoot an arrow. Then she started crying loudly." Alternate translation: [As she sat there, she started sobbing loudly] or [Then she started sobbing loudly]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a bow	an arrow
and sobbed	Then she started crying loudly

Genesis 21:17

ULT	UST
And God heard the voice of the boy, so the angel of God called to Hagar from heaven and said to her, "What troubles you, Hagar? Do not be afraid, because God has listened to the voice of the boy where he is there.	*God also heard the boy crying, so one of his angels called to Hagar from heaven and said, "What is the matter, Hagar? Do not be afraid. God has heard the boy crying over there and will take care of him.*

ULT **And God heard the voice of the boy**
UST God {also} heard the boy crying

Alternate translation: [God also heard the youth crying]

ULT **What {troubles} you, Hagar**
UST What is the matter, Hagar

For some languages it is necessary to put **Hagar** first in this quote. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Hagar, why are you upset?]

ULT **Do not be afraid, because God has listened to the voice of the boy where he {is} there**
UST Do not be afraid. God has heard the boy crying over there and will take care of him

The phrase **has listened to** means that God heard the boy and that he will help him. Alternate translation: [Do not be afraid, because God has heard the cries of the boy where he is lying and will take care of him] or [Do not be afraid. God has heard the youth crying over there and will take care of him] or [God has heard the youth crying over there, so do not be afraid because he will take care of you both]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **so the angel of God called to Hagar from heaven and said to her**
UST so one of his angels called to Hagar from heaven and said

See how you translated the key term **angel** in Gen 16:7. Alternate translation: [so one of his messengers called to Hagar from heaven and said] or [so he had one of his messengers call to Hagar from heaven and say]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
angel	angels
God	one of his angels
called	called
Hagar	Hagar
heaven	heaven
Hagar	Hagar
afraid	afraid
God	God

Genesis 21:18

ULT	UST
Get up, lift the boy, and hold on to him with your hand, because I will make him into a great nation."	*So go help the boy to get up, and take care of him, because I Yahweh will make him become the ancestor of a large people group."*

ULT **Get up, lift the boy**
UST So go help the boy to get up

Alternate translation: [So go help the youth to stand up] or [So now, go to your son, help him get up]

ULT **and hold on to him with your hand**
UST and take care of him

Alternate translation: [and lead him by the hand to help him walk]

ULT **because I will make him**
UST because I {Yahweh} will make him

The pronoun **I** refers to Yahweh here. So either Yahweh had taken on the form of an angel, or the angel was representing Yahweh and speaking for him. See what you did for a similar case in Genesis 16:10. Also, see how you translated "make … into a great nation" in verse 13. Also see 18:18, which is similar. Alternate translation: [because Yahweh will make his descendants become]

ULT **into a great nation**
UST become {the ancestor of} a large people group

See how you translated **nation** in verse 13. Alternate translation: [an large ethnic group]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
nation	become {the ancestor of} a … people group

Genesis 21:19

ULT	UST
Then God opened her eyes and she saw a well of water. So she went and filled the skin with water and gave the boy a drink.	*Then God enabled Hagar to see a water well. So she went over to the well, filled her water container with water, and gave her son some water to drink.*

ULT **Then God opened her eyes and she saw**
UST Then God enabled Hagar to see

Alternate translation: [Then God helped her to see]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a well of water**
UST a water well

See how you translated **well** in Genesis 16:14. Alternate translation: [a well]

ULT **So she went**
UST So she went over to the well

Alternate translation: [So she walked over to the well]

ULT **and filled the skin {with} water**
UST filled her {water} container {with} water

See how you translated **skin** in verses 14–15. Alternate translation: [filled the water bag with water]

ULT **and gave the boy a drink**
UST and gave her son some water to drink

Alternate translation: [and gave Ishmael a drink from it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
well	well

Genesis 21:20

ULT	UST
And God was with the boy, and he grew up. And he lived in the wilderness and became a great bowman.	*As the boy grew up, God was with him and helped him. He lived in the Paran Desert and learned to hunt skillfully with a bow and arrows.*

ULT **And God was with the boy**
UST God was with him and helped him

This clause means that God guided, helped, protected, and blessed Ishmael, that is, he took care of him. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom that fits well here. Also consider again how you translated **boy/youth** in verses 12, 17–20. Alternate translation: [God was with the boy and blessed him]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he grew up. And he lived**
UST As the boy grew up … He lived

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, "As the boy/youth grew up/older, God was with him and blessed him." Alternate translation: [as he grew up]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And he lived in the wilderness**
UST He lived in the {Paran} Desert

For some languages it is more natural to specify here in verse 20 that the name of the wilderness is Paran, rather than wait until verse 21, so that it is clear that both verses refer to the same wilderness. See how you translated **the wilderness** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [And he lived in the desert of Paran] or [He lived in the Paran Wilderness]

ULT **and became a great bowman**
UST and learned to hunt skillfully with a bow and arrows

Alternate translation: [and became a skilled bowhunter]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
wilderness	Desert
a … bowman	to hunt skillfully with a bow and arrows

Genesis 21:21

ULT	UST
And while he was living in the wilderness of Paran, then his mother took a wife for him from the land of Egypt.	*While he was there, his mother found a wife for him who was from the country of Egypt.*

ULT **And {while} he was living in the wilderness of Paran**
UST While he was there

See how you translated **wilderness** in verse 20. Alternate translation: [While he was living in the Paran Wilderness] or [While he was living in that desert]

ULT **then his mother took a wife for him**
UST his mother found a wife for him

Alternate translation: [his mother chose a wife for him] or [his mother arranged for him to marry a woman]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from the land of Egypt**
UST who was from the country of Egypt

See how you translated **the land of Egypt** in Genesis 13:10. Alternate translation: [who came from the country of Egypt] or [who was Egyptian]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wilderness	While he was there
Paran	While he was there
land	who was from the country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 21:22

ULT	UST
And it happened at that time that Abimelech and Phicol, the commander of his army, spoke to Abraham, saying, "God is with you in all that you do.	*Meanwhile, one day King Abimelech came with his army captain Phicol to Abraham and said to him, "I have noticed that God is with you and helps you in everything that you do.*

ULT **And it happened at that time**
UST Meanwhile, one day

Consider what is the best way to introduce a new episode here in your language. Alternate translation: [Around that same time]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **God {is} with you in all that you do**
UST I have noticed that God {is} with you {and helps you} in everything that you do

Alternate translation: [I have noticed that God is with you and blesses you in everything that you do]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
the commander of	his army captain
Abraham	Abraham
God	God

Genesis 21:23

ULT	UST
So now, swear to me here by God if you will deal falsely with me or with my children or with my descendants. According to the kindness that I have done to you, do to me and to the land which you are sojourning in."	*Now then, please vow to me here in God's presence that you will never again deceive me or my children or my descendants. Instead, just as I have treated you kindly, vow that you will also be kind to me and my people in this country where you are living."*

ULT **So now, swear**
UST Now then, {please} vow

This is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as "please" to make this clear. See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 20:7. Alternate translation: [So now, please swear]
Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **swear to me here by God**
UST please vow to me here in God's presence

To "swear … by God" means that Abraham would be accountable to God, asking him to be his witness and to punish him if he breaks his oath to King Abimelech. It does not mean that Abraham used swear words or other foul language. If this custom is not familiar to many people in your language area, you could put this information in a footnote. See how you translated a similar sentence in Genesis 14:22. Alternate translation: [solemnly promise me here with God as your witness]
Support Reference: Oath Formulas

ULT **if you will deal falsely with me**
UST that you will never {again} deceive me

According to custom, Abimelech is leaving out the part of the oath that tells what Yahweh will do to Abraham if he violates the oath. Because of the power of spoken words, people left that part to be understood silently. You could supply these words if it would be clearer and not offensive in your language. Alternate translation: [that he should punish you severely if you will deal falsely with me]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **According to the kindness that I have done to you**
UST Instead, just as I have treated you kindly

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **kindness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [Rather, just as I have treated you kindly] or [But just as I have been kind to you]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **do to me and to the land**
UST vow that you will {also} be kind to me and {my people in} this country

In this context, the phrase **the land** refers to the people who live in the land. Alternate translation: [vow that you will also be kind to me and the people in this land]
Support Reference: Metonymy

> ULT **which you are sojourning in**
> UST where you are living

Alternate translation: [where you are sojourning] or [where you are living as a foreigner]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
swear	vow
God	God’s
descendants	descendants
According to the kindness	Instead, just as I have treated you kindly
land	and {my people in} this country

Genesis 21:24

ULT	UST
And Abraham said, “I swear.”	*Abraham replied to him, “I vow that I will do those things.”*

ULT **I swear**
UST I vow that I will do those things

See how you translated **swear** in verse 23. Alternate translation: [I swear that I will do those things] or [I solemnly promise that I will do that]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And Abraham said**
UST Abraham replied to him

Alternate translation: [Abraham said to Abimelech]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
swear	vow

Genesis 21:25

ULT	UST
Then Abraham complained to Abimelech on account of the well of water that the servants of Abimelech had seized.	*Then Abraham also confronted King Abimelech about a water well that Abimelech's servants had taken control of from Abraham's servants.*

ULT **Then Abraham complained to**
UST Then Abraham {also} confronted

Alternate translation: [But then he confronted] or [Then he also protested to]

ULT **on account of**
UST about

Alternate translation: [regarding]

ULT **the well of water**
UST a water well

See how you translated **well of water** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [a well of water] or [the water well] or [a well]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Then … complained to	Then … also confronted
Abimelech	Abimelech
well	well
servants	servants
Abimelech	Abimelech
seized	had taken control of from Abraham's servants

Genesis 21:26

ULT	UST
Then Abimelech said, "I do not know who has done this thing. And also you did not tell me, and also I have not heard about it until today."	*But Abimelech responded, "I have no idea who did that. Besides that, you did not tell me about it before, and so today is the first that I have heard about it."*

ULT **who has done this thing**
UST who did that

Alternate translation: [who took your well from you] or [who took control of your well]

ULT **you did not tell me**
UST you did not tell me {about it} before

Alternate translation: [you did not inform me about that before] or [you never told me about this]

ULT **and also**
UST and so

Alternate translation: [furthermore] or [and finally]

ULT **I have not heard about it until today**
UST today is the first that I have heard about it

Alternate translation: [I knew nothing about it until today] or [today is the first time that I have heard about it]

ULT **And also**
UST Besides that

Here Abimelech is introducing an additional explanation of his innocence in this matter. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Furthermore]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
know	I have no idea
tell	tell
today	today is the first that I have heard about it

Genesis 21:27

ULT	UST
Then Abraham took sheep and cattle, and he gave them to Abimelech, and the two of them cut a covenant.	*Then Abraham gave some of his sheep and cattle to Abimelech, and he and Abimelech made a peace treaty with one another.*

ULT and the two of them cut a covenant

UST and he and Abimelech made a {peace} treaty with one another

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 15:18. Alternate translation: [and he and Abimelech made a peace agreement with one another]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
sheep	sheep
cattle	cattle
Abimelech	Abimelech
covenant	a {peace} treaty with one another

Genesis 21:28

ULT	UST
Then Abraham set apart seven ewe lambs of the flock by themselves.	*Abraham also separated seven female lambs from the rest of the flock.*

ULT **Then Abraham set apart**
UST Abraham {also} separated

Alternate translation: [Abraham also isolated]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
ewe	female lambs from
flock	flock

Genesis 21:29

ULT	UST
So Abimelech said to Abraham, "What are they, these seven ewe lambs that you have set apart by themselves?"	*So Abimelech asked him, "Why did you separate those seven lambs from the rest of the flock?"*

ULT **What {are} they, these seven ewe lambs that you have set apart by themselves**
UST Why did you separate those seven lambs from the rest of the flock

See how you translated **set apart** in verse 28. Alternate translation: [What is the reason that you set apart those seven lambs?] or [Why did you put those seven lambs off by themselves?] or [Why did you isolate those seven lambs from the rest of the sheep?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
Abraham	him
ewe	lambs

Genesis 21:30

ULT	UST
And he said, "Because you must take the seven ewe lambs from my hand, so that it can be a witness for me that I dug this well."	*Abraham replied, "Because I want you to accept them from me, to show everyone that you agree with me that I dug this well and it belongs to me."*

ULT **And he said**
UST Abraham replied

Alternate translation: [Abraham answered him]

ULT **so that it can be a witness for me**
UST to show {everyone} that you agree with me

Alternate translation: [to verify to everyone]

ULT **that I dug this well**
UST that I dug this well and it belongs to me

Alternate translation: [that I dug this well and so it is mine] or [that I am the one who dug this well and it belongs to me]

ULT **Because you must take the seven ewe lambs**
UST Because I want you to accept them

Alternate translation: [Those seven lambs are for you to accept] or [Because I want you to take them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ewe	them
well	well

Genesis 21:31

ULT	UST
For that reason he called that place Beersheba, because there the two of them swore an oath.	*Abimelech accepted the lambs, so Abraham named that place Beersheba, which means "Well of the Seven" or "Well of the Vow," because that's where they both vowed to live at peace with one another.*

ULT **For that reason**
UST Abimelech accepted the lambs, so

Alternate translation: [That is why] or [So]

ULT **he called that place**
UST Abraham named that place

The phrase **he called** often means that people in general gave a city or other place a certain name. Here it could be that Abraham named the place Beersheba, and then later other people called it the same name, and it became well known by that name. See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 19:22. Alternate translation: [Abraham called that place] or [they call that place] or [that place was called]

ULT **Beersheba**
UST Beersheba, which means "Well of the Seven" or "Well of the Vow

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Beersheba** in verse 14. Also, if you include the meaning of the name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure that the way you translate "vow" or **oath** here matches the way you translate **oath** later in this verse. Alternate translation: [Well of the Oath]

ULT **because there**
UST because that's where

Alternate translation: [because it was there that] or [because that is where]

ULT **swore an oath**
UST vowed to live at peace with one another

See how you translated **swear** in verses 23–24. Alternate translation: [made a vow to each other] or [solemnly promised each other to live in peace]

ULT **the two of them**
UST they both

See how you translated this phrase in verse 27. Alternate translation: [he and Abimelech both]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	Abraham named
Beersheba	Beersheba
Beersheba	Beersheba
oath	vowed

Genesis 21:32

ULT	UST
So they cut the covenant at Beersheba. Then Abimelech and Phicol, the commander of his army, got up and returned to the land of the Philistines.	*After Abraham and King Abimelech made their peace treaty at Beersheba, Abimelech and his army captain Phicol left from there and went back to their homes in the Philistines' territory that Abimelech ruled over.*

ULT **So they cut the covenant at Beersheba**

UST After Abraham and {King} Abimelech made their {peace} treaty at Beersheba

See how you translated the idiom "cut … covenant" in 15:18. Alternate translation: [After Abraham and King Abimelech established their peace agreement at Beersheba]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Then Abimelech and Phicol, the commander of his army, got up**

UST Abimelech and his army captain Phicol left from there

See how you translated **got up** in verse 22. Alternate translation: [Abimelech and Phicol, his army commander left from there] or [Abimelech and his army commander Phicol left Abraham]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	their {peace} treaty
Beersheba	Beersheba
Beersheba	Beersheba
Abimelech	Abimelech
the commander of	his army captain
land	their homes in the Philistines' territory that Abimelech ruled over
Philistines	their homes in the Philistines' territory that Abimelech ruled over

Genesis 21:33

ULT	UST
Then he planted a tamarisk tree at Beersheba, and there he called on the name of Yahweh, the God of eternity.	*Then Abraham planted an evergreen tree named tamarisk at the place called Beersheba, and there he worshiped Yahweh, who is the God who lives forever.*

ULT a tamarisk tree

UST an {evergreen} tree {named} tamarisk

The tamarisk tree (also known as salt-cedar) is a small-leaved evergreen tree that grows up to 30 feet (9 meters) high and provides shade. It grows well in desert areas that have salty soil. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [a salt-cedar tree] or [an evergreen tree named salt-cedar]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT and there he called on the name of Yahweh

UST and there he worshiped Yahweh

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 12:8 and a similar clause in 13:4. Alternate translation: [and he praised Yahweh by name there] or [and he addressed Yahweh there by his name as he praised him] or [and there he praised Yahweh]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
planted	planted
Beersheba	Beersheba
Beersheba	Beersheba
called	and there he worshiped Yahweh
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
eternity	forever

Genesis 21:34

ULT	UST
Then Abraham sojourned in the land of the Philistines many days.	*After that, Abraham lived there in the Philistines' territory for many years.*

ULT **Then Abraham sojourned**
UST After that, Abraham lived there

See how you translated **sojourning** in verse 23. Alternate translation: [After that, he stayed there]

ULT **in the land of the Philistines**
UST in the Philistines' territory

Alternate translation: [in the territory that was occupied by the Philistines] or [in the territory where the Philistines lived]

ULT **many days**
UST for many years

Abraham lived in the Philistines' territory for around 25 years, so keep that in mind as you translate this phrase. For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this time phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "… lived there for many years in the land …"
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
land	in the … territory
Philistines	Philistines
days	for … years

Genesis 22

Genesis 22:1

ULT	UST
Then it happened after those things that God tested Abraham. And he said to him, "Abraham!" And he said, "Behold me."	*Sometime later God decided to test Abraham. So he called to him, "Abraham!" Abraham replied, "Yes, Lord?"*

ULT **Then it happened after those things**
UST Sometime later

This is the beginning of a new episode that takes place around twelve years after Abraham and King Abimelech made their treaty (chapter 21). See how you translated "after those events" in Genesis 15:1; it may be necessary to translate this phrase in a slightly different way here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [Sometime after those things happened] or [Several years later]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **that God tested Abraham**
UST God {decided to} test Abraham

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like the test was over. Rather it introduces what the following episode is about. Alternate translation: [God wanted to test Abraham]

ULT **And he said**
UST So he called

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking here. Alternate translation: [Abraham replied to him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Behold me**
UST Yes, Lord

Abraham is responding to God with the courteous expression that a person in this culture would use to tell a superior that he had heard a summons and was ready and willing to obey. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Yes, Master?] or [What is it, Lord]
Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
tested	test
Abraham	Abraham
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 22:2

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Please take your son, your only son whom you love, Isaac, and go yourself to the land of Moriah, and sacrifice him there as a burnt offering on one of the mountains that I will tell to you."	*Then God commanded him, "Take your son with you, yes, your only son Isaac whom you love, and travel with him to the region of Moriah. There you are to burn him up on an altar as a sacrifice to me, on one of the mountains that I will show to you."*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then God commanded him

Translate this quote margin in a way that fits this context well. Alternate translation: [Then God said to him] or [Then God told him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Please take your son**
UST Take your son with you

See how you translated **please** when God is talking to a person in Genesis 13:14; 15:5. Your translation of **take** here should not imply the use of force. See how you translated **took** in Genesis 11:31 and 12:5.

ULT **Please take your son, your only {son} whom you love**
UST Take your son {with you}, {yes,} your only son … whom you love

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. Hebrew poetry was based on this kind of repetition, and it would be good to show this to your readers by including both phrases in your translation rather than combining them. It may be clearer in your language to connect the phrases with a word other than **and** in order to show that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. Alternate translation: [Please take your son, yes, your only son whom you love]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **and go yourself**
UST and travel with him

It is understood that he was to take Isaac with him. If this is not clear in your language, you could make that information explicit. Alternate translation: [and go with him]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the land of Moriah**
UST to the region of Moriah

Alternate translation: [to the region called Moriah] or [to the Moriah Region]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and sacrifice him there as a burnt offering**
UST There you are to burn him up {on an altar} as a sacrifice to me

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 8:20. Alternate translation: [and offer him there to me as a burnt offering] or [There you are to burn him up on an altar as a offering to me]

ULT **on one of the mountains**
UST on one of the mountains

Alternate translation: [on top of one of the mountains] or [on top of a mountain]

ULT **that I will tell to you**
UST that I will show to you

Alternate translation: [that I will point out to you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
love	love
Isaac	Isaac
land	the region of
burnt offering	as a sacrifice to me

Genesis 22:3

ULT	UST
So Abraham got up early in the morning and saddled his donkey. Then he took two of his young men with him and Isaac his son, and he cut wood for the burnt offering. Then he got up and left for the place that God had told to him.	*So the next morning Abraham got up early and put a pack saddle on his donkey to get it ready for the trip. Then he got his son Isaac and two of his servants, and they chopped some firewood that they would use to burn the sacrifice and loaded it on the donkey. Then they started traveling to the place that God had told Abraham to go to.*

ULT **So Abraham got up early in the morning**
UST So the next morning Abraham got up early

See how you translated **got up early in the morning** in Genesis 20:8. Alternate translation: [So the next morning, Abraham got up early] or [Early the next morning Abraham got up]

ULT **Then he took two of his young men with him and Isaac his son**
UST Then he got his son Isaac and two of his servants

Alternate translation: [He took two of his servants with him and his son Isaac] or [Then he took his son Isaac and two of his servants]

ULT **and he cut wood**
UST and they chopped {some} {fire}wood

The reason Abraham is the only one mentioned in this clause and in the next sentence is that he is in focus. He did not travel alone and he probably did not chop the wood alone. Decide whether or not you need to make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [and he split some firewood with them] or [and they chopped some firewood together]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for the burnt offering**
UST that they would use to burn the sacrifice and loaded it on the donkey

Some languages must translate this noun phrase using a verb. Do what is natural in your language. See what you did in verse 2. Alternate translation: [to use for the burnt offering and loaded it on the donkey] or [that they would use to burn the offering and loaded it on the donkey]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **Then he got up and left for the place**
UST Then they started traveling to the place

In this context, **got up** is used as an idiom that means Abraham started an activity. It does not mean that he was sitting down and literally stood up. Alternate translation: [Then he set out with them for the place] or [Then they started traveling to the mountain]
Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **that God had told to him**
> UST that God had told Abraham to go to

Alternate translation: [that God had told him to go to]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
donkey	donkey
his young men	servants
Isaac	Isaac
burnt offering	that they would use to burn the sacrifice and loaded it on the donkey
God	God

Genesis 22:4

ULT	UST
On the third day Abraham lifted his eyes and he saw the place from a distance.	*Three days later Abraham looked ahead and in the distance he could see the mountain where they were headed.*

ULT **On the third day**
UST Three days later

Alternate translation: [After walking for three days]

ULT **Abraham lifted his eyes**
UST Abraham looked ahead

See how you translated the idiom **lifted his eyes** in Genesis 18:2. It may be necessary to translate it differently here, because of the different context. Alternate translation: [he looked up]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he saw the place from a distance**
UST and in the distance he could see the mountain where they were headed

Consider where it is best in your language to put the location phrase **from a distance** or "in the distance." Alternate translation: [and he could see the place where they were headed in the distance] or [and in the distance he could see the place where they were going]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	days
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 22:5

ULT	UST
Then Abraham said to his young men, "Stay here by yourselves with the donkey, and I and the boy will go over there and bow down. Then we will come back to you."	*Then he told his servants, "You two stay here with the donkey, while my son and I go to the mountain over there and worship God. Then we will come back to you."*

ULT Then Abraham said to his young men
UST Then he told his servants

Be consistent here with how you translated **young men** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham told his servants]

ULT Stay here by yourselves with the donkey
UST You {two} stay here with the donkey

Some languages have special dual pronouns (that refer to only two people) that can be used in verse 5 to refer to Abraham's two servants.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT and I and the boy will go
UST while my son and I go

See how you translated **the boy** in Genesis 21:12, 17–20. We do not know for sure how old Isaac was at this time, but estimates range between 18 and 37 years old. Make sure your translation of **boy** allows for that fact. Alternate translation: [while the young man and I go]

ULT over there
UST to the mountain over there

Alternate translation: [over there to that mountain]

ULT and bow down
UST and worship God

In that culture, people had the custom of bowing down to worship God. Make sure it is clear in your translation why Abraham and Isaac would bow down. Alternate translation: [and bow down to worship God]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT Then we will come back to you
UST Then we will come back to you

Alternate translation: [Then we will return to you here] or [After that, we will come back here to you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Then he told
his young men	servants
donkey	donkey
bow down	worship

Genesis 22:6

ULT	UST
Then Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering and put it on Isaac his son, and he took in his hands the fire pot and the knife. Then the two of them went on together,	*Then Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering off the donkey and loaded it on his son Isaac's shoulder to carry. He himself carried a fire pot with hot coals in it and a knife to kill the sacrifice. Then the two of them walked on together.*

ULT **Then Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering**
UST Then Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering off the donkey

See how you translated **firewood** and **burnt offering** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Then he took the firewood for the burnt offering off the donkey] or [Then he took the firewood that they would use to burn the sacrifice]

ULT **and put {it} on Isaac his son**
UST and loaded {it} on his son Isaac{'s shoulder} to carry

The Hebrew text does not specify exactly where Abraham put the wood on Isaac. Only specify that in a translation if it is necessary in your language. Alternate translation: [and gave it to his son Isaac to carry]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and he took in his hands**
UST He {himself} carried

Alternate translation: [and he himself carried]

ULT **the fire pot**
UST a fire {pot} with hot coals in it

The **fire** can either refer to hot coals (in a pot) or to a flint stone and wood chips that they would use to start the fire on the altar. Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not mean that Abraham was holding fire or hot coals in his bare hands. Alternate translation: [a fire pot with hot embers in it] or [the other things to make a fire]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and the knife**
UST and a knife to kill the sacrifice

Alternate translation: [and a sacrifice knife]

ULT **Then the two of them went on together**
UST Then the two of them walked on together

Some languages have a dual pronoun that could be used here. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham and Isaac walked on together] or [Then they continued walking toward the mountain]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
burnt offering	burnt offering
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 22:7

ULT	UST
and Isaac spoke to Abraham his father and said, "My father?" And he said, "Behold me, my son." Then he said, "Behold the fire and the wood, but where is the lamb for the burnt offering?"	*As they walked, Isaac said to Abraham, "Father?" Abraham replied, "Yes, my son?" Then Isaac asked him, "I see that we have the fire coals and the firewood, but where is the lamb that we will burn as a sacrifice to God?"*

ULT **and Isaac spoke to Abraham his father and said**
UST As they walked, Isaac said to Abraham

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [and as they went Isaac said to his father Abraham]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **And he said**
UST Abraham replied

Consider what is the best way to refer to Abraham at this point in the paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: [Abraham said to him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Behold me, my son**
UST Yes, my son

See how you translated the idiom **Behold me** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [What is it, my son?]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Isaac asked him

Make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits well with what Isaac says next.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold**
UST I see that we have

Alternate translation: [Here is]

ULT **the fire and the wood**
UST the fire {coals} and the {fire}wood

Alternate translation: [the fire pot and the firewood] or [what we need to make a fire to burn the sacrifice]

ULT **for the burnt offering**
UST that {we} will burn as a sacrifice to God

Alternate translation: [for us to use as the burnt offering?] or [for us to burn as our sacrifice to God?] or [that we will burn as our offering to God?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
Abraham	Abraham
lamb	lamb
burnt offering	that {we} will burn as a sacrifice to God

Genesis 22:8

ULT	UST
And Abraham said, "God will see for himself the lamb for the burnt offering, my son." Then the two of them went on together.	*Abraham answered him, "My son, God himself will provide a lamb for us to burn as a sacrifice to him." Then they continued walking together toward the mountain.*

ULT **And Abraham said**
UST Abraham answered him

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **God will see for himself**
UST God himself will provide

God will see for himself is an idiom that means God will provide the lamb. Make sure this meaning is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [God himself will see to it that there is]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **my son**
UST My son

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to put this address first in this quote and say, "My son, God himself will …"
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Then the two of them went on**
UST Then they continued walking … toward the mountain

See how you translated **the two of them** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [So the two of them walked on together] or [So they continued walking together toward the mountain]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
God	God
lamb	lamb
burnt offering	for us to burn as a sacrifice to him

Genesis 22:9

ULT	UST
Then they came to the place that God had told to him, and there Abraham built the altar and arranged the wood. Then he bound Isaac his son and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood.	*When they reached the place that God had told him to go to, Abraham built a stone altar there and put the wood on top of it. Then he tied his son Isaac's arms and legs with rope and laid him on top of the wood on the altar.*

ULT **Then they came to**
UST When they reached

Alternate translation: [After they got to] or [After they arrived at] or [After they reached]

ULT **the place that God had told to him**
UST the place that God had told him to go to

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [the mountain that God had told him to go to]

ULT **and arranged the wood**
UST and put the wood on top of it

Abraham arranged the wood on top of the altar so that it would burn well. Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like he lit the fire yet; he did not do that until verse 13 when he sacrificed the ram. Alternate translation: [and laid the wood on top of it]

ULT **and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood**
UST and laid him on top of the wood on the altar

Consider which order of these phrases is the clearest and most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and put him on top of the wood that was on the altar]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Abraham	Abraham
altar	altar
bound	Then he tied … with rope
Isaac	Isaac's
altar	altar

Genesis 22:10

ULT	UST
Then Abraham reached out his hand and took the knife to kill his son.	*Then he picked up the knife in order to kill his son.*

ULT **Then Abraham reached out his hand and took the knife**
UST Then he picked up the knife

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a noun or a pronoun to refer to Abraham here. See how you translated **knife** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [Then he took the knife in his hand]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to kill his son**
UST in order to kill his son

In the process of sacrificing, the first step was to kill the sacrifice and then burn up the body on the altar. If necessary, you could make that information explicit in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [in order to kill his son before sacrificing his body on the altar]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Then he picked up
to kill	in order to kill

Genesis 22:11

ULT	UST
But an angel of Yahweh called to him from heaven and said, “Abraham! Abraham!” And he said, “Behold me.”	*But one of Yahweh’s angels called to him from heaven, “Abraham! Abraham!” And he replied, “Yes, Lord?”*

ULT But an angel of Yahweh called
UST But one of Yahweh’s angels called

Make sure in your translation that it does not sound like Abraham killed Isaac. See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 21:17. Alternate translation: [But before Abraham could use the knife, an angel from Yahweh called]

ULT to him from heaven and said, “Abraham! Abraham
UST to him from heaven, “Abraham! Abraham

The angel repeats Abraham’s name to communicate urgency and that he wants him to stop and listen. Make sure your translation does not sound like the angel was angry or criticizing Abraham.

ULT And he said
UST And he replied

Alternate translation: [Abraham replied to the angel]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Behold me
UST Yes, Lord

See how you translated **Behold me** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [What is it, Master?] or [Yes, Master?]
Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angels
Yahweh	Yahweh
called	called
heaven	heaven
Abraham	Abraham
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 22:12

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Do not reach out your hand against the boy! And do not do anything to him, because now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your son, your only son, from me."	*Then the angel told him, "Do not harm your son or do anything else to him. Now I know that you revere me, since you obeyed me and did not refuse to sacrifice your son to me, even though he is your only son."*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then the angel told him

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the angel is speaking here, not Abraham. Alternate translation: [Then the angel said]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Do not reach out your hand against**
UST Do not harm

Consider whether your language has an idiom that has the same meaning as the Hebrew idiom here. Alternate translation: [Do not lay your hands on] or [Do not kill]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the boy**
UST your son

See how you translated this in verse 5. Alternate translation: [the young man]

ULT **And {do} not do anything to him**
UST or do anything {else} to him

The angel repeats the previous command (using different words) in order to emphasize that Abraham should not hurt Isaac. Most languages can do something similar. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Do not do anything to harm him] or [You must not do anything to harm him] or [You must not harm him in any way]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **because now I know**
UST Now I know

Yahweh is the one talking here, represented by the angel who speaks on his behalf, or perhaps God is appearing to Abraham as an angel. Alternate translation: [Now I see] or [You have shown me]

ULT **since you have not withheld your son, your only {son}, from me**
UST since you {obeyed me and} did not refuse to sacrifice your son to me, {even though he is} your only son

Alternate translation: [because you obeyed me and did not hold back your son from me, yes your only son] or [because you obeyed me and did not refuse to sacrifice your son to me, even though he is your only son]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
fear	you revere me
God	you revere me

Genesis 22:13

ULT	UST
Then Abraham lifted his eyes and looked, and behold, a ram was behind him, caught in the thicket by its horns. So Abraham went and took the ram, and sacrificed it as a burnt offering instead of his son.	*Then Abraham looked around and there behind him he saw a ram that had its horns stuck in a bush. So he released Isaac, went over to the ram and untangled it. Then he killed it and burned it on the altar as a sacrifice to God in place of his son.*

ULT **Then Abraham lifted his eyes and looked**
UST Then Abraham looked around

See how you translated **lifted his eyes and looked** in Genesis 18:2.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and behold, a ram {was} behind him**
UST and there behind {him} he saw a ram

A ram is an adult male sheep or goat. See how you translated this term in Genesis 15:9.
Alternate translation: [and suddenly he saw a ram behind him]

ULT **caught in the thicket by its horns**
UST that had its horns stuck in a bush

Alternate translation: [that had caught its horns in the thicket] or [that had its horns caught in a bush]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **So Abraham went and took the ram**
UST So he {released Isaac,} went {over to the ram} and untangled it

For some languages it may be necessary to explicitly state that Abraham untied Isaac and took him off the altar before he sacrificed the ram. Alternate translation: [So after releasing Isaac, he took the ram from the thicket] or [So he untied Isaac, went over to the ram and untangled it]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and sacrificed it as a burnt offering**
UST Then he killed it and burned it {on the altar} as a sacrifice to God

Animals that were sacrificed to God as burnt offerings were killed first before they were burned on an altar. Make sure your translation does not sound like the ram was burned alive. If that is not clear, you could make some of the above implied information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then he killed the ram and burned it on the altar as a offering to God]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **instead of his son**
UST in place of his son

Alternate translation: [as a substitute for his son]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
ram	ram
horns	horns
Abraham	So he {released Isaac,} went over to the ram
ram	and untangled it
burnt offering	as a sacrifice to God

Genesis 22:14

ULT	UST
So Abraham called the name of that place Yahweh-Yireh, as it is said to this day, "On the mountain of Yahweh it will be seen."	*That is why Abraham named that place Yahweh-Yireh, which means "Yahweh will provide". Even today people still say, "On Yahweh's mountain he will provide what you need."*

ULT **So Abraham called the name of that place**
UST That is why Abraham named that place

Make sure it is clear that what Yahweh did in verse 13 is the reason that Abraham gave that place the name **Yahweh-Yireh** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [That is why Abraham called that place] or [Because God provided the ram, Abraham called that place]

ULT **Yahweh-Yireh**
UST Yahweh-Yireh, which means "Yahweh will provide

If you include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote, be consistent with how you translate the verb "see/provide" in verse 8 (and later in verse 14), which the name is based on.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **as it is said {to} this day**
UST Even today people {still} say

This refers to the time period when Moses was writing this book. If that is not clear, you could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Even now people still say]

ULT **it will be seen**
UST he will provide what you need

See how you translated this idiom in verse 8. Alternate translation: [it will be provided by him] or [he will see to it that we have what we need] or [he will provide what we need]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
called	That is why Abraham named
Yahweh	Yahweh
day	Even today people {still} say
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 22:15

ULT	UST
Then the angel of Yahweh called to Abraham a second time from heaven	*Then Yahweh's angel called to Abraham from heaven again.*

ULT **Then the angel of Yahweh called to Abraham a second {time} from heaven**
UST Then Yahweh's angel called to Abraham from heaven again

See how you translated "called … from heaven" in verse 11, and how you translated **angel** in verses 11–12.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
Yahweh	Yahweh
called	called
Abraham	Abraham
heaven	heaven

Genesis 22:16

ULT	UST
and said, "I swear by myself, a declaration of Yahweh, that it is because you have done this thing and have not withheld your son, your only son,	*He said, "This is what Yahweh declares to you: 'With myself as my own witness, I vow to you that since you have obeyed me and did not hold back your son from me, yes, your only son,*

ULT **I swear by myself, a declaration of Yahweh**
UST This is what Yahweh declares {to you}: 'With myself {as my own witness}, I vow to you

See how you translated **swear** in Genesis 21:23–24.

ULT **that it is because you have done this thing**
UST that since you have obeyed me

Alternate translation: [that since you have done what I said] or [that since you obeyed me]

ULT **and have not withheld your son**
UST and did not hold back your son from me

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 12. Alternate translation: [and did not refuse to sacrifice your son to me] or [were willing to give your son to me]

ULT **your only son**
UST yes, your only son

See how you translated this in verse 12. Alternate translation: [even though he is your only son]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
swear	vow
a declaration of	declares
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 22:17

ULT	UST
that I will greatly bless you, and I will greatly multiply your offspring as the stars of the heavens and as the sand that is on the shore of the sea, and your offspring will possess the gates of their enemies.	*I will abundantly bless you. In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be as numerous as the stars in the sky and as numerous as the grains of sand on the seashore. They will defeat their enemies and rule over them.*

ULT **that I will greatly bless you**
UST I will abundantly bless you

Alternate translation: [I will surely bless you] or [I will surely cause you to prosper greatly]

ULT **and I will greatly multiply your offspring**
UST In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be

Alternate translation: [I will greatly increase the number of your descendants so that they will be] or [In fact, I will give you so many offspring that they will be]

ULT **as the stars of the heavens**
UST as numerous as the stars in the sky

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is comparing the number of stars and grains of sand to the number of descendants Abraham will have. There will be so many that no one can count them all (as in Genesis 13:16 and 15:6). Alternate translation: [as many as the stars in the sky]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and as the sand that {is} on the shore of the sea**
UST and {as numerous} as the {grains of} sand on the seashore

Alternate translation: [and as many as the grains of sand on the seashore]

ULT **and your offspring will possess the gate{s} of their enemies**
UST They will defeat their enemies and rule over them

Cities often had high stone walls surrounding them to protect the people inside. The gates in the walls were the only way to go in or out of a city. The idiom “possess the gates of … enemies” refers to taking control of the cities and conquering the people living there. Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [and they will conquer the cities of all their enemies] or [They will conquer all their enemies and rule over them] or [Your offspring will …]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bless	bless
multiply	In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be
your offspring	In fact, I will give you so many descendants that they will be
heavens	sky
your offspring	They will defeat their enemies and rule over them
possess	They will defeat their enemies and rule over them
gate	They will defeat their enemies and rule over them
enemies	enemies

Genesis 22:18

ULT	UST
And in your offspring all the nations of the earth will be blessed, because you listened to my voice."	*Through your descendants I will bless all the people groups on the earth. I will do that because you obeyed me.'"*

ULT **in your offspring**
UST Through your descendants

See how you translated **offspring** in verse 17. Alternate translation: [In your offspring] or [Because of your offspring] or [By means of your offspring]

ULT **because you listened to my voice**
UST I will do that because you obeyed me

Make sure your translation of **my voice** refers to what God commanded Abraham. Alternate translation: [because you heeded my command]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in your offspring	Through your descendants
nations	the people groups on
earth	earth
blessed	bless

Genesis 22:19

ULT	UST
Then Abraham returned to his young men, and they got up and went together to Beersheba. And Abraham stayed at Beersheba.	*After that, Abraham returned with Isaac to his two servants. Then together they all traveled back home to the city of Beersheba, and Abraham and his family stayed there.*

ULT **Then Abraham returned**
UST After that, Abraham returned with Isaac

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham returned alone (without Isaac). Alternate translation: [Afterwards Abraham and Isaac went back]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to his young men**
UST to his {two} servants

Be consistent here with how you translated **young men** in verses 3 and 5. Alternate translation: [to the two servants]

ULT **and they got up and went together to Beersheba**
UST Then together they {all} traveled {back} {home} to {the city of} Beersheba

At that time, Abraham and his family were living in Beersheba (Genesis 21:31–34). So in your translation, it should not sound like Beersheba was a new destination; they were returning home. Alternate translation: [Then they returned home together to the city of Beersheba]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And Abraham stayed at Beersheba**
UST and Abraham {and his family} stayed there

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham was living alone in Beersheba apart from his family. Alternate translation: [and Abraham continued to live there with his family] or [where Abraham and his family continued to live]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
his young men	servants
Beersheba	Beersheba
Beersheba	Beersheba
Abraham	Abraham
Beersheba	there
Beersheba	there

Genesis 22:20

ULT	UST
Then it happened after those things that it was told to Abraham, saying, "Behold, Milcah, she too, has born sons for Nahor your brother:	*Sometime later someone told Abraham, "I have news for you: Your brother Nahor and his wife Milcah also have some sons,*

ULT **Then it happened after those things**
UST Sometime later

This phrase introduces a new topic. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Sometime after that]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **that it was told to Abraham, saying**
UST someone told Abraham

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Behold**
UST I have news for you

Alternate translation: [Listen] or [I have some news for you:]

ULT **Milcah, she too, has born sons for Nahor your brother**
UST Your brother Nahor and {his wife} Milcah also have {some} sons

For some languages it may be better to use an indirect quote in this verse and say, "Sometime later Abraham found out that his brother Nahor and Nahor's wife Milcah had some sons," Alternate translation: [Milcah the wife of your brother Nahor has born some sons for him] or [your brother Nahor and his wife Milcah also have some sons]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
that it was told	someone told Abraham
Abraham	Abraham
has born	Your brother Nahor and {his wife} Milcah also have {some} sons
Nahor	Nahor

Genesis 22:21

ULT	UST
Uz his firstborn and Buz his brother and Kemuel, the father of Aram,	*The oldest son is Uz, the second is Buz, and the third is Kemuel, who is the father of Aram.*

ULT **Uz his firstborn and Buz his brother and Kemuel**

UST The oldest son {is} Uz, {the second is} Buz, and {the third is} Kemuel

Alternate translation: [including their oldest son Uz, then Buz and Kemuel] or [The first one is Uz, the second is Buz, and the third is Kemuel]

ULT **the father of Aram**

UST who is the father of Aram

Alternate translation: [who fathered Aram] or [whose son is Aram]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstborn	The oldest son
Aram	Aram

Genesis 22:22

ULT	UST
and Kesed and Hazo and Pildash and Jidlaph and Bethuel.”	*They also have sons named Kesed, Hazo, Pildash, Jidlaph, and Bethuel.”*

ULT **and**

UST They also have sons named

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the people listed in verse 22 were sons of Nahor and Milcah, not sons of Kemuel (verse 21).

ULT **Kesed and Hazo and Pildash and Jidlaph and Bethuel**

UST Kesed, Hazo, Pildash, Jidlaph, and Bethuel

Consider whether it is best in your language to use a conjunction between each name in this list (like Hebrew does), or only before the last name in the list. See what you did for a similar list of names in Genesis 10:26–29.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bethuel	Bethuel

Genesis 22:23

ULT	UST
And Bethuel fathered Rebekah. Those are the eight sons Milcah bore for Nahor, the brother of Abraham.	*Bethuel had a daughter named Rebekah. Those are the eight sons that Milcah had for Abraham's brother Nahor.*

ULT And Bethuel fathered Rebekah

UST Bethuel had {a daughter named} Rebekah

Some translations put this sentence in parentheses to show that it is a separate comment by the author and not part of the previous quote. Also, see how you translated **fathered** in Genesis 11:27. Alternate translation: [Bethuel was the father of Rebekah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bethuel	Bethuel
Rebekah	Rebekah
Nahor	Nahor
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 22:24

ULT	UST
And his concubine, and her name was Reumah, and she also bore Tebah and Gaham and Tahash and Maacah.	*Besides that, Nahor and his servant-wife Reumah also had some sons, including Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maacah.*

ULT **And his concubine, and her name {was} Reumah, and she also bore**
UST Besides that, Nahor and his servant-wife Reumah also had some sons

Alternate translation: [In addition to that, Nahor and his concubine Reumah also had some sons, including]

ULT **Tebah and Gaham and Tahash and Maacah**
UST including Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maacah

See how you connected the list of names in verse 22.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
concubine	Besides that, Nahor and his servant-wife Reumah also had some sons
bore	Besides that, Nahor and his servant-wife Reumah also had some sons
Maacah	Maacah

Genesis 23

Genesis 23:1

ULT	UST
Now the life of Sarah was 127 years; the years of the life of Sarah.	*Sarah lived to be 127 years old. That is how old she was*

ULT **Now the life of Sarah was 127 years**
UST Sarah lived to be 127 years old

Alternate translation: [Sarah lived 127 years]

ULT **the years of the life of Sarah**
UST That is how old she was

Consider whether it is better in your language to combine the last part of verse 1 with the beginning of verse 2 and say, “That is how old she was when she died in Kiriath Arba …”
Alternate translation: [Yes, that is how long she lived] or [That is how old she lived to be]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarah	Sarah
years	years
years	years
years	years
years	That is how old she was
Sarah	That is how old she was

Genesis 23:2

ULT	UST
Then Sarah died in Kiriath Arba, which is Hebron, in the land of Canaan. And Abraham went to mourn for Sarah and to weep for her.	*when she died in the city of Kiriath Arba, which is now called Hebron, in the region of Canaan. Abraham went to her and cried and mourned for her.*

ULT Then Sarah died
UST when she died

Alternate translation: [Then she died] or [before she died]

ULT in Kiriath Arba
UST in {the city of} Kiriath Arba

You can spell this name as two words, as in the Hebrew text, or combine them into one word with or without a hyphen. Be consistent with how you spell this name throughout the Bible. Alternate translation: [in the city of Kiriath-arba]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT which {is} Hebron
UST which is {now called} Hebron

The city of Kiriath Arba was later named Hebron (Joshua 14:15). Alternate translation: [which is also named Hebron] or [also known as Hebron] or [that is, Hebron]

ULT in the land of Canaan
UST in the region of Canaan

For some languages it is more natural to put a general location before a specific location and say, “in the land of Canaan, in the city of Kiriath Arba, which is Hebron.” Alternate translation: [in the land called Canaan]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT And Abraham went
UST Abraham went to her

Alternate translation: [Then Abraham came to her] or [Abraham came to her side]

ULT to mourn for Sarah and to weep for her
UST and cried and mourned for her

For some languages it is necessary to translate this sentence using a verb form that expresses completion or past tense so that it is clear that Abraham actually did this. Alternate translation: [to mourn and cry for her]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarah	when she died
Hebron	Hebron
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
Abraham	Abraham
mourn	and cried
Sarah	for her
and to weep for her	and mourned

Genesis 23:3

ULT	UST
Then Abraham got up from beside his dead one, and he spoke to the sons of Heth, saying,	*Later he stood up from mourning beside her and went to the leaders of the Hittites at the city gates and said to them,*

ULT **Then Abraham got up from beside**
UST Later he stood up from {mourning} beside

Alternate translation: [Later he got up from mourning beside] or [After a while, Abraham left]

ULT **his dead one**
UST her

Alternate translation: [her body]

ULT **and he spoke to the sons of Heth, saying**
UST and {went} to {the leaders of} the Hittites {at the city gates} and said to them

The phrase **sons of Heth** refers to the descendants of Canaan's son Heth (Genesis 10:15; 15:20) who are also known as the Hittites. Consider what is the best way to refer to them here in your language. Also, for some languages it is necessary to make it explicit here in verse 3 that Abraham went to the city gates to meet with the Hittites, rather than wait until verse 10 for that information. Alternate translation: [and he went to the elders of the Hittites at the city gates and said to them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	אַבְרָהָם
Heth	Hittites

Genesis 23:4

ULT	UST
“I am a foreigner and a sojourner among you. Give to me property for a burial place among you, so that I can bury my dead from before me.”	*“As you know, I am a foreigner who is living among you so I do not own any property here. Please sell me some of your land so I have a place to bury the body of my wife who has died.”*

ULT **I am**
UST As you know, I am

The leaders of the city already knew that Abraham was a foreigner, so make sure your translation of this sentence does not sound like he is telling them something that they did not know. Alternate translation: [I am coming to you as] or [Since I am]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **a foreigner and a sojourner**
UST a foreigner who is living … so I do not own any property here

See how you translated **foreigner** in Genesis 15:13. Alternate translation: [a outsider who has settled] or [a outsider who is living]

ULT **among you**
UST among you

It is implied by Abraham and understood by the Hittites that Abraham’s status as a foreigner means he owns no property. Consider whether or not to make this implied information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [among you and I have no land of my own] or [in your land and I do not own any property here]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Give to me**
UST Please sell me

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase sounds polite, not rude or demanding. Alternate translation: [Please give me] or [Please let me buy]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **property for a burial place among you**
UST some of your land

Alternate translation: [some land among you] or [some of your property]

ULT **so that I can bury my dead from before me**
UST so I have a place to bury {the body of} my wife who has died

Translate this clause in a way that shows respect for the person who has died. Alternate translation: [so I have a place to take my dead wife and bury her] or [where I can bury the body of my wife who has died] or [so that I can give my deceased wife a proper burial]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
burial place	some of your land
bury	bury

Genesis 23:5

ULT	UST
Then the sons of Heth replied to Abraham, saying to him,	*The leaders of the Hittites responded to Abraham,*

ULT **Then the sons of Heth replied to Abraham, saying to him**
UST The leaders of the Hittites responded to Abraham

See how you translated **the sons of Heth** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [The elders of the Hittites replied to him] or [When the leaders of the Hittites heard that, they responded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Heth	Hittites
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 23:6

ULT	UST
“Listen to us, my lord. You are a mighty prince among us. Bury your dead in the choicest of our burial places. Each of us will not withhold from you his burial place to bury your dead.”	*“Sir, please listen to what we propose: You are a powerful man living among us. So you may bury the body of your wife who has died in any one of our best burial sites. All of us are willing for you to use any of our burial sites to bury her.”*

ULT **Listen to us, my lord**
UST Sir, {please} listen to what we propose

Abraham was not their actual lord or master. Rather, the Hittites are addressing him in a respectful manner. Alternate translation: [Please listen to our proposal, my lord]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **You {are} a mighty prince**
UST You are a powerful man

You {are} a mighty prince could mean: (1) “You are a powerful leader” Alternate translation: [You are an important man]; or (2) “You are a man of God.” The interpretation that you do not follow in your translation could be put in a footnote.

ULT **among us**
UST living among us

Alternate translation: [who lives among our people]

ULT **Bury**
UST So {you may} bury

Make sure that the reply of the Hittites sounds polite here in your translation. Alternate translation: [So you may put]

ULT **your dead**
UST the body of your wife who has died

Alternate translation: [your dead wife]

ULT **our burial places**
UST in {any} one of our best burial sites

For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, “So please choose any one of our best burial sites and bury/put your dead/deceased wife there.” Alternate translation: [places to bury people who have died] or [tombs]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Each of us will not withhold from you his burial place to bury**
UST All of us are willing for you to use {any of} our burial sites to bury

The sons of Heth are using a figure of speech here that emphasizes a positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with a mild expression that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could emphasize the positive meaning in a strong way. Alternate translation: [Each of us is happy to give you some of his land where you can bury]
Support Reference: Litotes

ULT **your dead**
UST the body of your wife who has died

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Sarah's dead body here since it was just mentioned in the previous sentence. Alternate translation: [your dead wife]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	Sir
mighty	a powerful man
a … prince	a powerful man
Bury	bury
burial places	in {any} one of our best burial sites
burial place	any of our burial sites
bury	bury

Genesis 23:7

ULT	UST
Then Abraham got up and bowed to the people of the land, to the sons of Heth,	*Abraham stood up and bowed in respect in front of the leaders of the Hittites, who owned the land in the area.*

ULT Then Abraham got up
UST Abraham stood up

The verb **got up** reflects the fact that Abraham and the leaders/elders of the Hittites were all sitting as they talked to each other. Alternate translation: [So Abraham got up]

ULT and bowed
UST and bowed in respect

We do not know how far Abraham bowed down. He may have bowed his upper body from a standing position, or he may have knelt down and touched his forehead to the ground with his arms outstretched. Alternate translation: [and bowed low to the ground in respect] or [and kneeled and touched his forehead to the ground in respect]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT to the people of the land, to the sons of Heth
UST in front of {the leaders of} the Hittites, who owned the land in the area

The phrase **people of the land** is a term that refers to the leaders of that region who owned land in the area and were the ones to decide whether a foreigner could acquire land. Alternate translation: [in front of the elders of the Hittites, who owned the land in the area] or [before the elders over the Hittites]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
bowed	bowed
land	land
Heth	Hittites

Genesis 23:8

ULT	UST
and he said to them, saying, "If it is your will to bury my dead from before me, listen to me and intercede for me with Ephron, the son of Zohar,	*Then he said to them, "If you are willing for me to bury my deceased wife here, please help me by asking Ephron the son of Zohar*

ULT **and he said to them, saying**
UST Then he said to them

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to have two verbs or just one verb in this quote margin. Alternate translation: [and said to them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **to bury my dead from before me**
UST for me to bury my deceased {wife} here

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: [for me to bury my dead wife here] or [to allow me to bury the body of my wife who has died] or [to let me give my deceased wife a proper burial here]

ULT **listen to me and intercede for me with Ephron, the son of Zohar**
UST please help me by asking Ephron the son of Zohar

Alternate translation: [please appeal to Ephron the son of Zohar on my behalf]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bury	bury

Genesis 23:9

ULT	UST
so that he will give to me the cave of Machpelah, which belongs to him, which is at the end of his field. For full price let him give it to me among you as property for a burial place."	*to sell me his cave that is at the edge of his field in the Machpelah area. Ask him to sell it to me for its full price, with all of you here to witness the sale. That way I will have a place where I can bury my wife who has died."*

ULT **so that he will give to me**
UST to sell me

Alternate translation: [to give to me]

ULT **the cave of Machpelah, which {belongs} to him, which {is} at the end of his field**
UST his cave that is at the edge of his field in the Machpelah area

Machpelah is the name of the area or neighborhood where Ephron's cave and field were located (verse 17). Alternate translation: [his cave that is at the end of his field in the Machpelah area]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **For full price let him give it to me**
UST Ask him to sell it to me for its full price

Alternate translation: [Ask him to give it to me for its full value] or [Ask him to sell it to me and I will pay him the full amount that it is worth]

ULT **among you**
UST with {all of} you {here} to witness the sale

Alternate translation: [in front of you all] or [with all of you present to witness the sale]

ULT **as property for a burial place**
UST That way I will have a place where I can bury my wife who has died

Alternate translation: [so that I will have land to bury the body of my deceased wife] or [That way I will have a place here where I can bury the body of my wife who has died]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
For … price	for its full price
burial place	where I can bury my wife who has died

Genesis 23:10

ULT	UST
Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth, so Ephron the Hittite responded to Abraham in the ears of the sons of Heth, for everyone who had come to the gate of his city, saying,	*Now Ephron the Hittite was sitting there at the meeting among the other Hittite leaders, so he replied to Abraham as the other leaders listened, including everyone who had gathered there at the city gate. He said,*

ULT **Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth**
UST Now Ephron the Hittite was sitting {there at the meeting} among the {other} Hittite leaders

Alternate translation: [Now Ephron the Hittite was sitting there at the meeting among the other Hittite elders] or [Ephron was one of the Hittite elders who had gathered there at the meeting]

ULT **so Ephron the Hittite responded to Abraham**
UST so he replied to Abraham

Alternate translation: [and he replied to Abraham]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **in the ears of the sons of Heth**
UST as the {other} leaders listened

Alternate translation: [in the hearing of the elders of the Hittites] or [as the other elders listened]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **for everyone who had come {to} the gate of his city**
UST including everyone who had gathered {there} at the city gate

The pronoun **his** refers back to **everyone** who had gathered at the city gate, not just one person. Also, in that culture, the leaders of a city would hold their meetings at the city gates, where they would make decisions on important matters such as the one Abraham brought before them. You could include that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [including everyone who had gathered there at their city gate]

ULT **saying**
UST He said

Alternate translation: [This is what he said:]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Heth	Hittite
Hittite	הַחִתִּי
Abraham	Abraham
Heth	as the {other} leaders listened
gate	gate

Genesis 23:11

ULT	UST
"No, my lord. Listen to me: I give to you the field, and I give to you the cave that is in it. I give it to you before the eyes of the sons of my people. Bury your dead."	*"That's not necessary, sir. Please accept this offer: I hereby give you the entire field, including the cave that is in it. I am giving it to you now as the leaders of my people watch. You may bury your deceased wife there."*

ULT **No, my lord**
UST That's not necessary, sir

Make sure your translation of this phase sounds polite. In some cultures it is rude to say **No** too directly. Alternate translation: [That is not necessary, sir] or [Sir, there is no need for that]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **Listen to me**
UST Please accept this offer

Alternate translation: [Please listen to my proposal:] or [Please accept this proposal:] or [Please listen to what I am proposing:]

ULT **I give to you the field**
UST I {hereby} give you the {entire} field

Ephron is making a formal proposal or offer. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [I hereby offer you the entire field]

ULT **and I give to you the cave that {is} in it**
UST including the cave that {is} in it

Alternate translation: [as well as the cave that is in it]

ULT **before the eyes of the sons of my people**
UST as the leaders of my people watch

Alternate translation: [in the sight of the elders of my people] or [as the elders of my people listen as witnesses] or [and all the elders of my people here are witnesses of this]

ULT **Bury your dead**
UST You may bury your deceased {wife} there

Alternate translation: [You can bury your dead wife there] or [Please go ahead and bury your dead wife on that land]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	sir
Bury	bury

Genesis 23:12

ULT	UST
Then Abraham bowed before the people of the land,	*Then Abraham bowed again before the leaders who owned the land in the area.*

ULT Then Abraham bowed
UST Then Abraham bowed again

See how you translated **bowed** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [Once again, Abraham bowed]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT the people of the land
UST the leaders who owned the land in the area

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7. You could translate this in a slightly different way here since these people have been referred to repeatedly before this. Alternate translation: [in front of the people who owned the land in the area] or [to the elders of the Hittites]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
bowed	bowed
land	land

Genesis 23:13

ULT	UST
and he spoke to Ephron in the ears of the people of the land, saying, "But if you would, please listen to me. I will give the price of the field. Take it from me, and I will bury my dead there."	*As they listened, he said to Ephron, "Rather than that, since you are willing to let me have the field, please accept my offer. I want to pay you the full price for the field. Please let me buy it from you, so that it will be mine and I can bury my wife there who has died."*

ULT **and he spoke to Ephron in the ears of the people of the land, saying**
UST As they listened, he said to Ephron

See how you translated **in the ears of** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [and he said to Ephron while the rest of the elders listened] or [As they all listened, he said to Ephron]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **But**
UST Rather than that

Alternate translation: [Instead of doing that]

ULT **if you would, please**
UST since you are willing to let me have the field

In verses 9–15, Abraham and Ephron are bargaining indirectly with each other according to the customs of that culture and time. Keep that in mind as you translate their conversation.
Alternate translation: [if you are willing]

ULT **listen to me**
UST please accept my offer

Alternate translation: [please accept my proposal] or [please listen to what I am offering]

ULT **I will give the price of the field**
UST I want to pay {you} the {full} price for the field

Alternate translation: [I will give you the full price of what the field is worth] or [I want to give you the full price of the field]

ULT **Take it from me**
UST Please let me buy it from you

Alternate translation: [Please take my money]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **and I will bury my dead there**
UST so that {it will be mine and} I can bury {my wife} there who has died

Alternate translation: [so that I can bury the body of my dead wife there] or [so that the field will be mine and I can bury my wife there who has died] or [then I will have a place to bury the body of my deceased wife]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	As they listened
the price of	the {full} price for
bury	bury

Genesis 23:14

ULT	UST
Then Ephron answered Abraham, saying to him,	*Ephron responded to Abraham,*

ULT **Then Ephron answered Abraham, saying to him**
UST Ephron responded to Abraham

Alternate translation: [Then Ephron said to Abraham]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 23:15

ULT	UST
“My lord, listen to me. Land worth 400 shekels of silver, between me and you, what is that? So bury your dead.”	*“Sir, please listen to me. The land is worth about five kilos of silver. However since you and I are friends, there is no need for that. Go ahead and bury your deceased wife there.”*

ULT **My lord**
UST Sir

See how you translated this respectful form of address in verses 6 and 11.
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **listen to me**
UST please listen to me

See how you translated this clause in verse 13. Make sure Ephron sounds polite here in your translation.
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **Land {worth} 400 shekels of silver**
UST The land {is worth} about five kilos of silver

People paid each other with **shekels of silver** or gold, which was a weight measurement. Four hundred shekels of silver was about 10 pounds (4.5 kilos) of silver. Many translation teams like to keep the same numbers that are in the Hebrew text in their translation, and then in a footnote give the equivalent amount in their own currency. Other teams put the equivalent amount in the text and put the literal phrase in a footnote. See how you translated **shekels of silver** in Genesis 20:16. Alternate translation: [If I were selling that land, I would charge 400 shekels of silver]
Support Reference: Biblical Money

ULT **between me and you**
UST However since you and I are friends

Alternate translation: [However, since you and I are friends] or [But as far as you and I are concerned]

ULT **what {is} that**
UST there is no need for that

Alternate translation: [what significance is that?] or [that is not important.] or [I would not ask you to pay that.]

ULT **So bury your dead**
UST Go ahead and bury your deceased {wife} there

Consider again how you translated “bury … dead” in verses 4, 6, 8, 11, 13, and 15. Alternate translation: [So go ahead and bury your dead wife there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	Sir
Land	land
silver	silver
bury	bury

Genesis 23:16

ULT	UST
So Abraham listened to Ephron, and Abraham weighed out to Ephron the price that he had mentioned in the ears of the sons of Heth, 400 shekels of silver, the currency among the merchants.	*Abraham agreed with Ephron's price, and he paid Ephron the amount of silver that he had suggested while the rest of the Hittites listened. Abraham weighed the 400 shekels of silver using the standard weights that sellers used at that time.*

ULT **So Abraham listened to Ephron**
UST Abraham agreed with Ephron's price

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham did not just hear what Ephron said, but also acted on it.

ULT **and Abraham weighed out to Ephron**
UST and he paid Ephron

Alternate translation: [so he paid him]

ULT **the price that he had mentioned**
UST the {amount of} silver that he had suggested

Alternate translation: [the amount of silver that he had stated]

ULT **in the ears of the sons of Heth**
UST while {the rest of} the Hittites listened

See how you translated this phrase in verse 10. You might need to translate it differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [in the hearing of the other Hittite elders] or [as the rest of the elders of the Hittites watched and listened]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **400 shekels of silver**
UST Abraham weighed the 400 shekels of silver

Alternate translation: [which was 400 shekels of silver]

ULT **the currency among the merchants**
UST using the standard weights that sellers used at that time

Alternate translation: [using the same kind of weights that merchants used to accurately weigh silver] or [using the standard shekel that traders used at that time]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Abraham	אַבְרָהָם
the price	silver
Heth	Hittites
silver	silver

Genesis 23:17

ULT	UST
So the field of Ephron that was in Machpelah which was before Mamre, the field and the cave that was in it, and every tree that was in the field, that was within all of its surrounding borders, was deeded	*So Ephron sold his field to Abraham, including the cave that was in the field, as well as all the trees that were inside its boundaries. The field was in the Machpelah area near the city of Mamre. Ephron sold that field*

ULT **So the field of Ephron … was deeded**
UST So Ephron sold his field to Abraham

Verses 17–18 are a summary of the transaction between Ephron and Abraham. Make sure your translation of these verses does not sound like this was a second time that the field was sold. Alternate translation: [That is how the field that belonged to Ephron]

ULT **that {was} in Machpelah**
UST was in the Machpelah area

Alternate translation: [that was in the Machpelah area]

ULT **which {was} before Mamre**
UST near {the city of} Mamre. Ephron sold that field

Mamre was another name for the city of Hebron (verse 19). The name probably came from Abraham's friend and ally who lived there (Genesis 13:18; 14:13). Alternate translation: [east of the city of Mamre]

ULT **the field and the cave that {was} in it**
UST including the cave that {was} in the field … The field

Alternate translation: [including both the field and the cave that was in it]

ULT **in the field, that {was} within all of its surrounding borders**
UST inside its boundaries

Alternate translation: [in the field, whatever was inside its borders] or [anywhere inside the borders of the field]

ULT **So … was deeded**
UST So … sold … to Abraham

For some languages it may be better to break up this long sentence, change the order of the phrases in this verse, and say, "So Ephron sold his field to Abraham, including the cave that was in the field, as well as all the trees that were inside its boundaries. The field was in the Machpelah area near the city of Mamre. Ephron sold the/that field …" Alternate translation: [was legally sold by Ephron] or [Ephron sold all of that]

Support Reference: Information Structure

Genesis 23:18

ULT	UST
to Abraham as his possession before the eyes of the sons of Heth, before everyone who had come to the gate of his city.	*to Abraham, and it became his property while the Hittites watched, including everyone who had gathered at the city gate.*

ULT to Abraham as his possession
UST to Abraham, and it became his property

Alternate translation: [to Abraham as his property] or [to Abraham, and it became his possession]

ULT before the eyes of the sons of Heth
UST while the Hittites watched

See how you translated the idiom **before the eyes of** in verse 11. Alternate translation: [in the sight of the elders of the Hittites] or [while the leaders of the Hittites watched as witnesses]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT before everyone who had come to the gate of his city
UST including everyone who had gathered at the city gate

For some languages it may be more natural to change the order of some of the clauses in this verse and say, "… to Abraham in front of the leaders of the Hittites who had gathered at the city gates, so that they all witnessed that the land was now Abraham's property." Also, see how you translated a similar clause in verse 10. Alternate translation: [including everyone who had gathered at their city gate] or [That included everyone who had met together at their city gates]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Heth	Hittites
gate	gate

Genesis 23:19

ULT	UST
Then after that, Abraham buried Sarah his wife in the cave of the field of Machpelah before Mamre, which is Hebron, in the land of Canaan.	*After that, Abraham put the body of his wife Sarah in the cave in that field in the Machpelah area east of the city of Mamre, that is, Hebron, in the region of Canaan.*

ULT **Then after that**
UST After that

Alternate translation: [After he bought the field]

ULT **Abraham buried Sarah his wife**
UST Abraham put {the body of} his wife Sarah

Alternate translation: [he placed the body of his wife Sarah]

ULT **in the cave of the field of Machpelah**
UST in the cave in that field in the Machpelah area

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Machpelah** in verses 9 and 17. Alternate translation: [in the cave in the field in the Machpelah area]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **before Mamre**
UST east of {the city of} Mamre

See how you translated this phrase in verse 17. Also, be consistent here with how you spelled this name in verse 17 and in Genesis 14:13, 24; 18:1. Alternate translation: [near the city of Mamre]

ULT **which {is} Hebron**
UST that is, Hebron

Alternate translation: [which is also called Hebron] or [also known as Hebron]

ULT **in the land of Canaan**
UST in the region of Canaan

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [in the land called Canaan]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
buried	put
Sarah	Sarah
Hebron	Hebron
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 23:20

ULT	UST
So the field and the cave that was in it were deeded to Abraham as property for a burial place from the sons of Heth.	*So that is how that field, including the cave that was in the field, was officially sold to Abraham by the Hittites, so that he had a place where he could bury his wife who had died.*

ULT **So the field and the cave that {was} in it were deeded to Abraham**
UST So {that is how} that field, including the cave that {was} in the field, was {officially} sold to Abraham

Verse 20 is a concluding summary of chapter 23 and repeats parts of verses 17–18. Make sure that the way you translate this does not sound like Abraham bought another property from the Hittites. Alternate translation: [So that is how that field, including the cave that was in the field, were legally sold to Abraham] or [So in that way, the field of Ephron, including …]

ULT **as property for a burial place from the sons of Heth**
UST by the Hittites, so that he had a place where he could bury his wife who had died

Consider again how you translated **a burial place** in verses 4, 9, and 20, and how you translated **the sons of Heth** in verses 3, 5, 7, 10, 16, 18, and 20. Alternate translation: [by the Hittites as a burial site]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
burial place	where he could bury his wife who had died
Heth	Hittites

Genesis 24

Genesis 24:1

ULT	UST
Now Abraham was old, advanced in days, and Yahweh had blessed Abraham in all things.	*Abraham had lived a long time and was now very old, and Yahweh had blessed him in every way.*

ULT **Now Abraham was old, advanced in days**
UST Abraham had lived a long time and was {now} {very} old

Verse 1 gives the setting for the new episode and begins with a doublet that emphasizes how old Abraham was. Try to preserve this emphasis in a way that is natural in your translation. Alternate translation: [Abraham was very old now. He had lived many years] or [Now Abraham had become very old]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **in all things**
UST in every way

Alternate translation: [in everything he had done]

ULT **and Yahweh had blessed Abraham**
UST and Yahweh had blessed him

See how you translated **bless** in Gen 12:2–3. Alternate translation: [and Yahweh had caused him to prosper]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
days	and was {now} {very} old
Yahweh	Yahweh
blessed	blessed
Abraham	him

Genesis 24:2

ULT	UST
Then Abraham said to his oldest servant of his house, who was in charge of everything that belonged to him, "Please put your hand under my thigh,	*One day Abraham said to his chief household servant, who managed his entire estate for him, "Please put your hand under my thigh to show that you will do what I ask.*

ULT **Then Abraham said to**
UST One day Abraham said to

Consider what is the best way to introduce the first event in this episode in your language. Alternate translation: [One day he told]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **his oldest servant of his house**
UST his chief household servant

Alternate translation: [the oldest servant in his household] or [his senior household servant]

ULT **who was in charge of everything**
UST who managed his entire estate for him

Alternate translation: [who managed everything that he owned] or [who took care of his entire estate for him]

ULT **Please put your hand under my thigh**
UST Please put your hand under my thigh to show that you will do what I ask

You can make the meaning of this custom explicit in your translation, or you can put that information in a footnote. What Abraham asks his servant to do here is part of the vow-making process in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Please put your hand under my leg to show that you will do what I ask]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
servant	servant
house	household
who was in charge	who managed

Genesis 24:3

ULT	UST
and I will have you swear by Yahweh, the God of the heavens and the God of the earth, that you will not take a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaanites whom I am living among,	*I want you to vow to me, with Yahweh the God who rules the heavens and the earth as your witness, that you will not arrange for my son Isaac to marry any of the Canaanite women who live around us here.*

ULT **and I will have you swear**
UST I want you to vow to me

Decide the best way to translate this command in your language. Also, see how you translated **swear** in Genesis 21:23, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [and vow to me] or [and make an unbreakable promise to me]
Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **by Yahweh, the God of the heavens and the God of the earth**
UST with Yahweh the God who rules the heavens and the earth as your witness

See how you translated "the heavens and the earth" in Genesis 1:1. Alternate translation: [with Yahweh as your witness, the God who rules the heavens and the earth]

ULT **that you will not take a wife for my son**
UST that you will not arrange for my son {Isaac} to marry

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to make "Isaac" explicit here in verse 3 rather than wait until the end of verse 4. Also, see how you translated the idiom "took a wife for" in Genesis 21:21. Alternate translation: [that you will not get a woman for my son Isaac to marry from among]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from the daughters of the Canaanites whom I am living among**
UST any of the Canaanite women who live around us here

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham was living by himself among the Canaanites; his family and servants also lived among them with him. Alternate translation: [the Canaanite women whom we live among]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
swear	vow
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
heavens	heavens
God	and
earth	earth
Canaanites	Canaanite

Genesis 24:4

ULT	UST
but you will go to my country and to my relatives, and take a wife for my son, for Isaac.”	*Rather, you must go to the country where I grew up, to my relatives who live there, and find a wife for him from there.”*

ULT **but you will go**
UST Rather, you must go

Alternate translation: [Instead, you must go] or [Instead, I want you to go]
Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **to my country**
UST to the country where I grew up

Alternate translation: [to my home country] or [to the region where I grew up] or [to the country that I came from]

ULT **and to my relatives**
UST to my relatives who live there

Alternate translation: [to my kinfolk who live there]

ULT **and take a wife for my son, for Isaac**
UST and find a wife for him from there

The way you refer to Isaac here will depend on how you referred to him in verse 3. Alternate translation: [and find a wife from there for my son Isaac to marry] or [and get a wife from among them for him to marry] or [and arrange for him to marry one of their daughters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my country	the country where I grew up
my relatives	my relatives who live there
Isaac	for him from there

Genesis 24:5

ULT	UST
Then the servant said to him, "Suppose the woman is not willing to come with me to this land? Should I take your son back to the country that you came from?"	*But Abraham's servant asked him, "What should I do if the young woman I find refuses to come back with me to this land to live? Do you want me to take your son back there to your home country to marry her and live there?"*

ULT **Then the servant said to him**
UST But {Abraham's} servant asked him

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language so that it fits the context well. Alternate translation: [Then the servant asked Abraham]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Suppose**
UST What {should I do} if

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 18:24, 28, 29. Alternate translation: [Suppose that]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **the woman**
UST the {young} woman I find

Alternate translation: [the young woman I choose] or [when I find that young woman, she]

ULT **is not willing**
UST refuses

Alternate translation: [does not want]

ULT **to come with me**
UST to come {back} with me … to live

Alternate translation: [to go back with me] or [to follow me back]

ULT **to this land**
UST to this land

Alternate translation: [to live in this land?]

ULT **Should I take your son back**
UST Do you want me to take your son back there

Alternate translation: [In that case, should I take your son] or [Do you want me to then take your son back there]

ULT **to the country that you came from**
UST to your home country {to marry her} and live there

Alternate translation: [to live in your home country?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	servant
land	land
the country	your home country {to marry her} and live there

Genesis 24:6

ULT	UST
Then Abraham said to him, "Be sure that you do not take my son back there.	*Abraham answered him, "No, be sure that you never take my son back there to live,*

ULT **Then Abraham said to him**
UST Abraham answered him

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin at this point in the conversation.
Alternate translation: [Then Abraham replied to his servant] or [Abraham replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Be sure that you do not take my son back**
UST No, be sure that you never take my son back

Alternate translation: [No, make sure that you never take my son back] or [No, you must definitely not take my son back]

ULT **there**
UST there to live

Alternate translation: [to my home land to live]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Be sure	No, be sure

Genesis 24:7

ULT	UST
Yahweh, the God of the heavens, who took me from the house of my father and from the land of my relatives and who spoke to me and who swore to me, saying, 'To your offspring I will give this land,' he will send his angel before you, and you will take a wife for my son from there.	*because Yahweh, the God who rules the heavens, brought me here from my father's household and from the land where the rest of my relatives live, and he vowed to me that he will give this land to my descendants. He will send one of his angels ahead of you to help you, so that you will find a woman from my home land for my son to marry.*

ULT **Yahweh, the God of the heavens**
UST because Yahweh, the God who rules the heavens

Make sure it is clear in your translation that verse 7 gives the reason for verse 6. Also, see how you translated **the God of the heavens** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [because Yahweh, the God who created the heavens]

ULT **and from the land of my relatives**
UST and from the land where {the rest of} my relatives live

Alternate translation: [and from the land where the rest of my family live]

ULT **and who spoke to me and who swore to me, saying**
UST and he vowed to me that

Alternate translation: [and he made an vow to me and said] or [and he made an unbreakable promise to me and said]

ULT **To your offspring I will give this land**
UST he will give this land to my descendants

The phrase **this land** refers to the land of Canaan here, not the land where Abraham's relatives lived. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Also, consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct quote or an indirect quote. Alternate translation: [I will give this land to your offspring] or [that he will give this land where we live to my descendants]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and you will take**
UST so that you will find

Alternate translation: [so that you will be able to find] or [so that you can get]

ULT **a wife for my son from there**
UST a woman from my home land for my son to marry

See how you translated "take/find a wife for" in verses 3–4. Alternate translation: [a wife from there for my son to marry] or [a wife from my home land for my son to marry]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
heavens	heavens
house	from … s household
land	land
my relatives	the rest of my relatives
swore	vowed
To your offspring	to my descendants
land	land
angel	angels

Genesis 24:8

ULT	UST
But if the woman is not willing to come with you, then you are clear from this oath of mine. Only do not take my son back there!”	*But if the woman you find refuses to come back here with you, then you will be free from keeping this vow that you are making to me now. But no matter what happens, never take my son back to my home country!”*

ULT **But if the woman**
UST But if the woman you find

Alternate translation: [However, if the woman you find]

ULT **is not willing**
UST refuses

See how you translated this phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: [does not want]

ULT **to come with you**
UST to come back {here} with you

See how you translated a similar phrase **to come with me** in verse 5. Alternate translation: [to follow you back here]

ULT **Only**
UST But no matter what happens

Alternate translation: [Just]

ULT **do not take my son back there**
UST never take my son back to my home country

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 6. Alternate translation: [you must not take my son back to my home land!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
oath	vow

Genesis 24:9

ULT	UST
Then the servant put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master and swore to him concerning this matter.	*So Abraham's servant put his hand under his master's thigh and vowed to him that he would do what Abraham had requested him to do.*

ULT **Then the servant put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master**
UST So {Abraham's} servant put his hand under his master's thigh

The servant putting **his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master** was a symbolic action by which the servant showed that he swore to do everything possible to carry out the wishes of his master. This action was reserved for only the most serious oaths and occurred only twice in Scripture, both times in Genesis. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Abraham's servant indicated his total allegiance as he placed his hand under his master's thigh]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and swore to him**
UST and vowed to him

See how you translated **swore** in verse 7 and "swear" in verse 3. Alternate translation: [and made an vow to him] or [and made an unbreakable promise to him]

ULT **concerning this matter**
UST that he would do what Abraham had requested him to do

Some languages need to make explicit what **this matter** refers to. Alternate translation: [that he would do what he had told him to do] or [that he would go find a wife for Isaac]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	servant
Abraham	his master
master	master
and swore	vowed

Genesis 24:10

ULT	UST
Then the servant took ten camels from the camels of his master and left, and all kinds of good things from his master were in his hand, and he got up and went to Aram Naharaim, to the city of Nahor.	*Then he got ten of his master's camels ready for the trip, and after he loaded them with all kinds of valuable things from his master to use as gifts, he left with some other servants and made the long trip to the region of Aram Naharaim, to the city where Nahor lived.*

ULT **Then the servant took ten camels from the camels of his master**
UST Then he got ten of his master's camels ready for the trip

Make sure that your translation of **took** does not imply that the servant stole the camels or valuable things from Abraham. Rather, the **good things** that he loaded on the camels included things that he would give as gifts to Isaac's relatives (verse 53). Also, see how you translated **camels** in Genesis 12:16.

ULT **and left, and all {kinds of} good {things} from his master {were} in his hand, and he got up**
UST and after he loaded them with all kinds of valuable things from his master {to use as gifts}, he left with some other servants

For some languages, it is best to make it explicit here in verse 10 that other servants went with Abraham's chief servant, rather than have them appear suddenly in verse 32.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and went to**
UST and made the {long} trip to

This was about a 800 kilometer (500 mile) trip and would take camels about seventeen days to complete. Alternate translation: [and made the long journey to] or [Then he traveled to]

ULT **to the city of Nahor**
UST to the city where Nahor lived

Nahor lived in the city of Haran (Genesis 11:31–32). That information could be put in a footnote. Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like Nahor owned the city.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	Then he got … ready for the trip
camels	camels
camels	camels
master	master
good	valuable things
master	master
Naharaim	Naharaim
Nahor	Nahor

Genesis 24:11

ULT	UST
Then he made the camels kneel down outside the city by the well of water at evening time, at the time the women who draw water come out.	*When they arrived there, Abraham's servant had the camels kneel down to rest outside the city near the well that was there. It was evening time, when the young women of the city were starting to come out to the well to draw water.*

ULT **by the well of water**

UST near the well that was there

Each town or city had a well where people from the city came to get their water. See how you translated **well of water** in Genesis 21:19. You might need to translate this in a slightly different way here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [near its well] or [by the public well that was there]

ULT **at the time the women who draw water come out**

UST when the {young} women {of the city} were starting to come out {to the well} to draw water

In that time and culture, there was no running water in homes so people had to go out to the city well to get water for their families. Alternate translation: [the time when the young women of the city came out to draw water from the well for their families] or [when the young women of the city were starting to come out to the well to get water for their families]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
camels	camels
well	well

Genesis 24:12

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Yahweh, God of my master Abraham, please cause it to happen before me today that you show kindness toward my master Abraham.	*Then Abraham's servant prayed, "Dear Yahweh, who is the God who takes care of my master Abraham, please help me succeed today and in that way be kind to my master.*

ULT **please cause it to happen before me today that you show kindness toward my master Abraham**

UST please help me succeed today and {in that way} be kind to my master

For some languages it may be clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence: [please be gracious to my master by helping me succeed today] or [please show your kindness to my master today by helping me find a woman for his son to marry]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Then he said**

UST Then Abraham's servant prayed

The term **said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly. Alternate translation: [Then he began to pray, saying]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **God of my master Abraham**

UST who is the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham

The servant is using this possessive form to mean that God is the deity whom his master worships. The possessive form does not mean that Abraham owns God. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the God whom my master worships]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **please cause it to happen before me today**

UST please help me succeed today

Alternate translation: [please help me do what I have come here to do today]

ULT **God of my master Abraham**

UST who is the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham

Alternate translation: [who is the God whom my master Abraham serves]

ULT **Yahweh**

UST Dear Yahweh

Consider what is the best way to begin this prayer in your language. Alternate translation: [Oh Yahweh]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
master	master
Abraham	Abraham
today	today
kindness	and {in that way} be kind to
master	master
Abraham	אַבְרָהָם

Genesis 24:13

ULT	UST
Behold, I am standing by this spring of water, and the daughters of the people of the city are coming out to draw water.	*As you see, I am standing by this well, and young women from the city are coming here to draw water.*

ULT **Behold, I am standing by**
UST As you see, I am standing by

Abraham is using the term **Behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Look, here I am, standing near] or [As you know, I am standing here beside]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **this spring of water**
UST this well

Alternate translation: [this spring-fed well]

ULT **are coming out to draw water**
UST are coming {here} to draw water

See how you translated "draw water" in verse 11. Alternate translation: [are coming out here to get water]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
spring	this well

Genesis 24:14

ULT	UST
And let it be that the young woman whom I say to her, 'Please let down your jar so that I may drink,' and she says, 'Drink and I will also water your camels,' let her be the one you have appointed for your servant, for Isaac. And by her I will know that you have shown kindness toward my master."	*Please make it happen that when I say to one of the young women, 'Please lower your jug so that I can have a drink,' she will say to me, 'Have a drink and I will also draw water for your camels.' Then I will know that she is the one you have chosen to be the wife of Isaac who serves you, and that you have been kind to my master."*

ULT **the young woman whom I say to her**
UST when I say to one of the young women

The phrase **young woman** is actually a single word in Hebrew (like the old English words "damsel" and "maiden") and refers to a young woman who is old enough to get married, but has never been married before. Some languages have a single word for this; other languages prefer a phrase.

ULT **Please let down your jar**
UST Please lower your jug

The water containers that people used were usually made out of clay. Alternate translation: [Please lower your water jug]

ULT **so that I may drink**
UST so that I can have a drink

Alternate translation: [so that I can drink some water] or [so that I can take a drink of water]

ULT **and she says**
UST she will say to me

Alternate translation: [if she says to me]

ULT **Drink and I will also water your camels**
UST Have a drink and I will also draw water for your camels

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to make one or both of the two embedded direct quotes in this verse into indirect quotes. For example you could say, "Please make it happen that when I ask one of the young women to lower her jug so that I can have a drink of water, she will offer me a drink and will also offer to draw water for my camels." Alternate translation: [Have a drink, and I will also get water for your camels]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **for your servant, for Isaac**
UST to be the wife of Isaac who serves you

Alternate translation: [as a wife for your servant Isaac]

ULT **And by her I will know that you have shown kindness toward my master**
UST and that you have been kind to my master

Alternate translation: [And if that happens, I will be sure that you are acting kindly toward my master]

ULT **And let it be that**
UST Please make it happen that

Make sure that your translation of the servant's request to God sounds polite.
Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
camels	camels
appointed	the one you have chosen
servant	serves
Isaac	Isaac
know	and that
kindness	you have been kind to
master	master

Genesis 24:15

ULT	UST
And it happened before he had finished speaking, then behold, Rebekah was coming out, who was born to Bethuel, the son of Milcah, the wife of Nahor, the brother of Abraham. And her water jar was on her shoulder.	*Before Abraham's servant had even finished praying, he saw a young woman named Rebekah coming out of the city carrying a water jug on her shoulder. She was the daughter of Bethuel, who was the son of Milcah and Abraham's brother Nahor.*

ULT **And it happened before he had finished speaking**
UST Before Abraham's servant had {even} finished praying

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **then behold**
UST he saw

This phrase spotlights Rebekah and shows that she is the center of attention. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [just then he saw] or [suddenly he saw]

ULT **Rebekah was coming out**
UST a young woman named Rebekah coming out of the city

Here the author is introducing **Rebekah** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce Rebekah here for the first time in this episode. Some translations use an exclamation point to help show the excitement.
Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **who was born to Bethuel**
UST She was the daughter of Bethuel

Alternate translation: [Her father was Bethuel]

ULT **And her water jar {was} on her shoulder**
UST carrying a water jug on her shoulder

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "Rebekah was coming out of the city with/carrying her/a water jar/jug on her shoulder." Alternate translation: [She was carrying a water jug on her shoulder] or [She had a water jug on her shoulder]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	Rebekah
was born	She was the daughter of Bethuel
Bethuel	Bethuel
Nahor	Nahor
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 24:16

ULT	UST
And the young woman was a very beautiful-looking virgin, and a man had not known her. And she went down to the spring and filled her jar and came up.	*She was a very beautiful unmarried young woman, who had never had marital relations with a man. She walked down to the well, filled her jug with water and came back up carrying it on her shoulder.*

ULT **And the young woman {was} a very beautiful-looking virgin**
UST She was a very beautiful unmarried young woman

See how you translated **young woman** in verses 14 and 15. Alternate translation: [Rebekah was a very beautiful unmarried young woman]

ULT **and a man had not known her**
UST who had never had {marital} relations with a man

See how you translated the idiom “not known a man” in Genesis 19:8. Alternate translation: [whom no man had ever slept with] or [who had never slept with a man] or [who had never had sexual relations with a man]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And she went down**
UST She walked down

Notice that the spring or well was at a place that was lower than the place where Abraham’s servant was standing. Alternate translation: [She went down]

ULT **to the spring**
UST to the well

See how you translated **spring** in verse 13. Alternate translation: [to the spring-fed well]

ULT **and filled her jar**
UST filled her jug with water

Alternate translation: [filled her jar with water]

ULT **and came up**
UST and came {back} up carrying it on her shoulder

If it is not clear, you may need to make it explicit in your translation that Rebekah still had the jar with her when she came up from the well or spring, especially since she lowers it from her shoulder in verse 18. Alternate translation: [and came back up with it on her shoulder]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
was … beautiful	beautiful
virgin	unmarried
known	who had never had {marital} relations with a man

Genesis 24:17

ULT	UST
Then the servant ran to meet her and said, "Please let me drink a little water from your jar."	*Then Abraham's servant ran to meet her and said to her, "Please let me have a little water to drink from your jug."*

ULT Then the servant ran to meet her
UST Then {Abraham's} servant ran to meet her

Alternate translation: [Then the servant ran up to her]

ULT and said
UST and said to her

Alternate translation: [and requested]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Please let me drink a little water from your jar
UST Please let me have a little water to drink from your jug

Alternate translation: [Please let me have a little water to drink from your jar] or [Please give me a little drink from your jar]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	servant

Genesis 24:18

ULT	UST
And she said, “Drink, my lord.” Then she hurried and lowered her jar to her hands and gave him a drink.	*She replied, “Please have a drink, sir.” Then she quickly lowered her jug from her shoulder to her hands and let him drink some water from it.*

ULT **Drink, my lord**
UST Please have a drink, sir

Make sure that Rebekah’s reply is polite and respectful in your language, though the way she addresses Abraham’s servant should not make it sound like she is his slave. Also see how you translated **my lord** in Genesis 23:6, 11, 15. Alternate translation: [Certainly, sir, you may have a drink]

Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **Then she hurried and lowered her jar to her hands**
UST Then she quickly lowered her jug {from her shoulder} to her hands

Alternate translation: [Then she quickly lowered her jar from her shoulder to her hands]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and gave him a drink**
UST and let him drink {some water} from it

Alternate translation: [and let him have a drink]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	sir

Genesis 24:19

ULT	UST
And after she finished giving him a drink, then she said, "I will also draw water for your camels until they have finished drinking."	*After that, she said to him, "I will also draw water for your camels until they have had enough to drink."*

ULT **And {after} she finished giving him a drink**
UST After that

Alternate translation: [After he finished drinking]

ULT **then she said**
UST she said to him

Alternate translation: [she offered to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I will also draw water for your camels**
UST I will also draw water for your camels

Alternate translation: [Let me also get water for all your camels]

ULT **until they have finished drinking**
UST until they have had enough to drink

Alternate translation: [until they are done]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
camels	camels

Genesis 24:20

ULT	UST
Then she hurried and emptied her jar into the trough and ran back to the well to draw water, and she drew water for all his camels.	*Then she quickly emptied the rest of the water from her jug into the animal drinking trough that was there and ran back and forth to the well to draw more water, until she had drawn enough for all of the camels.*

ULT **Then she hurried and emptied her jar**
UST Then she quickly emptied {the rest of the water from} her jug

See how you translated **Then she hurried and** in verse 18. Alternate translation: [So she quickly poured the rest of the water from her jug]

ULT **into the trough**
UST into the {animal drinking} trough that was there

The drinking **trough** was a long, open, stone container that several animals could drink from at the same time. Alternate translation: [into the animal drinking place that was there] or [into the stone container that was there for animals to drink out of]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and ran back to the well to draw water**
UST and ran back {and forth} to the well to draw more water

Alternate translation: [and ran back and forth to the well to get more water]

ULT **and she drew water for all his camels**
UST until she had drawn {enough} for all of the camels

Alternate translation: [until she had brought enough for all of the camels]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
well	well
camels	camels

Genesis 24:21

ULT	UST
And the man watched her silently to know whether Yahweh had made his journey succeed or not.	*Meanwhile Abraham's servant silently watched Rebekah and waited to find out whether or not Yahweh had made him successful on his journey to find a wife for Isaac.*

ULT **And the man watched her silently**
UST Meanwhile {Abraham's} servant silently watched Rebekah and waited

Starting in verse 21 the Hebrew text takes Rebekah and Laban's perspective and refers to Abraham's servant as **the man**. This continues until verse 34, when the servant tells everyone that he is Abraham's servant. For some languages this is confusing (because it sounds like two different people), so for those languages it is necessary to refer to him as "Abraham's servant" or "the servant" throughout this chapter.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **to know whether Yahweh had made his journey succeed or not**
UST to find out whether or not Yahweh had made him successful on his journey to find a wife for Isaac

Alternate translation: [to find out whether or not Yahweh had made him successful on his trip to find a wife for Isaac] or [to see for sure if Yahweh had given him success on his trip]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	to find out
whether … had made … succeed	whether … had made him successful
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 24:22

ULT	UST
Then it happened, when the camels had finished drinking, then the man took out a gold nose ring, its weight a beka, and two gold bracelets for her arms, their weight ten shekels.	*Finally, when the camels had finished drinking, the servant gave Rebekah a gold nose ring that weighed 6 grams, and two gold bracelets for her wrists that weighed 110 grams each.*

ULT **Then it happened, when the camels had finished drinking**
UST Finally, when the camels had finished drinking

Alternate translation: [After all the camels had drunk as much water as they wanted and Rebekah had stopped drawing water]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **then the man took out a gold nose ring, its weight a beka**
UST the servant {gave Rebekah} a gold nose ring that weighed 6 grams

This one **beka** was about 1/5 of an ounce (6 grams) of gold. The **ten shekels** was about 4 ounces (110 grams) of gold. In your translation, you could use the ancient measurement and spell the words beka and shekels the way they sound in your language. You could also use the metric measurements given in the UST or use the measurement that your language and culture customarily use. Alternatively, you could use the ancient measurement and put a modern measurement in parentheses in the text or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [the servant brought out a gold nose ring weighing one beka and gave it to her] or [the servant gave her a gold nose ring that weighed one beka]
Support Reference: Biblical Weight

ULT **and two gold bracelets**
UST and two gold bracelets

Alternate translation: [He also gave her two gold bracelets]

ULT **their weight ten shekels**
UST that weighed 110 grams each

Alternate translation: [Each bracelet weighed ten shekels]
Support Reference: Biblical Weight

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
camels	camels
gold	gold
gold	gold

Genesis 24:23

ULT	UST
And he said, "Whose daughter are you? Please tell me. Is there a place at the house of your father for us to lodge?"	*Then he asked her, "Please tell me who your father is. Also, is there room at his house for me and my men to spend the night there?"*

ULT **And he said**
UST Then he asked her

Alternate translation: [Then he said to her] or [Then he asked Rebekah]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Whose daughter {are} you? Please tell me**
UST Please tell me who your father is

The phrase **Please tell me** can go: (1) with the previous question **Whose daughter are you?**; or (2) with the following question ("Is there a place … to lodge?"). Since Abraham's servant's goal was to find a wife for Isaac who was one of Abraham's relatives, the first interpretation seems most likely.

ULT **Is there a place at the house of your father**
UST Also, is there room at his house

If you made **your father** explicit in the previous sentence, it may be more natural to refer to him with the pronoun "his" in this sentence. Alternate translation: [Also, is there enough room in his house] or [Also, does your father have any room in his house]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for us**
UST for me and my men

The pronoun **us** includes other servants who came with Abraham's chief servant (as verse 32 shows). If your language has inclusive and exclusive forms of this pronoun, you should use the exclusive form here.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **to lodge**
UST to spend the night there

Alternate translation: [to stay there tonight?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	house

Genesis 24:24

ULT	UST
Then she said to him, "I am the daughter of Bethuel, the son of Milcah, whom she bore for Nahor."	*Rebekah answered him, "My father is Bethuel, and he is one of Nahor and Milcah's sons."*

ULT **Then she said to him**
UST Rebekah answered him

Alternate translation: [She answered him] or [She replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I {am} the daughter of Bethuel**
UST My father {is} Bethuel

Alternate translation: [Bethuel is my father]

ULT **the son of Milcah, whom she bore for Nahor**
UST and he is one of Nahor and Milcah's sons

Make sure the way you translate this does not sound like Bethuel was the only son of Milcah and Nahor; they had eight sons (Genesis 22:21–22). Also, in some cultures the father's name is normally given first; in other cultures the mother's name is normally first. Alternate translation: [who is a son of Milcah and Nahor] or [and his parents are Nahor and Milcah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bethuel	Bethuel
bore	and he is one of Nahor and Milcah's sons
Nahor	Nahor

Genesis 24:25

ULT	UST
Then she said to him, "Plenty of both straw and fodder are with us. There is also a place to lodge."	*Then she added, "We have plenty of both straw and other feed at our house for the camels to eat, and there is also enough room for you all to stay there tonight."*

ULT **Then she said to him**
UST Then she added

Some languages leave this quote margin implied here, because the same person is still talking to the same person. Other languages can keep the quote margin (like the Hebrew text does), to emphasize what Rebekah says next. The quote margin may also indicate that Rebekah paused before she said what she says in verse 25. Alternate translation: [Then she continued]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Plenty of both straw and fodder {are} with us**
UST We have plenty of both straw and {other} feed {at our house} for the camels to eat

The term **fodder** refers to dry feed that is prepared for animals to eat; it can include chopped hay and grains such as oats and barley. Alternate translation: [We have plenty of both straw and other feed at our house for your camels to eat]

ULT **There is also a place**
UST and there is also {enough} room for you all

Alternate translation: [and there is also enough room in his house for all of you]

ULT **to lodge**
UST to stay {there} tonight

See how you translated this in verse 23. Alternate translation: [to spend the night there]

Genesis 24:26

ULT	UST
Then the man bowed down and prostrated himself before Yahweh,	*Then the servant bowed to the ground and worshiped Yahweh,*

> ULT **Then the man bowed down and prostrated himself before Yahweh**
> UST Then the servant bowed to the ground and worshiped Yahweh

See how you translated **bowed** in Genesis 18:2; 19:1. The word **prostrated** means he bowed low to the ground and touched his face or forehead to the ground with outstretched arms, in an act of worship. When combined with **bowed down** as in this verse, it is usually translated as "worshiped."

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bowed down	bowed
prostrated	worshiped
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 24:27

ULT	UST
and said, "Praised be Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who has not abandoned his kindness and his faithfulness toward my master. As for me, Yahweh has led me on the road to the home of the relatives of my master!"	*by saying, "Praise Yahweh, the God who takes care of my master Abraham! He has never stopped being kind and faithful to my master, and he has guided me on my journey here to the home of my master's relatives!"*

ULT **and said**
UST by saying

The servant is worshiping God by bowing down and by what he says in verse 27. Alternate translation: [He said]

ULT **Praised be Yahweh**
UST Praise Yahweh

See how you translated this in Genesis 9:26. Alternate translation: [I praise Yahweh]

ULT **the God of my master Abraham**
UST the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham

See how you translated **God of my master Abraham** in verse 12. Alternate translation: [who is the God whom my master Abraham worships]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **who has not abandoned his kindness and his faithfulness toward my master**
UST He has never stopped being kind and faithful to my master

In **not abandoned**, Abraham's servant is using a figure of speech that emphasizes a positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with a mild expression that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could emphasize the positive meaning in a strong way. Alternate translation: [who has always been kind and faithful to my master]
Support Reference: Litotes

ULT **As for me, Yahweh has led me on the road**
UST and he has guided me on {my} journey here

The last part of verse 27 is what Abraham's servant is praising God for; it is an example of how God has been kind and faithful to Abraham. Alternate translation: [and he has guided me on the road here] or [Yes, he guided me on my trip here]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Praised be	Praise
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
master	master
Abraham	Abraham
has … abandoned	has … stopped being
his kindness	kind
and his faithfulness	and faithful
master	master
Yahweh	he
to the home of	to the home of
master	master

Genesis 24:28

ULT	UST
Then the young woman ran and announced to the household of her mother about those things.	*Then Rebekah hurried home and told her mother's family about what had happened.*

ULT **Then the young woman ran**
UST Then Rebekah hurried home

See how you translated **young woman** previously in this chapter, and consider what is the best way to refer to Rebekah here. Alternate translation: [Then Rebekah ran home]

ULT **and announced**
UST and told

Alternate translation: [and reported to] or [and shared the news with]

ULT **about those things**
UST about what had happened

Alternate translation: [about what the man had said to her]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and announced	and told
to the household of	s family

Genesis 24:29

ULT	UST
Now Rebekah had a brother, and his name was Laban, and Laban ran to the man outside at the spring.	*Rebekah had a brother whose name was Laban, and he rushed out to the well where Abraham's servant was.*

ULT Now Rebekah had a brother
UST Rebekah had a brother

Laban was Rebekah's older brother. Some languages have a specific term for "older brother" that fits well here. Also, consider what is the best way to introduce this background information in your language. Alternate translation: [Now it so happened that Rebekah had a brother]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT and his name {was} Laban
UST whose name {was} Laban

Alternate translation: [named Laban]

ULT and Laban ran
UST and he rushed

Consider what is the best way to refer to Laban here in your language. Alternate translation: [and he ran] or [He ran]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT to the man outside at the spring
UST out to the well where Abraham's servant was

Alternate translation: [out to the spring where the man was] or [to where the man was standing beside the well]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	Rebekah
Laban	Laban
Laban	לָבָן
spring	the well

Genesis 24:30

ULT	UST
And it was when he had seen the nose ring and the bracelets on the arms of his sister, and when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister, saying, "This is what the man said to me," then he went to the man, and behold, he was standing by the camels at the spring.	*As soon as Laban had seen the nose ring that his sister was wearing and the bracelets on her arms and had heard her announce what the servant had said to her, he went out to meet him. He found him standing with his camels at the well.*

ULT **And it was when he had seen**
UST As soon as Laban had seen

Verse 30 is a flashback of what had happened before Laban ran to the well (verse 29). Consider what is the best way to express this in your language. For some languages it may be necessary to combine verses 29–30 and put the sentences in the order that things actually happened. For example, "Now Rebekah had a brother named Laban. When he saw the nose ring and the bracelets she was wearing and heard her tell what the man had said to her, he hurried out to meet the man. He found/saw him standing with his camels beside the well." If you do this, you would mark these combined verses as 29–30. Alternate translation: [This is how it was When he had seen] or [As soon as he had seen]
Support Reference: Verse Bridges

ULT **the nose ring and the bracelets on the arms of his sister**
UST the nose ring {that his sister was wearing} and the bracelets on her arms

Some languages have a specific term for "younger sister" that fits well here. Also see how you translated **nose ring** and **bracelets** in verse 22. Alternate translation: [the nose ring and the bracelets that his sister was wearing]

ULT **and when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister, saying, "This {is} what the man said to me**
UST and had heard her announce what the servant had said to her

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct quote or indirect quote here. If you want to make it clear who **the man** refers to, you should still translate it generally, for example, "the man I met at the well" because when Rebekah said this, she did not yet know who he was. Alternate translation: [and had heard her tell what the man at the well had said to her]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **then he went to the man**
UST he went {out} to meet him

Alternate translation: [he went out to where the man was]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and behold, he was standing**
UST He found him standing

The word **behold** emphasizes what follows it. Alternate translation: [and there he was, standing] or [He saw him standing]

ULT **by the camels at the spring**
UST with {his} camels at the well

Alternate translation: [with his camels at the spring] or [near the well with his camels]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	her announce
camels	camels
spring	the well

Genesis 24:31

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Come, blessed of Yahweh. Why are you standing out here? For I have prepared the house and a place for the camels."	*Then Laban said to him, "Come with me, you whom Yahweh has blessed. There is no need for you to stand out here. I have gotten our house ready for you and your men to stay with us and there is also a place for your camels to stay."*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Laban said to him

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Laban is the one talking here. Consider whether or not to include whom he is speaking to in this quote margin. Alternate translation: [Then Laban said to the man]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Come**
UST Come with me

Alternate translation: [Please come stay with us]

ULT **Why are you standing out here**
UST There is no need for you to stand out here

Laban is being polite here, not accusing or critical. For some languages a rhetorical question does not fit here.
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **For I have prepared the house**
UST I have gotten our house ready for you and your men to stay with us

Consider whether or not it is necessary in your translation to make any implied information explicit in this sentence. Alternate translation: [because the house is ready for you and your men to lodge there]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and a place**
UST and {there is also} a place

Alternate translation: [and we also have room there]

ULT **for the camels**
UST for {your} camels to stay

Alternate translation: [where your camels can stay]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blessed	blessed
Yahweh	Yahweh
house	house
camels	camels

Genesis 24:32

ULT	UST
So the man went to the house. Then he unloaded the camels and gave straw and fodder to the camels, and water to wash his feet and the feet of the men who were with him.	*So Abraham's servant went home with Laban. When they arrived there, Laban unloaded the camels, and he gave straw and other feed to them to eat. He also gave water to the servant and the men who were with him to wash their feet.*

ULT **So the man went to the house**
UST So Abraham's servant went home with Laban

The Hebrew verb can be translated as **went** or "came," depending on the perspective that is taken. Do what is most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Then the man went home with Laban]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **Then he unloaded the camels**
UST When they arrived there, Laban unloaded the camels

The pronoun **he** probably refers to Laban. Since Laban was the host, it is most likely that he (or some of his servants) took care of the camels for his guests. Alternate translation: [There Laban took the loads off the camels]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and gave straw and fodder to the camels**
UST and he gave straw and {other} feed to them to eat

See how you translated **straw and fodder** in verse 25. Alternate translation: [and fed them straw and other fodder]

ULT **and water to wash his feet and the feet of the men who {were} with him**
UST He also {gave} water {to the servant} and the men who {were} with him to wash their feet

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham's chief servant washed the feet of the other servants who were with him; each person washed off his own feet. See how you translated "wash the dust off your feet" in Genesis 19:2.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	home
camels	camels
camels	to them to eat

Genesis 24:33

ULT	UST
Then food was set before him to eat, but he said, "I will not eat until I have spoken my words." So he said, "Speak."	*Then Laban's family served them a meal to eat, but the servant said to them, "Before I can eat, I need to tell you why I am here." Laban responded to him, "Please tell us what you have to say."*

ULT **Then food was set before him to eat**
UST Then {Laban's family} served them a meal to eat

Consider whether it is best in your language to use a passive or active construction here. Alternate translation: [Then they brought the servant and his men some food]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **but he said**
UST but the servant said to them

Alternate translation: [but the man said to them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I will not eat until I have spoken my words**
UST Before I can eat, I need to tell {you} why I am here

Alternate translation: [I will not eat anything until I have told you my message] or [Before I can eat anything, I need to tell you why I am here]

ULT **So he said**
UST Laban responded to him

Alternate translation: [So Laban replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Speak**
UST Please tell {us} what you have to say

Make sure the way you translate this sounds polite. Alternate translation: [Please tell us what you want to say] or [Go ahead and tell us your message]
Support Reference: Politeness

Genesis 24:34

ULT	UST
Then he said, "I am a servant of Abraham.	*So the servant told them, "I am Abraham's servant.*

ULT **Then he said**
UST So the servant told them

Consider again how you referred to "the man" in verses 21, 22, 26, 29–34, and see the note about that at verse 21. Alternate translation: [Then the man told them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	servant
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 24:35

ULT	UST
And Yahweh has greatly blessed my master, so that he has become great. And he has given him flocks and herds, and silver and gold, and men slaves and women slaves, and camels and donkeys.	*Yahweh has abundantly blessed my master, so that he has become wealthy. Yahweh has given him many sheep and cattle, much silver and gold, many male and female servants, and many camels and donkeys.*

ULT **so that he has become great**
UST so that he has become wealthy

Alternate translation: [so that he is wealthy] or [and as a result, he is very wealthy]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **And he has given him flock{s} and herds**
UST Yahweh has given him {many} sheep and cattle

This is the beginning of a list of what Yahweh had given Abraham. Consider the most natural way to list items in your language. Also, see how you translated **flocks and herds** in Genesis 13:5.

ULT **and silver and gold**
UST much silver and gold

See how you translated **silver and gold** in Genesis 13:2.

ULT **and men slaves and women slaves**
UST many male and female servants

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 20:14. Alternate translation: [many men and women slaves] or [many male and female slaves]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
blessed	blessed
master	master
flocks	many sheep
and herds	cattle
silver	silver
gold	gold
and men slaves	servants
and women slaves	servants
camels	camels
donkeys	donkeys

Genesis 24:36

ULT	UST
And Sarah, the wife of my master, bore a son for my master after her old age, and he has given to him everything that belongs to him.	*Besides that, my master's wife Sarah gave birth to a son for him when she was old, and my master has given him everything that he owns.*

ULT **after her old age**
UST when she was old

Alternate translation: [in her old age] or [when she was very old]

ULT **everything that {belongs} to him**
UST everything that he owns

Alternate translation: [all of his property]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sarah	Sarah
master	master
bore	Besides that … gave birth to
master	for him

Genesis 24:37

ULT	UST
And my master made me swear, saying, 'You must not take a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaanites whose land I am living in,	*Before I came here, my master made me vow to do something for him. He said, 'You must not arrange for my son Isaac to marry any of the Canaanite women whose land we have been living in.*

ULT **saying**
UST He said

Alternate translation: [and he said to me] or [This is what he said to me:]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **You must not take a wife for my son**
UST You must not arrange for my son {Isaac} to marry

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [You must not get a woman for my son to marry]

ULT **from the daughters of the Canaanites**
UST any of the Canaanite women

Alternate translation: [from among the Canaanite women]

ULT **whose land I am living in**
UST whose land we have been living in

As in verse 3, make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham lived by himself among the Canaanites; his family and servants also lived among them with him. Alternate translation: [whom we live among in this land]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
master	master
swear	vow
Canaanites	Canaanite
land	land

Genesis 24:38

ULT	UST
but rather you must go to the house of my father, and to my clan, and take a wife for my son.'	*Rather, go to my father's family, to my own relatives, and find a wife for my son from among them.'*

ULT **but rather**
UST Rather

After you translate a section, it is a good habit to read through it at normal speed as you pay attention to where it is best to begin new sentences so that sentences and paragraphs flow well and it is easy for people to read. Alternate translation: [Instead]

ULT **you must go to the house of my father**
UST go to my father's family

See how you translated **house of my father** in verse 7.

ULT **and take a wife for my son**
UST and find a wife for my son from among them

Alternate translation: [and find a wife from among them for my son to marry]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	s family
clan	my {own} relatives

Genesis 24:39

ULT	UST
Then I said to my master, 'Suppose the woman will not come with me?'	*So I asked my master, 'What should I do if the young woman I find refuses to come back here with me?'*

ULT **Suppose**
UST What {should I do} if

See how you translated this phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: [Suppose that]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **the woman**
UST the {young} woman I find

Alternate translation: [the young woman I choose] or [when I find that young woman, she]

ULT **will not come with me**
UST refuses to come {back} {here} with me

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: [does not want to go back with me?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
master	master

Genesis 24:40

ULT	UST
And he said to me, 'Yahweh, whom I walk before, will send his angel with you and make your journey succeed, so that you will take a wife for my son from my clan, and from the house of my father.	*He answered me, 'Yahweh whom I serve will send one of his angels with you. He will make you succeed on your journey, so that you will find a wife for my son from among my relatives, someone from my father's family.*

ULT **And he said to me**
UST He answered me

Alternate translation: [He told me] or [He replied to me]

ULT **Yahweh, whom I walk before**
UST Yahweh whom I serve

See how you translated "walk/live before" in Genesis 17:1. This idiom implies that Abraham lived according to God's will. Alternate translation: [Yahweh, whose presence I walk in] or [Yahweh whom I obey]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **will send his angel**
UST will send one of his angels

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7.

ULT **with you**
UST with you

Alternate translation: [to go with you] or [to accompany you]

ULT **and make … succeed**
UST He will make you succeed on your journey

Alternate translation: [to make your journey successful]

ULT **so that you will take a wife for my son from my clan**
UST so that you will find a wife for my son from {among} my relatives

See how you translated **clan** in verse 38, and consider again how you translated **take a wife for my son** in verses 3, 4, 7, 37–38. Alternate translation: [so that you can get a wife for my son from among my relatives] or [so that you can arrange for my son to marry a woman who is one of my relatives]

ULT **and from the house of my father**
UST someone from my father's family

See how you translated **house of my father** in verse 38.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
angel	angels
and make … succeed	He will make you succeed on your journey
clan	from {among} my relatives
house	someone from … s family

Genesis 24:41

ULT	UST
Then you will be clear from my oath: When you go to my clan, and if they will not give her to you, then you will be clear from my oath.'	*At that time you will be free from keeping the vow you are making to me: If you find a wife for Isaac but my family refuses to let her go with you, then you will be free from keeping your vow to me.'*

ULT **Then**
UST At that time

The word **Then** is a special Hebrew word that can mean "at that time" and implies here that the servant's question (in verse 39) is now being addressed specifically. Alternate translation: [At this time] or [But if this happens] or [There is a situation when]

ULT **you will be clear from my oath**
UST you will be free from {keeping} the vow {you are making} to me

Alternate translation: [you will be released from keeping your vow you are making to me:] or [you will not have to fulfill the vow to me:]

ULT **When you go to my clan, and if they will not give her to you**
UST If you find a wife for Isaac but my family refuses to let her go with you

Alternate translation: [After you go to my clan and find a woman for Isaac, if they are not willing to let her go with you] or [If you find a wife for Isaac but my family refuses to let the woman you have chosen leave with you]

ULT **then you will be clear from my oath**
UST then you will be free from {keeping} your vow to me

See how you translated **clear from** earlier in this verse and in verse 8. Alternate translation: [you will be released from keeping the vow that you are making to me] or [you will not have to keep the unbreakable promise you are making to me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
oath	vow
clan	If you find a wife for Isaac but my family
oath	vow

Genesis 24:42

ULT	UST
Then today I came to the spring, and I said, 'Yahweh, God of my master Abraham, if it is your will, please make my journey succeed that I have come on.	*Then today when I came to your city's well, I prayed, 'Dear Yahweh, who is the God who takes care of my master Abraham, if you are willing, please give me success on this journey that I have made.*

ULT **Then today I came to the spring**
UST Then today when I came to {your city's} well

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the servant is now talking about himself. He is no longer quoting Abraham (whose words ended in verse 41).

ULT **and I said, 'Yahweh**
UST I prayed, '{Dear} Yahweh

See how you began the prayer in verse 12.

ULT **God of my master Abraham**
UST who is the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12. Alternate translation: [the God whom my master Abraham serves]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **if it is your will**
UST if you are willing

Alternate translation: [if you agree]

ULT **please make my journey succeed**
UST please give me success on this journey

See how you translated this clause in verses 21 and 40. Alternate translation: [please give me success during this trip] or [please make me successful on this trip]

ULT **that I have come on**
UST that I have made

Alternate translation: [that I have undertaken]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
today	today
spring	your city's well
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
master	master
Abraham	Abraham
make … succeed	give me success on this journey

Genesis 24:43

ULT	UST
Behold, I am standing by this spring of water. And let it be that the young woman who comes out to draw water and I say to her, "Please give me a little water to drink from your jar,"	*As you see, I am standing here near this well. Please make it happen that when a young woman comes out of the city to draw water and I ask her, "Please let me drink a little water from your jug,"*

ULT **Behold, I am standing by**
UST As you see, I am standing {here} near

See how you translated this in verse 13. Alternate translation: [Look here I am, standing beside] or [As you know, I am standing here near]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **this spring of water**
UST this well

See how you translated this phrase in verse 13. Alternate translation: [this spring-fed well]

ULT **And let it be that**
UST Please make it happen that

See how you translated this phrase in verse 14.
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **and I say to her, "Please give me a little water to drink from your jar**
UST and I ask her, "Please let me drink a little water from your jug

This direct quote is within a direct quote that is within another direct quote. For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to use an indirect quote here. Decide what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [and I ask her to let me drink some water from her water jar]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Genesis 24:44

ULT	UST
and she says to me, "Both you drink and I will also draw water for your camels," let her be the wife whom Yahweh has chosen for the son of my master.'	*if she replies, "Yes, have a drink and I will also draw water for your camels," then let her be the woman whom you Yahweh have chosen to be the wife of my master's son.'*

ULT **and she says to me, "Both you drink and I will also draw water for your camels**
UST if she replies, "{Yes,} have a drink and I will also draw water for your camels

See how you translated the embedded direct quote in verse 43. Alternate translation: [if she gives me a drink and also offers to draw water for my camels]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **let her {be} the wife whom Yahweh has chosen for the son of my master**
UST then {let} her {be} the woman whom {you} Yahweh have chosen to be the wife of my master's son

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham's servant is still talking directly to Yahweh in this clause. For example, you could make **you** explicit in this clause.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
camels	camels
Yahweh	Yahweh
has chosen	have chosen
master	master

Genesis 24:45

ULT	UST
Before I had finished speaking in my heart, then behold, Rebekah was coming out and her jar was on her shoulder. And she went down to the spring and drew water, and I said to her, 'Please give me a drink.'	*Before I had even finished praying quietly, suddenly I saw Rebekah coming out of the city carrying her empty water jug on her shoulder. She walked down to the well and filled her jug with water, so I asked her, 'May I please have a drink of water?'*

ULT **Before I had finished**
UST Before I had {even} finished

Alternate translation: [Before I could even finish]

ULT **speaking in my heart**
UST praying quietly

Alternate translation: [praying to God in my heart] or [praying to God quietly]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **then behold**
UST suddenly I saw

Alternate translation: [just then I saw] or [there was]

ULT **Rebekah was coming out**
UST Rebekah coming out of the city

See how you translated the first half of verse 15, which is very similar to the first half of verse 45.

ULT **and her jar {was} on her shoulder**
UST carrying her {empty} {water} jug on her shoulder

Alternate translation: [with her empty water jar on her shoulder]

ULT **And she went down to the spring and drew water**
UST She walked down to the well and filled her jug with water

Consider again how you translated **spring** (verses 13, 16, 29–30, 42–43 and 45) and "well" (verses 11 and 20) in this chapter. Both terms refer to the same source of water. See the note about this at verse 13. Alternate translation: [She walked down to the spring and filled up her jar with water]

ULT **and I said to her, 'Please give me a drink**
UST so I asked her, 'May I please have a drink of water

Consider what is the best way to translate this embedded quote in your language. Alternate translation: [so I asked her to please give me a drink]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	Rebekah
spring	to the well

Genesis 24:46

ULT	UST
And she hurried and lowered her jar from her and said, ‘Drink and I will also water your camels.’ So I drank, and she also watered the camels.	*She quickly lowered her jug from her shoulder and said, ‘Have a drink, and I will also draw water for your camels.’ So I took a drink from her jug, and she also gave water to my camels.*

ULT **And she hurried and lowered her jar**
UST She quickly lowered her jug

Consider again how you translated **jar** in verses 14–18, 20, 43, 45–46. Alternate translation: [She quickly lowered her jar] or [She quickly brought her jar down]

ULT **from her**
UST from her shoulder

Alternate translation: [off her shoulder]

ULT **and said, ‘Drink**
UST and said, ‘Have a drink

Make sure Rebekah sounds polite here in your translation.
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **and I will also water your camels**
UST and I will also draw water for your camels

See how you translated this clause in verse 14. Also see verse 18, which is similar. Alternate translation: [and I will also give water to your camels] or [and I will also get water for your camels]

ULT **So I drank**
UST So I took a drink from her jug

Alternate translation: [So I drank some water from her jar] or [So I took a drink from her jar]

ULT **and she also watered the camels**
UST and she also gave water to my camels

Alternate translation: [and she also drew water to my camels]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
camels	camels
camels	camels

Genesis 24:47

ULT	UST
Then I asked her and said, 'Whose daughter are you?' And she said, 'The daughter of Bethuel, a son of Nahor whom Milcah bore for him.' Then I put the ring on her nose and the bracelets on her arms.	*Then I asked her, 'Who is your father?' She answered, 'My father is Bethuel, who is one of Nahor and Milcah's sons.' After that I gave her a nose ring and bracelets to wear.*

ULT **Whose daughter {are} you**
UST Who {is} your father

See how you translated this question in verse 23.

ULT **And she said**
UST She answered

Alternate translation: [She answered me] or [She replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **The daughter of Bethuel**
UST My father is Bethuel

See how you translated this phrase in verse 24. Alternate translation: [I am the daughter of Bethuel]

ULT **a son of Nahor whom Milcah bore for him**
UST who is one of Nahor and Milcah's sons

Alternate translation: [who is a son of Nahor and his wife Milcah] or [and his parents are Nahor and Milcah]

ULT **Then I put the ring on her nose and the bracelets on her arms**
UST After that I gave her a nose ring and bracelets to wear

See how you translated "nose ring," **bracelets**, and **arms** in verse 22. Alternate translation: [So I put the nose ring on her nose and the bracelets on her wrists] or [After that I gave her the nose ring and bracelets to wear]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bethuel	Bethuel
Nahor	Nahor
bore	who is one of Nahor and Milcah's sons

Genesis 24:48

ULT	UST
And I bowed down and prostrated myself before Yahweh, and I praised Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who led me on the right way to take the daughter of my master's brother for his son.	*Then I bowed to the ground and worshiped and praised Yahweh, the God who takes care of my master Abraham, because he guided me right where I should go to find the granddaughter of my master's brother to be the wife for my master's son.*

ULT **And I bowed down and prostrated myself before Yahweh, and I praised Yahweh**
UST Then I bowed {to the ground} and worshiped and praised Yahweh

See how you translated "bowed down and prostrated himself" in verse 26, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [Next I bowed to the ground and worshiped and praised Yahweh]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **the God of my master Abraham**
UST the God {who takes care} of my master Abraham

See how you translated this phrase in verses 12 and 42. Alternate translation: [the God whom my master Abraham serves]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **to take**
UST to find

Alternate translation: [to get]

ULT **the daughter of my master's brother**
UST the granddaughter of my master's brother

The phrase **the daughter of my master's brother** could mean: (1) "the granddaughter of my master's brother." Alternate translation: [Nahor's granddaughter]; or (2) "the daughter of my master's relative." Alternate translation: [Bethuel's daughter] Abraham's brother Nahor was the father of Bethuel and the grandfather of Rebekah (Genesis 11:26; 22:20–23).
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **for his son**
UST to be the wife for my master's son

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this refers to Abraham's son, not Nahor's or Bethuel's son.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bowed down	bowed
prostrated	worshiped
Yahweh	and worshiped
and I praised	and praised
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
master	master
Abraham	Abraham
master	master

Genesis 24:49

ULT	UST
And now if it is your will to show kindness and faithfulness to my master, tell me. But if not, tell me, so that I will turn to the right or to the left."	*So now, please tell me whether or not you are willing to be kind and faithful to my master by letting her come with me, so that I can decide what to do next."*

ULT **And now if it is your will**
UST So now … whether … you are willing

Throughout this verse "you" is plural, so use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [So now if you are willing]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **to show kindness and faithfulness to my master**
UST to be kind and faithful to my master by letting her come with me

By **show kindness and faithfulness to my master**, Abraham's servant means they would send their daughter with him to become the bride of his master's son. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [to let her come with me, and in that way show your kindness and faithfulness to my master] or [to be kind and faithful to my master by sending her with me]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **so that I will turn to the right or to the left**
UST so that I can decide what to do next

Consider whether your language has the same idiom that Hebrew has here, or a similar idiom, with the same meaning, or whether you need to say this without an idiom. Alternate translation: [so that I can know which way to turn] or [so that I can know what to do next]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kindness	kind
and faithfulness	and faithful
master	master

Genesis 24:50

ULT	UST
Then Laban and Bethuel answered and said, "The thing has come from Yahweh; we are not able to tell you bad or good.	*Then Laban and Bethuel answered Abraham's servant, "It is clear that Yahweh has made all this happen, so it is not our place to tell you anything different.*

ULT **The thing has come from Yahweh**
UST It is clear that Yahweh has made {all} this happen

Alternate translation: [We can clearly see that Yahweh has made all this happen] or [It is obvious that all this is the will of Yahweh]

ULT **we are not able**
UST so it is not our place

Some languages have a dual pronoun that is used here. Alternate translation: [so it is not our right] or [so we have no right]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **to tell you bad or good**
UST to tell you anything different

Alternate translation: [to tell you anything different from what he has done] or [to decide anything against what he has decided]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
Bethuel	Bethuel
Yahweh	Yahweh
bad	anything different
good	anything different

Genesis 24:51

ULT	UST
Behold, Rebekah is before you. Take her and go, and let her be the wife of the son of your master, as Yahweh has spoken.”	*Look, here is Rebekah. Take her with you and return home so that she can marry your master’s son as Yahweh has guided.”*

ULT Behold, Rebekah {is} before you
UST Look, here {is} Rebekah

Alternate translation: [See Rebekah is in front of you]

ULT Take her and go
UST Take {her with you} and return home

Alternate translation: [You may take her with you and go home]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT as Yahweh has spoken
UST as Yahweh has guided

Alternate translation: [just as Yahweh has decided it should be]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	Rebekah
master	master
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 24:52

ULT	UST
Then it happened, when the servant of Abraham heard their words, that he bowed down to the ground before Yahweh.	*When Abraham's servant heard what they said, he bowed to the ground and thanked Yahweh.*

ULT **Then it happened, when the servant of Abraham heard their words**
UST When Abraham's servant heard what they said

The phrase **Then it happened** introduces the climax of the chapter, when the servant responds to hearing that Yahweh has fulfilled his prayer to find a wife for Isaac. Alternate translation: [And so]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **that he bowed down to the ground before Yahweh**
UST he bowed to the ground {and thanked} Yahweh

See how you translated **bowed down** in verse 48. Notice that here in verse 52, the phrase **to the ground** is explicit and emphasized. Alternate translation: [he bowed low to the ground and praised Yahweh]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	servant
Abraham	Abraham
bowed down	bowed
to the ground	to the ground
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 24:53

ULT	UST
Then the servant brought out jewelry of silver and jewelry of gold, and clothing, and gave them to Rebekah. And he gave valuable things to her brother and to her mother.	*Then he took out expensive gifts, including silver and gold jewelry, and also beautiful clothing, and gave them to Rebekah. He also gave valuable gifts to her brother and mother.*

ULT **Then the servant brought out**
UST Then he took out expensive gifts, including

Alternate translation: [Then he brought out]

ULT **jewelry of silver and jewelry of gold, and clothing, and gave them to Rebekah**
UST silver and gold jewelry, and {also} {beautiful} clothing, and gave {them} to Rebekah

Alternate translation: [silver and gold jewelry and other expensive gifts, including beautiful clothing, and gave them to Rebekah] or [valuable gifts, including silver and gold jewelry, and also beautiful clothing, and gave them to Rebekah]

ULT **And he gave valuable things**
UST He {also} gave {valuable} gifts

Alternate translation: [He also gave expensive gifts]

ULT **to her brother and to her mother**
UST to her brother and mother

Alternate translation: [to her mother and brother]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	Then he took out expensive gifts, including
silver	silver
gold	gold
Rebekah	Rebekah

Genesis 24:54

ULT	UST
Then he and the men who were with him ate and drank and lodged. Then in the morning they got up, and he said, "Send me to my master."	*Then Abraham's servant and his men ate supper and slept there that night. Early the next morning after everyone got up, Abraham's servant said to Rebekah's family, "Please let me return home now to my master."*

ULT **Then he and the men who {were} with him ate and drank and lodged**

UST Then Abraham's servant and his men ate {supper} and slept {there} that night

See how you translated **lodged** in verses 23, 25, and 31.

ULT **Send me to my master**

UST Please let me return {home} {now} to my master

This is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command. Use a form in your language that communicates a polite request. It may be helpful to add an expression such as "please" to make this clear. Alternate translation: [Please let us return home now to my master]

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
master	master

Genesis 24:55

ULT	UST
But her brother and her mother said, "Let the young woman stay with us a few days, at least ten. After that she will go."	*But Rebekah's brother and her mother replied, "Please let the young woman stay here with us for another ten days or so. Then you can go and take her with you."*

ULT **Let the young woman stay with us**
UST Please let the young woman stay {here} with us

Alternate translation: [Please let the young woman remain here with us] or [Please let Rebekah remain here with us]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **a few days, at least ten**
UST for another ten days or so

Alternate translation: [around ten more days]

ULT **After that she will go**
UST Then you can go and take her with you

Alternate translation: [Then she can go with you] or [Then you can leave and take her with you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days

Genesis 24:56

ULT	UST
But he said to them, "Do not detain me, since Yahweh has made my journey succeed. Send me off so that I will go to my master."	*But the servant said to them, "Please do not delay me. Now that Yahweh has made my journey successful, let me go so that I can return to my master."*

ULT **But he said to them**
UST But the servant said to them

Some languages have a dual pronoun that could be used here. However the servant is probably still addressing the whole family.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **Do not detain me, since Yahweh has made my journey succeed. Send me off**
UST Please do not delay me. Now that Yahweh has made my journey successful, let me go

See how you translated "make my journey succeed" in verse 42. Alternate translation: [Please do not detain me. Since Yahweh has made me successful on my journey, send us off] or [Please do not detain me, now that Yahweh has given me success on my journey. Let us leave]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
has made … succeed	has made … successful
master	master

Genesis 24:57

ULT	UST
Then they said, “Let’s call for the young woman and ask her mouth.”	*So they replied, “Let’s call Rebekah and ask her what she wants to do.”*

ULT **Then they said**
UST So they replied

Alternate translation: [They replied to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Let’s call for the young woman**
UST Let’s call Rebekah

Consider again how you translated **young woman** in verses 14–16, 28, 43, 55, and 57, and see the note about this at verse 14. You may need to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context.

ULT **and ask her mouth**
UST and ask her what she wants to do

Alternate translation: [and ask her to tell us what she wants to do] or [and ask her if she is willing to go now]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
call	call

Genesis 24:58

ULT	UST
So they called for Rebekah and said to her, "Will you go with this man?" And she said, "I will go."	*So they called for her and asked her, "Do you want to go now with this man?" She answered them, "Yes, I will go now."*

ULT So they called for Rebekah
UST So they called for her

Consider whether it is better to use a name or a pronoun to refer to Rebekah here in your language, especially considering how you referred to her in verses 53, 55, and 57. Alternate translation: [Then they summoned her]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT Will you go with this man
UST Do you want to go {now} with this man

Alternate translation: [Are you willing to go now with this man?]

ULT I will go
UST Yes, I will go now

Alternate translation: [Yes, I am willing to go now]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	called
Rebekah	for her

Genesis 24:59

ULT	UST
Then they sent off Rebekah their sister and her nurse and the servant of Abraham and his men.	*So they agreed to send their sister Rebekah and her personal servant who had helped raise her, with Abraham's servant and his companions.*

ULT **Then they sent off Rebekah their sister**
UST So they {agreed to} send their sister Rebekah

Notice that Rebekah does not actually leave until verse 61. If this is not clear in your translation, you could include the implied information that they agreed or decided to send her with Abraham's servant. Alternate translation: [So they decided to send their sister Rebekah]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and her nurse**
UST and her {personal} servant who had helped raise her

The term **nurse** refers here to a servant woman who probably nursed Rebekah as a baby, took care of her as she was growing up, and still served her now.

ULT **and the servant of Abraham and his men**
UST with Abraham's servant and his companions

Alternate translation: [with Abraham's servant and his men]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	Rebekah
servant	servant
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 24:60

ULT	UST
And they blessed Rebekah and said to her, "Our sister, may you become thousands of myriads, and may your offspring possess the gates of those hating them!"	*They blessed Rebekah by saying to her, "Sister, we pray that God will give you countless thousands of descendants, and that he will help them conquer all their enemies and rule over them!"*

ULT **And they blessed Rebekah and said to her**
UST They blessed Rebekah by saying to her

The phrase **and said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this phrase explicitly. Make sure your translation of **they blessed Rebekah and said to her** refers to the same event, not two separate events. Alternate translation: [And they blessed Rebekah by saying to her]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Our sister**
UST Sister

This is a term of endearment that family members used to refer to Rebekah even though she was not the actual sister of all of them. This practice is common in many cultures. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Dear little sister]

ULT **may you become**
UST we pray that God will give you

Alternate translation: [may you become the mother of] or [we pray that you will have]

ULT **thousands of myriads**
UST countless thousands of descendants

Alternate translation: [thousands and thousands of descendants] or [many thousands of descendants]

ULT **and may your offspring possess**
UST and that he will help them conquer

Alternate translation: [and we pray that your descendants will defeat] or [and we pray that God will help them defeat]

ULT **the gates of {those} hating them**
UST all their enemies and rule over them

See how you translated the phrase **possess the gates** in Genesis 22:17. Alternate translation: [the cities of all their enemies!]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blessed	blessed
Rebekah	Rebekah
your offspring	and that he will help them conquer
possess	and that he will help them conquer
gates	all their enemies and rule over them
those hating them	enemies

Genesis 24:61

ULT	UST
Then Rebekah got up and her maids, and they mounted the camels and went with the man. So the servant took Rebekah and left.	*After Rebekah and her servants who were going with her packed their things, they got up on the camels they were going to ride and went with Abraham's servant. So Abraham's servant took Rebekah with him and started the journey back home.*

ULT **Then Rebekah got up and her maids**
UST After Rebekah and her servants {who were going with her} packed their things

Alternate translation: [Then Rebekah and her maids who were going with her got ready to go, and] or [After Rebekah and her maids who were going with her packed their things]

ULT **and went with the man**
UST and went with Abraham's servant

Consider again how you translated **the man** in verses 21, 22, 26, 29, 30, 32, 61. See the note about this at verse 21.

ULT **So the servant took Rebekah**
UST So {Abraham's} servant took Rebekah with him

Alternate translation: [So he took her with him]

ULT **and left**
UST and started the journey {back} home

Alternate translation: [and left to return home]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	Rebekah
camels	camels
servant	servant
Rebekah	Rebekah

Genesis 24:62

ULT	UST
Meanwhile Isaac came from going to Beer Lahai Roi, and he was living in the land of the Negeb.	*Meanwhile Isaac returned home from visiting the place called Beer Lahai Roi. At that time he was living in the Negeb Wilderness.*

ULT Meanwhile Isaac came from going to
UST Meanwhile Isaac returned {home} from visiting

Alternate translation: [While they were traveling, Isaac returned home from a trip he had made to]

ULT Beer Lahai Roi
UST the place called Beer Lahai Roi

See how you translated the name of this place in Genesis 16:14. Alternate translation: [the well called Beer Lahai Roi]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT and he was living
UST At that time he was living

Alternate translation: [so he was back home where he lived]

ULT in the land of the Negeb
UST in the Negeb Wilderness

See how you translated **the land of the Negeb** in Genesis 20:1, and **the Negeb** in Genesis 12:9; 13:1, 3. Alternate translation: [in the Negeb Desert region] or [in the Negeb Desert]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
land	in
Negeb	Negeb

Genesis 24:63

ULT	UST
And Isaac went to meditate in the field as it was turning toward evening, and he lifted his eyes and saw that, behold, camels were coming.	*One day as it was becoming evening, he went to the field to pray. As he was praying, he looked up and suddenly he saw in the distance some camels coming toward him.*

ULT And Isaac went to meditate in the field
UST One day … he went to the field to pray

What Isaac does in verse 63 happened sometime after he returned from Beer Lahai Roi, but the Hebrew text does not say exactly when. So introduce this new event in a general way that is not too specific. Alternate translation: [One day he went out in the field to pray] or [After he had returned home, one day he was meditating out in the fields]

ULT as it was turning toward evening
UST as it was becoming evening

For some languages it is more natural to put this time phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "One day as it was becoming evening, Isaac/he went …" or "One evening, Isaac/he went …" Alternate translation: [as it was becoming dusk] or [late in the afternoon]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT and saw that, behold
UST and suddenly he saw in the distance

Alternate translation: [and saw in the distance that there were]

ULT camels were coming
UST some camels coming toward him

Alternate translation: [some camels heading toward him] or [some camels approaching him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	יִצְחָק
meditate	to pray
camels	camels

Genesis 24:64

ULT	UST
And Rebekah lifted her eyes and saw Isaac. Then she dismounted from the camel,	*Rebekah also looked up and saw Isaac. Immediately she got down from the camel that she was riding,*

ULT **And Rebekah lifted her eyes and saw Isaac**
UST Rebekah {also} looked up and saw Isaac

Alternate translation: [Then Rebekah, as she looked ahead of her, saw Isaac]

ULT **Then she dismounted**
UST Immediately she got down

Alternate translation: [Then she quickly jumped down]

ULT **from the camel**
UST from the camel that she was riding

Consider again how you translated **camel** throughout chapter 24. Alternate translation: [off the camel that she was riding]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	Rebekah
Isaac	Isaac
camel	camel

Genesis 24:65

ULT	UST
and she said to the servant, "Who is that man in the field who is coming to meet us?" And the servant said, "He is my master." So she took the veil and covered herself.	*and asked Abraham's servant, "Who is that man in the field who is walking this way to greet us?" The servant answered her, "He is my master Isaac." So she covered her face with a veil to show modesty.*

ULT **Who {is} that man in the field who is coming to meet us**
UST Who is that man in the field who is walking {this way} to greet us

Alternate translation: [Who is that man walking towards us in the field?]

ULT **And the servant said, "He {is} my master**
UST The servant answered {her}, "He {is} my master Isaac

Abraham and Isaac were both the servant's masters, especially since Abraham had already given Isaac all of his possessions (verse 36), which included his servants. Consider again how you translated **master/owner** throughout chapter 24.

ULT **So she took the veil and covered herself**
UST So she covered her face with a veil to show modesty

In that culture a bride-to-be wore a large veil to cover her entire body, especially her face, to show modesty and submission to her husband. Alternate translation: [So she took her veil and covered her face with it to show modesty] or [So she covered herself with her veil to show modesty]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	servant
servant	servant
master	master
veil	veil

Genesis 24:66

ULT	UST
Then the servant reported to Isaac all the things that he had done.	*Then the servant told Isaac everything that he had done on the journey.*

ULT **Then the servant reported to Isaac**
UST Then the servant told Isaac

Alternate translation: [When they reached Isaac, the servant told him]

ULT **all the things that he had done**
UST everything that he had done on the journey

Alternate translation: [all that he had done during the trip] or [all that had happened on his journey]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	servant
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 24:67

ULT	UST
Then Isaac brought her into the tent of Sarah his mother, and he took Rebekah, and she became a wife to him. And Isaac loved her, and he was comforted after his mother.	*Then Isaac took Rebekah into the tent where his mother Sarah had lived, and he married her, so that she became his wife. Isaac loved her, and he was happy again after mourning for his mother who had died.*

ULT **Then Isaac brought her**
UST Then Isaac took Rebekah

Alternate translation: [So Isaac took Rebekah]

ULT **into the tent of Sarah his mother**
UST into the tent where his mother Sarah had lived

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like Sarah still lived there; she had died three years previously (Genesis 23:1–2). Alternate translation: [into the tent where his mother Sarah had lived before she died]

ULT **and he was comforted**
UST and he was happy again

Alternate translation: [and he was consoled by her] or [and she made him happy again]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **after his mother**
UST after {mourning for} his mother who had died

Make sure it is clear in your translation here why Isaac needed comforting.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
tent	tent
Sarah	Sarah
Rebekah	and he married her
Isaac	and he was happy again
loved	loved

Genesis 25

Genesis 25:1

ULT	UST
Then Abraham added and took a wife, and her name was Keturah.	*Then Abraham got married again, and his wife's name was Keturah.*

ULT **Then Abraham added and took a wife, and her name {was} Keturah**
UST Then Abraham got married again, and his wife's name {was} Keturah

Abraham probably married Keturah after Sarah died (Genesis 23:1–2) and after Isaac married Rebekah (Genesis 24:67). Make sure your translation of this verse does not sound like Abraham had two wives named Keturah. Alternate translation: [Then Abraham married another woman, who was named Keturah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 25:2

ULT	UST
And she bore for him Zimran and Jokshan and Medan and Midian and Ishbak and Shuah.	*She had sons with him whom they named Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah.*

ULT **And she bore for him**
UST She had sons with him whom they named

See how you translated **bore for him** in Genesis 21:3; 24:47. Alternate translation: [Keturah gave birth to sons for him whose names were] or [She bore sons for him whom they named] or [They had sons together whom they named]

ULT **Zimran and Jokshan and Medan and Midian and Ishbak and Shuah**
UST Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah

See how you used commas and conjunctions in similar lists of names in Genesis 22:22, 24.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bore	She had sons with him whom they named
Midian	Midian

Genesis 25:3

ULT	UST
And Jokshan fathered Sheba and Dedan. And the descendants of Dedan were the Asshurites and the Letushites and the Leummites.	*Her son Jokshan had sons named Sheba and Dedan. Dedan's descendants became people groups named the Asshurites, Letushites, and Leummites.*

ULT And Jokshan fathered
UST Her son Jokshan had

See how you translated **fathered** in Genesis 11:27. Alternate translation: [Jokshan was the father of]

ULT Sheba and Dedan
UST sons named Sheba and Dedan

Alternate translation: [sons whom they named Sheba and Dedan]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT And the descendants of Dedan were the Asshurites and the Letushites and the Leummites
UST Dedan's descendants became {people groups named} the Asshurites, Letushites, and Leummites

See how you translated the names of people groups in Genesis 10:4, 13–14, 16–18, and see the note about that at 10:4.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sheba	Sheba
the Asshurites	the Asshurites

Genesis 25:4

ULT	UST
And the sons of Midian were Ephah and Epher and Hanoch and Abida and Eldaah. All of those were the descendants of Keturah.	*Keturah's son Midian had sons named Ephah, Epher, Hanoch, Abida, and Eldaah. All of those were Keturah's descendants whom she had with Abraham.*

ULT **Ephah and Epher and Hanoch and Abida and Eldaah**
UST Ephah, Epher, Hanoch, Abida, and Eldaah

Consider what is the best way to connect the names in this list in your language.
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **All of those {were} the descendants of Keturah**
UST All of those {were} Keturah's descendants whom she had with Abraham

This phrase refers back to all the people listed in verses 2–4, which includes Keturah's six sons, seven grandsons and three great grandsons. Make sure you spelled **Keturah** consistently in verses 1–4. Alternate translation: [All those were the descendants of Keturah and Abraham]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Midian	Midian
and Hanoch	Hanoch

Genesis 25:5

ULT	UST
And Abraham gave everything that belonged to him to Isaac.	*Abraham gave everything that he owned to Isaac.*

ULT **And Abraham gave everything that {belonged} to him to Isaac**

UST Abraham gave everything that he owned to Isaac

Some languages have a specific word such as “left” or “willed” that means to give something as an inheritance. In that time and culture, a father would give his children their inheritance before he died. Alternate translation: [Abraham willed everything that he owned to Isaac] or [And Isaac inherited all that Abraham owned]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 25:6

ULT	UST
And to the sons of the concubines who belonged to Abraham, Abraham gave gifts, and while he was still alive he sent them eastward to the land of Kedem, away from Isaac his son.	*He also gave valuable gifts to the sons that his servant wives had with him, but after that he made them move away to the east country so that they would live far away from his son Isaac.*

ULT **And to the sons of the concubines who {belonged} to Abraham, Abraham gave gifts**
UST He also gave {valuable} gifts to the sons that his servant wives had with him

See how you translated **concubine** in Genesis 22:24. The word **gifts** in this clause is very general and can include domestic animals, servants, gold, silver, and other things. Alternate translation: [Abraham also gave valuable gifts to the sons he had with his concubines] or [Abraham also gave (valuable gifts) to the sons that his servant wives had for him]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and while he was still alive he sent them eastward to the land of Kedem**
UST but after that he made them move away to the east country

The Hebrew word **Kedem** means "east" and refers to the region east of Canaan and the Dead Sea. Consider whether it is best in your language to transliterate (copy) the Hebrew name or to translate the meaning. Alternate translation: [then while he was still alive he sent them eastward to the region in the East] or [but after that he sent them to the east country] or [and after that he made them move away to the east country]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **away from Isaac his son**
UST so that they would live far away from his son Isaac

Alternate translation: [to be far away from his son Isaac] or [so that they would be far away from his son Isaac]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
concubines	his servant wives had with him
Abraham	his servant wives had with him
Abraham	He … gave
land	to the east country
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 25:7

ULT	UST
And these are the days of the years of the life of Abraham that he lived: 175 years.	*Abraham lived to be 175 years old.*

ULT **And these {are} the days of the years of the life of Abraham that he lived: 175 years**
UST Abraham lived to be 175 years old

Alternate translation: [Abraham lived a total of 175 years]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	Abraham lived to be
years	Abraham lived to be
Abraham	Abraham
years	years
years	years
years	years

Genesis 25:8

ULT	UST
Then Abraham exhaled and died at a good old age, elderly and full, and he was gathered to his people.	*Then he took his last breath and died at a very old age. After he had lived a long and satisfying life, he joined his ancestors who had already died.*

ULT **Then Abraham exhaled**
UST Then he took his last breath

Alternate translation: [Then he breathed out for the last time] or [Then he took his final breath]

ULT **and died at a good old age**
UST and died at a very old age

Alternate translation: [and died at a ripe old age] or [and died when he was very old]

ULT **elderly and full**
UST After he had lived a long and satisfying life

The idiom **full** refers to a long life that was blessed by God. Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [an old man who had lived a full life, and] or [After he had lived a long and blessed life]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he was gathered to**
UST he joined

The phrase **gathered to his people** is a euphemism that refers to dying but also implies that God took his spirit to be with his ancestors who had already died. It is best to translate this phrase fairly literally since it teaches about life after death. Alternate translation: [he was taken by God to be with] or [God took his spirit to be with]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **his people**
UST his ancestors who had already died

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like these ancestors were still alive. They had already died before Abraham died. Alternate translation: [his relatives who had already died] or [his ancestors who had gone before him] or [his deceased relatives]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	אַבְרָהָם
good	at a very old age

Genesis 25:9

ULT	UST
Then Isaac and Ishmael his sons buried him in the cave of Machpelah, in the field of Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite, which was before Mamre,	*His sons Isaac and Ishmael put his body in the cave of Machpelah which was in the field that had belonged to Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite, east of the city of Mamre.*

ULT **Then Isaac and Ishmael his sons buried him**
UST His sons Isaac and Ishmael put his body

Alternate translation: [His sons Isaac and Ishmael buried his body]

ULT **in the cave of Machpelah**
UST in the cave of Machpelah

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 23:9, and see the note about that there. Also see how you translated similar phrases in Genesis 23:17, 19. Alternate translation: [in the cave of the Machpelah area]

ULT **in the field of Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite**
UST which was in the field that had belonged to Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite

Ephron no longer owned the field (See: verse 10).

ULT **which {was} before Mamre**
UST east of {the city of} Mamre

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse. Also see how you translated **before Mamre** in Genesis 23:17, 19. Alternate translation: [near the city of Mamre]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
Ishmael	Ishmael
buried	put
Hittite	Hittite

Genesis 25:10

ULT	UST
the field that Abraham had bought from the sons of Heth. There Abraham was buried, and Sarah his wife.	*That is the same field that Abraham had bought from the Hittites. That is the cave where his sons buried his body next to the body of his wife Sarah whom he had buried there before.*

ULT **from the sons of Heth**
UST from the Hittites

The Hebrew text has two different ways to refer to the Hittites; compare the phrase here with verse 9 where a single Hebrew word is used to refer to this people group. See how you translated **the sons of Heth** in Genesis 23:20.

ULT **There Abraham was buried, and Sarah his wife**
UST That is {the cave} where his sons buried his body next to {the body of} his wife Sarah whom he had buried there before

Abraham had already buried Sarah's body in the cave (Genesis 23:19). Make sure your translation of this sentence does not sound like Sarah was buried there a second time. Alternate translation: [Abraham was buried in that cave, where his wife Sarah had also been buried] or [That is where Sarah had been buried, and they buried Abraham next to her]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
Heth	Hittites
Abraham	his body
buried	buried
Sarah	Sarah

Genesis 25:11

ULT	UST
And it happened after the death of Abraham, then God blessed Isaac his son. And Isaac lived near Beer Lahai Roi.	*After Abraham died, God blessed his son Isaac, who lived near the well Beer Lahai Roi.*

ULT then God blessed Isaac his son
UST God blessed his son Isaac

Use the phrase order in your language that is most natural in this context.
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT And Isaac lived near
UST who lived near

Alternate translation: [who settled near] or [Isaac lived in the region near]

ULT Beer Lahai Roi
UST the well Beer Lahai Roi

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Beer Lahai Roi** in Genesis 24:62. Alternate translation: [the well called Beer Lahai Roi]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
God	God
blessed	blessed
Isaac	Isaac
Isaac	יִצְחָק׃

Genesis 25:12

ULT	UST
Now these are the generations of Ishmael the son of Abraham, whom Hagar the Egyptian, the maidservant of Sarah, had born for Abraham.	*What follows is a record of the descendants of Abraham's son Ishmael, the son Abraham had with Sarah's Egyptian slave woman Hagar.*

ULT **Now these {are} the generations of**
UST What follows {is} a record of the descendants of

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce the new topic that begins here. See how you translated this clause in Genesis 11:10. Alternate translation: [Here is the genealogy of] or [Here is the list of the descendants of] or [What follows is the record of the descendants of]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	a record of the descendants of
Ishmael	Ishmael
Abraham	Abraham
Hagar	Hagar
Egyptian	Egyptian
maidservant	s … slave woman
Sarah	Sarah
had born	had with … Hagar
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 25:13

ULT	UST
And these are the names of the sons of Ishmael, by their names according to their births: the firstborn of Ishmael was Nebaioth, then Kedar and Adbeel and Mibsam	*Here is a list of the names of Ishmael's sons, given in the order that they were born: His oldest son was Nebaioth, followed by Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam,*

ULT **by their names according to their births**
UST given in the order that they were born

Alternate translation: [listed in the order that they were born:]

ULT **the firstborn of Ishmael {was} Nebaioth**
UST His oldest {son} {was} Nebaioth

Alternate translation: [His oldest child was Nebaioth]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **then Kedar and Adbeel and Mibsam**
UST followed by Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam

Alternate translation: [After him came Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Ishmael	Ishmael
according to their births	they were born
firstborn	oldest son
Ishmael	His
Kedar	Kedar

Genesis 25:15

ULT	UST
Hadad and Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedermah.	*Hadad, Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedermah.*

ULT **Hadad and Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedermah**
UST Hadad, Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedermah

See how you translated a similar list of names in verses 2–4.
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

Genesis 25:16

ULT	UST
Those were the sons of Ishmael, and those are their names by their settlements and by their camps, twelve rulers according to their tribes.	*Those were Ishmael's twelve sons, who became the leaders of twelve tribes that were named after them, and each tribe lived in its own towns and villages.*

ULT **and those {are} their names by their settlements and by their camps, twelve rulers according to their tribes**

UST who became the leaders of twelve tribes that were named after them, and each tribe lived in its {own} towns and villages

The Hebrew words for **settlements** and **camps** overlap in meaning. Both refer to temporary or permanent places where people settled, surrounded by some sort of wall or fence. Also, many translations have "princes" here instead of "rulers," but these Ishmaelite rulers were not actually sons of a king. See how you translated **rulers** in Genesis 17:20. Alternate translation: [who became the rulers of twelve tribes that were named after them, and each tribe lived in its own settlements and camps] or [Each of them became the ruler of a tribe that was named after him, and each tribe had its own villages and tent settlements]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Ishmael	Ishmael
rulers	leaders
tribes	tribes

Genesis 25:17

ULT	UST
And these are the years of the life of Ishmael: 137 years. Then he exhaled and died, and he was gathered to his people.	*Ishmael lived a total of 137 years. Then he took his last breath and died, and he joined his ancestors who had died before him.*

ULT **And these {are} the years of the life of Ishmael: 137 years**
UST Ishmael lived a total of 137 years

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 7.

ULT **Then he exhaled and died**
UST Then he took his last breath and died

See how you translated **exhaled** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Then Ishmael breathed out for the last time and died] or [Then Ishmael took his final breath and died]

ULT **and he was gathered to**
UST and he joined

See how you translated this phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: [and he was taken by God to be with] or [and God took his spirit to be with the spirits of]

ULT **his people**
UST his ancestors who had died before him

Alternate translation: [his relatives who had already died] or [his relatives who had gone before him] or [his deceased relatives]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	lived a total of
Ishmael	Ishmael
years	years
years	years
years	years

Genesis 25:18

ULT	UST
And they settled from Havilah to Shur that is near Egypt as you go toward Asshur. He fell in the face of all his brothers.	*His descendants lived throughout the area that extended from the region of Havilah to the wilderness of Shur that is east of the country of Egypt as you head from there to the city of Asshur. They lived as enemies against all their relatives.*

ULT **from Havilah to Shur**
UST throughout the area that extended from {the region of} Havilah to {the wilderness of} Shur

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Havilah** in Genesis 2:11; 10:7, 29 and **Shur** in Genesis 16:7; 20:1. The name **Shur** means "wall." The Wilderness of Shur may have been named after a city or fortification named Shur that was located near the eastern border of Egypt (Genesis 16:7). Alternate translation: [throughout the area that extended from the region of Havilah to the desert of Shur]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **that {is} near Egypt**
UST that {is} east of {the country of} Egypt

Alternate translation: [that is east of the land of Egypt]

ULT **as you go**
UST as you head from there

Alternate translation: [as you go from there] or [as one goes]

ULT **toward Asshur**
UST to {the city of} Asshur

Assyria and its capital city Asshur were far east of Shur. Consider again how you spelled **Asshur** in Genesis 2:14; 10:11, 22, and 25:3, 18. Alternate translation: [to the city of Asshur in Assyria] or [in the direction of the land of Assyria]

ULT **He fell in the face of all his brothers**
UST They lived as enemies against all their relatives

The meaning of this idiom is uncertain. It could mean: (1) "He lived in hostility toward all his brothers." Alternate translation: [They lived as enemies against all their relatives] See how you translated a different idiom in 16:12 that probably has this meaning. Or it could mean: (2) "They settled in the presence of all their relatives." Alternate translation: [They settled/lived among all their relatives]; or (3) "He died in the presence of all his brothers." Alternate translation: [Ishmael died in the presence of his brothers] or [Ishmael died while all his brothers were still alive]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt
toward Asshur	to {the city of} Asshur

Genesis 25:19

ULT	UST
And these are the generations of Isaac the son of Abraham: Abraham fathered Isaac,	*Here is more of the history about Abraham's son Isaac and his descendants: After Abraham had Isaac,*

ULT And these {are} the generations of Isaac the son of Abraham

UST Here {is} {more of} the history about Abraham's son Isaac and his descendants

We have already heard about much of Isaac's history in previous chapters; now we are told even more. See how you translated **these are the generations of** in verse 12 and Genesis 6:9.

ULT Abraham fathered Isaac

UST After Abraham had Isaac

See how you translated **fathered** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [After Abraham had his son Isaac]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	more of the history about … Isaac and his descendants
Isaac	Isaac
Abraham	Abraham
Abraham	Abraham
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 25:20

ULT	UST
then Isaac was a son of forty years when he took Rebekah for himself as a wife, the daughter of Bethuel the Aramean from Paddan Aram, the sister of Laban the Aramean.	*Isaac grew up and married Rebekah when he was forty years old. She was a daughter of Bethuel, who was an Aramean from the region of Paddan Aram, and her brother was Laban who was also an Aramean.*

ULT **then Isaac was a son of forty years when he took Rebekah for himself as a wife**
UST Isaac {grew up and} married Rebekah when he was forty years old

See how you translated "was a son of … years" in Genesis 21:5. Alternate translation: [Isaac grew up and married Rebekah when he was 40 years old]

ULT **the daughter of Bethuel the Aramean from Paddan Aram**
UST She was a daughter of Bethuel, {who was} an Aramean from {the region of} Paddan Aram

Alternate translation: [She was a daughter of Bethuel, who was an Aramean from the land of Paddan Aram]

ULT **the sister of Laban**
UST and her brother was Laban

Alternate translation: [and she was a sister of Laban]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
years	years
Rebekah	Rebekah
Bethuel	Bethuel
Aramean	Aramean
from Paddan	from {the region of} Paddan
Aram	Aram
Laban	Laban
Aramean	Aramean

Genesis 25:21

ULT	UST
And Isaac entreated Yahweh on behalf of his wife because she was barren. So Yahweh was entreated by him, and Rebekah his wife conceived.	*However for many years Rebekah was not able to become pregnant, so Isaac prayed that Yahweh would give her children. Yahweh did what Isaac prayed for, so that she became pregnant with twins.*

ULT **And Isaac entreated Yahweh on behalf of his wife because she {was} barren**
UST However {for many years} Rebekah was not able to become pregnant, so Isaac prayed that Yahweh would give her children

Isaac and Rebekah had been married for almost 20 years and they still had no children. See how you translated **barren** in Genesis 11:30. Also, it may be clearer to change the order of the clauses in this sentence to put them in the order in which they happened. Alternate translation: [Isaac prayed earnestly to Yahweh for his wife to have children because she was barren] or [But for many years Rebekah was not able to get pregnant, so Isaac prayed that Yahweh would give her children]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **So Yahweh was entreated by him**
UST Yahweh did what Isaac prayed for

Alternate translation: [Yahweh did what he prayed for]

ULT **and Rebekah his wife conceived**
UST so that she became pregnant with twins

For some languages it is clearer to include here the fact that Rebekah was pregnant with two babies, rather than wait until verse 22. Alternate translation: [so that Rebekah became pregnant with twins]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
And … entreated	so … prayed
Yahweh	Yahweh
barren	However {for many years} Rebekah was not able to become pregnant
Yahweh	Yahweh
Rebekah	רִבְקָה
conceived	so that she became pregnant with twins

Genesis 25:22

ULT	UST
And the children struggled against each other inside her, so she said, "Why is this so? Why am I like this?" And she went to inquire of Yahweh.	*But the two babies wrestled with each other inside her, so she asked, "Why is this happening to me?" Then she asked Yahweh about it.*

ULT **And the children struggled against each other inside her**
UST But the {two} babies wrestled with each other inside her

Alternate translation: [And the two babies inside her kept pushing against each other] or [After a while the twins wrestled with each other inside her]

ULT **so she said**
UST so she asked

Alternate translation: [so Rebekah asked]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Why {is this} so? Why {am} I {like} this**
UST Why is this happening to me

Alternate translation: [What is happening inside me?]

ULT **And she went to inquire of Yahweh**
UST Then she asked Yahweh about it

Alternate translation: [Then she went to Yahweh to ask him what was happening] or [Then she prayed to Yahweh about it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to inquire of	about it
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 25:23

ULT	UST
And Yahweh said to her, "Two nations are inside your womb, and two peoples will be divided from inside your womb. And one people will be stronger than the other people, and the older will serve the younger."	*Yahweh answered her, "The ancestors of two future people groups are inside you. They will be enemies starting now even before they are born. One of them will be more powerful than the other, so that the older son's descendants will serve the younger son's descendants."*

ULT **And Yahweh said to her**
UST Yahweh answered her

Alternate translation: [He answered her]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Two nations {are} inside your womb**
UST The ancestors of two {future} people groups {are} inside you

Many translations put Yahweh's words in poetry format in this verse. If your translation team decides to do this, look at a Bible version that does this to know where to divide the clauses.
Alternate translation: [Inside you are the ancestors of two people groups] or [The two babies inside your womb will become the fathers of two nations]

ULT **and two peoples**
UST They

Alternate translation: [Those two people groups] or [Those two ancestors]

ULT **will be divided**
UST will be enemies

Alternate translation: [will be hostile against each other] or [will be rivals]

ULT **from inside your womb**
UST starting now even before they are born

Alternate translation: [starting now even while they are still inside you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
nations	future people groups
womb	are inside you
serve	serve

Genesis 25:24

ULT	UST
Then her days were fulfilled to deliver, and behold, twins were inside her womb.	*Later when it was time for Rebekah to give birth, sure enough, there were twin boys inside her!*

ULT **Then her days were fulfilled to deliver**
UST Later when it was time {for Rebekah} to give birth

Alternate translation: [Later when it was time for her to give birth]

ULT **and behold, twins {were} inside her womb**
UST sure enough, {there were} twin boys inside her

Alternate translation: [sure enough, there were twin sons inside her!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	Later when it was time for Rebekah
to deliver	to give birth
womb	inside her

Genesis 25:25

ULT	UST
And the first came out red; all of him was like a garment of hair, so they called his name Esau.	*The first one who was born was completely covered with thick red hair. So his parents named him Esau, which means "hairy."*

ULT **And the first came out red; all of him {was} like a garment of hair**

UST The first {one} who was born was completely covered with thick red hair

Alternate translation: [When the first baby came out, he was covered with thick red hair so that he was as hairy as a fur robe] or [The first baby who was born was completely covered with thick red hair]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **so they called his name**

UST So his parents named him

The Hebrew text has **they** here, which probably refers to Esau's parents and may include people in general after his parents named him. Alternate translation: [So he was named]

ULT **Esau**

UST Esau, which means "hairy

Consider whether or not to include the meaning of Esau's name in the text or in a footnote.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	So his parents named him
Esau	Esau

Genesis 25:26

ULT	UST
Then after that, his brother came out, and his hand was grabbing on to the heel of Esau, so he called his name Jacob. And Isaac was a son of sixty years when she bore them.	*Next his brother was born, with his hand grabbing on tightly to Esau's heel. So they named him Jacob, which means "heel-grabber." Isaac was sixty years old when Esau and Jacob were born.*

ULT **his brother came out**
UST his brother was born

Some languages have a specific term for a younger brother that fits here. See what you did in Genesis 4:2.

ULT **so he called his name**
UST So they named him

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 25 that probably has the same meaning.
Alternate translation: [So they called him] or [So he was named]

ULT **Jacob**
UST Jacob, which means "heel-grabber

If you decide to include the meaning of Jacob's name in the text or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate **grabbing** earlier in this sentence.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **And Isaac {was} a son of sixty years**
UST Isaac {was} sixty years old

See how you translated the idiom "was a son of … years" in verse 20.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **when she bore them**
UST when Esau and Jacob were born

Alternate translation: [when Rebekah gave birth to them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
called	So they named him
Jacob	Jacob
Isaac	Isaac
years	years
bore	when … were born

Genesis 25:27

ULT	UST
Then the boys grew up, and Esau became a man who knew hunting, a man of the field, and Jacob was a quiet man who stayed among the tents.	*When the boys grew up, Esau became a skilled hunter and he enjoyed being in the open country, but Jacob had a quiet personality and preferred to work at home.*

ULT **Then the boys grew up**
UST When the boys grew up

Alternate translation: [As the boys grew up]

ULT **and Esau became a man who knew hunting**
UST Esau became a skilled hunter

See how you translated a similar phrase **mighty hunter** in Genesis 10:9. Alternate translation: [Esau became a expert hunter] or [Esau became good at hunting animals for food]

ULT **a man of the field**
UST and he enjoyed {being} in the open country

Alternate translation: [and he preferred being in the open country] or [and he was an outdoorsman]

ULT **and Jacob {was} a quiet man**
UST but Jacob had a quiet personality

Make sure that it is clear in your translation that Esau and Jacob are being contrasted. Alternate translation: [but Jacob was a quiet man] or [Jacob, on the other hand, had a mild-mannered personality]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **who stayed among the tents**
UST and {preferred} to work at home

Alternate translation: [and worked close to home] or [and liked to be at home]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
knew	a skilled hunter
Jacob	Jacob
tents	and {preferred} to work at home

Genesis 25:28

ULT	UST
And Isaac loved Esau, because he liked game meat in his mouth, but Rebekah loved Jacob.	*Isaac's favorite son was Esau, because he liked to eat the meat of wild animals that Esau hunted, whereas Rebekah's favorite son was Jacob.*

ULT And Isaac loved Esau

UST Isaac's favorite son was Esau

The author assumes that readers will know that both parents loved both sons. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. The translation should not sound as though Isaac and Rebekah did not love both of their sons. Rather, they each had their favorite son. Alternate translation: [Isaac loved Esau most]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT And Isaac loved Esau, because {he liked} game meat in his mouth

UST Isaac's favorite son was Esau, because he liked to eat the meat of wild animals that Esau hunted

Make sure your translation of **he liked** refers here to Isaac, not Esau. For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this clause first in this sentence. Alternate translation: [Isaac liked to eat the meat of wild animals, so he favored Esau]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT but Rebekah loved Jacob

UST whereas Rebekah's favorite son was Jacob

See how you translated a similar clause earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [but Rebekah loved Jacob most]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac's
loved	Isaac's favorite son was
Esau	Esau
Rebekah	Rebekah's
loved	whereas Rebekah's favorite son was
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 25:29

ULT	UST
Now Jacob was cooking stew, and Esau came in from the field, and he was exhausted.	*One day when Jacob was making some soup, Esau came home from hunting out in the open country and he felt weak and hungry.*

ULT Now Jacob was cooking stew
UST One day when Jacob was making {some} soup

According to verse 34, this stew (or thick soup) was made out of lentils, which are a type of bean; it may also have had pieces of meat in it. Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce the first event in this episode (following the background information in verses 27–28). Alternate translation: [Once Jacob was making some stew] or [One day when Jacob was making some stew]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT and Esau came in from the field
UST Esau came home from {hunting out in} the open country

See how you translated **field** in verse 27. Alternate translation: [Esau came home from working out in the fields]

ULT and he {was} exhausted
UST and he {felt} weak and hungry

The Hebrew word for **exhausted** means Esau was very tired (perhaps even feeling faint) from his hunting or work, as well as hungry and thirsty from lack of food. Some languages have an idiom for this that fits well here. Alternate translation: [and he felt weak from hunger] or [and he was weak and hungry] or [very tired and hungry]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Esau	Esau

Genesis 25:30

ULT	UST
Then Esau said to Jacob, "Please let me devour some of that very red stuff because I am exhausted!" For that reason they called his name Edom.	*So Esau requested from Jacob, "Please let me have some of that very red soup because I feel weak and hungry!" That is why Esau's nickname was Edom, which means "red."*

ULT **Then Esau said to Jacob**
UST So Esau requested from Jacob

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin. Alternate translation: [So Esau asked Jacob]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Please let me devour**
UST Please let me have

Alternate translation: [Please let me eat]

ULT **some of that very red stuff**
UST some of that very red soup

Alternate translation: [some of that dark red stew you are making]

ULT **because I {am} exhausted**
UST because I {feel} weak and hungry

See how you translated **exhausted** in verse 29. Alternate translation: [because I am weak from hunger!] or [because I am hungry and weak!]

ULT **For that reason**
UST That is why

Alternate translation: [Because he said that]

ULT **they called his name**
UST Esau's nickname was

Frequently in the Hebrew text, this phrase has a general meaning and does not refer to someone specific. Alternate translation: [he is also called] or [they called him]

ULT **Edom**
UST Edom, which means "red

You could include the meaning of **Edom** in your translation or in a footnote so that it is clear why Esau was given that name.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
Jacob	Jacob
called	Esau’s nickname was
Edom	Edom

Genesis 25:31

ULT	UST
But Jacob said, "On this day sell your birthright to me."	*But Jacob replied, "First trade your rights as the oldest son to me for the soup, then I will give you some."*

ULT **But Jacob said**
UST But Jacob replied

Alternate translation: [But Jacob said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **On this day**
UST First

Alternate translation: [Today right now] or [Right now]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
day	First
birthright	your rights as the oldest son

Genesis 25:32

ULT	UST
And Esau said, "Behold, I am about to die! So for what use is that to me, a birthright?"	*Esau responded, "Look, I am about to die from hunger! So my birthright is of no use to me right now."*

ULT **And Esau said**
UST Esau responded

Alternate translation: [Esau said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold, I am about to die**
UST Look, I am about to die from hunger

Esau is using exaggeration here to emphasize how hungry he is. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Listen, I am so hungry that I feel like I am going to die!]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **So for what use {is} that to me, a birthright**
UST So my birthright is of no use to me right now

Esau uses a rhetorical question to emphasize his point about how hungry he is. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question works well here in your language. Alternate translation: [So how will my birthright benefit me if I die?] or [So my birthright is of no benefit to me right now!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
birthright	birthright

Genesis 25:33

ULT	UST
But Jacob said, "Swear to me on this day!" So he swore to him and sold his birthright to Jacob.	*Jacob insisted, "First make a vow to me today before God that your rights are now mine!" So Esau vowed to Jacob that he had traded his rights as the oldest son to him for the soup.*

ULT **Swear to me on this day**
UST First make a vow to me today {before God} that your rights are now mine

See how you translated "swear to me by God" in Genesis 21:23. Alternate translation: [First make an oath to me today before God that your rights are now mine!] or [You must first promise to me right now that you give your rights to me]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **So he swore to him**
UST So Esau vowed to Jacob

Make sure the way you translate this clause fits well with what Jacob just said. Alternate translation: [So he vowed to him] or [So Esau made an unbreakable vow to him]

ULT **and sold his birthright to Jacob**
UST that he had traded his rights as the oldest son to him for the soup

See how you translated "sell your birthright" in verse 31. Also see how Hebrews 12:16 is translated, which refers to the same event. Alternate translation: [that he had sold his rights as the firstborn son to Jacob for the stew] or [that he was selling his firstborn-son-rights to him in exchange for the stew]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Swear	vow
day	today
So he swore	vowed
birthright	his rights as the oldest son
Jacob	to him for the soup

Genesis 25:34

ULT	UST
Then Jacob gave to Esau bread and lentil stew, and he ate and drank, and got up and left. So Esau despised his birthright.	*Then Jacob gave Esau some of the lentil soup with some bread, and Esau quickly ate the meal and left. In that way, Esau treated his birthright carelessly as if it had no value.*

ULT **Then Jacob gave to Esau bread and lentil stew**
UST Then Jacob gave Esau {some of} the lentil soup with {some} bread

Consider again how you translated **stew** in verses 29 and 34. Lentils are small, round, flat, reddish-brown legume seeds that grow inside a pod (similar to peas or beans). If lentils are not known in your area, you could describe them as "a type of legume called lentils." Alternate translation: [Then Jacob gave Esau some bread and some of the lentil stew] or [Then Jacob gave Esau some of the lentil stew with some bread]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and he ate and drank, and got up and left**
UST and Esau {quickly} ate the meal and left

Consider what is the most natural way to translate this series of actions that happened quickly one after the other and shows how carelessly Esau treated his birthright. Alternate translation: [and Esau ate, drank, stood up, and left] or [and Esau hurriedly ate the meal and left]

ULT **So Esau despised his birthright**
UST In that way, Esau treated his birthright {carelessly} as if it had no value

See how you translated **birthright** in verses 31–33. Alternate translation: [So Esau showed that he did not value his rights as the firstborn son] or [In that way, Esau treated his birthright flippantly, as if it had little value]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Esau	Esau
bread	bread
Esau	Esau
So … despised	In that way … treated … carelessly as if it had no value
birthright	birthright

Genesis 26

Genesis 26:1

ULT	UST
Then there was a famine in the land, besides the earlier famine that was in the days of Abraham. So Isaac went to Abimelech, the king of the Philistines, to Gerar.	*Now there was another severe food shortage in the region. This was a different shortage from the one that had happened years before, while Abraham was still alive. So Isaac and his family went to the city of Gerar to ask for help from King Abimelech, who ruled over the Philistines.*

ULT **Then there was**
UST Now there was

Consider what is the best way in your language to begin this new episode.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **a famine**
UST another severe food shortage

See how you translated **famine** in Genesis 12:10. Alternate translation: [another famine] or [another extreme lack of food] or [another time of severe food shortage]

ULT **besides the earlier famine that was**
UST This was a different shortage from the one that had happened {years} before

Alternate translation: [in addition to the previous one that occurred] or [This was a different famine from the one that had happened years before]

ULT **So Isaac went**
UST So Isaac {and his family} went

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac went alone to the city of Gerar; the rest of his family lived with him.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to Abimelech, the king of the Philistines, to Gerar**
UST to {the city of} Gerar to {ask for help from} King Abimelech, who ruled over the Philistines

Be consistent here with how you translated “the city of Gerar” in Genesis 10:19; 20:1–2 and **Philistines** in Genesis 10:14; 21:32, 34. Alternate translation: [went for help to the Philistine king Abimelech, who lived in the city of Gerar]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
famine	another severe food shortage
land	in the region
famine	This was a … shortage
days	while Abraham was still alive
Abraham	Abraham
Isaac	Isaac
Abimelech	Abimelech
king	King
Philistines	Philistines
Gerar	Gerar

Genesis 26:2

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh appeared to him and said, "Do not go down to Egypt; live in the land that I tell you.	*Then Yahweh appeared to Isaac and commanded him, "Do not go to the country of Egypt, rather stay in this land where I tell you to live.*

ULT **Then Yahweh appeared to him**
UST Then Yahweh appeared to Isaac

See how you translated **appeared** in Genesis 12:7. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to refer to Isaac here with his name or a pronoun. Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh came to Isaac]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and said**
UST and commanded him

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin. Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and told him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Do not go down**
UST Do not go

Egypt was lower in elevation and also south of the land of the Philistines. Many translations leave that information implied. Alternate translation: [Do not go south] or [Do not travel]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to Egypt**
UST to {the country of} Egypt

Alternate translation: [to the land of Egypt]

ULT **live in the land that I tell you**
UST rather stay in this land where I tell you to live

Alternate translation: [but rather live in the land wherever I tell you to live] or [but rather live wherever I tell you to live]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Egypt	Egypt
land	land

Genesis 26:3

ULT	UST
Sojourn in this land, and I will be with you and bless you. For to you and to your offspring I will give all these lands, and I will confirm the oath that I swore to Abraham your father.	*Live as a foreigner in this region, and I will stay with you and prosper you. In fact, I will give all the surrounding regions to you and your descendants, and I will continue to keep the vow that I made to your father Abraham*

ULT **Sojourn**
UST Live as a foreigner

See how you translated this term in Genesis 12:10 and 19:9. You may need to translate it in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [You must live for a while] or [Stay temporarily as a foreigner]

ULT **and I will be with you**
UST and I will stay with you

This clause means that God will guide, help, and protect Isaac and provide for his needs. Alternate translation: [and I will be right beside you]

ULT **and bless you**
UST and prosper you

Alternate translation: [cause you and your family to prosper]

ULT **For to you and to your offspring I will give all these lands**
UST In fact, I will give all the {surrounding} regions to you and your descendants

Starting here (and continuing through verse 4) Yahweh explains how he will bless Isaac. Begin this sentence in a way that makes that clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [Indeed, I will give all the surrounding lands to you and your offspring]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **and I will confirm**
UST and I will continue to keep

Alternate translation: [and I will continue to fulfill]

ULT **the oath that I swore to Abraham your father**
UST the vow that I made to your father Abraham

Consider again how you translated **oath** in Genesis 24:8. It may be necessary to translate this word differently in different contexts. Alternate translation: [the promise that I made to your father Abraham]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	in … region
bless	and prosper you
and to your offspring	and your descendants
lands	the {surrounding} regions
I swore	I made
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 26:4

ULT	UST
And I will multiply your offspring as the stars of the heavens, and I will give to your offspring all these lands. And in your offspring all the nations of the earth will be blessed,	*that I will make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky. I will also give them all these regions. In fact, through your descendants I will bless all the people groups on the earth.*

ULT **And I will multiply**
UST that I will make … as numerous

Verse 4 gives the details of the oath that is referred to in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Yes, I will multiply] or [that I will multiply]

ULT **your offspring as the stars of**
UST your descendants … as the stars in

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 22:17. Alternate translation: [increase the number of your offspring so that they are as numerous as] or [make your offspring as many as] or [give you so many offspring that they will be as numerous as]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **as the stars of the heavens**
UST as the stars in the sky

Alternate translation: [as the number of stars in the sky]

ULT **to your offspring**
UST them

Alternate translation: [to your descendants] or [to them]

ULT **all these lands**
UST all these regions

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3.

ULT **in your offspring**
UST through your descendants

See how you translated this phrase and the following clause in Genesis 22:18. Alternate translation: [In fact, through your offspring] or [And because of your offspring] or [In fact, by means of your offspring]

ULT **And in your offspring all the nations of the earth will be blessed**
UST In fact, through your descendants {I} will bless all the people groups on the earth

The expression **will be blessed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [And in your offspring I will bless all the people groups on earth]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
multiply	that I will make … as numerous
your offspring	your descendants
heavens	sky
to your offspring	them
lands	regions
in your offspring	through your descendants
nations	the people groups on
earth	earth
blessed	bless

Genesis 26:5

ULT	UST
because Abraham obeyed my voice and kept my requirements, my commands, my decrees, and my laws."	*I will do all that because Abraham obeyed me and did everything that I ever commanded him to do."*

ULT **because**
UST I will do all that because

Verse 5 gives the reason that Yahweh will do everything that he says in verses 3 and 4. Alternate translation: [all because]

ULT **Abraham obeyed my voice**
UST Abraham obeyed me

The phrase **my voice** stands for what Yahweh said to Abraham and also represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: [Abraham always did what I told him]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and kept my requirements, my commands, my decrees, and my laws**
UST and did everything that I ever commanded {him} to do

This clause is another way of saying **obeyed my voice** (found in the previous clause), and emphasizes that Abraham always obeyed God in everything. Notice that the terms in this clause have much overlap in meaning. Alternate translation: [Yes, he kept all my requirements, including all my commands, decrees, and laws]
Support Reference: Parallelism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abraham	Abraham
my decrees	and did everything that I ever commanded {him} to do
laws	and did everything that I ever commanded {him} to do

Genesis 26:6

ULT	UST
So Isaac stayed in Gerar.	*Then Isaac did what God said and settled with his family in the city of Gerar.*

ULT So Isaac stayed in Gerar

UST Then Isaac {did what God said and} settled {with his family} in {the city of} Gerar

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac lived alone; the rest of his family lived with him. Alternate translation: [So Isaac obeyed what God commanded and stayed with his family in the city of Gerar]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
Gerar	Gerar

Genesis 26:7

ULT	UST
Then the men of the place asked about his wife, and he said, "She is my sister," because he was afraid to say, "She is my wife." He thought, "Lest the men of the place kill me on account of Rebekah, because she is beautiful of appearance."	*Now Rebekah was very beautiful, so the men in that city started asking Isaac about her. Isaac was afraid they might kill him in order to have her, so he lied and told them she was his sister.*

ULT **Then the men of the place asked about his wife**
UST so the men in that city started asking {Isaac} about her

Alternate translation: [After a while the men from that place started asking him about Rebekah] or [When the men from there started asking him about Rebekah]

ULT **and he said**
UST so he {lied and} told them

Alternate translation: [he said to them] or [he deceived them by saying]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **She {is} my sister**
UST she {was} his sister

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct quote or an indirect quote here. Alternate translation: [that she was his sister]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **because he was afraid to say, "{She is} my wife**
UST Isaac was afraid

See how you handled the previous quote in this sentence. Alternate translation: [He was afraid to say that she was his wife]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **He thought, "Lest the men of the place kill me**
UST they might kill him

See how you translated **the men of the place** earlier in this verse. Also consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here, and see what you did earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [He thought that the men of that city might kill him] or [He was afraid that the men in that place would kill him]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **on account of Rebekah**
UST in order to have her

Alternate translation: [because of Rebekah] or [so that they could take Rebekah]

> ULT **because she {is} beautiful of appearance**
> UST Now Rebekah {was} very beautiful

For some languages it may be better to put this clause first in this verse and say, “Now Rebekah was very beautiful, so the men in that city started asking Isaac about her. Isaac was afraid they might kill him in order to take/have her, so he lied and told them she was his sister.” Alternate translation: [because she is very beautiful]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
afraid	afraid
kill	kill
Rebekah	in order to have her
beautiful of	Now Rebekah {was} very beautiful

Genesis 26:8

ULT	UST
Then it happened, when the days had been long for him there, then Abimelech the king of the Philistines looked down from a window and saw that, behold, Isaac was laughing with Rebekah his wife.	*One day after Isaac had lived there a long time, the Philistines' King Abimelech looked down from a window of his palace and saw to his surprise that Isaac was showing affection to his wife Rebekah.*

ULT **Then it happened, when the days had been long for him there**
UST One day after Isaac had lived there a long time

Alternate translation: [One day when he and his family had been there a long time]

ULT **then Abimelech the king of the Philistines looked down**
UST the Philistines' King Abimelech looked down

Alternate translation: [Abimelech who was king over the Philistines looked out] or [King Abimelech looked out]

ULT **from a window**
UST from a window of his palace

Alternate translation: [from a window of his house]

ULT **and saw that, behold**
UST and saw to his surprise

In this context, **behold** means that King Abimelech was surprised at what he saw. Alternate translation: [and was surprised to see]

ULT **Isaac was laughing with Rebekah his wife**
UST that Isaac was showing affection to his wife Rebekah

There is a word play here in Hebrew (since **Isaac** and **laughing** come from the same root word). Isaac may have been laughing or flirting with Rebekah or physically touching her in an affectionate or intimate way, as a husband would do with his wife. Alternate translation: [that Isaac was flirting with his wife Rebekah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	day
Abimelech	Abimelech
king	King
Philistines	Philistines
Isaac	Isaac
Rebekah	Rebekah

Genesis 26:9

ULT	UST
So Abimelech called for Isaac and said, “Behold, she is really your wife! So how could you say, ‘She is my sister’?” And Isaac said to him, “Because I said, ‘I might die because of her.’”	*So Abimelech summoned Isaac and scolded him, “It is obvious that Rebekah is actually your wife! So why did you tell us that she is your sister?” Isaac answered him, “I said that because I thought someone might kill me in order to have her as a wife.”*

ULT **So Abimelech called for Isaac**
UST So Abimelech summoned Isaac

King Abimelech probably sent a servant to tell Isaac to come talk to him. Alternate translation: [So King Abimelech summoned Isaac] or [Then King Abimelech sent someone to bring Isaac to him]

ULT **and said**
UST and scolded him

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and scolded him by saying]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold, she {is} really your wife**
UST It is obvious that Rebekah {is} actually your wife

The word “behold” emphasizes what follows it. Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this term in this context. Alternate translation: [It is clear that she is actually your wife!]

ULT **So how could you say, ‘She {is} my sister**
UST So why did you tell us that she {is} your sister

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded direct quote (**She is my sister**) as a direct or indirect quote.
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **And Isaac said to him**
UST Isaac answered him

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Because I said, ‘I might die because of her**
UST I said that because I thought someone might kill me in order to have her as a wife

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [Because I thought that I might die because of her] or [I said that because I was afraid that someone might kill me in order to take her as a wife]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
called	So … summoned
Isaac	Isaac
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 26:10

ULT	UST
Then Abimelech said, "What is this you have done to us? One of the people might easily have lain with your wife, and you would have brought guilt on us!"	*Then Abimelech scolded him further, "You have treated us very badly! Sooner or later, one of my men could have slept with your wife, and you would have caused us to be guilty of adultery!"*

ULT **Then Abimelech said**
UST Then Abimelech scolded {him} further

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language to fit this context.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **What {is} this you have done to us**
UST You have treated us very badly

King Abimelech uses a rhetorical question here to show strong emotion and to emphasize that what Isaac did was wrong and should not have been done. Alternate translation: [Why did you treat us this way?] or [You should not have done this to us!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **One of the people might easily have lain with your wife**
UST Sooner or later, one of my men could have slept with your wife

See how you translated the idiom "lay with" in Genesis 19:32–35. It may be necessary to translate this in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Sooner or later, one of the men whom I rule could have slept with your wife] or [… had physical relations with your wife] or [… committed adultery with your wife]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and you would have brought guilt on us**
UST and you would have caused us to be guilty of adultery

The pronoun **us** in this verse refers to King Abimelech and the Philistines whom he ruled; it does not include Isaac. Alternate translation: [with the result that you would have brought punishment on us!]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
guilt	guilty

Genesis 26:11

ULT	UST
Then Abimelech ordered all the people by saying, "Whoever touches this man or his wife will surely be killed!"	*Then King Abimelech warned all his people, "I will definitely execute anyone who harms Isaac or his wife!"*

ULT **Then Abimelech ordered all the people by saying**
UST Then {King} Abimelech warned all {his} people

Alternate translation: [Then King Abimelech told all his people]

ULT **Whoever touches this man or his wife will surely be killed**
UST I will definitely execute anyone who harms Isaac or his wife

In this context **touches** is used as an idiom that means "harms in any way." Many languages have a similar idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: [If anyone harms this man Isaac or his wife in any way, I will surely have that person executed!] or [I will surely execute anyone who harms Isaac or his wife in any way!]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech

Genesis 26:12

ULT	UST
Then Isaac sowed seeds in that land, and in that year he obtained a hundredfold, and Yahweh blessed him.	*Isaac planted crops in that area, and that year he gathered a huge harvest that was a hundred times more than what he had planted. Yahweh continued to bless him,*

ULT **Then Isaac sowed seeds in that land**
UST Isaac planted crops in that area

The phrase “sow seeds” means to plant seeds by scattering them by hand on the ground in order to grow crops. If this method of planting is not known in your language area, you could translate this more generally and say, “planted seeds/crops” or “planted large fields with seeds/crops.” Alternate translation: [Isaac planted crops in that land]

ULT **and in that year he obtained a hundredfold**
UST and that year he gathered {a huge harvest that was} a hundred times more than what he had planted

Alternate translation: [and during that year he reaped a huge harvest that was a hundred times more than what he had planted] or [and that year he harvested a very large crop]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
sowed	planted
land	in … area
year	year
Yahweh	Yahweh
blessed	bless

Genesis 26:13

ULT	UST
And the man became great, and he continued to become even greater until he was exceedingly great.	*so that he became richer and richer until he was extremely wealthy.*

ULT **And the man became great, and he continued to become even greater**
UST so that he became richer and richer

Alternate translation: [In that way Isaac kept getting more and more wealthy] or [so that he grew richer and richer]

ULT **until he was exceedingly great**
UST until he was extremely wealthy

Alternate translation: [until eventually he was very rich]

Genesis 26:14

ULT	UST
And he had possession of flocks and possession of herds and many servants. So the Philistines envied him,	*He owned many sheep and cattle and he also owned many servants. As a result, the Philistines were jealous of Isaac.*

ULT **And he had possession of flocks and possession of herds**
UST He owned many sheep and cattle

See how you translated **flocks** and **herds** in Genesis 24:35. Alternate translation: [He had many flocks of sheep and herds of cattle] or [He had many sheep and cattle]

ULT **So the Philistines envied him**
UST As a result, the Philistines were jealous of Isaac

Alternate translation: [Because of that, the Philistines envied him] or [As a result, the Philistines were envious of him]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flocks	many sheep
herds	cattle
servants	servants
Philistines	Philistines
envied	jealous

Genesis 26:15

ULT	UST
and the Philistines stopped up all the wells that the servants of his father had dug in the days of Abraham his father and filled them with dirt.	*So they filled up with dirt all the wells that the servants of his father Abraham had dug while he was still alive.*

ULT **and the Philistines stopped up all the wells that the servants of his father had dug in the days of Abraham his father and filled them with dirt**

UST So they filled up with dirt all the wells that the servants of his father Abraham had dug while he was {still} alive

See how you translated **well** in Genesis 21:30–31.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Philistines	they filled up with
wells	wells
servants	servants
days	while he was {still} alive
Abraham	while he was {still} alive

Genesis 26:16

ULT	UST
Then Abimelech said to Isaac, "Go away from us, because you are more powerful than we are."	*Then King Abimelech said to Isaac, "Please move away from us, because you are so powerful that you are a threat to us."*

ULT Then Abimelech said to Isaac
UST Then {King} Abimelech said to Isaac

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: [Finally King Abimelech said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Go away from us
UST Please move away from us

Although King Abimelech is asking Isaac to leave, he is still trying to be polite. Alternate translation: [We want you to move somewhere else away from us]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT because you are more powerful than we are
UST because you are so powerful {that you are a threat} to us

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, "You are so powerful that we are afraid of you and want you to move away from us." Alternate translation: [because you are too powerful for us]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
Isaac	Isaac
you are … powerful	you are so powerful {that you are a threat} to us

Genesis 26:17

ULT	UST
So Isaac went from there and camped in the Valley of Gerar and settled there.	*So Isaac moved from the city of Gerar and pitched his tents in the Gerar Valley and stayed there for a while.*

ULT **So Isaac went from there**
UST So Isaac moved from {the city of} Gerar

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac moved by himself from the city of Gerar; his family moved with him. See what you did for similar cases in verses 1 and 6. Alternate translation: [So Isaac moved away from the city of Gerar with his family]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and camped**
UST and pitched his tents

Alternate translation: [and set up his tents]

ULT **in the Valley of Gerar**
UST in the Gerar Valley

Alternate translation: [in the valley near Gerar]

ULT **and settled there**
UST and stayed there for a while

Alternate translation: [and lived there for a while]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
Gerar	Gerar

Genesis 26:18

ULT	UST
Then Isaac returned and dug out the water wells that they had dug in the days of Abraham his father and that the Philistines had stopped up after the death of Abraham, and he called them names like the names that his father had called them.	*Then Isaac had his servants dig the dirt out of the wells that Abraham's servants had dug and that the Philistines had just filled with dirt. He gave the wells the same names that his father had given them.*

ULT **Then Isaac returned and dug out the water wells that they had dug in the days of Abraham his father**

UST Then Isaac {had his servants} dig the dirt out of the wells that Abraham's servants had dug

Isaac had his servants re-dig the wells; he did not do that work by himself.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and {that} the Philistines had stopped up after the death of Abraham**

UST and {that} the Philistines had {just} filled with dirt

Be consistent with how you spelled or translated **Philistines** in the book of Genesis. See 10:14; 21:32, 34; 26:1, 8, 14–15, 18. Alternate translation: [that the Philistines had plugged up with dirt after Abraham had died]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and he called them names like the names**

UST He gave the wells the same names

Alternate translation: [He gave those wells the same names] or [He named the wells with the same names]

ULT **that his father had called them**

UST that his father had given them

Alternate translation: [that his father had named them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
wells	wells
days	Abraham's servants had dug
Abraham	Abraham's
Philistines	Philistines
Abraham	אַבְרָהָם
called	He gave
called	had given

Genesis 26:19

ULT	UST
Then the servants of Isaac dug in the valley and found a well of living water there.	*Next Isaac's servants dug at a new place in the valley and discovered a source of fresh water there.*

ULT **and found a well of living water there**
UST and discovered a source of fresh water there

The phrase **living water** is an idiom that means the well was spring fed and was a source of continually flowing, fresh water to drink. Alternate translation: [and struck a spring of flowing water there]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servants	servants
Isaac	Isaac
well	a source of

Genesis 26:20

ULT	UST
But the herdsmen of Gerar quarreled with the herdsmen of Isaac, saying, "The water belongs to us!" So he called the name of the well Esek, because they disputed with him.	*But the herdsmen from the city of Gerar argued with Isaac's herdsmen and said, "That well is ours!" So Isaac named the well Esek, which means "argument," because they argued with him about it.*

ULT **The water {belongs} to us**
UST That well is ours

Consider whether it is best in your language to use a direct quote or an indirect quote here. Alternate translation: [That water is ours!] or [that the well belonged to them] or [that they owned that water]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **So he called the name of the well**
UST So Isaac named the well

Alternate translation: [So Isaac named that well]

ULT **Esek**
UST Esek, which means "argument

If you include the meaning of this well's name in your translation text or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translate **disputed** in the next clause. This word is different from the word for **quarreled** used earlier in verse 20, but it has the same meaning.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **because they disputed with him**
UST because they argued with him about it

The herdsmen from Gerar disputed with Isaac indirectly (verse 20b) when they quarreled with his herdsmen (verse 20a). Make sure in your translation that the two halves of this verse do not contradict each other. Alternate translation: [because they disputed with his herdsmen about it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the herdsmen of	the herdsmen from
Gerar	Gerar
quarreled	But … argued
the herdsmen of	s herdsmen
Isaac	Isaac
called	So Isaac named
well	well

Genesis 26:21

ULT	UST
Then they dug another well, but they quarreled over it too, so he called its name Sitnah.	*Then Isaac's servants dug another well, but Gerar's herdsmen argued with them about that one too, so Isaac named it Sitnah, which means "hostility."*

ULT **but they quarreled over it too**
UST but Gerar's herdsmen argued {with them} about that one too

Be consistent here with how you translated **quarreled** in the first part of verse 20. Alternate translation: [but once again the herdsmen from Gerar disputed with them about that well too]

ULT **so he called its name**
UST so Isaac named it

Alternate translation: [so he named it] or [So he named the well]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
well	well
quarreled	but Gerar's herdsmen argued with them
called	so Isaac named

Genesis 26:22

ULT	UST
Then he moved from there and he dug another well, and they did not quarrel over it, so he called its name Rehoboth, and he said, "Because now Yahweh has made space for us, and we will be fruitful in the land."	*Then Isaac and his family moved from there and he had his servants dig a third well. This time Gerar's herdsmen did not argue about it, so he named it Rehoboth, which means "space," because he said, "Finally Yahweh has provided space for us, so that we will prosper in the land."*

ULT **Then he moved from there**
UST Then Isaac {and his family} moved from there

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac moved by himself.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and he dug**
UST and he {had his servants} dig

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 18. Alternate translation: [and he had his men dig] or [and his servants dug]

ULT **another well**
UST a third well

Alternate translation: [a new well]

ULT **and they did not quarrel over it**
UST This time Gerar's herdsmen did not argue about it

Alternate translation: [but this time the herdsmen of Gerar did not quarrel about it] or [This time Gerar's herdsmen did not quarrel about it]

ULT **so he called its name**
UST so he named it

See how you translated this clause in verses 20 and 21. Alternate translation: [so he named the well] or [so he gave it the name]

ULT **Rehoboth**
UST Rehoboth, which means "space

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Rehoboth** in Genesis 10:11.

ULT **has made space for us**
UST has provided space for us

Alternate translation: [has provided room for us] or [given my family enough room to live]

> ULT **and we will be fruitful in the land**
> UST so that we will prosper in the land

Alternate translation: [so that we will flourish here in this land]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
so he called	so he named it
Yahweh	Yahweh
fruitful	so that we will prosper
land	land

Genesis 26:23

ULT	UST
Then from there he went up to Beersheba.	*From there Isaac and his family went south to the city of Beersheba.*

ULT **Then from there he went up to Beersheba**

UST From there Isaac {and his family} went south to {the city of} Beersheba

The word **up** refers to the fact that Beersheba is higher in elevation from where they were; it is also south in direction. Some translations leave that information implied. Alternate translation: [From there he and his family moved south to the city of Beersheba] or [One day he and his family moved from there to the city of Beersheba]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Beersheba	Beersheba
Beersheba	Beersheba

Genesis 26:24

ULT	UST
And Yahweh appeared to him during that night and said, "I am the God of Abraham your father. Do not be afraid, because I am with you. And I will bless you and multiply your offspring for the sake of Abraham my servant."	*That night Yahweh appeared to him and said to him, "I am the God whom your father Abraham serves. Do not be afraid, because I will always be with you. I will bless you and make your descendants numerous, just as I promised to Abraham, who serves me."*

ULT **And Yahweh appeared to him during that night and said**
UST That night Yahweh appeared to him and said to him

See how you translated **Yahweh appeared to him** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [That night Yahweh came to him and said to him]

ULT **I {am} the God of Abraham your father**
UST I {am} the God whom your father Abraham serves

Alternate translation: [I am the God whom your father Abraham worships] or [I am the God who takes care of your father Abraham]

ULT **Do not be afraid, because I {am} with you**
UST Do not be afraid, because I {will always be} with you

Some languages can do as the Hebrew text does and put the result clause **do not be afraid** before the reason (**I am with you**). Other languages prefer to put the reason before the result. Alternate translation: [I will always be with you, so do not be afraid]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And I will bless you**
UST I will bless you

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [I will prosper you]

ULT **and multiply your offspring**
UST and make your descendants numerous

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and multiply the number of your offspring] or [and make your offspring numerous] or [and give you many offspring]

ULT **for the sake of**
UST just as {I promised} to

Alternate translation: [because of my promise to] or [in order to keep my promise to]

ULT **Abraham my servant**
UST Abraham, who serves me

Alternate translation: [my servant Abraham]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
Abraham	Abraham
afraid	afraid
bless	bless
multiply	and make … numerous
your offspring	your descendants
Abraham	Abraham
servant	serves

Genesis 26:25

ULT	UST
Then he built an altar there and called on the name of Yahweh. And he pitched his tents there, and the servants of Isaac dug a well there.	*So Isaac built an altar there at Beersheba and worshiped Yahweh by name. He also set up his tents there, and his servants started digging another well there too.*

ULT **And he pitched his tents there**
UST He also set up his tents there

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 17. Alternate translation: [He also set up his camp there]

ULT **and the servants of Isaac dug a well there**
UST and his servants started digging {another} well there too

Notice that they did not finish digging this well until verse 32. Keep that in mind as you translate this clause.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
altar	altar
called	and worshiped … by name
Yahweh	Yahweh
tents	tents
servants	servants
Isaac	his servants
well	well

Genesis 26:26

ULT	UST
Then Abimelech came to him from Gerar, and Ahuzzath his friend, and Phicol the commander of his army.	*Then King Abimelech went to Isaac from the city of Gerar with his adviser Ahuzzath and his army commander Phicol.*

ULT **Then Abimelech came to him from Gerar**
UST Then {King} Abimelech went to Isaac from {the city of} Gerar

Alternate translation: [Then King Abimelech came to him from the city of Gerar]

ULT **and Ahuzzath his friend**
UST with his adviser Ahuzzath

King Abimelech's friend Ahuzzath was probably his adviser.

ULT **and Phicol the commander of his army**
UST and his army commander Phicol

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 21:22, 32. Alternate translation: [and his army captain Phicol]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Abimelech	Abimelech
Gerar	Gerar
friend	his adviser
the commander of	his army commander

Genesis 26:27

ULT	UST
And Isaac said to them, "Why have you come to me, since you hate me, and you sent me away from you?"	*Isaac asked them, "Why have you come to me, especially since you have been hostile toward me and forced me to move away from you?"*

ULT **Why have you come to me**
UST Why have you come to me

Isaac probably wants to know why King Abimelech and his men are there, but this may also be a rhetorical question that shows his strong emotion. Alternate translation: [Why did you come here]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **since you hate me**
UST especially since you have been hostile toward me

Alternate translation: [especially since you have treated me hatefully] or [especially since you have been hateful toward me]

ULT **and you sent me away from you**
UST and forced me to move away from you

Alternate translation: [and forced me to go away from you!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 26:28

ULT	UST
And they said, "We have clearly seen that Yahweh has been with you, so we said, 'There should be an oath between us'—between us and you. So let us cut a covenant with you,	*They answered him, "It is very obvious to us that Yahweh is with you and blessing you, and we decided that we should make a vow with you to live in peace with one another. So please let us make a peace treaty with you,*

ULT **And they said**
UST They answered him

Alternate translation: [They replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **We have clearly seen**
UST It is very obvious to us

Make sure your translation of the pronoun **we** does not include Isaac here. Alternate translation: [It is very clear to us]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **that Yahweh has been with you**
UST that Yahweh is with you and blessing you

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 3 and 24. Alternate translation: [that Yahweh is with you and prospering you]

ULT **so we said**
UST and we decided

Alternate translation: [so we said to each other] or [so we decided]

ULT **There should be an oath between us'—between us and you**
UST that we should make a vow with you to live in peace with one another

In the Hebrew text, the first **us** in this sentence includes Isaac, but the second **us** excludes him. Notice that in the first two alternate translations, the pronouns **us** and **we** exclude him, but in the third alternate, the pronoun **we** includes him. Alternate translation: [that there should be an vow between us and you] or [that we should make a vow to each other]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **So let us cut a covenant**
UST So {please} let us make a {peace} treaty

See how you translated **cut a covenant** in 15:18. Alternate translation: [So please let us make a peace agreement]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **with you**
UST with you and blessing you

Alternate translation: [with each other]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
oath	vow
covenant	a {peace} treaty

Genesis 26:29

ULT	UST
that you will not do evil against us, just as we did not touch you, and just as we did only good to you and sent you away in peace. Now you are blessed by Yahweh.”	*that you will never harm us, just as we never harmed you, but only treated you well and sent you away in peace. As a result, Yahweh has now blessed you.”*

ULT **that you will not do evil against us**
UST that you will never harm us

Here, **that you will not do evil against us** specifies the details of the covenant or treaty that they want Isaac to make with them. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **just as we did not touch you**
UST just as we never harmed you

See how you translated **touch** or “harm” in verse 11. Alternate translation: [just as we never harmed you in any way]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and just as we did only good to you**
UST but only treated you well

Alternate translation: [but only treated you kindly]

ULT **and sent you away in peace**
UST and sent you away in peace

Alternate translation: [and sent you away peacefully] or [and in a peaceful manner asked you to leave]

ULT **Now you are blessed by Yahweh**
UST As a result, Yahweh has now blessed you

Alternate translation: [Now because of that, Yahweh has greatly prospered you] or [As a result, Yahweh has now greatly prospered you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
evil	that you will never harm us
good	well
peace	peace
blessed	blessed
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 26:30

ULT	UST
Then he made a feast for them, and they ate and drank.	*Then Isaac prepared a feast, and they all ate and drank together.*

ULT **and they ate and drank**
UST and they {all} ate and drank together

In your translation it should not sound like the feast was only for King Abimelech and his men; Isaac ate with them.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
feast	feast

Genesis 26:31

ULT	UST
Then they got up early in the morning and swore to each other. Then Isaac sent them on their way, and they left from him in peace.	*Early the next morning they got up and made vows to one another that they would keep their treaty. Then Isaac said goodbye to them, and they went home from him in peace.*

ULT **Then they got up early in the morning**
UST Early the next morning they got up

See how you translated **got up early in the morning** in Genesis 20:8; 21:14, 22:3.

ULT **Then Isaac sent them on their way**
UST Then Isaac said goodbye to them

Alternate translation: [Then Isaac told them goodbye]

ULT **and they left from him in peace**
UST and they went home from him in peace

Alternate translation: [and they left him on peaceful terms and returned home]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and swore	vows
Isaac	Isaac
peace	peace

Genesis 26:32

ULT	UST
Then it happened on that day, the servants of Isaac came and told him about the matter of the well that they had dug and said to him, "We have found water!"	*That same day Isaac's servants came to inform him about the well that they had been digging and announced, "We have struck water!"*

ULT **Then it happened on that day**
UST That {same} day

Alternate translation: [On that same day] or [Later that same day]

ULT **about the matter of the well that they had dug**
UST about the well that they had been digging

This is the same well that Isaac's servants started digging in verse 25.

ULT **and said to him**
UST and announced

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **We have found water**
UST We have struck water

See how you translated **found** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [We have reached water!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
servants	servants
Isaac	Isaac
and told	to inform
well	well

Genesis 26:33

ULT	UST
So he called it Shibah. For that reason the name of the city is Beersheba to this day.	*So Isaac named the well Shebah, which means "vow." That is why even today the name of that city is still Beersheba, which means "well of the vow."*

ULT **So he called it Shibah**
UST So Isaac named the well Shebah, which means "vow

The name of this well can be spelled **Shibah** or "Shebah."
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **the name of the city {is} Beersheba to this day**
UST even today the name of that city {is} still Beersheba, which means "well of the vow

See how you translated **Beersheba** and its meaning in Genesis 21:31.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	So Isaac named
Beersheba	Beersheba
Beersheba	Beersheba
day	even today

Genesis 26:34

ULT	UST
And Esau was a son of forty years, and he took as a wife Judith the daughter of Beeri the Hittite, and Basemath the daughter of Elon the Hittite.	*When Esau was forty years old, he married two Hittite women: Judith, whose father was Beeri, and Basemath, whose father was Elon.*

ULT **And Esau was a son of forty years**
UST When Esau was forty years old

Consider again how you translated "a son of … years" in the book of Genesis. See 5:32; 11:10; 12:4; 16:16; 17:1, 17, 24–25; 25:20–21 and 26:34. Alternate translation: [Now Esau was 40 years old, and] or [When Esau was 40 years old]

ULT **and he took {as} a wife Judith the daughter of Beeri the Hittite, and Basemath the daughter of Elon the Hittite**
UST he married {two} Hittite women: Judith, whose father was Beeri, and Basemath, whose father was Elon

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Basemath was Esau's second wife, not Beeri's wife. Alternate translation: [he married a woman named Judith, who was the daughter of a Hittite man named Beeri, and he also married a woman named Basemath, who was the daughter of a Hittite man named Elon]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
years	years
Hittite	הַחִתִּי
Hittite	הַחִתִּי

Genesis 26:35

ULT	UST
And they were a grief of mind to Isaac and Rebekah.	*Isaac and Rebekah were very distressed that their son had married foreign women rather than a woman from their own religion and people.*

> ULT **And they were a grief of mind to Isaac and Rebekah**
> UST Isaac and Rebekah were very distressed that their son had married foreign women rather than a woman from their own religion and people

Alternate translation: [Those foreign women caused Isaac and Rebekah to be very distressed]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mind	were very distressed that their son had married foreign women rather than a woman from their own religion and people
Isaac	Isaac
Rebekah	Rebekah

Genesis 27

Genesis 27:1

ULT	UST
Then it happened, when Isaac was old and his eyes were too dim to see, then he called Esau, his older son, and said to him, "My son." And he said to him, "Behold me."	*One day when Isaac was an old man and he could no longer see, he sent for his older son Esau and said to him, "My son." Esau answered him, "Yes, sir?"*

ULT **Then it happened, when**
UST One day when

The events in chapter 27 happened about 23 years after the end of chapter 26. Make sure your translation begins this verse in a way that fits with that fact. Alternate translation: [Now when]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **Isaac was old**
UST Isaac was an old man

Alternate translation: [Isaac was very old]

ULT **and his eyes were too dim to see**
UST and he could no longer see

Isaac was either totally blind or so blind that he could not recognize people anymore (See: verses 18–27, 32–33). Alternate translation: [and his eyes were so weak that he could not see] or [and he was almost blind]

ULT **then he called**
UST he sent for

Isaac probably told a servant to go and tell Esau to come to him. Alternate translation: [he called for] or [he summoned]

ULT **And he said to him**
UST Esau answered him

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin. Alternate translation: [Esau replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold me**
UST Yes, sir

See how you translated the phrase **Behold me** in Genesis 22:1, 7, 11. Alternate translation: [Here I am] or [Yes, sir what is it?]
Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	he sent for
Esau	Esau

Genesis 27:2

ULT	UST
Then he said, “Behold, please, I am old; I do not know the day of my death.	*Then Isaac told him, “Please listen closely: I am an old man now and I do not know when I will die.*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Isaac told him

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold, please**
UST Please listen closely

Alternate translation: [Listen carefully, please:] or [Please listen carefully:]

ULT **I am old**
UST I am an old man now

See how you translated **old** or “an old man” in verse 1. Alternate translation: [I am very old]

ULT **I do not know the day of my death**
UST and I do not know when I will die

Alternate translation: [and I might die soon] or [and I might not live much longer]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
day	when

Genesis 27:3

ULT	UST
So now, please take your weapons, your quiver, and your bow, and go out in the field and hunt game for me.	*So then, get your bow and arrows, go out in the open country and hunt some deer meat for me.*

ULT **please take your weapons, your quiver, and your bow**
UST get your bow and arrows

Consider what is the most natural way to refer to a bow and arrows in your language. Alternate translation: [take your hunting gear, your quiver of arrows, and your bow] or [take your bow and arrows]

ULT **and go out**
UST go out

Alternate translation: [then go out]

ULT **in the field**
UST in the open country

See how you translated **the field** in Genesis 25:27. Alternate translation: [to the fields] or [to the open country]

ULT **and hunt game for me**
UST and hunt {some} deer {meat} for me

See how you translated **game** in Genesis 25:28. Alternate translation: [and hunt some wild animal meat for me] or [and go hunting for me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and your bow	bow and arrows

Genesis 27:4

ULT	UST
Then prepare tasty food for me such as I love, and bring it to me so I can eat it, so that my soul can bless you before I die."	*Next use the meat to cook a delicious meal for me the way that I like it, and bring it to me to eat so that I can bless you before I die."*

ULT **Then prepare**
UST Next {use the meat to} cook

For some languages it may be necessary to make explicit more of the steps that Esau needs to take to prepare the meal, so that it does not sound like the animal would be eaten alive or uncooked. Alternate translation: [Then use the meat to cook] or [Next butcher the deer and cook]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **tasty food for me**
UST a delicious meal for me

Alternate translation: [some tasty food for me] or [a tasty meal for me]

ULT **such as I love**
UST the way that I like it

Alternate translation: [the kind I like best] or [just the way that I like it]

ULT **my soul can bless you before I die**
UST I can bless you before I die

Isaac uses the phrase **my soul** to refer to himself. Alternate translation: [before I die I can ask God to prosper you]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
love	I like it
bless	bless

Genesis 27:5

ULT	UST
And Rebekah was listening while Isaac spoke to Esau his son. Then Esau went to the field to hunt game to bring it back.	*Rebekah overheard what Isaac said to his son Esau. So after Esau had gone out to the open country to hunt,*

ULT **And Rebekah was listening while Isaac spoke to Esau his son**
UST Rebekah overheard what Isaac said to his son Esau

Your language may have its own term or expression for this relationship. The phrase **his son** probably recalls the fact that Esau was Isaac's favorite son (Genesis 25:28). However, make sure that your translation of this phrase does not imply that Esau was not also Rebekah's son. Alternate translation: [Rebekah overheard what Isaac said to their son Esau] or [Rebecca listened to what Isaac said as he spoke to his son Esau]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **Then Esau went {to} the field to hunt game to bring it back**
UST So after Esau had gone out to the open country to hunt

See how you translated **the field** and **hunt game** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [So after Esau went out to the country to get wild animal meat] or [So after Esau had left to go hunting in the open country]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	Rebekah
Isaac	Isaac
Esau	Esau
Esau	Esau

Genesis 27:6

ULT	UST
Then Rebekah said to Jacob her son, saying, “Behold, I heard your father speaking to Esau your brother, saying,	*she said to her son Jacob, “Listen, I just overheard your father tell your brother Esau*

ULT **Then Rebekah said to Jacob her son, saying**
UST she said to her son Jacob

The phrase **her son** probably recalls the fact that Jacob was Rebekah’s favorite son (Genesis 25:28). See how you translated “his son” in verse 5. Alternate translation: [Rebekah said to their son Jacob]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **Behold**
UST Listen

Alternate translation: [Listen to this:]

ULT **I heard your father**
UST I {just} overheard your father

Alternate translation: [I just heard your father]

ULT **speaking to Esau your brother, saying**
UST tell your brother Esau

Some languages have a special term for “older brother” that is used here. Alternate translation: [say to your brother Esau]
Support Reference: Kinship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	she
Jacob	Jacob
Esau	Esau

Genesis 27:7

ULT	UST
'Bring game for me and prepare tasty food for me so that I can eat it and I can bless you in the presence of Yahweh, before my death.'	*to get him some deer meat and use it to cook a delicious meal for him to eat. Then before he dies, he wants to bless Esau with Yahweh as his witness.*

ULT **Bring game for me**
UST to get him {some} deer meat

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate Rebekah's quote of Isaac in verse 7 as a direct quote or an indirect quote. Alternate translation: [to bring him some wild deer meat]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and prepare tasty food for me so that I can eat it**
UST and {use it to} cook a delicious meal for him to eat

See how you translated this clause in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and use it to cook a tasty meal for him to eat]

ULT **and I can bless you in the presence of Yahweh, before my death**
UST Then before he dies, he wants to bless Esau with Yahweh as his witness

Be consistent in translating the parts of verse 7 as either a direct quote (using first person pronouns) or an indirect quote (using third person pronouns). Alternate translation: [Then before he dies, he will ask Yahweh to bless Esau]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bless	bless
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 27:8

ULT	UST
So now, my son, listen to my voice, to what I command you.	*So then, my son, listen to me and do what I tell you to do.*

ULT **So now, my son**
UST So then, my son

See how you translated **So now** in verse 3. Also, make sure it is clear that Rebekah is no longer quoting Isaac's words (whether directly or indirectly). If necessary, you could begin this verse with: "Rebekah continued," or "Then Rebekah said to Jacob," Alternate translation: [Now son]

ULT **listen to my voice**
UST listen to me

See how you translated **my voice** in Genesis 26:5.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to what I command you**
UST and do what I tell you to do

Alternate translation: [and obey me]

Genesis 27:9

ULT	UST
Please go to the flock and bring to me from there two good kids of the goats so that I will prepare from them tasty food for your father such as he loves.	*Please go out to our flock of goats and get for me two of the best young goats. I will use the meat from them to cook a delicious meal for your father, just the way that he likes it.*

ULT **Please go to the flock**
UST Please go {out} to our flock of goats

Alternate translation: [Go to our flock of goats]

ULT **and bring to me from there**
UST and get for me

Alternate translation: [and bring me]

ULT **two good kids of the goats**
UST two of the best young goats

Alternate translation: [two fine kid goats] or [two of our best kid goats]

ULT **so that I will prepare from them**
UST I will {use the meat from them to} cook

Alternate translation: [so that I can use the meat from them to cook] or [I will use their meat to cook]

ULT **tasty food for your father**
UST a delicious meal for your father

See how you translated "prepare some tasty food for" in verses 4 and 7. Alternate translation: [some savory food for your father] or [a tasty meal for your father]

ULT **such as he loves**
UST just the way that he likes it

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: [the kind he likes best]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flock	flock
good	best
kids	goats
goats	goats
loves	he likes it

Genesis 27:10

ULT	UST
Then you take it to your father, and he will eat it, so that he will bless you before his death.”	*Then you can take the meal to your father to eat, so that he will bless you before he dies.”*

ULT **Then you take it to your father**
UST Then you can take the meal to your father

Alternate translation: [Then you can take the food to your father]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bless	bless

Genesis 27:11

ULT	UST
Then Jacob said to Rebekah his mother, "Behold, Esau my brother is a hairy man, but I am a smooth man.	*But Jacob responded to his mother, "As you know, my brother Esau has hairy skin, but I have smooth skin.*

ULT **Then Jacob said**
UST But Jacob responded

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **to Rebekah his mother**
UST to his mother

Alternate translation: [to her]

ULT **Behold**
UST As you know

Alternate translation: [Look] or [Remember that]

ULT **Esau my brother**
UST my brother Esau

See how you translated **brother** in verse 11.

ULT **is a hairy man**
UST has hairy skin

See how you talked about Esau's hairy body in Genesis 25:25. Alternate translation: [has a lot of hair on his body]

ULT **but I {am} a smooth man**
UST but I have smooth skin

Alternate translation: [but I have non-hairy skin] or [but I am not hairy]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Rebekah	רִבְקָה
Esau	Esau

Genesis 27:12

ULT	UST
Suppose my father touches me? Then I will be in his eyes as a deceiver, and I will bring a curse on me and not a blessing."	*What if my father feels my skin? He will recognize me and realize that I am trying to deceive him. Then he will curse me instead of blessing me."*

ULT **Suppose**
UST What if

Alternate translation: [What would happen if] or [I am afraid of what will happen if]

ULT **my father touches me**
UST my father feels my skin

If this sentence is translated as a statement, you could end it with a period or an exclamation point to show that Jacob is worried. Alternate translation: [my father feels my arms]

ULT **Then I will be in his eyes as a deceiver**
UST He will {recognize me and} realize that I am trying to deceive him

Make sure that your translation of verse 12 describes a hypothetical situation, not something that had happened yet. Some languages have a special verb form (such as "would") to communicate this. Alternate translation: [Certainly he would recognize me and know that I am trying to trick him]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **and I will bring a curse on me and not a blessing**
UST Then he will curse me instead of blessing me

Alternate translation: [Then I would cause myself to be cursed instead of blessed]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curse	curse
blessing	blessing

Genesis 27:13

ULT	UST
But his mother said to him, "Let your curse be on me, my son. Just listen to my voice, and go get them for me."	*But his mother replied, "If that happens, may God curse me instead of you, my son. Just listen to me, and go get two goats for me!"*

ULT **But his mother said to him**
UST But his mother replied

Alternate translation: [But his mother responded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Let your curse be on me, my son**
UST If that happens, may God curse me instead of you, my son

His mother is using this possessive form to mean the curse Jacob fears his father might say against him. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Make sure that your translation of **your curse** does not sound like Jacob cursed someone. Also, for some languages it is more natural to put an address like **my son** first in this quote. Alternate translation: [My son, if your father curses you, may that curse fall on me and not on you]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **Just listen to my voice**
UST Just listen to me

Alternate translation: [Please just do what I say]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and go get {them} for me**
UST and go get {two goats} for me

Alternate translation: [and go and bring two goats to me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
curse	curse

Genesis 27:14

ULT	UST
So he went and got them and brought them to his mother. Then his mother prepared tasty food such as his father loved.	*So Jacob went to the flock and selected two goats and took them to her. Then she cooked a delicious meal the way that his father liked it.*

ULT So he went
UST So Jacob went to the flock

Alternate translation: [So Jacob went to their flock]

ULT and got them
UST and selected two goats

Alternate translation: [and got the goats] or [chose two goats]

ULT and brought {them} to his mother
UST and took {them} to her

Alternate translation: [and brought them to her]

ULT Then his mother prepared
UST Then she cooked

In some languages it is necessary to specify that the animal was killed and cut up before being cooked. See what you did for a similar case in verse 4. Alternate translation: [Then she had them butchered and she made] or [Then she used the butchered meat from the goats to cook]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT tasty food
UST a delicious meal

See how you translated this phrase in verses 4, 7 and 9. Alternate translation: [some savory food] or [a tasty meal]

ULT such as his father loved
UST the way that his father liked it

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 4 and 9. Alternate translation: [just the way that his father liked it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
loved	liked it

Genesis 27:15

ULT	UST
Then Rebekah took the best clothes of Esau her older son that were with her in the house and put them on Jacob her younger son.	*She also got her older son Esau's finest clothes that she had in the house and had her younger son Jacob put them on.*

ULT **Then Rebekah took**
UST She also got

Alternate translation: [She also took out]

ULT **and put them on Jacob her younger son**
UST and had her younger son Jacob put them on

Your translation should not sound like Rebekah dressed Jacob herself as if he were a little child. She probably gave him the clothes and asked him to put them on himself. Alternate translation: [and gave them to her younger son Jacob to put on]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	רִבְקָה
Esau	Esau
house	house
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 27:16

ULT	UST
And she put the skins of the kid goats over his hands and over the smooth part of his neck.	*And she used the goat skins to cover Jacob's arms and the part of his neck that had no hair on it.*

ULT **And she put the skins of the kid goats over his hands and over**
UST And she used the goat skins to cover Jacob's arms and

See how you translated **skins** in Genesis 3:21. The skins still had the goat hair or fur on them.

ULT **the smooth part of his neck**
UST the part of his neck that had no hair on it

See how you translated **smooth** in verse 11. Alternate translation: [the non-hairy part of his neck]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kid	goat
goats	goat

Genesis 27:17

ULT	UST
Then she gave the tasty food and the bread that she had made into the hands of Jacob her son,	*Then she handed the delicious meal to Jacob, including some bread that she had baked.*

ULT Then she gave the tasty food and the bread that she had made into the hand{s} of Jacob her son

UST Then she handed the delicious meal to Jacob, including some bread that she had baked

Alternate translation: [Then Rebekah gave to him the savory goat meat dish and some bread she had made] or [Then she gave the tasty food to him, including some bread that she had made]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bread	bread
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 27:18

ULT	UST
and he went to his father and said, “My father.” And he said, “Behold me. Who are you, my son?”	*He took the meal to his father and said, “Father.” His father answered, “Yes? Which of my sons are you?”*

ULT **and he went to his father**
UST He took the meal to his father

Alternate translation: [Jacob took the meal to his father]

ULT **and said, “My father.” And he said**
UST and said, “Father.” His father answered

His father answered/replied.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold me. Who {are} you, my son**
UST Yes? Which of my sons {are} you

See how you translated **Behold me** in verse 1. It may be necessary to translate this in a different way here because the context is different. Alternate translation: [Here I am, my son. Who are you?] or [Yes? Which one of my sons are you?]

Genesis 27:19

ULT	UST
Then Jacob said to his father, "I am Esau, your firstborn. I have done as you told me. Please get up, sit and eat some of my game, so that your soul will bless me."	*Jacob replied to his father, "I am Esau, your oldest son. I have done what you requested me to do. So now please sit up and eat some of the deer meat that I have cooked for you, so that you can bless me."*

ULT **Then Jacob said to his father**
UST Jacob replied to his father

Alternate translation: [Jacob lied to his father]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I {am} Esau, your firstborn**
UST I am Esau, your oldest son

The author assumes that readers will know that the **firstborn** son had special rights, inheriting his father's authority and the largest portion of his father's estate. Jacob is deceitfully claiming those rights by using this term. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated this term in Genesis 25:13. Alternate translation: [I am Esau, your firstborn son]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **I have done as you told me**
UST I have done what you requested me to do

Alternate translation: [I have done what you told me to do]

ULT **Please get up, sit and eat some of my game**
UST So now please sit up and eat some of the deer {meat} that I have cooked for you

See how you translated "game meat" in verses 3, 5 and 7. Alternate translation: [So now, please sit up and eat some of the game meat that I have prepared for you]

ULT **so that your soul will bless me**
UST so that you can bless me

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 4.
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Esau	Esau
firstborn	your oldest son
bless	bless

Genesis 27:20

ULT	UST
Then Isaac said to his son, "How is this you were quick to find it, my son?" And he said, "Because Yahweh your God caused it to happen before me."	*But Isaac asked him, "How were you able to find the deer so quickly, my son?" Jacob answered, "Yahweh, who is the God who takes care of you, helped me to succeed."*

ULT **How {is} this you were quick to find {it}, my son**
UST How were you able to find {the deer} so quickly, my son

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to put the address **my son** first in this quote. Alternate translation: [How were you able to get the animal so quickly, my son?]

ULT **And he said**
UST Jacob answered

Alternate translation: [Jacob answered him]

ULT **Because Yahweh your God**
UST Yahweh, {who is} the God who takes care of you

Alternate translation: [I was successful because Yahweh, the God you worship]

ULT **caused {it} to happen before me**
UST helped me to succeed

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 24:12. Alternate translation: [helped me to hunt it] or [brought it to me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God

Genesis 27:21

ULT	UST
Then Isaac said to Jacob, "Please come close, so that I can touch you, my son, and know whether you are really my son Esau or not."	*Then Isaac said to him, "My son, please come here so that I can feel you and make sure that you are really my son Esau."*

ULT **Then Isaac said to Jacob**
UST Then Isaac said to him

Alternate translation: [But Isaac said to him]

ULT **Please come close, so that I can touch you, my son**
UST My son, please come here so that I can feel you

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to put the address **my son** first or earlier in this quote. Also see what you did in verses 13 and 20. Alternate translation: [Please come close to me, my son, so that I can touch you] or [My son, please come here so that I can touch you]

ULT **and know whether you are really my son Esau or not**
UST and make sure that you are really my son Esau

Alternate translation: [and be sure that you are really my son Esau] or [I want to know for sure whether or not you really are my son Esau]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
Jacob	him
Esau	Esau

Genesis 27:22

ULT	UST
So Jacob went close to Isaac his father, and he touched him and said, "The voice is the voice of Jacob, but the hands are the hands of Esau."	*So Jacob stepped closer to his father Isaac, and his father felt him and thought to himself, "Hmm, his voice sounds like Jacob's voice, but his arms feel like Esau's arms."*

ULT **So Jacob went close to Isaac his father**
UST So Jacob stepped closer to his father Isaac

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob came close to his father Isaac]

ULT **and he touched him**
UST and his father felt him

See how you translated **touch** or "feel" in verses 12 and 21. Alternate translation: [and his father touched him] or [and his father felt his arms]

ULT **and said**
UST and thought {to himself}, "Hmm

Alternate translation: [and said to himself]

ULT **The voice {is} the voice of Jacob**
UST his voice {sounds like} Jacob's voice

Alternate translation: [Hmm, he talks like Jacob]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **but the hands {are} the hands of Esau**
UST but {his} arms {feel like} Esau's arms

In Hebrew, the word for "hand" is the same word as for "arm." Isaac probably felt Esau's hands and arms. Alternate translation: [but he feels like Esau]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Isaac	Isaac
Jacob	Jacob
Esau	Esau

Genesis 27:23

ULT	UST
So he did not recognize him, because his hands were hairy like the hands of Esau his brother, and he was about to bless him.	*So Isaac was not able to identify who Jacob was because his arms felt hairy like his brother Esau's. Isaac was about to bless Jacob,*

ULT **So he did not recognize him, because his hands were hairy like the hands of Esau his brother**

UST So Isaac was not able to identify who Jacob was because his arms felt hairy like his brother Esau's

Be consistent here with how you translated **hands** or "arms" in verses 16 and 22. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to change the original order of clauses in this sentence.

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and he was about to bless him**

UST Isaac was about to bless Jacob

Alternate translation: [Then Isaac was prepared to bless him] or [Isaac was getting ready to bless him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau's
bless	bless

Genesis 27:24

ULT	UST
But he said, “Are you really my son Esau?” And he said, “I am.”	*but first he wanted to be completely sure, so he asked him, “Are you really my son Esau?” Jacob answered, “Yes, I am.”*

ULT **But he said**
UST but {first} {he wanted to be completely sure, so} he asked him

Alternate translation: [But he still was not certain, so he asked him] or [but first he wanted to be completely certain, so he asked him]

ULT **Are you really my son Esau**
UST Are you really my son Esau

Alternate translation: [Are you truly my son Esau?]

ULT **And he said**
UST Jacob answered

Alternate translation: [Jacob answered him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I am**
UST Yes, I am

Alternate translation: [Yes, I am Esau] or [Yes, Father I am]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau

Genesis 27:25

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Bring the food to me, and I will eat some of my son's game, so that my soul will bless you." Then he brought it to him, and he ate; and he brought wine to him, and he drank.	*So Isaac said to him, "Serve me the meal so that I can eat some of your deer meat and bless you." Then Jacob served the meal to his father and he ate it. Jacob also served him wine and he drank it.*

ULT **Then he said**
UST So Isaac said to him

Alternate translation: [So his father said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Bring {the food} to me**
UST Serve me the meal

Your translation of Isaac's request should sound polite, not rude or demanding. It should also not sound like he was begging or pleading. Alternate translation: [Please bring me the food]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **Then he brought {it} to him, and he ate**
UST Then Jacob served {the meal} to his father and he ate it

Alternate translation: [So Jacob brought the meal to his father, and he ate it]

ULT **and he brought wine to him, and he drank**
UST Jacob also served him wine and he drank it

See how you translated **wine** in Genesis 19:32–35. Alternate translation: [Jacob also brought him wine, and he drank it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bless	bless
wine	wine

Genesis 27:26

ULT	UST
Then Isaac his father said to him, "Please come close and kiss me, my son."	*Then Isaac said to Jacob, "Come here and kiss me, my son."*

ULT **Then Isaac his father said to him**
UST Then Isaac said to Jacob

Alternate translation: [Then Isaac said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Please come close**
UST Come here

See how you translated this phrase in verse 21. Alternate translation: [Come near to me]

ULT **and kiss me, my son**
UST and kiss me, my son

It was a Hebrew custom for relatives and close friends to greet each other with a kiss on each cheek. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to put the address **my son** first in this quote.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
kiss	kiss

Genesis 27:27

ULT	UST
So he went close and kissed him. And he smelled the smell of his clothes, so he blessed him and said, "See, the smell of my son is like the smell of a field that Yahweh has blessed!	*So Jacob went over to his father and kissed him on the cheeks. As he did that, his father recognized the fragrance of Esau's clothes, so he blessed him and said, "Ahh, my son, you smell wonderful like the fragrance of a field that Yahweh has caused to flourish!*

ULT **So he went close**
UST So Jacob went over to his father

See how you translated **went close** in verse 22. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob came close to his father]

ULT **and kissed him**
UST and kissed him on the cheeks

Alternate translation: [and kissed him on his cheek]

ULT **and said**
UST and said

Alternate translation: [by saying to him] or [He said to him]

ULT **See, the smell of my son is**
UST Ahh, my son, you smell

Some translations put the words of Isaac's blessing in poetry format (beginning here and through verse 29). Be consistent here with how your translation team decides to format passages like this. Alternate translation: [Ah, my son smells]

ULT **that Yahweh has blessed**
UST that Yahweh has caused to flourish

Alternate translation: [that Yahweh has caused to be very productive!]

ULT **so he blessed him**
UST so he blessed him

Alternate translation: [Then he blessed him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kissed	kissed
blessed	blessed
Yahweh	Yahweh
blessed	has caused to flourish

Genesis 27:28

ULT	UST
And may God give to you from the dew of the heavens and from the fatness of the earth, and an abundance of grain and wine.	*I ask God to provide you and your descendants plenty of rain from the sky for your crops and animals and riches from the earth, including abundant harvests and much wine.*

ULT **And may God give to you**
UST I ask God to provide you and your descendants

In the Hebrew text, **you** is singular in verses 28–29 and refers to both Jacob and his descendants. If necessary, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [May God give you and your descendants] or [I pray that God will give you and your descendants]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **from the dew of the heavens and from the fatness of the earth**
UST plenty of rain from the sky {for your crops and animals} and riches from the earth

Alternate translation: [plenty of dew from the heavens for your crops and animals and riches from the soil] or [plenty of rain and rich soil]

ULT **and an abundance of grain and wine**
UST including abundant harvests and {much} wine

Alternate translation: [including an abundance of food and drink] or [so that you have abundant food and much wine]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
heavens	sky
earth	earth
grain	harvests
wine	wine

Genesis 27:29

ULT	UST
May peoples serve you, and may nations bow down to you. Be master over your brothers, and may the sons of your mother bow down to you. May those who curse you be cursed, and may those who bless you be blessed."	*I also ask God to cause nations to serve and honor you and your descendants. You will rule over your brother's descendants, and they will submit to you and bow down to you. Whoever curses you God will curse, but whoever blesses you he will bless."*

ULT **May peoples serve you, and may nations bow down to you**
UST I also ask God to cause nations to serve and honor you and your descendants

If possible in your language, it is best to keep both halves of this parallelism, which is used to emphasize what Isaac is saying to Jacob. Alternate translation: [May people groups serve you and your descendants, and may they bow down to you in respect]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **Be master**
UST You will rule

Alternate translation: [May you rule] or [You will even rule]

ULT **over your brothers**
UST over your brother's descendants

Jacob only had one brother, so this phrase refers here to Esau and his descendants. Alternate translation: [over your brother and his descendants]

ULT **and may the sons of your mother bow down to you**
UST and they will {submit to you and} bow down to you

This clause is another way of referring to Jacob's authority over Esau and his descendants. Consider again how you translated the singular **you** in verses 28–29. You could use a plural **you** here or you could say "you and your descendants." Alternate translation: [and they will bow down to you in submission] or [Yes, they too will submit to you and bow down to you]
Support Reference: Parallelism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
serve	serve
bow down	and honor
master	You will rule
bow down	bow down
curse	curses
cursed	curse
bless	blesses
blessed	bless

Genesis 27:30

ULT	UST
Then it happened, just as Isaac finished blessing Jacob, and it happened, scarcely had Jacob just left from the presence of Isaac his father, then Esau his brother came in from his hunt.	*As soon as Isaac had finished blessing Jacob, and right after Jacob had left his father's presence, Jacob's brother Esau returned home from hunting.*

ULT **came in from his hunt**
UST returned {home} from hunting

Alternate translation: [came back from hunting]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
blessing	blessing
Jacob	Jacob
Jacob	Jacob
Esau	Esau

Genesis 27:31

ULT	UST
Then he too prepared tasty food, and he brought it to his father and said to his father, "Let my father get up and eat from his son's game so that your soul can bless me."	*Then he too cooked a delicious meal, and he took it to his father Isaac and said to him, "Father, please sit up and eat some of your son's deer meat so that you can bless me."*

ULT **Then he too prepared tasty food**
UST Then he too cooked a delicious meal

Consider again how you translated **prepared tasty food** in verses 4, 7, 9, 14, 31 and **tasty** in verse 17. Alternate translation: [Then Esau also cooked a tasty meal with the meat he had hunted]

ULT **and he brought {it} to his father**
UST and he took {it} to his father Isaac

Alternate translation: [and he carried it to his father Isaac]

ULT **and said to his father**
UST and said to him

Alternate translation: [and requested]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Let my father get up**
UST Father, {please} sit up

Esau's request to his father should sound polite in your translation, not rude or demanding.
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **and eat from his son's game**
UST and eat some of your son's deer meat

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Esau is referring to himself in this phrase.
Alternate translation: [and eat some of my wild animal meat]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **so that your soul can bless me**
UST so that you can bless me

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 4, 19, 25, and 31. Alternate translation: [and then you can bless me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bless	bless

Genesis 27:32

ULT	UST
But Isaac his father said to him, "Who are you?" And he said, "I am your son, your firstborn Esau."	*But his father asked him, "Which son are you?" Esau answered, "I am your oldest son Esau."*

ULT But Isaac his father said to him
UST But his father asked him

For some languages it is more natural to make **Isaac** explicit in verse 31 and leave it implied here in verse 32. Alternate translation: [Then his father asked him] or [But his father exclaimed]

ULT Who {are} you
UST Which son {are} you

Isaac knew from what Esau just said in verse 31 that one of his sons was talking to him. Also, Isaac is very upset, so some translations add an exclamation point after the question mark to help communicate that. Alternate translation: [Which of my sons are you?!]

ULT And he said
UST Esau answered

Alternate translation: [Esau answered him] or [Esau replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT I {am} your son, your firstborn Esau
UST I {am} your oldest son Esau

See how you translated **firstborn** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [I am your firstborn son Esau] or [I am Esau, your oldest son]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	יִצְחָק
firstborn	oldest
Esau	Esau

Genesis 27:33

ULT	UST
Then Isaac trembled a very great tremble, and he said, "Then who was it that hunted game and brought it to me? And I ate from it all just before you came, and I blessed him. Indeed, he will be blessed."	*Then Isaac became so upset that his body shook very violently, and he asked Esau, "Who was it then that hunted deer meat and brought a meal to me? I finished eating it just before you came, and I blessed him. So God will definitely bless him."*

ULT **Then Isaac trembled a very great tremble**
UST Then Isaac {became so upset that his body} shook very violently

Alternate translation: [Then Isaac became so upset that he shook very violently] or [Then Isaac was very upset, so that he began to shake all over]

ULT **Then who {was} it**
UST Who {was} it then

Alternate translation: [Then where is the one]

ULT **that hunted game and brought {it} to me**
UST that hunted deer meat and brought a meal to me

Consider again how you translated **game** in Genesis 27:3, 5, 7, 19, 25, 31 and 33. It may be necessary to translate it in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [who hunted game meat and brought a meal to me?] or [who brought to me a meal made from wild animal meat?]

ULT **And I ate from {it} all just before you came**
UST I finished eating it just before you came

Alternate translation: [Just before you came to me, I finished eating the meal] or [I finished eating it just before you came here]

ULT **and I blessed him. Indeed, he will be blessed**
UST and I blessed him. So God will definitely bless him

The expression **he will be blessed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [and then I blessed him. And God will surely bless him] or [Then I asked God to bless him, so God will definitely bless him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
trembled	Then Isaac {became so upset that his body} shook very violently
tremble	Then Isaac {became so upset that his body} shook very violently
blessed	blessed
blessed	bless

Genesis 27:34

ULT	UST
When Esau heard the words of his father, then he cried out a great and exceedingly bitter cry and said to his father, "Bless me, me too, my father!"	*When Esau heard what his father said, he shouted out with a very loud and distressed shout and begged his father, "Please bless me too, father!"*

ULT **When Esau heard the words of his father**
UST When Esau heard what his father said

Alternate translation: [When Esau heard what his father said to him]

ULT **then he cried out a great and exceedingly bitter cry**
UST he shouted out with a very loud and distressed shout

Alternate translation: [he burst out with an extremely loud and bitter cry] or [he was so upset that he yelled out loudly]

ULT **and said to his father**
UST and begged his father

Alternate translation: [and begged him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Bless me, me too, my father**
UST Please bless me too, father

For some languages it is more natural to put the address "My father" or "Father" first in this sentence. Alternate translation: [Father, please bless me too!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
cried out	he shouted out
cry	with a … shout
Bless	bless

Genesis 27:35

ULT	UST
And he said, "Your brother came in deceit and took your blessing."	*But his father responded, "Your brother came to me and tricked me and stole the blessing that I was planning to give you."*

ULT **And he said**
UST But his father responded

Alternate translation: [But his father replied to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Your brother came in deceit and took your blessing**
UST Your brother came {to me} and tricked {me} and stole the blessing that I was planning to give you

Alternate translation: [Your brother came to me and deceived me and stole the blessing that I was planning to give you] or [Your brother deceived me so that I blessed him instead of you!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in deceit	and tricked me
blessing	blessing

Genesis 27:36

ULT	UST
Then he said, “Is it because his name is called Jacob that he has defrauded me these two times? He took my birthright, and behold, now he has taken my blessing!” Then he said, “Have you not reserved a blessing for me?”	*Then Esau exclaimed, “The name Jacob fits him exactly, because he has tricked me like this two times now! First he stole my rights as the oldest son, and now look what he has done: he has stolen my blessing!” Then Esau begged his father, “Is there still a way you can ask God to bless me?”*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Esau exclaimed

Alternate translation: [Then Esau exclaimed angrily] or [When Esau heard that, he said angrily]

ULT **Is it because his name is called Jacob that he has defrauded me these two times**
UST The name Jacob fits him exactly, because he has tricked me like this two times now

Esau uses a rhetorical question here to show his strong emotion. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. To help readers understand why Esau said this about Jacob, you could include a footnote such as the following: The name **Jacob** means “heel-grabber” and can imply deception. He was given that name because when he was born he was grabbing hold of Esau’s heel (Genesis 25:26). Alternate translation: [It is no wonder that he is called Jacob, since he has cheated me two times!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **He took my birthright, and behold, now**
UST First he stole my rights as the oldest son, and now look what he has done

Alternate translation: [First he stole my rights as the oldest son, and now see what he has done:] or [Not only did he take my birthright, but now see what he has done:]

ULT **he has taken my blessing**
UST he has stolen my blessing

Alternate translation: [he has also stolen my blessing!] or [he has tricked you into blessing him instead of me!]

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Esau exclaimed

Alternate translation: [Then he begged his father] or [Then he pleaded with his father]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	The name Jacob fits him exactly
Jacob	Jacob
birthright	First … my rights as the oldest son
blessing	blessing
blessing	bless

Genesis 27:37

ULT	UST
But Isaac responded and said to Esau, "Behold, I have made him master over you, and I have given all his brothers to him as servants. And I have sustained him with grain and wine. So then, what can I do for you, my son?"	*Isaac answered, "Listen, I have already appointed Jacob to be your master. In fact, I have asked God to make it so that you and all your descendants will serve him and his descendants. Besides that, I have also blessed him with abundant harvests and wine. So then, there is no way left for me to bless you, my son!"*

ULT **But Isaac responded and said to Esau**
UST Isaac answered

Alternate translation: [Isaac replied to Esau] or [Isaac answered him]

ULT **and I have given all his brothers to him as servants**
UST In fact, I have asked {God to make it so} that you and all your descendants will serve him and his descendants

See how you translated **brothers** in verse 29. Alternate translation: [In fact, I said that you and all your descendants will serve him] or [In fact, I have asked God to make it so that you and your descendants will serve him and his descendants]

ULT **And I have sustained him with grain and wine**
UST Besides that, I have {also} blessed him with {abundant} harvests and wine

See how you translated **grain and wine** in verse 28. Alternate translation: [Besides that, I have also supplied him with abundant food and wine] or [I have also asked God to supply him with plenty of food and wine]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **So then, what can I do for you, my son**
UST So then, there is no way left for me to bless you, my son

Isaac uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that there is no blessing left for Esau. Alternate translation: [So, my son, there is no blessing left for you!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
Esau	לְעֵשָׂו
master	master
servants	serve
grain	Besides that … with {abundant} harvests
wine	wine

Genesis 27:38

ULT	UST
But Esau said to his father, "Is there one blessing that you have, my father? Bless me, me too, my father!" Then Esau lifted his voice and sobbed.	*But Esau continued to beg his father and say, "Father, is there not just one more way that you can bless me? Please bless me too, father!" Then Esau started crying loudly.*

ULT **But Esau said to his father**
UST But Esau continued to beg his father and say

Alternate translation: [But Esau continued to beg his father and said] or [But again Esau begged]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Is there one blessing that you have, my father**
UST Father, is there not {just} one more way that you can bless me

It may be more natural to put **my father** or "Father" first in this quote. See what you did in verse 34.

ULT **Bless me, me too, my father**
UST Please bless me too, father

See how you translated this sentence in verse 34. Alternate translation: [Father, please bless me too!]

ULT **Then Esau lifted his voice and sobbed**
UST Then Esau started crying loudly

See how you translated "lifted … voice and sobbed" in Genesis 21:16. Alternate translation: [Then Esau started sobbing loudly]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
blessing	bless
Bless	bless
Esau	Esau
and sobbed	Then Esau started crying loudly

Genesis 27:39

ULT	UST
Then Isaac his father responded and said to him, "Behold, your dwelling will be away from the fatness of the earth and away from the dew of the heavens from above.	*Finally his father said to him, "Listen, you and your descendants will live in a place where the land is not good for farming and where there is not much rain.*

ULT **Then Isaac his father responded and said to him**
UST Finally his father said to him

Alternate translation: [So his father Isaac said to him] or [His father replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold, your dwelling will be**
UST Listen, you {and your descendants} will live

What Isaac says in verses 39–40 applies to Esau and his descendants. See what you did for a similar case in verses 28–29.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **away from the fatness of the earth and away from the dew of the heavens from above**
UST in a place where the land is not good {for farming} and where there is not much rain

This could mean: (1) "in a place where the ground is not fertile and where there is very little rain." Alternate translation: [in a place where the land is not good for farming and where there is not much rain]; or (2) "of the fatness of the earth and of the dew of the heavens from above." Alternate translation: [in a place where the land is good for farming and where there is plenty of rain] See how you translated **fatness of the earth** and **dew of the heavens** in verse 28.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	יִצְחָק׃
earth	land
heavens	and where there is not much rain

Genesis 27:40

ULT	UST
And you will live by your sword, and you will serve your brother. But it will happen when you become restless, then you will break his yoke off of your neck."	*You and your descendants will have to fight battles to stay alive, and you will serve your brother and his descendants. But when you rebel against them, you will get free from their control over you."*

ULT **And you will live by your sword**
UST You {and your descendants} will have to fight battles to stay alive

The phrase **live by your sword** is an idiom that means Esau and his descendants will have violent conflict with others, often in order to survive. Alternate translation: [You and your descendants will survive by using your swords to protect yourselves] or [You and your descendants will continually be fighting battles with other peoples]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and you will serve your brother**
UST and you will serve your brother and his descendants

Alternate translation: [and you and your descendants will serve your brother and his descendants] or [and you and your descendants will be servants for your brother and his descendants]

ULT **But it will happen when you become restless**
UST But when you rebel against them

Consider again how you translated the singular **you** in verses 39–40. You could use a plural **you** here or you could say "you and your descendants." See what you did for a similar case in verses 28–29. Alternate translation: [But when you revolt against him]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **then you will break his yoke off of your neck**
UST you will get free from their control over you

The verbal image **break his yoke off of your neck** means that Esau and his descendants will be free from the control of Jacob and his descendants. A yoke is a wooden collar that is placed around the necks of work animals to control them as they pull a plow or cart. Alternate translation: [you will get free from his rule over you] or [you will no longer be under his rule]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sword	You {and your descendants} will have to fight battles to stay alive
serve	serve

Genesis 27:41

ULT	UST
Then Esau hated Jacob because of the blessing that his father had blessed him with, and Esau said in his heart, "The days of the mourning of my father are near; then I will kill Jacob my brother."	*After that Esau held a grudge against Jacob because their father had blessed him. So Esau thought to himself, "Soon my father will die; then after we bury him and mourn for him, I will kill my brother Jacob."*

ULT **Then Esau hated Jacob**
UST After that Esau held a grudge against Jacob

Alternate translation: [After that, Esau held a grudge against Jacob] or [Esau continued to be very angry at Jacob]

ULT **because of the blessing that his father had blessed him with**
UST because their father had blessed him

The author is repeating forms of the verb **blessed** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [because his father had given his blessing to Jacob] or [because their father had blessed Jacob instead of him]
Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **and Esau said in his heart**
UST So Esau thought to himself

Alternate translation: [So Esau said to himself]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **then I will kill**
UST I will kill

Alternate translation: [I am going to kill] or [I plan to kill]

ULT **The days of the mourning of my father are near**
UST Soon my father will die; then after we {bury him and} mourn for him

In that culture, they had the custom of mourning the death of a loved one for a certain period of time, anywhere from a week to a month or more. See how you translated **mourn** in Gen 23:2.
Alternate translation: [Soon my father will die, and we will have a time of mourning for him, then]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
Jacob	Jacob
blessed	blessed
Esau	Esau
days	Soon my father will die; then after we {bury him and} mourn for him
mourning	mourn
kill	kill
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 27:42

ULT	UST
But the words of Esau her older son were told to Rebekah, so she sent and called for Jacob her younger son and said to him, "Behold, Esau your brother is consoling himself about you, planning to kill you.	*But Rebekah heard about what her oldest son Esau was planning, so she sent for her youngest son Jacob and told him, "Listen, your brother Esau is planning to take revenge on you and kill you.*

ULT **But the words of Esau her older son were told to Rebekah**
UST But Rebekah heard about what her oldest son Esau was planning

It was probably a servant who told Rebekah about Esau's plan to kill Jacob. Alternate translation: [Then someone told Rebekah what Esau was saying so] or [Then Rebekah heard about what her older son Esau was planning, so] or [When Rebekah heard what Esau was planning to do]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **so she sent and called for Jacob her younger son**
UST so she sent for her youngest son Jacob

Alternate translation: [she sent for her younger son Jacob to come to her] or [she sent a messenger to tell Jacob to come to her] or [she summoned her son Jacob]

ULT **and said to him**
UST and told him

Alternate translation: [and warned him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold, Esau your brother is consoling himself about you, planning to kill you**
UST Listen, your brother Esau is planning to take revenge on you and kill you

Alternate translation: [Look your brother Esau is making himself feel better by planning to kill you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
But … were told	But … heard about
Rebekah	Rebekah
called	so she sent for
Jacob	Jacob
Esau	Esau
kill	kill

Genesis 27:43

ULT	UST
So now, my son, listen to my voice and get up, flee for yourself to Laban my brother in Haran!	*So then, my son, listen to me: Hurry and escape to the city of Haran to my brother Laban!*

ULT **So now, my son**
UST So then, my son

See how you translated **So now** in verses 3 and 8. Alternate translation: [Now son]

ULT **listen to my voice**
UST listen to me

See how you translated this phrase in verses 8 and 13. It may be necessary to translate it differently here because of the context. Alternate translation: [do what I tell you:]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and get up, flee for yourself**
UST Hurry {and} escape

Alternate translation: [get ready immediately and flee] or [Hurry and flee] or [Flee immediately]

ULT **to Laban my brother in Haran**
UST to {the city of} Haran to my brother Laban

For some languages, it is more natural to put the location (Haran) before the person who lives there (Laban). Alternate translation: [to my brother Laban who lives in the city of Haran!] or [to the city of Haran, to the house of my brother Laban!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
Haran	Haran

Genesis 27:44

ULT	UST
And stay with him for a few days until the fury of your brother turns away,	*Live with him for a short time until your brother is no longer angry with you.*

ULT **And stay with him for a few days**
UST Live with him for a short time

Alternate translation: [Stay with him for a short time]

ULT **until the fury of your brother turns away**
UST until your brother is no longer angry with you

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to end this sentence here or to continue the sentence into verse 45. Also, the phrase **turns away** is used here as an idiom that means "becomes less" or "goes away." Alternate translation: [until your brother is no longer furious with you]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	for a short time
fury	is no longer angry with you

Genesis 27:45

ULT	UST
until the anger of your brother turns away from you and he forgets what you have done to him. Then I will send and get you from there. Why should I also lose both of you in one day?"	*When he is not angry with you anymore and he forgets what you did to him, I will send word that it is safe for you to come back home from there. I do not want to lose both of you on the same day!"*

ULT **until the anger of your brother turns away from you**
UST When he is not angry with you anymore

Notice that the Hebrew word for **anger** here is different from the stronger word **fury** in verse 44. Alternate translation: [until his anger against you is gone] or [After a while, when your brother is no longer angry with you]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he forgets what you have done to him**
UST and he forgets what you did to him

Rebekah is not saying that Esau would totally forget what Jacob did, but that at some point he would not hold it against him anymore. Alternate translation: [and he no longer thinks about what you did]

ULT **Then I will send and get you from there**
UST I will send word that it is safe for you to come {back home} from there

Alternate translation: [I will send someone to tell you when it is safe to come back home]

ULT **Why should I also lose both of you {in} one day**
UST I do not want to lose both of you {on} the same day

Rebekah knew that if Esau were to kill Jacob, he himself would have been killed for that crime. Consider whether it is best in your language to use a rhetorical question or an exclamation to emphasize Rebekah's concern. Alternate translation: [I do not want both my sons to be killed!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day

Genesis 27:46

ULT	UST
Then Rebekah said to Isaac, "I am disgusted with my life because of the daughters of Heth! If Jacob takes a wife from the daughters of Heth like these, from daughters of the land, what would life be to me?"	*Then Rebekah complained to Isaac, "My life is very miserable because of our Hittite daughters-in-law whom Esau married! If Jacob were to also marry a local Hittite woman like that, I would not want to keep on living!"*

ULT **Then Rebekah said to Isaac**
UST Then Rebekah complained to Isaac

Alternate translation: [Soon after that, Rebekah said to Isaac]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I am disgusted with my life**
UST My life is {very} miserable

Rebekah is exaggerating how she feels to influence Isaac to do what she wants. Alternate translation: [I do not enjoy living] or [I am very upset]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **because of the daughters of Heth**
UST because of our Hittite daughters-in-law whom Esau married

To show that Rebekah is speaking with strong emotion, you could use an exclamation point at the end of this sentence and the following one. Alternate translation: [because of the Hittite women whom Esau married!]

ULT **If Jacob takes a wife from the daughters of Heth like these, from daughters of the land**
UST If Jacob were to {also} marry a local Hittite woman like that

Alternate translation: [If Jacob also marries a Hittite woman from around here]

ULT **what {would} life {be} to me**
UST I would not want to keep on living

Rebekah uses a rhetorical question and an extreme statement to emphasize how upset she would be if Jacob married a Hittite woman. Alternate translation: [my life will not be worth living!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	Rebekah
Isaac	Isaac
Heth	Hittite
Jacob	Jacob
Heth	Hittite
land	a local Hittite woman like that

Genesis 28

Genesis 28:1

ULT	UST
Then Isaac called for Jacob and blessed him, and commanded him and said to him, "Do not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan.	*So Isaac summoned Jacob, blessed him and told him, "You must not marry a Canaanite woman.*

ULT **Then Isaac called for Jacob**
UST So Isaac summoned Jacob

Alternate translation: [So Isaac sent for Jacob to come to him] or [Because of what Rebekah said, Isaac summoned Jacob]

ULT **and blessed him**
UST blessed him

For some languages it may be necessary to make it explicit that Jacob arrived. Alternate translation: [Then he blessed him] or [After he came, Isaac blessed him]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and commanded him and said to him**
UST and told him

Alternate translation: [and instructed him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Do not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan**
UST You must not marry a Canaanite woman

If the word "woman" is used here in your translation, make sure it refers to a virgin woman who has never been married, or is general enough to include that. Alternate translation: [Do not marry a woman who is a descendant of Canaan] or [You must not take a wife from among the Canaanite women] or [Do not marry a Canaanite woman]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
called	So … summoned
Jacob	Jacob
blessed	blessed
Canaan	Canaanite

Genesis 28:2

ULT	UST
Get up, go to Paddan Aram, to the home of Bethuel the father of your mother, and take a wife for yourself from there, from the daughters of Laban the brother of your mother.	*Instead you must go right away to the region of Paddan Aram, to the home of your mother's father, Bethuel, and marry one of your uncle Laban's daughters.*

ULT **Get up, go**
UST Instead you must go right away

See how you translated "get up" in Genesis 27:43. Alternate translation: [Rather get up and go]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **to Paddan Aram**
UST to {the region of} Paddan Aram

Be consistent here with how you translated **Paddan Aram** in Genesis 25:20. Alternate translation: [to the land of Paddan Aram]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and take a wife for yourself from there**
UST and marry

Alternate translation: [and find a woman from there to marry]

ULT **from the daughters of Laban the brother of your mother**
UST one of your uncle Laban's daughters

Laban was Rebekah's older brother. Some languages have a special term for this that is used here.
Support Reference: Kinship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to Paddan	to {the region of} Paddan
Aram	Aram
to the home of	to the home of
Bethuel	Bethuel
Laban	Laban

Genesis 28:3

ULT	UST
And may God Almighty bless you and make you fruitful and multiply you so that you become an assembly of peoples.	*I pray that God, who is all-powerful, will bless you and give you many children and increase the number of your descendants, so that you become the ancestor of a community of peoples.*

ULT **and make you fruitful**
UST and give you many children

Alternate translation: [and enable you to have many children]

ULT **and multiply you**
UST and increase {the number of} your descendants

See how you translated **fruitful and multiply** in Genesis 17:20. It may need to be translated in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [so that you have many descendants and]

ULT **so that you become an assembly of peoples**
UST so that you become {the ancestor of} a community of peoples

Alternate translation: [so that you become the ancestor of many ethnic groups] or [so that many people groups will descend from you] or [so that they become many ethnic groups]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Almighty	who is all-powerful
bless	bless
fruitful	and give you many children
multiply	and increase {the number of} your descendants
assembly	community

Genesis 28:4

ULT	UST
And may he give the blessing of Abraham to you, to you and to your offspring with you, so that you possess the land of your sojournings, which God gave to Abraham."	*I also pray that he will bless you and your descendants the same way that he blessed Abraham, so that you will own this land where you have been living as a foreigner, the same land which God gave to him."*

ULT **so that you possess the land of**
UST so that you will own this land

Alternate translation: [so that you will own the land] or [so that you will take possession of the land]

ULT **your sojournings**
UST where you have been living as a foreigner

See how you translated **land of your sojournings** in Genesis 17:8; it may be necessary to translate this differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [where you have been residing as a outsider] or [where you and your ancestors have been living as outsiders]

ULT **which God gave to Abraham**
UST the same land which God gave to him

Alternate translation: [the same land which God promised to him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blessing	bless
Abraham	Abraham
and to your offspring	I {also} pray that he will bless you and your descendants the same way that he blessed Abraham
possess	so that you will own
land	land
God	God

Genesis 28:5

ULT	UST
Then Isaac sent Jacob, and he went to Paddan Aram, to Laban, the son of Bethuel the Aramean and the brother of Rebekah, the mother of Jacob and Esau.	*Then Isaac sent Jacob on his way, so Jacob started traveling to Laban's house which was in the region of Paddan Aram. Laban was the son of Bethuel the Aramean and also the brother of Rebekah, who was Jacob and Esau's mother.*

ULT **Then Isaac sent Jacob**
UST Then Isaac sent Jacob on his way

Alternate translation: [Then Isaac said good-bye to Jacob]

ULT **and he went**
UST so Jacob started traveling

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like Jacob had already arrived at Paddan Aram. Alternate translation: [and he left to go] or [and Jacob started traveling]

ULT **to Paddan Aram, to Laban**
UST to Laban{'s house which was} in {the region of} Paddan Aram

Consider whether is more natural in your language to refer to Paddan Aram first or to Laban first in this sentence. Also see how you translated **to Paddan Aram** in verses 2 and 5. Alternate translation: [to the land of Paddan Aram, to Laban]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the son of Bethuel the Aramean**
UST Laban was the son of Bethuel the Aramean

Also, be consistent with how you spelled the name **Bethuel** in the book of Genesis. See 22:22–23; 24:15, 24, 47, 50; 25:20; 28:2, 5. Alternate translation: [who was the son of Bethuel the Aramean]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	Isaac
Jacob	Jacob
to Paddan	Paddan Aram
Aram	Paddan Aram
Laban	Laban's
Bethuel	Bethuel
Aramean	Aramean
Rebekah	Rebekah
Jacob	Jacob
Esau	Esau

Genesis 28:6

ULT	UST
Now Esau saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob and had sent him to Paddan Aram to take a wife for himself from there, and that when he blessed him, then he commanded him, saying, "Do not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan,"	*Now Esau had seen Isaac bless Jacob and send him to the region of Paddan Aram to marry a woman from there. As Isaac was blessing him, Esau heard him tell Jacob not to marry a Canaanite woman.*

ULT **to take a wife for himself from there**
UST to marry a woman from there

Alternate translation: [to marry a wife from among his relatives there]

ULT **and that when he blessed him, then he commanded him, saying**
UST As Isaac was blessing him, {Esau heard} him tell Jacob

See how you translated **commanded** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [and that as Isaac was blessing Jacob, he told him] or [As Isaac was blessing Jacob, Esau heard him direct him]

ULT **Do not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan**
UST not to marry a Canaanite woman

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this direct quote as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: [You must not take a woman who is a descendant of Canaan] or [that he must not choose a wife from among the Canaanite women]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
Isaac	Isaac
blessed	bless
Jacob	Jacob
to Paddan	to {the region of} Paddan
Aram	Aram
blessed	blessing
Canaan	Canaanite

Genesis 28:7

ULT	UST
and that Jacob listened to his father and to his mother and went to Paddan Aram.	*Esau also saw that Jacob obeyed their father and mother and started traveling to Paddan Aram.*

ULT and {that} Jacob listened to his father and to his mother
UST Esau also saw that Jacob obeyed their father and mother

Alternate translation: [and he also observed that Jacob obeyed his father and mother] or [Esau also noticed that Jacob obeyed his parents]

ULT and went to Paddan Aram
UST and started traveling to Paddan Aram

Alternate translation: [and immediately left to go to Paddan Aram]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
to Paddan	to Paddan
Aram	Aram

Genesis 28:8

ULT	UST
Then Esau saw that the daughters of Canaan were displeasing in the eyes of Isaac his father.	*That is when Esau realized that his father Isaac did not approve of his sons marrying Canaanite women.*

ULT **Then Esau saw that**
UST That is when Esau realized that

Alternate translation: [That is how Esau understood that]

ULT **the daughters of Canaan were displeasing in the eyes of Isaac his father**
UST his father Isaac did not approve of {his sons marrying} Canaanite women

Alternate translation: [his father Isaac did not want his sons to marry Canaanite women]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
Canaan	Canaanite
were displeasing	did not approve of {his sons marrying} Canaanite women
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 28:9

ULT	UST
So Esau went to Ishmael and he took as a wife Mahalath, the daughter of Ishmael, Abraham's son, the sister of Nebaioth, in addition to his wives who belonged to him.	*So in addition to the two wives he already had, Esau went to the family of Abraham's son Ishmael and married Ishmael's daughter Mahalath, whose brother was Nebaioth.*

ULT So Esau went to Ishmael

UST So … Esau went to the family of … Ishmael

Most likely Ishmael was already dead by this time, so that Esau went to the region where Ishmael's children and other descendants were living. Alternate translation: [Then Esau traveled to the clan of Ishmael]

ULT the sister of Nebaioth

UST whose brother was Nebaioth

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Nebaioth** in Genesis 25:13. Since Nebaioth was Ishmael's oldest child, Mahalath was his younger sister, probably from the same mother. Use a kinship term here in your language for **sister** or "brother" that fits with those facts. Alternate translation: [and who was the younger sister of Nebaioth] or [and whose older brother was Nebaioth]

Support Reference: Kinship

ULT in addition to his wives {who belonged} to him

UST in addition to the {two} wives he already had

For some languages it may be better to change the order of some of the clauses in this sentence and say, "So, in addition to the two wives he already had, Esau went to the family of Abraham's son Ishmael and married Ishmael's daughter Mahalath, whose brother was Nebaioth." Alternate translation: [besides the two wives he already had]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
Ishmael	Ishmael
Ishmael	Ishmael
Abraham	Abraham

Genesis 28:10

ULT	UST
And Jacob left from Beersheba and set out for Haran.	*After Jacob left from his family's home in the city of Beersheba, he started traveling to the city of Haran.*

ULT And Jacob left from Beersheba and set out

UST After Jacob left from {his family's home} {in the city of} Beersheba, he started traveling

Verse 10 refers back to verse 5, where Jacob had left his parents' home in Beersheba to go to Paddan Aram. Make sure your translation does not sound like he left a second time here in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Meanwhile Jacob had left the city of Beersheba and was traveling]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT for Haran

UST to {the city of} Haran

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob was heading toward the same place that his father had told him to go to in verse 2. The author assumed here that his audience knew that Haran was a city located in the Paddan Aram region. It may be helpful to include a map in your translation that shows the locations of the city of Haran and the region of Paddan Aram. Alternate translation: [toward the city of Haran in the region of Paddan Aram]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Beersheba	Beersheba
Beersheba	Beersheba
Haran	Haran

Genesis 28:11

ULT	UST
Then he reached a certain place, and he stopped there because the sun had gone. And he took one of the stones of the place and put it under his head, and he lay down in that place.	*That evening he reached a good place to sleep, so he stopped there for the night because the sun had set. He chose one of the stones that was there and used it as a pillow. Then he lay down and went to sleep.*

ULT **Then he reached a {certain} place, and he stopped there**
UST That evening he reached a {good} place {to sleep}, so he stopped there for the night

Alternate translation: [That evening he reached a good place to camp so he stayed the night there] or [Late that evening he came to a place where he stayed for the night]

ULT **because the sun had gone**
UST because the sun had set

For some languages it is more natural to put the information in this clause first in this sentence and say, “After the sun went down, he reached a good place to camp/sleep, so he stopped/ stayed there for the night.” Alternate translation: [because the sun had gone down]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And he took {one} of the stones of the place**
UST He chose {one} of the stones that was there

The way you translate “stone” should refer to something that would be large enough to support Jacob’s head, but not so large that it would be too heavy for him to lift. For example in English, a pebble is too small and a boulder is too big. Alternate translation: [He picked out a large flat stone that he found there]

ULT **and put it under his head**
UST and used it as a pillow

Alternate translation: [and rested his head on it as a pillow] or [and used it as a headrest] or [to use as a pillow]

ULT **and he lay down in that place**
UST Then he lay down and went to sleep

Alternate translation: [then he lay down there and went to sleep] or [Then he lay down there on the ground and went to sleep] or [then he went to sleep there]

Genesis 28:12

ULT	UST
And he dreamed, and behold, a stairway was set up on the earth and its top reached to the heavens, and behold, angels of God were ascending and descending on it.	*While he was dreaming, he saw a stairway. The bottom of the stairway was on the ground and its top reached up to heaven, and he saw God's angels going up and coming down on the stairway.*

ULT **And he dreamed**
UST While he was dreaming

Alternate translation: [And as he dreamed] or [As he slept, he had a dream and]

ULT **and behold, a stairway was set up on the earth**
UST he saw a stairway. The bottom of the stairway was on the ground

This **stairway** was wide enough for there to be angels moving up and down on it at the same time. Alternate translation: [he saw a staircase whose base was resting on the ground] or [he saw a staircase. The base of the stairway was on the ground]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and its top reached to the heavens**
UST and its top reached up to heaven

Alternate translation: [and the top of it went all the way up into the sky]

ULT **and behold, angels of God were ascending and descending on it**
UST and he saw God's angels going up and coming down on the stairway

See how you translated **angel** in Genesis 24:7, 40. Alternate translation: [and there were angels of God who were going up and down on the stairway]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dreamed	dreaming
earth	on the ground
heavens	heaven
angels	angels
God	God

Genesis 28:13

ULT	UST
And behold, Yahweh was standing above it, and he said, "I am Yahweh, the God of Abraham your grandfather and the God of Isaac. The land that you are lying on I will give to you and to your offspring.	*And there standing at the top of the stairway was Yahweh, and he said to Jacob, "I am Yahweh, the God whom your ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve. I will give you and your descendants this land that you are lying on.*

ULT **And behold, Yahweh was standing above it**
UST And there standing at the top {of the stairway} was Yahweh

The phrase **standing above it** could mean: (1) "at the top of the stairway." Alternate translation: [Then suddenly Yahweh was standing at the top of the stairway] or [And Yahweh was also there, standing at the top of the stairway]; or (2) "beside him." Alternate translation: [And look, the Lord was standing beside him] The interpretation that is not followed in your translation could be put in a footnote.

ULT **the God of Abraham your grandfather and the God of Isaac**
UST the God whom your ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve

Abraham was Jacob's grandfather and ancestor. Alternate translation: [the God whom your forefathers Abraham and Isaac serve] or [the God who takes care of your forefathers Abraham and Isaac]

ULT **The land that you are lying on I will give to you and to your offspring**
UST I will give you and your descendants this land that you are lying on

In the Hebrew text, "the land that you are lying on" comes first in this sentence in order to emphasize it and show its importance. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [The land where you are lying I am giving to you and your descendants] or [I will give you and your descendants this land that you are sleeping on]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God
Abraham	Abraham
God	whom your ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve
Isaac	Isaac
land	land
and to your offspring	and your descendants

Genesis 28:14

ULT	UST
And your offspring will be like the dust of the earth, and you will spread out to the west and to the east and to the north and to the south. And in you and in your offspring all the families of the earth will be blessed.	*They will be as numerous as the dust specks on the ground, so that they live throughout this land in every direction. Because of you and your descendants, I will bless all the families in the world.*

ULT **And your offspring will be**
UST They will be

Alternate translation: [And your descendants will be] or [You will have so many descendants that they will be]

ULT **like the dust of the earth**
UST as numerous as the dust {specks} on the ground

See how you translated **dust** in Genesis 13:16. Alternate translation: [as many as the dust specks on the ground]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and you will spread out**
UST so that they live throughout this land

In this clause **you** refers to Jacob's descendants. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [and your people will spread out] or [so that they expand their territory]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to the west and to the east and to the north and to the south**
UST in every direction

See how you translated the names of the directions "west," "east," "north," and **south** in Genesis 13:14. Notice that they are in a different order there. Alternate translation: [to the west, east, north, and south] or [to the north, south, east, and west]

ULT **in you and in your offspring**
UST Because of you and your descendants

Be consistent here with how you translated **your offspring** in Genesis 22:18 and 26:4. Alternate translation: [In you and your offspring] or [Because of you and your offspring] or [By means of you and your offspring]

ULT **And … all the families of the earth will be blessed**
UST I will bless all the families in the world

The expression **will be blessed** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you need to say who does the action, the context indicates that it is God. Alternate translation: [And … I will bless all the clans in the world]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your offspring	They will be
earth	the ground
and to the south	in every direction
and in your offspring	and your descendants
the families of	the families in
blessed	bless

Genesis 28:15

ULT	UST
And behold, I am with you, and I will watch over you in every place that you go, and I will bring you back to this land. For I will not leave you until I have done what I have spoken to you."	*Remember that I will always be with you. I will protect you wherever you go, and I will lead you back to this land. In fact, I will never leave you and I will do everything that I have promised you that I will do."*

ULT **And behold**
UST Remember that

Alternate translation: [Listen to this:]

ULT **I {am} with you**
UST I {will always be} with you

See how you translated **I am with you** in Genesis 26:24 and "I will be with you" in Genesis 26:3. Alternate translation: [I will always stay with you] or [I promise to always be with you and help you]

ULT **and I will watch over you**
UST I will protect you

Alternate translation: [I will guard you] or [I will take care of you]

ULT **in every {place} that you go**
UST wherever you go

Alternate translation: [everywhere that you go] or [wherever you live]

ULT **and I will bring you back to this land**
UST and I will lead you back to this land

Alternate translation: [and I will guide you back to this land]

ULT **For I will not leave you**
UST In fact, I will never leave you

Alternate translation: [In fact, I will never abandon you]

ULT **until I have done what I have spoken to you**
UST and I will do everything that I have promised you that I will do

Make sure your translation of **until** does not sound like God will only be with Jacob up to the time that he fulfills his promises. Rather the focus is on the period of time between now when God is speaking to Jacob and the time later on when Jacob would see the fulfillment of God's promises to him.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
watch	I will protect you
leave	leave

Genesis 28:16

ULT	UST
Then Jacob woke up from his sleep and said, "Surely Yahweh is in this place, but I did not know it!"	*Suddenly Jacob woke up from his dream and exclaimed to himself, "Yahweh definitely lives in this place, but I did not know it before now!"*

ULT **Then Jacob woke up from his sleep and said**
UST Suddenly Jacob woke up from his dream and exclaimed to himself

Alternate translation: [Suddenly Jacob woke up from his dream and said to himself] or [When Jacob woke up from his dream, he said to himself]

ULT **Surely Yahweh is in this place**
UST Yahweh definitely lives in this place

Alternate translation: [Certainly Yahweh is here in this place] or [Yahweh definitely lives here]

ULT **but I did not know it**
UST but I did not know {it} before now

Alternate translation: [but I did not realize it before now!] or [but I was not aware of that before!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Yahweh	Yahweh
know	know

Genesis 28:17

ULT	UST
So he was afraid and said, "How awesome this place is! This is nothing other than the house of God, and this is the gateway of heaven!"	*He was afraid, so he also exclaimed, "This is a terrifying place! This can only be God's house! It must be the entrance to heaven!"*

ULT **So he was afraid and said**
UST He was afraid, so he {also} exclaimed

Alternate translation: [He was afraid, so he also said]

ULT **How awesome this place is**
UST This is a terrifying place

The word **awesome** refers here to the terror that Jacob was feeling from being in the holy presence of Almighty God. Alternate translation: [This is an awesome place!] or [This place is terrifying!]

ULT **This is nothing other than the house of God**
UST This can only be God's house

Alternate translation: [It must be the house where God himself lives!]

ULT **and this {is} the gateway of heaven**
UST It {must be} the entrance to heaven

Alternate translation: [It can only be the gateway to heaven!] or [It must be the gateway to heaven!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
afraid	afraid
awesome … is	terrifying
house	house
God	God
gateway	the entrance to
heaven	heaven

Genesis 28:18

ULT	UST
Then in the morning Jacob got up early, and he took the stone that he had put under his head and stood it up as a pillar, and he poured oil on its top.	*Early the next morning Jacob got up, took the stone that he had used as a pillow and set it up on its end to mark the place where God had appeared to him. Then he poured some olive oil on top of the stone to dedicate the place to God.*

ULT **Then in the morning Jacob got up early**
UST Early the next morning Jacob got up

Alternate translation: [Jacob got up early the next morning]

ULT **and he took the stone that he had put under his head**
UST took the stone that he had used as a pillow

See how you translated **stone** and **under his head** in verse 11. Alternate translation: [took the stone that he had used as a headrest]

ULT **and stood it up**
UST and set it up on its end

Alternate translation: [and stood it up on its end]

ULT **as a pillar**
UST to mark the place where God had appeared to him

The word **pillar** refers here to a stone that is used to commemorate something. In this case, Jacob used a stone to mark and help him remember the place where God had appeared to him. Alternate translation: [as a marker] or [as a memorial stone] or [to mark that place where God had appeared to him]

ULT **and he poured oil on its top**
UST Then he poured {some} {olive} oil on top of the stone to dedicate the place to God

In Bible times people poured olive oil on a person's head or on objects (as here) to dedicate that person or object to God. Make sure that the way you translate **oil** does not refer to motor oil. Alternate translation: [Then he poured some olive oil on top of the pillar to dedicate the place to God]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
pillar	to mark the place where God had appeared to him
oil	oil

Genesis 28:19

ULT	UST
And he called the name of that place Bethel, even though Luz had been the name of the town at first.	*He named that place Bethel, which means "house of God." Previously the name of that town had been Luz.*

ULT **And he called the name of that place Bethel**
UST He named that place Bethel, which means "house of God

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Bethel** in Genesis 12:8 and 13:3.

ULT **even though Luz {had been} the name of the town at first**
UST Previously the name of that town had been Luz

Alternate translation: [even though originally that town was called Luz] or [Originally the name of that town had been Luz]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	He named
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel

Genesis 28:20

ULT	UST
Then Jacob vowed a vow, saying, "If God will be with me and watch over me on this road that I am walking on and give to me bread to eat and clothes to wear,	*Then Jacob made a vow to God and said, "God, if you will stay with me and protect me as I travel on this journey and if you provide me food to eat and clothes to wear,*

ULT **Then Jacob vowed a vow, saying**
UST Then Jacob made a vow {to God} and said

See how you translated a clause that has a similar meaning ("swear to …") in Genesis 21:23, 31. Alternate translation: [Then he made a pledge to God and said]

ULT **If God will be with me**
UST God, if {you} will stay with me

Since Jacob is making this vow to God, for some languages it is more natural to address God directly (as "you") throughout verses 20–22, rather than only in the last half of verse 22 (as the Hebrew text does). Alternate translation: [God, if you will be with me]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and watch over me**
UST and protect me

See how you translated **watch over** in verse 15. Alternate translation: [and guard me] or [and take care of me]

ULT **on this road that I am walking on**
UST as I travel on this journey

The way you translate this phrase should reflect that fact that Jacob's journey from his home to the city of Haran was about 725 kilometers (450 miles) long. Alternate translation: [on this long journey I am taking] or [as I travel on this long journey]

ULT **and give to me bread to eat and clothes to wear**
UST and if you provide me food to eat and clothes to wear

In this context **bread** refers to food in general, not just bread. Alternate translation: [and if you give me food to eat and clothes to wear] or [and if you provide me with food and clothes]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
vowed	vow
vow	vow
God	God
watch	and protect me
bread	food

Genesis 28:21

ULT	UST
and if I return in peace to the home of my father, then Yahweh will be God to me,	*so that I return safely to my father's home, then Yahweh, you will be the God whom I serve.*

ULT and {if} I return in peace
UST so that I return safely

Alternate translation: [and if I come back safely]

ULT to the home of my father
UST to my father's home

This phrase especially refers to Jacob's father's family members, not just the physical home.
Alternate translation: [to my family]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT then Yahweh will be God to me
UST then Yahweh, {you} will be the God whom I serve

Alternate translation: [then Yahweh, you will be the God whom I worship] or [then I will serve you Yahweh as my God]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
peace	safely
the home of	s home
Yahweh	Yahweh
God	God

Genesis 28:22

ULT	UST
and this stone that I have stood up as a pillar will be the house of God, and all that you give to me I will tithe a tenth to you."	*This stone that I have set up will be your house and mark the place that you appeared to me, and I will give back to you a tenth of everything that you give to me."*

ULT **and this stone that I have stood up {as} a pillar will be the house of God**
UST This stone that I have set up will be your house and mark the place that you appeared to me

See how you translated **as a pillar** in verse 18. Alternate translation: [This stone that I have set up will be your house and will mark this place where you appeared to me] or [and this memorial stone that I set up will remind people that you live here]

ULT **and all that you give to me I will tithe a tenth to you**
UST and I will give back to you a tenth of everything that you give to me

Consider again how you translated the way Jacob refers to Yahweh in verses 20–22; see the note about this at verse 20. Also see how you translated **tithe** in Genesis 14:20. Alternate translation: [and everything that you give to me, I will give a tenth of it back to you] or [and I will give back to you ten percent of everything that you give to me]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pillar	and mark the place that you appeared to me
house	house
God	your house
tenth	tenth

Genesis 29

Genesis 29:1

ULT	UST
Then Jacob lifted his feet and went to the land of the sons of the east.	*Then Jacob left Bethel and continued traveling until he came to the land in the east where various people from that land lived.*

ULT **Then Jacob lifted his feet and went**

UST Then Jacob left {Bethel} and continued traveling until he came

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob continued traveling until he came]

ULT **to the land of the sons of the east**

UST to the land in the east where various people from that land lived

This land was located east of the land of Canaan and included the region of Paddan Aram where Jacob's uncle Laban lived in the city of Haran (Genesis 27:43; 28:5). See how you translated **east** in Genesis 28:14. Alternate translation: [to the land in the east where various ethnic groups lived] or [to the region that was east of the land of Canaan where the eastern ethnic groups lived]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
land	land

Genesis 29:2

ULT	UST
And he looked, and behold, a well was in the field, and behold, three flocks of sheep were lying there near it, because from that well the flocks were watered, and the stone over the mouth of the well was large.	*When he arrived there, he looked around, and he saw a well in an open field. There were three flocks of sheep lying near the well waiting for water. That was the well that flocks drank water from, but there was a heavy, large stone covering the top of the well.*

ULT **And he looked**
UST When he arrived there, he looked around

Jacob was now near the city of Haran (verse 4), which was in the land east of Canaan (verse 1). Alternate translation: [Then he looked around] or [When he got there, he looked around] or [When he arrived at a place near the city of Haran, he looked around]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and behold, a well {was} in the field**
UST and he saw a well in an {open} field

The word **field** refers to an open area of land, not a fenced-in area. See how you translated this term in Genesis 25:27, 29. Alternate translation: [and he saw a well in an open area] or [and there in an open field was a well]

ULT **and behold, three flocks of sheep were lying there**
UST There were three flocks of sheep lying

Alternate translation: [He saw three flocks of sheep that were lying down] or [There were three flocks of sheep lying down]

ULT **near it**
UST near the well waiting for water

Alternate translation: [beside it] or [beside the well waiting for water]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **because from that well the flocks were watered**
UST That was the well that flocks drank water from

Alternate translation: [because that was the well where the shepherds got water for the flocks] or [That was the well that sheep drank water from]

ULT **and the stone over the mouth of the well {was} large**
UST but there was a {heavy,} large stone covering the top of the well

The implication is that **the stone** would have been very large and heavy and probably had been cut into a circular shape to cover the round opening of the well. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [but the stone covering the top of the well was large and heavy] or [but there was a heavy large stone over the opening of the well]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
well	well
flocks	flocks
sheep	sheep
well	well
flocks	flocks
well	well

Genesis 29:3

ULT	UST
And all the flocks would be gathered there, then they would roll the stone from over the mouth of the well and water the sheep. Then they would return the stone to its place over the mouth of the well.	*Every day shepherds would bring all the flocks of sheep there. They would work together to remove the stone from the top of the well and draw water for the sheep. Then they would put the stone back over the top of the well.*

ULT **And all the flocks would be gathered there, then they would roll the stone**
UST Every day shepherds would bring all the flocks {of sheep} there. They would {work together to} remove the stone

Verse 3 tells what happened regularly every day. Consider what is the best way to communicate this in your language. Also, be consistent here with how you translated **stone** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [Every day shepherds would bring all their flocks of sheep there. They would work together to roll the stone] or [After all the shepherds brought their flocks there, together they would remove the stone]

ULT **from over the mouth of the well**
UST from the top of the well

Alternate translation: [off the top of the well]

ULT **and water the sheep**
UST and draw water for the sheep

See how you translated **watered** in verse 2, and how you translated a different word that has a similar meaning **draw water** in Genesis 24:19–20. Alternate translation: [and get water from it for the sheep to drink]

ULT **Then they would return the stone to its place**
UST Then they would put the stone back

Alternate translation: [Then they would roll the stone back]

ULT **from over the mouth of the well**
UST from the top of the well

Alternate translation: [over the opening of the well]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flocks	flocks
well	well
sheep	sheep
well	well

Genesis 29:4

ULT	UST
Then Jacob said to them, "My brothers, where are you from?" And they said, "We are from Haran."	*Jacob asked the shepherds, "My friends, where do you live?" They replied, "We are from the city of Haran."*

ULT Then Jacob said to them
UST Jacob asked the shepherds

Alternate translation: [Jacob greeted the shepherds]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT My brothers
UST My friends

This is a polite, friendly idiom used as a greeting; it does not mean that the shepherds were actually Jacob's relatives. Many languages have a similar greeting. Alternate translation: [Friends]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT And they said
UST They replied

Alternate translation: [They replied to him] or [They answered him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT We {are} from Haran
UST We {are} from {the city of} Haran

Your translation should not sound like the city of Haran was far away from there; it was nearby. Alternate translation: [We live in the city of Haran]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Haran	Haran

Genesis 29:5

ULT	UST
Then he said to them, "Do you know Laban, the grandson of Nahor?" And they said, "We know him."	*So Jacob asked them, "Do you know Laban, Nahor's grandson?" They answered, "Yes, we do."*

ULT Then he said to them
UST So Jacob asked them

Consider what is the most natural way in your language to translate quote margins in a conversation that goes back and forth quickly like the one in verses 4–8. After the conversation gets started, it often sounds more life-like and natural to shorten the quote margins and leave implied some of the references to the people who are being talked to (as long as it is still clear who is talking to whom).
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT Do you know Laban, the grandson of Nahor
UST Do you know Laban, Nahor's grandson

Consider what is the best way to order this question in your language.
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT And they said
UST They answered

Alternate translation: [They replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT We know him
UST Yes, we do

Hebrew does not have a single word for "Yes," but rather repeats words from what was asked. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Yes, we know him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
Laban	Laban
Nahor	Nahor
know	Yes, we do

Genesis 29:6

ULT	UST
Then he said to them, "Are things well for him?" And they said, "Things are well. And behold, Rachel his daughter is coming with the sheep."	*So Jacob asked, "Is he doing well?" They answered him, "Yes, he is well. In fact, here comes his daughter Rachel now, bringing his sheep."*

ULT **Then he said to them**
UST So Jacob asked

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob asked]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Are {things} well for him**
UST Is he doing well

Jacob is asking about Laban's general well-being, not just his health. Alternate translation: [Are things going well for him?]

ULT **Things are well**
UST Yes, {he is} well

Alternate translation: [Yes, things are good for him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Are {things} well	Is he doing well
Things are well	Yes, {he is} well
Rachel	Rachel
sheep	sheep

Genesis 29:7

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Behold, the day is still large. It is not time for the livestock to be gathered. Water the sheep, and go pasture them."	*Then Jacob urged them, "Look, the sun is still bright, and it is too early to gather the flocks for the night. You ought to draw water for them and take them back out to the fields to graze some more."*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Jacob urged them

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob said to them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold, the day {is} still large**
UST Look, the sun is still bright

This is an idiom that means there are still many more hours of daytime left. Consider whether your language has an idiom for this. Alternate translation: [Look, it is still the middle of the day] or [Look, the sun is still high in the sky] or [There is still a lot of daylight left]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **It is not time for the livestock to be gathered**
UST and {it is} too early to gather the flocks for the night

Alternate translation: [so it is too soon to gather the flocks for the night]

ULT **Water the sheep**
UST You ought to draw water for them

For some languages it sounds too rude for Jacob to make a direct command here, so it is better to make this a suggestion or even a rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [You ought to get water for them] or [It seems like you should water your sheep] or [So why not water your sheep]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **and go pasture them**
UST and take {them} back out {to the fields} to graze some more

Alternate translation: [then take them back out to the fields to graze some more] or [then you can take them out to eat more grass]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	the sun is still bright
livestock	the flocks
sheep	them
pasture them	to graze some more

Genesis 29:8

ULT	UST
But they said, "We cannot, until all the flocks are gathered and they roll the stone from over the mouth of the well. Then we will water the sheep."	*But they replied, "We can not do that until all the shepherds are here with their flocks. Then together we will move the stone away from the top of the well and draw water for the sheep."*

ULT **But they said**
UST But they replied

Alternate translation: [But they said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **We cannot**
UST We can not do that

Alternate translation: [We have to wait]

ULT **until all the flocks are gathered**
UST until all the shepherds are here with their flocks

Alternate translation: [until all the shepherds have brought their flocks here]

ULT **and they roll the stone**
UST Then {together} we will move the stone

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the ones who are talking here are also shepherds. See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [and we all remove the stone]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **from over the mouth of the well**
UST away from the top of the well

See how you translated this phrase in verses 2 and 3. Alternate translation: [off the top of the well]

ULT **Then we will water the sheep**
UST and draw water for the sheep

Alternate translation: [and draw water for the flocks]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flocks	flocks
well	well
sheep	sheep

Genesis 29:9

ULT	UST
He was still talking with them when Rachel came with the sheep that belonged to her father, because she was tending them.	*While Jacob was still talking with the shepherds, Rachel arrived at the well with her father Laban's sheep; it was her job to take care of them.*

ULT **He was still talking with them**
UST While Jacob was still talking with the shepherds

Alternate translation: [While Jacob was still talking to the shepherds]

ULT **because she was tending them**
UST it was her job to take care of them

Alternate translation: [because she was the one who tended them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
sheep	sheep
was tending them	it was her job to take care of them

Genesis 29:10

ULT	UST
Then it happened, when Jacob saw Rachel, the daughter of Laban his mother's brother, and the sheep of Laban his mother's brother, then Jacob went over and rolled the stone from over the mouth of the well, and watered the sheep of Laban his mother's brother.	*As soon as Jacob saw Rachel the daughter of his uncle Laban with her father's sheep, he walked over to the well, removed the stone that covered it, and drew water for his uncle's sheep.*

ULT **Then it happened, when**
UST As soon as

Alternate translation: [When]

ULT **then Jacob went over**
UST he walked over to the well

Alternate translation: [he went over to the well]

ULT **and rolled the stone from over the mouth of the well**
UST removed the stone that covered it

Alternate translation: [and took the stone off the top of the well] or [removed the stone that was covering it]

ULT **and watered**
UST and drew water for

See how you translated **watered** in verses 2–3, 7–8, and in 24:14, 20. Alternate translation: [and got water for]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Rachel	Rachel
Laban	Laban
sheep	sheep
Jacob	יַעֲקֹב
well	that covered it
sheep	sheep
Laban	לָבָן

Genesis 29:11

ULT	UST
Then Jacob kissed Rachel and lifted his voice and cried.	*Then he kissed Rachel on her cheek and he was so happy that he started crying.*

ULT **Then Jacob kissed Rachel**

UST Then he kissed Rachel on her cheek

In that culture it was common to greet a relative with a kiss on the cheek (or both cheeks). However, if it would be offensive in your culture for Jacob to kiss Rachel here, you could translate this more generally (See: the second alternate translation above). Also see how you translated **kiss** in Genesis 27:26–27. Alternate translation: [Then he kissed Rachel on the cheek] or [Then he greeted Rachel enthusiastically as one of his relatives]

ULT **and lifted his voice and cried**

UST and {he was so happy that} he started crying

See how you translated the idiom **lifted his voice** in Genesis 27:38. However, here Jacob is crying because he is happy, not upset. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [and he started crying loudly because he was so happy]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	יַעֲקֹב
kissed	kissed
Rachel	Rachel

Genesis 29:12

ULT	UST
Then Jacob told Rachel that he was a relative of her father and that he was a son of Rebekah. Then she ran and told her father.	*Then he told her that he was her father's nephew, the son of her aunt Rebekah. So she ran home and told her father the news.*

ULT **Then Jacob told Rachel**
UST Then he told her

Consider what is the most natural way in your language to refer to Jacob and Rachel in this context.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **that he {was} a relative of her father and that he {was} a son of Rebekah**
UST that he {was} her father's nephew, the son of {her aunt} Rebekah

Consider whether it is best in your language to use an indirect quote here or a direct quote.
Alternate translation: [that her father Laban was his uncle and that her aunt Rebekah was his mother]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Then she ran and told her father**
UST So she ran home and told her father the news

Alternate translation: [Then she ran home and told her father the news] or [So she ran home to her father and informed him about Jacob]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	יַעֲקֹב
Then … told	Then he told
Rachel	her
Rebekah	Rebekah
and told	and told … the news

Genesis 29:13

ULT	UST
And it happened, when Laban heard the news about Jacob the son of his sister, then he ran to meet him. Then he embraced him and kissed him and brought him to his house. Then he told Laban all these things,	*When Laban heard about his sister's son Jacob, he ran out to greet him. Then he hugged him and kissed him on the cheeks and took him to his house. Then Jacob told Laban about himself and everything that had happened,*

ULT **And it happened, when Laban heard**
UST When Laban heard

Alternate translation: [When Laban found out] or [As soon as Laban heard]

ULT **the news about Jacob the son of his sister**
UST about his sister's son Jacob

Alternate translation: [that his nephew Jacob was there]

ULT **then he ran to meet him**
UST he ran {out} to greet him

Alternate translation: [he ran out to meet him]

ULT **Then he embraced him**
UST Then he hugged him

Alternate translation: [Then he hugged Jacob] or [He gave him a hug]

ULT **and kissed him**
UST and kissed him on the cheeks

See how you translated **kissed** in verse 11. Alternate translation: [and kissed him on his cheeks] or [and greeted him warmly as one of his relatives]

ULT **and brought him to his house**
UST and took him to his house

Alternate translation: [and took him back to his house] or [and took him home]

ULT **Then he told Laban all these things**
UST Then Jacob told Laban {about himself and} everything that had happened

Laban's response in verse 14 implies that Jacob told him about himself here in verse 13. Alternate translation: [Then he told Laban about himself and everything that had happened]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
Jacob	Jacob
house	house
Laban	Laban

Genesis 29:14

ULT	UST
and Laban said to him, "You are indeed my bone and my flesh!" Then he stayed with him a month of days.	*and Laban exclaimed to him, "There is no doubt that you are a close relative of my family!" After Jacob had stayed with Laban and worked for him for an entire month,*

ULT and Laban said to him
UST and Laban exclaimed to him

Alternate translation: [and Laban responded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT You {are} indeed my bone and my flesh
UST There is no doubt that you {are} a close relative of my family

This is an idiom that means Jacob is a close, biological relative of Laban. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom. Alternate translation: [You are definitely my own flesh and blood!] or [You are definitely my close relative!]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT Then he stayed with him
UST After Jacob had stayed with Laban and worked for him

Your choice here in verse 14 will determine whether or not this sentence continues into verse 15. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob stayed and served for Laban]

ULT a month of days
UST for an entire month

Alternate translation: [for thirty days]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
month	month
days	for an entire month

Genesis 29:15

ULT	UST
Then Laban said to Jacob, "Because you are my relative, should you then serve me for nothing? Tell me, what are your wages?"	*Laban said to him, "Just because you are my nephew, that does not mean that you should have to work for me for free! Tell me what you want me to pay you."*

ULT **Then Laban said to Jacob**
UST Laban said to him

Alternate translation: [Laban asked him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Because you {are} my relative, should you then serve me for nothing**
UST Just because you are my nephew, {that does not mean that} you should {have to} work for me for free

See how you translated **relative** in verse 12. This rhetorical question expects the implied answer "No, of course not!" Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a statement here instead. Alternate translation: [Just because you are my nephew, does that mean that you should work for me without pay?] or [Even though you are my relative that does not mean that you should have to work for me for free!] or [You should not have to work for me for nothing just because you are my nephew!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Tell me, what {are} your wages**
UST Tell me what you want me to pay you

Alternate translation: [So tell me what your wages should be] or [So tell me what you want me to pay you for your work]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
Jacob	to him
serve	that does not mean that you should {have to} work for me

Genesis 29:16

ULT	UST
Now Laban had two daughters. The name of the older was Leah, and the name of the younger was Rachel.	*Now Laban had two daughters: The name of the older one was Leah, and the younger one was Rachel.*

ULT **Now Laban had two daughters**
UST Now Laban had two daughters

Verses 16–17 introduce background information for what happens in the verses that follow that. Translate this in a way that is natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: [Now it so happened that Laban had two daughters:]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **The name of the older {was} Leah, and the name of the younger {was} Rachel**
UST The name of the older {one} {was} Leah, and the younger {one} was Rachel

Alternate translation: [The name of the older daughter was Leah, and the younger daughter was Rachel] or [The older one was named Leah and the younger daughter was named Rachel]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
Leah	Leah
Rachel	Rachel

Genesis 29:17

ULT	UST
And the eyes of Leah were delicate, but Rachel was lovely of form and beautiful of appearance.	*Leah had pretty eyes, but Rachel was extremely beautiful in every way.*

ULT **And the eyes of Leah {were} delicate**
UST Leah had pretty eyes

The word translated as **delicate** can have: (1) a positive meaning of "pretty," as in the UST. (2) a negative meaning of "weak." Alternate translation: [And Leah's eyes were dull]

ULT **but Rachel was lovely of form and beautiful of appearance**
UST but Rachel was extremely beautiful in every way

Alternate translation: [whereas Rachel was extremely beautiful in every way]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah
Rachel	Rachel

Genesis 29:18

ULT	UST
And Jacob loved Rachel, so he said, "I will serve you seven years for Rachel your younger daughter."	*Jacob was in love with Rachel, so he said to Laban, "I will work seven years for you if you will let me marry your younger daughter Rachel."*

ULT **And Jacob loved Rachel**
UST Jacob was in love with Rachel

Alternate translation: [Jacob had fallen in love with Rachel]

ULT **so he said**
UST so he said to Laban

Alternate translation: [so he responded to Laban]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I will serve you seven years**
UST I will work seven years for you

Jacob is offering seven years of work as the dowry or bride-price for Rachel. Translate this sentence in a way that reflects that.

ULT **for Rachel your younger daughter**
UST if you will let me marry your younger daughter Rachel

Alternate translation: [in exchange for your younger daughter Rachel as my wife] or [if you will give me your younger daughter Rachel to be my wife]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
loved	love
Rachel	Rachel
serve	I will work … for you
years	years
Rachel	Rachel

Genesis 29:19

ULT	UST
And Laban said, "It is better for me to give her to you than for me to give her to another man. Stay with me."	*Laban replied, "I agree to your terms. I would much rather give her to you to marry than give her to someone else. So stay here and work for me."*

ULT **It is better for me to give her to you than for me to give her to … man**
UST I agree to your terms. I would {much} rather give her to you {to marry} than give her to someone else

Alternate translation: [I agree to your terms. I would much rather give her to you to marry than give her to some other man]

ULT **Stay with me**
UST So stay here and work for me

Alternate translation: [So stay and work with me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
better	I agree to your terms. I would {much} rather give … to marry

Genesis 29:20

ULT	UST
So Jacob served seven years for Rachel, but in his eyes they were like a few days because of his love for her.	*So Jacob worked seven years for Laban so that he could marry Rachel, but he loved her so much that to him the time seemed to pass quickly like only a few days.*

ULT **So Jacob served seven years for Rachel**
UST So Jacob worked seven years {for Laban} so that he could marry Rachel

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob worked seven years for Laban so that he could have Rachel]

ULT **but in his eyes they were like a few days because of his love for her**
UST but he loved her so {much} that to him the time seemed {to pass quickly} like {only} a few days

For some languages it is more natural to switch the order of the clauses in this sentence so that the cause is mentioned before the effect (See: the second alternate translation above). Do what is most clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but to him it seemed like only a few days had passed because he loved her so much] or [but he loved her so much that to him the years seemed to pass quickly like only a few days]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
served	So … worked … for Laban
years	years
Rachel	Rachel
days	days
love	loved

Genesis 29:21

ULT	UST
Then Jacob said to Laban, "Give me my wife, because my days are completed, so that I may go to her."	*When the seven years were over, Jacob said to Laban, "Please let me marry your daughter Rachel now so that I can live with her as my wife, because I have finished my seven years of work for you."*

ULT **Then Jacob said to Laban**

UST When the seven years were over, Jacob said to Laban

Alternate translation: [After that, Jacob requested of Laban]

ULT **Give {me} my wife, because my days are completed, so that I may go to her**

UST Please let me marry {your daughter} {Rachel} {now} so that I can live with her {as} my wife, because I have finished my {seven} years {of work} for you

Consider what is the best order for the clauses in this sentence in your language. Also make sure that Jacob's request here sounds polite in your translation, not rude or demanding. It should also not sound like he was begging or pleading. Alternate translation: [Please let me marry your daughter Rachel now so that I can live with her as my wife, because I have finished my seven years of service for you] or [I have fulfilled the seven years of service that we agreed on, so please let me have your daughter Rachel so that I can marry her and live with her]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Laban	Laban
days	I have finished my {seven} years {of work} for you

Genesis 29:22

ULT	UST
Then Laban gathered all the people of the place and made a feast.	*So Laban invited all the local people and held a wedding feast.*

ULT **Then Laban gathered all the people of the place and made a feast**

UST So Laban invited all the local people and held a {wedding} feast

Consider what is the best way to order these events in your language. Alternate translation: [Then Laban gathered all the local people and held a wedding feast] or [Then Laban prepared a marriage feast and invited everyone who lived in town to attend]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
feast	feast

Genesis 29:23

ULT	UST
But it happened in the evening that he took Leah his daughter and brought her to him, and he went to her.	*But that evening Laban tricked Jacob and brought his daughter Leah to Jacob's tent instead of Rachel, so that he had marital relations with her.*

ULT **But it happened in the evening**
UST But that evening

Alternate translation: [However this is what happened that evening:]

ULT **that he took Leah his daughter and brought her to him**
UST Laban {tricked Jacob and} brought his daughter Leah {to Jacob's tent} instead of Rachel

Alternate translation: [Laban took Leah to Jacob instead of Rachel]

ULT **and he went**
UST so that he had marital relations

Make sure it is clear in your translation that **he** refers here to Jacob, not Laban. Alternate translation: [so he] or [so that Jacob]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and he went to her**
UST so that he had marital relations with her

Make sure that your translation of **he** refers here to Jacob, not Laban. See how you translated the euphemism **went to** in Genesis 16:4 (and "go to" in Genesis 16:2 and 29:21). Translate this in a way that is natural, clear, and acceptable for reading in public. Alternate translation: [so that he had sexual relations with Leah] or [so he slept with Leah] or [spent the night with her]

Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah

Genesis 29:24

ULT	UST
And Laban gave to her Zilpah his maidservant, to Leah his daughter, to be a maidservant.	*Laban also gave his female servant Zilpah to Leah to be her personal servant.*

ULT **And Laban gave**
UST Laban also gave

It is not clear in the Hebrew text when Laban gave Zilpah to Leah, so it is probably best to keep it that way in your translation. Some translations say that Laban “had already given” Zilpah to Leah before the wedding night. However according to Jewish history (outside the Bible), it was on the wedding night that Laban did this as part of his plan to deceive Jacob: Zilpah was younger than Bilhah, so everyone would expect her to be given to Rachel as the younger sister; seeing Zilpah (instead of Bilhah) would help Jacob think that his veiled bride was Rachel. Since we do not know for sure which interpretation is right, it is probably best to be like the Hebrew text and not specify when Laban gave Zilpah to Leah. Some translations put this verse in parentheses because it seems to interrupt the telling of the main events.
Alternate translation: [In addition, Laban gave]

ULT **to her Zilpah his maidservant, to Leah his daughter**
UST his female servant Zilpah to Leah

Alternate translation: [to Leah a female servant named Zilpah]

ULT **to be a maidservant**
UST to be {her} {personal} servant

Alternate translation: [to be her personal attendant] or [to serve her] or [to attend to her]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
Zilpah	Zilpah
maidservant	servant
Leah	לֵאָה
maidservant	servant

Genesis 29:25

ULT	UST
Then it happened in the morning, that behold, she was Leah! So he said to Laban, "What is this you have done to me? Was it not for Rachel that I served with you? So why have you deceived me?"	*But the next morning Jacob was shocked to see that it was Leah he had married! So he complained to Laban, "You have treated me very badly! You know that Rachel is the one I served you for! So why did you trick me?"*

ULT **Then it happened in the morning**
UST But the next morning

Alternate translation: [The next morning]

ULT **that behold, she {was} Leah**
UST Jacob was shocked to see that it was Leah he had married

Translate **behold** in a way that shows Jacob's surprise at finding out that he had married Leah instead of Rachel. Also, make sure that your translation of **she** refers here to Leah, not Zilpah (who was mentioned in verse 24). Alternate translation: [Jacob saw that his new wife was Leah!] or [Jacob was shocked to discover that it was Leah he had married!]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **So he said to Laban**
UST So he complained to Laban

Some languages use an honorific title such as "his father-in-law" here now that Jacob is married. Alternate translation: [So he complained to his father-in-law] or [So he rebuked Laban and said]

Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **What {is} this you have done to me**
UST You have treated me very badly

In this verse, Jacob uses rhetorical questions to communicate how angry and upset he is. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Also see how you translated this question in Genesis 12:18, 20:9, 26:10. Alternate translation: [Why have you treated me like this?]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Was {it} not for Rachel that I served with you**
UST You know that Rachel is the one I served you for

Alternate translation: [You know very well that I worked for you in order to marry Rachel!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **So why have you deceived me**
UST So why did you trick me

See how you translated a different word **deceit** that has a similar meaning in Genesis 27:35. Alternate translation: [So why did you deceive me?] or [Tell me why you tricked me!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah
Laban	Laban
Rachel	Rachel
served	served
deceived	did you trick me

Genesis 29:26

ULT	UST
But Laban said, "It is not done so in our place to give the younger before the firstborn.	*Laban replied, "It is not our custom here for the younger daughter to marry before the older daughter marries.*

ULT But Laban said
UST Laban replied

Alternate translation: [But Laban said to him] or [Laban responded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT It is not done so in our place
UST It is not our custom here

For some languages it is necessary to say what the custom is, rather than what it is not. For example, you could say, "Our custom/practice here is to wait until the firstborn/oldest daughter is married before we let the younger daughters/ones get married." Alternate translation: [It is not customary In our land] or [It is not the custom here]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT to give the younger
UST for the younger {daughter} to marry

Alternate translation: [to give the younger daughter in marriage] or [to marry off the younger daughter]

ULT before the firstborn
UST before the older {daughter} marries

Alternate translation: [before the oldest one marries]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
firstborn	the older {daughter} marries

Genesis 29:27

ULT	UST
Fulfill the week of this one, then we will also give you this one for service that you will serve with me for another seven years."	*So then, keep Leah as your wife and finish this week of celebrating your marriage to her. Then our family will also give you my younger daughter to marry if you will work for me for another seven years."*

ULT **Fulfill the week of this one**
UST So then, {keep Leah as your wife and} finish this week of celebrating your marriage to her

For some languages it may be necessary to make explicit the fact that it is assumed that Leah would still remain his wife. Only make this information explicit if it is necessary to avoid wrong meaning. Alternate translation: [So then, complete this week of celebrating your wedding to my daughter Leah]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **then we will also give you this one**
UST Then our family will also give you {my} younger daughter to marry

Alternate translation: [Then our family will also give you my other daughter to marry] or [Then you may also marry my other daughter]

ULT **for service that you will serve with me**
UST if you will work for me

See how you translated **serve** in verses 15, 18, 20, 21 and 25. Alternate translation: [in exchange for working for me]

ULT **for another seven years**
UST for another seven years

Alternate translation: [for seven more years]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
week	week
serve	if you will work
years	years

Genesis 29:28

ULT	UST
So Jacob did so, and he fulfilled the week for that one. Then he gave to him Rachel his daughter as a wife for him.	*So Jacob agreed with Laban and did what he said: he finished celebrating his marriage to Leah that week. Then Laban gave him his daughter Rachel to marry.*

ULT **So Jacob did so**
UST So Jacob {agreed with Laban and} did what he said

Alternate translation: [So that is what Jacob did:]

ULT **and he fulfilled the week {for} that one**
UST he finished celebrating his marriage to Leah that week

See how you translated **fulfill** in verse 27. Alternate translation: [he completed his wedding week with Leah]

ULT **Then he gave to him Rachel his daughter as a wife for him**
UST Then Laban gave him his daughter Rachel to marry

Alternate translation: [Then Laban gave Jacob his daughter Rachel to marry] or [Then Laban gave his daughter Rachel to Jacob to be his wife]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
week	week
Rachel	Rachel

Genesis 29:29

ULT	UST
And Laban gave Bilhah his maidservant to Rachel his daughter as a maidservant for her.	*Laban also gave his servant Bilhah to Rachel to be her servant.*

ULT And Laban gave
UST Laban {also} gave

See how you translated verse 24, which is similar to verse 29. Alternate translation: [he also gave] or [In addition, Laban gave]

ULT Bilhah his maidservant to Rachel his daughter
UST his servant Bilhah to Rachel

Alternate translation: [his female servant Bilhah to his daughter Rachel] or [Rachel a female servant named Bilhah]

ULT as a maidservant for her
UST to be her servant

Alternate translation: [to be her personal servant] or [to serve her]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
Bilhah	Bilhah
maidservant	servant
Rachel	Rachel
maidservant	servant

Genesis 29:30

ULT	UST
Then he also went to Rachel, and he also loved Rachel more than Leah. And he served him for another seven years.	*Then Jacob had marital relations with Rachel, and he loved her more than he loved Leah. Then he started working for Laban for seven more years.*

ULT Then he also went to Rachel
UST Then Jacob had marital relations with Rachel

See how you translated **went to** in verse 23. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob slept with Rachel]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT And he served him
UST Then he {started} working for Laban

At this point Jacob begins another seven years of work, but he does not finish the work until Genesis 30:25–26. Alternate translation: [Then he worked for Laban]

ULT for another seven years
UST for seven more years

See how you translated this phrase in verse 27.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
loved	loved
Rachel	her
Leah	Leah
served	Then he {started} working
years	years

Genesis 29:31

ULT	UST
Now Yahweh saw that Leah was hated, so he opened her womb, but Rachel was barren.	*Now Yahweh knew that Jacob did not love Leah, so he made it possible for her to have children, but Rachel was not able to conceive.*

ULT **Now Yahweh saw**
UST Now Yahweh knew

Alternate translation: [Meanwhile Yahweh knew] or [During that time, Yahweh saw]

ULT **that Leah was hated**
UST that Jacob did not love Leah

Jacob did not actually hate Leah. Rather, this is an extreme statement that emphasizes how much he loved Rachel compared to Leah (verse 30). Alternate translation: [that Leah was loved less than Rachel] or [that Jacob did not love Leah very much]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **so he opened her womb**
UST so he made it possible for her to have children

Alternate translation: [so he made it so that she could conceive]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **but Rachel {was} barren**
UST but Rachel was not able to conceive

See how you translated **barren** in Genesis 11:30 and 25:21. Alternate translation: [but he did not enable Rachel to have children]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Leah	Leah
womb	so he made it possible for her to have children
Rachel	Rachel
barren	was not able to conceive

Genesis 29:32

ULT	UST
Then Leah conceived and bore a son, and she called his name Reuben, because she said, "Because Yahweh has looked on my misery, surely now my husband will love me."	*Then Leah became pregnant and gave birth to a son. She named him Reuben, which means "See, a son!" because she exclaimed, "Now that Yahweh has seen that I am suffering and helped me, surely my husband will love me!"*

ULT **and bore a son**
UST and gave birth to a son

Alternate translation: [and had a son]

ULT **and she called his name Reuben**
UST She named him Reuben, which means "See, a son

You could include the meaning of Reuben's name in your translation (or in a footnote), so that people understand why Leah gave him that name. If you do that, make sure the meaning of Reuben's name matches the way you translate "looked/seen" later in this verse.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **because she said**
UST because she exclaimed

Alternate translation: [because when he was born she had said]

ULT **Because Yahweh has looked on my misery, surely now my husband will love me**
UST Now that Yahweh has seen that I am suffering {and helped me}, surely my husband will love me

Consider what is the best way to order these clauses in your language. Also see how you translated **misery** in Gen 16:11. Alternate translation: [Now that Yahweh has seen that I am suffering and has helped me, surely my husband will love me!] or [Surely my husband will love me now, since Yahweh has seen that I am suffering and has helped me]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah
conceived	Then … became pregnant
bore	and gave birth to
called	She named him
Reuben	Reuben
Yahweh	Yahweh
on my misery	that I am suffering
love	love

Genesis 29:33

ULT	UST
Then she conceived again and bore a son, and she said, "Because Yahweh heard that I am hated, then he gave to me this son also." So she called his name Simeon.	*Then Leah became pregnant again and gave birth to another son. She exclaimed, "Since Yahweh heard that my husband does not love me, he has given me this child also." So she named him Simeon, which means "he hears."*

ULT **and bore a son**
UST and gave birth to {another} son

Alternate translation: [and had another son]

ULT **and she said**
UST She exclaimed

Alternate translation: [so she exclaimed]

ULT **Because Yahweh heard that I am hated**
UST Since Yahweh heard that my husband does not love me

See how you translated **hated** in verse 31. Also consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or passive verb here. Alternate translation: [Yahweh heard that I am not loved, so]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **then he gave to me this {son} also**
UST he has given me this child also

Alternate translation: [he has given me this son too!] or [he has given me another son]

ULT **So she called his name**
UST So she named him

Alternate translation: [So she named that son] or [So she gave him the name]

ULT **Simeon**
UST Simeon, which means "he hears

If you include the meaning of Simeon's name in your translation (or in a footnote), make sure it matches the way you translated **heard** earlier in this verse.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
conceived	Then Leah became pregnant
bore	and gave birth to
Yahweh	Yahweh
called	So she named him
Simeon	Simeon

Genesis 29:34

ULT	UST
Then she conceived again and bore a son, and she said, "This time now my husband will be joined to me, because I have born three sons for him." For that reason he called his name Levi.	*Then Leah became pregnant yet again and gave birth to another son, and she exclaimed, "Now finally my husband will want to be with me because I have given him three sons!" That is why his name was Levi, which means "be with."*

ULT **Then she conceived again**
UST Then Leah became pregnant {yet} again

Alternate translation: [Once again Leah became pregnant]

ULT **and bore a son**
UST and gave birth to another son

Alternate translation: [and had another son]

ULT **and she said**
UST and she exclaimed

Alternate translation: [She exclaimed]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **will be joined to me**
UST will want to be with me

Many languages have an idiom that is similar to the Hebrew idiom and fits well here. Alternate translation: [will become attached to me]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **because I have born three sons for him**
UST because I have given him three sons

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, "I have born/had three sons for my husband, so now finally he will become attached to me." Alternate translation: [because I have had three sons for him]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **For that reason**
UST That is why

Alternate translation: [Because she had said that]

ULT **he called his name**
UST his name was

Although this phrase could mean that Jacob named Levi, most translations translate this in a general or indefinite way that does not specify who named him. Alternate translation: [he was named]

> ULT **Levi**
> UST Levi, which means “be with

If you include the meaning of Levi’s name in your translation (or in a footnote), make sure it matches the way you translated **be joined** earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
conceived	Then Leah became pregnant
bore	and gave birth to
I have born	I have given
called	his name was
Levi	Levi

Genesis 29:35

ULT	UST
Then she conceived again and bore a son, and she said, "This time I will praise Yahweh." For that reason she called his name Judah. Then she stopped bearing.	*Once again Leah became pregnant and gave birth to another son, and she exclaimed, "Now I will praise Yahweh!" That is why she named him Judah, which means "praise." Then Leah stopped having children for a while.*

ULT **Then she conceived again**
UST Once again Leah became pregnant

Alternate translation: [Then Leah became pregnant again]

ULT **and bore a son**
UST and gave birth to another son

See how you translated this phrase in verse 34. Alternate translation: [and had a son]

ULT **and she said**
UST and she exclaimed

Alternate translation: [She said]

ULT **This time I will praise Yahweh**
UST Now I will praise Yahweh

Alternate translation: [Now I will praise Yahweh for giving me this son!]

ULT **For that reason**
UST That is why

See how you translated this phrase in verse 34. You may need to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Because she praised Yahweh]

ULT **she called his name**
UST she named him

See how you translated this phrase in verse 33. Alternate translation: [she named that son] or [she gave him the name]

ULT **Judah**
UST Judah, which means "praise

See how you translated **praise** earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

> ULT **Then she stopped bearing**
> UST Then Leah stopped having children for a while

Leah had more children at a later time. So it was only temporarily that she stopped having children. Alternate translation: [Then Leah stopped bearing babies for a while] or [After that, Leah did not give birth to any more babies for a while]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
conceived	Once again Leah became pregnant
bore	and gave birth to
praise	praise
Yahweh	Yahweh
called	she named him
Judah	Judah
bearing	having children

Genesis 30

Genesis 30:1

ULT	UST
Now Rachel saw that she was not bearing children for Jacob, so Rachel envied her sister, and she said to Jacob, "Give me children, and if not, I will die!"	*Meanwhile when Rachel realized that she was not able to bear any children for Jacob, she was jealous of her sister, and she demanded of Jacob, "Help me have children, or else I want to die!"*

ULT **Now Rachel saw that she was not bearing {children} for Jacob**
UST Meanwhile {when} Rachel realized that she was not able to bear {any} {children} for Jacob

Alternate translation: [Now when Rachel saw that she was not able to have any children for Jacob]

ULT **so Rachel envied her sister**
UST she was jealous of her sister

Alternate translation: [she was envious of her sister Leah]

ULT **and she said to Jacob**
UST and she demanded of Jacob

Use a quote margin here in your language that fits the context well. Alternate translation: [and she pleaded with Jacob]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Give me children, and if not**
UST Help me have children, or else

Alternate translation: [Help me get pregnant! Otherwise]

ULT **I will die**
UST I want to die

Rachel is using an extreme statement to show how desperate and deeply ashamed she feels about not having children. You could include a footnote here in your translation that explains how in that culture it was considered very shameful for a woman to be barren (See: Genesis 30:23). Alternate translation: [I have no reason to live!]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
bearing	bear
Jacob	Jacob
Rachel	רָחֵל
envied	jealous
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 30:2

ULT	UST
And Jacob's anger burned against Rachel, and he said, "Am I in the place of God, who has kept the fruit of the womb from you?"	*Jacob became very angry with Rachel and responded, "I am not God! He is the one who has prevented you from having children!"*

ULT **And Jacob's anger burned against Rachel, and he said**
UST Jacob became very angry with Rachel and responded

Some languages have an idiom that is similar to the Hebrew idiom here. Alternate translation: [Jacob became very angry with Rachel and said]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Am I in the place of God, who has kept the fruit of the womb from you**
UST I am not God! He is the one who has prevented you from having children

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to show that he is upset with Rachel and to strongly emphasize his point. Do what is best in your language to communicate this. Alternate translation: [I am not in the place of God, who has kept you from having children!] or [I am not God! He is the one who has kept you from having children!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Rachel	Rachel
God	God
fruit	has prevented you from having children
womb	has prevented you from having children

Genesis 30:3

ULT	UST
Then she said, "Behold my slave woman Bilhah. Go to her so that she will bear children on my knees, and I also will be built up from her."	*Then Rachel told him, "You can have my servant woman Bilhah as a wife. Have marital relations with her so that she will have children for me, so that I too can have a family."*

ULT **Then she said**
UST Then Rachel told him

Alternate translation: [Rachel replied to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold my slave woman Bilhah**
UST You can have my servant woman Bilhah as a wife

Alternate translation: [Here is my servant woman Bilhah] or [You can take my servant woman Bilhah as a wife]

ULT **Go to her**
UST Have {marital} relations with her

See how you translated this euphemism in Genesis 16:2. Alternate translation: [Sleep with her]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **so that she will bear children**
UST so that she will have children

Alternate translation: [so that she can give birth to children] or [so that she can have children]

ULT **on my knees**
UST for me

The idiom **bear children on my knees** means that Bilhah's children would be considered Rachel's children. It may come from the custom of immediately putting a newborn child on the lap of the father and mother to symbolize that the child belonged to them. Alternate translation: [for me who will sit on my lap] or [as my surrogate]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and I also will be built up from her**
UST so that I too can have a family

See how you translated **built up from her** in Genesis 16:2. Alternate translation: [so that from her children I too can build a family] or [so that I too can build a family]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my slave woman	servant
Bilhah	Bilhah
bear	so that she will have children

Genesis 30:4

ULT	UST
And she gave to him Bilhah her maidservant as a wife, and Jacob went to her.	*So Rachel gave Jacob her servant Bilhah to be another wife for him, and Jacob had marital relations with her.*

ULT And she gave to him Bilhah her maidservant
UST So Rachel gave Jacob her servant Bilhah

See how you translated **maidservant** in Genesis 29:24, 29. Also see how you translated a different word **servant woman** in verse 3 that has the same meaning. Some translations use the same term in both verses to prevent confusion. Alternate translation: [So Rachel gave Jacob her maid Bilhah]

ULT as a wife
UST to be {another} wife for him

Make sure your translation does not sound like Bilhah replaced Rachel as Jacob's wife; Bilhah was an additional wife. Alternate translation: [as his wife] or [to be a wife for him]

ULT and Jacob went to her
UST and Jacob had {marital} relations with her

See how you translated "go to" in verse 3 and **went to** in Genesis 16:3. Alternate translation: [and Jacob slept with her]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bilhah	Bilhah
maidservant	servant
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 30:5

ULT	UST
Then Bilhah conceived and bore a son for Jacob,	*Then Bilhah became pregnant and had a son for Jacob,*

ULT **and bore a son for Jacob**
UST and had a son for Jacob

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a son for Jacob]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bilhah	Bilhah
conceived	Then … became pregnant
bore	and had
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 30:6

ULT	UST
and Rachel said, “God has vindicated me, and indeed, he has listened to my voice and given to me a son!” For that reason she called his name Dan.	*and Rachel exclaimed, “God has judged in my favor! Yes indeed, he has answered my prayer and given me a son!” That is why she named the baby Dan, which means “he judged in my favor.”*

ULT **and Rachel said**
UST and Rachel exclaimed

Alternate translation: [Then Rachel said]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **and indeed, he has listened to my voice and given to me a son**
UST Yes indeed, he has answered my prayer and given me a son

Alternate translation: [Yes indeed, he has heard my request and given me a son!]

ULT **For that reason**
UST That is why

Alternate translation: [Because of that]

ULT **she called his name**
UST she named the baby

The pronoun **his** refers to Bilhah’s son. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Make sure it is clear here in your translation that Bilhah’s son is the one being named, not God (who was the subject of the previous sentence). See how you translated **called his name** in Genesis 29:32. Alternate translation: [she called him] or [she gave him the name] or [she named her baby]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Dan**
UST Dan, which means “he judged in my favor

If you include the meaning of Dan’s name in your translation (or in a footnote), make sure it matches the way you translated “he has vindicated” earlier in this verse.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
God	God
called	she named the baby
Dan	Dan

Genesis 30:7

ULT	UST
Then Bilhah the maidservant of Rachel conceived again and bore a second son for Jacob.	*Then Rachel's servant Bilhah became pregnant again and had a second son for Jacob.*

ULT **Then Bilhah the maidservant of Rachel conceived again**
UST Then Rachel's servant Bilhah became pregnant again

See how you translated verse 5 which is very similar to verse 7.

ULT **and bore a second son for Jacob**
UST and had a second son for Jacob

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a second son for Jacob]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bilhah	Bilhah
maidservant	servant
Rachel	Rachel
conceived	Then … became pregnant
bore	and had
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 30:8

ULT	UST
So Rachel said, "With mighty wrestlings I have wrestled with my sister. Indeed I have prevailed!" And she called his name Naphtali.	*Then Rachel exclaimed, "I have had a difficult contest with my sister, and now I have defeated her!" Then she named that son Naphtali, which means "my contest."*

ULT So Rachel said
UST Then Rachel exclaimed

Alternate translation: [So Rachel exclaimed]

ULT With mighty wrestlings I have wrestled with my sister
UST I have had a difficult contest with my sister

This quotation of Rachel's words could mean: (1) "I have had a difficult struggle with my sister." Alternate translation: ["I have struggled hard against my sister]; That would be the meaning if the Hebrew word "elohim" in this phrase is used as an adjective that means "mighty/powerful." (2) "I have wrestled with God because of my sister," which could refer to a struggle against her sister praying to God for children. That would be the meaning if the word "elohim" in this phrase means "God."
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT Indeed I have prevailed
UST and {now} I have defeated her

Alternate translation: [and I have won!] or [but now I have defeated her!] or [but now I am winning!]

ULT Naphtali
UST Naphtali, which means "my contest

As always, if you include the meaning of a name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure that it matches the text that the name is based on.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
mighty	I have had a difficult contest
called	Then she named that son
Naphtali	Naphtali

Genesis 30:9

ULT	UST
Now Leah saw that she had ceased from bearing children, so she took Zilpah her maidservant and gave her to Jacob as a wife.	*Now when Leah realized that she had stopped having children, she brought her servant Zilpah to Jacob and gave her to him to be another wife for him.*

ULT **Now Leah saw that she had ceased from bearing children**
UST Now when Leah realized that she had stopped having children

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 1. Alternate translation: [When Leah saw that she had stopped bearing children]

ULT **so she took Zilpah her maidservant**
UST she brought her servant Zilpah to Jacob

Alternate translation: [she took her servant Zilpah to Jacob]

ULT **and gave her to Jacob as a wife**
UST and gave her to him to be {another} wife for him

See how you translated "gave … as a wife" in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and gave her to him as his wife] or [and gave her to Jacob to be another wife for him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah
bearing	having children
Zilpah	Zilpah
maidservant	servant
Jacob	to him

Genesis 30:10

ULT	UST
Then Zilpah the maidservant of Leah bore a son for Jacob,	*Then Zilpah had a son for Jacob,*

ULT **Then Zilpah the maidservant of Leah bore a son for Jacob**
UST Then Zilpah had a son for Jacob

See how you translated verses 5–8, which are very similar in structure to verses 10–13.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Zilpah	Zilpah
maidservant	שִׁפְחָ֣ת
Leah	לֵאָ֔ה
bore	Then … had
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 30:11

ULT	UST
and Leah said, “What good fortune!” So she called his name Gad.	*and Leah exclaimed, “I am so fortunate!” So she named him Gad, which means “fortunate.”*

ULT **What good fortune**
UST I am so fortunate

Alternate translation: [What good luck!] or [I am very lucky!]

ULT **So she called his name**
UST So she named him

Alternate translation: [So she called him] or [So she called him] or [So she gave him the name]

ULT **Gad**
UST Gad, which means “fortunate

If you include the meaning of Gad’s name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translated **good fortune** earlier in this verse.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah
called	So she named him
Gad	Gad

Genesis 30:13

ULT	UST
and Leah said, “How blessed I am! For women will call me blessed.” So she called his name Asher.	*and Leah exclaimed, “God has truly blessed me! Now other women will know that God has blessed me.” So she named that son Asher, which means “blessed.”*

ULT How blessed I am
UST God has truly blessed me

Although many translations have “happy” in this verse instead of **blessed**, the Hebrew noun (and the verb it is based on) is more general and has to do with a person’s blessed state (which results in joy and happiness). The same Hebrew word is used in Psalm 1:1, and the equivalent Greek word is used in Luke 1:48 and Matthew 5:3–11. Alternate translation: [I am truly blessed!] or [God has greatly blessed me!]

ULT So she called his name
UST So she named that son

Alternate translation: [So she named him] or [So she gave him the name]

ULT Asher
UST Asher, which means “blessed

The word **Asher** is the name of a Leah’s baby boy. If you include the meaning of Asher’s name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translated **blessed** earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT For women will call me blessed
UST Now {other} women will know that {God} has blessed me

Alternate translation: [Now other women will say that I am blessed by God] or [Now other women will say that God has blessed me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah
called	So she named that son
Asher	Asher

Genesis 30:14

ULT	UST
Then in the days of the wheat harvest, Reuben went out and found mandrakes in the field, and he brought them to Leah his mother. Then Rachel said to Leah, "Please give to me some of your son's mandrakes."	*Then one day during the season when people were harvesting wheat, Leah's son Reuben went out in a field and found some fertility plants, and he gave them to his mother. When Rachel found out about the plants, she begged Leah, "Please give me some of the fertility plants that your son found."*

ULT **Then in the days of the wheat harvest, Reuben went out**

UST Then {one day} during the season when people were harvesting wheat, Leah's son Reuben went out

Wheat is a type of grain that is ground into flour to make bread, which was one of the people's main foods. The harvest time for wheat in that part of the world is in March and April. Alternate translation: [One day during …]

ULT **and found mandrakes in the field**

UST in a field and found {some} fertility plants

The roots of mandrake plants were used to help people be more fertile. If **mandrakes** are not known in your language area, you could describe them as a kind of fertility plant. You could also put information about mandrakes in a footnote or glossary. Alternate translation: [and found some love plants called mandrakes in a field] or [in a field and found some love plants there]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and he brought them to Leah his mother**

UST and he gave them to his mother

Alternate translation: [and he took them to his mother] or [and he took the plants to his mother]

ULT **Then Rachel said to Leah**

UST When Rachel found out about the plants, she begged Leah

Alternate translation: [When Rachel found out about the plants, she asked Leah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	during the season when people were harvesting wheat
wheat	wheat
harvest	harvesting
Reuben	Reuben
Leah	לֵאָה
Rachel	Rachel
Leah	Leah

Genesis 30:15

ULT	UST
But she said to her, "Is it a small matter you have taken my husband? And would you also take my son's mandrakes?" Then Rachel said, "Therefore he may lie with you tonight for your son's mandrakes."	*But Leah replied to her, "No! It was bad enough that you stole my husband from me! And now you even want to take my son's fertility plants!" Rachel replied, "Alright then, Jacob can sleep with you tonight if you will give me your son's fertility plants."*

ULT **Is it a small matter you have taken my husband**
UST No! It was {bad} enough that you stole my husband from me

Leah uses two rhetorical questions in verse 15 to scold Rachel and show how upset she is with her. Consider whether or not rhetorical questions are the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [No! It was bad enough that you took my husband from me!] or [You already took my husband from me!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Then Rachel said**
UST Rachel replied

Alternate translation: [Rachel said to her]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Therefore**
UST Alright then

Rachel's response shows that she realizes that even though Leah was scolding her, she was also bargaining with her. Alternate translation: [Very well]

ULT **he may lie with you tonight**
UST Jacob can sleep with you tonight

Alternate translation: [I will let him stay with you tonight] or [Jacob can stay with you tonight] or [Jacob can spend tonight with you]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **for your son's mandrakes**
UST if you will give me your son's fertility plants

See how you translated "in exchange for" in Genesis 29:18.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel

Genesis 30:16

ULT	UST
Then Jacob came from the field in the evening, and Leah went out to meet him and said, "You must come to me, because I have surely hired you with my son's mandrakes." So he lay with her during that night,	*That evening when Jacob came home from working in the field, Leah went out to greet him and told him, "You must sleep with me tonight, because I have traded my son's fertility plants for time with you." So Jacob spent that night with Leah.*

ULT **Then Jacob came from the field in the evening**
UST That evening when Jacob came {home} from {working in} the field

Consider where it is best in your language to put the time phrase in this clause. Also see how you translated **field** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [So as Jacob came back that evening from working in the fields] or [That evening as Jacob was coming home from working in the fields]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and Leah went out to meet him**
UST Leah went out to greet him

Alternate translation: [Leah came out to greet him]

ULT **and said**
UST and told him

Alternate translation: [and she said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **You must come to me**
UST You must sleep with me tonight

Alternate translation: [You must lie with me tonight] or [You must spend tonight with me]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **because I have surely hired you with my son's mandrakes**
UST because I have traded my son's fertility plants for time with you

See how you translated **mandrakes** in verses 14 and 15.

ULT **So he lay with her during that night**
UST So Jacob spent that night with Leah

Alternate translation: [So that night Jacob slept with her] or [So Jacob spent that night with her]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Leah	Leah

Genesis 30:17

ULT	UST
and God listened to Leah, and she conceived and bore a fifth son for Jacob.	*God answered the prayers of Leah, so that she became pregnant and had a fifth son for Jacob.*

ULT **and God listened to Leah**
UST God answered {the prayers of} Leah

See how you translated **listened to** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [God heard Leah and answered her prayers] or [God did what Leah had been asking him to do]

ULT **and bore a fifth son for Jacob**
UST and had a fifth son for Jacob

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a fifth son for Jacob]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Leah	Leah
conceived	so that she became pregnant
bore	and had
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 30:18

ULT	UST
Then Leah said, "God has given me my reward because I gave my maidservant to my husband." So she called his name Issachar.	*Then she said, "God has rewarded me for giving my servant to my husband as a wife." So she named that son Issachar, which means "reward."*

ULT **Then Leah said**
UST Then she said

Alternate translation: [Then she exclaimed]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **God has given {me} my reward**
UST God has rewarded me

Some languages must translate the noun **reward** as a verb.
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **because I gave my maidservant to my husband**
UST for giving my servant to my husband as a wife

Alternate translation: [for giving my servant to my husband as another wife]

ULT **So she called his name**
UST So she named that son

Make sure the way you translate **his name** refers here to Leah's baby son, not to her husband or God (who were both mentioned earlier in this verse). Alternate translation: [So she called him] or [So she gave him the name]

ULT **Issachar**
UST Issachar, which means "reward

See how you translated **reward** earlier in this verse.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	לֵאָה
God	God
maidservant	servant
called	So she named that son
Issachar	Issachar

Genesis 30:19

ULT	UST
Then Leah conceived again and bore a sixth son for Jacob.	*Then Leah became pregnant again and had a sixth son for Jacob.*

ULT **and bore a sixth son for Jacob**
UST and had a sixth son for Jacob

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a sixth son for Jacob]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah
conceived	Then … became pregnant
bore	and had
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 30:20

ULT	UST
And Leah said, "God has presented me a good present. This time my husband will honor me because I have born six sons for him." So she called his name Zebulun.	*Then she said, "God has given me a valuable gift, so that now my husband will honor me because I have had six sons for him." So she named their son Zebulun, which means "honor."*

ULT **And Leah said**
UST Then she said

Alternate translation: [Then she exclaimed]

ULT **God has presented me a good present**
UST God has given me a valuable gift

Alternate translation: [God has given me a precious gift]

ULT **This time my husband will honor me**
UST so that now my husband will honor me

Alternate translation: [so now my husband will honor me]

ULT **because I have born six sons for him**
UST because I have had six sons for him

Alternate translation: [because I have given him six sons]

ULT **So she called his name**
UST So she named their son

Make sure the way you translate **his name** refers here to Leah's baby son, not to her husband (who was mentioned in the previous sentence). Alternate translation: [So she called him] or [So she named that son] or [So she gave him the name]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	לֵאָה
God	God
good	valuable
honor	honor
I have born	I have had
called	So she named their son
Zebulun	Zebulun

Genesis 30:21

ULT	UST
Then later she bore a daughter and called her name Dinah.	*Sometime after that, Leah had a daughter and named her Dinah.*

ULT **Then later**
UST Sometime after that

Alternate translation: [Sometime later]

ULT **she bore a daughter**
UST Leah had a daughter

Alternate translation: [Leah gave birth to a daughter] or [she had a daughter]

ULT **and called her name Dinah**
UST and named her Dinah

Alternate translation: [and called her Dinah] or [whom she named Dinah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bore	Leah had
called	and named her

Genesis 30:22

ULT	UST
Then God remembered Rachel, and God listened to her and opened her womb.	*God had not forgotten Rachel, so he answered her prayers and made it possible for her to have children.*

ULT Then God remembered Rachel
UST God had not forgotten Rachel

Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not imply that God forgot about Rachel. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 8:1. Alternate translation: [God had kept Rachel in mind]

ULT and God listened to her
UST so he answered her prayers

See how you translated **listened to** in verses 6 and 17. Alternate translation: [so he heard her requests] or [so he did what she had been asking him to do]

ULT and opened her womb
UST and made it possible for her to have children

See how you translated this idiom in Genesis 29:31. Alternate translation: [and made it so that she could conceive]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Rachel	Rachel
God	אֱלֹהִים
womb	and made it possible for her to have children

Genesis 30:23

ULT	UST
Then she conceived and bore a son, and she said, "God has taken away my disgrace!"	*Then she became pregnant and had a son, and she exclaimed, "God has made it so that I am no longer ashamed!"*

ULT Then she conceived
UST Then she became pregnant

Alternate translation: [so that finally she conceived] or [So Rachel became pregnant]

ULT and bore a son
UST and had a son

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a son]

ULT and she said
UST and she exclaimed

Alternate translation: [Then she said]

ULT God has taken away my disgrace
UST God has made it so that I am no longer ashamed

Alternate translation: [God has removed my shame] or [God has made it so that I am no longer barren and humiliated!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
conceived	Then she became pregnant
bore	and had
God	God
disgrace	ashamed

Genesis 30:24

ULT	UST
And she called his name Joseph, saying, "May Yahweh add another son to me."	*She named her son Joseph, which means "may he give another," because she said, "I pray that Yahweh will give me another son."*

ULT And she called his name
UST She named her son

Alternate translation: [She called her son] or [She gave him the name]

ULT Joseph
UST Joseph, which means "may he give another

If you include the meaning of Joseph's name here in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate what Rachel says next.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT saying
UST because she said

For some languages it is more natural to put the last half of verse 24 first in the verse and say, "She also said, 'May Yahweh add/give another son to me.' So she named that/her son Joseph, which means 'may he add/give another.'"
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT May Yahweh add another son to me
UST I pray that Yahweh will give me another son

Alternate translation: [I ask that Yahweh will give me another son] or [I ask Yahweh to give me another son]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	She named her son
Joseph	Joseph
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 30:25

ULT	UST
Then it happened, after Rachel bore Joseph, then Jacob said to Laban, "Send me off, so that I may go to my place and to my land.	*After Rachel had Joseph, Jacob requested of Laban, "Please allow me to leave here, so that I can return to my own home in my own country.*

ULT **Then it happened, after Rachel bore Joseph**
UST After Rachel had Joseph

Alternate translation: [Soon after Rachel gave birth to Joseph]

ULT **then Jacob said to Laban**
UST Jacob requested of Laban

Alternate translation: [Jacob went to Laban and said to him]

ULT **Send me off**
UST Please allow me to leave here

Make sure that your translation of Jacob's request here sounds polite, not rude or disrespectful. It should also not sound like he is begging or pleading. See how you translated the same request in Genesis 24:54. Alternate translation: [Please send me on my way]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **so that I may go to my place and to my land**
UST so that I can return to my {own} home in my {own} country

Alternate translation: [so that I may return to my own home in my own country] or [so that I can go to my homeland]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
bore	had
Joseph	Joseph
Jacob	Jacob
Laban	Laban
land	in my {own} country

Genesis 30:26

ULT	UST
Give me my wives and my children for whom I have served you, so that I may go. For you yourself know my service that I have served you."	*Let me take my wives and my children, whom I have earned by working for you, so that I can leave with them. You yourself know how well I have worked for you."*

ULT **Give me my wives and my children**
UST Let me take my wives and my children

Alternate translation: [Let me have my wives and my children]

ULT **for whom I have served you**
UST whom I have earned by working for you

Alternate translation: [whom I have finished serving you for]

ULT **so that I may go**
UST so that I can leave with them

Alternate translation: [so that I may leave with them] or [and let me go with them] or [so that I can take them with me]

ULT **For you yourself know**
UST You yourself know

Alternate translation: [because you yourself know]

ULT **my service that I have served you**
UST how {well} I have worked for you

Jacob is repeating forms of the verb **served** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [that I have served you very well] or [how faithfully I have worked for you]

Support Reference: Reduplication

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
served	I have earned by working
know	know
served	how {well} I have worked for you

Genesis 30:27

ULT	UST
Then Laban said to him, "Please stay, if I have found favor in your eyes. I have learned by divination that Yahweh has blessed me because of you."	*But Laban responded to him, "Please be kind to me and stay, because I have found out from observing signs that Yahweh has blessed me because you are here with me."*

ULT **Then Laban said to him**
UST But Laban responded to him

Alternate translation: [But Laban responded to Jacob]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Please {stay}, if I have found favor in your eyes**
UST Please be kind to me and stay

Alternate translation: [Please stay, if I have pleased you] or [Please do me a favor and do not go]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **that Yahweh has blessed me**
UST that Yahweh has blessed me

Alternate translation: [that Yahweh has caused me to prosper]

ULT **because of you**
UST because you are here with me

Alternate translation: [because you have been working for me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
favor	Please be kind to me and stay
divination	because I have found out from observing signs
Yahweh	Yahweh
blessed	blessed

Genesis 30:28

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Name your wages to me, and I will give them."	*Then he added, "Tell me what you want your pay to be, and that is what I will pay you."*

ULT **Then he said**

UST Then he added

Some translations delete this quote margin, since the same person is still speaking to the same person as in the previous verse. However it could be that there was a pause in the conversation, or the author may want to show that there is a change in topic or emphasize what is said next. So if possible, it is best to keep the quote margin here in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then he said to him] or [Then Laban added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Name your wages to me, and I will give them**

UST Tell me what you want your pay to be, and that is what I will pay you

See how you translated **wages** in Genesis 29:15. Alternate translation: [Tell me what you want your wages to be, and that is what I will give you] or [Tell me what you want me to pay you, and I will give that to you] or [Set your wages, and that is what they will be]

Genesis 30:29

ULT	UST
And he said to him, "You yourself know how I have served you and how your livestock have been with me.	*Jacob replied to him, "You yourself know how hard I have worked for you and how well your animals have prospered under my care.*

ULT **And he said to him**
UST Jacob replied to him

Alternate translation: [Jacob said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **You yourself know how I have served you**
UST You yourself know how {hard} I have worked for you

See how you translated "you yourself know" in verse 26. Alternate translation: [You yourself know how well I have worked for you]

ULT **and how your livestock have been**
UST and how {well} your animals have prospered

Alternate translation: [and how well your flocks have fared]

ULT **with me**
UST under my care

Alternate translation: [ever since I have been taking care of them] or [while I have been tending them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
served	I have worked for you
livestock	animals

Genesis 30:30

ULT	UST
For there was little that was yours before me, and it has prospered to abundance, and Yahweh has blessed you at my feet. But now, when will I also do something for my household?"	*The few that you owned before I came have multiplied dramatically. Yes, Yahweh has blessed you because of me. But now, I need to also provide for my own family!"*

ULT **For {there was} little that was yours before me, and it has prospered to abundance**
UST The few that you owned before I came have multiplied dramatically

Alternate translation: [Before I came, you had very little wealth, but now you are prospering abundantly] or [The few animals that you owned before I came have increased greatly] or [Before I worked for you, you owned very few animals, but now you have a huge number of animals]

ULT **at my feet**
UST because of me

Alternate translation: [because I am here] or [because I have been working for you]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **But now, when will I also do something for my household**
UST But now, I need to also provide for my {own} family

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to express his strong feelings. Alternate translation: [But now I need to also provide for my own household]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **and Yahweh has blessed you**
UST Yes, Yahweh has blessed you

See how you translated **blessed** in verse 27. Alternate translation: [That is how Yahweh has prospered you] or [Yes, Yahweh has prospered you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
blessed	blessed
for my household	for my {own} family

Genesis 30:31

ULT	UST
Then he said, "What should I give to you?" And Jacob said, "Do not give anything to me. If you will do this thing for me, I will continue tending your flocks watching over them:	*So Laban asked him, "What can I pay you to persuade you to stay here?" Jacob answered, "Do not pay me anything. Just do this one thing for me, and I will continue taking care of your flocks:*

ULT **Then he said**
UST So Laban asked him

Alternate translation: [So Laban asked Jacob] or [Laban responded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **What should I give to you**
UST What can I pay you {to persuade you} to stay here

Alternate translation: [What do you want me to give you so that you will stay and work for me?] or [What can I give you to persuade you to stay here?]

ULT **And Jacob said**
UST Jacob answered

Alternate translation: [Jacob replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Do not give anything to me**
UST Do not pay me anything

Alternate translation: [Do not give me anything] or [You do not need to give me anything]

ULT **If you will do this thing for me**
UST Just do this {one} thing for me, and

Alternate translation: [But if you will do this one thing for me]

ULT **I will continue tending your flock{s} watching over them**
UST I will continue taking care of your flocks

See how you translated "watches over" in Genesis 28:20. Alternate translation: [I will continue to tend and watch over your flocks:] or [I will keep taking care of your flocks:]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
tending	taking care of
flocks	flocks
watching	אָשְׁמֹר

Genesis 30:32

ULT	UST
I will pass through all your flocks today to remove from there every speckled and spotted lamb and every dark-colored lamb among the sheep, and the spotted and speckled young among the goats. And that will be my wages.	*Let me look through all your flocks today and separate out from them all the lambs that are speckled, spotted or dark-colored, and all the young goats that are spotted or speckled. They will be my pay.*

ULT **I will pass through all your flock{s} today**
UST Let me look through all your flock{s} today

Alternate translation: [Let me go through all your flocks today] or [Today I will go through all your sheep and goats]

ULT **to remove from there**
UST and separate out from them

Alternate translation: [and take away from them]

ULT **every speckled and spotted lamb and every dark-colored lamb among the sheep**
UST all the lambs that are speckled, spotted or dark-colored

The Hebrew word for **speckled** refers to small spots, whereas **spotted** refers to medium-sized and bigger spots. In that part of the world, most sheep were white and most goats were solid brown or black. So Jacob was asking for the irregular animals for himself, including white sheep with dark marks, dark-colored goats with light marks and dark-colored lambs. You could put some of this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [all the lambs that have speckles or spots, or that are dark-colored]

ULT **and the spotted and speckled {young} among the goats**
UST and {all} the young goats that are spotted or speckled

Alternate translation: [and all the kid goats that are spotted or speckled]

ULT **And that will be my wages**
UST They will be my pay

Alternate translation: [They will be my wages] or [Those animals will be my wages]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flocks	flocks
today	today
lamb	the lambs
lamb	שֶׂה
among the sheep	בַּכְּשָׂבִים
goats	goats

Genesis 30:33

ULT	UST
So my righteousness will testify for me in future days when you go over my wages in front of you: any that is not speckled and spotted among the goats and dark-colored among the sheep, it was stolen if it is with me."	*That way too, in the future it will be easy for you to know whether or not I am being honest whenever you check the animals you have paid me. If you see that I have any sheep or goats that are not speckled or spotted or any lambs that are not dark-colored, you will know that I stole them from you."*

ULT **So my righteousness will testify for me in future days**
UST That way {too}, in the future it will be easy {for you} to know whether {or not} I am being honest

The phrase **my righteousness** is referred to here as if it can testify like a person can. Some languages cannot personify righteousness like that. Alternate translation: [Also, in the future you will know whether or not I am being honest] or [That way too, in the future it will be easy for everyone to know whether or not I am being honest]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **when you go over my wages in front of you**
UST whenever you check the animals you have paid me

For some languages it is more natural to move this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "Also, in the future, whenever you check the animals you have paid/given me, you will know whether or not I am being honest." Do what is best in your own language. Alternate translation: [whenever you check the animals you have given me]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **any that is not speckled and spotted among the goats and dark-colored among the sheep**
UST If you see that I have any {sheep or} goats that are not speckled or spotted or any lambs {that are not} dark-colored

Alternate translation: [If you see that I have any sheep or goats that are not speckled or spotted or any sheep that are not dark-colored] or [If you see any sheep or goats among my flocks that do not have speckles or spots or any sheep that are not dark-colored]

ULT **it was stolen {if it is} with me**
UST you will know that I stole them from you

Alternate translation: [it will be obvious that I stole them from you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
righteousness	That way too … it will be easy {for you} to know whether {or not} I am being honest
days	in the future
goats	goats
among the sheep	lambs

Genesis 30:34

ULT	UST
And Laban said, "Behold, let it be according to your word."	*Laban replied, "I agree, let's do exactly as you have suggested."*

ULT And Laban said
UST Laban replied

Alternate translation: [Laban said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Behold
UST I agree

Alternate translation: [Yes] or [I agree with that;]

ULT let it be according to your word
UST let's do exactly as you have suggested

Alternate translation: [we will do exactly what you have said]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban

Genesis 30:35

ULT	UST
Then on that day he removed the male goats that were streaked and spotted, and all the female goats that were speckled and spotted, any that had white on it, and all the dark-colored ones among the lambs. Then he gave them into the hand of his sons,	*But that same day, Laban separated from his flocks all the he-goats that had stripes or spots, and all the she-goats that had speckles or spots, all that had any white marks on them, together with all the dark-colored lambs. Then he told his sons to take care of them,*

ULT **Then on that day he removed**

UST But that {same} day, Laban separated from his flocks

Make sure your translation of **he** in this clause refers to Laban, not Jacob (as verse 36 confirms). Also, what Laban does in verse 35 does not follow the agreement he just made with Jacob in verses 32–34. Alternate translation: [But that very day, he removed from his flocks]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **the male goats that were streaked and spotted, and all the female goats that were speckled and spotted**

UST all the he-goats that had stripes or spots, and all the she-goats that had speckles or spots

Alternate translation: [all the he-goats that had streaks or spots, and all the she-goats that had speckles or spots]

ULT **any that {had} white on it**

UST all that {had any} white {marks} on them

The goats were normally dark brown or black, so if they had streaks or spots on them those marks would be white. In the Hebrew text, there is a pun (play-on-words) in verses 35 and 37: the name “Laban” means **white**, so verse 35 literally says that any goats with “Laban” (**white**) on them became Jacob’s. You could include that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [any that had any white marks on them]

ULT **Then he gave {them} into the hand of his sons**

UST Then he told his sons to take care of them

Alternate translation: [Then he had his sons tend them] or [Then he put his sons in charge of them]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
goats	all the he-goats
goats	the she-goats
lambs	lambs

Genesis 30:36

ULT	UST
and he put a three-day journey between himself and Jacob. And Jacob was tending the rest of Laban's flocks.	*and he and his sons took those animals a three-day walking-distance away from Jacob. Meanwhile Jacob continued taking care of the rest of Laban's flocks.*

ULT **and he put a three-day journey between himself and Jacob**
UST and he {and his sons} took {those animals} a three-day walking-distance away from Jacob

Alternate translation: [and he and his sons took those animals a three-day walking distance away from Jacob]

ULT **And Jacob was tending the rest of Laban's flocks**
UST Meanwhile Jacob continued taking care of the rest of Laban's flocks

See how you translated **tending** in verse 31 and Genesis 13:7.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
Jacob	Jacob
Jacob	Jacob
was tending	continued taking care of
Laban	Laban
flocks	flocks

Genesis 30:37

ULT	UST
Then Jacob took for himself fresh-cut branches of poplar and almond and plane trees, and peeled white stripes in them, exposing the white that was inside the branches.	*Then Jacob cut some branches from poplar trees, almond trees, and chestnut trees, and made white streaks on them by peeling off long strips of bark, which exposed the white wood that was inside the branches.*

ULT **of poplar and almond and plane trees**

UST from poplar {trees}, almond {trees}, and chestnut trees

If the three kinds of trees are not known in your language area, you could transliterate the names of the trees or be more general and leave out the names. Alternate translation: [from poplar trees, almond trees, and plane trees] or [from three different kinds of trees]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and peeled white stripes in them**

UST and made white streaks on them by peeling off long strips of bark

Alternate translation: [and peeled off long pieces of bark] or [and made white stripes on them by stripping off long pieces of bark]

ULT **exposing the white that {was} inside the branches**

UST which exposed the white {wood} that was inside the branches

Alternate translation: [which showed the white wood under the bark] or [so that the white wood that was inside the branches was exposed]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 30:38

ULT	UST
Then he put the branches that he had peeled in the troughs, in the water troughs where the flocks came to drink, in front of the flocks. And they were in heat when they came to drink,	*Then he put those streaked branches in all the drinking troughs that the flocks would come to drink from, so that the flocks would see the branches. That way, whenever the animals that were ready to mate came to the troughs to drink,*

ULT **Then he put the branches that he had peeled in the troughs, in the water troughs**
UST Then he put those {streaked} branches in all the drinking troughs

See how you translated **trough** in Genesis 24:20. Alternate translation: [Then he set those striped branches in all the stone drinking tubs]

ULT **where the flock{s} came to drink**
UST that the flock{s} would come to drink from

The way you translate this should allow for the fact that the animals came to the watering troughs repeatedly or regularly throughout the day, not just one time.

ULT **in front of the flocks**
UST so that the flock{s} would see the branches

Alternate translation: [in front of them] or [so that the flocks would see the branches there]

ULT **And they were in heat when they came to drink**
UST That way, whenever the animals that were ready to mate came {to the troughs} to drink

The way you translate this clause will determine whether you begin the next verse with a conjunction (“and” or “so”) or without a conjunction. Alternate translation: [The flocks often mated when they came to the tubs to drink] or [That way, whenever the animals that were ready to breed came to the tubs to drink]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flocks	flocks
flocks	flocks

Genesis 30:39

ULT	UST
and the flocks would mate by the branches, and the flocks would bear streaked, speckled, and spotted young.	*they would see the branches as they were mating. As a result, they would have young that were striped or speckled or spotted.*

ULT **and the flock{s} would mate by the branches**
UST they would see the branches as they were mating

Make sure your translation of the verbs in this verse refers to a repeated or habitual activity, not a one-time event. Alternate translation: [so they would mate in front of the branches] or [they would mate where they could see the branches] or [they would see the branches as they were breeding]

ULT **and the flock{s} would bear streaked, speckled, and spotted young**
UST As a result, they would have {young that were} striped or speckled or spotted

See how you translated **speckled** and **spotted** in verses 32–33 and 35. Also consider what is the most natural way in your language to refer to the flocks in verses 38 and 39. Alternate translation: [As a result, they would bear offspring that were streaked or speckled or spotted]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flocks	they would see the branches as they were mating
flocks	הַצֹּאן
bear	As a result, they would have young

Genesis 30:40

ULT	UST
Then Jacob set apart the lambs, and he made the faces of the flocks look at the streaked and all the dark-colored animals in the flocks of Laban. And he put flocks for himself by themselves, and he did not put them with the flocks of Laban.	*Then Jacob separated those young animals from Laban's flocks to form new flocks for himself, and he put the rest of the flocks with the striped and dark-colored animals in Laban's flocks so that they would mate and have young that were striped or dark-colored. In that way, over time he created separate flocks of sheep and goats for himself that he kept separate from Laban's flocks.*

ULT **and he made the faces of the flock{s} look at**
UST and he put {the rest of} the flock{s} with

The Hebrew text uses an idiom here that means Jacob put the marked and unmarked animals together (so that they would mate).
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the streaked and all the dark-colored animals**
UST the striped and dark-colored animals

See how you translated **streaked** in verses 35 and 39, and how you translated **dark-colored** in verses 32–33 and 35. Alternate translation: [all the striped animals and dark-colored animals]

ULT **in the flock{s} of Laban**
UST in Laban's flock{s} so that they would mate and have young that were striped or dark-colored

You may need to make it explicit in your translation why Jacob put the unmarked sheep and goats with Laban's streaked and spotted animals, so that people understand what Jacob was doing.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And he put flocks for himself by themselves**
UST In that way, {over time} he created separate flocks {of sheep and goats} for himself

Alternate translation: [In that way, over time he made separate flocks of sheep and goats for himself]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
flocks	flock
flock	flock
Laban	Laban
flocks	flocks
flock	flocks
Laban	Laban

Genesis 30:41

ULT	UST
So it happened whenever the strong animals were in heat, then Jacob put the branches in the troughs before the eyes of the flocks so that they would mate by the branches.	*Whenever the stronger female animals were ready to mate, Jacob put the streaked branches in the drinking troughs in front of those animals so that they would see the branches as they were mating.*

ULT **So it happened whenever**
UST Whenever

This verse includes more details about what Jacob was doing on a regular basis. Alternate translation: [So whenever]

ULT **the strong animals**
UST the stronger female animals

Alternate translation: [the best female animals] or [the hardy female sheep and goats]

ULT **were in heat**
UST were ready to mate

See how you translated this phrase in verse 38. Alternate translation: [were ready to breed]

ULT **then Jacob put the branches in the troughs**
UST Jacob put the {streaked} branches in the {drinking} troughs

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 38. Alternate translation: [Jacob set the striped branches in the watering tubs]

ULT **before the eyes of the flocks so that they would mate by the branches**
UST in front of those animals so that they would see the branches as they were mating

See how you translated **mate** and **the branches** in verse 39. Alternate translation: [in front of those animals so that they would see the branches as they were breeding] or [so that as they were mating, they would see the branches]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … animals	the stronger female animals
Jacob	Jacob
flocks	those animals
so that they would mate	so that they would see the branches as they were mating

Genesis 30:42

ULT	UST
But when the animals were weak, he did not put them in. So it was the weak ones went to Laban, and the strong ones to Jacob,	*But whenever the weaker female animals were ready to mate, Jacob did not put the branches in the troughs. In that way, the young from the weaker animals were Laban's and the young from the stronger animals were Jacob's.*

ULT **But when the animals were weak**
UST But whenever the weaker female animals were ready to mate

Alternate translation: [But whenever the feeble female animals were ready to mate]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **he did not put {them} in**
UST Jacob did not put {the branches} in the troughs

Alternate translation: [Jacob did not set the branches in the tubs]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the weak ones**
UST the young from the weaker animals

Alternate translation: [the young from the feeble animals]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the strong ones**
UST and {the young from} the stronger animals

See how you translated **strong** in verse 41. Alternate translation: [and the young from the hardy animals]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to Jacob**
UST were Jacob's

Alternate translation: [went to Jacob]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the animals	But whenever the weaker female animals were ready to mate
Laban	Laban's
Jacob	Jacob's

Genesis 30:43

ULT	UST
so that the man prospered very greatly, and he owned large flocks, and maidservants and menservants and camels and donkeys.	*So Jacob became extremely wealthy. He owned large flocks of sheep and goats, and many male and female servants and many camels and donkeys.*

ULT **so that the man prospered**
UST So Jacob became extremely wealthy

See how you translated **prospered** in verse 30. Alternate translation: [So Jacob became very wealthy] or [As a result, Jacob became very rich]

ULT **and he owned large flocks**
UST He owned large flock{s} of sheep and goats

Alternate translation: [and owned large flocks of sheep and goats] or [He owned many sheep and goats]

ULT **and maidservants and menservants and camels and donkeys**
UST and {many} male and female servants and {many} camels and donkeys

See how you translated **maidservants,** “menservants,” “camels,” and **donkeys** in Genesis 12:16 and 24:35.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flocks	flock
maidservants	servants
and menservants	servants
camels	camels
donkeys	donkeys

Genesis 31

Genesis 31:1

ULT	UST
Then he heard the words of the sons of Laban, who were saying, "Jacob has taken everything that belonged to our father, and from what belonged to our father he has gained all this wealth!"	*Then one day Jacob heard that Laban's sons were complaining and saying, "Jacob has taken for himself everything that our father owned. In fact, he has gotten all his riches by taking the animals that were our father's!"*

ULT **Then he heard**
UST Then {one day} Jacob heard

Alternate translation: [Then one day someone told Jacob]

ULT **Jacob has taken everything that {belonged} to our father**
UST Jacob has taken {for himself} everything that our father owned

Alternate translation: [Jacob has taken for himself all that our father owned]

ULT **and from what {belonged} to our father he has gained all this wealth**
UST In fact, he has gotten all his riches by taking {the animals} that were our father's

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause and emphasizes Laban's sons' complaint against Jacob. The phrase **all this wealth** especially refers to all the livestock that Jacob had gained during the years he worked for Laban.

Support Reference: Parallelism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 31:2

ULT	UST
And Jacob saw the face of Laban, and behold, he was not with him as yesterday and three days ago.	*Jacob also noticed that Laban no longer acted friendly toward him the way he did in the past.*

ULT **And Jacob saw**
UST Jacob also noticed

Alternate translation: [Jacob also saw]

ULT **the face of Laban, and behold, he was not with him as yesterday {and} three days ago**
UST that Laban no longer acted friendly toward him the way he did in the past

The clause **he was not with him** is used here as an idiom that means Laban was no longer happy with Jacob or that he no longer liked him. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: [that Laban no longer looked at him in a friendly way like he did previously] or [that Laban was no longer happy with him like he was previously] or [that Laban no longer acted kind toward him the way he did in the past]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Laban	Laban

Genesis 31:3

ULT	UST
Then Yahweh said to Jacob, "Go back to the land of your fathers and to your relatives, and I will be with you."	*Then Yahweh told Jacob, "Return to your ancestors' homeland, where your relatives live, and I will stay with you and help you."*

ULT **Then Yahweh said to Jacob**
UST Then Yahweh told Jacob

Alternate translation: [Then Yahweh commanded Jacob]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Go back to the land of your fathers and to your relatives**
UST Return to your ancestors' homeland, where your relatives live

Alternate translation: [Return to the land where your ancestors lived and where your other relatives also live]

ULT **and I will be with you**
UST and I will stay with you and help you

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 26:3 and how you translated similar clauses in Genesis 26:8, 24; 28:15. Alternate translation: [and I will stay with you and bless you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Jacob	Jacob
land	homeland
and to your relatives	where your relatives live

Genesis 31:4

ULT	UST
Then Jacob sent and called for Rachel and Leah to the field to his flocks.	*So Jacob sent a message to Rachel and Leah that they should meet him at the field where he was with his flocks of sheep and goats.*

ULT **Then Jacob sent and called for Rachel and Leah to the field**
UST So Jacob sent a message to Rachel and Leah that they should meet him at the field

See how you translated **sent and called for** in Genesis 27:42. Alternate translation: [So Jacob sent for Rachel and Leah to come to the pasture] or [Then Jacob sent a message to Rachel and Leah that they should meet him in the pasture]

ULT **to his flocks**
UST where he was with his flock{s} of sheep and goats

Alternate translation: [where he was tending his flocks of sheep and goats]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
called	that they should meet him
Rachel	Rachel
Leah	Leah
flocks	flock

Genesis 31:5

ULT	UST
Then he said to them, "I have seen the face of your father, that he is not toward me as yesterday and three days ago, but the God of my father has been with me.	*When they arrived, he said to them, "I have noticed that your father no longer acts friendly toward me the way he did in the past, but the God whom my father serves has stayed with me and has helped me.*

ULT **Then he said to them**
UST When they arrived, he said to them

Consider whether in your language it is necessary to make explicit that Rachel and Leah had come to Jacob before he spoke to them. Alternate translation: [There he told them]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the face of your father, that he is not toward me as yesterday {and} three days ago**
UST that your father no longer acts friendly toward me the way he did in the past

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 2. Alternate translation: [that your father no longer looks at me in a kind way like he did in the past] or [that your father is no longer happy with me as he was previously] or [that your father no longer acts friendly toward me the way he did before]

ULT **but the God of my father**
UST but the God whom my father serves

See how you translated "the God of …" in Genesis 28:13. Alternate translation: [but the God whom my father worships] or [but the God who takes care of my father]

ULT **has been with me**
UST has stayed with me and has helped me

See how you translated the idiom "be with you" in verse 3. Alternate translation: [has stayed with me and has blessed me]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God

Genesis 31:6

ULT	UST
And you know that with all my might I have served your father,	*You both know how I have worked for your father as hard as I could,*

ULT **And you know**
UST You {both} know

In the Hebrew text, **you** is an emphatic pronoun. Also, some languages have a special dual pronoun that fits here well.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **that with all my might I have served your father**
UST how I have worked for your father as hard as I could

Alternate translation: [that I have served your father with all my might] or [how I have worked for your father as faithfully as I could]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
served	I have worked for

Genesis 31:7

ULT	UST
but your father has deceived me and changed my wages ten times. However, God has not allowed him to harm me.	*but he has cheated me by changing what he pays me ten times. However, God has not permitted him to hurt me.*

ULT **but your father has deceived me**
UST but he has cheated me

Alternate translation: [but in spite of that, he has deceived me] or [but yet he has treated me unfairly]

ULT **and changed my wages ten times**
UST by changing what he pays me ten times

Alternate translation: [and ten times he has changed what he said that he would pay me]

ULT **However, God has not allowed him to harm me**
UST However, God has not permitted him to hurt me

In this context, **harm** especially refers to financial harm, but it can also include physical harm.
Alternate translation: [However, God has not permitted him to harm me] or [But God has kept him from hurting me] or [But God has protected me so that he could not hurt me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
deceived	has cheated
God	God
to harm	to hurt

Genesis 31:8

ULT	UST
If he said like this: 'The speckled animals will be your wages,' then all the flocks bore speckled young. But if he said like this: 'The streaked ones will be your wages,' then all the flocks bore streaked young.	*For example, every time that he told me that the speckled animals would be my pay, all the female animals in the flocks gave birth to speckled young. But whenever he changed his mind and told me that the striped animals would be my pay, then they all gave birth to streaked young.*

ULT **If he said like this**
UST For example, every time that he told me

The examples Jacob is describing in verse 8 took place repeatedly (as verse 7 indicates). Alternate translation: [For example, if he told me]

ULT **The speckled {animals} will be your wages**
UST that the speckled {animals} would be my pay

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, see how you translated **speckled** in Genesis 30:32, 33, 35, 39. Alternate translation: [that only the speckled animals would be my pay] or [that he would pay me by giving me only the animals with speckles on them]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **then all the flock{s} bore**
UST all {the female animals in} the flock{s} gave birth to

Alternate translation: [then all the female animals in the flocks gave birth to] or [then all the female sheep and goats gave birth to]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **speckled young**
UST speckled young

Alternate translation: [speckled babies] or [young that were speckled]

ULT **But if he said like this**
UST But whenever he {changed his mind and} told me

Alternate translation: [But if he said to me] or [Then if he changed his mind and told me]

ULT **The streaked {ones} will be your wages**
UST that the striped animals would be my pay

See how you translated **streaked** in Genesis 30:35, 39, 40. Alternate translation: [that only the striped animals would be my pay] or [that he would pay me by giving me only the animals with stripes on them]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **then all the flock{s} bore**
UST all {the female animals in} the flock{s} gave birth to

Alternate translation: [then all the females in the flocks gave birth to] or [then all the female sheep and goats had]

ULT **streaked young**
UST streaked young

Alternate translation: [striped young] or [young that had stripes on them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flocks	flocks
bore	gave birth to
flocks	they
bore	then … gave birth to

Genesis 31:9

ULT	UST
So God took away the livestock of your father and gave them to me.	*In that way, God has taken your father's animals from him and has given them to me.*

ULT **the livestock of your father**
UST your father's animals from him

The term **livestock** usually includes all kinds of domestic animals, but in this context it refers to the sheep and goats that Jacob was taking care of for Laban. Alternate translation: [many of the animals that belonged to your father]

ULT **and gave {them} to me**
UST and has given {them} to me

Alternate translation: [and gave them to me instead]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
livestock	animals

Genesis 31:10

ULT	UST
And it happened in the season the flocks were in heat, and I lifted my eyes and saw in a dream that, behold, the he-goats that were mounting the flocks were streaked, speckled, and spotted.	*One time during the season when the flocks of sheep and goats were mating, I had a dream. In the dream I looked around and was surprised to see that the only male goats and sheep that were mating with the female goats and sheep were striped, speckled, or blotched.*

ULT **And it happened**
UST One time

Alternate translation: [One night]

ULT **in the season**
UST during the season

Alternate translation: [during the time] or [during the time of year]

ULT **the flock{s} were in heat**
UST when the flock{s} {of sheep and goats} were mating

Alternate translation: [that the female sheep and goats were in heat] or [that the flocks of sheep and goats were mating]

ULT **and I lifted my eyes and saw in a dream that, behold**
UST I had a dream. {In the dream} I looked around and was surprised to see that

The word **behold** emphasizes what Jacob saw and might also express that he was surprised at what he saw. Alternate translation: [I had a dream and in the dream I looked around and saw that]

ULT **the he-goats that were mounting the flocks**
UST the {only} male goats {and sheep} that were mating with the female goats and sheep

Some languages have special terms for male and female goats or sheep. For example, billy goats and nanny goats (for male and female goats) and rams and ewes (for male and female sheep). Choose terms in your language that are natural and well-known.

ULT **were streaked, speckled, and spotted**
UST were striped, speckled, or blotched

It may be more natural to put this phrase earlier and say, "… saw that the male goats and sheep that were streaked, speckled, and spotted were the only ones that were mating with the female goats and sheep." Alternate translation: [were streaked speckled, or spotted] or [had a striped, speckled, or blotched pattern in their fur]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flocks	flock
dream	dream
the he-goats	goats
flocks	the female goats and sheep

Genesis 31:11

ULT	UST
Then an angel of God said to me in the dream, 'Jacob!' and I said, 'Behold me.'	*Then an angel from God called to me in the dream, 'Jacob!' and I answered, 'Yes, Lord?'*

ULT **Then an angel of God said to me in the dream, 'Jacob**
UST Then an angel from God called to me in the dream, 'Jacob

In some languages it is more natural to put **in the dream** earlier in this clause. Also see how you translated **an angel of God** in Genesis 21:17.

ULT **and I said**
UST and I answered

Alternate translation: [and I responded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold me**
UST Yes, Lord

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 22:1 and 27:11. Alternate translation: [Here I am!] or [Yes, sir?] or [Yes, I am listening]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angel	angel
God	God
dream	dream
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 31:12

ULT	UST
Then he said, 'Please lift up your eyes and see all the he-goats that are mounting the flocks are streaked, speckled, and spotted, because I have seen all that Laban is doing to you.	*Then he said to me, 'Look around and notice that all the male goats and sheep that are mating with the female goats and sheep are striped, speckled, or blotched. I have caused that to happen, because I have noticed all the wrong things that Laban has been doing to you.*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then he said to me

Alternate translation: [The angel said]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Please lift up your eyes**
UST Look around

See how you translated this idiom in Genesis 22:13. Also see how you translated Genesis 22:2, another passage where Yahweh uses **Please**. Alternate translation: [Look around you] or [Look carefully]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and see**
UST and notice that

Alternate translation: [and observe that]

ULT **all the he-goats that are mounting the flocks**
UST all the male goats {and sheep} that are mating with the female goats and sheep

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 10.

ULT **are streaked, speckled, and spotted**
UST are striped, speckled, or blotched

See how you translated this phrase in verses 8 and 10. Alternate translation: [are streaked speckled, or spotted] or [have a streaked speckled, or spotted pattern in their fur]

ULT **because I have seen**
UST I have caused that to happen, because I have noticed

Sometimes an angel says **I** as God's representative, but in this context, it seems to be Yahweh himself (in the form of an angel) who is speaking to Jacob (See verse 13). That information could be put in a footnote, and you could make "Yahweh" explicit in the text to make that clear. Alternate translation: [I, Yahweh, have caused that to happen, because I have observed]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **all that Laban is doing to you**
UST all {the wrong things} that Laban has been doing to you

Alternate translation: [all the wrong things that Laban has done to you] or [all the ways that Laban has been treating you badly]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the he-goats	goats
flocks	the female goats and sheep
Laban	Laban

Genesis 31:13

ULT	UST
I am the God of Bethel, where you anointed a pillar, where you vowed a vow to me. Now get up, go out from this land, and return to the land of your birth.'"	*I am the God who appeared to you at the town of Bethel, where you poured oil on top of a memorial stone to dedicate the place to me, and where you made an oath to me. So then, get ready and leave this land immediately, and go back to your home land.'"*

ULT **where you anointed a pillar**
UST where you poured oil on top of a memorial stone to dedicate the place to me

See how you translated "poured oil on top of" in Genesis 28:38 and **pillar** in Genesis 28:18, 22. Alternate translation: [where you poured olive oil on top of a memorial pillar to dedicate the place to me]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **where you vowed a vow to me**
UST and where you made an oath to me

See how you translated **vowed a vow** in Genesis 28:20. Alternate translation: [and where you made a vow to me]

ULT **Now get up, go out from this land**
UST So then, get ready {and} leave this land immediately

The phrase **get up** means that Jacob should immediately get ready to go and then leave; see how you translated this phrase in Genesis 27:43. Alternate translation: [So now get up and leave this region immediately] or [Now go at once from this land]

ULT **and return to**
UST and go back to

Alternate translation: [and travel back to]

ULT **the land of your birth**
UST your home land

The Hebrew word for **birth** in this phrase can also be translated as "relatives" here (as in verse 3). See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 24:7. Alternate translation: [the land where you were born] or [the land where your relatives live] or [your native land]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel
anointed	you poured oil … to dedicate the place to me
pillar	on top of a memorial stone
vowed	you made
vow	oath
land	land
land	land

Genesis 31:14

ULT	UST
Then Rachel replied, and Leah, and they said to him, "Is there still for us a portion or inheritance in the house of our father?	*Then Rachel and Leah responded to Jacob, "We will not inherit anything from our father when he dies!*

ULT **Then Rachel replied, and Leah, and they said to him**
UST Then Rachel and Leah responded to Jacob

Alternate translation: [Then Rachel and Leah responded to him] or [Rachel and Leah replied to him]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Is there still for us a portion or inheritance in the house of our father**
UST We will not inherit anything from our father when he dies

This rhetorical question expects the answer "no." It also expresses Rachel's and Leah's strong emotion and emphasizes that there is nothing for them to inherit from their father. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question fits well here in your language. Alternate translation: [We no longer have any part in the inheritance from our father.] or [We will never inherit anything from our father!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
Leah	Leah
inheritance	inherit
house	We will not inherit anything

Genesis 31:15

ULT	UST
Are we not regarded by him as foreigners? For he sold us, and he has indeed completely eaten up our silver.	*It is obvious that he treats us like strangers and not family. For example, he sold us to you, and then he spent all the money that should have been ours.*

ULT **Are we not regarded by him**
UST It is obvious that he treats us

This rhetorical question expects the answer "yes" and expresses Rachel's and Leah's anger at how their father treats them. Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to use a rhetorical question here. Alternate translation: [It is obvious that he regards us] or [He obviously is treating us]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **as foreigners**
UST like strangers and not family

Make sure that the punctuation you use here fits with how you translate this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [like outsiders and not family] or [as if we were foreigners instead of family]

ULT **For he sold us**
UST For example, he sold us to you

This sentence is an example of how Laban treated his daughters like foreigners. Alternate translation: [After all, he sold us to you]

ULT **and he has indeed completely eaten up**
UST and then he spent all

The phrase **eaten up** is used here as an idiom that means Laban had spent or kept for himself all the wealth he had gained from Jacob's 14 years of working for him. Many languages have a similar idiom that could be used here. Alternate translation: [and then he used up all]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **our silver**
UST the money that should have been ours

In that culture at that time, **silver** was a currency used to buy and sell things. Alternate translation: [the wealth that should have been ours] or [the money that belonged to us]
Support Reference: Biblical Money

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
foreigners	like strangers and not family
and he has … eaten up	and then he spent all
silver	the money that should have been ours

Genesis 31:16

ULT	UST
For all the wealth that God took from our father belongs to us and to our children. So now, do all that God has said to you."	*In fact, all the wealth that God has taken from our father rightfully belongs to us and our children. So then, you should do everything that God has told you to do."*

ULT **For all the wealth that God took from our father**
UST In fact, all the wealth that God has taken from our father

Alternate translation: [In fact, all the abundance of flocks that God has taken from our father] or [In reality, all the flocks that made our father wealthy and that God has taken from him]

ULT **belongs to us and to our children**
UST rightfully {belongs} to us and our children

Alternate translation: [actually belongs to us and our children] or [should have been given to us and our children anyway]

ULT **So now, do**
UST So then, {you should} do

The words **So now** introduce Rachel and Leah's conclusion that is based on what they just said. Do what is best in your language to communicate that. Alternate translation: [So go ahead and do] or [So we totally agree that you should do]

ULT **all that God has said to you**
UST everything that God has told you to do

Alternate translation: [everything God has commanded you to do] or [exactly what God told you to do]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
God	God

Genesis 31:17

ULT	UST
So Jacob got up and put his sons and his wives on the camels.	*So Jacob quickly got ready for the journey and helped his wives and his children get up onto some camels.*

ULT So Jacob got up
UST So Jacob {quickly} got ready for the journey

See how you translated “get up” in verse 13. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob immediately got packed for the journey]

ULT and put his sons and his wives on the camels
UST and helped his wives and his children {get up} onto some camels

Jacob took all his children with him, not just his sons. Alternate translation: [and helped his wives and his sons mount up onto the camels]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
camels	camels

Genesis 31:18

ULT	UST
Then he drove all his livestock and all his property that he had acquired, the livestock in his possession that he had acquired in Paddan Aram, to go to Isaac his father, to the land of Canaan.	*Then he started herding the camels and all his other animals toward the region of Canaan where his father Isaac lived. He took with him all his possessions that he had accumulated, including all the livestock that he had acquired while living in the region of Paddan Aram.*

ULT **Then he drove**
UST Then he {started} herding

Alternate translation: [Then he led] or [Then he started driving]

ULT **all his livestock and all his property that he had acquired, the livestock in his possession that he had acquired**
UST the camels and all his {other} animals … He took with him all his possessions that he had accumulated, {including} all the livestock that he had acquired

The word **livestock** is general here and includes all of Jacob's animals. Alternate translation: [the camels and all his other livestock and along with them, he also took all the other possessions that he had acquired]

ULT **in Paddan Aram**
UST while living in {the region of} Paddan Aram

Be consistent here with how you translated "the land/region of Paddan Aram" in Genesis 25:20. Alternate translation: [while living in the land of Paddan Aram]

ULT **to go to Isaac his father, to the land of Canaan**
UST toward the region of Canaan where his father Isaac lived

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "Then he started driving/herding the camels and all his other animals to/toward the land/region of Canaan where his father Isaac lived. He took with him all his possessions that he had accumulated, including all the livestock that he had acquired/accumulated while living in the land/region of Paddan Aram." Alternate translation: [to go to Canaan, to the home of his father Isaac] or [to the land of Canaan, where his father Isaac lived]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
livestock	animals
livestock	livestock
in Paddan	while living in {the region of} Paddan
Aram	Aram
land	toward the region of
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 31:19

ULT	UST
Now Laban had gone to shear his sheep, so Rachel stole the idols that belonged to her father,	*Now before that, Laban the Aramean had gone away for several days to shear his sheep. While her father was gone, Rachel entered his tent and stole his idols that he worshiped.*

ULT Now Laban
UST Now {before that,} Laban the Aramean

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the events in verse 19 happened before Jacob and his family had left. Also, for some languages it is more natural to first make "the Aramean" explicit here in verse 19 rather than wait until verse 20.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT had gone to shear his sheep
UST had gone away {for several days} to shear his sheep

In that culture, sheep wool was very important since it was used to make clothing and blankets. The process of shearing many sheep would have taken several days. You could include some of this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [had gone away for several days to cut the wool off his sheep]

ULT so Rachel stole
UST While her father was gone, Rachel {entered his tent and} stole

Alternate translation: [While he was gone, Rachel entered his tent and took]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT the idols that {belonged} to her father
UST his idols that he worshiped

The author assumes that readers will know that these **idols** were statues made of wood or precious metals and were small enough to be used in a private home. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. In this chapter these statues are referred to as **idols** (in verses 19, 34, 35 when the author refers to them) and "gods" (in quotes in verses 30 and 32 when Laban or Jacob talk about them). If it is confusing in your language to switch back and forth between these two terms, you could use "gods" throughout this chapter, since Laban would not have called them idols, and Jacob would not have used that term in his presence. However, if possible, it is best to translate the two terms the way the Hebrew text has them. Alternate translation: [his family gods] or [the gods that he had]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
sheep	sheep
Rachel	Rachel
the idols	his idols

Genesis 31:20

ULT	UST
and Jacob stole the heart of Laban the Aramean by not informing him that he was fleeing.	*At the same time, Jacob also deceived Laban by fleeing secretly without telling him that he was leaving.*

ULT **and Jacob stole the heart of**
UST At the same time, Jacob {also} deceived

Alternate translation: [and Jacob tricked] or [At the same time, Jacob tricked]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Laban the Aramean**
UST Laban

If you used **Aramean** earlier (verse 19), it may not be natural here. Also, see how you translated this phrase in Genesis 25:20.

ULT **by not informing him that he was fleeing**
UST by fleeing {secretly} without telling him that he was leaving

Alternate translation: [by not telling him that he was fleeing] or [by leaving secretly without informing him that he was leaving]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Laban	Laban
Aramean	Laban
informing	telling

Genesis 31:21

ULT	UST
And he fled and all that belonged to him. And he got up and crossed the River and set his face toward the mountains of Gilead.	*So in that way Jacob ran away with his family and took everything that they owned. They quickly crossed the Euphrates River and headed toward the hill country of Gilead.*

ULT **And he fled**
UST So {in that way} Jacob ran away with his family

This statement summarizes an event that already happened (See verses 18 and 20). Make sure your translation of this verse does not sound like Jacob left a second time. To make this clear you could say, "After Jacob and his family ran away with everything that they owned, they quickly crossed the Euphrates River and headed toward the hill country of Gilead." Alternate translation: [So Jacob and his family ran away]

ULT **and all**
UST and {took} everything

Alternate translation: [with all] or [and took all]

ULT **that {belonged} to him**
UST that they owned

Make sure that your choice of pronouns throughout this verse fits with how you translate the beginning of this sentence. Alternate translation: [that belonged to them] or [that he had]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And he got up and crossed the River**
UST They quickly crossed the {Euphrates} River

The Euphrates River was also called **the River** because it was large and well-known. It was about 50 miles (80 kilometers) from Haran, where Laban lived. This information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [He quickly crossed the Euphrates River]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and set his face toward**
UST and headed toward

Alternate translation: [and went in the direction of]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the mountain{s} of Gilead**
UST the hill country of Gilead

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could refer to: (1) mountains or hill country; or (2) a specific mountain **Mount Gilead**. Alternate translation: [the mountain region called Gilead] or [the hill country called Gilead]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Gilead	Gilead

Genesis 31:22

ULT	UST
And on the third day it was told to Laban that Jacob had fled.	*Three days later someone informed Laban that Jacob had run away.*

ULT **And on the third day it was told to Laban**
UST Three days later someone informed Laban

Alternate translation: [Three days after they had left, someone informed Laban] or [Three days later Laban found out]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **that Jacob had fled**
UST that Jacob had run away

See how you translated **fleeing** and **fled** in verses 20–21. Alternate translation: [that Jacob and his family had run away]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	days
And … it was told	someone informed
Laban	Laban
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 31:23

ULT	UST
So he took his relatives with him and pursued after him a seven-day journey and overtook him in the mountains of Gilead.	*So Laban took some of his relatives with him and chased after Jacob and his family for seven days until they overtook him in the hill country of Gilead.*

ULT **So he took his relatives with him**
UST So Laban took {some of} his relatives with him

Alternate translation: [So Laban gathered some of his relatives]

ULT **and pursued after him a seven-day journey**
UST and chased after Jacob {and his family} for seven days

Alternate translation: [and followed after Jacob and his household for seven days]

ULT **and overtook him**
UST until they overtook him

Alternate translation: [until they overtook them] or [until they caught up with him]

ULT **in the mountain{s} of Gilead**
UST in the hill country of Gilead

See how you translated this phrase in verse 21. Alternate translation: [in the mountain region called Gilead] or [in the hill country called Gilead]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	days
Gilead	Gilead

Genesis 31:24

ULT	UST
But God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream that night and said to him, "Watch yourself that you do not speak with Jacob either good or bad."	*But that night God appeared to Laban in a dream and warned him, "Be sure that you do not threaten Jacob in any way."*

ULT **But God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream that night**
UST But that night God appeared to Laban in a dream

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 20:3. Also see how you translated **Laban the Aramean** in verse 20. Alternate translation: [Then that same night God appeared to Laban in a dream] or [That night Laban had a dream and in it God appeared to him]

ULT **Watch yourself that you do not speak with Jacob either good or bad**
UST Be sure that you do not threaten Jacob in any way

God is warning Laban not to say or do anything that would harm Jacob (See verse 29). Alternate translation: [Be careful that you do not say or do anything to Jacob to try to stop him from leaving] or [Be sure that you do not harm Jacob in any way]

Support Reference: Merism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Laban	Laban
Aramean	Laban
dream	dream
Watch	Be sure
Jacob	Jacob
good	in any way
bad	in any way

Genesis 31:25

ULT	UST
And Laban overtook Jacob, and Jacob had pitched his tents in the mountains, so Laban with his relatives pitched theirs in the mountains of Gilead.	*By the time that Laban caught up with Jacob, Jacob had already set up his tents in the hill country of Gilead, so Laban and his relatives also set up camp there at a place nearby.*

ULT **And Laban overtook Jacob**
UST By the time that Laban caught up with Jacob

Make sure that the way you translate this clause does not sound like Laban overtook Jacob a second time. This is referring to what already happened in verse 23. See how you translated **overtook** there. Alternate translation: [So when Laban overtook Jacob]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **and Jacob had pitched his tents**
UST Jacob had {already} set up his tents

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob had already pitched his tents before Laban arrived. Also see how you translated "pitched his tent" in Genesis 12:8 and 26:25. Alternate translation: [Jacob and his family had already put up his tents] or [Jacob and his family had already set up camp]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **in the mountains**
UST in the hill country of Gilead

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to make **Gilead** explicit here (rather than later in this verse). Also see how you translated **mountains of Gilead** in verses 21 and 23. Alternate translation: [in the mountain region of Gilead]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **so Laban with his relatives**
UST so Laban and his relatives

Alternate translation: [so Laban and all his relatives that were with him]

ULT **pitched theirs**
UST also set up camp

Alternate translation: [also put up their tents] or [also camped]

ULT **in the mountain{s} of Gilead**
UST there at a place nearby

If you made **Gilead** explicit earlier in this verse in your translation, it may not be necessary to repeat it here.
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
And … overtook	By the time that … caught up with
Jacob	Jacob
Jacob	Jacob
tents	tents
Laban	Laban
Gilead	there at a place nearby

Genesis 31:26

ULT	UST
Then Laban said to Jacob, "What have you done? And you have stolen my heart and carried away my daughters like captives of the sword!	*Then the next day Laban met with Jacob and complained to him, "Look what you have done! You have deceived me and dragged away my daughters like prisoners of war!*

ULT Then Laban said to Jacob
UST Then {the next day} Laban {met with Jacob and} complained to him

See how you translated a similar quote margin in 29:25, when the roles were reversed and Jacob confronted Laban. Alternate translation: [Then the next day Laban came to Jacob and complained to Jacob] or [The next day Laban met with Jacob and rebuked Jacob and said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT What have you done
UST Look what you have done

Laban uses a rhetorical question here to express his anger at Jacob. Do what is best in your language to communicate that. Alternate translation: [Why have you done this?] or [What you have done is wrong!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT And you have stolen my heart
UST You have deceived me

See how you translated the idiom "stole the heart of" in verse 20. Alternate translation: [You have tricked me] or [You have acted deceitfully toward me]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT and carried away my daughters
UST and dragged away my daughters

Laban uses exaggeration to show he is angry and to try to make Jacob feel guilty for what he did. Alternate translation: [and dragged away my daughters with you] or [and forced my daughters to leave with you]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT like captives of the sword
UST like prisoners of war

Alternate translation: [as if you had captured them in battle!]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
Jacob	to him
captives	like prisoners of
sword	war

Genesis 31:27

ULT	UST
Why did you secretly flee and deceive me and not tell me? For I would have sent you with joy and with songs, with tambourines and with lyres!	*You should not have deceived me and secretly run away! You should have told me you were leaving! If I had known, we could have held a feast and sung joyful songs and danced together, with tambourines and lyres playing, before sending you on your way.*

ULT **Why did you secretly flee and deceive me**

UST You should not have deceived me and secretly run away

Alternate translation: [Why did you trick me and secretly run away] or [Why did you deceive me by secretly running away]

ULT **and not tell me**

UST You should have told me you were leaving

Verse 27 is one long rhetorical question in the Hebrew text that expresses Laban's anger at Jacob. For some languages it is better to break it up into two or more sentences. Do what is best in your language, and make sure that the punctuation fits well. Alternate translation: [without telling me you were leaving!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **For I would have sent you with joy and with songs**

UST If I had known, we could have {held a feast and} sung joyful songs {and danced} together … before sending you on your way

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the events in this clause are contrary-to-fact (hypothetical). Alternate translation: [If I had known, I would have held a feast and sent you on your way, singing joyful songs together] or [If I had known, I could have sent you on your way by having a feast and singing joyful songs together]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **with tambourine{s} and with lyres**

UST with tambourines and lyres playing

For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, "If I had known, we could have held a feast and sung joyful songs and danced together, with tambourines and lyres playing, before sending you on your way." Also, see how you translated **lyres/harps** in Genesis 4:21. Alternate translation: [with tambourines and harps playing!] or [with the music of musical instruments!]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tell	You should have told me you were leaving
joy	joyful
lyres	lyres

Genesis 31:28

ULT	UST
And you did not let me kiss my grandchildren and my daughters! Now you have acted foolishly by doing that!	*You did not even let me kiss my daughters and my grandchildren before they left! What you have done is foolish!*

ULT **And you did not let me kiss my grandchildren and my daughters**
UST You did not {even} let me kiss my daughters and my grandchildren before they left

For some languages, it may be more natural to mention the daughters before the children. Also see how you translated **kiss** in Genesis 27:26–27. Alternate translation: [You did not even let me kiss my daughters and my grandchildren goodbye before they left!]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Now you have acted foolishly by doing that**
UST What you have done is foolish

Alternate translation: [What you have done is very stupid!] or [You acted foolishly when you left secretly like that!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kiss	kiss
you have acted foolishly	foolish

Genesis 31:29

ULT	UST
It is in the power of my hand to do harm to you, but last night the God of your father said to me, saying, 'Keep yourself from speaking with Jacob either good or bad.'	*I have the power to harm all of you, but last night in a dream the God whom your father serves warned me not to threaten you in any way.*

ULT **It is in the power of my hand to do harm to you**
UST I have the power to harm {all of} you

The pronoun **you** is plural here, so it probably refers to Jacob and everyone in his household. Alternate translation: [I and my men have the ability to harm all of you]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **but last night the God of your father**
UST but last night {in a dream} the God whom your father serves

For some languages it may be more natural to put this time phrase later and say "… said to me in a dream last night." See how you translated a similar phrase **the God of my father** in verse 5.
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **said to me, saying, 'Keep yourself from speaking with Jacob either good or bad**
UST warned me not to threaten you in any way

For some languages it is necessary to make this embedded quote an indirect quote. Also see how you translated a similar quote in verse 24. Alternate translation: [warned me to not harm you in any way]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
harm	to harm {all of} you
God	God
Keep	not to threaten you
Jacob	not to threaten you
good	in any way
bad	in any way

Genesis 31:30

ULT	UST
So now, you have surely gone because you greatly long for the house of your father. Why did you steal my gods?"	*Now then, I understand that you left because you were so homesick to return to your father's family, but why did you steal my gods?"*

ULT **So now, you have surely gone**
UST Now then, {I understand that} you left

Begin this verse in a way which shows that Laban is introducing a new topic. Also notice that **you** shifts to singular here in verse 30. Alternate translation: [Now then, I know that you left] or [Now, I know that you ran away]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **because you greatly long**
UST because you were so homesick

Alternate translation: [because you longed so much] or [because you were very homesick]

ULT **for the house of your father**
UST to return to your father's family

This phrase refers to the people in Jacob's father's household and other relatives living nearby. Alternate translation: [to return home to your father and other relatives]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Why did you steal my gods**
UST but why did you steal my gods

Alternate translation: [but what is the reason that you stole my gods?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	to return to … s family
gods	gods

Genesis 31:31

ULT	UST
Then Jacob answered and said to Laban, "Because I was afraid, because I said that perhaps you would seize your daughters from me.	*Jacob answered Laban, "We left secretly because I was afraid. I thought that if I told you we were leaving, you might take your two daughters from me by force.*

ULT **Then Jacob answered and said to Laban**
UST Jacob answered Laban

Alternate translation: [Jacob answered him] or [Then Jacob told Laban]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Because I was afraid**
UST We left secretly because I was afraid

Make sure it is clear here in your translation that Jacob is answering Laban's question in verse 27, not his question in verse 30.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **that perhaps you would seize your daughters from me**
UST you might take your {two} daughters from me by force

Make sure you translate this sentence in a way that shows it is hypothetical. Also see how you translated **seized** in Genesis 21:25.
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Laban	Laban
afraid	afraid
seize	you might take … by force

Genesis 31:32

ULT	UST
Whomever you find your gods with will not live! In front of our relatives, observe for yourself what is with me, and take what belongs to you." Now Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them.	*However we did not take your gods. In fact, if you find your gods with anyone here, that person will die for stealing them! So while our relatives are watching, go ahead and search all my belongings for yourself. If you find anything that is yours, take it." When Jacob said that, he did not know that Rachel was the one who had stolen the idols.*

ULT **Whomever you find your gods with**
UST However we did not take your gods. In fact, if you find your gods with anyone here

See how you translated **gods** in verse 30. Alternate translation: [However we did not steal your gods. In fact, if you find your gods with anyone here]

ULT **will not live**
UST that person will die for stealing them

Alternate translation: [that person will be put to death as punishment for stealing them!]

ULT **In front of our relatives**
UST So while our relatives are watching

Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to both Jacob's and Laban's relatives. Alternate translation: [So with our relatives as witnesses]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **observe for yourself what {is} with me**
UST go ahead and search {all} my belongings for yourself

Alternate translation: [search for yourself what I have with me here]

ULT **and take {what belongs} to you**
UST If you find anything that is yours, take it

Alternate translation: [and take whatever you find that is yours]

ULT **Now Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them**
UST When Jacob said that, he did not know that Rachel {was the one who} had stolen the idols

Translate this background information in a way that is clear and natural in your language. Also see how you translated **stole** in verses 19 and 30.
Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gods	gods
Jacob	Jacob
know	know
Rachel	Rachel

Genesis 31:33

ULT	UST
Then Laban went into the tent of Jacob and into the tent of Leah and into the tent of the two slave women, but he did not find anything. Then he came out of Leah's tent and went into Rachel's tent.	*So Laban started searching in Jacob's tent. Then he searched through Leah's tent and through the two servant women's tent, but he did not find anything that belonged to him. Next after he left those tents, he went into Rachel's tent.*

ULT **Then Laban went into the tent of Jacob**
UST So Laban started searching in Jacob's tent

See how you translated **tent** in verse 25.

ULT **and into the tent of the two slave women**
UST and through the two servant women's tent

Consider again how you translated "slave/servant woman" in the book of Genesis. See 20:17; 21:10, 12–13; 30:3; 31:33. Alternate translation: [and in the tent where the two maidservants lived]

ULT **but he did not find anything**
UST but he did not find {anything} that belonged to him

Alternate translation: [but he did not find his gods]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
tent	tent
Jacob	Jacob
tent	tent
Leah	Leah
tent	tent
the … slave women	servant
Leah	those
tent	tents
Rachel	Rachel
tent	tent

Genesis 31:34

ULT	UST
Now Rachel had taken the idols and put them inside the camel's saddle and was sitting on them. And Laban felt throughout the entire tent, but he did not find them.	*Now Rachel had hidden the idols inside her camel saddlebag, and she was sitting on them. So although Laban searched through everything else in the tent, he could not find them.*

ULT **Now Rachel had taken the idols and put them inside the camel's saddle**
UST Now Rachel had hidden the idols inside {her} camel saddlebag

This kind of saddle was used as a seat and also had compartments or bags for carrying things. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Rachel had hidden the idols before Laban entered her tent. Also see how you translated **idols** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [But Rachel had put the idols inside her camel saddlebag to hide them]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **and was sitting on them**
UST and she was sitting on them

Alternate translation: [and she was sitting on the gods]

ULT **And Laban felt throughout the entire tent**
UST So although Laban searched through everything {else} in the tent

Alternate translation: [Laban rummaged through everything else in the tent, but] or [So when Laban searched everywhere else in her tent]

ULT **but he did not find them**
UST he could not find them

For some languages, it may be better to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "So Laban was not able to find them, even though he searched her tent thoroughly." Alternate translation: [he could not find anything] or [he did not find his idols]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
the idols	had hidden the idols
camel	camel
Laban	Laban
tent	tent

Genesis 31:35

ULT	UST
And she said to her father, "Do not let it burn in the eyes of my lord that I am not able to stand up in your presence, because the way of women is on me." So he searched, but he did not find the idols.	*As he was searching, Rachel said to him, "Sir, please do not be upset that I am not able to get up to greet you, because it's that time of the month when I feel weak." That is also why he could not find his idols when he searched her tent.*

ULT **And she said to her father**
UST As he was searching, Rachel said to him

Alternate translation: [Rather Rachel had said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Do not let it burn in the eyes of my lord**
UST Sir, {please} do not be upset

Make sure you translate **my lord** in a way that is appropriate for a daughter to show respect to her father. It should not sound like she was Laban's slave or servant. Alternate translation: [Sir, please do not let it anger you]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **Do not let it burn in the eyes of my lord**
UST Sir, {please} do not be upset

The phrase **burn in the eyes** is a common expression of his culture that means that her father is displeased. If this phrase does not have that meaning in your language, use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning or state the meaning plainly. See how you translated this idiom in Genesis 30:2. Alternate translation: [Please do not be angry at me, sir] or [Sir, please do not be angry with me]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **that I am not able to stand up in your presence**
UST that I am not able to get up to greet you

Alternate translation: [that I am not able to stand up to greet you]

ULT **because the way of women {is} on me**
UST because it's that time of the month when I feel weak

Translate this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people when this is read aloud in public. Alternate translation: [because it is that time of the month when I feel weak] or [because I am having my monthly cycle]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	Sir
searched	searched
the idols	his idols

Genesis 31:36

ULT	UST
Then it burned within Jacob, and he disputed with Laban, and Jacob responded and said to Laban, "What is my crime? What is my sin, that you have hotly pursued after me?	*Then Jacob became very angry at Laban and confronted him by saying to him, "Tell me my crime! Tell me what sin I have done against you that gives you the right to chase after me!*

ULT **Then it burned within Jacob**
UST Then Jacob became {very} angry at Laban

See how you translated the idiom "burn" in verse 35.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he disputed with Laban, and Jacob responded and said to Laban**
UST and confronted him by saying to him

Alternate translation: [and contended with him and said] or [and rebuked him by saying to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **What {is} my crime**
UST Tell me my crime

Jacob's rhetorical questions in this verse show that he was angry at Laban. Do what is best in your language to communicate his anger. Alternate translation: [Tell me what crime I have done]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **What {is} my sin, that you have hotly pursued after me**
UST Tell me what sin I have done {against you} that gives you the right to chase after me

Alternate translation: [How have I sinned against you so that you have a reason to pursue me so intensely] or [Tell me what sin I have committed against you that gives you the right to pursue after me!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Laban	and confronted him
Jacob	יַעֲקֹב
Laban	to him
is my crime	Tell me my crime
sin	sin

Genesis 31:37

ULT	UST
Since you have felt through all my things, what have you found from any of the things of your house? Put it here in front of my relatives and your relatives, and let them judge between the two of us!	*Now that you have searched through all my things, did you find anything that anyone took from your household? If so, put it here in front of our relatives, so that they can decide which one of us is right!*

ULT **Since you have felt through all my things**
UST Now that you have searched through all my things

See how you translated **felt through** in verse 34. Alternate translation: [Now that you have felt through all my things]

ULT **what have you found from any of the things of your house? Put {it} here**
UST did you find anything {that anyone took} from your household? {If so,} put {it} here

Alternate translation: [did you find anything that anyone took from your household? If so, bring it here] or [show us what you have found that belongs to you! If you found anything, put it here]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in front of my relatives and your relatives**
UST in front of our relatives

Alternate translation: [where all our relatives can see it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	anything {that anyone took} from your household

Genesis 31:38

ULT	UST
These twenty years I have been with you! Your ewes and your she-goats did not miscarry, and I have not eaten rams from your flocks.	*For twenty years I have worked for you! During all that time your sheep and your goats had no trouble bearing young, and I have never killed and eaten any animals from your flocks.*

ULT **These twenty years I {have been} with you**
UST For twenty years I {have worked} for you

Alternate translation: [For the past twenty years I have worked for you!]

ULT **Your ewes and your she-goats**
UST During all that time your sheep and your goats

Alternate translation: [During those years your female sheep and goats]

ULT **did not miscarry**
UST had no trouble bearing young

Alternate translation: [bore their young without any problems]

ULT **and I have not eaten rams from your flocks**
UST and I have never {killed and} eaten {any} animals from your flocks

Make sure your translation does not sound here like Jacob is talking about eating animals while they are still alive; the animals would be killed and cooked first. Alternate translation: [and I have never killed and eaten any rams from your flocks] or [and I never took any animals from your flocks to eat]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
ewes	sheep
and your she-goats	goats
rams	and … any animals from your flocks
flocks	flocks

Genesis 31:39

ULT	UST
I did not bring torn animals to you; I bore the loss of it myself. You required it from my hand, those stolen by day and those stolen by night.	*Whenever wild animals killed any of your animals, I never brought the dead animal to you to prove I was innocent. Rather, I replaced them at my own expense. Besides that, you required me to pay for any animals that anyone ever stole at any time of day or night.*

ULT **I bore the loss of it myself**
UST Rather, I replaced them at my own expense

Normally it was the owner of the flocks (not the shepherds) who took care of the expense when an animal was killed or stolen. You could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Rather I paid for that loss myself] or [Rather I replaced them at my own expense]

ULT **You required it from my hand**
UST Besides that, you required me to pay for

Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [You also made me pay for]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **those stolen by day and {those} stolen by night**
UST any animals {that anyone ever} stole {at any time of} day or night

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [any animals that got stolen by thieves, whether it happened in the day or at night]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
You required it	you required
day	day

Genesis 31:40

ULT	UST
There I was: In the day, heat devoured me, and in the night the frost, so that my sleep fled from my eyes.	*That was my situation! During the days, I suffered from the hot sun, and during the nights it was so cold that I could not sleep.*

ULT **There I was**
UST That was my situation

Alternate translation: [That is how it was for me!] or [That was my life]

ULT **In the day, heat devoured me**
UST During the days, I suffered from the hot sun

Consider whether or not you can talk about heat and frost in your language as if they could harm Jacob the way a person could harm him. Alternate translation: [During the day the heat of the sun pounded me]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **and in the night the frost, so that … fled**
UST and during the nights it was so cold that I could not sleep

Alternate translation: [and at night I suffered from the cold, so that I could hardly sleep] or [and during the nights it was so cold that I could hardly sleep]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	days

Genesis 31:41

ULT	UST
That is how it was for me twenty years in your house. I served you fourteen years for your two daughters, and six years for your flocks, and you changed my wages ten times.	*It was like that for me during the entire twenty years that I was with you. I worked for you for fourteen years in order to marry your two daughters, and I worked another six years to earn flocks of animals from you, even though you changed my pay ten times.*

ULT **That {is how it was} for me**
UST It was like that for me

Alternate translation: [That is what it was like for me]

ULT **twenty years in your house**
UST during the entire twenty years that I was with you

Alternate translation: [for the twenty years that I worked for you]

ULT **I served you fourteen years for your two daughters**
UST I worked for you for fourteen years in order to marry your two daughters

Alternate translation: [For fourteen years I worked for you in exchange for marrying your two daughters]

ULT **and six years for your flocks**
UST and {I worked} {another} six years to earn flocks {of animals} from you

Alternate translation: [and for six more years I worked for you to earn flocks of sheep and goats from you]

ULT **and you changed my wages ten times**
UST even though you changed my pay ten times

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 7. Alternate translation: [even though you changed my wages ten times] or [even though ten times you changed what you said you would pay me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
house	that I was with you
served	I worked for you
years	years
years	years
flocks	flocks

Genesis 31:42

ULT	UST
If the God of my father, the God of Abraham and the Fear of Isaac, had not been with me, surely now you would have sent me away empty-handed. God has seen my affliction and the toil of my palms, and he judged you last night."	*If God, whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve and revere, had not been with me to take care of me, there is no doubt that I would now be leaving here with absolutely nothing. But God knows how much you have mistreated me and how hard I have worked for you, so last night he rebuked you."*

ULT **If the God of my father, the God of Abraham and the Fear of Isaac, had not been with me**

UST If God, whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve and revere, had not been with me to take care of me

The phrase **the Fear of Isaac** is a title for God that could mean: (1) "the God whom Isaac fears." Alternate translation: [If God, the Awesome One, whom my father Isaac and grandfather Abraham serve had not been with me]; or (2) "Isaac's God, of whom others are terrified." The interpretation that is not used in your translation could be put in a footnote. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob is only talking about one God in this verse, not two or three. Also notice that **my father** and **Isaac** both refer to Jacob's father Isaac, not two different people.

ULT **If … had not been with me**

UST If … had not been with me to take care of me

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the events in this sentence are contrary-to-fact (hypothetical) and imply that God actually had been with Jacob, so that Laban did not send him away empty-handed. Alternate translation: [had not been with me protecting me and guiding me]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **surely now you would have sent me away**

UST there is no doubt that I would now be leaving here

Alternate translation: [you would certainly be sending me away now] or [there is no question that I would now be leaving here]

ULT **empty-handed**

UST with {absolutely} nothing

Alternate translation: [without anything at all]

ULT **God has seen my affliction**

UST But God knows how {much} you have mistreated me

Alternate translation: [But God knows how much I have suffered under you] or [But God knows how much you have oppressed me]

> ULT **and the toil of my palms**
> UST and how hard I have worked for you

Alternate translation: [and the hard work I did with my hands for you]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
God	God
Abraham	Abraham
Fear	God, whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve and revere
Isaac	Isaac
God	God
affliction	how {much} you have mistreated me
and he judged you	rebuked

Genesis 31:43

ULT	UST
And Laban responded and said to Jacob, "The daughters are my daughters, and the children are my grandchildren, and the flocks are my flocks. And everything that you see belongs to me! But what can I do today about these daughters of mine or about their children whom they have born?	*Then Laban responded to Jacob, "These women are my daughters, and their children are my grandchildren, and these flocks are also mine. In fact, all that you see here is mine! But there is nothing I can do today to keep my daughters or their children near me any longer!*

ULT **And Laban responded and said to Jacob**
UST Then Laban responded to Jacob

Alternate translation: [Laban replied to Jacob]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **The daughters {are} my daughters, and the children {are} my grandchildren**
UST These women {are} my daughters, and their children {are} my grandchildren

Alternate translation: [These are my daughters and my grandchildren]

ULT **and the flock{s} {are} my flocks**
UST and these flock{s} {are} {also} mine

Alternate translation: [and these flocks also belong to me]

ULT **And everything that you see {belongs} to me**
UST In fact, all that you see {here} is mine

Laban is lying or exaggerating here to make it sound like he was wronged, when actually he is the one who was dishonest in his dealings with Jacob. Alternate translation: [In fact, everything that you see here is mine!] or [Yes, everything that is here with you is actually mine!]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **But what can I do today about these daughters of mine or about their children whom they have born**
UST But there is nothing I can do today to keep my daughters or their children near me any longer

Laban uses this rhetorical question to express his emotions and emphasize that there is nothing that he can do. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question fits well here in your language. Alternate translation: [But there is nothing I can do now to keep my daughters and grandchildren from leaving!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
Jacob	Jacob
flocks	flocks
flocks	are {also} mine
today	today
they have born	יָלָדוּ

Genesis 31:44

ULT	UST
So now, come, let us cut a covenant, I and you, and let it be a witness between me and you."	*So then, you and I should make a peace treaty with each other, and there should be something to remind us to keep that treaty."*

ULT **So now, come, let us cut a covenant, I and you**
UST So then, you and I should make a {peace} treaty with each other

For some languages it may be more natural to put **I** and **you** earlier in the sentence. Also see how you translated **So now** in verse 16 and **cut a covenant** in Genesis 26:28. Alternate translation: [So then, you and I should make a peace covenant with each other] or [So I invite you to make a covenant with me]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and let it be**
UST and there should be

The subject of the Hebrew verb in this phrase is masculine singular, so **it** cannot refer to **covenant**, which is feminine singular. It is probably best to translate this phrase in a general way. Alternate translation: [and let there be]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **a witness between me and you**
UST something to remind us to keep that treaty

If your language has a dual pronoun for **us**, you could use it in this verse. Also, if your language distinguishes exclusive and inclusive pronouns, you could use the inclusive form of **us** here. Alternate translation: [a memorial to remind us of our covenant] or [something to remind us to keep that covenant]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
covenant	a {peace} treaty
witness	something to remind us to keep that treaty

Genesis 31:45

ULT	UST
So Jacob took a stone and set it up as a pillar.	*So Jacob picked out a large stone and set it up on its end as a monument to mark the place where they made their treaty.*

ULT **So Jacob took a stone**
UST So Jacob picked out a {large} stone

See how you translated **stone** in Genesis 28:18.

ULT **and set it up {as} a pillar**
UST and set it up {on its end} {as} a monument to mark the place where they made their treaty

See how you translated **pillar** in verse 13 and **set it up as a pillar** in Genesis 28:18, 22.
Alternate translation: [and stood it up on its end as a monument to mark the place where they made their covenant] or [and set it up as a reminder stone to mark the place as special]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
pillar	as a monument to mark the place where they made their treaty

Genesis 31:46

ULT	UST
Then Jacob said to his relatives, "Gather stones." So they took stones and made a heap. Then they ate there by the heap.	*Then he told his relatives, "Gather some more stones." So they all gathered stones and put them in a large pile. Then everyone ate a meal together there next to the pile of stones.*

ULT Then Jacob said to his relatives
UST Then he told his relatives

These relatives would have included Jacob's sons, as well as Laban and his men who had come with him. See how you translated **relatives** in verses 23, 25, 32, 37. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob told his relatives]

ULT Gather stones
UST Gather {some more} stones

Make sure that your translation of Jacob's request sounds polite here, not rude or demanding, but also not begging. Alternate translation: [Please gather some stones]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT So they took stones and made a heap
UST So they {all} gathered stones and put them in a {large} pile

Alternate translation: [So they all brought stones and put them in a large pile]

ULT Then they ate there
UST Then everyone ate {a meal together} there

Make sure your translation does not sound like Jacob ate without Laban and his men. Alternate translation: [Then they ate a meal together there]

ULT by the heap
UST next to the pile of stones

Alternate translation: [near the heap of stones] or [next to the mound of stones]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	יַעֲקֹב

Genesis 31:47

ULT	UST
And Laban called it Jegar Sahadutha, but Jacob called it Galeed.	*Laban gave the pile the Aramaic name Jegar Sahadutha, which means "pile that reminds," while Jacob gave it the Hebrew name Galeed, which has the same meaning.*

ULT **And Laban called it**
UST Laban gave the pile the {Aramaic} name

Alternate translation: [Laban gave the heap the Aramaic name]

ULT **Jegar Sahadutha**
UST Jegar Sahadutha, which means "pile that reminds

If the meaning of **Jegar Sahadutha** and **Galeed** is included in your translation or in a footnote, be sure that it fits with how you translate "heap/pile/mound" in verses 46 and 48, and "witness" in verse 48.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **but Jacob called it Galeed**
UST while Jacob gave it the {Hebrew} name Galeed, which has the same meaning

Alternate translation: [whereas Jacob gave it the Hebrew name Galeed, which has the same meaning]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
called	gave the pile the {Aramaic} name
Jacob	gave it the {Hebrew} name
but … called	Jacob

Genesis 31:48

ULT	UST
And Laban said, "This heap is a witness between me and you today." For that reason he called its name Galeed.	*Laban said to him, "Starting today this pile of stones will remind you and me about our peace treaty." That is why the name of that place is Galeed.*

ULT **And Laban said**
UST Laban said to him

Alternate translation: [Then Laban said to Jacob] or [Laban said to Jacob]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **This heap {is} a witness between me and you today**
UST Starting today this pile {of stones} will remind you and me about our peace treaty

Alternate translation: [This pile of stones is to remind us to keep our peace covenant] or [Starting today, when we see this mound of stones, we will remember our peace covenant]

ULT **For that reason**
UST That is why

Alternate translation: [That is the reason]

ULT **he called its name Galeed**
UST the name of that place is Galeed

The phrase **he called its name** is used here in a general way that means "they/people call it"; the pronoun **he** does not refer here to Laban. Make sure that is clear in your language.
Alternate translation: [they call it Galeed] or [that place is called Galeed]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
witness	will remind you and me about our peace treaty
today	Starting today
called	the name of that place is

Genesis 31:49

ULT	UST
It is also Mizpah, because he said, "May Yahweh watch between me and you when we are hidden one from the other.	*Another name for the place is Mizpah, which means "watchtower," because Laban said to Jacob, "May Yahweh watch both of us to make sure that we keep our treaty while we are apart from each other.*

ULT **It is also Mizpah**
UST Another name for the place is Mizpah, which means "watchtower

Alternate translation: [It was also named Mizpah] or [People also call the place, Mizpah]

ULT **because he said**
UST because Laban said to Jacob

Make sure that your translation of **he** refers here to Laban.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **May Yahweh watch between me and you**
UST May Yahweh watch both of us

Alternate translation: [May Yahweh watch each of us] or [May Yahweh keep watch on us]

ULT **when we are hidden one from the other**
UST to make sure that we keep our treaty while we are apart from each other

The pronoun **we** is inclusive here and includes both Laban and Jacob. Some languages have a dual pronoun that fits here well. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [to make sure we keep our covenant while we are away from each other]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Mizpah	Mizpah
Yahweh	Yahweh
watch	watch

Genesis 31:50

ULT	UST
If you afflict my daughters, or if you take wives besides my daughters, even though there is not someone with us, behold, God is a witness between me and you."	*If you treat my daughters badly, or if you marry other wives besides them, remember that even if no one else is watching us, God is always watching both of us to hold us accountable."*

ULT **If you afflict my daughters**
UST If you treat my daughters badly

See how you translated **afflict** in Genesis 15:13 and 16:6, and how you translated a related word **affliction** in verse 42. Alternate translation: [If you oppress my daughters]

ULT **or if you take wives besides my daughters**
UST or if you marry {other} wives besides them

Alternate translation: [or if you marry other women besides them]

ULT **even though there is not someone with us, behold**
UST remember {that} {even if} no one {else} is watching us

See how you translated the pronoun "we" in verse 49.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **God {is} a witness between me and you**
UST God is {always} watching both of us to hold us accountable

In his role as witness, God would also punish anyone who broke the covenant. You could make this information explicit in your translation or put it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [God always sees us and will punish us if we break our covenant]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
afflict	you treat … badly
God	God
witness	is {always} watching both of us to hold us accountable

Genesis 31:51

ULT	UST
Then Laban said to Jacob, "Behold this heap, and behold the pillar which I set up between me and you.	*Then Laban also said to Jacob, "Here is this pile of stones, and here is this monument which we stood up between us to remind us about our peace treaty.*

ULT **Behold**
UST Here is

Alternate translation: [See] or [Look at]

ULT **this heap**
UST this pile of stones

See how you translated **heap** in verses 46 and 48. Alternate translation: [this mound of stones]

ULT **and behold**
UST and here is

Alternate translation: [and see] or [and look at]

ULT **the pillar**
UST this monument

See how you translated **pillar** in verse 45. Alternate translation: [this memorial stone]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
Jacob	Jacob
pillar	this monument

Genesis 31:52

ULT	UST
This heap is a witness and the pillar is a witness that I will not pass by this heap to you, and that you will not pass by this heap and this pillar to me, to do harm.	*This pile of stones and this monument both remind us that I must never go past this pile to attack you, and that you must never go past this pile and this monument to attack me.*

ULT **This heap {is} a witness and the pillar {is} a witness**
UST This pile {of stones} and this monument {both} remind us

See how you translated **witness** in verses 44 and 48. Alternate translation: [This heap of stones is a reminder and this pillar is also a witness] or [This mound of stones and this memorial both remind us]

ULT **that I will not pass by this heap to you**
UST that I must never go past this pile to attack you

Laban and Jacob could go to each other's homes in peace but not to harm each other. Alternate translation: [that I will never go past this heap to harm you]

ULT **and that you will not pass by this heap and this pillar to me, to do harm**
UST and that you must never go past this pile and this monument to attack me

Alternate translation: [and that you will never go past this pile and this memorial to harm me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
witness	both remind us
pillar	this monument
witness	and
pillar	monument
to do harm	to attack me

Genesis 31:53

ULT	UST
May the God of Abraham and the gods of Nahor, the gods of their father, judge between us!" Then Jacob swore by the Fear of his father Isaac,	*May your grandfather Abraham's God and my grandfather Nahor's gods, which were also their father Terah's gods, judge between us and punish us if we break this agreement!" But Jacob made a vow by the God whom his father Isaac revered that he would keep their treaty,*

ULT **the God of Abraham**
UST your grandfather Abraham's God

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 28:13. Alternate translation: [May the God whom your grandfather Abraham served]

ULT **and the gods of Nahor, the gods of their father**
UST and {my grandfather} Nahor's gods, {which were also} their father {Terah}'s gods

Abraham trusted in Yahweh, the one and only true God (Genesis 15:6). Terah worshiped other gods (Joshua 24:2), and so did Laban (verses 19, 30), which suggests that Nahor served the same gods that his father Terah served, and then taught his son Laban to do the same thing. In spite of that, many translations still capitalize **God** all three times here in verse 53. Be consistent with how you spelled **Nahor** in the book of Genesis. See 11:22–25, 29; 12:26–27; 22:20, 24, 28; 24:9, 15, 24, 47; 29:5; 31:53. Alternate translation: [and the gods that my grandfather Nahor and his father Terah worshiped]

ULT **Then Jacob swore**
UST But Jacob made a vow

Jacob refused to swear by the gods of Nahor and Terah. See how you translated **swore** in Genesis 26:31, and compare that to how you translated a related phrase **vowed a vow** in 31:13. Alternate translation: [But Jacob swore] or [But Jacob vowed a vow]

ULT **by the Fear of his father Isaac**
UST by the God whom his father Isaac revered that he would keep their treaty

See how you translated "the Fear of Isaac" in verse 42. Alternate translation: [by the God whom his father Isaac feared that he would keep their treaty] or [with the Fear of his father Isaac as his witness]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Abraham	Abraham
gods	gods
Nahor	Nahor
judge	judge
Jacob	Jacob
Then … swore	vow
Fear	by the God whom … revered
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 31:54

ULT	UST
and Jacob sacrificed a sacrifice on the mountain. Then he called his relatives to eat bread. Then they ate bread and spent the night on the mountain.	*and he burned the body of an animal on an altar as a sacrifice to God on the mountain. Then he invited his relatives to eat a meal together there. So they all ate the meal together and spent the night there.*

ULT **and Jacob sacrificed a sacrifice on the mountain**

UST and he burned {the body of} an animal {on an altar} as a sacrifice {to God} on the mountain

Make sure your translation does not sound like Jacob burned the animal while it was still alive. Also see how you translated **sacrificed** in Genesis 22:13. Alternate translation: [and he offered an animal sacrifice to God on an altar on a hill] or [and Jacob burned the body of an animal on an altar as a sacrifice to God on a hill]

ULT **Then he called his relatives to eat bread**

UST Then he invited his relatives to eat a meal {together} there

In the Bible, **bread** is often used as an idiom that refers to food in general. In this context, it was a meal that they shared together. Make sure that is clear in your translation.

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **Then they ate bread and spent the night on the mountain**

UST So they {all} ate the meal {together} and spent the night there

As in Genesis 26:30, eating together was an important part of the covenant or treaty process, since it shows unity and close relationship, as if they were part of the same family. Some of that information could be included in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Then after they had eaten the meal, they spent the night there on the hill]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	יַעֲקֹב
sacrificed	and he burned {the body of} an animal on an altar
sacrifice	sacrifice
called	Then he invited
bread	a meal
bread	the meal

Genesis 31:55

ULT	UST
Then in the morning Laban got up early and kissed his grandchildren and his daughters, and he blessed them. Then Laban left and returned to his place.	*Early the next morning Laban got up and kissed his grandchildren and his daughters goodbye on the cheeks and asked God to bless them. Then he and his men left from there and returned home.*

ULT **Then in the morning Laban got up early**
UST Early the next morning Laban got up

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 28:18. Alternate translation: [The next morning Laban got up early]

ULT **and kissed his grandchildren and his daughters**
UST and kissed his grandchildren and his daughters {goodbye} on the cheeks

It was a Hebrew custom for relatives and close friends to greet each other with a kiss on each cheek. Only make this information explicit here if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning. Alternate translation: [said goodbye to his daughters and grandchildren and kissed them on the cheeks]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Then Laban left and returned to his place**
UST Then he {and his men} left {from there} and returned home

Alternate translation: [Then Laban and his men left from there and returned home] or [Then he left from there with his men and went back home]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Laban	Laban
kissed	kissed
blessed	bless
Laban	לָבָן

Genesis 32

Genesis 32:1

ULT	UST
Then Jacob went on his way, and angels of God met him.	*Meanwhile Jacob continued on his journey toward home with his family, and some angels from God met him.*

ULT **Then Jacob went on his way**
UST Meanwhile Jacob continued on his journey {toward home} with his family

You can make implied information explicit in your translation if it is necessary to make the meaning accurate and clear. Alternate translation: [Meanwhile Jacob also left from there and continued on his journey home with his family]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and angels of God met him**
UST and {some} angels from God met him

Translate **met** in a way that allows for the fact that no conversation is recorded between the angels and Jacob and that the angels were probably not hostile; for example, they may have been sent by God to escort and protect him. Alternate translation: [and some angels from God encountered him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
angels	angels
God	God

Genesis 32:2

ULT	UST
And when he saw them, Jacob said, "This is God's camp!" So he called the name of that place Mahanaim.	*When Jacob saw the angels, he exclaimed, "This is God's army!" So he named that place Mahanaim, which means "two armies."*

ULT **And when he saw them, Jacob said**
UST When Jacob saw the angels, he exclaimed

Make sure that you refer to Jacob and the angels here in a way that is accurate and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [When Jacob saw the angels, he said in surprise]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **So he called the name of that place Mahanaim**
UST So he named that place Mahanaim, which means "two armies

If you include the meaning of the name **Mahanaim** in your translation or in a footnote, be sure it matches the way you translated **God's camp** earlier in the verse so that it is clear why Jacob gave the place that name. Also see how you translated **he called the name of that place** in Genesis 28:19.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
God	God
called	So he named

Genesis 32:3

ULT	UST
Then Jacob sent messengers before him to Esau his brother to the land of Seir, the country of Edom.	*Then Jacob sent some messengers ahead of him to his brother Esau who was living in the region of Seir, which was also called the country of Edom.*

ULT Then Jacob sent messengers before him

UST Then Jacob sent {some} messengers ahead of him

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob sent some of his servants ahead of him to deliver a message to his brother Esau]

ULT to the land of Seir

UST who was living in the region of Seir

Alternate translation: [who was living in the land of Seir]

ULT the country of Edom

UST which was also called the country of Edom

Alternate translation: [that is, the land of Edom] or [which was also called the land of Edom]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
messengers	messengers
Esau	Esau
land	who was living in the region of
Edom	Edom

Genesis 32:4

ULT	UST
And he commanded them, saying, "This is what you will say to my lord, to Esau: 'This is what your servant Jacob says, "I have been sojourning with Laban and have remained there until now.	*Before they left, he ordered them, "This is what you must tell my master Esau: 'I, your servant Jacob, want you to know that I have been staying with our uncle Laban all this time.*

ULT **And he commanded them, saying**
UST Before they left, he ordered them

Alternate translation: [As they left, he instructed them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **This {is what} you will say to my lord, to Esau**
UST This {is what} you must tell my master Esau

Jacob uses **my lord** and **your servant** in verse 4 and 5 to show his brother Esau great respect. Do this in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I want you to tell Esau whom I highly respect:]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **This {is what} your servant Jacob says**
UST I, your servant Jacob, want you to know that

Verses 4 and 5 have two levels of embedded quotes. Some languages need to use indirect quotes for one or both of those levels; for example, "Your servant Jacob wants you to know that he has been sojourning/staying with your uncle Laban all this time." Alternate translation: [This is a message from Jacob who wants to serve you:]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **I have been sojourning with Laban and have remained there until now**
UST I have been staying with {our uncle} Laban all this time

Alternate translation: [Since we last saw each other, I have been living with Uncle Laban]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	master
Esau	Esau
servant	servant
Jacob	Jacob
Laban	Laban

Genesis 32:5

ULT	UST
And I have cattle and donkeys, flocks, and menservants and maidservants. And I have sent messengers to speak with my lord, so that I will find favor in your eyes.”’”	*I now own many cattle, donkeys, and flocks, as well as many male and female servants. I have sent this message to you, sir, hoping that you will be kind to me when I arrive.’”*

ULT **And I have**
UST I {now} own

Consider whether it is more natural to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language. Alternate translation: [I now have] or [Also tell him that I own]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **cattle and donkey{s}, flocks**
UST many cattle, donkeys, and flocks

See how you translated **donkeys** and **flocks** in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [many cattle, donkeys, and flocks of sheep and goats]

ULT **and menservant{s} and maidservants**
UST as well as {many} male and female servants

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [as well as many men and women slaves]

ULT **And I have sent {messengers} to speak with my lord**
UST I have sent this message to {you,} sir

If you use indirect quotes in this section, make sure each part fits with the other parts, especially in your choice of pronouns. It is helpful if you read your translation aloud to check for accuracy and naturalness. Alternate translation: [Sir, I sent these messengers to you]
Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cattle	cattle
donkeys	donkeys
flocks	flocks
and menservants	servants
maidservants	servants
to speak	I have sent this message
lord	sir
favor	hoping that you will be kind {to me} when I arrive

Genesis 32:6

ULT	UST
Then the messengers returned to Jacob, saying, "We went to your brother, to Esau. And also, he is coming to meet you, and 400 men with him!"	*After the messengers delivered Jacob's message, they returned to Jacob and reported to him, "We went and spoke to your brother Esau. Now he is on his way here to meet you, but there are also 400 men coming with him!"*

ULT **saying**
UST and reported to him

Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and informed him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **We went to your brother, to Esau**
UST We went {and spoke} to your brother Esau

Alternate translation: [We went to your brother Esau and told him your message] or [We delivered the message to your brother Esau]

ULT **And also, he is coming to meet you**
UST Now he is on his way {here} to meet you

Also, notice that the word **meet** is neutral in this context and does not imply whether or not Esau had hostile intent against Jacob. Alternate translation: [and he is already headed here to meet you]

ULT **and 400 men with him**
UST but {there are} {also} 400 men {coming} with him

Alternate translation: [and there are also 400 men coming with him!] or [and he has 400 men with him!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
messengers	messengers
Jacob	Jacob
Esau	Esau

Genesis 32:7

ULT	UST
And Jacob was exceedingly afraid, and it was distressing for him, so he divided the people who were with him and the flocks and the herds and the camels into two camps.	*When Jacob heard that, he was very frightened and worried. So he put all the people and animals that were with him into two large groups, including his family, his servants and all his flocks of sheep and goats, herds of cattle and camels.*

ULT **And Jacob was exceedingly afraid**
UST When Jacob heard that, he was very frightened

Alternate translation: [When Jacob heard the report, he was terrified]

ULT **and it was distressing for him**
UST and worried

Alternate translation: [and very worried]

ULT **so he divided the people who {were} with him and the flock{s} and the herd{s} and the camels into two camps**
UST So he put {all} the people {and animals} that were with him into two {large} groups, including {his family, his servants and} {all} his flocks {of sheep and goats}, herds {of cattle} and camels

Consider what phrase order for this sentence is best in your language. Alternate translation: [So he divided all the people and animals that were with him into two large camps including his family, his servants and all his flocks of sheep and goats, herds of cattle and camels]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
afraid	frightened
flocks	flocks
the herds	cattle
camels	camels

Genesis 32:8

ULT	UST
And he said, "If Esau comes to one camp and strikes them, then the camp that is left will escape."	*He did that because he thought, "If Esau and his men come and attack one group, then the other group might be able to escape."*

ULT **And he said**
UST He did that because he thought

Alternate translation: [He was thinking]

ULT **If Esau comes to one camp and strikes them**
UST If Esau {and his men} come and attack one group

Alternate translation: [If Esau and his men come and attack the people in one camp]

ULT **then the camp that is left will escape**
UST then the other group might {be able to} escape

Alternate translation: [then the people in the other camp can escape] or [then the other camp might be able to escape]

Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau

Genesis 32:9

ULT	UST
Then Jacob said, "God of my grandfather Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, Yahweh, who said to me, 'Return to your land and to your relatives, and I will cause things to prosper with you,'	*Then he prayed, "Dear Yahweh, the God whom my grandfather Abraham and my father Isaac served, you told me to go back to my country where my relatives live, and that you would cause me to prosper.*

ULT **Then Jacob said**
UST Then he prayed

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob prayed]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **God of my grandfather Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, Yahweh**
UST Dear Yahweh, the God whom my grandfather Abraham and my father Isaac served

Make sure that your translation of this address refers to only one God, not two or three different Gods. Also make sure it is clear that Jacob is talking directly to Yahweh, not talking about him. Alternate translation: [Dear Yahweh, the God whom my grandfather Abraham and my father Isaac worshiped]

ULT **who said to me, 'Return to your land and to your relatives**
UST you told me to go back to my country where my relatives live

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here. Also see how you translated **land** and **relatives** in Genesis 31:3. Alternate translation: [you told me to go back to my homeland where my relatives live]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and I will cause things to prosper with you**
UST and that you would cause me to prosper

Make sure your choice of **I** or **you** (for God) and **you** or **me** (for Jacob) in this clause fits with the way you translated the previous part of this quote. Alternate translation: [and that you would make things go well for me]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Then he prayed
God	God
Abraham	Abraham
God	and
Isaac	Isaac
Yahweh	Yahweh
land	to my country
and to your relatives	where my relatives live
and I will cause things to prosper	and that you would cause me to prosper

Genesis 32:10

ULT	UST
I am unworthy of all the kindnesses and of all the faithfulness that you have shown your servant. For I crossed this Jordan with my staff, but now I have become two camps.	*I am not worthy of how kind and faithful you have always been to me as I have served you. When I first crossed this Jordan River, all that I owned was my walking stick, but now my family and belongings are enough to form two large groups.*

ULT **I am unworthy**
UST I am not worthy

Alternate translation: [I do not deserve]

ULT **of all the kindnesses and of all the faithfulness that you have shown your servant**
UST of how kind and faithful you have always been to {me} as I have served you

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **kindnesses** and **faithfulness**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [the way you have always treated me so kindly and faithfully as your servant] or [how kind and loyal you have always been to me as I have served you]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **For I crossed this Jordan with my staff**
UST When I {first} crossed this Jordan {River}, all that I owned was my walking stick

Alternate translation: [I crossed the Jordan River with only my staff] or [When I first left home and crossed the Jordan River, all that I had was my walking stick]

ULT **but now I have become two camps**
UST but now my family and belongings are enough to form two {large} groups

Alternate translation: [but now I have so many people in my household and so many possessions that there are two large camps] or [but now my family and belongings are enough to make two large groups]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the kindnesses	of how kind and faithful you have always been
the faithfulness	of how kind and faithful you have always been
servant	served
Jordan	Jordan River

Genesis 32:11

ULT	UST
Please save me from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau, because I am afraid of him, that he will come and strike me and the mothers with the children!	*Please rescue me now from my brother Esau, because I am afraid that he and his men will come and attack me as well as these mothers and our children!*

ULT **from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau**
UST from my brother Esau

Alternate translation: [from the power of my brother Esau]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **because I am afraid of him, that**
UST because I am afraid that

Alternate translation: [I am very worried that]

ULT **he will come and strike me {and} the mothers with the children**
UST he {and his men} will come and attack me {as well as} {these} mothers and {our} children

Alternate translation: [he and his men will come and attack me as well as these mothers with their children!] or [he and his men will attack and kill us all, including these mothers with their children!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
save me	rescue me now
Esau	Esau
afraid	afraid

Genesis 32:12

ULT	UST
But you said, ‘I will surely cause things to prosper with you, and I will make your descendants as the sand of the sea, which cannot be counted from their abundance.’”	*But you promised me that you would greatly prosper me, and that you would make my descendants as numerous as the grains of sand on the seashore, which are so numerous that no one can count them all.”*

ULT **But you said**
UST But you promised me

Alternate translation: [For you told me] or [But remember that you promised me]

ULT **I will surely cause things to prosper with you, and I will make your descendants as the sand of the sea**
UST that you would greatly prosper me, and that you would make my descendants {as numerous} as {the grains of} sand on the seashore

For some languages it is more natural to use an indirect quote here, especially since Jacob is quoting the one he is talking to. Also see how you translated “I will cause things to prosper with you” in verse 9 and how you translated **as the sand** in Genesis 22:17. Alternate translation: [that you would surely prosper me, and that you would make my descendants as numerous as the grains of sand on the seashore]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **which cannot be counted from {their} abundance**
UST which are so numerous that no one can count them all

Alternate translation: [which cannot be counted because there are so many] or [which are so many that no one can count them all]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I will … cause things to prosper	that you would greatly prosper me
your descendants	my descendants

Genesis 32:13

ULT	UST
Then he stayed there for that night, and he took gifts from what was in his hand for Esau his brother:	*Then Jacob spent the night there, and during that time he selected many of his animals to give to his brother Esau,*

ULT **and he took gifts from what was in his hand**
UST and {during that time} he selected many of his animals to give

Alternate translation: [and during that time he selected many of his animals as gifts] or [and while he was there he picked out many of the animals he had with him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau

Genesis 32:14

ULT	UST
two hundred she-goats and twenty he-goats, two hundred ewes and twenty rams,	*including 200 female goats and twenty male goats, 200 female sheep and twenty male sheep,*

> ULT **two hundred she-goats and twenty he-goats, two hundred ewes and twenty rams**
> UST including 200 female goats and twenty male goats, 200 female sheep and twenty male sheep

Consider what is the most natural way in your language to list these animals, here and in verse 15. See how you translated **she-goats**, **he-goats**, **ewes** and **rams** in Genesis 31:10. Alternate translation: [including 200 nanny goats and twenty billy goats, 200 female sheep and twenty male sheep] or [including 200 nanny goats, twenty billy goats, 200 female sheep, twenty male sheep]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
she-goats	goats
ewes	sheep
rams	sheep

Genesis 32:15

ULT	UST
thirty nursing camels and their young, forty cows and ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys.	*thirty mother camels with their colts, forty cows and ten bulls, and twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys.*

ULT **thirty nursing camels and their young**
UST thirty mother camels with their colts

Alternate translation: [thirty mother camels with their young]

ULT **forty cows and ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys**
UST forty cows and ten bulls, {and} twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys

See how you translated **female donkeys** and **male donkeys** in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [forty cows, ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
camels	camels
cows	cows
bulls	bulls
donkeys	donkeys
donkeys	donkeys

Genesis 32:16

ULT	UST
And he gave them into the hands of his servants, each herd by itself. And he said to his servants, "Go before me, and put space between each herd."	*Jacob put his servants in charge of the animals, with each kind of animal in a separate group. Then he ordered his servants, "Go ahead of me, one group at a time, and keep some distance between each group of animals."*

ULT **And he gave them into the hand{s} of his servants**
UST Jacob put his servants in charge of the animals

Alternate translation: [He put his servants in charge of the animals]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **each herd by itself**
UST with each kind {of animal} in a separate group

Alternate translation: [with each kind of animal in a separate herd] or [and had them put the different kinds of animals in different groups]

ULT **And he said to his servants**
UST Then he ordered his servants

Alternate translation: [Then he told his servants]

ULT **Go before me, and put space between each herd**
UST Go ahead of me, {one group at a time,} and keep {some} distance between each group of animals

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here. Alternate translation: [Go ahead of me, one herd at a time, and keep some space between each herd of animals] or [to go ahead of him, one herd at time, keeping some distance between each herd]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servants	servants
each	with each kind {of animal} in a separate group
herd	with each kind {of animal} in a separate group
servants	servants
herd	between each group of animals
herd	between each group of animals

Genesis 32:17

ULT	UST
And he commanded the first one, saying, "When Esau my brother meets you and asks you, saying, 'Whom do you belong to, and where are you going? And whom do these animals belong to that are before you?'	*He also ordered the servant in charge of the first group of animals, "When my brother Esau meets you and asks you, 'Who is your master, and where are you headed? And who do these animals belong to that you are driving ahead of you?'*

ULT **And he commanded the first {one}, saying**
UST He {also} ordered the servant in charge of the first group of animals

Alternate translation: [He also instructed the servant in charge of the first herd of animals]

ULT **saying, 'Whom do you {belong} to, and where are you going**
UST Who is your master, and where are you headed

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct or indirect quote in verses 17–20a. Alternate translation: [asking who your master is and where you are going]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **And whom do these {animals} {belong} to {that are} before you**
UST And who do these {animals} belong to {that you are driving} ahead of you

Alternate translation: [and asks who owns the animals that you are herding]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau

Genesis 32:18

ULT	UST
then you say, ‘They belong to your servant, to Jacob. They are a gift sent to my lord, to Esau. And behold, he is also behind us.’”	*then you are to tell him, ‘Esau, sir, these animals belong to Jacob who humbly serves you. He has sent them to you as a gift. In fact, he is following us here.’”*

ULT **then you say**
UST then you are to tell him

Alternate translation: [then you must tell him] or [then you are to answer him]

ULT **They belong to your servant, to Jacob. They {are} a gift sent to my lord, to Esau**
UST Esau, sir, these {animals} belong to Jacob who {humbly} serves you. He has sent them to you as a gift

Also see how you translated **your servant** and **my lord** in verse 4.
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **And behold, he {is} also behind us**
UST In fact, he is following us here

Notice that the pronoun **us** is exclusive here.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	serves
Jacob	Jacob
lord	sir
Esau	Esau

Genesis 32:19

ULT	UST
Then he also commanded the second servant, also the third, also all who followed behind the herds, saying, "Say the same thing to Esau when you find him.	*In the same way, Jacob ordered the servants who were in charge of the second and third groups of animals, and all the servants who were in charge of the other groups, "When you meet Esau, tell him the same thing that I told the first servant.*

ULT Then he also commanded
UST In the same way, Jacob ordered

See how you translated **commanded** in verse 17. Alternate translation: [In the same way, Jacob instructed] or [Jacob gave the same orders to]

ULT the second {servant}, also the third
UST the servants who were in charge of the second and third groups of animals

Alternate translation: [the servant in charge of the second herd and the servant in charge of the third group] or [the servants who were in charge of the second and third herds of animals]

ULT also all who followed behind the herds, saying
UST and all {the servants} who were in charge of the {other} groups

Alternate translation: [as well as all the other servants who were in charge of the other herds]

ULT Say the same thing to Esau when you find him
UST When you meet Esau, tell him the same thing that I told the first servant

Alternate translation: [When you meet Esau, you are to tell him the same thing that I told the first servant]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
herds	and all {the servants} who were in charge of the {other} groups
Esau	tell him

Genesis 32:20

ULT	UST
And also say, 'Behold, your servant Jacob is behind us.'" For he said, "I will cover his face with the gift that is going before me, and after that, when I see his face, perhaps he will receive my face."	*Especially be sure to tell him that his servant Jacob is following you there." Jacob did all that, because he thought that if he sent the gifts of animals ahead of himself to Esau, then Esau would stop being angry at him. He was hoping that when Esau saw the gifts, he would forgive him and welcome him when they met in person.*

ULT **And also say, 'Behold, your servant Jacob {is} behind us**
UST Especially be sure to tell {him} that his servant Jacob is following you there

See how you translated **is behind us** in verse 18.
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **For he said**
UST Jacob did all that, because he thought that

Alternate translation: [Jacob did all that, because he said]

ULT **I will cover his face with the gift**
UST if he sent the gifts of animals … then Esau would stop being angry at him

The idiom **cover his face** means to try to calm someone's anger by doing something to please him. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom you could use here. Alternate translation: [I can pacify Esau by sending] or [Perhaps Esau will stop being angry at me if I send]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **with the gift that is going before me**
UST if he sent the gifts {of animals} ahead of himself to Esau

For some languages it is more natural to use an indirect quote here and say, "because he thought that if he sent the gifts of animals ahead of himself to Esau, then Esau would stop being angry at him." Notice that this alternate translation also changes the clause order. Alternate translation: [him this gift of animals ahead of me] or [this gift of animals to him ahead of me]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and after that, when I see his face, perhaps he will receive my face**
UST He was hoping that when Esau saw the gifts, he would {forgive him and} welcome him when they met in person

Make sure that the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the previous clauses as either a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [After that, perhaps he will forgive me and welcome me when we see each other face to face]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	servant
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 32:21

ULT	UST
Then the gift went before him, and he himself stayed for that night in the camp.	*So Jacob's servants went ahead of Jacob with the animal gifts for Esau, while Jacob and his family stayed behind in the camp that night.*

ULT **Then the gift went before him**
UST So Jacob's servants {went} ahead of Jacob with the {animal} gifts for Esau

See how you translated **gift** in verses 13, 18, 20. Alternate translation: [So the animal gifts for Esau were taken ahead of Jacob by his servants]

ULT **and he himself stayed for that night in the camp**
UST while Jacob {and his family} stayed {behind} in the camp that night

Alternate translation: [but Jacob and his family stayed behind at the camp that night] or [but Jacob himself slept for part of the night in the camp]

Genesis 32:22

ULT	UST
Then during that night he got up and took his two wives and his two maidservants and his eleven sons and crossed over the ford of the Jabbok.	*Later that same night Jacob got up and took his two wives, his two servant wives and his eleven sons across a shallow place in the Jabbok Stream.*

ULT **Then during that night he got up**
UST Later that {same} night Jacob got up

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this is the same night that was referred to in verse 21. Also, the phrase **got up** often refers to initiating an action, but here it may also imply that Jacob got up out of bed after sleeping for a while. Alternate translation: [Later that same night Jacob woke up and took] or [Sometime during that night]

ULT **his two wives and his two maidservants and his eleven sons**
UST his two wives, his two servant wives and his eleven sons

Consider what is the best way in your language to list these people. See what you did for a similar list of people in Genesis 7:13. Alternate translation: [his two wives, two concubines and eleven sons]

ULT **and crossed over**
UST across

Alternate translation: [and walked across]

ULT **the ford of the Jabbok**
UST a shallow place in the Jabbok Stream

A ford is a very shallow place in a stream that is fairly easy and safe for people and animals to walk across. The Jabbok Stream was a small river that flowed from east to west into the Jordan River about halfway between the Dead Sea and the Sea of Galilee. Jacob took his wives and children from the north side of the stream to the south side; his brother was coming towards them from further south. It might be helpful to include a map here in your translation that includes the places named in this chapter and shows where Jacob and Esau were coming from. Alternate translation: [a shallow place on the Jabbok River] or [a place in the Jabbok Stream that was shallow]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
maidservants	servant

Genesis 32:23

ULT	UST
So he took them and had them cross over the stream, and he sent what belonged to him across.	*After he had taken them across the stream, he went back and had his servants take all his animals and other belongings across the stream too.*

ULT **So he took them and had them cross over the stream**
UST After he had taken them across the stream

Verse 23 refers back to what already happened in verse 22. Make sure your translation does not sound like Jacob's wives and children crossed the Jabbok Stream twice in verses 22–23. Alternate translation: [After he had taken them across the river] or [After he did that]

ULT **and he sent what {belonged} to him across**
UST he {went back and} had his servants take {all} his {animals and other} belongings across {the stream} too

At some point, Jacob went back to the north side of the Jabbok Stream, while his family waited for him on the south side. His belongings included the animals that he had not sent ahead to Esau as well as all his other possessions. Alternate translation: [he went back and had his servants take everything that he owned across the river too] or [he went back and had his servants take all his livestock and other possessions across the river too]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Genesis 32:24

ULT	UST
Then Jacob was left alone, and a man wrestled with him until the dawn came up.	*Then Jacob was there by himself for a while, and a man came and fought with him until daybreak.*

ULT Then Jacob was left alone
UST Then Jacob was {there} by himself for a while

Alternate translation: [After that, Jacob was alone there for a while]

ULT and a man wrestled with him
UST and a man {came and} fought with him

At some point, Jacob realized that this man was Yahweh in the form of a man (verse 30), so translation teams that capitalize references to God will capitalize all the pronouns that refer to him in verses 24–29 and may or may not capitalize "Man" in these verses. See what you did for a similar case when Yahweh appeared as a man to Abraham in Gen 18. Alternate translation: [and then a man came and wrestled with him]

Support Reference: Politeness

ULT until the dawn came up
UST until daybreak

The word **dawn** refers to the time before sunrise when the sky begins to get light. Alternate translation: [until dawn] or [until daylight started to appear]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 32:25

ULT	UST
And he saw that he was not prevailing over him, so he touched him on the socket of his hip, so that the socket of Jacob's hip was dislocated as he wrestled with him.	*When the man realized that he was not able to defeat Jacob, he struck him on his hip, so that it went out of place as they fought with each other.*

ULT **And he saw that he was not prevailing over him**
UST When the man realized that he was not able to defeat Jacob

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to in verses 25–29. Alternate translation: [Then the man realized that he could not defeat him so] or [When the man saw that he was not able to defeat him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **so he touched {him} on the socket of his hip**
UST he struck him on his hip

Alternate translation: [he hit him on his hip]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **so that the socket of Jacob's hip was dislocated**
UST so that it went out of place

Consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or passive clause here. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a noun phrase or a pronoun here to refer to Jacob's hip joint. Alternate translation: [so that it was put out of place] or [and his hip joint went out of place]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **as he wrestled with him**
UST as they fought with each other

Alternate translation: [as he fought with the man] or [as they fought against each other]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	יַעֲקֹ֔ב

Genesis 32:26

ULT	UST
Then he said, “Release me, because the dawn has come up!” But he said, “I will not release you unless you bless me!”	*Then the man said to him, “Let go of me, because it is daybreak!” But Jacob replied, “No! I will not let go of you until you first bless me!”*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then the man said to him

Alternate translation: [Then the man said to Jacob] or [Then the man demanded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Release me**
UST Let go of me

Alternate translation: [You must let me go now]

ULT **because the dawn has come up**
UST because it is daybreak

See how you translated “the dawn came up” in verse 24. Alternate translation: [because it is dawn] or [because daylight is beginning to come!]

ULT **But he said**
UST But Jacob replied

Alternate translation: [But Jacob said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I will not release you unless you bless me**
UST No! I will not let go of you until you {first} bless me

Alternate translation: [No! First you must bless me, and then I will let you go!] or [I will let you go only if you bless me!]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bless	bless

Genesis 32:27

ULT	UST
So he said to him, "What is your name?" And he said, "Jacob."	*So the man asked him, "What is your name?" He answered, "My name is Jacob."*

ULT So he said to him
UST So the man asked him

Alternate translation: [Then the man asked him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT What {is} your name
UST What {is} your name

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language. Alternate translation: [Tell me your name] or [what his name was]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT And he said, "Jacob
UST He answered, "{My name is} Jacob

Make sure in your translation that Jacob's reply sounds respectful. Also consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language.
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 32:28

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Your name will not be called Jacob anymore, but Israel, because you have struggled with God and with men, and you have prevailed."	*Then the man said, "Your name will no longer be Jacob, but rather it will be Israel, which means 'he who wrestles with God,' because you have wrestled with God and with people, and you have won."*

ULT Then he said
UST Then the man said

Alternate translation: [Then the man said to Jacob]

ULT Your name will not be called Jacob anymore
UST Your name will no longer be Jacob

The wording here is similar to what God said when he changed Abram's name to Abraham (Genesis 17:5) and Sarai's name to Sarah (17:15). After that, Abraham and Sarah were no longer called by their previous names. In the case of Jacob, he continues to be referred to by both of his names in this chapter (**Jacob** in verses 29–30, 32; **Israel** in verse 32) and throughout the rest of the Bible, including by God (Genesis 46:2). It could be that although God was changing Jacob's primary name to "Israel," he was still known by his previous name too. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [You will no longer be named Jacob]

ULT but Israel
UST but {rather it will be} Israel, which means 'he who wrestles with God

If you include the meaning of the name **Israel** in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translate **struggled** in the following clause.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT because you have struggled with God and with men
UST because you have wrestled with God and with people

The Hebrew word for **struggled** here is more general than the word for "wrestled" in verses 24 and 25. Alternate translation: [because you have struggled against both God and men]

ULT and you have prevailed
UST and you have won

See how you translated **prevailed** in verse 25 and Genesis 30:8. It may be necessary to translate this term in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [and you have overcome]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	will no longer be Jacob
Jacob	Jacob
Israel	Israel
God	God

Genesis 32:29

ULT	UST
Then Jacob asked and said, "Please tell me your name." But he said, "Why is this you are asking for my name?" Then he blessed him there.	*Then Jacob asked the man to tell him his name. But he replied, "There is no need for you to ask me what my name is!" Then the man blessed Jacob there.*

ULT **Then Jacob asked and said**
UST Then Jacob asked {the man} to tell him his name

Consider again whether or not you have capitalized references to the man in verses 24–29. See the note about this at verse 24. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob asked him]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **Please tell {me} your name**
UST to tell him his name

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language. Alternate translation: [What is your name?] or [what his name was]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **But he said**
UST But he replied

Alternate translation: [But the man replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Why {is} this you are asking**
UST There is no need for you to ask me

This rhetorical question probably means that there was no need for Jacob to ask the man what his name was; he should have known without asking. Consider whether or not it is best to use a rhetorical question here in your language. Alternate translation: [You do not need to ask me]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **for my name**
UST what my name is

Alternate translation: [to tell you my name!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
tell	tell
blessed	blessed

Genesis 32:30

ULT	UST
So Jacob called the name of the place Peniel, because he said, "I saw God face to face, but my life was preserved!"	*So Jacob named the place Peniel, which means "God's face," because he exclaimed, "I saw God's face here, but yet he allowed me to live!"*

ULT I saw God face to face
UST I saw God's face here

Alternate translation: [I saw God in person here]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT but my life was preserved
UST but {yet} he allowed me to live

The author assumes that readers will know that Jacob was amazed that he was still alive because, although there were exceptions (Exodus 33:11; Judges 13:22), normally people could not see God face to face and live (Exodus 33:20). You could put that information in a footnote so that readers understand why Jacob was surprised. Alternate translation: [but yet my life was spared by him!]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
called	So Jacob named
God	God's
but … was preserved	but {yet} he allowed me to live

Genesis 32:31

ULT	UST
And the sun rose on him as he passed Penuel, and he was limping because of his hip.	*The sun was shining as Jacob left Penuel and returned to his family. He was limping as he walked because of his hip injury.*

ULT **And the sun rose on him**
UST The sun was shining

Alternate translation: [The sun shined on Jacob] or [The sun was rising]

ULT **as he passed Penuel**
UST as Jacob left Penuel and returned to his family

Penuel is another name for the place that is called Peniel in verse 30. That information could be put in a footnote. Or you could use the same spelling in both verses to avoid confusion; **Penuel** is the spelling in the rest of the Old Testament. Alternate translation: [as he left Penuel and returned to his family]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and he was limping**
UST He was limping as he walked

Alternate translation: [As he walked, he was limping]

ULT **because of his hip**
UST because of his hip injury

Alternate translation: [because his hip joint was injured]

Genesis 32:32

ULT	UST
For that reason, to this day the sons of Israel do not eat the muscle of the tendon that is on the socket of the hip, because he touched the socket of Jacob's hip on the muscle of the tendon.	*That is why even today the people of Israel do not eat meat that comes from an animal's hip joint, because that is the place on Jacob's hip that God struck and injured.*

ULT **to this day**
UST even today

Alternate translation: [even now] or [even in the present]

ULT **the sons of Israel**
UST the people of Israel

Alternate translation: [the descendants of Israel] or [the Israelites]

ULT **do not eat the muscle of the tendon**
UST do not eat meat

Alternate translation: [do not eat the tendon]

ULT **that {is} on the socket of the hip**
UST that comes from an {animal's} hip joint

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this is talking about eating meat from an animal, not about cannibalism.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **because he touched the socket of Jacob's hip on the muscle of the tendon**
UST because that is the place on Jacob's hip that God struck and injured

See how you translated the idiom **touched** in verse 25.
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	even today
Israel	Israel
Jacob	Jacob's

Genesis 33

Genesis 33:1

ULT	UST
Then Jacob lifted his eyes and looked, and behold, Esau was coming, and with him 400 men. Then he divided the children among Leah and Rachel and the two maidservants.	*Then Jacob looked and saw in the distance that Esau was coming toward him, and with him were 400 men! So Jacob quickly divided up his children among Leah, Rachel and his two servant wives.*

ULT **Then Jacob lifted his eyes and looked**
UST Then Jacob looked and saw in the distance

Make sure your translation of this idiom does not mean that Jacob looked straight up. Rather, he probably looked carefully to the south (the direction that his brother was coming from). Alternate translation: [Then Jacob looked up and saw] or [Then Jacob looked ahead of him and saw]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and behold, Esau was coming**
UST that Esau was coming toward him

Esau was still a fair distance away, which gave Jacob time to do everything that he does in verses 1–3. Alternate translation: [that Esau was in the distance coming his way]

ULT **and with him 400 men**
UST and with him {were} 400 men

Alternate translation: [with 400 men!] or [and that he had 400 men with him!]

ULT **Then he divided the children among Leah and Rachel and the two maidservants**
UST So Jacob {quickly} divided up {his} children among Leah, Rachel and {his} two servant wives

Each of the women had her own children with her (verse 2). See how you translated **divided** in Genesis 32:7 and "his two maidservants" in Genesis 32:22. Alternate translation: [So he quickly put his children into groups with their own mothers, Leah, Rachel and his two servant wives] or [So he had his children quickly gather with their own mothers, so that Leah, Rachel and his two concubines were each with her own children]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Esau	Esau
Leah	Leah
Rachel	Rachel
maidservants	servant

Genesis 33:2

ULT	UST
And he put the maidservants and their children first, and Leah and her children after them, and Rachel and Joseph after them.	*He put his servant wives and their children first in line, then Leah with her children behind them, and Rachel with her son Joseph last.*

ULT **And he put the maidservants and their children**
UST He put his servant wives and their children

See how you translated “his two maidservants” in Genesis 32:22. Alternate translation: [He put his two servant wives with their children] or [He put the group that had his two servant wives and their children]

ULT **first**
UST first in line

For some languages it is more natural to put phrases like **first** and **after them** at the beginning of their clauses and say, “First in line he put his two servant wives and/with their children. Behind them he put Leah and/with her children, and last of all he put Rachel and/with her son Joseph.” Alternate translation: [in front of all the others]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and Leah and her children**
UST then Leah with her children

Alternate translation: [then he put Leah and her children]

ULT **after them**
UST behind them

Alternate translation: [next]

ULT **and Rachel and Joseph**
UST and Rachel with {her son} Joseph

Alternate translation: [and he put Rachel and her son Joseph]

ULT **after them**
UST behind them

Alternate translation: [behind them all] or [in the rear]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
maidservants	servant
Leah	Leah
Rachel	Rachel
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 33:3

ULT	UST
Then he himself went before them, and he bowed to the ground seven times as he came near to his brother.	*Then Jacob himself went ahead of them all toward his brother. As he got closer to him, he bowed with his face to the ground seven times to show respect.*

ULT **Then he himself went before them**

UST Then Jacob himself went ahead of them {all} toward his brother

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob himself walked ahead of them all toward his brother] or [Then he started going toward his brother ahead of them all]

ULT **and he bowed to the ground seven times as he came near to his brother**

UST As he got closer to him, he bowed {with his face} to the ground seven times to show respect

See how you translated “bow down” in Genesis 27:29. Alternate translation: [and he bowed with his face to the ground seven times to show respect as he went closer to him] or [As he approached Esau, he prostrated himself with his face to the ground seven times to show respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bowed	bowed
to the ground	with his face to the ground

Genesis 33:4

ULT	UST
But Esau ran to meet him and embraced him, and he fell on his neck and kissed him, and they cried.	*But Esau ran to greet Jacob and hugged him. He held him tightly and kissed him on the cheeks, as they both cried for joy.*

ULT But Esau ran to meet him and embraced him

UST But Esau ran to greet Jacob and hugged him

This sentence shows a contrast between what Jacob was expecting and what actually happened.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT and he fell on his neck and kissed him

UST He held him tightly and kissed him on the cheeks

See how you translated "hugged him … and kissed him on the cheek/cheeks" in Genesis 29:13. Make sure that the way you translate **fell on his neck** does not imply that Esau accidentally fell. Rather, this is an idiom that means he embraced Jacob warmly, with much emotion. Alternate translation: [and he threw his arms around his shoulders and kissed him] or [He held Jacob tightly and kissed him on the cheek]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT and they cried

UST as they {both} cried for joy

Also, some languages have a dual pronoun for **they** that could be used here. Alternate translation: [and they both cried for joy] or [Both of them cried because they were so happy to see each other again]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
kissed	kissed

Genesis 33:5

ULT	UST
Then he lifted his eyes and saw the women and the children, and he said, "Who are these with you?" And he said, "The children whom God has graciously given to your servant."	*Then Esau looked ahead and noticed the women and children who were there, so he asked Jacob, "Who are these people? Do they belong to you?" Jacob answered him, "They are the wives and the children whom God has kindly given to me, sir."*

ULT **Then he lifted his eyes**
UST Then Esau looked ahead

See how you translated the idiom "lifted … eyes" in verse 1 and Genesis 31:10. It may be necessary to translate this idiom in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Then Esau looked up]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and saw the women and the children**
UST and noticed the women and children who were there

Alternate translation: [and saw the women and children who were there with Jacob]

ULT **and he said**
UST so he asked Jacob

Alternate translation: [so he asked him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Who {are} these with you**
UST Who {are} these {people}? {Do they belong} to you

Esau wants to know if these people are Jacob's family members or his servants or someone else; he is not asking what their names are. Alternate translation: [How are these people related to you?]

ULT **And he said**
UST Jacob answered him

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking to whom here. Alternate translation: [He answered him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **The children**
UST They are {the wives and} the children

Alternate translation: [They are the children and the wives] or [They are my wives and my children]

> ULT **whom God has graciously given to your servant**
> UST whom God has kindly given to me, sir

Jacob uses the phrase **your servant** to be polite and show respect to Esau; he was not actually Esau's servant. For some languages it is more natural to put the honorific title first in this sentence and say, "Sir, they are the wives and children whom God has graciously given to me." Alternate translation: [whom God has kindly given to me, your servant] or [whom God has graciously given to me, sir]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
servant	to me, sir

Genesis 33:6

ULT	UST
Then the maidservants came near, they and their children, and they bowed down.	*Then the two servant wives with their children came forward, and they all bowed to the ground in front of Esau to show respect.*

ULT **Then the maidservants came near, they and their children**
UST Then the {two} servant wives with their children came forward

See how you translated **maidservants** in verses 1–2. Alternate translation: [Then the two maidservants came closer to Esau along with their children]

ULT **and they bowed down**
UST and they {all} bowed {to the ground} {in front of Esau} to show respect

See how you translated **bowed down** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [and they all bowed to the ground in front of him to show respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
maidservants	servant
bowed down	bowed

Genesis 33:7

ULT	UST
Then Leah also came near and her children, and they bowed down. Then after that, Joseph came near and Rachel, and they bowed down.	*Next Leah and her children also came forward and bowed to the ground. Then last of all, Joseph and his mother Rachel came forward, and they also bowed to the ground.*

ULT **Then Leah also came near and her children**
UST Next Leah and her children also came forward

Alternate translation: [Then Leah also came closer to Esau along with her children] or [Next Leah and her children also came closer]

ULT **Then after {that}, Joseph came near and Rachel**
UST Then last {of all}, Joseph and {his mother} Rachel came forward

Alternate translation: [Then last of all, Joseph and his mother Rachel came closer]

ULT **and they bowed down**
UST and bowed to the ground

Some languages have a dual pronoun for **they** that fits here well. See what you did in verse 4.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah
bowed down	bowed
Joseph	Joseph
Rachel	Rachel
bowed down	bowed

Genesis 33:8

ULT	UST
Then he said, "What to you are all these groups that I met?" And he said, "To find favor in the eyes of my lord."	*Then Esau asked Jacob, "Why did you send all those herds of animals that I encountered?" Jacob answered him, "They are gifts for you so that you will be kind to me, sir."*

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Esau asked Jacob

Alternate translation: [Then Esau said to Jacob]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **What to you are**
UST Why did you send

Alternate translation: [What do you mean by] or [What is the purpose of]

ULT **all these groups**
UST all those herds of animals

Alternate translation: [all those groups of livestock]

ULT **that I met**
UST that I encountered

Alternate translation: [that I saw on my way here?] or [that came to me on my way here?]

ULT **And he said**
UST Jacob answered him

Alternate translation: [Jacob said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **To find favor in the eyes of my lord**
UST They are gifts for you so that you will be kind to me, sir

See how you translated **my lord** and the idiom "find favor in … eyes" in Genesis 32:5.
Alternate translation: [I sent them so that you would be gracious to me, sir] or [They are gifts for you so that you would be pleased with me, sir]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
favor	They are gifts for you so that you will be kind to me
lord	sir

Genesis 33:9

ULT	UST
Then Esau said, “I have plenty, my brother. Let what belongs to you be yours.”	*But Esau replied, “My brother, I already have enough animals, so keep them for yourself.”*

ULT **Then Esau said**
UST But Esau replied

What Esau says is in contrast to what Jacob said, but it may not be necessary to use a conjunction here at all. Alternate translation: [Esau said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I have plenty, my brother**
UST My brother, I {already} have enough animals

For some languages it is more natural to put the address **my brother** first in this quote. Some languages also have a special term for “younger brother” that fits well here. Alternate translation: [My brother, I already own enough livestock]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Let what {belongs} to you be yours**
UST so keep them for yourself

Alternate translation: [Keep what you own for yourself] or [so keep your livestock for yourself]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau

Genesis 33:10

ULT	UST
But Jacob said, "No, please. If, please, I have found favor in your eyes, then take my gift from my hand. For indeed I have seen your face, which is like seeing the face of God, and you have received me.	*But Jacob insisted, "Please do not refuse my gifts. Rather, if you want to be kind to me, then please accept these gifts from me. After all, for me to see your face is like seeing God's face, especially since you have welcomed me so kindly.*

ULT **But Jacob said**
UST But Jacob insisted

Alternate translation: [But Jacob responded to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **No, please**
UST Please do not refuse my gifts

In verses 10 and 11, Jacob speaks urgently to Esau, because in that culture if Esau accepts Jacob's gift, he is committing himself to treat Jacob as a friend. Alternate translation: [No, I beg you]

ULT **then take my gift from my hand**
UST then {please} accept these gifts from me

Alternate translation: [please accept from me what I have given you]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **For indeed**
UST After all

Alternate translation: [The fact is]

ULT **I have seen your face, {which is} like seeing the face of God, and you have received me**
UST for me to see your face is like seeing God's face, especially since you have welcomed me so kindly

In Old Testament times it was terrifying for someone to see God in person, because normally people could not see God's face and live (Exodus 33:20). However, God had been gracious to Jacob and allowed him to live (Genesis 32:30). In the same way, it was a terrifying thing for Jacob to see Esau who had 400 men with him, but Esau was gracious to him (33:4). See how you translated a different Hebrew word that means "receive" or "welcome" in Genesis 32:20. Alternate translation: [I thought you were still angry at me, so I was afraid of seeing you again in person, just as I would be afraid of meeting God in person, but you forgave me and welcomed me!]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
favor	Rather, if you want to be kind to me
God	God

Genesis 33:11

ULT	UST
Please take my blessing that was brought to you, because God has been gracious to me, and because I have everything." And he urged him, so he took it.	*So please accept my gift of animals that I sent to you, because God has been kind to me, so that I have all that I need." Jacob kept insisting that Esau accept the animals from him until finally he accepted them.*

ULT **Please take my blessing that was brought to you**
UST So please accept my gift {of animals} that I sent to you

Alternate translation: [So please accept my gift of livestock that my servants brought to you] or [So please accept the livestock from me that I sent to you]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **because God has been gracious to me**
UST because God has been kind to me

Alternate translation: [because God has been generous to me] or [because God has blessed me]

ULT **and because I have everything**
UST so that I have all that I need

Alternate translation: [and he has given me everything that I need] or [so that I own all that I need]

ULT **And he urged him**
UST Jacob kept insisting that Esau accept the animals from him

Make sure it is clear in your translation who and what is being referred to at every point in this sentence. Alternate translation: [He kept urging him to accept his gift] or [He kept insisting that he accept the livestock from him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **so he took it**
UST until {finally} he accepted them

Alternate translation: [until finally Esau accepted it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blessing	my gift of animals
God	God
has been gracious to me	has been kind to me

Genesis 33:12

ULT	UST
Then he said, “Let’s travel and go, and I will go in front of you.”	*Then Esau suggested to Jacob, “Let’s start traveling home, and I will accompany you.”*

ULT **Then he said**

UST Then Esau suggested to Jacob

Alternate translation: [Then Esau said to Jacob]

ULT **and I will go in front of you**

UST and I will accompany you

Esau is suggesting that he would accompany or escort Jacob and his family, not that he would go far ahead of them. Alternate translation: [and I will lead you]

Genesis 33:13

ULT	UST
But he said to him, "My lord knows that the children are tender and the flocks and the herds that are nursing are with me. And if they drive them one day, then all the flocks will die.	*But Jacob replied to him, "Sir, as you know, my children are fragile, and I need to be careful with all the sheep and cattle that are nursing their young. If I force the animals to go too far for even one day, all of them will die.*

ULT **But he said to him**
UST But Jacob replied to him

Alternate translation: [But he replied to him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **My lord knows that**
UST Sir, as you know

See how you translated "my lord" in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Sir, you know that]

ULT **the children {are} tender**
UST my children {are} fragile

Alternate translation: [my children are weak]

ULT **and the flock{s} and the herd{s} {that} are nursing {are} with me**
UST and I need {to be careful with} {all} the sheep and cattle that are nursing their young

See how you translated "flocks and herds" in Genesis 12:16. Alternate translation: [and some of my sheep and cattle are nursing their young]

ULT **And if they drive them one day**
UST If I force the animals to go too far {for} {even} one day

Alternate translation: [If my men drive the livestock too hard in one day] or [If I force the livestock to go too fast for even one day]

ULT **then all the flock{s} will die**
UST all of them will die

This phrase especially refers to the sheep and cattle that were nursing, but Jacob is probably using exaggeration here (**all**) to emphasize that he does not want to travel too fast. Alternate translation: [then all the flocks and herds will die] or [then all of them will die]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	Sir
knows	know
and the flocks	sheep
and the herds	cattle
flocks	them

Genesis 33:14

ULT	UST
Please let my lord go on before his servant, and I will lead them on at my gentle pace, at the pace of the livestock that are ahead of me and at the pace of the children, until I come to my lord in Seir."	*So then, sir, please go on home ahead of me, sir. I will travel along slowly at a safe pace for the animals and the children that are with me, until we reach you in the region of Seir."*

ULT **Please let my lord go on before his servant**
UST So then, sir, please go on {home} ahead of me, sir

See how you translated Jacob's use of **my lord** (in verse 8) and **servant** (in verse 5) to show respect and deference to Esau. Here he uses both terms for emphasis.
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **and I will lead them on at my gentle pace, at the pace of the livestock that {are} ahead of me and at the pace of the children**
UST I will travel along slowly at a safe pace for the animals and the children that are with me

Alternate translation: [Then I will travel along slowly at a speed that is good for the livestock and children that are with me]

ULT **until I come to my lord**
UST until we reach you

Alternate translation: [until we reach you, sir] or [We will catch up to you later, sir]

ULT **in Seir**
UST in {the region of} Seir

See how you translated "the land of Seir" in Genesis 32:3. The land of Seir was a mountainous region southeast of the land of Canaan (and the Dead Sea) and was where Esau had settled. It was also called "Edom" (Genesis 32:3), which was Esau's nickname (Genesis 25:30). You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [in the land of Seir]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	sir
servant	sir
lord	you

Genesis 33:15

ULT	UST
And Esau said, "Please let me leave with you some of the people who are with me." But he said, "Why do that? Let me find favor in the eyes of my lord."	*So Esau responded, "Okay, then please let me leave with you some of my men to escort you." But Jacob replied, "There is no need for you to do that. Just please continue to be kind to me, sir."*

ULT **And Esau said**
UST So Esau responded

Alternate translation: [Then Esau said to Jacob]

ULT **Please let me leave with you some of the people who {are} with me**
UST Okay, then please let me leave with you some of my men to escort you

Alternate translation: [Okay, then please let me leave you some of my men to escort you] or [Okay, then may I leave some of my men with you to escort you?]

ULT **But he said**
UST But Jacob replied

Make sure the way you translate this quote margin fits with how you translate the previous and following sentences. Alternate translation: [Jacob said to him] or [Jacob answered him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Why {do} that**
UST There is no need {for you} to do that

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize that there is no need for Esau to leave any of his men with him. For some languages it is clearer and more natural to use a statement here instead.
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Let me find favor in the eyes of my lord**
UST Just please {continue to} be kind to me, sir

Consider again how you translated **my lord** in verses 8, 13–15. For some languages it is more natural to put this address earlier in this quote. Also see how you translated the idiom **find favor in the eyes of** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Just please continue to be gracious to me, sir] or [Sir, please just continue to treat me kindly]
Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
favor	Just please {continue to} be kind to me
lord	sir

Genesis 33:16

ULT	UST
So on that day Esau went on his way back to Seir.	*So that same day Esau and his men started on their way back home to the land of Seir.*

ULT **So on that day Esau went on his way back**
UST So that {same} day Esau {and his men} started on their way back

Alternate translation: [So that very day Esau and his men started on their way back] or [So that very day Esau and his men left and headed back]

ULT **to Seir**
UST home to {the land of} Seir

See how you translated **Seir** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [home to the region of Seir]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
Esau	Esau

Genesis 33:17

ULT	UST
And Jacob traveled to Succoth, and he built a house for himself, and for his livestock he made shelters. For that reason he called the name of the place Succoth.	*Meanwhile, instead of going to Seir, Jacob and his family traveled to the town of Succoth. There he and his men built houses for himself and his family, and they built some shelters for his animals. That is why the name of that place is Succoth, which means "shelters."*

ULT **And Jacob traveled to Succoth**

UST Meanwhile, {instead of going to Seir,} Jacob {and his family} traveled to {the town of} Succoth

Jacob went northwest to Succoth, instead of going south to the region of Seir as he had said he would do (verse 14). Also see how you translated **travel** in verse 12. Alternate translation: [But Jacob went to the town of Succoth instead] or [Meanwhile, instead of going to Seir, Jacob and his family went to the town of Succoth]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **and he built a house for himself**

UST There he {and his men} built houses for himself and his family

Alternate translation: [There he and his servants built a house for himself and his family] or [where he and his men built a house for his family]

ULT **and for his livestock he made shelters**

UST and they built {some} shelters for his animals

The term **livestock** is general here and includes all of Jacob's animals. Alternate translation: [and they also built some shelters for his livestock] or [and shelters for his animals]

ULT **For that reason**

UST That is why

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 32:32. Alternate translation: [Because of that]

ULT **he called the name of the place Succoth**

UST the name of that place is Succoth, which means "shelters

The phrase "he/they called" could refer to Jacob, or it could refer to people in general (as it often does in Genesis). If you include the meaning of the name Succoth in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate **shelters** earlier in this verse.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Succoth	Succoth
house	houses
livestock	animals
called	is
Succoth	Succoth

Genesis 33:18

ULT	UST
Then Jacob came in peace to the city of Shechem, which was in the land of Canaan, when he came from Paddan Aram, and he camped before the city.	*After that, Jacob and his family continued their journey home from Paddan Aram, until they arrived safely at the city of Shechem in the region of Canaan. Then they set up their tents in a field near that city.*

ULT **Then Jacob came {in} peace {to} the city of Shechem, which {was} in the land of Canaan, when he came from Paddan Aram**

UST After that, Jacob {and his family} continued their journey {home} from Paddan Aram, until they arrived safely at the city of Shechem in the region of Canaan

Jacob and his family had left Paddan Aram and had been traveling back to the land of his ancestors in Canaan (Genesis 31:3, 13, 18). See how you translated **in peace** in Genesis 28:21. Alternate translation: [Later Jacob and his family arrived safely at the city of Shechem in the land of Canaan, as he continued traveling home from the region of Paddan Aram] or [After that, Jacob and his family continued their journey home from the region of Paddan Aram, until eventually they arrived safely at the city of Shechem in the land of Canaan]

ULT **and he camped**

UST Then they set up their tents in a field

See how you translated **camped** in Genesis 26:17. Alternate translation: [and he set up camp in a field] or [Then he set up his tents in a field]

ULT **before the city**

UST near that city

Alternate translation: [near the city] or [on the edge of the city]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Shechem	Shechem
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
from Paddan	from Paddan
Aram	Aram

Genesis 33:19

ULT	UST
And he bought the portion of the field where he pitched his tents from the hands of the sons of Hamor, the father of Shechem, for a hundred kesitahs.	*While he was there, he bought the land where he had set up his tents for a hundred pieces of silver from the descendants of Hamor, who was the father of Shechem.*

ULT **And he bought the portion of the field**
UST While he was there, he bought the land

Alternate translation: [Then he bought the plot of land]

ULT **where he pitched his tents**
UST where he had set up his tents

Alternate translation: [where they had set up their camp] or [where he were camping]

ULT **from the hand{s} of the sons of Hamor, the father of Shechem, for a hundred kesitahs**
UST for a hundred pieces {of silver} from the descendants of Hamor, {who was} the father of Shechem

The weight and value of **a hundred kesitahs** of silver is not known. Some ancient translations (including the LXX and Latin Vulgate) have "a hundred lambs" here, but most modern translations have "a hundred pieces of silver." Alternate translation: [for one hundred pieces of money from the sons of Hamor who was the father of Shechem]

Support Reference: Biblical Money

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tents	tents
Hamor	Hamor
Shechem	Shechem

Genesis 33:20

ULT	UST
And there he set up an altar, and he called it El Elohe Israel.	*Jacob also built an altar out of stones on that land, and he named it El Elohe Israel, which means "God is the God of Israel."*

ULT **And there he set up an altar**
UST Jacob {also} built an altar {out of stones} on that land

See how you translated **altar** in Genesis 26:25. Alternate translation: [On that land Jacob also built a stone altar] or [Jacob also made an altar out of stones on that land]

ULT **and he called it El Elohe Israel**
UST and he named it El Elohe Israel, which means "God is the God of Israel

The name **El Elohe Israel** could also mean "Powerful/Mighty is the God of Israel," because the Hebrew word **El** can mean "God" or "powerful." You could put that information in a footnote.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
altar	altar
called	and he named
El	God
Elohe	God
Israel	Israel

Genesis 34

Genesis 34:1

ULT	UST
Then Dinah, the daughter of Leah, whom she had born for Jacob, went out to see the daughters of the land.	*Then one day Dinah, who was the daughter of Jacob and Leah, went out to visit with some of the local women.*

ULT **Then Dinah, the daughter of Leah, whom she had born for Jacob, went out**
UST Then {one day} Dinah, {who was} the daughter of Jacob and Leah, went out

These events took place at an unspecified time after Jacob and his family set up their camp beside the city of Shechem (Genesis 33:18). Consider what is the best way to introduce a new event in your language. Also be consistent here with how you spelled **Dinah** in Genesis 30:21. Alternate translation: [Now one day Dinah, who was the daughter whom Leah had for Jacob, went out] or [One day, Dinah, who was the daughter of Jacob and Leah, went to the city]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **to see**
UST to visit with

The idiom **to see** could mean: (1) "to visit with"; many languages have a similar idiom. (2) "to see or observe" the local women, for example, how they dressed and what jewelry they wore.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the daughters of the land**
UST some of the local women

See how you translated **daughters of the land** in Genesis 27:46, and how you translated a similar phrase **people of the land** in Genesis 23:7, 12. Alternate translation: [some of the women who were native to that area] or [some of the native women]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah
she had born	Jacob and Leah
Jacob	Jacob
land	some of the local women

Genesis 34:2

ULT	UST
And Shechem, the son of Hamor the Hivite, the ruler of the land, saw her, and he took her and lay with her and violated her.	*The chief of that region was a Hivite named Hamor. His son Shechem saw how beautiful Dinah was, so he grabbed hold of her and raped her.*

ULT **And Shechem, the son of Hamor the Hivite, the ruler of the land, saw**
UST The chief of that region was a Hivite named Hamor. His son Shechem saw

Consider which order of phrases is best here in your language. Also see how you translated **Hivites** in Genesis 10:17 and **ruler** in Genesis 25:16. Alternate translation: [Then Shechem, who was the son of the Hivite named Hamor who ruled that region, saw] or [Now the ruler of that region was a Hivite named Hamor. His son Shechem saw]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **her, and he took her**
UST how beautiful Dinah was, so he grabbed {hold of} her

Alternate translation: [Dinah, and he grabbed hold of her] or [how beautiful Dinah was, so he took hold of her]

ULT **and lay with her and violated her**
UST and raped her

This is a euphemistic way of saying that Shechem forced Dinah to have sex with him. Translate this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people, especially when hearing your translation read aloud. Alternate translation: [and forced her to go to bed with him]

Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Shechem	Shechem
Hamor	Hamor
Hivite	Hivite
ruler	The chief of
land	that region

Genesis 34:3

ULT	UST
And his soul was attached to Dinah the daughter of Jacob, and he loved the young woman and spoke to the heart of the young woman.	*Shechem admired Jacob's daughter Dinah so much that he fell in love with her and spoke sweetly to her to try to woo her.*

> ULT **and spoke to the heart of the young woman**
> UST and spoke sweetly to her to try to woo her

See how you translated **young woman** in Genesis 24:14, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [and spoke tenderly to her to try to persuade her] or [and tried to win her heart by speaking kindly to her]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
loved	love

Genesis 34:4

ULT	UST
Then Shechem said to Hamor his father, saying, “Get this girl for me as a wife.”	*Then Shechem said to his father Hamor, “Negotiate things for me so that I can marry this girl.”*

ULT **Then Shechem said to Hamor his father, saying**
UST Then Shechem said to his father Hamor

Alternate translation: [Then Shechem went to his father Hamor and requested]

ULT **Get this girl for me as a wife**
UST Negotiate {things} for me so that I can marry this girl

At that time it was normal for parents to negotiate with another family to get a spouse for their child. The negotiations would include a bride-price and other details. You could put some of that information in a footnote. The term **girl** that Shechem uses here is less respectful than the term “young woman” that is used in verses 3 and 12.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Shechem	Shechem
Hamor	Hamor

Genesis 34:5

ULT	UST
Then Jacob heard that he had defiled Dinah his daughter, and his sons were with his livestock in the fields, so Jacob kept quiet until they came.	*When Jacob found out that Shechem had dishonored his daughter Dinah, his sons were still out in the fields taking care of his animals, so he did not say anything about it until they returned home.*

ULT **Then Jacob heard that**
UST When Jacob found out that

Alternate translation: [When Jacob was told by someone that]

ULT **he had defiled Dinah his daughter**
UST Shechem had dishonored his daughter Dinah

Alternate translation: [Shechem had disgraced his daughter Dinah] or [his daughter Dinah had been disgraced by Shechem]

ULT **and his sons were with his livestock in the fields**
UST his sons were {still} {out} in the fields taking care of his animals

Alternate translation: [his sons were still tending his livestock out in the fields] or [his sons were still out in the fields taking care of his livestock]

ULT **so Jacob kept quiet**
UST so he did not say anything about it

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not mean that Jacob was totally silent. Rather, it means he did not speak about what Shechem had done to Dinah.

ULT **until they came**
UST until they returned home

Alternate translation: [until they came back home]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
defiled	Shechem had dishonored
livestock	animals
Jacob	יַעֲקֹב

Genesis 34:6

ULT	UST
And Hamor the father of Shechem came out to Jacob to talk with him.	*Meanwhile, Shechem and his father Hamor went to talk to Jacob.*

ULT **And Hamor the father of Shechem came out**
UST Meanwhile, {Shechem and} his father Hamor went

For some languages it is more natural to introduce Shechem here, rather than wait and have him appear too suddenly in verse 11.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to Jacob to talk with him**
UST to talk to Jacob

Alternate translation: [to talk with Jacob]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hamor	Hamor
Shechem	Shechem
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 34:7

ULT	UST
Then the sons of Jacob came from the fields. When they heard, then the men were grieved and it burned within them greatly, because he had done something disgraceful to Israel by lying with the daughter of Jacob, and such a thing should not have been done!	*Soon Jacob's sons returned home from the fields. When they heard what had happened, they were shocked and extremely angry that Shechem had dishonored the people of Israel by raping Jacob's daughter. No one should ever do such a horrible thing!*

ULT **When they heard**
UST When they heard what had happened

Many translations put "when they heard" with the previous sentence. However, unless someone else told Jacob's sons the news of what happened, that interpretation contradicts verse 5, which says that Jacob kept quiet about it until his sons got home. Alternate translation: [When they heard that Shechem had raped their sister]

ULT **then the men were grieved**
UST they were shocked

See how you translated **grieved** in Genesis 6:6. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [they were very shocked]

ULT **and it burned within them greatly**
UST and extremely angry

See how you translated the idiom "it/anger burned within …" in Genesis 32:36. Alternate translation: [and filled with anger]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **because he had done something disgraceful to Israel**
UST that Shechem had dishonored {the people of} Israel

Notice in this verse that the Hebrew text has both of Jacob's names, **Jacob** and "Israel," to emphasize that Shechem had sinned against Jacob and all of his descendants (the people of Israel). You could put that information in a footnote. Make sure that your translation of **Israel** does not refer here to a place, since Israel was not yet a country or a territory. Alternate translation: [that Shechem had disgraced the family of Israel]

ULT **and such a thing should not have been done**
UST No one should ever do such a {horrible} thing

Alternate translation: [Such a wicked thing should never be done by anyone!] or [No one should ever do such a wicked crime!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
something disgraceful	Shechem had dishonored
Israel	Israel
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 34:8

ULT	UST
But Hamor spoke with them, saying, "Shechem my son, his soul is attached to your daughter. Please give her to him as a wife.	*But Hamor urged Jacob and his sons, "My son Shechem deeply loves your daughter and sister. So please allow him to marry her.*

ULT **But Hamor spoke with them, saying**
UST But Hamor urged Jacob and his sons

Alternate translation: [But Hamor pleaded with Jacob and his sons and said] or [But Hamor begged Jacob and his sons]

ULT **to your daughter**
UST your daughter and sister

The pronoun **your** is plural here, which shows that Hamor is addressing not only Jacob but also his sons. Alternate translation: [My son Shechem has fallen completely in love with your daughter and sister]

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **Please give her to him as a wife**
UST So please allow him to marry her

The way **give** and "take" are used in verses 8, 9, 12, 16 and 21 reflects the culture at that time, when parents or families arranged marriages for their daughters. Also see the note about this at verse 4. Alternate translation: [So please permit him to marry her]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hamor	Hamor
Shechem	Shechem

Genesis 34:9

ULT	UST
And intermarry with us: Give your daughters to us, and take our daughters for yourselves,	*In fact, let's allow marriage between our two peoples, so that your daughters can marry our young men and your young men can marry our daughters.*

> ULT **Give your daughters to us, and take our daughters for yourselves**
> UST so that your daughters can marry our {young men} and your {young men} can marry our daughters

Alternate translation: [so that your daughters will marry our young men and your young men will marry our daughters] or [so that you allow our young men to marry your daughters and we allow your young men to marry our daughters]

Genesis 34:10

ULT	UST
and settle with us. And the land is before you. Settle and trade in it, and acquire property in it.”	*You can live among us. The land is available for you to choose what you want; live in it wherever you want. You can also trade freely here, and you can buy your own land.”*

ULT and settle with us

UST You can live among us

Alternate translation: [You can also live among us] or [We also invite you to live among us]

ULT And the land is before you. Settle and trade in it

UST The land is available for you {to choose what you want}; live {in it} {wherever you want}. You can {also} trade {freely} here

Normally foreigners were not allowed to own land or to move around in the land to trade freely. So that is why Hamor is offering this in exchange for Jacob allowing his family to intermarry with the Hivites. Alternate translation: [The land is available for you to choose what you want; settle in it wherever you want. You can also trade freely here] or [You can settle wherever you want in the land. You can also do business buying and selling things wherever you want]

ULT and acquire {property} in it

UST and you can buy {your own} land

Alternate translation: [and you can buy your own property]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
and acquire property	and you can buy {your own} land

Genesis 34:11

ULT	UST
Then Shechem said to her father and to her brothers, "Let me find favor in your eyes, and what you say to me I will give.	*Then Shechem said to Dinah's father and brothers, "Please be kind to me and let me marry her. Then I will pay you whatever you request from me for her.*

ULT **and what you say to me I will give**
UST Then I will pay {you} whatever you request from me for her

Alternate translation: [Then I will give you whatever you ask from me for her]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Shechem	Shechem
favor	Please be kind to me and let me marry her

Genesis 34:12

ULT	UST
Increase greatly the dowry and gift for me, and I will give according to what you say to me. Then give the young woman to me as a wife."	*Set the bride-price and marriage gifts that I must pay for her as high as you want, and I will pay you whatever you ask from me. Just please give the young woman to me to marry."*

ULT **Increase greatly the dowry and gift for me**
UST Set the bride-price and {marriage} gifts {that I must pay} {for her} as high as you want

The **dowry** was the payment that a groom (and his family) had to give to the bride's family. It could include things like money, land, and livestock. The term **gift** probably refers to additional gifts given to the bride and her family members (as in Genesis 24:53). If the custom of paying a dowry is not known in your culture, you could include an explanation in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Set the dowry and wedding gifts that I must pay to marry her as high as you want]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and I will give according to what you say to me**
UST and I will pay {you} whatever you ask from me

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 11. Alternate translation: [and I will give you whatever you ask from me]

ULT **Then give the young woman to me as a wife**
UST Just please give the young woman to me to marry

See how you translated **young woman** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Only please let me marry the young woman]

Genesis 34:13

ULT	UST
Then the sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father with deceit when they spoke, because he had defiled Dinah their sister.	*But since Shechem had dishonored their sister Dinah, Jacob's sons replied to him and his father Hamor in a deceitful way.*

ULT because he had defiled Dinah their sister
UST since Shechem had dishonored their sister Dinah

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "But because/since Shechem had defiled/dishonored their sister Dinah, the sons of Jacob deceived/tricked Shechem and his father Hamor 14 by saying to them," Alternate translation: [because he had disgraced their sister Dinah] or [because he had done a shameful thing to their sister Dinah]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Shechem	to him
Hamor	Hamor
with deceit	in a deceitful way
defiled	since Shechem had dishonored

Genesis 34:14

ULT	UST
And they said to them, "We are not able to do this thing, to give our sister to a man who has a foreskin, because that is a disgrace to us!	*They said to them, "It would not be acceptable for us to let our sister marry a man like you who is not circumcised, because that would dishonor our family!*

ULT **And they said to them**
UST They said to them

Alternate translation: [and said to them]

ULT **We are not able to do this thing**
UST It would not be acceptable for us

Alternate translation: [We are not able to do such a thing as] or [It would be not be right for us]

ULT **to give our sister to a man who has a foreskin**
UST to let our sister marry a man {like you} who is not circumcised

Translate **who has a foreskin** in a way that will not offend or embarrass people, especially when hearing your translation read aloud. Alternate translation: [to let our sister marry a man like you who has not had his foreskin removed] or [to allow a man like you who is not circumcised to marry our sister]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **because that {is} a disgrace to us**
UST because that would dishonor our family

Alternate translation: [because that would humiliate our family!] or [That would cause great shame to our family!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
disgrace	would dishonor

Genesis 34:15

ULT	UST
Only on this condition will we consent with you: if you become like us by every male among you being circumcised.	*The only way that we can agree with your proposal is if first you and your people become like us by circumcising all of your males.*

ULT **Only on this {condition} will we consent with you**
UST The only way that we can agree with your proposal is

Alternate translation: [The only way that we will agree with your proposal is] or [We will do what you ask only if you do this one thing:]

ULT **if you become like us**
UST if {first} you {and your people} become like us

Alternate translation: [You and your people must first become like us]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
circumcised	circumcising

Genesis 34:16

ULT	UST
Then we will give our daughters to you, and we will take your daughters for us. And we will settle with you, and we will become one people.	*If you do that, then we will allow your young men to marry our daughters, and we will allow your daughters to marry our young men. We will also live among you in this land, so that we become one people group.*

ULT **Then we will give our daughters to you, and we will take your daughters for us**
UST If you do that, then we will allow your {young} men to marry our daughters, and {we will allow} your daughters to marry our young men

The pronouns "we," "our," and **us** are exclusive in verses 14–17 except for the last **we** in verse 16. Also see how you translated "give … daughters … take … daughters …" in verse 9. Alternate translation: [Then we will let our daughters marry your young men, and our young men will marry your daughters] or [After you do that, then we will allow your young men to marry our daughters, and we will allow your daughters to marry our young men]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **And we will settle with you**
UST We will {also} live among you in this land

See how you translated **settle with** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [We will also settle among you in this land]

ULT **and we will become one people**
UST so that we become one people group

Here the **we** is inclusive because Jacob's sons are including Shechem and Hamor's people. If you have an inclusive form of this pronoun in your language, you could use it here. Alternate translation: [and as a result we will all be one ethnic group]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Genesis 34:17

ULT	UST
But if you will not listen to us to be circumcised, then we will take our daughter and go."	*However if you refuse to agree with our requirement that you circumcise your people, then we will take our sister and move somewhere else."*

ULT **But if you will not listen to us to be circumcised**
UST However if you refuse to agree with our requirement that you circumcise your people

Alternate translation: [But if you do not circumcise your males as we say]

ULT **then we will take our daughter and go**
UST then we will take our sister and move somewhere else

The phrase **our daughter** reflects the fact that Jacob's sons are using their father's perspective and authority here. If that is confusing, you could say "our sister" instead. See how you translated "our family's daughter" in verse 8. Alternate translation: [then we will leave and take our sister with us]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
circumcised	circumcise

Genesis 34:18

ULT	UST
And their words were good in the eyes of Hamor and in the eyes of Shechem, Hamor's son.	*What Jacob's sons said seemed good to Hamor and his son Shechem.*

ULT **And their words were good in the eyes of Hamor and in the eyes of Shechem, Hamor's son**

UST What Jacob's sons said seemed good to Hamor and his son Shechem

See how you translated the idiom "good in … eyes" in Genesis 19:8. It may need to be translated in different ways, depending on the context.

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
good	good
Hamor	Hamor
Shechem	Shechem
Hamor	his son

Genesis 34:19

ULT	UST
So the young man did not delay to do the thing, because he was delighted with the daughter of Jacob, and he was honored more than all of the house of his father.	*So right away Shechem, who was the most respected member in his family, started to do what they required, because he was thrilled with Jacob's daughter.*

ULT **So the young man did not delay**
UST So right away Shechem … started

Alternate translation: [So Shechem immediately started] or [So right away Shechem took action]

ULT **to do the thing**
UST to do what they required

Alternate translation: [to do what they proposed] or [to do their requirement]

ULT **and he was honored more than all of the house of his father**
UST who was the most respected member in his family

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "So right away Shechem, who was the most respected member in his father's household/family, started to do what they required, because he was thrilled with Jacob's daughter."
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
young man	Shechem
delighted	he was thrilled
Jacob	Jacob
honored	was the most respected
house	member in his family

Genesis 34:20

ULT	UST
So Hamor and Shechem his son went to the gate of their city, and they spoke to the men of their city, saying,	*In fact, he and his father Hamor went straight to their city entrance for a town meeting, and they told the elders of their city about Jacob and his sons,*

ULT **and they spoke to the men of their city, saying**
UST and they told the elders of their city about Jacob and his sons

In that culture the leaders of a city held their meetings at the main city gates (as in Genesis 23:3). Cities were surrounded by walls (that had gates) for protection. You could put some of that information in a footnote so that people understand what was happening. Alternate translation: [and they spoke to the city elders who had gathered there. They said] or [and they told the leaders of their city about Jacob and his sons]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hamor	Hamor
Shechem	he and his father Hamor
gate	their city entrance for a town meeting

Genesis 34:21

ULT	UST
"These men are peaceful with us, so let them settle in the land, and let them trade in it. And behold, the land is broad of hands before them. We can take their daughters for ourselves as wives, and we can give our daughters to them.	*"These people are friendly toward us, so let's allow them to live in our land and trade freely here. After all, there is more than enough space in the land for them too. Besides that, then our young men can marry their daughters, and their young men can marry our daughters.*

ULT **These men {are} peaceful with us**
UST These people are friendly toward us

Here **us** includes Hamor, Shechem and the men they are talking to. Alternate translation: [Jacob and his family are at peace with us]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **so let them settle in the land**
UST so {let's} allow them to live in {our} land

See how you translated **settle** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [so we should let them live in our land]

ULT **and let them trade in it**
UST and trade {freely} here

See how you translated **trade in it** in verse 10. Alternate translation: [and let them buy and sell things wherever they want]

ULT **And behold, the land {is} broad of hands before them**
UST After all, there is more than enough space in the land for them too

Alternate translation: [Look, there is enough land to support them and us] or [After all, there is more than enough room in this land for them too]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **We can take their daughters for ourselves as wives, and we can give our daughters to them**
UST Besides that, {then} our {young} men can marry their daughters, and their {young} men can marry our daughters

See how you translated similar clauses in verses 9 and 16. It may be necessary to translate these in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [That way too, we can choose their daughters to be our wives, and we can let their young men marry our daughters]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
peaceful	are friendly
land	land
land	land

Genesis 34:22

ULT	UST
Only on this condition will the men consent with us to settle with us, to become one people: when every male among us is circumcised just as they are circumcised.	*There is just one thing: They will only agree to live among us and become one people group with us if we circumcise all our males so that we are like them.*

ULT **Only on this {condition} will the men consent with us to settle with us**
UST There is just one thing: They will only agree to live among us

See how you began verse 15, which is very similar to verse 22. Alternate translation: [There is just one requirement: They will only agree to settle among us] or [But they will only consent to live among us]

ULT **to become one people**
UST and become one people group with us

See how you translated this phrase in verse 16.

ULT **when every male among us is circumcised**
UST if we circumcise all our males

The author says **when** to introduce an imaginary situation to help explain the condition under which **the men will consent with us to settle with us**. Use a natural method in your language for introducing an imaginary situation. See how you translated "every male among … circumcised" in verse 15. Alternate translation: [if all our males are circumcised]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **just as they are circumcised**
UST so that we are like them

Alternate translation: [as their males are]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
circumcised	circumcise
circumcised	so that we are like them

Genesis 34:23

ULT	UST
Their livestock and their property and all their animals, will they not belong to us? Only let us consent with them, and they will settle with us!”	*But if we do that, all their property, including their livestock and all their other animals will belong to us! So let’s just agree to do what they require so that they will live among us!”*

ULT Their livestock and their property and all their animals
UST But if we do that, {all} their property, {including} their livestock and all their {other} animals

Alternate translation: [Then all their livestock and animals, and all their other property] or [But if we do that, all their possessions, including their livestock and all their other animals]

ULT will they not {belong} to us
UST will belong to us

This rhetorical question emphasizes that all of Jacob’s livestock and property will belong to the people of Shechem. If a rhetorical question does not fit here in your language, you could make this a statement. Alternate translation: [will be ours!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT Only let us consent with them
UST So let’s just agree to do what they require

Alternate translation: [So we should just do what they propose]

ULT and they will settle with us
UST so that they will live among us

See how you translated **settle with us** in verses 10 and 22. Alternate translation: [so that they will settle among us!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
livestock	livestock
their animals	their {other} animals

Genesis 34:24

ULT	UST
And all who went out of the gate of his city listened to Hamor and to Shechem his son, and every male was circumcised, all who went out of the gate of his city.	*All the men who were leaders of the city agreed with Hamor and his son Shechem, so they circumcised every male in the city, including themselves.*

ULT **And all who went out of the gate of his city listened**
UST All {the men} who were leaders of the city agreed

Make sure that your translation of this idiom refers here to the same men who had gathered at the city gates in verse 20. Alternate translation: [All the men who were elders of the city] or [All the men who were there at the city gate]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And … listened to Hamor and to Shechem his son**
UST agreed with Hamor and his son Shechem

Alternate translation: [agreed to do what Hamor and his son Shechem said]

ULT **and every male was circumcised, all who went out of the gate of his city**
UST so they circumcised every male in the city, including themselves

Alternate translation: [so all of them and all the other males in the city were circumcised]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gate	who were leaders of
Hamor	Hamor
Shechem	Shechem
circumcised	circumcised
gate	in the city, including themselves

Genesis 34:25

ULT	UST
Then it happened on the third day, when they were in pain, then two of Jacob's sons, Simeon and Levi, brothers of Dinah, each took his sword and went upon the city boldly and killed every male.	*Three days later, when the men of the city of Shechem were all still sore from being circumcised, two of Jacob's sons, Simeon and Levi, who were Dinah's brothers, took their swords and attacked the city, with no one opposing them. They killed all the men there*

ULT **Then it happened on the third day**
UST Three days later

Alternate translation: [On the third day after that]

ULT **when they were in pain**
UST when the men of {the city of} Shechem were {all} {still} sore from being circumcised

Alternate translation: [when it was still painful for the men of the city to move]

ULT **then two of Jacob's sons, Simeon and Levi, brothers of Dinah, each took**
UST two of Jacob's sons, Simeon and Levi, {who were} Dinah's brothers, took

These brothers had the same father and mother as Dinah. Some languages have a special term for this.
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **his sword and went upon the city boldly**
UST their swords and attacked the city, with no one opposing them

See how you translated **sword** in Genesis 27:40. Alternate translation: [their swords and attacked the city, with no one resisting them]

ULT **and killed every male**
UST They killed all the men there

The children who were males were probably not killed, since later (verse 29) it says that all the children were captured. Alternate translation: [They killed all the males there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	days
Jacob	Jacob
Simeon	Simeon
Levi	Levi
sword	swords
killed	killed

Genesis 34:26

ULT	UST
And they killed Hamor and Shechem his son with the mouth of the sword, and they took Dinah from the house of Shechem and left.	*with their swords, including Hamor and his son Shechem. Then they got Dinah from Shechem's house and left the city.*

ULT **And they killed Hamor and Shechem his son with the mouth of the sword**
UST with their swords, including Hamor and his son Shechem

Some languages have dual pronouns for **they** and "you" that can be used in verses 25–26 and 30–31 to refer to Simeon and Levi.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **and left**
UST and left the city

Alternate translation: [and returned home]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
killed	הָרְגוּ
Hamor	Hamor
Shechem	Shechem
sword	swords
house	house
Shechem	Shechem

Genesis 34:27

ULT	UST
The sons of Jacob came upon the slain and plundered the city, because they had defiled their sister.	*Next all Jacob's sons went into the city and took everything valuable from the dead bodies and from the rest of the city. They did that, because that was where Shechem had dishonored their sister.*

ULT The sons of Jacob came upon the slain and plundered the city

UST Next {all} Jacob's sons went {into the city} and took everything valuable from the dead bodies and from {the rest of} the city

All of Jacob's sons probably joined Simeon and Levi in plundering the city, after those two had killed all the men there (verse 25).

ULT because they had defiled their sister

UST They did that, because {that was where} Shechem had dishonored their sister

See how you translated **defiled** in verses 5 and 13. Even though Shechem was the one who actually defiled Dinah (verses 2, 5, 7, 13), Jacob's sons held everyone in the city responsible for the crime that their ruler's son had committed (verses 25–29). If that is not clear, you could put that information in a footnote. Make sure that your translation of **they** does not refer to Jacob's sons. Alternate translation: [They did that because that was where Shechem had disgraced their sister] or [to get revenge for the shameful thing that had been done to their sister there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
defiled	Shechem had dishonored

Genesis 34:28

ULT	UST
They took their flocks and their herds and their donkeys, and what was in the city and what was in the fields.	*They plundered whatever was in the city and in the surrounding fields, including the people's flocks of sheep and goats, their herds of cattle and their donkeys.*

ULT **They took their flock{s} and their herd{s} and their donkeys, and what {was} in the city and what {was} in the fields**

UST They plundered whatever was in the city and in the {surrounding} fields, including the people's flocks {of sheep and goats}, their herds {of cattle} and their donkeys

See how you translated **donkeys** in Genesis 32:15.

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
flocks	flocks
their herds	cattle
donkeys	donkeys

Genesis 34:29

ULT	UST
And all their wealth and all their little ones and their women they took captive, and they also plundered everything that was in the houses.	*They carried away all the valuable things the people of Shechem had owned, including everything that was in their houses. They also captured their women and children.*

ULT **And all their wealth and all their little ones and their women they took captive, and they also plundered everything that {was} in the houses**

UST They carried away all the valuable things the people of Shechem had owned, including everything that was in their houses. They also captured their women and children

See how you translated **plundered** in verse 27. Alternate translation: [They carried away all the valuable things the people of Shechem had owned, including everything that was in their houses. They also captured all their women and children] or [They took away everything that was valuable and also captured all the children and women. They seized and took away everything that was in the houses]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
their wealth	the valuable things the people of Shechem had owned
captive	They also captured
houses	houses

Genesis 34:30

ULT	UST
Then Jacob said to Simeon and to Levi, "You have brought trouble on me by making me stink among those who live in the land, among the Canaanites and among the Perizzites! And I am few of number, and if they gather together against me and attack me, then I will be destroyed, I and my house!"	*Later Jacob scolded Simeon and Levi by saying, "You have brought me serious trouble by causing the Canaanites and Perizzites who live in this land to hate us! I only have a few men to defend us, so if they all join forces against us and attack us, they will destroy us and the rest of our family!"*

ULT **Then Jacob said to Simeon and to Levi**
UST Later Jacob scolded Simeon and Levi by saying

Alternate translation: [Later when they came home, Jacob scolded Simeon and Levi by saying]

ULT **You have brought trouble on me**
UST You have brought me {serious} trouble

Alternate translation: [You have caused me serious problems] or [You have put me in great danger]

ULT **by making me stink among {those} who live in the land, among the Canaanites and among the Perizzites**
UST by causing the Canaanites and Perizzites who live in this land to hate us

The idiom **making me stink** means Jacob's sons had caused him to have a very bad reputation, so that people would hate him and his family. Some languages have a similar idiom that fits well here. Also see how you translated **the Canaanites** and **the Perizzites** in Genesis 13:7; 15:20–21. There were other people groups also living in the land, but these two groups are the ones being emphasized here. Alternate translation: [by causing the people who live in this land to despise us, including the Canaanites and Perizzites!] or [by causing the Canaanites and Perizzites who live in this land to hate me]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And I am few of number**
UST I {only} have a few men to defend us

The words "I," "me," and **my** refer in this verse to all of Jacob's family; he uses these pronouns because he is the leader of his family. Alternate translation: [We only have a few men to defend us]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **and if they gather together against me and attack me**
UST so if they {all} join {forces} against us and attack us

Make sure your use of the pronouns **me** or "us" fits with the way you translate the rest of this sentence. Alternate translation: [so if they all join forces against me and attack me]

> ULT **then I will be destroyed, I and my house**
> UST they will destroy us and {the rest of} our family

Alternate translation: [then I and my family will be killed!] or [they will kill us and the rest of my household!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Simeon	Simeon
Levi	Levi
trouble	trouble
land	land
Canaanites	Canaanites
Perizzites	Perizzites
destroyed	destroy
house	and {the rest of} our family

Genesis 34:31

ULT	UST
But they said, “Should he have treated our sister like a prostitute?”	*But Simeon and Levi responded, “Shechem should not have treated our sister like a whore!”*

ULT **But they said**
UST But Simeon and Levi responded

Alternate translation: [But Simeon and Levi replied angrily]

ULT **Should he have treated our sister like a prostitute**
UST Shechem should not have treated our sister like a whore

This rhetorical question shows Simeon and Levi’s anger and emphasizes that Shechem was wrong to do what he did and implies that he (and his city) deserved justice. Alternate translation: [He should not have treated our sister as a prostitute!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
prostitute	whore

Genesis 35

Genesis 35:1

ULT	UST
Then God said to Jacob, "Get up, go up to Bethel and settle there, and make an altar there to the God who appeared to you when you were fleeing from the presence of Esau your brother."	*Then God commanded Jacob, "Leave here and move to the town of Bethel. Build an altar there and offer sacrifices on it to worship me as the God who appeared to you there when you were running away from your brother Esau."*

ULT **Then God said to Jacob**
UST Then God commanded Jacob

Translate this quote margin in a way that is natural in your language and that fits with what God says. Alternate translation: [Then God told Jacob]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Get up**
UST Leave here

Alternate translation: [Get packed]

ULT **go up to Bethel and settle there**
UST and move to {the town of} Bethel

The verb **go up** reflects the fact that the town of Bethel is higher in elevation than the city of Shechem; it does not refer to the direction they were going, which was south. Many translations leave **up** implied (to prevent confusion). Alternate translation: [and travel to the town of Bethel and live there]

ULT **and make an altar there**
UST Build an altar there and offer sacrifices on it

See how you translated **altar** in Genesis 33:20.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the God**
UST to worship {me as} the God

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is referring to himself as he speaks here to Jacob. Alternate translation: [to me as the God] or [to me, the God]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **who appeared to you**
UST who appeared to you there

See how you translated **appeared** in Genesis 26:2, 24. Alternate translation: [who came to you there] or [who introduced myself to you there]

ULT **when you were fleeing**
UST when you were running away

See how you translated **flee** in Genesis 31:20–21, 27.

ULT **from the presence of Esau your brother**
UST from your brother Esau

Alternate translation: [from the anger of your brother Esau]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Jacob	Jacob
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel
altar	altar
Esau	Esau

Genesis 35:2

ULT	UST
So Jacob said to his household and to all who were with him, "Remove the foreign gods that are among you, and purify yourselves and change your clothes.	*So Jacob told his family and everyone else who was with him, "Get rid of the idols you have that other people worship. Also wash and make yourselves clean and put on clean clothes.*

ULT **So Jacob said to his household**
UST So Jacob told his family

Alternate translation: [So Jacob told the members of his family]

ULT **and to all who {were} with him**
UST and everyone else who {was} with him

This included Jacob's servants and the people (women and children) whom his sons had just captured from the city of Shechem (Genesis 34:29). You could put some of that information in a footnote.

ULT **Remove the foreign gods that {are} among you**
UST Get rid of the idols you have that other people worship

By **foreign gods**, Jacob means the idols that came to the Jews from the non-Hebrew people with whom the Jews had dwelt and even intermarried. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. See how you translated **idols** and **gods** in Genesis 31:19, 30, 32. Alternate translation: [Get rid of the idols you have that pagan ethnic groups worship] or [Give up the idols that you have from foreigners]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and change your clothes**
UST and put on clean clothes

Alternate translation: [and dress in clean clothes]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
his household	his family
gods	idols
purify	Also wash and make yourselves clean

Genesis 35:3

ULT	UST
Then let us get up and go up to Bethel, and there I will make an altar to God, who answered me in the day of my distress. And he has been with me in the way that I have gone."	*Then we will leave here and move to the town of Bethel. There we will build an altar and worship God because he helped me during the time when I was in trouble. He has always been with us and taken care of us everywhere that we have gone."*

ULT **Then let us get up**
UST Then we will leave here

See how you translated **get up** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [Then we must pack up our things] or [Then we must leave here]

ULT **and go up to Bethel**
UST and move to {the town of} Bethel

See how you translated **go up** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [and go to the town of Bethel]

ULT **and there I will make an altar to God**
UST There we will build an altar and worship God

The Hebrew text has **I** here, but probably also implies that others in Jacob's household would help him build the altar. Also see how you translated **make an altar** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [where I will build an altar to worship God] or [There I will build an altar and worship God]

ULT **who answered me**
UST because he helped me

Alternate translation: [because he answered me] or [who granted my prayers for help]

ULT **in the day of my distress**
UST during the time when I was in trouble

The phrase "In the day of" is used here as an idiom that could refer to the time when Jacob was fleeing from Esau, or it could be more general and also include other times when Jacob was suffering, such as the years he worked for Laban. Alternate translation: [during the days when I was in trouble]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And he has been with me**
UST He has {always} been with us and taken care of us

See how you translated the idiom **with me** in Genesis 31:5, where it also means that God is not only present with him but also helps him and takes care of him. Alternate translation: [He has always stayed with me and taken care of me]

Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **in the way that I have gone**
> UST everywhere that we have gone

Alternate translation: [everywhere that I have gone]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel
altar	altar
God	God
day	during the time when
distress	trouble

Genesis 35:4

ULT	UST
So they gave to Jacob all the foreign gods that were in their hands and the rings that were in their ears, and Jacob hid them under the terebinth tree that was by Shechem.	*So they gave Jacob all their idols and all their earrings. Then Jacob buried all those things at the base of the oak tree that was near the city of Shechem.*

ULT **So they gave to Jacob**
UST So they gave Jacob

Alternate translation: [Then they gave Jacob] or [Then they turned over to Jacob]

ULT **all the foreign gods that {were} in their hands**
UST all their idols

See how you translated **foreign gods** in verse 2. You could translate this differently here since this is the second time they are mentioned in this paragraph. Alternate translation: [all the pagan gods that they had with them]

ULT **and the rings that {were} in their ears**
UST and {all} their earrings

The implication is that these earrings were part of their idol worship and may have had images of their idols on them. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the earrings they wore on their ears]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and Jacob hid them**
UST Then Jacob buried all those things

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob hid everything in the ground] or [Then Jacob hid all those things in the ground]

ULT **under**
UST at the base of

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob buried these things in the ground beside the tree, not directly under the trunk of the tree. Alternate translation: [beside] or [at the foot of]

ULT **the terebinth tree**
UST the oak tree

Although this phrase refers to a terebinth tree, many translations have “oak tree” instead, or some other type of large, strong tree that is well known. See how you translated a different Hebrew word that is also translated **terebinth tree** or “oak tree” in Genesis 12:6; 13:18; 14:13; 18:1. Another Hebrew word in Genesis 35:8 is also translated as “oak.” Alternate translation: [a oak tree]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
foreign	הַנֵּכָר
gods	idols
Jacob	Jacob
and … hid	buried

Genesis 35:5

ULT	UST
Then they set out, and the dread of God was on the cities that were around them, so that they did not pursue after the sons of Jacob.	*Then Jacob and everyone with him left that place, and God caused the people in the surrounding towns to be terrified, so that they did not attack Jacob's family.*

ULT Then they set out
UST Then Jacob and everyone with him left that place

Alternate translation: [Then they all left there and started traveling]

ULT and the dread of God was on the cities that {were} around them, so that … not
UST and God caused {the people in} the surrounding towns to be terrified, so that … not

The Hebrew word "Elohim" probably means **God** in this phrase (as it usually does in the Bible); most English versions translate it that way here. Or it could be an adjective that modifies "dread/terror" and means "great/deep dread/terror" (similar to Genesis 23:6, 30:8). See how you translated **dread** in Genesis 9:2. Alternate translation: [and God caused the people in the nearby cities to be afraid, so that] or [and God made the people in the nearby cities so afraid that]

ULT so that they did not pursue after
UST so that they did not attack

Make sure your translation of **they** refers here to the people in the surrounding towns, not Jacob's sons. Alternate translation: [no one attacked] or [none of them came after]

ULT the sons of Jacob
UST Jacob's family

Jacob's sons are mentioned here since they are in focus as the ones who just plundered the city of Shechem; Jacob and the rest of his family were there with his sons and were also in danger. Alternate translation: [them] or [Jacob and his family]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dread	terrified
God	God
Jacob	Jacob's

Genesis 35:6

ULT	UST
Then Jacob came to Luz, which is Bethel, which is in the land of Canaan, he and all the people who were with him.	*He and his family continued traveling in the region of Canaan, and they arrived at the town of Luz, which also has the name Bethel.*

ULT Then Jacob came to Luz
UST continued traveling … and they arrived at {the town of} Luz

Be consistent in this verse with how you spelled **Luz** and **Bethel** in Genesis 28:19. Alternate translation: [Soon Jacob arrived at the town of Luz]

ULT which {is} Bethel
UST which {also has the name} Bethel

See how you translated **which is** in Genesis 23:2, 19. Alternate translation: [which is also called Bethel] or [that is, Bethel] or [which now has the name Bethel]

ULT which {is} in the land of Canaan
UST in the region of Canaan

Since Shechem (verse 4) and Bethel were both in the land or region of Canaan, for some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this location phrase earlier in the verse and say, "Jacob/He and his family continued traveling in the land/region of Canaan and arrived at the town of Luz, which also/now has the name Bethel," Alternate translation: [which is also in Canaan]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT he and all the people who {were} with him
UST He and his family

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase near the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [he and his whole family]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	יַעֲקֹב
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 35:7

ULT	UST
And there he built an altar, and he called the place El Bethel, because there God had revealed himself to him when he was fleeing from the presence of his brother.	*There Jacob built an altar, and he named the place El Bethel, which means "the God of Bethel," because that is where God had first appeared to him when he was running away from his brother.*

ULT **And there he built an altar**
UST There Jacob built an altar

Consider again how you translated **altar** throughout the book of Genesis. See 8:20; 12:7–8; 13:4, 18; 22:9; 26:25; 33:20; 35:1, 3, 7. Alternate translation: [There he built an altar] or [Then he built an altar there]

ULT **and he called the place**
UST and he named the place

Alternate translation: [and he named that place] or [and he named it]

ULT **because there**
UST because that is where

Alternate translation: [because it was at Bethel that]

ULT **God had revealed himself to him**
UST God had {first} appeared to him

Compare how you translated a different Hebrew word that has a similar meaning **appeared** in verses 1 and 9. Alternate translation: [God had first introduced himself to him] or [God had first appeared to Jacob]

ULT **when he was fleeing**
UST when he was running away

See how you translated **fleeing** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [while he was running away]

ULT **from the presence of his brother**
UST from his brother

See how you translated **from the presence of** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [from the anger of his brother]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
altar	altar
called	and he named
El	God
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel
God	God

Genesis 35:8

ULT	UST
Then Deborah, the nurse of Rebekah, died and was buried below Bethel, under the oak tree. So he called its name Allon Bacuth.	*While they were there, Deborah died. She was the servant that had helped raise Jacob's mother Rebekah when she was young. Jacob buried her body at the base of an oak tree, in the valley near the town of Bethel. So he named the place Allon Bacuth, which means "oak tree of mourning."*

ULT **Then Deborah, the nurse of Rebekah, died**
UST While they were there, Deborah died. She was the servant that had helped raise {Jacob's mother} Rebekah when she was young

See how you translated **nurse** in Genesis 24:59.

ULT **and was buried**
UST Jacob buried her body

Alternate translation: [and her body was buried by Jacob in the ground] or [They buried her body in the ground]

ULT **below Bethel**
UST in the valley near {the town of} Bethel

The town of Bethel was built on a hill, so the phrase **below Bethel** means that Deborah was buried near Bethel, in a valley or place that was lower in elevation than the town, and possibly to the south of it. Alternate translation: [in the valley below the town of Bethel] or [at a place south of the town of Bethel]

ULT **under the oak tree**
UST at the base of an oak tree

See how you translated a similar phrase **under the terebinth/oak tree** in verse 4. Many translations translate this phrase the same way in both places **under an oak tree**, even though different Hebrew words are used for the type of tree. Also, for some languages it is more natural to put this phrase before the previous phrase and say, "at the base of an oak tree, below/near the town of Bethel." Alternate translation: [beside an oak tree] or [at the foot of an oak tree]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **So he called its name**
UST So he named the place

So he called its name could mean: (1) that Jacob was the one who named the place. See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 31:38. Alternate translation: [So he named the tree]; or (2) that people in general called the tree or place Allon Bacuth. Alternate translation: [That is why the place is known as]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

> ULT **Allon Bacuth**
> UST Allon Bacuth, which means “oak tree of mourning

If you include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translated **oak tree** in the previous sentence.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rebekah	Rebekah
buried	buried
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel
oak	oak
called	So he named the place

Genesis 35:9

ULT	UST
Then God appeared to Jacob again when he had come from Paddan Aram, and he blessed him,	*Now that Jacob had returned from the region of Paddan Aram, God appeared to him at Bethel again. There God blessed him*

ULT **Then God appeared to Jacob again when he had come from Paddan Aram**
UST Now that Jacob had returned from {the region of} Paddan Aram, God appeared to him {at Bethel} again

Alternate translation: [Now that Jacob had come from the land of Paddan Aram, God appeared to him at Bethel again] or [Now that Jacob had returned to Bethel from the land of Paddan Aram, God appeared to him there again]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and he blessed him**
UST There God blessed him

Alternate translation: [and showed his goodness toward him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Jacob	him
from Paddan	from {the region of} Paddan
Aram	Aram
blessed	blessed

Genesis 35:10

ULT	UST
and God said to him, "Your name is Jacob. Your name will not be called Jacob anymore, but Israel will be your name!" So he called his name Israel.	*and said to him, "Although your name has been Jacob, that will no longer be your name. Rather, you will have the name Israel!" So once again God gave Jacob the name Israel.*

ULT and God said to him
UST and said to him

What God says to Jacob in verses 10–12 is the blessing. So make sure your translation of "blessed" (verse 9) and **said** (verse 10) refers to the same event, not two separate events. See how you translated "blessed … and said" in Genesis 1:28. Alternate translation: [by saying to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Your name {is} Jacob
UST Although your name {has been} Jacob

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like God was telling Jacob something he did not know.

ULT Your name will not be called Jacob anymore
UST that will no longer be your name

Notice that Jacob is referred to by both of his names in this chapter (**Jacob** in verses 11–20, 22–29; **Israel** in verses 10 and 21). You could put that information in a footnote. Also see how you translated this clause in Genesis 32:28, and see the note about Jacob's names there. Alternate translation: [that will no longer be your only name] or [it will no longer be that name]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT but Israel will be your name
UST Rather, you will have the name Israel

Alternate translation: [Rather, your name will also be Israel!] or [Rather, you will also have the name Israel!]

ULT So he called his name Israel
UST So {once again} God gave Jacob the name Israel

This was not the first time God had given Jacob the name Israel (See: Genesis 32:28). To make that clear, you could make "once again" explicit here.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	אֱלֹהִים
Jacob	Jacob
called	that will no longer be your name
Jacob	that will no longer be your name
Israel	Israel
called	So {once again} God gave Jacob the name
Israel	Israel

Genesis 35:11

ULT	UST
Then God said to him, "I am God Almighty. Be fruitful and multiply. A nation and an assembly of peoples will be from you, and kings will come from your loins.	*Then God also said to Jacob, "I am Almighty God. Have many children so that you and your descendants become very numerous. Your descendants will become a community of peoples, and some of your descendants will be kings.*

ULT **Then God said to him**
UST Then God {also} said to Jacob

In verse 11, God continues the blessing that he started in verse 10, perhaps after a pause. Alternate translation: [Then God also said to him] or [Then God also blessed him by saying] or [God continued blessing him by saying to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Be fruitful**
UST Have many children

Consider again how you translated **Be fruitful and multiply** in the book of Genesis. See 1:22, 28; 8:17; 9:1, 7; 35:11. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context.

ULT **and multiply**
UST so that you {and your descendants} become {very} numerous

Alternate translation: [and increase in number] or [so that you and your descendants become very many]

ULT **A nation and an assembly of peoples will be from you**
UST Your descendants will become a community of peoples

Compare how you translated a similar phrase **a multitude of nations** in Genesis 17:4–5 and another similar phrase **a community of peoples** in Genesis 28:3. Alternate translation: [Your descendants will become a large people group. In fact, many ethnic groups will descend from you] or [Your descendants will become many ethnic groups]

ULT **and kings will come from your loins**
UST and some of your descendants will be kings

The phrase **come from your loins** is an idiom that refers to having children, grandchildren and other descendants. Consider whether you have a similar idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [and kings will descend from you]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
God	God
Almighty	Almighty
fruitful	Have many children
multiply	so that you {and your descendants} become {very} numerous
nation	Your descendants will become a community of peoples
and an assembly	Your descendants will become a community of peoples
kings	and
loins	some of your descendants will be kings

Genesis 35:12

ULT	UST
And the land that I gave to Abraham and to Isaac I will give to you, and I will give the land to your descendants after you."	*Besides that, the land that I gave to Abraham and Isaac I also give to you and your descendants who live after you."*

ULT **And the land that I gave to Abraham and to Isaac I will give to you, and I will give the land to your descendants after you**

UST Besides that, the land that I gave to Abraham and Isaac I {also} give to you and your descendants {who live} after you

Alternate translation: [Also, I am giving to you the land that I gave to Abraham and Isaac, and I will also give it to your descendants who live after you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
Abraham	Abraham
Isaac	Isaac
land	אֶת־הָאָרֶץ
and … to your descendants	and your descendants

Genesis 35:13

ULT	UST
Then God went up from him at the place where he spoke with him.	*After God finished talking to Jacob, he left him there and went up to heaven.*

ULT **Then God went up from him at the place where he spoke with him**

UST After God finished talking to Jacob, he left him there and went up to heaven

See how you translated **went up from** in Genesis 17:22. Alternate translation: [Then God left Jacob there where he had been speaking to him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	he left him there

Genesis 35:14

ULT	UST
Then Jacob set up a pillar at the place where he had spoken with him, a pillar of stone, and he poured a drink offering on it, and he poured oil on it.	*Then Jacob stood a large stone up on its end at the place where God had talked to him, to mark the place as special. Then he poured some wine and some olive oil on the stone marker to thank God and dedicate the place to him.*

ULT **at the place where he had spoken with him, a pillar of stone**

UST at the place where God had talked to him, to mark the place as special

Alternate translation: [at the place where God had spoken to him, to mark the place as special] or [as a memorial stone to remember the place where God had talked to him]

ULT **and he poured a drink offering on it, and he poured oil on it**

UST Then he poured some wine and some {olive} oil on the stone marker to thank God and dedicate the place to him

A drink offering was probably wine that Jacob poured on the stone as a sacrifice to God, to worship and thank him. See how you translated "poured oil on …" in Genesis 28:18. Alternate translation: [Then he poured some wine and some olive oil on the stone pillar to thank God and dedicate the place to him]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
pillar	a {large} stone
pillar	to mark the place as special
drink offering	some wine
oil	oil

Genesis 35:15

ULT	UST
And Jacob called the name of the place where God spoke with him Bethel.	*Since God had talked to Jacob at that place, Jacob named it Bethel, which means "God's house."*

> ULT **And Jacob called the name of the place where God spoke with him Bethel**
> UST Since God had talked to Jacob at that place, Jacob named it Bethel, which means "God's house

See how you translated "called the name of that place Bethel" in Genesis 28:19.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
called	Jacob named it
God	God
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel

Genesis 35:16

ULT	UST
Then they set out from Bethel, and there was still a distance of land to come to Ephrath. Then Rachel started giving birth but was having great difficulty while she was giving birth.	*Later Jacob and his family moved on from Bethel and headed for the town of Ephrath. While they were still some distance from there, his wife Rachel went into labor, but she was experiencing great difficulty.*

ULT **Then they set out from Bethel**
UST Later Jacob and his family moved on from Bethel

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Bethel** throughout the book of Genesis and whether you refer to it as a town or a city. See 12:8; 13:3; 28:19; 31:13; 35:1, 3, 7, 15, 16. Alternate translation: [Then they left the town of Bethel] or [Later Jacob and his family moved on from the town of Bethel]

ULT **and there was still a distance of land to come to Ephrath**
UST and headed for {the town of} Ephrath. While they were still some distance from there

The phrase **a distance of land** is very general, but your translation should not make it sound like the distance was too far, because Rachel's grave is about two kilometers (one mile) from Ephrath (Bethlehem). Alternate translation: [and started heading toward the town of Ephrath. But while they were still a distance away from there]

ULT **but was having great difficulty while she was giving birth**
UST but she was experiencing great difficulty

Alternate translation: [but she was having a very difficult time delivering the baby]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bethel	Bethel
Bethel	Bethel
land	some distance from there
Ephrath	Ephrath
Rachel	Rachel
Then … started giving birth	went into labor
while she was giving birth	but she was experiencing great difficulty

Genesis 35:17

ULT	UST
And it happened when she was in hard labor, then the midwife said to her, "Do not be afraid, because this is also a son for you!"	*Then when her labor pain was at its worst, the baby was born and the woman who was helping her deliver exclaimed to her, "Do not despair! You now have another son!"*

ULT **And it happened when she was in hard labor**
UST Then when her labor pain was at its worst

The phrase **hard labor** refers to when childbirth contractions are close together and very painful, often right before a baby is born. Alternate translation: [Then when she was at the most difficult time in her labor] or [Then when her childbirth pains were the most severe]

ULT **then the midwife said to her**
UST the baby was born and the woman who was helping her deliver exclaimed to her

Alternate translation: [the midwife told her] or [the baby was born and the midwife who was helping her deliver exclaimed to her]

ULT **Do not be afraid**
UST Do not despair

Alternate translation: [Do not worry]

ULT **because this {is} also a son for you**
UST You {now} have another son

Alternate translation: [You now have another boy!] or [You just gave birth to another son]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
labor	Then when her labor pain was at its worst
afraid	Do … despair

Genesis 35:18

ULT	UST
Then it happened as her soul was leaving her—for she was dying, then she called his name Ben-oni, but his father called him Benjamin.	*But Rachel was dying, and as her spirit was leaving her body, she named her baby Benoni which means "son of my sorrow". But later, his father Jacob changed his name to Benjamin, which means "son of my right hand."*

ULT **Then it happened as her soul was leaving {her}—for she was dying**
UST But Rachel was dying, and as her spirit was leaving her body

Some translations use an idiom here, for example, "as she was taking her last breath" or "as her life was slipping/fading away," but it is best to translate this in a way that preserves the biblical teaching that at death the soul or spirit leaves the body. Alternate translation: [But Rachel was dying, and as her soul was leaving her body] or [But in fact Rachel was about to die, and just before her soul left her]

ULT **then she called his name Ben-oni**
UST she named her baby Benoni which means "son of my sorrow

The meaning of this name could imply that the child caused Rachel's death. In the Hebrew text this name is two words connected with a dash (**Ben-oni**). Many translations write it that way or as one word **Benoni**, and a few translations write it as "Ben Oni." Any of these spellings is fine.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **but his father**
UST But {later,} his father Jacob

The pronoun **his** refers to Jacob. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **called him Benjamin**
UST changed his name to Benjamin, which means "son of my right hand

The phrase "son of my right hand" is an idiom that means "favored son" or "son of strength." Alternate translation: [named him Benjamin instead]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	she named her baby
Benjamin	Benjamin

Genesis 35:19

ULT	UST
So Rachel died and was buried on the way to Ephrath, which is Bethlehem.	*After Rachel died, they buried her body beside the road to the town of Ephrath, which also has the name Bethlehem.*

ULT **So Rachel died and was buried**
UST After Rachel died, they buried her body

See how you translated **was buried** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [After Rachel died, her body was buried by Jacob] or [After Rachel died, Jacob buried her body]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **on the way to Ephrath**
UST beside the road to {the town of} Ephrath

Alternate translation: [beside the road that goes to the town of Ephrath]

ULT **which {is} Bethlehem**
UST which {also has the name} Bethlehem

See how you translated a similar phrase **which is Bethel** in verse 6. Alternate translation: [which is also called Bethlehem] or [that is, Bethlehem]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
buried	buried
Ephrath	Ephrath
Bethlehem	Bethlehem

Genesis 35:20

ULT	UST
And Jacob set up a pillar over her grave; that is the pillar of Rachel's grave to this day.	*Jacob stood a stone up on its end on her grave to mark where it was. In fact, that same stone still marks Rachel's grave today.*

ULT **And Jacob set up a pillar**
UST Jacob stood a stone up on its end

See how you translated this clause in verse 14. Also consider again how you translated **set up** and **pillar** in the book of Genesis. See 28:18, 22; 31:13, 45, 51, 52; 35:14, 20. Alternate translation: [Jacob set a large stone up on its end]

ULT **over her grave**
UST on her grave to mark where it was

Alternate translation: [over her burial place to show where it was] or [to show where her tomb was] or [to mark the place where he had buried her body]

ULT **to this day**
UST today

The phrase **to this day** refers to the time when the author (Moses) was living. Even in modern times, Rachel's grave is still marked beside the road about eight kilometers (five miles) south of Jerusalem and two kilometers (one mile) north of Bethlehem. Alternate translation: [in the present day] or [now]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
pillar	a stone
grave	grave
pillar	still marks
Rachel	Rachel
grave	grave
day	today

Genesis 35:21

ULT	UST
Then Israel set out and pitched his tents beyond Migdal Eder.	*Then Israel and his family moved on from there and set up their tents on the south side of the tower of Eder.*

ULT Then Israel set out
UST Then Israel {and his family} moved on from there

Make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that **Israel** (verses 21–22) and "Jacob" (verses 20, 22) refer to the same person, not two different people. Alternate translation: [Then Israel that is, Jacob, and his family moved on from there] or [Then Israel and his family started traveling again]

ULT and pitched his tents
UST and set up their tents

Alternate translation: [and put up his tents]

ULT beyond
UST on the south side

This phrase reflects the perspective of Jacob, who was traveling south. Alternate translation: [on the other side of]

ULT Migdal Eder
UST of the tower of Eder

Many translations transliterate **Migdal Eder** (like most other names). Many others translate the meaning of **Migdal** as "the tower" and transliterate "Eder." A few translate the meaning of the entire name as "the Tower of the Flock." This was apparently a place near Bethlehem where sheep were raised (Micah 4:8); shepherds may have watched over their flocks from the tower. Alternate translation: [Eder Tower]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
tents	tents

Genesis 35:22

ULT	UST
And it happened while Israel was living in that land, then Reuben went and lay with Bilhah, the concubine of his father, and Israel heard. Now the sons of Jacob were twelve.	*While they were living in that area, Israel's son Reuben committed adultery with his father's servant-wife Bilhah, and Israel found out about it. With the birth of Benjamin, Jacob now had a total of twelve sons.*

ULT **And it happened while Israel was living**
UST While they were living

Alternate translation: [While Israel and his family were still living] or [During the time that they were living]

ULT **in that land**
UST in that area

Alternate translation: [in that region] or [there]

ULT **then Reuben went and lay with**
UST Israel's son Reuben committed adultery with

Translate this idiom in a way that will not offend or embarrass people, especially when read aloud in public. See how you translated "lain with" in Genesis 26:10.
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and Israel heard**
UST and Israel found out about it

See how you translated **heard** in Genesis 34:5, 7. Alternate translation: [but Israel found out about it] or [and Israel was told by someone about it]

ULT **Now the sons of Jacob were twelve**
UST With the birth of Benjamin, Jacob {now} had {a total of} twelve sons

Alternate translation: [After the birth of Benjamin, Jacob now had a total of twelve sons]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	While they were living
land	in … area
Reuben	Reuben
Bilhah	Bilhah
concubine	s servant-wife
Israel	Israel
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 35:23

ULT	UST
The sons of Leah were Reuben the firstborn of Jacob, then Simeon and Levi and Judah and Issachar and Zebulun.	*The sons he had with Leah were Reuben, who was his oldest child, then Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.*

ULT **The sons of Leah were**

UST The sons {he had} with Leah were

Throughout verses 23–26, many translations have a colon (:) instead of **were**. See what you did in chapter 10. Alternate translation: [The sons he had with his wife Leah were] or [These are the names of the sons he had with his wife Leah:]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah
Reuben	Reuben
firstborn	who was his oldest child
Jacob	who was his oldest child
Simeon	Simeon
Levi	Levi
Judah	Judah
Issachar	Issachar
Zebulun	Zebulun

Genesis 35:24

ULT	UST
The sons of Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin.	*The sons he had with Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin.*

ULT **The sons of Rachel {were} Joseph and Benjamin**
UST The sons {he had} with Rachel {were} Joseph and Benjamin

Alternate translation: [The sons Jacob had with Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin] or [These are the names of the sons that Jacob had with his wife Rachel: Joseph and Benjamin]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
Joseph	Joseph
Benjamin	Benjamin

Genesis 35:26

ULT	UST
And the sons of Zilpah, the maidservant of Leah, were Gad and Asher. Those are the sons of Jacob who were born to him in Paddan Aram.	*And the sons he had with Leah's servant Zilpah were Gad and Asher. All those are the sons Jacob had starting from the time that he lived in the region of Paddan Aram.*

ULT **And the sons of Zilpah, the maidservant of Leah, {were} Gad and Asher**
UST And the sons {he had} with Leah's servant Zilpah were Gad and Asher

Consider again how you translated **maidservant** throughout the book of Genesis. See 12:16, 16:1–3, 5–6, 8; 20:14; 24:35; 25:12; 29:24, 29; 30:4, 7, 9–10, 12, 18, 43; 32:5, 22; 33:1–2, 6; 35:25–26. It may be necessary to translate this word in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Compare that to how you translated a different Hebrew word that has a similar meaning **slave/servant woman**; see 31:33 for a list of where this word occurs in Genesis.

ULT **Those {are} the sons of Jacob who were born to him**
UST All those {are} the sons Jacob had

Alternate translation: [All those were the sons Jacob had]

ULT **in Paddan Aram**
UST starting from the time that he lived in {the region of} Paddan Aram

Jacob started having children during the time he was living with Laban in Paddan Aram, but his last son Benjamin was not born until after they had left there (verse 18). Translate this in a way that allows for that.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Zilpah	Zilpah
maidservant	servant
Leah	Leah
Gad	Gad
Asher	Asher
Jacob	Jacob
were born	the sons Jacob had
in Paddan	starting from the time that he lived in {the region of} Paddan
Aram	Aram

Genesis 35:27

ULT	UST
Then Jacob came to Isaac his father in Mamre, Kiriath Arba, which is Hebron, where Abraham and Isaac had sojourned.	*Then Jacob went home to his father Isaac in the city of Mamre, which also has the name Kiriath Arba or Hebron, where Abraham and Isaac and their families had lived for a while as foreigners.*

ULT **Then Jacob came to Isaac his father**
UST Then Jacob went {home} to his father Isaac

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob came home to his father Isaac who was living] or [Then Jacob continued traveling and came to where his father Isaac was living]

ULT **in Mamre**
UST in the city of Mamre

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Mamre** in Genesis 23:17, 19.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Kiriath Arba, which {is} Hebron**
UST which {also has the name} Kiriath Arba or Hebron

See how you translated Genesis 23:2, which says that Kiriath Arba (where Sarah died) was also known as Hebron. Alternate translation: [which is now called Kiriath Arba, that is, Hebron] or [which is also known as Kiriath Arba or Hebron]

ULT **where Abraham and Isaac had sojourned**
UST where Abraham and Isaac {and their families} had lived for a while as foreigners

Alternate translation: [where Abraham and Isaac and their families had stayed for a while as outsiders] or [That is where Isaac and his family had been staying for a while as foreigners and where his father Abraham had also stayed for a while]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Isaac	Isaac
Hebron	Hebron
Abraham	Abraham
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 35:28

ULT	UST
And the days of Isaac were 180 years.	*Isaac lived to be 180 years old.*

ULT **And the days of Isaac were 180 years**
UST Isaac lived to be 180 years old

See how you translated **the days of** in Genesis 5:4–31 and 11:32.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	lived to be
Isaac	Isaac
years	years
years	years

Genesis 35:29

ULT	UST
Then Isaac exhaled and died, and he was gathered to his people, old and full of days. And Esau and Jacob, his sons, buried him.	*Then, after living a long, full life, he took his last breath and died, and he joined his ancestors who had died before him. Then his sons Esau and Jacob buried his body.*

ULT Then Isaac exhaled and died
UST Then … he took his last breath and died

See how you translated **exhaled** in Genesis 25:8 and 17. Alternate translation: [Then he breathed out for the last time and died] or [Then he took his final breath and died]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT and he was gathered to
UST and he joined

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 25:8 and 17. Alternate translation: [and he was taken by God to be with] or [and God took his spirit to be with]

ULT his people
UST his ancestors who had died before him

Alternate translation: [his relatives who had already died] or [his relatives who had gone before him] or [his deceased relatives]

ULT old and full of days
UST after living a long, full life

For some languages it is more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, “Then, after living a long, full life, he breathed/took his last breath, died and joined his ancestors/ relatives who had died before him.” Alternate translation: [He was very old and had lived a long, full life]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT And Esau and Jacob, his sons, buried him
UST Then his sons Esau and Jacob buried his body

See how you translated “his sons … buried him” in Genesis 25:9.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Isaac	יִצְחָק
days	after living a long, full life
Esau	Esau
Jacob	Jacob
buried	buried

Genesis 36

Genesis 36:1

ULT	UST
And these are the generations of Esau, who is Edom.	*Here is a record about the descendants of Esau, whose name was also Edom.*

ULT **And these {are} the generations of Esau**
UST Here {is} a record about the descendants of Esau

See how you translated **the generations of** in 25:12, 19. Alternate translation: [Now this is the family-line of Esau] or [These are the descendants of Esau] or [Here is the history about the family of Esau]

ULT **who {is} Edom**
UST whose {name} was {also} Edom

The name Edom means “red” and is the nickname that Esau got for trading his birthright to Jacob for some reddish-colored stew (Genesis 25:29–34). The region of Edom and the Edomites were named after Esau, which is probably why this chapter repeatedly mentions that Esau is Edom. Alternate translation: [who was also called Edom] or [that is, Edom]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	a record about the descendants of
Esau	Esau
Edom	Edom

Genesis 36:2

ULT	UST
Esau had taken his wives from the daughters of Canaan: Adah, the daughter of Elon the Hittite, and Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon the Hivite,	*Esau had married two Canaanite women. Their names were Adah, who was the daughter of a Hittite man named Elon, and Oholibamah, whose father was Anah and whose grandfather was a Hivite named Zibeon.*

ULT **Esau had taken his wives from the daughters of Canaan**
UST Esau had married {two} Canaanite women

Only the first two wives mentioned in this chapter were Canaanites; see the comment about Basemath at verse 3. The Canaanites were the descendants of Noah's grandson Canaan (Ham's son) and included the Hittites and Hivites (verse 2; Genesis 10:15–18) and several other people groups. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Esau had chosen two of his wives from among the Canaanite women:] or [Esau had married two women who were descendants of Canaan]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Adah**
UST Their names were Adah

Alternate translation: [whose names were Adah]

ULT **the daughter of Elon the Hittite**
UST who was the daughter of a Hittite {man} named Elon

Make sure your translation does not sound like Elon was the only Hittite. See how you translated **Hittites** in Genesis 27:46. Alternate translation: [whose father was Elon, who was a descendant of Heth] or [the daughter of a man named Elon, who was a member of the Heth people group]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and Oholibamah**
UST and Oholibamah

Notice that the names of Esau's two Canaanite wives here are different from the names of his wives mentioned in Genesis 26:34. It could be that they each had two names, or these may be different wives that he married later. Alternate translation: [and also Oholibamah] or [as well as Oholibamah]

ULT **the daughter of Anah {and} the {grand}daughter of**
UST whose father was Anah and whose grandfather was

Notice that Elon, Anah, and Zibeon are the names of men here, not women.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

> ULT **Zibeon the Hivite**
> UST a Hivite named Zibeon

Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not sound like Zibeon was the only Hivite. Consider again how you translated **Hivites** in the book of Genesis. See 10:17; 34:2; 36:2.
Alternate translation: [Zibeon who was a descendant of Hivi] or [Zibeon who was a member of the Hivi people group]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
Canaan	Canaanite
Hittite	Hittite
Hivite	Hivite

Genesis 36:3

ULT	UST
and Basemath, the daughter of Ishmael and the sister of Nebaioth.	*Esau also married Basemath, who was Ishmael's daughter and Nebaioth's sister.*

ULT and Basemath

UST Esau also married Basemath

Since this Basemath was a daughter of Ishmael (who was a descendant of Noah's son Shem), she was not a Canaanite, in contrast to Esau's first two wives (verse 2). She was also known as Mahalath (Genesis 28:9); you could include some of that information in a footnote. Be consistent here with how you spelled Basemath (a different woman with the same name) in Genesis 26:34.

ULT the daughter of Ishmael {and} the sister of Nebaioth

UST who was Ishmael's daughter and Nebaioth's sister

Since Nebaioth was Ishmael's oldest child (Genesis 25:13), Basemath (Mahalath) was his younger sister, probably from the same mother. Use a kinship term here in your language that fits with those facts. See how you translated **the sister of Nebaioth** in Genesis 28:9. Alternate translation: [whose father was Ishmael and whose older brother was Nebaioth]

Support Reference: Kinship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Ishmael	Ishmael

Genesis 36:4

ULT	UST
And Adah bore Eliphaz for Esau, and Basemath bore Reuel,	*Adah had a son with Esau whom they named Eliphaz, while Basemath had a son named Reuel.*

ULT **And Adah bore Eliphaz for Esau**
UST Adah had {a son} with Esau {whom they named} Eliphaz

Alternate translation: [Adah had a son for Esau whom they named Eliphaz]

ULT **and Basemath bore Reuel**
UST while Basemath had {a son named} Reuel

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to break this long sentence into two or more shorter sentences. Alternate translation: [while his wife Basemath bore a son named Reuel]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bore	had
Esau	Esau
bore	had

Genesis 36:5

ULT	UST
and Oholibamah bore Jeush and Jalam and Korah. Those were the sons of Esau who were born for him in the land of Canaan.	*Oholibamah had sons named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. All those were Esau's sons whom he and his wives had while they lived in the region of Canaan.*

ULT **Jeush and Jalam and Korah**

UST sons named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah

Alternate translation: [sons whom they named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bore	had
Korah	Korah
Esau	Esau
were born	he and his wives had
land	while they lived in the region of
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 36:6

ULT	UST
Then Esau took his wives and his sons and his daughters and all the people of his house, and his livestock and all his animals and all his possessions that he had acquired in the land of Canaan, and he went to a land from the presence of Jacob his brother,	*Later Esau moved away from his brother Jacob. He took with him his wives, his sons, his daughters, and all the other members of his household, as well as his livestock and all the rest of his animals and all the other belongings that he had gotten in the region of Canaan.*

ULT **Then Esau took his wives and his sons and his daughters**
UST Later Esau … He took {with him} his wives, his sons, his daughters

Alternate translation: [Later Esau took his wives, his sons, his daughters]

ULT **and all the people of his house**
UST and all the {other} members of his household

This phrase refers to other relatives (besides Esau's wife and children), as well as servants or slaves who lived with him.

ULT **and his livestock and all his animal{s} and all his possessions**
UST as well as his livestock and all {the rest of} his animals and all the {other} belongings

Alternate translation: [as well as his livestock and all the rest of his animals and all the other possessions]

ULT **that he had acquired in the land of Canaan**
UST that he had gotten in the region of Canaan

See how you translated **acquired** and **land of Canaan** in Genesis 12:5 and 31:18. Alternate translation: [that he had gotten while they lived in the land of Canaan]

ULT **and he went to a land from the presence of Jacob his brother**
UST moved away from his brother Jacob

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause at the beginning of this verse and say, "Then/Later Esau moved to a land that was away from his brother Jacob. He took with him his wives …" Alternate translation: [and he moved to an area that was away from his brother Jacob] or [and he traveled to a different region and settled there, away from where his brother Jacob was living]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
house	his household
livestock	livestock
his animals	the rest of his animals
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
land	moved away from
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 36:7

ULT	UST
because their possessions were too great for them to remain together, and the land of their sojournings was not able to support them because of their livestock.	*The reason he moved away is that he and Jacob both owned so many animals that they could not live together in the same area. The land where they were staying was just not big enough to support them both because they had so many livestock.*

ULT **because**
UST The reason {he moved away} is that

Alternate translation: [He did that because] or [The reason Esau moved away is that]

ULT **their possession{s} were {too} great for them to remain together**
UST he and Jacob {both} owned so many animals that they could not live together in the same area

The phrase **their possessions** is general, but here it refers primarily to livestock. Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to both Esau and Jacob's livestock, not just Esau's. Alternate translation: [he and Jacob both owned so many livestock that they could no longer live near each other] or [they both owned so many livestock that they could not live together in the same area]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **the land of their sojournings**
UST The land where they were staying

See how you translated Genesis 13:6, which is similar in content to this verse. Alternate translation: [The land where they were living]

ULT **and … was not able to support them because of their livestock**
UST was {just} not big enough to support them {both} because they had so many livestock

For some languages it is necessary to switch the order of verses 6 and 7, and say, "After a while, Esau and Jacob had so many animals and other possessions that the land was not able to support both their families. So Esau took his wives …" If you do this in your translation, you should label these verses as "6–7." Alternate translation: [was just not big enough to feed them all because they owned so many animals] or [did not have enough grazing areas or water to support all the livestock that both families owned]
Support Reference: Verse Bridges

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
livestock	livestock

Genesis 36:8

ULT	UST
So Esau settled in the mountains of Seir; Esau, who is Edom.	*That is how Esau and his family ended up living in the Seir Mountains. That is the record about Esau, that is, Edom.*

ULT So Esau settled
UST That is how Esau {and his family} ended up living

Alternate translation: [That is why Esau and his family] or [That is the reason Esau took his family and]

ULT in the mountains of Seir
UST in the Seir Mountains

Esau had already been living in the region of Seir (Genesis 32:3, 33:16). Here he moves to the part of that region that had mountains. To make that clear, you could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [moved to the hill-country in the land of Seir] or [went to live in the Seir Mountains]

ULT Esau
UST That is the record about Esau

Alternate translation: [That is the history about Esau]

ULT who {is} Edom
UST that {is}, Edom

Some translations put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, “So Esau, that is, Edom, moved with his family to the mountains of Seir and settled there.” Alternate translation: [who was also known as Edom] or [who was also called Edom]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
Esau	Esau
Edom	Edom

Genesis 36:9

ULT	UST
Now these are the generations of Esau, the father of the Edomites in the mountains of Seir.	*Here is a more detailed record of the descendants of Esau, who was the ancestor of the Edomites who live in the Seir Mountains.*

ULT **Now these {are} the generations of Esau**
UST Here {is} a {more detailed} record of the descendants of Esau

Consider again how you translated **generations** in the book of Genesis when it is followed by a genealogy (list of names). See 5:1, 10:1, 11:10, 25:12, 36:9. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [What follows is more of the history of Esau] or [This is a more detailed genealogy about the descendants of Esau]

ULT **the father of the Edomites**
UST who was the ancestor of the Edomites

Alternate translation: [who was the ancestor of the Edom people group]

ULT **in the mountains of Seir**
UST who live in the Seir Mountains

Consider again how you translated **mountains** or "hill country" throughout the book of Genesis. See 10:30; 12:8; 14:6, 10; 19:17, 19, 30; 22:2, 14; 31:21, 23, 25, 54; 36:8–9, and see the note about this at 10:30. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [who live in the Seir Hills] or [who live in the hill-country of Seir]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	a {more detailed} record of the descendants of
Esau	Esau
Edomites	Edomites

Genesis 36:10

ULT	UST
These are the names of the sons of Esau: Eliphaz, the son of Esau's wife Adah, and Reuel, the son of Esau's wife Basemath.	*Two of Esau's sons were Eliphaz, whom he had with his wife Adah, and Reuel, whom he had with his wife Basemath.*

ULT **These {are} the names of the sons of Esau**
UST Two of Esau's sons were

Only two of Esau's many sons are listed in verse 10.

ULT **Eliphaz, the son of Esau's wife Adah**
UST Eliphaz, whom he had with his wife Adah

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Eliphaz** and **Adah** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [Eliphaz, who was the son of his wife Adah] or [Eliphaz, whom Esau had with his wife Adah]

ULT **and Reuel, the son of Esau's wife Basemath**
UST and Reuel, whom he had with his wife Basemath

See how you spelled **Basemath** and **Reuel** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and Reuel, who was the son of his wife Basemath] or [and Reuel, whom Esau had with his wife Basemath]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau's
Esau	his wife
Esau	his wife

Genesis 36:11

ULT	UST
And the sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho and Gatam and Kenaz.	*Eliphaz and his wife had sons they named Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz.*

> ULT **And the sons of Eliphaz were**
> UST Eliphaz {and his wife} had sons they named

Alternate translation: [The sons of Eliphaz and his wife were]

Genesis 36:12

ULT	UST
And Timna was a concubine for Esau's son Eliphaz, and she bore Amalek for Eliphaz. Those were the grandsons of Adah, the wife of Esau.	*Eliphaz and his servant-wife Timna had a son they named Amalek. Eliphaz's sons were all grandsons of Esau and his wife Adah.*

ULT **And Timna was a concubine for Esau's son Eliphaz, and she bore Amalek for Eliphaz**
UST Eliphaz and his servant-wife Timna had {a son they named} Amalek

See how you translated **concubine** in Genesis 22:24, 25:6; 35:22. Alternate translation: [Eliphaz also had a servant-wife named Timna, and she had a son with him named Amalek] or [Eliphaz and his concubine Timna had a son they named Amalek]

ULT **Those {were} the grandsons of**
UST Eliphaz's sons {were} {all} grandsons of

Alternate translation: [All those sons of Eliphaz were grandsons of]

ULT **Adah, the wife of Esau**
UST Esau and his wife Adah

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Adah's grandsons were also Esau's grandsons.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
concubine	Eliphaz and his servant-wife Timna
Esau	עֵשָׂו
bore	had
Amalek	Amalek
Esau	Esau

Genesis 36:13

ULT	UST
And these were the sons of Reuel: Nahath and Zerah, Shammah and Mizzah. Those were the grandsons of Basemath, the wife of Esau.	*Reuel's sons were Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah. They were the grandsons of Esau and his wife Basemath.*

ULT **And these {were} the sons of Reuel**
UST Reuel's sons were

Alternate translation: [The sons of Reuel were named] or [Reuel and his wife had these sons:]

ULT **Those were the grandsons of**
UST They were the grandsons of

Alternate translation: [Those sons of Reuel were grandsons of]

ULT **Basemath, the wife of Esau**
UST Esau and his wife Basemath

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Basemath's grandsons were also Esau's grandsons. See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 12.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau

Genesis 36:14

ULT	UST
And these were the sons of Esau's wife Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon: and she bore Jeush and Jalam and Korah for Esau.	*Esau and his wife Oholibamah had sons whom they named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. Oholibamah was the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon.*

ULT **And these were the sons of Esau's wife Oholibamah**
UST Esau and his wife Oholibamah had sons

Alternate translation: [Here are the sons that Esau had with his wife Oholibamah]

ULT **the daughter of Anah {and} the {grand}daughter of Zibeon**
UST Oholibamah was the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon

See how you translated these phrases in verse 2. Alternate translation: [whose father was Anah and whose grandfather was Zibeon:]

ULT **and she bore Jeush and Jalam and Korah for Esau**
UST Esau and his wife … had … whom they named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "Esau and his wife Oholibamah had sons whom they named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. Oholibamah was the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon." or "The sons that Oholibamah had with Esau were Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. She was the daughter of …" Alternate translation: [She had sons whom they named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
bore	Esau and his wife … had
Korah	Korah
Esau	Esau

Genesis 36:15

ULT	UST
These were the chiefs of the sons of Esau. The sons of Eliphaz, the firstborn of Esau, were Chief Teman, Chief Omar, Chief Zepho, Chief Kenaz,	*Here is a record of the descendants of Esau who became clan leaders: The sons of his firstborn son Eliphaz who became clan leaders were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz,*

ULT **These were**
UST Here {is} a record of

Alternate translation: [Here is a list of] or [The following are]

ULT **were Chief Teman, Chief Omar, Chief Zepho, Chief Kenaz**
UST who became … were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz

Alternate translation: [who became chiefs were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz] or [who became tribal leaders were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
chiefs	leaders
Esau	Esau
firstborn	firstborn
Esau	his firstborn son
Chief	who became
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף

Genesis 36:16

ULT	UST
Chief Korah, Chief Gatam, Chief Amalek. Those were the chiefs of Eliphaz in the land of Edom. Those were the grandsons of Adah.	*Korah, Gatam, and Amalek. They were the clan leaders who descended from Eliphaz and lived in the land of Edom. They were all grandsons of Adah and Esau.*

ULT **Chief Korah, Chief Gatam, Chief Amalek**
UST Korah, Gatam, and Amalek

Make sure you are consistent in whether or not you use the title **Chief** in verses 15–16.

ULT **Those {were} the chiefs of Eliphaz in the land of Edom**
UST They {were} the clan leaders {who descended} from Eliphaz {and lived} in the land of Edom

Be consistent with how you spelled **Eliphaz** throughout this chapter; see verses 4, 10–12, 15–16. Alternate translation: [Those are the chiefs who descended from Eliphaz and lived in the region called Edom] or [All those sons of Eliphaz were tribal leaders who lived in the region of Edom]

ULT **Those {were} the grandsons of**
UST They {were} {all} grandsons of

Alternate translation: [They were the grandsons of]

ULT **Adah**
UST Adah and Esau

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Adah's grandsons were also Esau's grandsons. Also, be consistent with how you spelled **Adah** in the book of Genesis. See 4:19–20, 23; 36:2, 4, 10, 12, 16.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Chief	אַלּוּף
Korah	Korah
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף
chiefs	leaders
land	land
Edom	Edom

Genesis 36:17

ULT	UST
And these were the sons of Reuel, the son of Esau: Chief Nahath, Chief Zerah, Chief Shammah, Chief Mizzah. Those were the chiefs of Reuel in the land of Edom. Those were the grandsons of Basemath, the wife of Esau.	*The sons of Esau's son Reuel who became clan leaders were Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah. They were the clan leaders who descended from Reuel and lived in the land of Edom. They were all grandsons of Esau and his wife Basemath.*

ULT **Those {were} the chiefs of Reuel in the land of Edom**
UST They {were} the clan leaders {who descended} from Reuel {and lived} in the land of Edom

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 16. Also be consistent with how you spelled **Reuel** throughout this chapter; see verses 4, 10, 13, 17. Alternate translation: [They were the chiefs who descended from Reuel and lived in the region called Edom] or [All those sons of Reuel were clan leaders who lived in the region of Edom]

ULT **Those {were} the grandsons of**
UST They {were} {all} grandsons of

See how you translated this phrase in verses 12, 13 and 16. Alternate translation: [All those sons of Reuel were grandsons of]

ULT **Basemath, the wife of Esau**
UST Esau and his wife Basemath

See how translated this phrase in verse 13 and a similar phrase in verse 12. Also be consistent with how you spelled **Basemath** in the book of Genesis. See 26:34–35; 36:3–4, 10, 13, 17.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
Chief	leaders
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף
chiefs	leaders
land	land
Edom	Edom
Esau	Esau

Genesis 36:18

ULT	UST
And these were the sons of Oholibamah, the wife of Esau: Chief Jeush, Chief Jalam, Chief Korah. Those were the chiefs of Esau's wife Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah.	*The sons of Esau's wife Oholibamah who became clan leaders were Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. They were the clan leaders who descended from Esau and his wife Oholibamah, who was Anah's daughter.*

ULT **Those {were} the chiefs of Esau's wife Oholibamah**

UST They {were} the clan leaders {who descended} from {Esau and} his wife Oholibamah

Alternate translation: [They were the chiefs who descended from Esau and his wife Oholibamah] or [They were the tribal leaders …]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
Chief	leaders
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף
Korah	Korah
chiefs	leaders
Esau	Esau

Genesis 36:19

ULT	UST
Those were the sons of Esau, and those were their chiefs. He is Edom.	*All those clan leaders were the descendants of Esau, that is, Edom, and each one led his own family group.*

ULT He {is} Edom

UST that {is}, Edom

Some translations put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, “All those chiefs were the descendants of Esau, that is, Edom, and each one led his own family group.” See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Esau was also known as Edom] or [Esau was also called Edom] or [That is the record about Edom]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Esau	Esau
chiefs	and each one led his own family group
Edom	Edom

Genesis 36:20

ULT	UST
These were the sons of Seir the Horite who were inhabiting the land: Lotan and Shobal and Zibeon and Anah	*Here is a record of the descendants of Seir the Horite who were also living in that land: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah,*

ULT **These {were} the sons of Seir the Horite who were inhabiting the land**
UST Here is {a record of} the descendants of Seir the Horite who were {also} living in that land

The name “Horites” is an alternate name for the Hivites (verse 2). Also, this genealogy is mentioned here because Seir was the ancestor of Esau’s Canaanite wife Oholibamah (verse 25) and the Seir mountains where Esau was living (verse 8) were probably named after Seir. You could put some of that information in a footnote. See how you translated **Horites** in Genesis 14:6. Alternate translation: [Here is a list of the descendants of Seir the Horite who were also living in that land:] or [The sons of Seir the Horite who were also living in that land were]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land

Genesis 36:21

ULT	UST
and Dishon and Ezer and Dishan. Those were the chiefs of the Horites, the sons of Seir, in the land of Edom.	*Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. They were the descendants of Seir who became clan leaders over the Horites in the land of Edom.*

ULT Those {were} the chiefs of the Horites, the sons of Seir

UST They were the descendants of Seir {who became} clan leaders over the Horites

See how you translated the names of people groups in verses 2. Alternate translation: [Those descendants of Seir became the chiefs of the Horites] or [They were the descendants of Seir who became tribal leaders for the Horites]

ULT in the land of Edom

UST in the land of Edom

Alternate translation: [who were living in the region of Edom]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
chiefs	leaders
land	land
Edom	Edom

Genesis 36:22

ULT	UST
And the sons of Lotan were Hori and Hemam, and the sister of Lotan was Timna.	*Lotan's sons were Hori and Hemam, and his sister was Timna.*

ULT **And the sons of Lotan were Hori and Hemam**

UST Lotan's sons were Hori and Hemam

Some translations spell the name **Hemam** as "Heman" or "Homam." You could use any of these spellings in your translation.

ULT **and the sister of Lotan {was} Timna**

UST and his sister {was} Timna

Timna became a concubine of Esau's son Eliphaz (verse 12). This genealogy (verses 20–22) also shows that she was the daughter of Chief Seir (since her brother Lotan was the son of Chief Seir). You could put some of that information in a footnote. Also, according to Jewish history outside the Bible, Timna was Lotan's younger sister. If your language has a special term for "younger sister" or "older brother," you could use one of those here. Alternate translation: [and the name of his sister was Timna]

Support Reference: Kinship

Genesis 36:23

ULT	UST
And these were the sons of Shobal: Alvan and Manahath and Ebal, Shepho, and Onam.	*Shobal's sons were Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho and Onam.*

> ULT **Alvan and Manahath and Ebal, Shepho, and Onam**
> UST Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho and Onam

Alternate translation: [Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam]

Genesis 36:24

ULT	UST
And these were the sons of Zibeon: both Aiah and Anah. He is Anah who found the hot springs in the wilderness when he was pasturing the donkeys for Zibeon his father.	*Zibeon's sons were Aiah and Anah. This is the same Anah who discovered some hot springs while he was out in the desert grazing his father's donkeys.*

ULT **He {is} Anah who found**
UST This {is} {the same} Anah who discovered

Alternate translation: [He is the same Anah who found] or [Anah is the one who found]

ULT **the hot springs**
UST some hot springs

The term used here in the Hebrew text occurs only once in the Bible and its meaning is not certain. Most translations have either **hot springs** or "water." Alternate translation: [water]

ULT **in the wilderness when he was pasturing the donkeys for Zibeon his father**
UST while he was {out} in the desert grazing his father's donkeys

See how you translated **pasture** in Genesis 29:7.
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
springs	springs
wilderness	desert
donkeys	donkeys

Genesis 36:26

ULT	UST
And these were the sons of Dishon: Hemdan and Eshban and Ithran and Keran.	*Dishon's sons were Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran.*

> ULT **Hemdan and Eshban and Ithran and Keran**
> UST Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran

The Hebrew name **Keran** can also be spelled "Cheran." Each of these spellings is found in many translations. Be consistent here with how you spelled **Dishon** in verse 21.

Genesis 36:27

ULT	UST
These were the sons of Ezer: Bilhan and Zaavan and Akan.	*Ezer's sons were Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan.*

> ULT **These {were} the sons of Ezer: Bilhan and Zaavan and Akan**
> UST Ezer's sons {were} Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Ezer** in verses 20–21.

Genesis 36:29

ULT	UST
These were the chiefs of the Horites: Chief Lotan, Chief Shobal, Chief Zibeon, Chief Anah,	*The Horites who became clan leaders were Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah,*

ULT **These {were} the chiefs of the Horites**
UST The Horites {who became} clan leaders were

Alternate translation: [The leaders over the Horite clans were] or [The Horites who became chiefs were]

ULT **Chief Lotan, Chief Shobal, Chief Zibeon, Chief Anah**
UST Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Lotan** and **Shobal** in verse 20, how you spelled **Zibeon** in verses 2, 14, 20, 24, 29, and how you spelled **Anah** in verses 2, 14, 18, 20, 24–25, 29.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
chiefs	leaders
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף

Genesis 36:30

ULT	UST
Chief Dishon, Chief Ezer, Chief Dishan. Those were the chiefs of the Horites, according to their clans in the land of Seir.	*Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. Those were the Horite clan leaders. They led their own family groups and lived in the land of Seir.*

ULT **Chief Dishon, Chief Ezer, Chief Dishan**
UST Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Dishon** in verses 21, 25–26, how you spelled **Ezer** in verses 21, 27, 30, and how you spelled **Dishan** in verses 21, 28, 30.

ULT **Those {were} the chiefs of the Horites, according to their clans**
UST Those {were} the Horite clan leaders. They led their own family groups

Be consistent with how you translated **Horites** in the book of Genesis. See 14:6; 36:20–21, 29–30. Alternate translation: [Those were the Horite chiefs. They had their own family groups] or [Those were the tribal leaders for the Horites. They had their own tribes]

ULT **in the land of Seir**
UST and lived in the land of Seir

Be consistent with how you spelled **Seir** in the book of Genesis. See 14:6; 32:3; 33:14, 16; 36:8–9, 20–21, 30. Alternate translation: [and lived in the region of Seir] or [who were living in the region of Seir]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף
chiefs	leaders
land	land

Genesis 36:31

ULT	UST
And these were the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before a king reigned for the sons of Israel.	*Here is a record of the kings who ruled over the people of the land of Edom before the Israelites had their own king.*

ULT **And these {were} the kings**
UST Here {is} {a record of} the kings

See how you translated **kings** in Genesis 17:6 and 35:11. Be sure to distinguish **kings** (verses 31–39) from "chiefs" (verses 15–19, 21, 28, 40–43) in your translation of this chapter.
Alternate translation: [These are the names of the kings] or [This is a history about the kings]

ULT **who reigned in the land of Edom**
UST who ruled over {the people of} the land of Edom

Alternate translation: [who ruled over the people of the region of Edom]

ULT **before a king reigned for the sons of Israel**
UST before the Israelites had their own king

See how you translated **the sons of Israel** in Genesis 32:3. Alternate translation: [before there were any kings ruling over the descendants of Israel] or [during the time period when the Israelites did not yet have their own king]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kings	kings
reigned	ruled
land	land
Edom	Edom
king	king
Israel	Israelites

Genesis 36:32

ULT	UST
And Bela the son of Beor reigned in Edom, and the name of his city was Dinhabah.	*Bela, who was the son of Beor, was the first king to rule over the people of the land of Edom. The name of his hometown that he ruled from was Dinhabah.*

ULT **And Bela the son of Beor reigned in Edom**

UST Bela, {who was} the son of Beor, was the {first} king to rule over {the people of} {the land of} Edom

Alternate translation: [Bela, who was the son of Beor, was the first king to rule over the people of the region of Edom] or [The first king to reign over the people of the region of Edom was Bela, the son of Beor]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and the name of his city {was} Dinhabah**

UST The name of his hometown {that he ruled from} {was} Dinhabah

Dinhabah was probably King Bela's hometown and his capital city that he ruled the land of Edom from. Alternate translation: [His capital city that he ruled from was Dinhabah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
reigned	rule
Edom	Edom

Genesis 36:33

ULT	UST
Then Bela died, and Jobab the son of Zerah from Bozrah reigned in his place.	*When King Bela died, Jobab, who was the son of Zerah, replaced him as king and ruled from his hometown of Bozrah.*

ULT **and Jobab the son of Zerah from Bozrah reigned in his place**
UST Jobab, {who was} the son of Zerah, replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown of} Bozrah

The phrase **from Bozrah** probably means this was Jobab's hometown, which he ruled from, much like the meaning of "his city" in verses 32, 35, and 39. Alternate translation: [Jobab, who was the son of Zerah, succeeded Bela as king and ruled from his hometown of Bozrah]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
reigned	replaced him as king

Genesis 36:34

ULT	UST
Then Jobab died, and Husham from the land of the Temanites reigned in his place.	*When King Jobab died, Husham replaced him as king and ruled from his hometown, which was in the land where the Temanites lived.*

ULT and Husham from the land of the Temanites reigned in his place

UST Husham replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown, which was in} the land where the Temanites lived

King Husham may have been a descendant of Esau's grandson Teman (verse 11). You could put that information in a footnote. Also compare how you translated verse 33. Alternate translation: [Husham succeeded Jobab as king and reigned from his hometown, which was in the region where the Temanites lived]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
reigned	replaced him as king

Genesis 36:35

ULT	UST
Then Husham died, and Hadad the son of Bedad reigned in his place, who struck the Midianites in the field of Moab. And the name of his city was Avith.	*When King Husham died, Hadad, who was the son of Bedad, replaced him as king. King Hadad is the one who defeated the Midianites in battle in the land of Moab. The name of his hometown that he ruled from was Avith.*

ULT **and … reigned in his place**
UST replaced him as king

Alternate translation: [succeeded him as king]

ULT **who struck the Midianites**
UST King Hadad is the one who defeated the Midianites in battle

See how you translated the idiom **struck** in Genesis 14:5, 7. Alternate translation: [King Hadad is the one who defeated the Midianites in war]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in the field of Moab**
UST in the land of Moab

Moab was a large region located to the east of the Dead Sea. This battle probably took place in the countryside or an unpopulated area (a **field**) within this region. Alternate translation: [in a field in the region of Moab] or [in the country of Moab]

ULT **And the name of his city {was} Avith**
UST The name of his hometown {that he ruled from} {was} Avith

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 32. Alternate translation: [His capital city that he ruled from was Avith]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
reigned	replaced him as king
Midianites	Midianites
Moab	Moab

Genesis 36:36

ULT	UST
Then Hadad died, and Samlah from Masrekah reigned in his place.	*When King Hadad died, Samlah replaced him as king and ruled from his hometown of Masrekah.*

ULT **and Samlah from Masrekah reigned in his place**

UST Samlah replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown of} Masrekah

Alternate translation: [Samlah succeeded Hadad as king and ruled from his hometown of Masrekah]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
reigned	replaced him as king

Genesis 36:37

ULT	UST
Then Samlah died, and Shaul from Rehoboth on the river reigned in his place.	*When King Samlah died, Shaul replaced him as king and ruled from his hometown of Rehoboth beside the Euphrates River.*

ULT and Shaul from Rehoboth {on} the river reigned in his place

UST Shaul replaced him as king {and ruled} from {his hometown of} Rehoboth beside the {Euphrates} River

See how you translated similar sentences in verses 33, 34 and 36. Alternate translation: [Shaul succeeded him as king and ruled from his hometown of Rehoboth, which was beside the Euphrates River]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Shaul	Shaul
reigned	replaced him as king

Genesis 36:38

ULT	UST
Then Shaul died, and Baal-Hanan the son of Acbor reigned in his place.	*When King Shaul died, Baal-Hanan, who was the son of Acbor, replaced him as king.*

ULT **Then Shaul died, and Baal-Hanan the son of Acbor reigned in his place**

UST When {King} Shaul died, Baal-Hanan, {who was} the son of Acbor, replaced him as king

Alternate translation: [When King Shaul died, Baal-Hanan, who was the son of Acbor, took his place as king] or […succeeded him as king]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Shaul	King Shaul
reigned	replaced him as king

Genesis 36:39

ULT	UST
Then Baal-Hanan the son of Acbor died, and Hadar reigned in his place, and the name of his city was Pau. And the name of his wife was Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred and the granddaughter of Me-Zahab.	*When King Baal-Hanan died, Hadar replaced him as king, and the name of his hometown that he ruled from was Pau. His wife's name was Mehetabel, who was the daughter of Matred and the granddaughter of Me-Zahab.*

ULT **Then Baal-Hanan the son of Acbor died, and Hadar reigned**
UST When {King} Baal-Hanan died, Hadar replaced him as king

Most translations follow the Hebrew text and have **Hadar** here. Some translations (and ancient versions such as SP, LXX, Syriac, and Vulgate) have "Hadad" here instead, in order to spell this name the same way it is spelled in 1 Chronicles 1:50-51. However, that could cause confusion, because "Hadad" is also the name of a different king in verses 35–36 above.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and … reigned in his place**
UST replaced him as king

Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 33–39. Alternate translation: [took his place as king] or [succeeded him as king]

ULT **and the name of his city {was} Pau**
UST and the name of his hometown {that he ruled from} {was} Pau

See how you translated a similar clause in verses 32 and 35. Alternate translation: [His capital city that he ruled from was Pau]

ULT **the daughter of Matred {and} the granddaughter of Me-Zahab**
UST who was the daughter of Matred {and} the granddaughter of Me-Zahab

Notice that **Matred** and **Me-Zahab** are the names of men. See how you translated similar phrases in verses 2 and 14. Alternate translation: [whose father was Matred and whose grandfather was Me-Zahab]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
reigned	replaced him as king

Genesis 36:40

ULT	UST
And these are the names of the chiefs of Esau, according to their clans, according to their places, by their names: Chief Timna, Chief Alvah, Chief Jetheth,	*Here are the names of more of the clan leaders who descended from Esau; each clan leader led his own family group and ruled his own region that was named after him: Timna, Alvah, Jetheth,*

ULT **And these {are} the names of**
UST Here {are} the names of

Alternate translation: [The following list of names includes]

ULT **the chiefs of Esau, according to their clans, according to their places, by their names**
UST more of the clan leaders {who descended} from Esau; {each clan leader led} his own family group and ruled his own region that was named after him

Notice that the chiefs listed below are different from those listed in the verses above, except for Kenaz and Teman (verse 15). Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to break up this long sentence into two shorter sentences. Alternate translation: [more of the chiefs who descended from Esau. These chiefs led their own family groups in their own territories, which were named after them:] or [more of the descendants of Esau who were tribal leaders; the tribes and the regions where they lived were named after them:]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And these {are} the names of the chiefs of Esau, according to their clans, according to their places, by their names: Chief Timna, Chief Alvah, Chief Jetheth**
UST Here {are} the names of {more of} the clan leaders {who descended} from Esau; {each clan leader led} his own family group and ruled his own region that was named after him: Timna, Alvah, Jetheth

Opinions differ about translation of this verse: (1) Most translations treat all the names in verses 40–43 as the names of chiefs (as in the ULT and UST of these verses). (2) However, some scholars think that all the names in verses 40–43 are the names of regions or clans. Alternate translation: [These were the names of the clans that descended from Esau. Each clan lived in the land of Edom in its own region that was named after that clan. The names of the clans of the Edomites were TImna, Alvah, Jetheth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
chiefs	leaders
Esau	Esau
clans	clan
Chief	Timna
Chief	Alvah
Chief	Jetheth

Genesis 36:41

ULT	UST
Chief Oholibamah, Chief Elah, Chief Pinon,	*Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon,*

> ULT **Chief Oholibamah, Chief Elah, Chief Pinon**
> UST Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon

Make sure that the way you translate verses 41–43 fits with the interpretation you followed in verse 40.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף

Genesis 36:43

ULT	UST
Chief Magdiel, Chief Iram. Those were the chiefs of Edom, according to their dwellings in the land of their possession. That was Esau, the father of the Edomites.	*Magdiel, and Iram. All of those were clan leaders over the Edomites; they all led their own settlements in the land that they controlled. This concludes the record about Esau, who was the ancestor of all the Edomites.*

ULT **Chief Magdiel, Chief Iram**
UST Magdiel, {and} Iram

Make sure you are consistent in whether or not you use the title **Chief** in verses 40–43.

ULT **Those {were} the chiefs of**
UST All of those {were} clan leaders over

Consider again how you translated **chief** throughout this chapter; see verses 15–19, 21, 29–30, 40–43. Alternate translation: [Those were the names of more of the chiefs over] or [All of those were chiefs over] or [Those were more of the clan leaders of]

ULT **Edom**
UST the Edomites

Alternate translation: [the Edom people group;]

ULT **according to their dwellings**
UST they {all} led their own settlements

Alternate translation: [each of them led their own tribes in the places where they lived]

ULT **in the land of their possession**
UST in the land that they controlled

Alternate translation: [in the land that they owned]

ULT **That {was} Esau**
UST This {concludes the record about} Esau

Alternate translation: [That was the record about Esau] or [This concludes the history about Esau]

ULT **the father of the Edomites**
UST who was the ancestor of {all} the Edomites

See how you translated this phrase in verse 9. Also compare how you translated the names of other people groups in this chapter, including “Hittite” and “Hivite” in verse 2; **Edomites** in verse 9; “Horite/Horites” in verses 20, 21, 29, 30; “Temanites” in verse 34; and “Midianites” in verse 35. Alternate translation: [who was the ancestor of the Edom people group]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Chief	אַלּוּף
Chief	אַלּוּף
chiefs	leaders
Edom	Edomites
land	land
possession	that they controlled
Esau	Esau
Edomites	Edomites

Genesis 37

Genesis 37:1

ULT	UST
And Jacob lived in the land of his father's sojournings, in the land of Canaan.	*Jacob continued to live in the region of Canaan where his father Isaac had lived for a while as a foreigner.*

ULT **And Jacob lived**
UST Jacob continued to live

Chapter 37 continues the history about Jacob that left off at the end of chapter 35. Begin this chapter in a way that is natural in your language. Make sure the way you translate **lived** allows for the fact that Jacob was already living in Canaan and had settled near the city of Hebron, where his father and grandfather had lived previously (Genesis 35:27). Alternate translation: [Now Jacob was still living]

ULT **in the land of his father's sojournings, in the land of Canaan**
UST in the region of Canaan where his father {Isaac} had lived for a while as a foreigner

See how you translated **sojourned** in Genesis 35:27 and **the land of Canaan** in Genesis 35:6. Alternate translation: [in the land of Canaan where his father Isaac had lived for a while as a outsider]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
land	where
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 37:2

ULT	UST
These are the generations of Jacob: Joseph, a son of seventeen years, was shepherding the flocks with his brothers, and he was a young man with the sons of Bilhah and the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives, and Joseph brought a bad report about them to their father.	*Here is more of the record about Jacob and his family: One day his seventeen-year-old son Joseph was taking care of the family's flocks of sheep and goats. Joseph was helping his brothers who were the sons of his father's servant wives Bilhah and Zilpah, and he told their father about the bad things they were doing.*

ULT **These {are} the generations of Jacob**
UST Here is {more of} the record about Jacob and his family

Consider again how you translated **These are the generations of** in the book of Genesis. See 2:4; 6:9; 11:27; 25:19; 36:1; 37:2, where what follows is a narrative or history of events. Compare that to Genesis 5:1; 10:1; 11:10; 25:12; 36:9, where what follows is more of a genealogy (list of names). It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [This is more of the history about Jacob and his family:] or [What follows tells more about Jacob and his family:]

ULT **Joseph, a son of seventeen years**
UST One day {his} seventeen-year-old son Joseph

This verse may be referring to a single incident or it may be referring to what happened regularly.

ULT **was shepherding the flocks**
UST was taking care of the {family's} flocks of sheep and goats

See how you translated **flocks** in Genesis 4:2.

ULT **with his brothers, and he {was} a young man with**
UST Joseph was helping his brothers who were

As the youngest of these brothers, Joseph was their helper as they took care of their father's flocks. Alternate translation: [as an helper for his brothers who were]

ULT **the sons of Bilhah and the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives**
UST the sons of his father's {servant} wives Bilhah and Zilpah

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Bilhah** in Genesis 29:29 and **Zilpah** in 29:24.

ULT **and Joseph brought a bad report about them to their father**
UST and he told their father about the bad things they were doing

The Hebrew text does not specify what Joseph's brothers had done wrong, so neither should your translation. Also, make sure your translation of **their father** does not sound like the sons of Bilhah and Zilpah had a different father than Joseph had. Alternate translation: [and he told his father about the bad things they were doing] or [and he gave bad reports to his father about them]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	more of the record about Jacob and his family
Jacob	Jacob
Joseph	Joseph
years	his seventeen-year-old
shepherding	was taking care of
flocks	flocks
Bilhah	Bilhah
Zilpah	Zilpah
Joseph	יוֹסֵף
bad	bad
report	about the … things they were doing

Genesis 37:3

ULT	UST
Now Israel loved Joseph more than all of his sons because he was a son of his old age. So he made a multicolored tunic for him.	*Now Israel, that is, Jacob, loved Joseph more than any of his other sons because he was born to him when he was old. So he made a special robe for Joseph that had many colors.*

ULT **Now Israel**
UST Now Israel, that is, Jacob

This verse introduces background information for the events that happen next. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that Jacob (verse 1) and Israel (verse 3) refer to the same person, not two separate people. For a note about this, see 35:10. Alternate translation: [Now Jacob, whose other name was Israel]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **because he {was} a son of his old age**
UST because he was born to him when he was old

In certain contexts, biblical authors and characters use the common expression of their culture **son of** to indicate that a person has the characteristic of something. In this case, Joseph has the characteristic of being a son born to Israel late in life, in his old age. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an equivalent expression from your language or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [because Joseph was born to Israel in his later years]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **So he made a multicolored tunic for him**
UST So he made a {special} robe for Joseph that had many colors

The meaning of the Hebrew text translated as **multicolored tunic** is not certain here. Many translations (including the Greek Septuagint and Latin Vulgate) say that the tunic or robe was **multicolored** or "colorful." This **tunic** was probably full-length to the ankles and had long sleeves that reached to the hands. Alternate translation: [So he made a beautiful tunic for him that had many colors] or [So he made a special colorful robe for him]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
loved	loved
Joseph	Joseph
tunic	a {special} robe

Genesis 37:4

ULT	UST
And his brothers saw that their father loved him more than all of his brothers, so they hated him and were not able to speak to him peaceably.	*When Joseph's brothers realized that their father loved Joseph more than the rest of them, they hated him so much that they would not talk to him in a friendly manner.*

ULT **so they hated him and were not able to speak to him peaceably**
UST they hated him so much that they would not talk to him in a friendly manner

Make sure it is clear here in your translation that the brothers hated Joseph, not their father. Alternate translation: [they despised Joseph so much that they could not speak to him kindly] or [… they refused to speak to him in a kind way] or [… they always spoke unkindly to him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
loved	loved
peaceably	in a friendly manner

Genesis 37:5

ULT	UST
Then Joseph dreamed a dream and told it to his brothers, and they continued to hate him even more.	*One night Joseph had a dream, and he told his brothers about it. That made them hate him even more than before.*

ULT Then Joseph dreamed a dream

UST One night Joseph had a dream

Alternate translation: [Then one night Joseph had a dream]

ULT and told it to his brothers

UST and he told his brothers about it

Alternate translation: [The next day he told his brothers what he dreamed]

ULT and they continued to hate him even more

UST That made them hate him even more than before

Alternate translation: [and they became even more hateful toward him] or [That made them despise him even more than before]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
dreamed	One night … had
dream	dream

Genesis 37:6

ULT	UST
And he said to them, “Please hear this dream that I dreamed:	*This is what he told them, “Please listen to this dream that I had:*

ULT **And he said to them**
UST This is what he told them

Alternate translation: [He told them]

ULT **Please hear this dream that I dreamed**
UST Please listen to this dream that I had

Alternate translation: [Please listen to me tell about this dream that I had:] or [I had a dream that I want to tell you about. Please listen to me tell it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dream	dream
dreamed	I had

Genesis 37:7

ULT	UST
And behold, we were binding sheaves in the middle of a field, and behold, my sheaf got up and also stood upright, and behold, your sheaves gathered around and bowed down to my sheaf."	*In it I saw us working out in a field cutting and tying bundles of grain stalks. Then suddenly the bundle that I had made stood up straight. Then I saw that the bundles you had made stood around my bundle and bowed down to my bundle to show respect."*

ULT **And behold**
UST In it I saw

Alternate translation: [In my dream I saw]

ULT **we were binding sheaves in the middle of a field**
UST us {working} out in a field {cutting and} tying bundles of grain stalks

A sheaf of grain is a bunch of grain stalks that have been cut and tied together in a bundle, with the heads of grain at the top. Wheat and barley were the grains that were common in this region at that time, not corn or oats. Alternate translation: [that we all were out in the middle of a field cutting stalks of grain and tying the stalks into sheaves] or [us working together out in a field cutting and tying sheaves of wheat stalks]

ULT **my sheaf**
UST the bundle that I had made

Alternate translation: [my sheaf of grain] or [the sheaf that I had made]

ULT **got up and also stood upright**
UST stood up straight

Alternate translation: [stood up on its end]

ULT **and behold**
UST Then suddenly

Alternate translation: [Then behold]

ULT **your sheaves**
UST the bundles you had made

Alternate translation: [your sheaves of grain] or [the bundles that you had made]

ULT **gathered around**
UST stood around my bundle

Alternate translation: [stood around my sheaf] or [stood in a circle around my bundle]

> ULT **and bowed down to my sheaf**
> UST and bowed down to my bundle to show respect

Alternate translation: [and bowed down to the ground to my sheaf to show submission] or [and bowed respectfully to my sheaf] or [and bowed down in front of it in respect]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
binding	working … cutting and tying
bowed down	bowed down

Genesis 37:8

ULT	UST
Then his brothers said to him, "Will you really reign over us? Will you really rule over us?" And they continued to hate him even more because of his dreams and because of his words.	*His brothers responded to him, "Do you really expect to be our king? You will never rule over us!" So they hated him even more intensely than they did before because of what he had said to them about his dreams.*

ULT **Then his brothers said to him**
UST His brothers responded to him

Alternate translation: [His brothers retorted angrily]

ULT **Will … really**
UST Do … really expect to

The brothers use two rhetorical questions in this verse to express their disagreement with Joseph and to emphasize that they are not happy with him.
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **you … reign over us**
UST you … be our king

For languages that mark inclusive and exclusive pronouns, **us** excludes Joseph in this sentence. Alternate translation: [reign over us!]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **And they continued to hate him even more**
UST So they hated him even more {intensely} than they did before

Consider again how you translated **hate** in the book of Genesis. See Genesis 24:60; 26:27; 29:31, 33; 37:4–5, 8. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [So they despised him even more strongly than they did before]

ULT **because of his dreams and because of his words**
UST because of what he had said {to them} about his dreams

For some languages, it is more natural to switch the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "So because of what he/Joseph had told them about his dreams, his brothers hated him even more strongly/intensely than they did before." Alternate translation: [for his dreams and for what he told them about the dreams]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
reign	you … be our king
you … rule	You will never rule
dreams	dreams

Genesis 37:9

ULT	UST
Then he dreamed yet another dream, and he related it to his brothers. And he said, "Behold, I dreamed another dream, and behold, the sun and the moon and eleven stars were bowing down to me."	*Then Joseph had another dream that he also told to his brothers. He said, "Listen, I just had another dream, and in it I saw that the sun, the moon, and eleven stars bowed down to the ground before me to show respect."*

ULT **Then he dreamed yet another dream, and he related it to his brothers**
UST Then Joseph had another dream that he {also} told to his brothers

Alternate translation: [Sometime after that, Joseph told his brothers about another dream that he had]

ULT **And he said**
UST He said

Alternate translation: [Here is what he said:]

ULT **and behold**
UST and {in it} I saw that

Alternate translation: [and amazingly in this dream]

ULT **were bowing down**
UST bowed down to the ground … to show respect

See how you translated "bowed down" in verse 7. Alternate translation: [were bowing down to the ground]

ULT **to me**
UST before me

Bowing down to someone was a way of showing respect and honor to that person. If that is not clear in your culture, you could make that information explicit in your translation or in a footnote. If it is understood, you can leave it implied (as the Hebrew text does). Alternate translation: [to me to show respect] or [in front of me to honor me]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dreamed	dream
dream	dream
dreamed	I {just} had
dream	dream
bowing down	bowed down

Genesis 37:10

ULT	UST
And he related it to his father and to his brothers, but his father rebuked him and said to him, "What is this dream that you dreamed? Will your mother and I and your brothers really come to bow down to the ground to you?"	*Later Joseph told the same dream to both his father and his brothers, but his father scolded him by saying, "That is a strange dream that you had! Do you really expect your mother and me and your brothers to bow down before you?"*

ULT **And he related it to his father and to his brothers**
UST Later Joseph told {the same dream} to {both} his father and his brothers

This could refer to: (1) a second time that Joseph told his dream. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph told the same dream to both his father and his brother]; or (2) the same time that he told this dream to his brothers in verse 9. Alternate translation: [When Joseph told the dream to his father and his brothers]

ULT **but his father rebuked him and said to him**
UST but his father scolded him by saying

Your translation of this quote margin should not sound like two separate events; the verbs **rebuked** and **said** refer to the same event. Alternate translation: [but his father rebuked him by saying]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **What {is} this dream that you dreamed**
UST That {is} a strange dream that you had

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to show that he is not happy about Joseph's dream. Decide the best way to translate this in your language. Alternate translation: [Your dream is ridiculous]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Will your mother and I and your brothers really**
UST Do you really expect your mother and me and your brothers

See how you translated a similar rhetorical question in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Your mother and I and your brothers will never]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **come to bow down to the ground**
UST Do you really expect … to bow down

See how you translated **bow down** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [come to you and bow down to the ground]

ULT **to you**
UST before you

Alternate translation: [in front of you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rebuked	but … scolded
dream	dream
dreamed	you had
bow down	bow down
to the ground	אָרְצָה

Genesis 37:11

ULT	UST
And his brothers envied him, but his father kept the matter in mind.	*So Joseph's brothers were jealous of him, but his father continued to think about what it all could mean.*

ULT **And his brothers envied him**
UST So Joseph's brothers were jealous of him

See how you translated **envied** in Genesis 26:14; 30:1.

ULT **but his father kept the matter in mind**
UST but his father continued to think about what it all could mean

Alternate translation: [but his father continued to wonder about what it all could mean] or [but his father kept thinking about the dreams and wondered what they meant]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kept … in mind	continued to think about what it all could mean

Genesis 37:12

ULT	UST
Then his brothers went to shepherd the flocks of their father near Shechem.	*Sometime after that, Joseph's brothers took their father's flocks of sheep and goats to graze in the fields near the city of Shechem.*

ULT **near Shechem**
UST near {the city of} Shechem

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Shechem** in Genesis 35:4.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
shepherd	to graze in the fields
flock	flock
Shechem	Shechem

Genesis 37:13

ULT	UST
And Israel said to Joseph, "Are not your brothers shepherding near Shechem? Come and I will send you to them." And he said to him, "Behold me."	*Then one day Israel said to Joseph, "As you know, your brothers are tending our flocks near the city of Shechem. Get ready so that I can send you to them." Joseph responded, "I am ready to go."*

ULT **And Israel said to Joseph**
UST Then {one day} Israel said to Joseph

Alternate translation: [So one day Israel said to Joseph]

ULT **Are not your brothers shepherding**
UST As you know, your brothers are tending our flocks

Israel uses a rhetorical question to remind Joseph of something he already knows and to introduce what he wants Joseph to do. Decide the best way to communicate this in your language. Alternate translation: [As you know, your brothers are pasturing our flocks]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **near Shechem**
UST near {the city of} Shechem

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12.

ULT **And he said to him**
UST Joseph responded

Alternate translation: [He responded] or [He answered him]

ULT **Behold me**
UST I am ready to go

Alternate translation: [Yes, sir]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
Joseph	Joseph
shepherding	are tending our flocks
Shechem	Shechem

Genesis 37:14

ULT	UST
Then he said to him, "Please go and see the well-being of your brothers and the well-being of the flocks, and bring me word." So he sent him from the valley of Hebron, and he went to Shechem.	*Then Israel told him, "Please go and check on how your brothers and the flocks are doing. Then report back to me what you find out." So Israel sent him on his way from their home in the valley near the city of Hebron, and Joseph traveled to the city of Shechem.*

ULT **Then he said to him**
UST Then Israel told him

Alternate translation: [Then Israel told Joseph]

ULT **Please go and see**
UST Please go and check on

Alternate translation: [Please go find out]

ULT **the well-being of your brothers and the well-being of the flocks**
UST how your brothers and the flock{s} are doing

Alternate translation: [whether or not things are going well for your brothers and the flocks]

ULT **and bring me word**
UST Then report back to me what you find out

Alternate translation: [Then come tell me how they are doing]

ULT **So he sent him**
UST So Israel sent him on his way

Alternate translation: [So Israel sent Joseph on his way]

ULT **from the valley of Hebron**
UST from {their home in} the valley near {the city of} Hebron

Be consistent in how you spell **Hebron** throughout the book of Genesis. See 13:18; 23:2, 19; 35:27; 37:14.

ULT **and he went to Shechem**
UST and Joseph traveled to {the city of} Shechem

The trip from the city of Hebron to the city of Shechem was about 100 kilometers (60 miles).
Alternate translation: [and he went to the city of Shechem]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the well-being of	how your brothers and the flock{s} are doing
the well-being of	how your brothers and the flock{s} are doing
flocks	flock
Hebron	Hebron
Shechem	Shechem

Genesis 37:15

ULT	UST
And a man found him, and behold, he was wandering around in the fields. So the man asked him, saying, "What are you looking for?"	*When he arrived there, a man saw him searching around in the nearby fields and asked him, "What are you looking for?"*

ULT **And a man found him, and behold**
UST When he arrived there, a man saw him

In this context **found** means the man happened to meet Joseph as Joseph was walking around looking for his brothers; the man was not intentionally looking for him. Also, for some languages it is clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "He started wandering around searching in the fields near there, where/and he met a man who asked …" or "As he was wandering around searching in the fields near there, he met a man who asked …" Alternate translation: [There he met a man who had seen him]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **he was wandering around in the fields. So the man asked him, saying**
UST searching around in the {nearby} fields and asked him

The word **fields** refers here to large, open places with no fences and few trees, where sheep and goats could easily graze. Alternate translation: [searching around in the nearby countryside and asked him]

ULT **What are you looking for**
UST What are you looking for

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or an indirect quote here in your language. Alternate translation: [Who are you looking for?] or [what he was looking for]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
looking for	looking for

Genesis 37:16

ULT	UST
And he said, “I am looking for my brothers. Please tell me where they are shepherding.”	*He replied, “I am looking for my brothers. Can you tell me where they are tending their flocks?”*

ULT **Please tell me**
UST Can you tell me

Alternate translation: [Do you know]

ULT **where they are shepherding**
UST where they are tending their flocks

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause earlier in the verse and say, “I am looking for my brothers who were somewhere around here shepherding/pasturing/tending their flocks. Do you know where they are now?” Alternate translation: [where they are pasturing their flocks?]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
looking for	looking for
tell	tell
shepherding	are tending their flocks

Genesis 37:17

ULT	UST
Then the man said, “They set out from here. For I heard them say, ‘Let us go to Dothan.’” Then Joseph went after his brothers and found them at Dothan.	*The man answered, “They were here and then left, but I overheard them say that they were going to the town of Dothan.” So Joseph followed his brothers and caught up with them near the town of Dothan.*

ULT **Then the man said**
UST The man answered

Alternate translation: [The man answered him] or [The man replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **They set out from here**
UST They were here and then left

Alternate translation: [I saw them, but then they left from here]

ULT **For I heard them say**
UST but I overheard them say that

Alternate translation: [In fact, I heard them say to each other] or [but I overheard them say to each other]

ULT **Let us go to Dothan**
UST they were going to {the town of} Dothan

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your translation.
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Then Joseph went after his brothers and found them at Dothan**
UST So Joseph followed his brothers and caught up with them near {the town of} Dothan

Alternate translation: [So Joseph went to the town of Dothan and found his brothers near there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 37:18

ULT	UST
But they saw him from a distance, and before he came near to them, then they conspired against him to kill him.	*But they saw him while he was still some distance away, and before he reached them, they made plans to kill him.*

ULT **But they saw him from a distance**
UST But they saw him while he was still some distance away

Alternate translation: [While he was still some distance away from them, they saw him]

ULT **and before he came near to them**
UST and before he reached them

Alternate translation: [and before he got close to where they were]

ULT **then they conspired against him to kill him**
UST they made plans to kill him

Alternate translation: [they plotted to kill him]

Genesis 37:19

ULT	UST
And they said each to his brother, "Behold, that master of dreams is coming!	*They said to each other about him, "Look, here comes that expert dreamer!*

ULT **Behold, that master of dreams is coming**

UST Look, here comes that expert dreamer

In this figure of speech, the brothers actually means to communicate the opposite of the literal meaning of his words. If a speaker of your language would not do that, you could translate the meaning plainly. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph's brothers are being sarcastic and disrespectful here as they make fun of Joseph. Alternate translation: [Look here comes that master dreamer!]

Support Reference: Irony

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
master	expert
dreams	dreamer

Genesis 37:20

ULT	UST
So now, come and let us kill him and throw him into one of the cisterns. Then we will say an evil animal devoured him, and we will see what his dreams become!"	*Come on, let's kill him and throw his body into one of the pits here. Then we can tell people that a vicious animal ate him up, and we will watch if his dreams come true!"*

ULT **Then we will say an evil animal**
UST Then we can tell {people} that a vicious animal

Alternate translation: [Then we will tell people that a ferocious wild animal]

ULT **devoured him**
UST ate him up

Alternate translation: [has eaten him] or [ate him down]

ULT **and we will see**
UST and we will watch

Alternate translation: [and everyone will see]

ULT **what his dreams become**
UST if his dreams come true

Joseph's brothers are speaking here in a disdainful way, continuing to mock him. Alternate translation: [what will become of his dreams!] or [what happens to his great dreams!] or [if his great dreams come true!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kill	kill
and throw him	and throw his body
cisterns	the pits here
evil	vicious
dreams	dreams

Genesis 37:21

ULT	UST
But Reuben heard, and he rescued him from their hands and said, "Let us not strike his life."	*But Reuben heard their plan, so he tried to rescue Joseph from them by urging them, "We should not kill him."*

ULT But Reuben heard
UST But Reuben heard their plan

Alternate translation: [When Reuben heard what they were planning]

ULT and he rescued him from their hands
UST so he {tried to} rescue Joseph from them

The phrase **their hands** refers to Joseph's brothers and their power to harm him. Consider whether you have a similar figure of speech in your language. Alternate translation: [he tried to save Joseph from them]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT and said
UST by urging them

Alternate translation: [and said to them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Let us not strike his life
UST We should not kill him

Consider again how you translated the idiom **strike** in Genesis 4:15; 34:30; 37:21. Alternate translation: [We must not take his life] or [We must not kill him]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben
and he rescued him	so he {tried to} rescue Joseph

Genesis 37:22

ULT	UST
And Reuben said to them, "Do not shed blood. Throw him into this cistern which is in the wilderness, but do not lay a hand on him," in order to rescue him from their hands, to return him to his father.	*Then he continued, "You must not take his life. Instead put him into this pit here in the desert, but you must not harm him." Reuben was planning to rescue Joseph from them and take him back home to their father.*

ULT **And Reuben said to them**
UST Then he continued

Some translations do not include this phrase, possibly because Reuben is still speaking to the same people. However, he may have paused between verses 21 and 22 to see the effect of what he said in verse 21. Also, the repeated quote margin helps emphasize what he says in verse 22. Alternate translation: [Then he added]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Do not shed blood**
UST You must not take his life

See how you translated the idiom **shed blood** in Genesis 9:6. Alternate translation: [Do not kill him]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Throw him into this cistern**
UST Instead put him into this pit

See how you translated **cistern** in verse 20. Alternate translation: [Instead put him into this dry well]

ULT **which {is} in the wilderness**
UST here in the desert

Consider again how you translated **wilderness** or "desert" in the book of Genesis. See 14:6 (and note); 16:7; 21:14, 20–21; 36:24; 37:22. Also see when it occurs as implied information in Genesis 12:9–10; 13:1, 3; 20:1; 24:62. Alternate translation: [here in the wilderness]

ULT **but do not lay a hand on him**
UST but you must not harm him

The phrase **lay a hand on** is an idiom that emphasizes that they are not to harm him at all, not even in the smallest way. Alternate translation: [but you must not harm him in any way]

ULT **in order to rescue him from their hands**
UST Reuben was planning to rescue Joseph from them

See how you translated "rescued him from their hands" in verse 21. Alternate translation: [Reuben was planning to save him from them] or [He said that in order to save him from being killed by them]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

> ULT **to return him to his father**
> UST and take him back {home} to their father

Make sure your translation of **his father** does not sound like Joseph had a different father than his brothers had. Alternate translation: [so that he could return him safely to his father] or [and take him back home to his father]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	רְאוּבֵן
Throw	Instead put
cistern	pit
wilderness	desert
rescue	Reuben was planning to rescue
to return him	and take him back home

Genesis 37:23

ULT	UST
Then it happened when Joseph came to his brothers, then they stripped Joseph of his tunic, the multicolored tunic that was on him.	*When Joseph reached his brothers, they took hold of him and ripped off the colorful robe that he was wearing.*

ULT **Then it happened when Joseph came to his brothers**
UST When Joseph reached his brothers

As usual, the phrase **Then it happened** introduces and emphasizes an important set of events. Many translations leave it implied. Do what is natural in your language.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **then they stripped Joseph of his tunic, the multicolored tunic**
UST they {took hold of him and} ripped off the colorful robe

See how you translated **multicolored tunic** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [they grabbed hold of him and tore off his colorful robe]

ULT **that {was} on him**
UST that he was wearing

Alternate translation: [he had on]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Joseph	him
tunic	אֶת־כֻּתָּנְתּוֹ
tunic	the … robe

Genesis 37:24

ULT	UST
Then they took him and threw him into the cistern. And the cistern was empty; there was not water in it.	*Then they grabbed him and put him into the pit. The pit was empty and completely dry inside.*

ULT Then they took him
UST Then they grabbed him

If the phrase “grabbed/took hold of him” is made explicit in your translation in verse 23, it can be left implied here in verse 24.

ULT and threw him into the cistern
UST and put him into the pit

See how you translated “throw him” and **cistern** in verse 20. Alternate translation: [and put him into the well]

ULT And the cistern {was} empty; there was not water in it
UST The pit {was} empty and {completely} dry inside

Alternate translation: [Now the well was empty; it had no water in it] or [The well was empty and completely dry inside]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and threw	and put
cistern	into the pit
cistern	The pit

Genesis 37:25

ULT	UST
Then they sat down to eat bread, and they lifted their eyes and looked, and behold, a caravan of Ishmaelites was coming from Gilead. And their camels were carrying spices and balm and myrrh that they were going to take down to Egypt.	*Then some of Joseph's brothers sat down to eat a meal. While they were eating, they looked around and noticed that a large group of Ishmaelite traders was traveling toward them from the region of Gilead. Their camels were loaded with expensive spices, healing salve, and incense that they were taking down to the country of Egypt to sell there.*

ULT **Then they sat down to eat bread**
UST Then {some of} Joseph's brothers sat down to eat a meal

It is clear from verse 29 that Reuben was not there when his brothers made the plan to sell Joseph to the traders.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and they lifted their eyes and looked**
UST While they were eating, they looked around

See how you translated the idiom "lifted … eyes" in Genesis 22:13. Alternate translation: [and while they were eating, they looked around]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and behold**
UST and noticed that

Alternate translation: [and saw that] or [and they saw that]

ULT **a caravan of**
UST a {large} group of

A **caravan** is a large group of people who are traveling together. Alternate translation: [a large company of]

ULT **Ishmaelites**
UST Ishmaelite traders

See how you translated the names of other people groups in Genesis 15:19–21. Alternate translation: [Ishmaelite merchants] or [traders from the Ishmael people group] or [traders who were descendants of Ishmael]

ULT **was coming from Gilead**
UST was traveling {toward them} from {the region of} Gilead

For some languages it may be clearer to change the order of some of the implied information in this sentence and say, "… and saw/noticed that headed their way/direction was a large group of Ishmaelite traders/merchants that was coming/traveling from the region of Gilead." Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Gilead** in Genesis 31:21, 23, 25. Alternate translation: [was coming toward them from the region of Gilead] or [was traveling from the region of Gilead and was headed their way]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And their camels were carrying**
UST Their camels were loaded with

Consider again how you translated **camel** in the book of Genesis. See 12:16 (and note); 24:10–11, 14, 19–20, 22, 25, 30–32, 35, 44, 46, 61, 63–64; 30:43; 31:17, 18, 34; 32:7, 15; 37:25.

ULT **that they were going to take down to Egypt**
UST that they were taking down to {the country of} Egypt to sell there

Alternate translation: [that they were transporting down to the country of Egypt to sell there] or [that they were taking to sell in the country of Egypt]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bread	a meal
Ishmaelites	Ishmaelite
Gilead	Gilead
camels	camels
myrrh	and incense
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 37:26

ULT	UST
Then Judah said to his brothers, "What gain is there if we kill our brother and cover up his blood?	*So Judah urged to his brothers, "We will not gain anything by killing our brother and trying to hide it!*

ULT **Then Judah said to his brothers**
UST So Judah urged to his brothers

Alternate translation: [Then Judah asked his brothers]

ULT **What gain is there**
UST We will not gain anything

Judah uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize his point. Alternate translation: [What will we gain]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **if we kill our brother and cover up his blood**
UST by killing our brother and trying to hide it

The phrase **cover up** is an idiom that means to prevent people from knowing about something evil that was done. Also, the phrase **his blood** is an idiom that refers to Joseph's death. Alternate translation: [if we kill our brother and try to keep people from finding out about it]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
gain is there	We will not gain anything
kill	killing

Genesis 37:27

ULT	UST
Come and let us sell him to the Ishmaelites so that our hands will not be on him. For he is our brother, our flesh." And his brothers listened.	*Instead, come on, let's sell him to those Ishmaelite traders over there so that we will not be guilty of harming him. After all, he is a member of our family, our own brother." Judah's brothers agreed with him.*

ULT **Come and let us sell him**
UST Instead, come on, let's sell him

See how you translated "come and" in verse 20. Alternate translation: [Instead, we should sell him]

ULT **to the Ishmaelites**
UST to those Ishmaelite {traders} over there

See how you translated **Ishmaelites** in verse 25. Alternate translation: [to those Ishmaelites over there] or [to those Ishmaelite merchants over there]

ULT **so that our hand{s} will not be on him**
UST so that we will not be guilty of harming him

Translate this idiom in a way that is natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: [so that we do not harm him]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **For he {is} our brother, our flesh**
UST After all, he {is} a member of our family, our own brother

The phrase **our flesh** refers to the fact that they are closely related biologically. See how you translated a similar idiom **my bone and my flesh** in Genesis 29:14. Alternate translation: [After all, as our brother, he is member of our family]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And his brothers listened**
UST Judah's brothers agreed with him

See how you translated **listened** in Genesis 34:24.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Ishmaelites	Ishmaelite

Genesis 37:28

ULT	UST
Then the Midianite men, traders, passed by, and they drew Joseph up and lifted him out of the cistern and sold Joseph to the Ishmaelites for twenty shekels of silver. Then they brought Joseph to Egypt.	*So when the Midianite (that is, Ishmaelite) traders came by them, some of Joseph's brothers pulled Joseph up out of the pit and sold him to the Ishmaelites for twenty pieces of silver. Then the Ishmaelites took him to the country of Egypt.*

ULT **Then the Midianite men, traders, passed by**
UST So when the Midianite {(that is, Ishmaelite)} traders came by them

The Ishmaelites (verses 25, 27–28; 39:1) and Midianites (verses 28 and 36) were the descendants of Abraham's sons Ishmael and Midian (16:15; 25:1–2). However, sometimes (as here) the names of those people groups are used interchangeably (also see Judges 8:22, 24, 26). Perhaps that was because the two people groups had intermarried. Or there may have been merchants from the two people groups in this caravan who bought and sold Joseph together. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [So as the Midianite (that is, Ishmaelite) merchants came by them] or [So when the Ishmaelite traders, who were also called Midianites, were going by them]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and they drew Joseph up and lifted him out of the cistern**
UST some of Joseph's brothers pulled Joseph up out of the pit

Not all of Joseph's brothers were there, because we know from the next verse that at least Reuben was somewhere else when they sold Joseph.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and sold Joseph to the Ishmaelites for twenty {shekels of} silver**
UST and sold him to the Ishmaelites for twenty {pieces of} silver

See the note about **shekels** at Genesis 20:16. The **twenty shekels of silver** was equal to about one-fourth of a kilo (half a pound) and was the average price for a slave. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and sold him to the Ishmaelite traders for twenty pieces of silver]

Support Reference: Biblical Money

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Midianite	Midianite
Joseph	Joseph
cistern	the pit
Joseph	him
Ishmaelites	Ishmaelites
silver	silver
Joseph	him
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 37:29

ULT	UST
Then Reuben returned to the cistern, but behold, Joseph was not in the cistern, so he tore his clothes.	*Later Reuben came back to the pit, and he was shocked to see that Joseph was not there! So he tore his clothes to show distress.*

ULT **Then Reuben returned to the cistern**
UST Later Reuben came back to the pit

Consider again how you translated **cistern** in verses 20, 22, 24, 28–29. Alternate translation: [Later Reuben who had been gone for a while returned to the well] or [Then Reuben went back to the well to get Joseph]

ULT **but behold, Joseph was not in the cistern**
UST and he was shocked to see that Joseph was not there

Alternate translation: [but to his surprise Joseph was gone!]

ULT **so he tore his clothes**
UST So he tore his clothes to show distress

Alternate translation: [So he tore his clothes to show grief] or [Then he was so grieved that he tore his clothes]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben
cistern	the pit
Joseph	Joseph
cistern	there

Genesis 37:30

ULT	UST
Then he returned to his brothers and said, "The boy is not there! And I, where am I going?"	*Then he went to his brothers and exclaimed to them, "Joseph is gone! Now I do not know what to do!"*

ULT Then he returned to his brothers
UST Then he went to his brothers

Alternate translation: [Then he went back to where his brothers were]

ULT and said
UST and exclaimed to them

Alternate translation: [and said to them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT The boy
UST Joseph

Joseph was seventeen years old (verse 2), so this phrase should be translated in a way that is appropriate for his older brother to refer to him here. See how you translated a different word that has a similar meaning in Genesis 21:12. Alternate translation: [The lad] or [Our younger brother]

ULT is not there
UST is gone

Alternate translation: [is missing!]

ULT And I, where am I going
UST Now I do not know what to do

Reuben uses a rhetorical question here to express how distressed he is and to emphasize that he does not know what to do. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Now what can I do?]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

Genesis 37:31

ULT	UST
Then they took Joseph's tunic and slaughtered a kid of the goats and dipped the tunic in the blood.	*So Joseph's brothers killed a young goat and dipped Joseph's robe in the goat's blood.*

ULT Then they took

Alternate translation: [So they]

ULT Then they took Joseph's tunic
UST Joseph's robe

Alternate translation: [took his robe] or [picked up his tunic]

ULT and slaughtered a kid of the goats
UST So Joseph's brothers killed a young goat

Alternate translation: [killed a male goat]

ULT and dipped the tunic in the blood
UST and dipped … in the {goat's} blood

For some languages it is more natural to switch the order of clauses in this verse and say, "Then/So Joseph's brothers killed a young goat, took Joseph's/his tunic/robe, and dipped it in the goat's blood." or "Then/So Joseph's brothers killed a young goat and dipped Joseph's/his tunic/robe in the goat's blood." Alternate translation: [and dipped the robe in its blood]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
tunic	s robe
slaughtered	So Joseph's brothers killed
goats	goat
tunic	אֶת־הַכְּתֹנֶת

Genesis 37:32

ULT	UST
Then they sent the multicolored tunic and had it brought to their father and said, "We found this. Please examine whether it is your son's tunic or not."	*Then they had someone take the colorful robe back to their father and say to him for them, "We found this robe. Please look at it to see whether or not it is your son's."*

ULT **Then they sent the multicolored tunic and had it brought to their father and said**
UST Then they had someone take the colorful robe back to their father and say {to him} for them

Consider again how you translated "multicolored/colorful tunic/robe" in verses 3, 23, 32. Alternate translation: [Then they had someone bring the colorful tunic back to their father and say to him for them]

ULT **We found this. Please examine**
UST We found this {robe}. Please look at it to see

See how you translated **examine** in Genesis 31:32. Alternate translation: [We found this tunic Please look at it to see]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tunic	the … robe
tunic	whether

Genesis 37:33

ULT	UST
And he examined it and said, “It is my son’s tunic! An evil animal has devoured him! Surely Joseph was torn to pieces!”	*Jacob recognized the robe and exclaimed, “This is my son Joseph’s robe! Clearly a fierce animal has torn him to bits and eaten him up!”*

ULT **And he examined it and said**
UST Jacob recognized the robe and exclaimed

Alternate translation: [Jacob examined the robe and exclaimed]

ULT **It is my son’s tunic**
UST This is my son {Joseph}’s robe

Alternate translation: [This robe belongs to my son Joseph!]

ULT **An evil animal has devoured him! Surely Joseph was torn to pieces**
UST Clearly a fierce animal has torn him to bits and eaten him up

See how you translated “an evil animal devoured him” in verse 20. Alternate translation: [Surely a fierce wild animal has torn Joseph to pieces and eaten him up!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tunic	This is … s robe
evil	fierce
Joseph	him

Genesis 37:34

ULT	UST
Then Jacob tore his clothes and put sackcloth on his loins, and he mourned for his son many days.	*Then Jacob tore his clothes in grief, put on mourning clothes, and for many days he mourned that his son had died.*

ULT **Then Jacob tore his clothes**
UST Then Jacob tore his clothes in grief

See how you translated **tore his clothes** in verse 29. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob tore his clothes in sorrow] or [Jacob was so grieved that he tore his clothes]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and he mourned for his son many days**
UST and for many days he mourned that his son had died

See how you translated **mourn** in Genesis 27:41. Alternate translation: [and for many days he grieved that his son had died] or [and for a very long time he grieved because his son was gone]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
sackcloth	put on mourning clothes
loins	put on mourning clothes
mourned	mourned
days	days

Genesis 37:35

ULT	UST
And all his sons and all his daughters got up to comfort him, but he refused to be comforted and said, "For I will go down to my son in Sheol mourning." So his father wept for him.	*All Jacob's sons and daughters came to him and tried to console him, but he did not let them comfort him. Instead he said to them, "No, I will continue to mourn for my son until I die and go down to be with him in the afterworld." So Joseph's father continued to mourn for him.*

ULT **but he refused to be comforted**
UST but he did not let them comfort him

Alternate translation: [but he did not want to be consoled] or [but he did not let them console him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mourning	mourn
So … wept	So … continued to mourn

Genesis 37:36

ULT	UST
And the Midianites sold him in Egypt to Potiphar, an official of Pharaoh, the chief of the guards.	*Meanwhile, in the country of Egypt, the Midianite traders sold Joseph to Potiphar, who was an officer under Pharaoh the king of Egypt; he was the captain over the palace guards.*

ULT **And the Midianites sold him in Egypt**
UST Meanwhile, in {the country of} Egypt, the Midianite {traders} sold Joseph

The event in verse 36 occurred during the time that the events in verses 29–35 happened.
Alternate translation: [Meanwhile, when the Midianite traders got to the country of Egypt, they sold Joseph]

ULT **the chief of the guards**
UST he was the captain over the {palace} guards

Alternate translation: [he was the captain over the royal guards] or [he was the leader of the soldiers who guarded the king]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Midianites	Midianite
Egypt	Egypt
Potiphar	Potiphar
Pharaoh	king of Egypt
the chief of	he was the captain over

Genesis 38

Genesis 38:1

ULT	UST
And it happened at that time that Judah went down from his brothers and settled near an Adullamite man, and his name was Hirah.	*About that time, Judah left his brothers and went down to the town of Adullam and stayed near the home of a man from there whose name was Hirah.*

ULT **And it happened at that time**
UST About that time

The phrase **And it happened** introduces a new episode here. Some translations leave it implied. Alternate translation: [Meanwhile] or [At this time]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **that Judah went down from his brothers**
UST Judah left his brothers and went down

In keeping with what is usual for his language and culture, the author is marking travel for change in elevation, **went down**. If this expression contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [Judah departed from his brothers]
Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **and settled near an Adullamite man**
UST to {the town of} Adullam and stayed near {the home of} a man from there

The word **Adullamite** refers to the fact that Hirah was from the town of Adullam; it is not the name of a people group. The town of Adullam was about 19 kilometers (12 miles) northwest of the city of Hebron (37:14), and was lower in elevation, which is why the text says that Judah **went down** to get there. Alternate translation: [and lived in the town of Adullam near the home of a man from there] or [to the town of Adullam and lived near the home of a man from there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah

Genesis 38:2

ULT	UST
And there Judah saw the daughter of a Canaanite man, and his name was Shua, and he took her. Then he went to her,	*While he was living there, he met a Canaanite woman whose father was Shua, and he married her. Then he had marital relations with her,*

ULT **and he took her**
UST and he married her

See how you translated a similar idiom **took a wife** in Genesis 25:1. Alternate translation: [and he took her as his wife]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Then he went to her**
UST Then he had {marital} relations with her

See how you translated the idiom **went to** in Genesis 6:4. Alternate translation: [Then he lay with her] or [Then he had sexual relations with her]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	יְהוּדָה
Canaanite	Canaanite

Genesis 38:3

ULT	UST
and she conceived and bore a son, and he called his name Er.	*and she became pregnant. When she gave birth, she had a son, whom Judah named Er.*

ULT and bore a son
UST When she gave birth, she had a son

Alternate translation: [and gave birth to a son]

ULT and he called his name Er
UST whom Judah named Er

Throughout Genesis, sometimes the father, sometimes the mother, and sometimes both are said to give their child his name. Alternate translation: [whom he named Er]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
conceived	and she became pregnant
bore	When she gave birth, she had
called	whom Judah named

Genesis 38:5

ULT	UST
And she added yet and bore a son, and she called his name Shelah. And he was in Chezib when she bore him.	*Then she became pregnant yet again and gave birth to another son, and she named him Shelah. When she gave birth to Shelah, Judah was at the town of Chezib.*

ULT And she added yet

UST Then she {became pregnant} yet again

Alternate translation: [Then she conceived again]

ULT And he was in Chezib when she bore him

UST When she gave birth to Shelah, Judah was at {the town of} Chezib

This could mean: (1) that Judah was at the town of Chezib when she gave birth to Shelah. Alternate translation: [When she gave birth to Shelah, Judah was in the town of Chezib]; or (2) "It was in the town of Chezib that she gave birth to Shelah." Alternate translation: [She was in Chezib when she gave birth to Shelah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bore	and gave birth to
called	and she named him
bore	When she gave birth to

Genesis 38:6

ULT	UST
Then Judah took a wife for Er his firstborn, and her name was Tamar.	*When Judah's oldest son Er grew up, Judah arranged for him to marry a woman whose name was Tamar.*

ULT **Then Judah took a wife for Er his firstborn, and her name {was} Tamar**

UST When Judah's oldest son Er {grew up}, Judah arranged for him to marry a woman whose name {was} Tamar

See how you translated the phrase **took a wife for** in Genesis 21:21. Alternate translation: [Years later, Judah chose a wife named Tamar for his firstborn son Er]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah's
firstborn	When Judah's oldest son Er {grew up}, Judah arranged for him to marry a woman
Tamar	Tamar

Genesis 38:7

ULT	UST
But Er, the firstborn of Judah, was evil in the eyes of Yahweh, so Yahweh killed him.	*But Er did things that Yahweh considered to be evil, so Yahweh caused him to die.*

ULT **But Er, the firstborn of Judah, was**
UST But Er

Some languages leave **the firstborn of Judah** implied here since Er was already called the firstborn in verse 6. The Hebrew text repeats that information here to emphasize Er's relationship to Judah in the following events.

ULT **But … was evil in the eyes of Yahweh**
UST But … did things that Yahweh considered to be evil

The Hebrew text does not specify what Er had done wrong, so neither should your translation. See how you translated the idiom **in the eyes of Yahweh** in Genesis 6:8. Alternate translation: [Er … did something that Yahweh judged to be evil]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **so Yahweh killed him**
UST so Yahweh caused him to die

Alternate translation: [so Yahweh took his life]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstborn	בְּכֹר
Judah	יְהוּדָה
evil	evil
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 38:8

ULT	UST
Then Judah said to Onan, "Go to the wife of your brother and perform your duty to her and produce offspring for your brother."	*After that, Judah told his son Onan, "Marry your brother's widow Tamar according to our custom so that you fulfill your obligation to her as her brother-in-law and have children with her for your deceased brother."*

ULT **Go to the wife of your brother**
UST Marry your brother's widow {Tamar} according to our custom

The author assumes that readers will know that the Israelites practiced the custom of Levirate marriage, which meant that if a man died without any children, it was his oldest brother's duty to marry his widow. That way, they could produce a son who would carry on the deceased man's family line and inherit his estate (See: Deuteronomy 25:5–6). You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and perform your duty to her**
UST so that you fulfill your obligation to her as her brother-in-law

Alternate translation: [so that you fulfill your duty to her as her brother-in-law]

ULT **and produce offspring**
UST and have children with her

Alternate translation: [and produce children with her]

ULT **for your brother**
UST for your {deceased} brother

Alternate translation: [to carry on the name of your brother Er]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
offspring	children

Genesis 38:9

ULT	UST
However, Onan knew that the offspring would not be his, so it happened when he went to the wife of his brother, then he spilled it on the ground so that he would not give offspring to his brother.	*However Onan knew that the children they would have together would not belong to him. So whenever he had marital relations with Tamar, he wasted his semen on the ground to keep her from getting pregnant and having any children for his brother.*

ULT **However, Onan knew that the offspring would not be his**
UST However Onan knew that the children {they would have together} would not belong to him

Alternate translation: [But Onan knew that the children they would have together would not belong to him]

ULT **so it happened when**
UST So whenever

Alternate translation: [So every time]

ULT **he went to**
UST he had {marital} relations with

Alternate translation: [he lay with] or [he had physical relations with]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **then he spilled {it} on the ground**
UST he wasted {his semen} on the ground

Translate this clause in a way that is polite and will not shame or embarrass people when this verse is read aloud in public. Make sure it is clear that Onan did something to keep Tamar from getting pregnant. Alternate translation: [he let his semen to go on the ground]

ULT **so that he would not give offspring to his brother**
UST to keep her from {getting pregnant and} having {any} children for his brother

Alternate translation: [so that he would not have offspring for his brother] or [to keep her from getting pregnant and having any offspring for his brother]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
knew	knew
the offspring	the children they would have together
on the ground	on the ground
offspring	any children

Genesis 38:10

ULT	UST
And what he did was evil in the eyes of Yahweh, so he killed him also.	*Yahweh considered what Onan did to be evil, so he caused him to die too.*

ULT **so he killed him also**
UST so he caused him to die too

Alternate translation: [so he took his life too] or [so Yahweh caused him to die too]

ULT **And what he did was evil in the eyes of Yahweh**
UST Yahweh considered what Onan did to be evil

See how you translated **evil in the eyes of Yahweh** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [Yahweh judged what he did to be evil]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
evil	evil
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 38:12

ULT	UST
Then the days were many, and Shua's daughter, the wife of Judah, died. Then Judah was comforted, and he went up to Timnah, to the men who were shearing his sheep, he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite.	*After a long time, Judah's wife, the daughter of Shua, died. After Judah finished mourning for her, one day he decided to go to the town of Timnah to work with the men who were shearing his sheep there. He and his friend Hirah, who was from the town of Adullam, started traveling there together.*

ULT **Then the days were many**
UST After a long time

Alternate translation: [Many years later] or [Years went by and then]

ULT **and Shua's daughter, the wife of Judah, died**
UST Judah's wife, the daughter of Shua, died

Notice that Shua was the father of Judah's wife. Be consistent here with how you spelled his name in verse 2.

ULT **Then Judah was comforted**
UST After Judah finished mourning for her

See how you translated **comforted** in Genesis 37:35. Alternate translation: [After Judah finished grieving for her, one day] or [After Judah had completed the customary time of mourning for her]

ULT **and he went up to Timnah**
UST one day he {decided to} go to {the town of} Timnah

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like Judah had already arrived at Timnah, because he does not actually reach there until verse 19. His trip from the town of Adullam (verse 1) to the town of Timnah was about 13 kilometers (8 miles).

ULT **to {the men} who were shearing his sheep**
UST to work with {the men} who were shearing his sheep there

See how you translated "shear his sheep" in Genesis 31:19 and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: [where his men were shearing his sheep for him]

ULT **he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite**
UST He and his friend Hirah, {who was} from {the town of} Adullam, started traveling there together

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "… and he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite went up to the town of Timnah where men were shearing Judah's sheep for him." Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Hirah** and how you translated **Adullamite** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [His friend Hirah the Adullamite went with him]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	After a long time
Judah	Judah
Judah	Judah
sheep	sheep

Genesis 38:13

ULT	UST
And it was told to Tamar, saying, "Behold, your father-in-law is going up to Timnah to shear his sheep."	*Meanwhile someone told Tamar, "Listen, your father-in-law Judah is on his way to the town of Timnah to shear his sheep."*

ULT **And it was told to Tamar, saying**
UST Meanwhile someone told Tamar

Alternate translation: [Then someone told Tamar]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **is going up to Timnah to shear his sheep**
UST is on his way to {the town of} Timnah to shear his sheep

See how you translated "shearing his sheep" in verse 12. Alternate translation: [is on his way to shear his sheep in the town of Timnah]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And it was told	Meanwhile someone told
Tamar	Tamar
sheep	sheep

Genesis 38:14

ULT	UST
So she took off her widow's clothes from her and covered herself with a veil and wrapped herself. Then she sat at the entrance of Enaim, which is on the road to Timnah, because she saw that Shelah had grown up, but she had not been given to him as a wife.	*So she changed from her clothes that showed she was a widow and covered her face with a thin headscarf and dressed herself like a prostitute. Then she went toward the town of Timnah and sat down near the gateway of the town of Enaim, which was along the way. She did that because she had noticed that Shelah was now old enough to marry, but Judah had not given her to him to marry as he was supposed to do.*

ULT **So she took off her widow's clothes from her**
UST So she changed from her clothes that showed she was a widow

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Tamar did not just take off her widow's clothes, but that she also put different clothes on. Alternate translation: [So she changed into different clothes from the kind of clothes that widows wear]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and covered herself with a veil**
UST and covered her face with a {thin} headscarf

A veil was a large piece of thin cloth that was used to cover the face and/or the body. See how you translated **veil** in Genesis 24:65. Alternate translation: [and covered herself with a large veil] or [and covered her face with a thin veil]

ULT **and wrapped herself**
UST and dressed herself like a prostitute

Alternate translation: [and disguised herself as a prostitute] or [to disguise herself]

ULT **Then she sat at the entrance of Enaim, which {is} on the road to Timnah**
UST Then {she went} toward {the town of} Timnah and sat down near the gateway of {the town of} Enaim, which {was} along the way

Some languages need to specify that Tamar traveled to Enaim before she sat down there. Alternate translation: [Then she sat by the gateway to the town of Enaim, which was on the way to the town of Timnah] or [Then she went toward the town of Timnah and sat down at the entrance of the town of Enaim, which was along the way]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **but she had not been given to him as a wife**
UST but Judah had not given her to him to marry as he was supposed to do

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "Tamar had seen/noticed that Shelah was now grown up, but Judah had not given her to him to marry as he was supposed/required to do. So she changed from her widow's clothes …" Alternate translation: [but Judah had not given her to Shelah to marry as he was required to do]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
veil	with a {thin} headscarf
at the entrance of	gateway

Genesis 38:15

ULT	UST
Then Judah saw her, and he thought she was a prostitute because she had covered her face.	*As Judah was traveling to Timnah, he saw Tamar beside the road, but since she had veiled her face with a scarf, he could not see who she was, and he assumed that she was a prostitute.*

ULT **and he thought she was a prostitute because she had covered her face**
UST but since she had veiled her face {with a scarf}, {he could not see who she was, and} he assumed that she was a prostitute

See how you translated **prostitute** in Genesis 34:31 and **covered her face** in verse 14.
Alternate translation: [but since she had covered her face with a veil he could not see who she was and he thought that she was a prostitute]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
prostitute	prostitute

Genesis 38:16

ULT	UST
So he turned to her beside the road and said, "Please come, let me come to you," because he did not know that she was his daughter-in-law. And she said, "What will you give to me if you will come to me?"	*So he went over to where she was sitting beside the road and said to her, "Let me have sex with you." He did that because he did not recognize that she was his daughter-in-law Tamar. So she asked him, "What will you pay me so that you can have sex with me?"*

ULT **So he turned to her beside the road**
UST So he went over to where she was {sitting} beside the road

Alternate translation: [So he went over to where she was sitting by the road]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and said**
UST and said to her

Alternate translation: [and propositioned her by saying] or [and requested]

ULT **Please come, let me come to you**
UST Let me have sex with you

Alternate translation: [Let me lie with you] or [Let me have relations with you]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **What will you give to me**
UST What will you pay me

Alternate translation: [What will you give me in exchange]

ULT **if you will come**
UST so that you can have sex

Alternate translation: [if I allow you to]

ULT **you will come to me**
UST you can have sex with me

See how you translated the idiom **come to** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: [lie with me?] or [have relations with me?] or [do that?]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **because he did not know that she {was} his daughter-in-law**
UST He did that because he did not recognize that she was his daughter-in-law Tamar

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, "He did not realize that she was his daughter-in-law Tamar, so he went over to her beside the road and said …" Alternate translation: [He said that because he did not realize that she was his daughter-in-law Tamar]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	he did … recognize

Genesis 38:17

ULT	UST
And he said, "I will send a kid goat from the flock." And she said, "If you will give a pledge until you send it."	*He answered her, "I will send you a young goat from my flock." She replied, "I will agree, if you will give me something valuable of yours to keep until you deliver the goat to me."*

ULT **I will send a kid goat from the flock**
UST I will send {you} a young goat from my flock

See how you translated **kid goat** in Genesis 27:9, 16.

ULT **If you will give a pledge**
UST I will agree, if you will give {me} something {valuable} {of yours} to keep

If you will give a pledge could mean: (1) "Ok, if you will give me a pledge." Alternate translation: [I will agree if you give me something valuable of yours to keep]; or (2) "Will you give me a deposit?" Alternate translation: [Will you give me something valuable to hold until then?]

ULT **until you send it**
UST until you deliver the goat to me

Alternate translation: [until you send the goat to me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goat	goat
flock	flock
pledge	something {valuable} {of yours} to keep

Genesis 38:18

ULT	UST
Then he said, "What is the pledge that I should give to you?" And she said, "Your signet and your cord and your staff that is in your hand." So he gave them to her and went to her, and she conceived by him.	*So Judah asked, "What do you want me to leave with you?" She answered him, "Leave me your name seal with its cord that you have around your neck, and your walking stick that you are holding." So he gave those things to her. Then he had sexual relations with her, and she became pregnant from him.*

ULT **Then he said**
UST So Judah asked

Alternate translation: [So Judah asked her]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **What {is} the pledge that I should give to you**
UST What do you want me to leave with you

Alternate translation: [What should I give to you as a pledge]

ULT **Your signet**
UST Leave me your name seal

A **signet** was a ring used to prove the owner's identity and to sign documents that were written on clay tablets. If people in your culture are not familiar with this thing, you could put some of this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Your signature ring]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and your staff**
UST and your walking stick

Alternate translation: [and your cane]

ULT **and went to her**
UST Then he had {sexual} relations with her

Consider again how you translated the idiom **went to** in the book of Genesis. See 6:4 (See: note); 16:2, 4; 19:31; 30:3–4; 38:2, 8–9, 16, 18. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context; for example, the relationship in Genesis 38:16, 18 was outside of marriage. Alternate translation: [Then he lay with her]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and she conceived by him**
UST and she became pregnant from him

Consider again how you translated **conceive** in the book of Genesis. See 4:1, 17; 16:4–5; 19:36; 21:2; 25:21; 29:32–35; 30:5, 7, 17, 19, 23; 38:3–4, 18. Alternate translation: [and she became pregnant by him] or [and he caused her to become pregnant]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
pledge	What do you want me to leave with you
Your signet	seal
staff	and your walking stick
conceived	and she became pregnant

Genesis 38:19

ULT	UST
Then she got up and left, and she took off her veil from her and put on her widow's clothes.	*After that, Tamar left Judah and returned home. Then she took off her scarf and put on her clothes that showed she was a widow.*

ULT **Then she got up and left**

UST After that, Tamar left {Judah} and returned home

Alternate translation: [After that, Tamar left Judah and went home] or [After Tamar left Judah, she went home]

ULT **and she took off her veil from her**

UST Then she took off her scarf

See how you translated **veil** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [took off her shawl] or [Then she took her veil off]

ULT **and put on her widow's clothes**

UST and put on her clothes that showed she was a widow

See how you translated **widow's clothes** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [and put back on her clothes that showed she was a widow] or [and put back on the kind of clothes that widows wear]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
veil	Then she took off her scarf

Genesis 38:20

ULT	UST
Then Judah sent the kid goat by the hand of his friend the Adullamite to get back the pledge from the hand of the woman, but he did not find her.	*Meanwhile Judah sent a young goat with his friend Hirah, who was from the town of Adullam, to reclaim his things from the prostitute whom he had given them to. But when Hirah looked for her, he was not able to find her.*

ULT **Then Judah sent the kid goat by the hand of his friend the Adullamite**

UST Meanwhile Judah sent a young goat with his friend {Hirah}, {who was} from {the town of} Adullam

See how you translated "his friend … the Adullamite" in verse 12 and **kid goat** in verse 17.
Alternate translation: [After that, Judah sent his friend Hirah the Adullamite with a young goat]

ULT **to get back the pledge from the hand of the woman**

UST to reclaim his things from the prostitute whom he had given them to

Alternate translation: [to retrieve his things from the woman whom he had given them to] or [to exchange it for the things he had left with the woman] or [to get back from the woman the things he had left with her]

ULT **but he did not find her**

UST But {when Hirah looked for her,} he was not able to find her

Alternate translation: [but Hirah could not find her]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
goat	goat
friend	friend
pledge	his things

Genesis 38:21

ULT	UST
So he asked the men of her place, saying, "Where is the temple prostitute who was at Enaim beside the road?" But they said, "There has not been a temple prostitute in this place."	*So he asked some men who lived near the place where she had been, "Where is the temple prostitute who was sitting beside the road near the town of Enaim?" But they answered him, "There has never been a temple prostitute around here."*

ULT **So he asked the men of her place, saying**
UST So he asked {some} men {who lived} near the place where she had been

Alternate translation: [So Hirah asked some men who lived near the place where she had been]

ULT **Where {is} the temple prostitute who {was} at Enaim beside the road**
UST Where {is} the temple prostitute who was {sitting} beside the road near {the town of} Enaim

Pagan religions had fertility rites at their temples or shrines that included professional prostitutes. Make sure your translation of **temple prostitute** does not refer to any temple built by the Israelites. Also be consistent here with how you translated **Enaim** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [Where is the shrine prostitute who was sitting beside the road near the town of Enaim?]

ULT **There has not been a temple prostitute**
UST There has never been a temple prostitute

Alternate translation: [There has never been a shrine prostitute] or [No shrine prostitute has ever been]

ULT **in this place**
UST around here

Alternate translation: [in this town]

Genesis 38:22

ULT	UST
So he returned to Judah and said, "I did not find her. And also, the men of the place said, 'There has not been a temple prostitute in this place.'"	*So Hirah returned to Judah and told him, "I was not able to find the prostitute. In fact, the men who live near that town claim that there has never been a temple prostitute around there."*

ULT **So he returned to Judah**
UST So Hirah returned to Judah

Alternate translation: [So Hirah came back to Judah]

ULT **and said**
UST and told him

Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and informed him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I did not find her**
UST I was not able to find the prostitute

Alternate translation: [I was not able to find the woman]

ULT **And also**
UST In fact

Alternate translation: [And besides that]

ULT **the men of the place**
UST the men who live near that town

Alternate translation: [the men who live around there] or [the men who live in that town]

ULT **said, 'There has not been a temple prostitute in this place**
UST claim {that} there has never been a temple prostitute around there

See how you translated this same quote in verse 21. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this as an indirect quote here in verse 22. Alternate translation: [say that there has never been a shrine prostitute near there]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah

Genesis 38:23

ULT	UST
And Judah said, "Let her take the things for herself so that we do not become a laughingstock. Behold, I sent this kid, but you did not find her."	*Then Judah said, "Stop looking for her and let her keep my things for herself. Otherwise everyone will make fun of us. Besides that, I did try to send this goat to her, but you were not able to find her."*

ULT **And Judah said**
UST Then Judah said

Alternate translation: [Then Judah said to him] or [Judah replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **so that we do not become a laughingstock**
UST Otherwise everyone will make fun of us

The pronouns **we** and "us" are inclusive here because Judah is including Hirah; some languages might use a dual pronoun. Use the pronouns that are best in your language in this context. Alternate translation: [so that people do not laugh at us] or [so that we are not publicly shamed]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **Behold**
UST Besides that

Alternate translation: [After all]

ULT **I sent this kid**
UST I {did try to} send this goat to her

Alternate translation: [I did try to deliver this goat to her] or [I sent you to deliver this goat to her]

ULT **but you did not find her**
UST but you were not able to find her

Alternate translation: [but you could not find her]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
a laughingstock	everyone will make fun of us
kid	goat

Genesis 38:24

ULT	UST
And it happened about three months later that it was told to Judah, saying, "Tamar your daughter-in-law has prostituted herself, and also, behold, she is pregnant by her prostitutions!" So Judah said, "Bring her out, and let her be burned!"	*About three months later, someone told Judah, "Your daughter-in-law Tamar has acted like a prostitute. In fact, look, she is now pregnant from doing that!" Judah responded angrily, "Take her outside the town and burn her to death!"*

ULT **And it happened about three months later**
UST About three months later

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **that it was told to Judah, saying**
UST someone told Judah

Alternate translation: [someone said to Judah] or [someone informed Judah]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Tamar your daughter-in-law**
UST Your daughter-in-law Tamar

Consider again how you translated **daughter-in-law** in the book of Genesis. See 11:31; 38:11, 16, 24.

ULT **has prostituted herself**
UST has acted like a prostitute

Some languages have an idiom for this phrase. See how you translated **prostitute** in Genesis 34:31, 38:15 and "temple prostitute" in verses 21–22. Alternate translation: [has acted as a prostitute]

ULT **and also, behold, {she is} pregnant by her prostitutions**
UST In fact, look, {she is} {now} pregnant from doing that

Alternate translation: [In fact, as a result of her immoral behavior she has become pregnant!] or [and even worse, she is now pregnant because of that!]

ULT **So Judah said**
UST Judah responded angrily

Alternate translation: [Judah said angrily]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Bring her out**
UST Take her outside the town

Executions were normally done outside of the city walls.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and let her be burned**
UST and burn her to death

Alternate translation: [and punish her by burning her to death!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
months	months
that it was told	someone told
Judah	Judah
Tamar	Tamar
prostituted	prostitute
she is pregnant	she is {now} pregnant
by her prostitutions	from doing that
Judah	Judah

Genesis 38:25

ULT	UST
She was being brought out, and she sent a message to her father-in-law, saying, "By the man whom these things belong to, I am pregnant." Then she said, "Please identify whose signet and cords and staff these are."	*So they went to get her, but as they were taking her out of the town, she sent a messenger to her father-in-law along with his things and told the messenger to say, "The man who owns these things is the one who got me pregnant. Please identify the man who owns this name seal with its cord and this walking stick."*

ULT **She was being brought out**
UST So they went to get her, but as they were taking her out of the town

Alternate translation: [So they went to get Tamar, but as they were taking her out of the town]

ULT **and she sent {a message} to her father-in-law, saying**
UST she sent {a messenger} to her father-in-law {along with his things} and told the messenger to say

See how you translated **father-in-law** in verse 13.

ULT **Then she said, "Please identify whose signet and cords and staff these are**
UST Please identify {the man} who owns this name seal with its cord and this walking stick

For some languages it is more natural to omit the quote margin here, since what follows is a continuation of the message Tamar is sending to Judah. See how you translated **signet** and "cord" and **staff** in verse 18. Alternate translation: [Please identify the man who owns this name thing with its string and this walking stick] or [Please look at this name seal with its cord and this walking stick. Do you know who they belong to?]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
am pregnant	got me pregnant
signet	seal
staff	and … walking stick

Genesis 38:26

ULT	UST
And Judah identified the things and said, "She is more righteous than I am, because I did not give her to Shelah my son!" And he did not continue to know her more.	*Judah recognized his things and confessed, "Tamar is right, and I am wrong, because I refused to have my son Shelah marry her as I was supposed to!" So they released Tamar, and after that Judah never had sexual relations with her again.*

ULT **And Judah identified the things**
UST Judah recognized his things

Alternate translation: [Judah saw that the things she had were his]

ULT **and said**
UST and confessed

Alternate translation: [and admitted]

ULT **She is more righteous than I am**
UST Tamar is right, and I am wrong

Alternate translation: [She is right, and I am wrong]

ULT **because I did not give her to Shelah my son**
UST because I refused to have my son Shelah marry her as I was supposed to

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Shelah** in verses 5, 11, 14. Alternate translation: [because I refused to have my son Shelah marry her as I was required to!] or [because I did not let her marry my son Shelah as I was required to!]

ULT **And he did not continue to know her more**
UST So they released Tamar, and {after that} Judah never had {sexual} relations with her again

Consider again how you translated the idiom "knew" in the book of Genesis. See 4:1 (and note), 17, 25; 19:8; 24:16; 38:26. It may be necessary to translate 38:26 differently, since the relationship in this verse was outside of marriage. Compare how you translated a related idiom **went to** in verse 18. Alternate translation: [So they released her and after that he never again slept with her] or [… never had sexual relations with Tamar again]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
righteous	Tamar is right, and I am wrong
know	Judah … had {sexual} relations with her again

Genesis 38:27

ULT	UST
Then it happened when it was time for her to give birth, then behold, twins were inside her womb!	*Months later, when Tamar was ready to give birth, they realized that there were twins inside her!*

ULT **Then it happened when {it was} time for her to give birth**
UST Months later, when Tamar was ready to give birth

See how you translated **Then it happened** in verse 24. The same phrase occurs three times in verses 27–29 to draw attention to the peak of this chapter, the birth of Perez, who was the ancestor of King David and the Messiah.

Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **then behold, twins {were} inside her womb**
UST they realized that {there were} twins inside her

Alternate translation: [amazingly there were twins inside her!] or [they saw that there were twins inside her!] or [it turned out that she was going to have twins!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
for her to give birth	Tamar was ready to give birth
womb	inside her

Genesis 38:28

ULT	UST
And it happened, as she was giving birth, then one put out a hand, and the midwife took a scarlet thread and tied it on his hand, saying, "This one came out first."	*While she was in labor, one of them stuck out his hand. So the midwife who was there tied a bright red string around his wrist and said, "This baby was born first."*

ULT **And it happened, as she was giving birth**
UST While she was in labor

See how you translated **giving birth** in Genesis 35:16. This may need to be translated differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [As she was starting to deliver her babies]

ULT **then {one} put out a hand**
UST one of them stuck out {his} hand

Alternate translation: [one of the twins put out his hand]

ULT **and the midwife took a scarlet thread and tied {it} on his hand, saying**
UST So the midwife {who was there} tied a {bright} red string around his wrist and said

The midwife did this because it was her responsibility to identify which baby was the firstborn. See how you translated **midwife** in Genesis 35:17. Alternate translation: [Then the midwife who was there tied a bright red thread on his wrist and said] or [So the midwife who was helping her …]

ULT **This {one} came out first**
UST This {baby} was born first

Alternate translation: [This one was born first]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
as she was giving birth	While she was in labor
and tied it	tied

Genesis 38:29

ULT	UST
But it happened, when he drew his hand back in, then behold, his brother came out. Then she said, "How have you breached for yourself a breach?" So he called his name Perez.	*But then the baby pulled his hand back inside, and suddenly his brother was born first instead. So the midwife exclaimed to the baby, "What a dramatic way for you to burst out!" That is why he was named Perez, which means "break out."*

ULT **But it happened, when he drew his hand back in, then behold**
UST But then the baby pulled his hand back inside, and suddenly

Alternate translation: [But then that baby pulled his hand back inside, and suddenly]

ULT **his brother came out**
UST his brother was born {first} instead

Alternate translation: [his brother came out first instead]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Then she said**
UST So the midwife exclaimed to the baby

Alternate translation: [So the midwife said to the baby]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **How have you breached for yourself a breach**
UST What a dramatic way for you to burst out

The midwife uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize how surprised she is that Perez was born first. Decide the best way to communicate this in your language. Alternate translation: [How did you burst yourself out like that?] or [What a powerful way for you to burst out!] or [Just look at how you have forced your way out!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **So he called his name**
UST That is why he was named

Although this phrase could mean that Judah (Perez's father) named Perez, most translations translate this in a general or indefinite way that does not specify who named him. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 29:34. Alternate translation: [So they named him]

ULT **Perez**
UST Perez, which means "break out

If you include the meaning of Perez' name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translated the previous sentence.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	That is why he was named

Genesis 38:30

ULT	UST
And afterwards, his brother came out, who had the scarlet thread on his hand, and he called his name Zerah.	*After that, his brother, who had the bright red string on his wrist, came out. So he was named Zerah, which means "brightness."*

ULT **And afterwards, his brother**
UST After that, his brother

Alternate translation: [After that, his twin brother]

ULT **came out**
UST came out

Alternate translation: [was born]

ULT **who {had} the scarlet thread on his hand**
UST who {had} the {bright} red string on his wrist

See how you translated **scarlet thread** in verse 28. Alternate translation: [who had the bright red thread on his wrist] or [with the bright red string on his wrist]

ULT **and he called his name**
UST So he was named

Alternate translation: [So they named him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	So he was named

Genesis 39

Genesis 39:1

ULT	UST
Now Joseph had been taken down to Egypt, and Potiphar, an Egyptian man, an official of Pharaoh, the chief of the guards, had bought him from the hand of the Ishmaelites who had taken him down there.	*Now as you know, some Ishmaelite traders had taken Joseph down to the country of Egypt, and an Egyptian named Potiphar had bought him as a servant from them. Potiphar was one of King Pharaoh's officers, the captain over the king's personal guards.*

ULT **Now Joseph had been taken down to Egypt**
UST Now {as you know,} {some} Ishmaelite traders had taken Joseph down to {the country of} Egypt

Chapter 39 picks up where 37:36 left off and repeats some events (that happened in chapter 37) to remind readers of what happened before chapter 38 interrupted the narrative. Make sure your translation does not sound like Joseph was taken to Egypt twice or sold to Potiphar twice. Alternate translation: [Now as you know, Ishmaelite merchants had brought Joseph down to the country of Egypt] or [Returning now to Joseph: Remember that he had been taken down to the country of Egypt by Ishmaelite traders]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **Potiphar, an Egyptian man, an official of Pharaoh, the chief of the guards**
UST an Egyptian {named} Potiphar … Potiphar {was} {one of} {King} Pharaoh's officers, the captain over the king's {personal} guards

See how you translated **an official of Pharaoh, the chief of the guards** in Genesis 37:36.

ULT **and … had bought him from the hand of the Ishmaelites who had taken him down there**
UST and … had bought him {as a servant} from them

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, "Now as you know, some Ishmaelite traders had taken/brought Joseph down to the country of Egypt, and an Egyptian named Potiphar had bought him as a slave/servant from them. Potiphar was one of Pharaoh's officials/officers, the captain over the king's personal guards." See how you translated **Ishmaelites** in Genesis 37:25, 27–28. Alternate translation: [had bought him as a slave from the Ishmaelites who had brought him there]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Egypt	Egypt
Potiphar	Potiphar
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
the chief of	the captain over
Ishmaelites	them

Genesis 39:2

ULT	UST
And Yahweh was with Joseph, and he was a successful man, and he was in the house of his Egyptian master.	*As Joseph worked in his Egyptian owner's house, Yahweh was with him and helped him, so that he succeeded in everything he did.*

ULT **And Yahweh was with Joseph**
UST Yahweh was with him and helped him

See how you translated **was with** in Genesis 21:20; 26:28. Alternate translation: [But Yahweh was with Joseph and helped him]

ULT **and he was a successful man**
UST so that he succeeded in everything he did

Alternate translation: [so that he succeeded in what he did] or [so that he did everything very well]

ULT **And Yahweh was with Joseph, and he was a successful man, and he was in the house of his Egyptian master**
UST As Joseph worked in his Egyptian owner's house, Yahweh was with him {and helped him}, so that he succeeded in everything he did

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information Joseph's circumstances and God's presence before the information about Joseph's success. Alternate translation: [As Joseph worked in his Egyptian master's house, Yahweh was with Joseph and blessed him, so that he succeeded in everything he did]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Joseph	with him and helped him
successful	so that he succeeded in everything he did
house	house
Egyptian	Egyptian
master	his … owner

Genesis 39:3

ULT	UST
And his master saw that Yahweh was with him and that Yahweh made all that he was doing successful in his hand.	*His owner realized that Yahweh was with him and was helping him to succeed in everything that he did.*

ULT **And his master saw that Yahweh {was} with him**
UST His owner realized that Yahweh {was} with him

In verses 2 through 20, Potiphar is referred to as Joseph's master (verses 2–3, 7–8, 16, 19–20) and "the Egyptian" (verse 5); he is no longer mentioned by his name in the Hebrew text. Some translations continue to use Potiphar's name occasionally in verses 2 through 20 to prevent confusion and make it clear that all of these references refer to the same person, not two or three different people. See how you translated **master** or "owner" in Genesis 24:9–10.

ULT **and {that} Yahweh made all that he was doing successful in his hand**
UST and was helping him to succeed in everything that he did

See how you translated **successful** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [and was helping Joseph to prosper in everything that he did] or [and was helping Joseph to do everything very well]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
master	His owner
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	יְהוָה
made … successful	was helping him to succeed in

Genesis 39:4

ULT	UST
So Joseph found favor in his eyes, and he served him. And he put him in charge over his house and gave into his hand all that was his.	*So Potiphar was pleased with Joseph and made him his personal servant. He also put him in charge of managing his household and taking care of everything else that he owned.*

ULT **So Joseph found favor in his eyes, and he served him**
UST So Potiphar was pleased with Joseph and made him his personal servant

Make sure that your translation of **in his eyes** refers here to Joseph's master, not Yahweh. In the second clause of the first sentence, the pronoun **he** refers to Joseph, while the pronoun **him** refers to Potiphar. Alternate translation: [Since Joseph pleased Potiphar, he became Potiphar's special servant]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And he put him in charge over his house and gave into his hand all {that} was his**
UST He also put him in charge of managing his household and taking care of everything {else} {that} he owned

Make sure your translation of the pronouns ("he," "him," and **his**) in verses 2 through 6 refers to the correct person at each point in the text. Also see how you translated the idiom "gave … into the hand of" in Genesis 32:16. Alternate translation: [He also put Joseph in charge of managing his household and taking care of everything else that he owned] or [He also appointed him as the overseer of his entire household and entrusted into his care everything that belonged to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
favor	So Potiphar was pleased with Joseph
served	servant
And he put him in charge	He also put him in charge of managing
house	his household

Genesis 39:5

ULT	UST
And it happened from the time he put him in charge in his house and over all that was his, then Yahweh blessed the house of the Egyptian because of Joseph. So the blessing of Yahweh was on all that was his, in the house and in the fields.	*From the time that Joseph's Egyptian owner did that, Yahweh blessed the household of that Egyptian man for Joseph's sake. He blessed everything that belonged to him, including everything in his home and in his fields.*

ULT **And it happened from the time**
UST From the time that

Alternate translation: [Beginning from the time that]

ULT **he put him in charge in his house and over all that was his**
UST Joseph's Egyptian owner did that

See how you translated "put him in charge … his house and … everything that was his" in verse 4. It is repeated in verse 5 in the Hebrew text to emphasize the authority that Joseph was given. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [he put him in charge of managing everything that belonged to him]

ULT **because of Joseph**
UST for Joseph's sake

Alternate translation: [because Joseph was working for him]

ULT **in the house and in the fields**
UST including {everything} in {his} home and in {his} fields

In this context, **house** especially refers to the people in the house and **fields** refers to what is in the fields. Alternate translation: [including everything in his household and in his fields] or [including his family and servants in his household, as well as the crops and livestock in his fields]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **So the blessing of Yahweh was on all that was his**
UST He blessed everything that belonged to him

Alternate translation: [Yahweh blessed everything that belonged to him] or [He caused everything that he owned to prosper]

ULT **then Yahweh blessed the house of the Egyptian**
UST Yahweh blessed the household of that Egyptian man

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this chapter that "Egyptian," "master," and "Potiphar" all refer to the same person, not two or three different people.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
he put … in charge	Joseph's Egyptian owner did that
house	Joseph's Egyptian owner did that
Yahweh	Yahweh
blessed	blessed
house	the household of
Egyptian	Egyptian
Joseph	Joseph
blessing	blessed
Yahweh	He blessed everything
house	including {everything} in {his} home

Genesis 39:6

ULT	UST
And he left all that belonged to him in the hand of Joseph, and he did not think to himself about anything except for the bread that he ate. Now Joseph was handsome in form and handsome in appearance.	*In fact, after Joseph's owner put him in charge of everything that he owned, he did not need to concern himself with anything in his household except for personal matters like deciding what kind of food he wanted to eat. Joseph was well-built and good-looking.*

ULT **And he left all that {belonged} to him in the hand of Joseph**
UST In fact, after Joseph's owner put him in charge of everything that he owned

See how you translated a similar idiom **gave into his hand** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [In fact, he gave Joseph the responsibility of managing everything that he had, so that]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he did not think to himself {about} anything except for the bread that he ate**
UST he did not {need to} concern himself with anything {in his household} except for {personal matters like} {deciding} what {kind of} food {he wanted} to eat

If it would appear in your language that the author was making a statement and then contradicting it, you could reword this as a positive statement. Potiphar did more than decide what to eat; that was just one example of personal decisions which were all he had to concern himself with. Alternate translation: [the only things he needed to decide about in his household were personal things like what food he wanted to eat]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

ULT **Now Joseph was handsome in form and handsome in appearance**
UST Joseph was well-built and good-looking

Some languages have a conjunction such as **Now** that introduces background information and a change of topic. For other languages a paragraph break is enough (without a conjunction). Alternate translation: [Joseph was muscular and good-looking] or [Now Joseph was a very handsome young man]
Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	him in charge of
he did … think	he did … need to concern himself with
bread	personal matters like {deciding} what {kind of} food
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 39:7

ULT	UST
And it happened after those things, then the wife of his master lifted her eyes toward Joseph and said, "Lie with me!"	*So after a while, his owner's wife started looking at him with desire and told him, "Come to bed with me!"*

ULT **And it happened after those things**
UST So after a while

The phrase **And it happened** introduces and emphasizes an important event. Many English translations do not include this phrase. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [After he had been there for a while]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **then the wife of his master lifted her eyes toward Joseph**
UST his owner's wife started looking at him with desire

Many languages have a similar idiom that fits well here.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and said**
UST and told him

Translate this quote introduction in a way that fits well with what Potiphar's wife says to Joseph. Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and demanded him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Lie with me**
UST Come to bed with me

See how you translated the idiom "lie with" in Genesis 19:32. Alternate translation: [Sleep with me!]
Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
master	his owner
Joseph	him

Genesis 39:8

ULT	UST
But he refused and said to the wife of his master, "Behold, with me here, my master does not think about what is in the house, and all that is his he has given into my hand.	*But Joseph refused and said to her, "Listen, because of me, my owner does not have to concern himself with anything that is in his house. In fact, he has put me in charge of everything that he owns,*

ULT **But he refused**
UST But Joseph refused

Alternate translation: [But he rejected her demand]

ULT **and said to the wife of his master**
UST and said to her

Alternate translation: [and told her]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold**
UST Listen

Alternate translation: [Look] or [Notice that]

ULT **with me here**
UST because of me

Alternate translation: [with me in charge] or [since I am working here]

ULT **my master does not think about**
UST my owner does not {have to} concern himself with

Alternate translation: [my owner does not need to worry about] or [my owner does not need to concern himself with]

ULT **what {is} in the house**
UST anything that {is} in {his} house

Alternate translation: [managing anything in his household]

ULT **and all that is his he has given into my hand**
UST In fact, he has put me in charge of everything that he owns

See how you translated the idiom "gave into … hand" in verse 4. Alternate translation: [In fact, everything that he owns he has entrusted to my care] or [In fact, he has put me in charge of everything that he has]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
master	her
master	my owner
does … think about	does … have to concern himself with
house	house

Genesis 39:9

ULT	UST
He is not greater than me in this house, and he has not withheld anything from me except for you, because you are his wife. So how can I do this great evil, and sin against God?"	*so that he has no one in his household who has more authority than I do. He has given me freedom with everything in his household, except you, of course, because you are his wife. So there is no way I would ever sin against God by doing such an evil thing!"*

ULT **He is not greater than me in this house**
UST so that he has no one in his household who has more authority than I do

By saying **He is not greater than me in this house**, Joseph means that Potiphar still had more authority than Joseph, but he had given Joseph authority to act in his place over everything in his household. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [As a result, even he does not exercise more authority in his household than I do]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and he has not withheld anything from me except for you, because you {are} his wife**
UST He has given me freedom with everything {in his household}, except you, {of course,} because you {are} his wife

Joseph is using a figure of speech here that emphasizes a positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with a mild expression that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could emphasize the positive meaning in a strong way. The phrase **has not withheld** emphasizes the freedom that Potiphar had given Joseph. Some languages must translate this in a way that does not use a negative word such as **not**. Alternate translation: [and he has given me freedom with everything in his household, except you, of course, because you are his wife]

Support Reference: Litotes

ULT **So how can I do this great evil, and sin against God**
UST So there is no way I would {ever} sin against God by doing such an evil thing

Joseph uses this rhetorical question to emphasize why he will not do what Potiphar's wife wants. Alternate translation: [So I refuse to do such an evil thing, which would be a terrible sin against God!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	in his household
evil	evil
sin	sin
God	God

Genesis 39:10

ULT	UST
And it happened, even though she kept speaking to Joseph day after day, yet he did not listen to her to lie beside her, to be with her.	*Day after day Potiphar's wife kept pressuring Joseph to go to bed with her, but he refused her requests and stayed away from her.*

ULT **And it happened, even though she kept speaking to Joseph day {after} day**
UST Day after day Potiphar's wife kept pressuring Joseph to go to bed with her

The phrase "And it happened" is used several times in this chapter (verses 5, 7, 10, 11, 13, 15, 18, 19) to introduce and emphasize important events and to increase suspense so that the audience wonders what the outcome will be. Many English translations have omitted this phrase, possibly for reasons of naturalness. Consider whether you have an expression like this that is natural in your language.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **yet he did not listen to her to lie beside her**
UST but he refused her requests

Alternate translation: [he did not do what she wanted, but refused to lie with her] or [he refused her demands]

ULT **to be with her**
UST and stayed away from her

Alternate translation: [and he stayed away from her] or [and would not even go near her]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
day	Day
day	Day

Genesis 39:11

ULT	UST
Then it happened on such a day that he went into the house to do his work, and there were no other men of the house there in the house.	*Then one day Joseph went to his owner's house as usual to do his work, but no other menservants from the household were there.*

ULT **Then it happened on such a day**
UST Then one day

Alternate translation: [But then on a day like that] or [But one such day] or [But one day]

ULT **and there were no other men of the house there in the house**
UST but no other menservants from the household were there

Alternate translation: [none of the other household menservants were there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	day
house	house
house	the household
house	בַּבַּיִת

Genesis 39:12

ULT	UST
So she caught him by his garment, saying, "Lie with me!" But he left his garment in her hand and fled and went outside.	*So Potiphar's wife saw her chance and grabbed hold of Joseph by his robe and demanded, "Come to bed with me!" But immediately he fled and left his robe in her hands as he ran outdoors.*

ULT **So she caught him by his garment**
UST So Potiphar's wife {saw her chance and} grabbed {hold of} Joseph by his robe

The word **garment** is very general and probably refers to an outer article of clothing, such as a robe or tunic.

ULT **saying**
UST and demanded

See how you translated this quote introduction in verse 7. Alternate translation: [and said to him] or [and said]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Lie with me**
UST Come to bed with me

See how you translated this quote in verse 7. Alternate translation: [Sleep with me!]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **But he left his garment in her hand and fled and went outside**
UST But {immediately} he fled and left his robe in her hands as he ran outdoors

Make sure your translation does not sound here like Joseph put his garment in her hands. Rather, it came off in her hands as he was fleeing. Alternate translation: [But immediately he fled and left his tunic behind in her hands as he ran outside] or [But he immediately got away from her and fled outdoors, leaving his tunic behind in her hands]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
So she caught him	So Potiphar's wife {saw her chance and} grabbed {hold of} Joseph

Genesis 39:13

ULT	UST
Then it happened when she saw that he had left his garment in her hands and had fled outside,	*As soon as she saw that Joseph had run outdoors and left his robe behind in her hands,*

ULT **Then it happened when she saw**
UST As soon as she saw

Alternate translation: [After she saw]

ULT **that he had left his garment in her hands and had fled outside**
UST that Joseph had run outdoors and left his robe {behind} in her hands

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 12. Alternate translation: [that Joseph had left his tunic behind in her hands as he ran outside] or [that Joseph had fled outside and left his tunic behind in her hands]
Support Reference: Information Structure

Genesis 39:14

ULT	UST
then she called for the men of her house and said to them, saying, "Look! He brought to us a Hebrew man to laugh at us! He came to me to lie with me, but I called out with a loud voice!	*she summoned the other menservants from her household. Then when they arrived, she exclaimed to them, "Look, my husband brought this Hebrew servant here among us to make fools of us! He came here to rape me, but I screamed loudly for help!*

ULT **then she called for the men of her house**
UST she summoned the {other} menservants from her household

See how you translated "men of the house" in verse 11. Alternate translation: [she called out for the other household menservants to come to her] or [she summoned the other menservants of her household to come]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and said to them, saying**
UST Then {when they arrived,} she exclaimed to them

Alternate translation: [Then when they came, she exclaimed to them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Look**
UST Look

As Potiphar's wife speaks, she is probably showing the servants Joseph's garment in her hands. Alternate translation: [Look at this!] or [See what happened!]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **He brought to us a Hebrew man**
UST my husband brought {this} Hebrew servant {here} among us

Make sure that your translation of **He brought** refers here to Potiphar (as verse 17 confirms), not Joseph. Alternate translation: [My husband brought this Hebrew slave here to us]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to laugh at us**
UST to make fools of us

In this context, **us** is general and includes Potiphar's wife and the people she is talking to. Alternate translation: [to mock us!]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **He came to me**
UST He came here

Make sure your translation of **He came** refers here to Joseph, not Potiphar (who was the subject of the previous sentence in the Hebrew text). Alternate translation: [That man came here to me]

ULT **to lie with me**
UST to rape me

Consider again how you translated the idiom **lie with** in the book of Genesis. See 19:32–35; 26:10; 30:15–16; 34:2, 7; 35:22; 39:7, 10, 12, 14. It may be necessary to translate this in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [to force me to lie with him]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **but I called out with a loud voice**
UST but I screamed loudly for help

Alternate translation: [but I cried out for help!] or [but I shouted loudly for help!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	she summoned
house	her household
Hebrew	Hebrew
to laugh	to make fools
but I called out	but I screamed … for help

Genesis 39:15

ULT	UST
Then it happened when he heard that I raised my voice and called out, then he left his garment beside me and fled and went outside!”	*Then as soon as he heard me scream like that, he left his robe with me and ran outdoors!”*

ULT **Then it happened when he heard**
UST Then as soon as he heard

Alternate translation: [Then when]

ULT **Then it happened when he heard that I raised my voice and called out**
UST Then as soon as he heard me scream like that

Alternate translation: [Then when he heard me cry out loudly] or [Then as soon as he heard me shout like that]

ULT **then he left his garment beside me and fled and went outside**
UST he left his robe with me and ran outdoors

See how you translated a similar clause in verses 12 and 13. Alternate translation: [he left his tunic with me and fled outside] or [he immediately fled outdoors and he left his tunic behind!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and called out	me scream like that

Genesis 39:16

ULT	UST
Then she kept his garment beside her until his master came to his house.	*So Potiphar's wife kept Joseph's robe with her until her husband, Joseph's owner, returned home.*

ULT **Then she kept**
UST So Potiphar's wife kept

Alternate translation: [So she kept]

ULT **Then she kept his garment beside her until his master came to his house**
UST So Potiphar's wife kept Joseph's robe with her until {her husband,} Joseph's owner, returned home

The pronoun **his** refers to twice to Joseph, and then once to Potiphar, who is both Joseph's master and her husband. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Then Potiphar's wife kept Joseph's garment beside her until Potiphar returned home]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **came to his house**
UST returned home

Alternate translation: [came back to his home] or [came home]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
master	her husband, Joseph's owner
house	home

Genesis 39:17

ULT	UST
Then she spoke to him according to those words, saying, "The Hebrew slave whom you brought to us came to me to laugh at me!	*Then she told him the same story. She said, "The Hebrew servant whom you brought among us came here to make a fool of me!*

ULT **Then she spoke to him**
UST Then she told him

Alternate translation: [Then when he arrived, she told him]

ULT **according to those words**
UST the same story

Alternate translation: [the same thing she had told the others]

ULT **saying**
UST She said

Alternate translation: [This is what she said:]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **The Hebrew slave whom you brought**
UST The Hebrew servant whom you brought

Alternate translation: [That Hebrew slave whom you brought]

ULT **to us**
UST among us

Here the pronoun **us** includes Potiphar, his wife and their household. Alternate translation: [to work for us]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **came to me to laugh at me**
UST came here to make a fool of me

See how you translated **laugh at** in verse 14. Alternate translation: [just now came to me to mock me!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hebrew	Hebrew
The … slave	servant
to laugh	to make a fool of me

Genesis 39:18

ULT	UST
Then it happened when I raised my voice and called out, then he left his garment beside me and fled outside!”	*But as soon as I screamed loudly, he left his robe with me and ran outdoors!”*

ULT **Then it happened when I raised my voice and called out**
UST But as soon as I screamed loudly

See how you translated verse 15, which is similar to verse 18. Alternate translation: [But as soon as I shouted loudly] or [But when I shouted for help]

ULT **then he left his garment beside me and fled outside**
UST he left his robe with me and ran outdoors

Consider again how you translated **garment** in verses 12–13, 15–16, 18. Alternate translation: [he left his tunic beside me and ran outside]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and called out	as soon as I screamed loudly

Genesis 39:19

ULT	UST
And it happened when his master heard the words of his wife that she spoke to him, saying, "Such are the things your slave did to me!" then his anger burned.	*When Joseph's owner heard what his wife said his servant had done to her, he became very angry.*

ULT **the words of his wife that she spoke to him, saying, "Such {are} the things your slave did to me**

UST what his wife said his servant had done to her

The pronouns used in **his wife** and **to him** both refer to Potiphar, not Joseph, but the pronoun used in **his master** refers to Joseph's master, Potiphar. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the words of Potiphar's wife that she spoke to Potiphar, saying, "Such {are} the things your slave did to me]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **then his anger burned**

UST he became very angry

Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [he burned with anger]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
master	Joseph's owner
your slave	servant

Genesis 39:20

ULT	UST
Then Joseph's master took him and put him in the round-house, the place where the prisoners of the king were bound. So he was there in the round-house,	*So he had soldiers arrest Joseph and put him in the prison where they kept people who had committed crimes against the king. Joseph remained there in prison,*

ULT **Then Joseph's master took him and put him in the round-house**
UST So he {had soldiers} arrest Joseph and put him in the prison

Both uses of the pronoun **him** refer to Joseph. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Potiphar probably had soldiers arrest Joseph for him, since he had the authority to do that as the captain of the guards. Alternate translation: [Then he had Joseph arrested and put in the jail]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the place where the prisoners of the king were bound**
UST where they kept people who had committed crimes against the king

Alternate translation: [where they imprisoned people who had committed crimes against the king]

ULT **So he was there in the round-house**
UST Joseph remained there in prison

Alternate translation: [So Joseph was there in the prison]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	he
master	he
king	king

Genesis 39:21

ULT	UST
but Yahweh was with Joseph and showed kindness to him and gave him favor in the eyes of the chief of the round-house.	*but Yahweh was with him and was kind to him and caused the prison warden to be pleased with him, so that he treated him well.*

ULT **and showed kindness to him**
UST and was kind to him

Alternate translation: [and was gracious to him]

ULT **and gave him favor in the eyes of the chief of the round-house**
UST and caused the prison warden to be pleased with him, so that he treated him well

See how you translated a similar phrase **favor in … eyes** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [and caused the prison warden to be pleased with him, so that he treated him favorably]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
Joseph	him
kindness	and was kind to him
favor	and caused … to be pleased with him, so that he treated him well
the chief of	the prison warden

Genesis 39:22

ULT	UST
And the chief of the round-house gave into the hand of Joseph all the prisoners who were in the round-house, and all that they were doing there, he was the one doing it.	*So before long the warden put Joseph in charge of all the other prisoners who were in that prison, so that he was the one who managed everything that they did there.*

ULT **And the chief of the round-house gave into the hand of Joseph**
UST So {before long} the warden put Joseph in charge of

Alternate translation: [Soon the warden of the prison gave Joseph the responsibility for taking care of]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **all the prisoners who {were} in the round-house**
UST all the {other} prisoners who {were} in that prison

Alternate translation: [all the other prisoners who were in the prison]

ULT **and all that they were doing there, he was {the one} doing it**
UST so that he {was the one who} managed everything that they did there

Alternate translation: [so that he was in charge of everything that was done there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chief of	the warden
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 39:23

ULT	UST
The chief of the round-house did not look at anything in his hand, because Yahweh was with him, and Yahweh made what he was doing successful.	*The warden did not need to pay attention to anything at all that Joseph was in charge of, because Yahweh was with Joseph and enabled him to succeed at everything he did.*

ULT **The chief of the round-house**
UST The warden

Alternate translation: [So the warden] or [As a result the jail warden]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **did not look {at} anything**
UST did not {need to} pay attention to anything at all

Alternate translation: [did not need to supervise anything]

ULT **in his hand**
UST that Joseph was in charge of

Alternate translation: [that Joseph was managing]

ULT **because Yahweh was with him**
UST because Yahweh was with Joseph

For some languages, it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, “Because/ Since Yahweh was with Joseph and helped him to succeed in whatever he did, the warden did not need to supervise/oversee anything that Joseph was in charge of.”
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and Yahweh made what he was doing successful**
UST and enabled him to succeed at everything he did

See how you translated a similar clause **Yahweh made all that he was doing successful** in verse 3. Alternate translation: [and gave him success in whatever he did] or [and helped him to succeed at everything he did]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The chief of	The warden
Yahweh	Yahweh
Yahweh	יְהוָה
made … successful	enabled him to succeed at

Genesis 40

Genesis 40:1

ULT	UST
Then it happened after those things that the cupbearer of the king of Egypt and the baker sinned against their lord, against the king of Egypt.	*Sometime after that, the head wine-server and the head baker disobeyed their master, who was Pharaoh, the king of Egypt.*

ULT **Then it happened after those things that**
UST Sometime after that

Alternate translation: [After some time, one day]

ULT **the cupbearer of the king of Egypt and the baker**
UST the {head} wine-server and the {head} baker

The chief cupbearer was one of Pharaoh's most trusted servants. He was in charge of serving Pharaoh anything that he wanted to drink, especially wine. It was his job to test the drink before Pharaoh had some, to make sure it was high quality and not poisoned. Some of that information could be put in a footnote. Also, it may be more natural to include here in verse 1 the fact that these were the head officials in these jobs, rather than wait until verse 2 to introduce that. Alternate translation: [the chief wine-server and the chief baker for the king over Egypt] or [the man who was in charge of those who served wine to the king over Egypt and the man who was in charge of those who baked bread for the king]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **sinned**
UST disobeyed

The text does not say what the officials did wrong that angered Pharaoh. They may have done their jobs poorly in some way. Translate this phrase in a way that fits this context well in your language. Alternate translation: [displeased] or [offended]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cupbearer	the {head} wine-server
king	מֶלֶךְ
Egypt	מִצְרַיִם
sinned	disobeyed
lord	master
king	king
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 40:2

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh broke out in anger against his two officials, against the chief of the cupbearers and against the chief of the bakers,	*As a result, King Pharaoh was furious with those two officers.*

ULT **And Pharaoh broke out in anger against**
UST As a result, {King} Pharaoh was furious with

Consider whether or not your language has an idiom similar to **broke out in anger** that fits well here. Alternate translation: [was very angry at]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **his two officials, against the chief of the cupbearers and against the chief of the bakers**
UST those two officers

It may be more natural to combine verses 1 and 2 and say, "Sometime after that, Pharaoh, the king of Egypt, became very angry at two of his officials, his chief wine-server and chief baker, because they had displeased him." In this case, you would also combine the verse numbers (1–2) to show it is a verse bridge combining two verses. Alternate translation: [the official in charge of serving wine to him and the official in charge of baking bread for him] or [his head wine-server and head baker] or [those two officials]
Support Reference: Verse Bridges

ULT **And Pharaoh broke out in anger**
UST As a result, {King} Pharaoh was furious

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Pharaoh (verse 2) is the same person as the king of Egypt (verse 1). See how you translated **Pharaoh** in Gen 12:15, and see the important note about this there. Alternate translation: [So he] or [So the king]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
And … broke out in anger	As a result … was furious
the chief of	שַׂר
cupbearers	הַמַּשְׁקִים
the chief of	שַׂר

Genesis 40:3

ULT	UST
and he put them in custody in the house of the chief of the guards, in the round-house, the place where Joseph was bound.	*So he had his soldiers arrest them and put them in prison at the captain over the guards' house, in the same prison where Joseph was.*

ULT and he put them
UST So he {had his soldiers arrest them and} put them

Often in the Bible (as here), when it says that a king (or someone else with authority) did something, it is implied that he had people who were under his authority actually do it. See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 39:20. Alternate translation: [So he had them arrested and put]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT in custody
UST in prison

Alternate translation: [under guard]

ULT in the house of the chief of the guards
UST at the captain over the guards' house

Apparently the round-house prison was part of the house where the chief of the guards lived and worked, perhaps a lower part (See: Joseph's use of the word "pit" in verse 15 to refer to this prison). See how you translated "chief/captain of the guards" in Genesis 37:36 and 39:1. Alternate translation: [in the house of the captain of the guards]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	house
the chief of	the captain over
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 40:4

ULT	UST
And the chief of the guards assigned Joseph to them, so he attended them, and they were in custody for days.	*There the captain over the guards appointed Joseph to take care of them, so he served them, and they remained in prison for some time.*

ULT **so he attended them**
UST so he served them

Alternate translation: [and so he waited on them]

ULT **and they were in custody**
UST and they remained in prison

Some translations begin a new paragraph and sentence here that continues into verse 5 and say, "After they had been in prison for a while, 5 one night the king's head wine-server and head baker dreamed …" Alternate translation: [and they were kept in custody] or [and they remained in custody]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **for days**
UST for some time

The phrase **for days** is a general expression that refers to an unspecified length of time. Alternate translation: [for some days] or [for a while]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chief of	the captain over
And … assigned	appointed
Joseph	Joseph
so he attended	served
days	for some time

Genesis 40:5

ULT	UST
Then the two of them dreamed a dream. Each had his own dream in the same night, and each man's dream had its own interpretation. They were the cupbearer and the baker who belonged to the king of Egypt, who were bound in the round-house.	*One night the king of Egypt's wine server and baker each had a dream while they were in prison. Each one's dream had its own meaning.*

ULT **Then the two of them dreamed a dream. Each {had} his {own} dream in the same night**

UST One night … each had a dream

Alternate translation: [Then one night the two of them each had a dream] or [One night they both had a dream]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and each {man's} dream had its own interpretation**

UST Each {one's} dream had its own meaning

Alternate translation: [and each of the dreams had its own meaning] or [each with its own meaning]

ULT **They were the cupbearer and the baker who {belonged} to the king of Egypt, who were bound in the round-house**

UST the king of Egypt's wine server and baker … while they were in prison

Many translations leave this sentence implied because it repeats information from the previous verses and may sound too repetitive. Or you could put this sentence earlier in this verse and say, "One night, the king of Egypt's wine server and baker each had a dream while they were in prison, and each man's/one's dream had its own interpretation/meaning." Make sure it is clear in your translation that the cupbearer and baker in verse 5 are the same officials as those in verses 2–4. Alternate translation: [This is talking about the wine-server and the baker, who had served the king of Egypt but were in prison]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dreamed	dream
dream	dream
dream	dream
dream	dream
interpretation	Each {one's} dream had its own meaning
cupbearer	wine server
king	king
Egypt	Egypt's

Genesis 40:6

ULT	UST
And Joseph came to them in the morning and saw them, and behold, they were upset.	*The next morning, when Joseph came to serve them, he noticed that they looked sad.*

ULT **And Joseph came to them in the morning and saw them, and behold**
UST The next morning, when Joseph came to {serve} them, he noticed that

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to have the time phrase **in the morning** first this verse. Alternate translation: [In the morning, Joseph came to serve them and was surprised to see that] or [The next morning, when Joseph came to serve them, he saw that]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **they were upset**
UST they looked sad

Alternate translation: [they were troubled] or [they looked distressed]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 40:7

ULT	UST
So he asked Pharaoh's officials who were with him in custody in the house of his master, saying, "Why are your faces sad today?"	*So he asked them, "Why do you look so unhappy today?"*

ULT **So he asked Pharaoh's officials who {were} with him in custody {in} the house of his master, saying**

UST So he asked them

Alternate translation: [And he asked them]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Why {are} your faces sad today**

UST Why do you look {so} unhappy today

Some languages have an idiom that fits well here. Do what is natural in your language.
Alternate translation: [Why do your faces look so downcast today?] or [Why do you look so sad today?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	them
officials	them
house	them
master	them
today	today

Genesis 40:8

ULT	UST
And they said to him, "We dreamed a dream, but there is no one to interpret it." Then Joseph said to them, "Do interpretations not belong to God? Please tell them to me."	*They answered him, "We each had a dream last night, but there is no one here who can tell us what our dreams mean." Joseph replied, "God is the only one who gives someone the ability to interpret the meaning of dreams. Please tell me what you dreamed."*

ULT **And they said to him**
UST They answered him

Alternate translation: [They replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **We dreamed a dream**
UST We {each} had a dream last night

Alternate translation: [Last night we each had a dream]

ULT **but {there is} no one to interpret it**
UST but there is no one {here} who can tell {us} what our dreams mean

Alternate translation: [but we do not have anyone here to explain them for us]

ULT **Then Joseph said to them**
UST Joseph replied

Alternate translation: [So Joseph replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Do interpretations not {belong} to God**
UST God is the {only} one who gives someone the ability to interpret the meaning of dreams

Joseph uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that God is the only one who interprets dreams. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [God is the only one who can explain the meaning of dreams] or [God is the only one who gives people the ability to interpret the meaning of dreams]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Please tell {them} to me**
UST Please tell me what you dreamed

Make sure that your translation of the last two sentences in this verse does not sound like Joseph is claiming to be God. Rather, he is saying that if the two officials tell their dreams to him, God will enable him to interpret the dreams. Alternate translation: [Please tell your dreams to me and God will reveal to me what they mean]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dreamed	We {each} had … last night
dream	dream
interpret	but there is no one {here} who can tell {us} what our dreams mean
Joseph	Joseph
interpretations	interpret
God	God

Genesis 40:9

ULT	UST
Then the chief of the cupbearers told his dream to Joseph and said to him, "And behold, in my dream a grapevine was before me,	*Then the head wine-server told Joseph what was in his dream. He said, "While I was dreaming, I saw a vine in front of me*

ULT **Then the chief of the cupbearers told his dream to Joseph**
UST Then the head wine-server told Joseph what was in his dream

See how you translated **chief of the cupbearers** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [So the head wine-server told Joseph what was in his dream] or [So the officer who was in charge over the wine-servers described to Joseph what he had seen in his dream]

ULT **and said to him**
UST He said

Alternate translation: [by saying] or [This is what he said:]

ULT **And behold, in my dream a grapevine**
UST While I was dreaming, I saw a vine

If grapevines and grapes are not known in your area, you could be more general in verses 9–11 and say "vine" and "fruit." See how you translated **vineyard** in Genesis 9:20. Alternate translation: [In my dream there was a vine] or [While I was dreaming, I saw a grapevine]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chief of	the head
cupbearers	wine-server
dream	dream
Joseph	Joseph
dream	dreaming
a grapevine	vine

Genesis 40:10

ULT	UST
and on the grapevine were three branches. Then while it was budding, its blossoms came out, and its clusters ripened into grapes.	*that had three branches. Soon buds started forming on the branches. Then the buds became flowers, and the flowers became bunches of ripe grapes.*

ULT **and on the grapevine {were} three branches**
UST that had three branches

Alternate translation: [The vine had three branches]

ULT **Then while it was budding**
UST Soon buds started forming on the branches

Alternate translation: [As soon as it started budding] or [Soon buds started forming on the vine Then]

ULT **its blossoms came out**
UST Then {the buds} became flowers

Alternate translation: [suddenly there were flowers] or [the buds became blossoms]

ULT **and its clusters ripened {into} grapes**
UST and the flowers became bunches of ripe grapes

Alternate translation: [and its clusters of flowers became clusters of ripe fruit] or [and the flowers became clusters of ripe fruit]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and on the grapevine	that had
grapes	grapes

Genesis 40:11

ULT	UST
Then the cup of Pharaoh was in my hand and I took the grapes and squeezed them into the cup of Pharaoh. Then I put the cup into the hand of Pharaoh."	*Next I was holding King Pharaoh's cup, and I picked grapes from the vine and squeezed juice from them into the cup. Then I handed the cup to Pharaoh and he drank from it."*

ULT **and I took the grapes**
UST and I picked grapes from the vine

Alternate translation: [so I picked some fruit from the vine]

ULT **and squeezed them**
UST and squeezed juice from them

Alternate translation: [and squeezed them so that the juice went]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
grapes	grapes
Pharaoh	פַּרְעֹה
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 40:12

ULT	UST
Then Joseph said to him, "This is its interpretation: The three branches are three days.	*Joseph said to him, "This is what your dream means: The three branches represent three days.*

ULT Then Joseph said to him
UST Joseph said to him

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph told him]

ULT This {is} its interpretation
UST This {is} what your dream means

Alternate translation: [This is the meaning of your dream:] or [Here is what your dream means:]

ULT The three branches {are} three days
UST The three branches {represent} three days

Alternate translation: [The three branches symbolize three days]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
interpretation	what your dream means
days	days

Genesis 40:13

ULT	UST
Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head and restore you to your position, and you will put Pharaoh's cup into his hand, according to the former custom when you were his cupbearer.	*In three days King Pharaoh will summon you and give you back your job, so that you will again serve wine to him, as you used to do when you were his wine-server.*

ULT **Within three days**
UST In three days

Alternate translation: [In three more days] or [Three days from now]

ULT **will lift up your head**
UST will summon you

The idiom **lift up your head** means that the wine-server will be summoned or brought out from the lowly or shameful place where he had been staying. Alternate translation: [will have you brought up out of prison]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and restore you to your position**
UST and give you back your job

Alternate translation: [and reappoint you to your previous work] or [and give you back your status]

ULT **and you will put Pharaoh's cup into his hand**
UST so that you will {again} serve wine to him

Alternate translation: [so that you will again serve wine to Pharaoh] or [so that you will again have the duty of serving him his cup of wine]

ULT **according to the former custom when you were his cupbearer**
UST as you used to do when you were his wine-server

Alternate translation: [as you used to do when you were his cupbearer] or [the way you did before as his cupbearer]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Pharaoh	to him
cupbearer	his wine-server

Genesis 40:14

ULT	UST
But if you remember me with you, when it goes well for you, then please show kindness to me, and mention me to Pharaoh, and get me out from this house.	*When you are out of prison and everything is going well for you, please remember that I was here with you, and please be kind to me and mention my situation to King Pharaoh so that he releases me from this prison.*

ULT **But if you remember me with you, when it goes well for you**
UST When {you are out of prison and} everything is going well for you, please remember that I was {here} with you

Alternate translation: [When you are out of prison and everything is going well for you, remember that I was here with you] or [Also, when you get out of prison and your life is good, remember how well I served you]

ULT **then please show kindness to me**
UST and please be kind to me

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **kindness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and please do me a favor] or [then please treat me kindly]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and mention me to Pharaoh**
UST and mention my situation to {King} Pharaoh

Make sure that the way Joseph refers to King Pharaoh sounds respectful in your translation. Alternate translation: [and tell King Pharaoh about me and how I was falsely accused]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **and get me out from this house**
UST so that he releases me from this prison

Alternate translation: [so that I can get out of this prison] or [so that he frees me from this prison]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
it goes well	you are out of prison and everything is going well
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 40:15

ULT	UST
For indeed, I was stolen from the land of the Hebrews. And also here I did not do anything that they should put me in the pit."	*People brought me here by force from the land where my people, the Hebrews, live. Even here in Egypt I have done nothing wrong to deserve being in a dungeon."*

ULT For indeed, I was stolen
UST People brought me {here} by force

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language to emphasize Joseph. Alternate translation: [Surely I was taken by force]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT from the land of the Hebrews
UST from the land where {my people,} the Hebrews, live

The Hebrew people were the descendants of Abraham (See: note at Genesis 14:13), and Joseph's people were known as **Hebrews** in Egypt (Genesis 39:14, 17). Their land, which God gave them, was the land of Canaan (Genesis 13:12, 14–15; 17:8, 23:19; 37:1). Some of that information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [from the land where the Hebrew people live]

ULT And also here
UST Even here in Egypt

Alternate translation: [And while I have been here in Egypt]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT I did not do anything
UST I have done nothing wrong

Alternate translation: [I have not done anything wrong]

ULT that they should put me in the pit
UST to deserve being in a dungeon

Alternate translation: [to be put into this prison] or [to deserve being in a prison]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
Hebrews	Hebrews
pit	in a dungeon

Genesis 40:16

ULT	UST
And the chief of the bakers saw that he interpreted favorably, so he said to Joseph, "I also was in my dream, and behold, there were three baskets of white bread on my head.	*When the head baker heard the positive meaning that Joseph gave for the first dream, he told him, "I also had a dream, and while I was dreaming, I saw three bread baskets stacked on my head.*

ULT **And the chief of the bakers saw that he interpreted favorably**
UST When the head baker heard the positive meaning that Joseph gave for the first dream

See how you translated a related word **interpreter** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [When the head baker heard Joseph explain that dream in a positive way] or [When the head baker heard the positive interpretation that Joseph gave for the first dream]

ULT **so he said to Joseph**
UST he told him

Alternate translation: [he said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I also {was} in my dream, and behold**
UST I also {had a dream}, and while I was dreaming, I saw

Alternate translation: [I also had a dream, and in it there were]

ULT **there were three baskets of white bread**
UST three bread baskets

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "three baskets full of white/fine bread/cakes" or "three bread baskets" or (2) "three white/wicker baskets." These baskets were open on top and were probably woven out of flexible strips of cane or willow branches.

ULT **on my head**
UST stacked on my head

These baskets would have been carried on the head, each one above the other. Alternate translation: [stacked on top of each other on my head]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chief of	head
interpreted	the positive meaning that Joseph gave for the first dream
favorably	the positive meaning that Joseph gave for the first dream
Joseph	him
dream	dreaming
bread	חֹרֵי

Genesis 40:17

ULT	UST
And in the top basket were all kinds of food for Pharaoh, baker's goods, but the birds were eating them out of the basket on my head."	*In the top basket there were many kinds of bread and cakes for King Pharaoh to eat, but some birds were gobbling them up from the basket."*

ULT **And in the top basket {were} all {kinds} of**
UST In the top basket {there were} many {kinds} of

Alternate translation: [The top basket was full of]

ULT **all {kinds} of food for Pharaoh, baker's goods**
UST many {kinds} of bread and cakes for {King} Pharaoh to eat

Make sure that the way the chief baker refers to King Pharaoh sounds respectful in your translation. Alternate translation: [all kinds of baked goods for King Pharaoh to eat] or [many kinds of special bread and cakes that had been made for King Pharaoh to eat]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **but the birds were eating them out of the basket on my head**
UST but {some} birds were gobbling them {up} from the basket

Alternate translation: [but some birds were eating everything up from the basket] or [but instead, some birds came and devoured all the food in the basket on my head]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 40:18

ULT	UST
Then Joseph responded and said, "This is its interpretation: The three baskets are three days.	*Joseph said to him, "This is what your dream means: The three baskets represent three days.*

ULT Then Joseph responded and said
UST Joseph said to him

Alternate translation: [Joseph told the baker]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT This {is} its interpretation
UST This {is} what your dream means

See how you translated this in verse 12. Alternate translation: [This is the meaning of your dream:] or [Here is what your dream means:]

ULT The three baskets {are} three days
UST The three baskets {represent} three days

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 12. Alternate translation: [The three baskets symbolize three days]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
interpretation	what your dream means
days	days

Genesis 40:19

ULT	UST
Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head from you and hang you on a tree, and the birds will eat your flesh from you."	*In three days King Pharaoh will have his soldiers chop off your head and impale your body on a sharp pole, where vultures will eat all your flesh off your bones."*

ULT **Within three days**
UST In three days

See how you translated this phrase in verse 13. Alternate translation: [Three days from now]

ULT **Pharaoh**
UST King Pharaoh

Alternate translation: [the king]

ULT **will lift up your head from you**
UST will {have his soldiers} chop off your head

This phrase seems to have a literal meaning here (of having the baker beheaded) in contrast to the meaning of **lift up your head** in verse 13 (where it means to summon from a lowly or shameful place). Make sure your translation of this phrase is accurate and clear in both contexts. Alternate translation: [will have his soldiers cut off your head] or [will have you beheaded]

ULT **and hang you on a tree**
UST and impale your body on a {sharp} pole

Alternate translation: [and hang your body on a stake]

ULT **and the birds will eat your flesh from you**
UST where vultures will eat {all} your flesh off your bones

These were birds such as vultures, buzzards, or condors, which eat carrion (dead animals); these were not birds that eat seeds or hunt live prey. You could use the name of a type of bird that is well-known in your language area. See how you translated **eating** in verse 17. Alternate translation: [and birds will eat all your flesh off your bones]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
hang	and impale

Genesis 40:20

ULT	UST
Then it happened on the third day, the day Pharaoh was born, that he made a feast for all his servants. And he lifted up the head of the chief of the cupbearers and the head of the chief of the bakers in the presence of his servants.	*Then sure enough, three days later it was King Pharaoh's birthday, and he invited all his officers to attend a banquet. During the banquet, he had soldiers bring his head wine-server and head baker to the banquet in front of all his other officers.*

ULT **Then it happened on the third day, the day Pharaoh was born**
UST Then sure enough, three days later {it was} {King} Pharaoh's birthday

The phrase **Then it happened** introduces and emphasizes a set of important events. Do what is natural in your language.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **that he made a feast for all his servants**
UST and he invited all his officers to attend a banquet

See how you translated **feast** or "banquet" in Genesis 21:8. Alternate translation: [he held a banquet for all of his officials to attend] or [he invited all his officials to attend a birthday feast]

ULT **And he lifted up the head of the chief of the cupbearers and the head of the chief of the bakers**
UST During the banquet, he {had soldiers} bring {his} head wine-server and head baker to the banquet

See how you translated similar clauses in verses 3 (See: note), 13, and 19, where Pharaoh had his soldiers do something. Also see how you translated "lifted up your head" in verse 13, where it has a similar meaning. Alternate translation: [During the feast he had soldiers bring his chief wine-server and chief baker out of prison to the banquet]

ULT **in the presence of his servants**
UST in front of {all} his {other} officers

Alternate translation: [in front of all his other officials] or [where all his other officers were]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	it was {King} Pharaoh's birthday
was born	it was {King} Pharaoh's birthday
feast	a banquet
servants	his officers
the chief of	his head
cupbearers	wine-server
the chief of	head
servants	all his {other} officers

Genesis 40:21

ULT	UST
Then he restored the chief of the cupbearers to his position, and he put the cup into the hand of Pharaoh,	*Then he returned the head wine-server to his former work, so that he again served wine to him.*

ULT Then he restored
UST Then he returned

See how you translated "restore … to … position" in verse 13. Alternate translation: [Then he reappointed]

ULT the chief of the cupbearers to his position
UST the head wine-server to his {former} work

Alternate translation: [the chief wine-server to his previous work]

ULT and he put the cup into the hand of Pharaoh
UST so that he {again} served wine to him

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 13. Alternate translation: [so that once again he served wine to him] or [so that once again he had the duty of serving him his cup of wine]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chief of	the head
cupbearers	wine-server
Pharaoh	him

Genesis 40:22

ULT	UST
but the chief of the bakers he hanged, just as Joseph had interpreted for them.	*But he had his soldiers execute the head baker and impale his body on a pole. Everything happened exactly the way Joseph had explained their dreams to them.*

ULT but the chief of the bakers he hanged

UST But he {had his soldiers execute} the head baker {and} impale his body on a pole

It is implied here that the baker was beheaded before his body was impaled on a stake (verse 19). Also, notice that **the chief of the bakers** is at the beginning of this clause in the Hebrew text to emphasize him and contrast him with what happened to the chief cupbearer. Do what is natural in your language. See how you translated "hang … on a tree" in verse 19. Alternate translation: [But as for the chief baker, Pharaoh had him executed and hanged on a tree] or [But Pharaoh had his soldiers behead the head baker and impale his body on a pole]

ULT just as Joseph had interpreted for them

UST Everything happened exactly the way Joseph had explained {their dreams} to them

Alternate translation: [Everything happened exactly the way Joseph had interpreted their dreams to them] or [which was exactly what Joseph had said would happen]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chief of	head
hanged	and impale his body on a pole
Joseph	Joseph
interpreted	had explained their dreams

Genesis 40:23

ULT	UST
However, the chief of the cupbearers did not remember Joseph but forgot him.	*However the head wine-server completely forgot about Joseph and did not remember to tell Pharaoh about him.*

ULT **However, the chief of the cupbearers did not remember Joseph but forgot him**
UST However the head wine-server {completely} forgot about Joseph and did not remember {to tell Pharaoh about} him

Alternate translation: [But the chief cupbearer did not remember to tell Pharaoh about Joseph, but instead, he forgot about him] or [… completely forgot about Joseph and did not remember to tell Pharaoh about him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chief of	head
cupbearers	the … wine-server
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 41

Genesis 41:1

ULT	UST
Then it happened at the end of two years of days that Pharaoh was dreaming and behold, he was standing beside the river.	*Two whole years later, King Pharaoh had a dream. In the dream he saw himself standing beside the Nile River.*

ULT **Then it happened {at} the end of two years of days**
UST Two whole years later

Alternate translation: [After two full years had passed] or [Two complete years later]

ULT **that Pharaoh was dreaming and behold, he was standing**
UST King Pharaoh had a dream. {In the dream} he saw himself standing

See how you translated **Pharaoh** in Genesis 40:2. Alternate translation: [King Pharaoh dreamed that he was standing]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **beside the river**
UST beside the {Nile} River

This phrase usually refers to the Nile River, which was the most important river in Egypt and was so well known by everyone there that it was referred to as **the river**. See how you translated a different Hebrew word for **river** in Genesis 36:37.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
days	Two whole years later
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
dreaming	dream
the river	Nile} River

Genesis 41:2

ULT	UST
Then behold, from the river came up seven cows, fine-looking and fat-fleshed, and they grazed among the reeds.	*Suddenly, seven healthy-looking, fat cows walked up out of the river and started eating the tall grass beside the river.*

ULT **Then behold**
UST Suddenly

Alternate translation: [Then suddenly] or [Then he saw that]

ULT **from the river came up seven cows, fine-looking and fat-fleshed**
UST seven healthy-looking, fat cows walked up out of the river

Make sure your translation does not sound like the cows rose up out of the water into the air. Also see how you translated **cows** in Genesis 32:15. Alternate translation: [seven cows that were healthy-looking and well-fed came up out of the river onto the bank] or [seven healthy-looking, well-fed cows came up out of the river onto the bank]

ULT **and they grazed among the reeds**
UST and started eating the tall grass beside the river

Alternate translation: [and started grazing on the grass that was there] or [and started eating the marsh grass beside the river]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the river	the river
cows	cows
reeds	the tall grass beside the river

Genesis 41:3

ULT	UST
Then behold, seven other cows came up after them from the river, ugly-looking and thin-fleshed, and they stood beside the other cows on the bank of the river.	*Next he saw that seven sickly-looking, scrawny cows walked up out of the river and stood next to the first cows on the river bank.*

ULT **Then behold**
UST Next he saw that

Alternate translation: [Then suddenly] or [Then he saw that]

ULT **seven other cows came up after them from the river, ugly-looking and thin-fleshed**
UST seven sickly-looking, scrawny cows walked up out of the river

Alternate translation: [seven cows that were sickly-looking and skinny walked up out of the river] or [seven sickly-looking, skinny cows came up out of the river]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and they stood beside the {other} cows**
UST and stood next to the {first} cows

Alternate translation: [and stood next to the healthy cows]

ULT **on the bank of the river**
UST on the river bank

Consider again how you refer to **the river** in verses 1–3. If you refer to it as "the Nile River" in verse 1, it may be more natural to refer to it as **the river** after that.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cows	cows
the river	the river
ugly-looking	sickly-looking
cows	cows
the river	river

Genesis 41:4

ULT	UST
Then the ugly-looking and thin-fleshed cows ate the seven fine-looking and fat cows, and Pharaoh woke up.	*Then the sickly-looking, scrawny cows devoured the seven healthy-looking, fat cows. Just then Pharaoh woke up.*

ULT Then the ugly-looking and thin-fleshed cows ate
UST Then the sickly-looking, scrawny cows devoured

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: [Then the sickly-looking, skinny cows devoured] or [Then the cows that were sickly-looking and scrawny ate down]

ULT the seven fine-looking and fat cows
UST the seven healthy-looking, fat cows

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: [the seven healthy-looking, well-fed cows] or [the seven cows that were healthy-looking and fat]

ULT and Pharaoh woke up
UST Just then Pharaoh woke up

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Pharaoh at each point/occurrence in this chapter. Alternate translation: [Just then King Pharaoh woke up] or [After that, the king woke up]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ugly-looking	sickly-looking
cows	cows
cows	cows
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 41:5

ULT	UST
Then he fell asleep and dreamed a second time. And behold, seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, fat and good.	*Then he went back to sleep and had a second dream. This time he saw seven plump, well-formed heads of grain growing on the same plant.*

ULT **Then he fell asleep**
UST Then he went {back} to sleep

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh] or [Then the king]

ULT **Then he fell asleep**
UST Then he went {back} to sleep

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh went to sleep again] or [The king went back to sleep]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and dreamed a second time**
UST and had a second dream

Alternate translation: [and started dreaming again]

ULT **And behold**
UST This time he saw

Alternate translation: [In this dream there were]

ULT **seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, fat and good**
UST seven plump, well-formed heads of grain growing on the same plant

The phrase **heads of grain** is one word in the Hebrew text. Consider whether it is better in your language to use a word or phrase to translate this. Alternate translation: [seven big beautiful heads of grain growing on the same stem]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dreamed	dream
grain	grain
on … stalk	on the … plant
good	well-formed

Genesis 41:6

ULT	UST
Then behold, seven heads of grain, thin and scorched by the east wind, sprouted after them.	*Suddenly, seven small heads of grain that the hot desert wind had dried out started growing on the same plant beside the first heads.*

ULT **Then behold**
UST Suddenly

Alternate translation: [Then suddenly] or [Next he saw that]

ULT **seven heads of grain, thin and scorched {by} the east wind**
UST seven small heads of grain that the {hot} desert wind had dried out

This wind was from the desert in the east, so it was hot and dry. Alternate translation: [seven shriveled heads of grain that were dried out by the hot east wind] or [seven shriveled heads of grain that the hot east wind had dried out]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **sprouted**
UST started growing

Alternate translation: [grew up] or [were growing]

ULT **after them**
UST on the same plant beside the first heads

Consider whether it is better in your language to refer to the first heads here with a pronoun (**them**) or a noun phrase. Alternate translation: [next to them on the same stalk] or [on the same stalk beside the well-formed heads]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grain	grain

Genesis 41:7

ULT	UST
Then the thin heads of grain swallowed up the seven fat and full heads. Then Pharaoh woke up, and behold, it was a dream.	*Next, the small heads of grain gobbled up the seven big, well-formed heads. At that point, Pharaoh woke up and realized that he had been dreaming.*

ULT **Then the thin heads of grain swallowed up**
UST Next, the small heads of grain gobbled up

See how you translated **thin** in verse 6 and **heads of grain** in verses 5–6. Alternate translation: [Next, the shriveled heads of grain devoured] or [… ate up]

ULT **the seven fat and full heads**
UST the seven big, well-formed heads

The word **full** here describes heads of grain that have many seeds in them. See how you translated **fat** in verse 5. Alternate translation: [the seven plump, well-formed heads]

ULT **Then Pharaoh woke up**
UST At that point, Pharaoh woke up

See how you translated this clause in verse 4. Alternate translation: [Just then Pharaoh woke up] or [After that, Pharaoh woke up]

ULT **and behold, {it was} a dream**
UST and realized that {he had been} dreaming

Alternate translation: [and suddenly knew that he had been dreaming]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grain	grain
the … heads	the … heads
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
dream	dreaming

Genesis 41:8

ULT	UST
And it happened in the morning that his spirit was agitated, so he sent and called for all the magicians of Egypt and all its wise men. Then Pharaoh told his dreams to them, but no one could interpret them for Pharaoh.	*The next morning Pharaoh was upset about the dreams, so he had servants summon all the sorcerers and other scholars in the country of Egypt. When they arrived, he told them what he had dreamed, but none of them was able to explain to him what the dreams meant.*

ULT **And it happened in the morning**
UST The next morning

The author is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development. Alternate translation: [In the morning it happened]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **that his spirit was agitated**
UST Pharaoh was upset about the dreams

Alternate translation: [Pharaoh felt upset about the dreams]

ULT **so he sent and called for**
UST so he had {servants} summon

Alternate translation: [so he sent servants to summon] or [so he had messengers summon]

ULT **Then Pharaoh told his dreams to them**
UST When they arrived, he told them what he had dreamed

Alternate translation: [When they arrived, Pharaoh told them what he had dreamed] or [Then he related to them what he had seen in his dreams]

ULT **but no one**
UST but none of them

Alternate translation: [but none of those men]

ULT **could interpret them for Pharaoh**
UST was able to explain to him {what} the dreams meant

Alternate translation: [could tell him what the dreams meant]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
spirit	Pharaoh
that … was agitated	was upset about the dreams
called	summon
magicians	the sorcerers
Egypt	Egypt
wise men	other scholars in
Pharaoh	he
dreams	dreamed
interpret	was able to explain … what the dreams meant
Pharaoh	to him

Genesis 41:9

ULT	UST
Then the chief of the cupbearers spoke with Pharaoh, saying, "Today I remember my offenses.	*Then the head wine-server said to Pharaoh, "Sir, today I remember the time when I offended you.*

ULT **the chief of the cupbearers**
UST the head wine-server

Consider again how you translated **chief of the cupbearers** and "cupbearer" in the book of Genesis. See 40:1–2, 5, 9, 13, 20–21, 23; 41:9. Alternate translation: [But the head wine-server]

ULT **Then the chief of the cupbearers spoke with Pharaoh, saying**
UST Then the head wine-server said to Pharaoh

Consider again how you translated **chief of the cupbearers** and "cupbearer" in the book of Genesis. See 40:1–2, 5, 9, 13, 20–21, 23; 41:9. Alternate translation: [But the head wine-server spoke up and said to Pharaoh] or [But the head wine-server said to Pharaoh]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Today I remember**
UST Sir, today I remember

For many languages, it is necessary to use a respectful title to address a person of high status such as Pharaoh. Alternate translation: [Your Majesty, I now recall]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **my offenses**
UST the time when I offended you

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "the time when I offended/displeased/wronged you." or (2) "something important I failed/forgot to do." The second interpretation refers to the cupbearer forgetting to tell Pharaoh about Joseph. Alternate translation: [my sins]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chief of	head
cupbearers	the … wine-server
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Today	Sir, today
my offenses	the time when I offended you

Genesis 41:10

ULT	UST
Pharaoh broke out in anger against his servants, and he put me in custody in the house of the chief of the guards, me and the chief of the bakers.	*Some time ago, King Pharaoh, you were angry with your officials, including me and the head baker, and you put us in prison at the captain of the guards' house.*

ULT **Pharaoh broke out in anger against**
UST Some time ago, {King} Pharaoh, you were angry with

The events in verses 10–13 had happened two years earlier (verse 1); chapter 40 gives the details about those events. See how you translated the idiom **broke out in anger against** in Genesis 40:2. Alternate translation: [Some time ago, King Pharaoh, you were very angry at]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **his servants, and he put**
UST your officials … and you put

In verses 10 and 13, the cupbearer uses third person (Pharaoh, his, he) to show respect for Pharaoh. For some languages, it is confusing to do that, so second person ("you … your …you …") must be used instead. Some languages have an honorific such as "your Majesty" that could be used occasionally in these verses instead of third person. Alternate translation: [your officers, and you put]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and he put me in custody {in} the house of the chief of the guards, me and the chief of the bakers**
UST including me and the head baker, and you put us in prison at the captain of the guards' house

See how you translated "put … in custody in the house of the chief of the guards" in Genesis 40:3. Also consider again how you translated **chief of the bakers** and "baker" in the book of Genesis. See 40:1–2, 4–5, 16–17, 20, 22; 41:10, 13. Alternate translation: [and he put the head baker and me in the prison that is in the house of the captain of the guards]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
servants	your officials
house	house
the chief of	the captain of
the chief of	the head

Genesis 41:11

ULT	UST
And we dreamed a dream in the same night, he and I; each of us dreamed according to the interpretation of his dream.	*While we were there, one night we each had a dream, and each of our dreams had a different meaning.*

ULT **And we dreamed a dream in the same night, he and I**
UST While we were there, one night we {each} had a dream

See how you translated a similar sentence in Genesis 40:5. In verses 11–13, the pronouns **we** and **us** exclude Pharaoh. Alternate translation: [One time while we were there, we each dreamed a dream during the same night]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **each of us dreamed according to the interpretation of his dream**
UST and each of our dreams had a different meaning

Consider again how you translated **interpretation** in Genesis 40:5, 8, 12, 18; 41:11 and the related verb "interpret" in Genesis 40:16, 22. Alternate translation: [and each of our dreams had its own meaning]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dreamed	While we were there … had
dream	dream
dreamed	dreams
interpretation	and each of our dreams had a different meaning
dream	dreams

Genesis 41:12

ULT	UST
Now there with us was a young Hebrew man, a servant for the chief of the guards. And we told our dreams to him, and he interpreted our dreams for us. He interpreted for each according to his dream.	*There was a young Hebrew man with us who was a servant for the captain over the guards. After we told him our dreams, he explained them to us. He told us what each of our dreams meant.*

ULT **Now there with us {was} a young Hebrew man**
UST There was a young Hebrew man with us

Translate "young … man" in a way that fits with the fact that Joseph was 30 years old (verse 46) and was not yet married.

ULT **a servant for the chief of the guards**
UST who was a servant for the captain over the guards

Consider again how you translated **chief of the guards** in the book of Genesis. See 37:36; 39:1; 40:3–4; 41:10, 12. Alternate translation: [who was a servant for the captain of the guards]

ULT **And we told {our dreams} to him**
UST After we told him our dreams

Consider again how you translated **told** in the book of Genesis. See 24:66; 29:13; 37:9–10; 40:8–9; 41:8, 12. Alternate translation: [After we described our dreams to him]

ULT **and he interpreted our dreams for us**
UST he explained them to us

Alternate translation: [he told us what they meant]

ULT **He interpreted {for} each according to his dream**
UST He told us what each of our dreams meant

Alternate translation: [He told each of us the meaning of our dreams]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Hebrew	Hebrew
servant	servant
for the chief of	for the captain over
interpreted	he explained
dreams	them
interpreted	He told us what each of our dreams meant
dream	dreams

Genesis 41:13

ULT	UST
And it happened, just as he interpreted for us, so it happened: me he restored to my position, and him he hanged."	*And sure enough, everything happened exactly the way he had explained the dreams to us: you returned me to my former work as your wine-server, and you had your soldiers execute the baker."*

ULT **And it happened, just as he interpreted for us, so it happened**
UST And sure enough, everything happened exactly the way he had explained {the dreams} to us

Alternate translation: [And sure enough, everything happened exactly the way he had interpreted the dreams to us:]

ULT **me he restored to my position**
UST you returned me to my {former} work as your wine-server

See how you translated "restored to … position" in Genesis 40:21. Alternate translation: [you reinstated me to my previous work as your cupbearer]

ULT **and him he hanged**
UST and you {had your soldiers} execute the baker

Consider again whether you referred to Pharaoh in third person (**he**) or second person **you** in verses 10 and 13. Also see how you translated "hanged/impaled on a tree/pole" in Genesis 40:22. Alternate translation: [but you had your soldiers execute the baker and hang his body on a pole] or [but you had your soldiers execute the baker]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
interpreted	he had explained the dreams
hanged	you {had your soldiers} execute

Genesis 41:14

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh sent and called for Joseph. So they quickly brought him from the pit. Then he shaved and changed his clothes and came to Pharaoh.	*When Pharaoh heard that, immediately he had servants summon Joseph. So they went right away and got him out of the prison. Then after he shaved his head and face and changed into appropriate clothing, he went before Pharaoh.*

ULT **Then Pharaoh sent and called for Joseph**
UST When Pharaoh heard that, {immediately} he had {servants} summon Joseph

See how you translated **sent and called for** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Immediately Pharaoh sent servants to summon Joseph] or [When Pharaoh heard that, immediately he had messengers summon Joseph]

ULT **So they quickly brought him from the pit**
UST So they went right away and got him out of the prison

See how you translated **pit** in Genesis 40:15. Alternate translation: [So they hurriedly got Joseph out of the dungeon] or [So they went right away and got …]

ULT **Then he shaved and changed his clothes**
UST Then after he shaved {his head and face} and changed into appropriate clothing

Since Joseph lived in Egypt and Egyptian men kept their heads and faces clean-shaven, Joseph probably also shaved his head and his face. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to make this implied information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then he shaved his head and face, changed into suitable clothes and] or [Then after he shaved his head and face and changed into clean clothing, he]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and came to Pharaoh**
UST he went before Pharaoh

Your choice of **came** versus "went" in this context depends on whose perspective you take: **came** reflects things from Pharaoh's point of view, and "went" reflects things from Joseph's point of view. Do what is most natural in your language. Alternate translation: [came before Pharaoh]

Support Reference: Go and Come

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
called	When Pharaoh heard that, {immediately} he had {servants} summon
Joseph	Joseph
pit	the prison
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 41:15

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I dreamed a dream, but no one could interpret it. But I heard about you, saying that you hear a dream and are able to interpret it."	*Then Pharaoh said to him, "I had a dream, but no one has been able to explain to me what it means. But someone told me about you, that when you hear a dream, you are able to explain what it means."*

ULT **Then Pharaoh said to Joseph**
UST Then Pharaoh said to him

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh told him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **but no one could interpret it**
UST but no one has been able to explain {to me} what it means

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 40:8.

ULT **But I heard about you, saying**
UST But someone told me about you

Alternate translation: [But I was told]

ULT **that you hear a dream {and are able} to interpret it**
UST that when you hear a dream, {you are able} to explain what it means

Consider again how you translated **interpret** and "interpreter" throughout the book of Genesis. See 40:8, 16, 22; 41:8, 12, 13, 15, 16. Alternate translation: [that when you hear a dream, you are able to interpret what it means] or [that when someone tells you a dream, you are able to interpret its meaning]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Joseph	him
dreamed	I had
dream	dream
interpret	but no one has been able to explain {to me} what it means
dream	dream
interpret	you are able to explain what it means

Genesis 41:16

ULT	UST
And Joseph responded to Pharaoh, saying, "It is not in me; God will answer with Pharaoh's peace."	*Joseph replied to him, "Sir, I do not have that ability on my own, but God will explain your dream so that you, King Pharaoh, will have peace in your heart."*

ULT **And Joseph responded to Pharaoh, saying**
UST Joseph replied to him

Alternate translation: [Joseph replied to Pharaoh]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **It is not in me**
UST Sir, I do not have that ability on my own

Make sure your translation of Joseph's response sounds respectful. See what you did in verse 9. Alternate translation: [Your Majesty, I cannot do that by myself]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **God will answer**
UST but God will explain your dream

Alternate translation: [but God will interpret your dream]

ULT **with Pharaoh's peace**
UST so that {you,} {King} Pharaoh, will have peace in your heart

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to use Pharaoh's name at the beginning of this quote (instead of here) and say, "King Pharaoh, I do not have that ability…" Alternate translation: [for your well-being King Pharaoh] or [so that you, King Pharaoh, will have peace in your spirit]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Pharaoh	him
God	God
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
peace	peace

Genesis 41:17

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh spoke to Joseph, "In my dream, behold, I was standing on the bank of the river.	*So Pharaoh told Joseph, "As I was dreaming, I saw myself standing beside the Nile River.*

ULT Then Pharaoh spoke to Joseph
UST So Pharaoh told Joseph

Alternate translation: [So Pharaoh told him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT In my dream, behold, I was standing
UST As I was dreaming, I saw myself standing

Alternate translation: [I dreamed that I was standing]

ULT on the bank of the river
UST beside the {Nile} River

See how you translated "the Nile River" in verse 1. Since this is the first time that Pharaoh mentions **the river** to Joseph, consider whether this is a good place in your translation to make it explicit again that this is the Nile River. Alternate translation: [on the bank of the Nile River]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Joseph	Joseph
dream	dreaming
the river	Nile} River

Genesis 41:18

ULT	UST
Then behold, from the river came up seven cows, fat-fleshed and of fine form, and they grazed among the reeds.	*Then suddenly, seven fat, healthy-looking cows walked up out of the river onto the bank and started eating the tall grass that was there.*

ULT **Then behold**
UST Then suddenly

Compare how you translated verse 2, which is similar but not identical to verse 18. Alternate translation: [Then I saw that]

ULT **from the river came up seven cows, fat-fleshed and of fine form**
UST seven fat, healthy-looking cows walked up out of the river onto the bank

Alternate translation: [seven cows that were fat and healthy-looking came up out of the river onto the bank] or [seven well-fed, healthy-looking cows came up out of the river onto the bank]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and they grazed among the reeds**
UST and started eating the tall grass that was there

Alternate translation: [and started grazing on]

ULT **among the reeds**
UST the tall grass that was there

Alternate translation: [the plants that were there] or [the tall grass beside the river]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the river	the river
cows	cows
reeds	the tall grass that was there

Genesis 41:19

ULT	UST
Then behold, seven other cows came up after them, poor and very ugly of form and thin-fleshed. I have not seen cows as ugly as those in all the land of Egypt!	*Suddenly seven other cows walked up out of the river behind the first cows; they were in terrible condition, very sickly-looking and scrawny. In fact, I have never seen such awful-looking cows anywhere in the land of Egypt!*

ULT **Then behold**
UST Suddenly

See how you translated verse 3, which is similar to the first half of verse 19. Alternate translation: [Then suddenly] or [Next I saw that]

ULT **seven other cows came up after them**
UST seven other cows walked up {out of the river} behind the first cows

Alternate translation: [seven other cows came up out of the river behind the first cows;]

ULT **poor and very ugly of form and thin-fleshed**
UST they were in terrible condition, very sickly-looking and scrawny

For some languages it is more natural to put this information earlier in this sentence and say, "Then behold, seven poor/weak, very sickly-looking, scrawny cows came up out of the river behind the first cows/ones." Alternate translation: [they were in horrible condition, very sickly-looking and scrawny]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **I have not seen**
UST In fact, I have never seen

Alternate translation: [In fact, I have not seen]

ULT **cows as ugly as those**
UST such awful-looking cows

Alternate translation: [cows in such bad condition]

ULT **in all the land of Egypt**
UST anywhere in the land of Egypt

Alternate translation: [in the whole country of Egypt!] or [anywhere in the country of Egypt!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
cows	cows
and … ugly of	sickly-looking
cows as ugly	awful-looking cows
land	land
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 41:20

ULT	UST
Then the thin and ugly cows ate the first seven fat cows.	*Then the scrawny, sickly cows devoured the seven fat ones.*

ULT **Then the thin and ugly cows ate**
UST Then the scrawny, sickly cows devoured

See how you translated **ate** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [Then the skinny, unhealthy cows devoured] or [Then the cows that were scrawny and sickly swallowed up]

ULT **the first seven fat cows**
UST the seven fat ones

See how you translated **fat** or "fat-fleshed" in verses 2, 4, 18 and 20. Alternate translation: [the seven well-fed cows]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and ugly	sickly
cows	cows
cows	the … ones

Genesis 41:21

ULT	UST
So they went into their bellies, but it could not be known that they had gone into their bellies, and their appearance was just as ugly as at the beginning. Then I woke up.	*But even after they had swallowed them, no one would ever know that they had devoured them, because they still looked just as terrible as before. That's when I woke up.*

ULT **So they went into their bellies, but it could not be known**
UST But {even} after they had swallowed them, no one would {ever} know

Alternate translation: [But even after they had eaten them, no one would ever know] or [But although the scrawny cows had swallowed the fat ones, it could not be seen]

ULT **that they had gone into their bellies**
UST that they had devoured them

Alternate translation: [that they had eaten them]

ULT **and their appearance {was} just as ugly as at the beginning**
UST because they {still} looked just as terrible as before

Alternate translation: [because they still looked just as scrawny as they had before]

ULT **Then I woke up**
UST That's when I woke up

Alternate translation: [At that point, I woke up]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
known	know
was just as ugly as	just as terrible as

Genesis 41:22

ULT	UST
Then I saw in my dream, and behold, seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, full and good.	*Then I went back to sleep and had another dream. This time I saw that there were seven big, well-formed heads of grain growing on the same plant.*

ULT **Then I saw in my dream, and behold**
UST Then I {went back to sleep and} had {another} dream. {This time} I saw that there were

Alternate translation: [Then I fell asleep again and continued dreaming. This time I saw that there were] or [Then I went back to sleep and had another dream. In this dream there were]

ULT **seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, full and good**
UST seven big, well-formed heads of grain growing on the same plant

See how you translated verse 5, which is similar to verse 22. Alternate translation: [seven heads of grain growing on a single plant. They were full of ripe grain kernels] or [seven full beautiful heads of grain growing on the same stalk]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dream	dream
grain	grain
on … stalk	on the … plant
good	well-formed

Genesis 41:23

ULT	UST
Then behold, seven heads of grain, withered, thin and scorched by the east wind sprouted after them.	*Then suddenly, seven small heads of grain sprouted on the same plant next to the first heads. These had wilted because the hot desert wind had dried them out.*

ULT Then behold
UST Then suddenly

See how you translated verse 6, which is similar to verse 23. Alternate translation: [Next I saw that]

ULT seven heads of grain, withered, thin {and} scorched {by} the east wind
UST seven small heads of grain … These had wilted because the {hot} desert wind had dried them out

Alternate translation: [seven heads of grain that were small and withered because they were dried out by the hot east wind] or [seven small, withered heads of grain that the hot east wind had dried out]

ULT sprouted
UST sprouted

Alternate translation: [grew up] or [were growing]

ULT after them
UST on the same plant next to the first heads

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of phrases in this verse and say, “Then seven small heads of grain sprouted on the same plant next to the first heads/ones. These had withered/wilted because the hot east/desert wind had dried them out.” Alternate translation: [next to them on the same stalk] or [on the same stalk beside the first heads]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grain	grain

Genesis 41:24

ULT	UST
Then the thin heads of grain swallowed up the seven good heads of grain. And I told this to the magicians, but no one could explain it to me."	*Then the small heads of grain gobbled up the seven well-formed ones. I told my dreams to my sorcerers, but none of them could explain to me what the dreams meant."*

ULT **Then the thin heads of grain swallowed up**
UST Then the small heads of grain gobbled up

See how you translated the first half of verse 7, which is similar to the first half of verse 24. Alternate translation: [Then the small heads of grain ate up] or [… swallowed down] or […devoured]

ULT **the seven good heads of grain**
UST the seven well-formed ones

See how you translated **good** in verses 5 and 22. Alternate translation: [the seven beautiful heads]

ULT **And I told {this} to the magicians**
UST I told {my dreams} to {my} sorcerers

See how you translated **magicians** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [I told my dreams to my magicians]

ULT **but no one {could} explain {it} to me**
UST but none of them could explain to me what the dreams meant

See how you translated a different Hebrew word that means **explain** or "interpret" in verse 8. Alternate translation: [but they could not explain them for me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grain	grain
good	well-formed
grain	the … ones
magicians	my sorcerers
could explain it	could explain … what the dreams meant

Genesis 41:25

ULT	UST
Then Joseph said to Pharaoh, "Pharaoh's dreams are one. What God is doing, he has shown to Pharaoh.	*Then Joseph told King Pharaoh, "Your Majesty, both of your dreams mean the same thing. Through them, God is revealing to you what he is going to do.*

ULT Then Joseph said to Pharaoh
UST Then Joseph told {King} Pharaoh

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph responded to Pharaoh]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Pharaoh's dreams {are} one
UST Your Majesty, {both of} your dreams mean the same thing

In verses 25, 28, 32–35, Joseph uses third person ("Pharaoh … his … he…") to show respect for Pharaoh. For some languages, it is confusing to do that, so second person ("you … your… you …") must be used instead. Some languages have an honorific such as "your Majesty/ Honor" that could be used occasionally in these verses instead of third person. Also see what you did in verses 10 and 13. Alternate translation: [Your Highness, both of your dreams have the same thing meaning]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT What God is doing, he has shown to Pharaoh
UST Through them, God is revealing to you what he is going to do

The Hebrew text emphasizes "what God is doing" by putting that phrase first in the sentence. Consider what is the most natural phrase order for this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [Through them, God is showing to you what he will do] or [God has revealed to you, King Pharaoh, what he is planning to do]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Pharaoh	Your Majesty, {both of} your dreams
dreams	dreams
God	God
has shown	Through them, God is revealing … what he is going to do
Pharaoh	to you

Genesis 41:26

ULT	UST
The seven good cows are seven years, and the seven good heads of grain are seven years. The dreams are one.	*The seven healthy cows represent seven years, and the seven well-formed heads of grain represent the same seven years. Both dreams mean the same thing.*

ULT **The seven good cows {are} seven years**
UST The seven healthy cows {represent} seven years

Alternate translation: [The seven healthy cows in your dream symbolize seven years]

ULT **and the seven good heads of grain {are} seven years**
UST and the seven well-formed heads of grain {represent} {the same} seven years

Alternate translation: [and the seven beautiful heads of grain symbolize the same seven years]

ULT **The dreams {are} one**
UST Both dreams mean the same thing

See how you translated **dreams are one** in verse 25. Alternate translation: [Both dreams have the same meaning]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
good	healthy
cows	cows
years	years
good	well-formed
grain	grain
years	years
dreams	dreams

Genesis 41:27

ULT	UST
And the seven thin and ugly cows that came up after them are seven years, and so are the seven thin heads of grain scorched by the east wind. There will be seven years of famine.	*The seven scrawny and sickly cows that walked up out of the river behind the first cows represent a different seven years, and so do the seven small heads of grain that the desert wind had dried out. They both mean that there will be a famine that lasts seven years.*

ULT **And the seven thin and ugly cows**
UST The seven scrawny and sickly cows

See how you translated **thin and ugly cows** in verse 20, and how you translated **thin** in verse 19. Alternate translation: [The seven skinny and sickly cows]

ULT **that came up after them**
UST that walked up {out of the river} behind the first cows

Alternate translation: [that came up out of the river behind the first cows]

ULT **are seven years, and {so are} the seven thin heads of grain**
UST represent {a different} seven years, and {so do} the seven small heads of grain

See how you translated **thin** in verses 6 and 23, and consider again how you translated **heads of grain** in verses 5–7, 22–24, 26–27. Alternate translation: [symbolize a different seven years, and so do the seven small heads of grain]

ULT **scorched by the east wind**
UST that the desert wind had dried out

See how you translated this phrase in verses 6 and 23. Also consider again how you translated **east** in the book of Genesis; see 2:8; 3:24; 10:30; 11:2; 12:8; 13:11; 14; 25:6; 28:14; 29:1, 41:6, 23, 27. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [that the hot east wind had dried up] or [that the desert wind from the east had dried up]

ULT **There will be seven years of famine**
UST They both mean that there will be a famine that lasts seven years

A **famine** is a prolonged period of time when people are starving because crops are failing, often due to a lack of rain or other severe weather conditions. See how you translated this term in Genesis 12:10 and 26:1. Alternate translation: [Both dreams mean that there will be seven years when food will be very scarce]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and ugly	and sickly
cows	cows
years	years
grain	grain
years	years
famine	famine

Genesis 41:28

ULT	UST
That is the word that I have spoken to Pharaoh: What God is doing he has shown to Pharaoh.	*King Pharaoh, that is what I was talking about when I told you that God is revealing to you what he is going to do.*

ULT That {is} the word that I have spoken to Pharaoh

UST King Pharaoh, that {is} what I was talking about {when I told} you that

Consider what is the best way to refer to Pharaoh here in your language. See what you did in verse 25. Alternate translation: [Your Honor, as I told you before]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT What God is doing he has shown to Pharaoh

UST God is revealing to you what he is going to do

See how you translated this clause in verse 25. Alternate translation: [God is showing to you what he will do] or [God has shown to you what he is about to do]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
God	God
Pharaoh	you

Genesis 41:29

ULT	UST
Behold, seven years are coming of great abundance in all the land of Egypt.	*Listen, first there will be seven years when people will have more than enough food to eat throughout the entire country of Egypt.*

ULT of great abundance
UST when people will have more than enough food to eat

Alternate translation: [when crops are abundant] or [when everyone will have plenty of food to eat]

ULT in all the land of Egypt
UST throughout the entire country of Egypt

Alternate translation: [throughout the whole land of Egypt]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
land	country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 41:30

ULT	UST
But seven years of famine will rise up after them, so that all the abundance in the land of Egypt will be forgotten, and the famine will consume the land.	*But after that, there will be a famine that lasts seven years. As a result, the people in Egypt will forget what it was like in their country during all the years when they had more than enough food to eat, because the famine will devastate the country so that many people will starve.*

ULT **But seven years of famine will rise up after them**

UST But after that, there will be a famine that lasts seven years

See how you translated **famine** in verse 27. Alternate translation: [But after them there will be a famine that lasts seven years] or [But after those prosperous years, there will be seven years when food is very scarce]

ULT **so that all the abundance in the land of Egypt will be forgotten**

UST As a result, the people in Egypt will forget what it was like in their country during all the years when they had more than enough {food} to eat

Alternate translation: [So people in the country of Egypt will forget how good it was during the time when they had plenty of food]

ULT **and the famine will consume the land**

UST because the famine will devastate the country so that many people will starve

The phrase **the land** here probably also includes the people who lived in that country. Alternate translation: [because the famine will destroy the land and the people] or [because the severe food shortage will ravage the land so that many people will starve]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
famine	famine
land	in their country
Egypt	in their country
famine	famine
land	the country so that many people will starve

Genesis 41:31

ULT	UST
And the abundance in the land will not be remembered because of that famine after it, because it will be very heavy.	*That's right, people will completely forget about the years when there was plenty of food, because the famine that comes after that will be so severe.*

ULT **And the abundance in the land will not be remembered**
UST That's right, people will completely forget about the years when there was plenty of food

Verse 31 restates much of the content of verse 30, so keep that it mind as you translate the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [Indeed, there will be no evidence left that there were years when there was more than enough food]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **because of that famine after it, because it {will be} very heavy**
UST because the famine {that comes} after that {will be} so severe

For some languages, it clearer and more natural to put this clause near the beginning of this verse and say, "Yes, the famine that is coming will be so severe/terrible that people will completely forget about the time/years when food was abundant/plentiful in the land." Alternate translation: [because the famine that happens after that will be very oppressive] or [because the following years when food is scarce will be so terrible]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	the years when there was plenty of food
will … be remembered	That's right, people will completely forget about
famine	famine

Genesis 41:32

ULT	UST
And as for the repeating of the dream to Pharaoh twice, it is because the matter has been established by God, and God will soon do it.	*The fact that you, King Pharaoh, had two different dreams that mean the same thing shows that God has decided what he is going to do, and he will make it happen soon.*

ULT **And as for the repeating of the dream to Pharaoh twice, {it is} because**
UST The fact that you, {King} Pharaoh, had two {different} dreams that mean the same thing shows that

Alternate translation: [The reason you had the same dream in two different ways is that]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **the matter has been established by God**
UST God has decided what he is going to do

Alternate translation: [God has firmly decided what he is going to do] or [God wants you to know that this will definitely happen]

ULT **and God will soon do it**
UST and he will make it happen soon

Alternate translation: [and he will cause it to happen very soon]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dream	dreams
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
God	God
God	and he will make it happen soon

Genesis 41:33

ULT	UST
And now let Pharaoh seek a man who is discerning and wise, and set him over the land of Egypt.	*So now, your Majesty, I recommend that you look for a man who is intelligent and knows what to do, and put him in charge over the country of Egypt.*

ULT **And now let Pharaoh seek a man**
UST So now, {your Majesty,} I recommend that you look for a man

Alternate translation: [So King Pharaoh, you should now look for a man] or [So now, your Highness, I recommend that you choose a man]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **who is discerning and wise**
UST who is intelligent and knows what to do

Alternate translation: [who is insightful and knows what to do] or [who is wise and can make good decisions]

ULT **and set him over**
UST and put him in charge over

Alternate translation: [and put him in charge of] or [and give him authority over]

ULT **the land of Egypt**
UST the country of Egypt

See how you translated **the land** in verse 30. Alternate translation: [the country of Egypt and its people]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	I recommend that you look for
discerning	who is intelligent
wise	and knows what to do
and set him	and put him in charge
land	the country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 41:34

ULT	UST
Let Pharaoh do this: Let him set supervisors over the land, and let him take a fifth of the land of Egypt in the seven years of abundance.	*Sir, you should also appoint regional administrators in charge of the country, and have them collect one-fifth of the crops that people harvest throughout the country during the seven years when harvests are plentiful.*

ULT **Let Pharaoh do {this}: Let him set supervisors**
UST Sir, you should {also} appoint {regional} administrators

Alternate translation: [King Pharaoh, I also recommend that you appoint regional administrators] or [Sir, you should also appoint …]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **over the land**
UST in charge of the country

Alternate translation: [to be in charge of different regions of the country] or [to manage different regions of the country]

ULT **and let him take a fifth**
UST and {have them} collect one-fifth

Alternate translation: [and have them gather from the people one-fifth] or [Then command them to collect …]

ULT **of the land of Egypt**
UST of {the crops that people harvest throughout} the country

In this context, “the land/country” refers to the crops that were growing in Egypt. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [of all the grain that they harvest in the country of Egypt] or [of everything the land of Egypt produces]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in the seven years of abundance**
UST during the seven years when harvests are plentiful

See how you translated **abundance** in verses 29–31. Alternate translation: [during the seven years when crops are abundant] or [during the seven years when there will be more than enough crops]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Sir
Let him set	appoint
supervisors	regional administrators
land	the country
land	of {the crops that people harvest throughout} the country
Egypt	מִצְרַ֑יִם
years	years

Genesis 41:35

ULT	UST
And they should gather all the food of the good years that are coming. And they should store that grain under Pharaoh's hand for food in the cities and guard it.	*Have them collect all that surplus grain during the prosperous years ahead when there will be plenty of food. Using your authority, King Pharaoh, have them stockpile that grain in storehouses in the cities and have soldiers guard it, so that there will be food for the people.*

ULT **And they should gather**
UST Have them collect

Alternate translation: [Have them gather]

ULT **all the food of the good years that are coming**
UST all that {surplus} grain during the prosperous years ahead when there will be plenty of food

Alternate translation: [all that extra grain from the prosperous years that will come] or [all that extra food during the good years ahead when there will be plenty of food]

ULT **And they should store {that} grain**
UST have them stockpile {that} grain

Alternate translation: [Have them stockpile that grain] or [Command them to store up that grain]

ULT **under Pharaoh's hand**
UST Using your authority, {King} Pharaoh

Consider again how you translated the use of the third person to address Pharaoh respectfully in verses 10, 13, 25, 32–35. Also, for some languages it may be better to put this phrase earlier and say, "Using your authority, King Pharaoh, have them stockpile that grain in storehouses …" Alternate translation: [with your authority, King Pharaoh]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **for food in the cities and guard it**
UST in storehouses in the cities and {have soldiers} guard it, so that there will be food for the people

Alternate translation: [in the cities for food and have soldiers keep it safe]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
good	prosperous
years	years
grain	grain
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 41:36

ULT	UST
And the food should be in reserve for the land for the seven years of famine that will come on the land of Egypt, so that the land will not be cut off by the famine."	*That food should stay in storage for the people of the country to eat during the famine that will last seven years in the country of Egypt, so that they will not starve to death because of the severe lack of food."*

ULT **And the food should be in reserve**
UST That food should stay in storage

Alternate translation: [That extra food should be kept in storage] or [That grain should stay in storage] or [They must continue to store that surplus grain]

ULT **for the land**
UST for {the people of} the country to eat

The phrase **the land** refers here to the people who live in the land of Egypt. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [for the people of the land to eat] or [so that the people of the land have it to eat]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **for the seven years of famine that will come**
UST during the famine that will last seven years

Alternate translation: [during the seven years when food is very scarce]

ULT **on the land of Egypt**
UST in the country of Egypt

Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to repeat "the land/country" in this sentence. Alternate translation: [in Egypt]

ULT **so that the land will not be cut off**
UST so that they will not starve to death

Make sure the way you translated "the people of land/country" at the beginning of this verse fits with how you translate it here. It is helpful to read your translation aloud to make sure it is clear and natural. Alternate translation: [so that the people in the land] or [so that the people]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **so that the land will not be cut off**
UST so that they will not starve to death

See how you translated the idiom **cut off** in Genesis 9:11. It may be necessary to translate it differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: [will not be destroyed by]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **by the famine**
UST because of the severe lack of food

Alternate translation: [the severe food scarcity]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	for {the people of} the country to eat
years	years
famine	famine
land	in the country of
Egypt	Egypt
land	they
famine	because of the severe lack of food

Genesis 41:37

ULT	UST
And the word was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants.	*What Joseph proposed seemed like a good plan to Pharaoh and all his officials.*

ULT **And the word was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants**

UST What Joseph proposed seemed like a good plan to Pharaoh and all his officials

See how you translated the idiom **in the eyes of** in Genesis 34:18. Alternate translation: [What Joseph said seemed like a good plan to King Pharaoh and all his servants] or [King Pharaoh and all his servants agreed that what Joseph had proposed was good]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
good	good
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
servants	his officials

Genesis 41:38

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh said to his servants, "Can we find a man like this who has the Spirit of God in him?"	*So Pharaoh exclaimed to them, "Certainly we cannot find anyone else more qualified than this man whom God's Spirit guides!"*

ULT Then Pharaoh said to his servants
UST So Pharaoh exclaimed to them

Alternate translation: [So Pharaoh said to his officials]

ULT Can we find a man like this
UST Certainly we cannot find anyone else more qualified than this man

Pharaoh uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize that no one is more qualified than Joseph. Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this quote using a question or a statement. Alternate translation: [It is obvious that we will never find a man as qualified as Joseph]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT who {has} the Spirit of God in him
UST whom God's Spirit guides

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "who has God's Spirit in him" or "whom God's Spirit guides" or (2) "who has a divine spirit in him" or "who has a spirit of the gods in him." Most translations follow the first interpretation, since Joseph had just talked to Pharaoh about God (verses 16, 28, 32) and Pharaoh acknowledges God in verse 39.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
servants	them
Spirit	Spirit
God	God

Genesis 41:39

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Since God has shown all this to you, there is no one as discerning and wise as you.	*Then he said to Joseph, "Since God has made all this known to you, no one else is as intelligent as you are or knows what to do in this situation.*

ULT Then Pharaoh said to Joseph
UST Then he said to Joseph

Alternate translation: [Then he turned to Joseph and said]

ULT Since God has shown all this to you
UST Since God has made all this known to you

Alternate translation: [God has revealed to you what he is going to do, so]

ULT there is no one {as} discerning and wise as you
UST no one {else} is {as} intelligent as you {are} or knows what to do in this situation

See how you translated **discerning and wise** in verse 33. Alternate translation: [no one else is as insightful as you are and knows what to do in this situation] or [… or knows how to manage this situation wisely]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	פַּרְעֹה
Joseph	Joseph
God	God
has shown	known
discerning	as intelligent
wise	or knows what to do in this situation

Genesis 41:40

ULT	UST
You will be over my house, and all my people will kiss on your mouth. Only I on the throne will be greater than you."	*So I am putting you in charge of my household and my kingdom, so that all the people in my country must obey whatever you command. Only I who am king will have higher authority than you."*

ULT **You will be over my house**
UST So I am putting you in charge of my household and my kingdom

The phrase **my house** refers here to Pharaoh's household and all the other people he rules as king. Alternate translation: [So I am putting you in charge of my household and my country] or [So I am giving you authority over the people in my palace and the rest of my country]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and all my people will kiss on your mouth**
UST so that all the people in my country must obey whatever you command

Consider whether you have a similar idiom in your language or if you need to say this without an idiom. Alternate translation: [so that all the people in my kingdom must do whatever you say] or [so that all the people I reign over will respect and obey whatever you tell them to do]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Only I {on} the throne will be greater than you**
UST Only I who am king will have higher authority than you

In this context, **the throne** refers to Pharaoh's position as the king. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [Only I who sit on the throne as king will have more authority than you] or [Only I who am king will …]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	my household and my kingdom
throne	I who am king

Genesis 41:41

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "See, I have put you over all the land of Egypt."	*Then Pharaoh said, "Listen, I hereby put you in charge of the whole country of Egypt."*

ULT **Then Pharaoh said to Joseph**
UST Then Pharaoh said

Some languages leave **Joseph** or even this entire quote margin implied here, since Pharaoh is still talking to the same person. Alternate translation: [Pharaoh added]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **See, I have put you over**
UST Listen, I hereby put you in charge of

The word **See** emphasizes what Pharaoh says next. Alternate translation: [Look I now put you in charge of] or [I am now appointing you to be the supervisor over]

ULT **all the land of Egypt**
UST the whole country of Egypt

Alternate translation: [the whole land of Egypt]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Joseph	יוֹסֵף
land	country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 41:42

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh removed his signet ring from his hand and put it on Joseph's hand. And he dressed him in garments of fine linen and put a gold chain on his neck.	*Then he took off his official identification ring and put it on Joseph's finger to show that he had appointed him. He also gave Joseph expensive linen clothes to wear and put a chain made of gold around his neck.*

ULT **Then Pharaoh removed his signet ring from his hand**
UST Then he took off his {official} identification ring

The signet ring was the identification ring that the king used to seal official documents. See how you translated **signet** in Genesis 38:18. Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh took off his royal identification ring] or [Then Pharaoh took from his finger the ring that he used to seal letters with his mark]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and put it on Joseph's hand**
UST and put it on Joseph's finger to show that he had appointed him

The signet ring showed that Joseph represented Pharaoh and had his complete authority.
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **And he dressed him {in} garments of fine linen**
UST He {also} gave Joseph {expensive} linen clothes to wear

The Hebrew word for **fine linen** refers to a special kind of white cloth that was woven out of flax and had a fine texture. Clothes made from linen were expensive and were worn by the king and high officials. If linen is not known in your language area, you could be more general and refer to expensive, high-quality clothes. Alternate translation: [He also had Joseph put on fine linen robes] or [He also gave Joseph high-quality robes to wear]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and put a gold chain on his neck**
UST and put a chain {made} of gold around his neck

Alternate translation: [and put a collar made of gold around his neck] or [and put around his neck a necklace made of gold]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	פַּרְעֹה
Joseph	Joseph
gold	gold

Genesis 41:43

ULT	UST
Then he had him ride in the second chariot that belonged to him, and they shouted before him, "Bow down!" So he put him over all the land of Egypt.	*Then Pharaoh had Joseph ride around in the chariot that showed he was the second highest ruler in the country. As he rode, messengers walked in the road ahead of him calling out to everyone, "Make way!" In that way, Pharaoh officially appointed Joseph to be in charge of the whole country of Egypt.*

ULT **in the second chariot that {belonged} to him**
UST in the chariot that showed he was the second highest ruler in the country

A chariot is a cart with two or four wheels that was pulled by one or more horses. It was used as transportation and was especially used in battles. Translate this in a way that fits with this description. It may be helpful to include a picture of a chariot in your translation. Alternate translation: [in a royal horse-drawn cart as his second-in-command] or [in the horse-drawn cart that showed he was the second highest ruler in the country]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and they shouted before him**
UST As he rode, messengers {walked} {in the road} ahead of him calling out to everyone

Make sure the way you translate **shouted** does not sound angry. Rather they were calling out loudly enough for people to hear them. Alternate translation: [As he rode, heralds walked in the streets ahead of him calling out to everyone]

ULT **Bow down**
UST Make way

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could be: (1) a transliteration of an Egyptian word that means "Bow down in reverence/respect!" or "Make way for the king's appointed one!" or "Welcome/Honor your new leader!" which is what people would be told to do to honor an important person; or (2) a combination of Hebrew words that means "This is the father of the king!", which is similar to what Joseph says in Genesis 45:8.
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **So he put him over**
UST In that way, Pharaoh {officially} appointed Joseph to be in charge of

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 41. Alternate translation: [So Pharaoh put Joseph in charge of] or [In that way, Pharaoh officially installed Joseph to be the manager over]

ULT **all the land of Egypt**
UST the whole country of Egypt

Alternate translation: [the whole land of Egypt]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Then he had … ride	Then Pharaoh had … ride around
chariot	chariot
and they shouted	calling out
Bow down	Make way
land	country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 41:44

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I am Pharaoh, and without you a person will not lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt!"	*Pharaoh also told Joseph, "I, Pharaoh, hereby command that throughout the whole country of Egypt, everyone must only do what you tell them to do!"*

ULT **I {am} Pharaoh**
UST I, Pharaoh, {hereby command} that

Alternate translation: [I, Pharaoh, hereby decree that]

ULT **and without you a person will not lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt**
UST throughout the whole country of Egypt, everyone must only do what you tell them to do

The phrase "will not lift his hand or foot" is exaggeration that is used to emphasize Joseph's authority. Consider whether or not it is clear and natural to do that here in your language.
Alternate translation: [no one throughout the entire country of Egypt may do anything unless you tell them to do it!] or [throughout the entire country of Egypt, everyone must only do what you tell them to do!]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Joseph	Joseph
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
land	country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 41:45

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh called Joseph's name Zaphenath-Paneah, and he gave to him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera the priest of On, as a wife. Then Joseph went out over the land of Egypt.	*Then Pharaoh gave Joseph the Egyptian name Zaphenath-Paneah, which means "the one who explains/reveals secrets," and he gave him a woman named Asenath to be his wife. She was the daughter of Potiphera, who was a priest at the temple in the city of On. Then Joseph started his duties and traveled throughout the country of Egypt.*

ULT **Then Pharaoh called Joseph's name**
UST Then Pharaoh gave Joseph the {Egyptian} name

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh called Joseph by the Egyptian name]

ULT **and he gave to him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera the priest of On, as a wife**
UST and he gave him {a woman named} Asenath to be {his} wife. {She was} the daughter of Potiphera, {who was} a priest {at the temple} in {the city of} On

Potiphera was a pagan priest, and he led people in worshiping the Egyptians' gods, not Yahweh. See how you translated **priest** in Genesis 14:18. Alternate translation: [and he gave him a woman named Asenath to be his wife. She was the daughter of Potiphera, who was a priest at the temple at the city of On]

ULT **Then Joseph went out over the land of Egypt**
UST Then Joseph {started his duties and} traveled throughout the country of Egypt

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph started going around all over the land of Egypt] or [Then Joseph started his work and traveled throughout the land of Egypt]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
called	Then … gave
Joseph	Joseph
priest	priest
Joseph	Joseph
land	the country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 41:46

ULT	UST
Now Joseph was a son of thirty years when he stood before Pharaoh king of Egypt. And Joseph went out from the presence of Pharaoh and passed through all the land of Egypt.	*Joseph was thirty years old when he started serving Pharaoh, the king over Egypt. After Pharaoh appointed him, Joseph left him and traveled throughout the whole country of Egypt doing his work.*

ULT **Now Joseph {was} a son of thirty years**
UST Joseph {was} thirty years old

Consider what is the best way to begin this new paragraph in your language.

ULT **when he stood before**
UST when he {started} serving

This phrase refers to when Joseph stood before Pharaoh and was commissioned to serve as the second-highest ruler in Egypt. Alternate translation: [when he had that audience with]

ULT **and passed through all the land of Egypt**
UST and traveled throughout the whole country of Egypt doing his work

Alternate translation: [and traveled throughout the entire country of Egypt doing his work] or [and began traveling from place to place throughout …]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
years	years
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
king	king
Egypt	Egypt
Joseph	Joseph
Pharaoh	him
land	country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 41:47

ULT	UST
And in the seven years of abundance, the land produced grain by the handfuls.	*During the seven years when food was plentiful, the land produced huge amounts of grain.*

ULT **in the seven years of abundance**
UST During the seven years when food was plentiful

Compare how you translated **seven years of abundance** in verse 34. Alternate translation: [During the seven years when food was abundant] or [For seven years the harvests were plentiful and]

ULT **And … the land produced {grain} by the handfuls**
UST the land produced huge amounts of grain

The idiom **by the handfuls** refers here to large amounts of grain. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom you could use here. Alternate translation: [the land produced large amounts of grain] or [the people harvested large amounts of grain from the land]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
land	land

Genesis 41:48

ULT	UST
So he gathered all the food of the seven years that were in the land of Egypt, and he put the food in the cities. The food of the fields that surrounded each city he put inside it.	*So Joseph had his helpers collect all the surplus grain that people harvested during those seven years in the country of Egypt, and he had them stockpile that grain in the cities. In each city he had them store the grain that people harvested from the surrounding fields.*

ULT **So he gathered**
UST So Joseph {had his helpers} collect

When the Bible says that a leader such as Joseph did something, it often means that he had it done by people under his authority. Decide whether you want to include this information in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [So Joseph told the supervisors under him to collect] or [So Joseph had his helpers gather]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **all the food of the seven years that were in the land of Egypt**
UST all the {surplus} grain {that people harvested} during {those} seven years in the country of Egypt

See how you translated **all the food** in verse 35. Alternate translation: [all the extra food that was produced in the land of Egypt during those seven years] or [all the extra grain that people produced during those seven years in the land of Egypt]

ULT **and he put the food in the cities**
UST and he {had them} stockpile {that} grain in the cities

Alternate translation: [and he had them store that grain in the cities]

ULT **The food of the fields that surrounded {each} city he put inside it**
UST In each city he {had them} store the grain {that people harvested} from the surrounding fields

Consider what phrase order is best for this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [The food that people had harvested from the fields, he had his supervisors stockpile in the nearby cities] or [In each city he had them store the food that people had harvested from the nearby fields]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
land	in the country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 41:49

ULT	UST
So Joseph stored up grain like the sand of the sea, very much, until he stopped measuring it because it was without number.	*In that way, Joseph stockpiled so much grain that it was as plentiful as the grains of sand on the seashore. In fact, it was so plentiful that he stopped keeping records of it because it was too much to keep track of.*

ULT **So Joseph stored up**
UST In that way, Joseph stockpiled

See how you translated **store/stockpile** in verse 35. Alternate translation: [Joseph had his helpers store up]

ULT **grain like the sand of the sea**
UST so much grain that it was as {plentiful as} the {grains of} sand on the seashore

See how you translated "as the sand of the sea" in Genesis 32:12 and a similar phrase in Genesis 22:17. Alternate translation: [so much grain that it looked as plentiful as grains of sand beside the sea] or [… as plentiful as the grains of sand on the beach]

ULT **very much, until**
UST In fact, it was so plentiful that

Alternate translation: [In fact, there was so much that] or [In fact, it was so plentiful that after a while]

ULT **he stopped measuring it**
UST he stopped keeping records of it

It was probably Joseph's helpers who measured the grain and kept records of it. See how you handled this at the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [he had them stop keeping track of it] or [they had to stop writing down how much there was]

ULT **because it was without number**
UST because it was too much to keep track of

Alternate translation: [because there was so much that they could no longer record it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
grain	grain

Genesis 41:50

ULT	UST
And before the years of the famine came, two sons were born to Joseph, whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, the priest of On, bore for him.	*Before the seven famine years started, Joseph had two sons with his wife Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, who was a priest in the city of On.*

ULT **before the years of the famine came**
UST Before the {seven} famine years started

Consider what is the best way to change topics and begin this new paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: [Now it so happened that before the seven years of famine came]
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **And … two sons were born to Joseph, whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, the priest of On, bore for him**
UST Joseph had two sons with {his wife} Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, {who was} a priest in {the city of} On

See how you translated **Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, the priest of On** in verse 45. Alternate translation: [Joseph had two sons with his wife Asenath, a daughter of Potiphera, who was a priest in the city of On] or [Joseph and his wife Asenath had two sons. Remember that Asenath was a daughter of Potiphera, a priest in the city of On]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
were born	had
Joseph	Joseph
priest	priest
bore	with {his wife} Asenath

Genesis 41:51

ULT	UST
And Joseph called the name of the firstborn son Manasseh, because he said, "God has made me forget all my toil and all of my father's house."	*Joseph named his oldest son Manasseh, which means "forget," and he explained, "It is because God has helped me to forget about all my troubles and about how much I have missed my father and the rest of my family back home."*

ULT **the firstborn son**
UST his oldest son

Alternate translation: [his first son]

ULT **Manasseh**
UST Manasseh, which means "forget

If you include the meaning of the name **Manasseh** in your translation or in a footnote, it should fit with the way you translate **forget** in the following clause.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **because {he said}, "God has made me forget**
UST and he explained, "{It is} because God has helped me to forget about

By **made me forget**, the author does not mean that Joseph had lost his memory of these things, but rather, that God had blessed him so much that it helped him stop thinking about those things. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [because he said, "God has caused me to stop thinking about]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **all my toil and**
UST all my troubles and about

Alternate translation: [all my hardships and about]

ULT **all of my father's house**
UST how much I have missed my father and the rest of my family back home

Alternate translation: [how much I have missed all of my family back home]

ULT **And Joseph called the name of**
UST Joseph named

See how you translated the idiom **called the name of** in Gen 21:3.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
called	Joseph named
firstborn	his oldest son
Manasseh	Manasseh
God	God
my toil	troubles
house	how much I have missed my father and the rest of my family back home

Genesis 41:52

ULT	UST
And the name of the second son he called Ephraim, because he said, "God has made me fruitful in the land of my affliction."	*And he named his second son Ephraim, which means "twice prosperous," and he explained, "It is because God has helped me to prosper in the country where I have suffered so much."*

ULT **And the name of the second {son} he called**
UST And he named {his} second son

Alternate translation: [And Joseph named his second son]

ULT **Ephraim**
UST Ephraim, which means "twice prosperous

If you include the meaning of Ephraim's name in your translation or in a footnote, it should fit with the way you translate **fruitful** in the following clause.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **because {he said}, "God has made me fruitful**
UST and he explained, "{It is} because God has helped me to prosper

Consider again how you translated the idiom **fruitful** in the book of Genesis. See 17:6; 26:22; 41:52.
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	And he named {his} second son
Ephraim	Ephraim
God	God
fruitful	has helped me to prosper
land	in the country
affliction	where I have suffered so much

Genesis 41:53

ULT	UST
Then the seven years of abundance that was in the land of Egypt ended,	*Finally the seven years were over when food was plentiful in the country of Egypt.*

ULT **Then the seven years of abundance that was … ended**
UST Finally the seven years were over when food was plentiful

See how you translated **the seven years of abundance** in verses 34 and 47, and a similar phrase in verse 29. Alternate translation: [Finally the seven years when food was abundant]

ULT **Then … ended**
UST Finally … were over

For some languages it is better to put this phrase earlier in the sentence and say, “Finally the seven years were over when food was plentiful in the country of Egypt. Alternate translation: [came to an end]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
land	in the country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 41:54

ULT	UST
and the seven years of famine started to come, just as Joseph had said. And there was famine in all the lands, but in all the land of Egypt there was bread.	*Then the seven years began when there was a severe lack of food, which is exactly what Joseph had predicted would happen. The famine spread to every country, but throughout the whole country of Egypt there was still food in the storehouses.*

ULT **and the seven years of famine started to come**
UST Then the seven years began when there was a severe lack of food

Alternate translation: [Then the seven years of famine began]

ULT **just as Joseph had said**
UST which is exactly what Joseph had predicted would happen

Alternate translation: [just as Joseph had predicted would happen] or [which is exactly what Joseph had said would happen]

ULT **And there was famine in all the lands**
UST The famine spread to every country

Alternate translation: [The severe food shortage began to affect all countries]

ULT **but in all the land of Egypt**
UST but throughout the whole country of Egypt

Alternate translation: [but everywhere in the land of Egypt] or [but throughout the entire land of Egypt]

ULT **there was bread**
UST there was {still} food in the storehouses

In this context, **bread** refers to all food in general. Alternate translation: [there was still plenty of food stored up]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
famine	when there was a severe lack of food
Joseph	Joseph
famine	famine
lands	country
land	the … country of
Egypt	Egypt
bread	food in the storehouses

Genesis 41:55

ULT	UST
Then all the land of Egypt became famished, and the people cried to Pharaoh for the bread. So Pharaoh said to all the Egyptians, "Go to Joseph. Whatever he says to you, do it."	*When everyone in Egypt became very hungry because of the famine, they begged King Pharaoh for food. So he commanded them, "Go ask Joseph for help, and do whatever he commands you to do."*

ULT **Then all the land of Egypt became famished**
UST When everyone in Egypt became very hungry because of the famine

The phrase **all the land** refers here to the people living in Egypt. Consider whether or not you need to make that explicit in your language. Alternate translation: [Then all the people in the land of Egypt began to suffer from the famine, so]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and the people cried to Pharaoh for the bread**
UST they begged {King} Pharaoh for food

Alternate translation: [they begged Pharaoh for food] or [they pleaded with Pharaoh to give them food]

ULT **So Pharaoh said to all the Egyptians**
UST So he commanded them

Alternate translation: [So King Pharaoh told them] or [So he told them]

ULT **Go to Joseph**
UST Go ask Joseph for help

Alternate translation: [Go ask Joseph for food] or [You must go to Joseph and ask him for help]

ULT **Whatever he says to you, do it**
UST and do whatever he commands you to do

Alternate translation: [and do whatever he tells you to do]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	אֶרֶץ
Egypt	Egypt
cried	they begged
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
bread	for food
Pharaoh	פַּרְעֹה
Egyptians	them
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 41:56

ULT	UST
And the famine was over all the face of the land, so Joseph opened all the buildings that had grain in them and sold grain to the Egyptians. And the famine was severe in the land of Egypt.	*Since the severe food shortage was affecting the whole country, Joseph had his helpers open up all the storehouses full of grain, and he started selling the grain to the people of Egypt. Then the famine became worse and worse throughout the country of Egypt.*

ULT **And the famine was over all the face of the land, so … opened**
UST Since the severe food shortage was affecting the whole country … had his helpers open up

Alternate translation: [Since the famine had spread throughout the whole country] or [Since the severe food shortage was affecting the entire country]

ULT **so Joseph opened**
UST Joseph {had his helpers} open up

See how you translated verses 48 and 49, where Joseph is said to do something that he had his helpers do. Alternate translation: [Joseph ordered the supervisors under him to open up]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **all {the buildings} that {had grain} in them**
UST all the storehouses full of grain

Alternate translation: [all the storage barns where grain was being stored]

ULT **and sold {grain} to the Egyptians**
UST and he started selling {the grain} to the people of Egypt

Alternate translation: [and they started selling the grain to the people of Egypt]

ULT **And the famine was severe**
UST Then the famine became worse and worse

Alternate translation: [Then the famine kept getting more and more severe]

ULT **in the land of Egypt**
UST throughout the country of Egypt

Alternate translation: [throughout the land of Egypt] or [throughout their country]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
famine	Since the severe food shortage
land	the whole country
Joseph	Joseph
Egyptians	Egypt
famine	famine
land	throughout the country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 41:57

ULT	UST
Then all the earth came to Egypt to Joseph to buy grain, because the famine was severe in all the earth.	*In fact, people from all over the world started coming to Egypt to buy grain from Joseph, because the food shortage was so terrible throughout the whole world.*

ULT **Then all the earth**
UST In fact, {people from} all over the world

This phrase refers to the people living on the earth. Consider whether or not you need to make that explicit in your language. See how you translated a similar metonymy **all the land** in verse 55. Alternate translation: [In fact, people from all over the earth]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **came to Egypt to Joseph to buy grain**
UST started coming to Egypt to buy {grain} from Joseph

Alternate translation: [started traveling to Egypt to buy food from Joseph]

ULT **because the famine was severe in all the earth**
UST because the food shortage was {so} terrible throughout the whole world

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this clause near the beginning of verse 57 and say, “In fact, the famine was/became so severe/terrible in/throughout the entire/whole world that people started coming/traveling to Egypt from all over the world to buy grain from Joseph.” See how you translated **severe/terrible** in verse 56. Alternate translation: [because the food shortage was so severe throughout the entire world]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	the world
Egypt	Egypt
Joseph	Joseph
famine	the food shortage
earth	the … world

Genesis 42

Genesis 42:1

ULT	UST
Then Jacob saw that there was grain in Egypt, so Jacob said to his sons, "Why are you looking at each other?"	*Meanwhile back in the region of Canaan, when Jacob heard that there was grain for sale in the country of Egypt, he told his sons, "Do not just stand around doing nothing!*

ULT **Then Jacob saw that there was grain in Egypt**

UST Meanwhile {back in the region of Canaan}, {when} Jacob heard that there was grain {for sale} in {the country of} Egypt

This verse begins a new episode which overlaps in time with some of what was happening in chapter 41. Consider what is the best way to begin this episode in your language. Alternate translation: [Meanwhile in the land of Canaan, when Jacob learned that there was grain for sale in the country of Egypt] or [… when Jacob found out that he could buy grain in Egypt]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **so Jacob said to his sons**

UST he told his sons

Alternate translation: [he asked his sons]

ULT **Why are you looking at each other**

UST Do not just {stand around} doing nothing

Jacob uses this rhetorical question to get his sons to take action and do what he says next. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [What are you waiting for?] or [Do not just sit here staring at each other!] or [Do not just stand there doing nothing!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
grain	grain
Egypt	Egypt
Jacob	יַעֲקֹב

Genesis 42:2

ULT	UST
And he said, "Behold, I have heard that there is grain in Egypt. Go down there and buy some for us from there so that we will live and not die."	*Listen to this! I heard that there is grain for sale in the country of Egypt. So go down there and buy some for us and our families to eat, so that we can stay alive and not starve to death."*

ULT And he said

For some languages it is more natural to omit the quote margin here, because the same person (Jacob) is still talking to the same people (his sons). Alternate translation: [Then he added]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT Behold
UST Listen to this

Alternate translation: [Look]

ULT I have heard
UST I heard

Alternate translation: [I learned] or [Someone told me]

ULT that there is grain in Egypt
UST that there is grain {for sale} in {the country of} Egypt

Alternate translation: [that there is much grain for sale in the country of Egypt] or [that the country of Egypt has a lot of grain that people can buy]

ULT Go down there
UST So go down there

Make sure that the way you translate Jacob's command to his sons does not sound rude or harsh. Alternate translation: [So I want you to go there] or [So please go down there]

Support Reference: Politeness

ULT and buy {some} for us from there
UST and buy {some} for us {and our families} to eat

Alternate translation: [and buy some grain for us all]

ULT so that we will live
UST so that we can stay alive

Alternate translation: [so that we will survive] or [so that we will stay alive]

ULT and not die
UST and not starve to death

Alternate translation: [and not die from hunger]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grain	grain
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 42:3

ULT	UST
Then ten of Joseph's brothers went down to buy grain from Egypt.	*So Joseph's ten older brothers left home and traveled down to Egypt to buy some grain there.*

ULT **Then ten of Joseph's brothers went down**
UST So Joseph's ten {older} brothers {left home and} traveled down

These ten brothers were older than Joseph and had different mothers than he did. Also, the verb **went down** refers to the fact that Egypt was lower in elevation than the land of Canaan. It is also located southwest of Canaan. See how you translated "go down" in verse 2 and **went down** in Genesis 12:10.

Support Reference: Kinship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
grain	grain
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 42:4

ULT	UST
But Jacob did not send Benjamin, the brother of Joseph, with his brothers, because he said, “So that harm does not meet him!”	*But Jacob did not allow Joseph’s younger brother Benjamin to go to Egypt with the rest of his brothers, because Jacob was afraid that something bad might happen to him.*

ULT **But Jacob did not send Benjamin, the brother of Joseph**
UST But Jacob did not allow Joseph’s {younger} brother Benjamin to go to Egypt

Benjamin was younger than Joseph and had the same mother (Rachel) and father.
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **with his brothers**
UST with {the rest of} his brothers

Alternate translation: [with his other brothers]

ULT **because he said, “So that harm does not meet him**
UST because Jacob was afraid that something bad might happen to him

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, “But Jacob was concerned that harm might come to Joseph’s younger brother Benjamin, so he did not send him with the rest of his brothers to Egypt.” Alternate translation: [because Jacob thought that he might be harmed] or [because he was concerned that something terrible might happen to him]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Benjamin	Benjamin
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 42:5

ULT	UST
And the sons of Israel came among those who came to buy grain, because the famine was in the land of Canaan.	*Israel's sons arrived in Egypt along with many other people who were coming there to buy food, because the severe food shortage was also affecting everyone in the region of Canaan.*

ULT **And the sons of Israel came**
UST Israel's sons arrived in Egypt

If it is not clear that **Israel** (verse 5) and "Jacob" (verse 4) refer to the same person, you could include the name Jacob here in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [The sons of Israel that is, Jacob] or [So the sons of Jacob, who was also called Israel]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And … came**
UST arrived in Egypt

Alternate translation: [came to Egypt]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **among {those} who came**
UST along with {many} other people who were coming there

Alternate translation: [along with many other people who were going there] or [along with many other travelers]

ULT **because the famine**
UST because the severe food shortage

See how you translated **because the famine** in Genesis 41:57. Alternate translation: [because the extreme food shortage] or [because the extreme lack of food]

ULT **was in the land of Canaan**
UST was {also} {affecting everyone} in the region of Canaan

Alternate translation: [was also affecting everyone in the land of Canaan] or [was also affecting the entire land of Canaan]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
famine	the severe food shortage
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 42:6

ULT	UST
Now Joseph was the governor over the land. It was he who was selling grain to all the people of the land. So the brothers of Joseph came and bowed down to him with their noses to the ground.	*Since Joseph was the administrator over the country of Egypt, he was the one selling grain to people who came to him from all over the country. So Joseph's brothers also went before him like everyone else and bowed down with their faces to the ground to show him respect.*

ULT **Now Joseph {was} the governor over the land**
UST Since Joseph {was} the administrator over the country of Egypt

Alternate translation: [Since Joseph was the administrator over the land of Egypt]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **the land**
UST the country of Egypt

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "the country of Egypt," which is what it means earlier in verse 6; or (2) "the earth/world."

ULT **So the brothers of Joseph came**
UST So Joseph's brothers {also} went

So/Then Joseph's brothers also came/went

ULT **and bowed down to him {with} {their} noses to the ground**
UST before him {like everyone else} and bowed down {with} {their} faces to the ground to show him respect

See how you translated "bow down" in Genesis 37:7, 9–10. Alternate translation: [before him like everyone else and bowed down with their foreheads toward the ground to show him respect] or [to him and prostrated themselves before him to show respect]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
was the governor	was the administrator
land	the country of Egypt
land	the country
Joseph	Joseph
bowed down	bowed down
to the ground	to the ground

Genesis 42:7

ULT	UST
And Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them, but he acted like a stranger to them, and he spoke with them harshly and said to them, "Where did you come from?" And they said, "From the land of Canaan to buy food."	*When Joseph saw his brothers, he recognized them, but he pretended that he did not know them. In fact, he spoke to them sternly and asked them, "What country are you from?" They answered him, "Sir, we are from the region of Canaan to buy some grain."*

ULT **And Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them**
UST When Joseph saw his brothers, he recognized them

Alternate translation: [Joseph immediately recognized his brothers]

ULT **but he acted like a stranger to them**
UST but he pretended that he did not {know} them

For some languages it is better to divide the first sentence in this verse into shorter sentences. Alternate translation: [but he treated them like strangers] or [But he pretended that he did not know them]

ULT **and he spoke with them harshly**
UST In fact, he spoke to them sternly

Alternate translation: [and spoke to them in a harsh way] or [In fact, he spoke to them roughly]

ULT **and said to them**
UST and asked them

Alternate translation: [and questioned them] or [and demanded]

ULT **Where did you come from**
UST What country are you from

Alternate translation: [Where are you from?]

ULT **From the land of Canaan to buy food**
UST Sir, {we are} from the region of Canaan to buy {some} grain

For some languages it is necessary to begin with a respectful title or form of address when someone talks to a person of high status like Joseph. See how Joseph's brothers address him in verse 10. Alternate translation: [Sir, we came from the land of Canaan to buy some grain] or [Sir, we are from the land of Canaan and we came to buy some grain]
Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
land	Sir, {we are} from the region of
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 42:8

ULT	UST
And Joseph recognized his brothers, but they did not recognize him.	*Although Joseph recognized his brothers, they did not realize who he was.*

ULT **And Joseph recognized his brothers, but they did not recognize him**

UST Although Joseph recognized his brothers, they did not realize who he was

Alternate translation: [Although Joseph recognized his brothers, they did not know who he was]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 42:9

ULT	UST
Then Joseph remembered the dreams that he had dreamed about them, and he said to them, "You are spies! You have come to see the nakedness of the land!"	*Then Joseph remembered what he had dreamed about his brothers long ago, so he accused them, "You are secretly gathering information about our country! You came here to find out where our country is weak!"*

ULT **about them**
UST about his brothers long ago

Alternate translation: [about them long ago]

ULT **and he said to them**
UST so he accused them

Alternate translation: [so he told them]

ULT **You {are} spies**
UST You are secretly gathering information about our country

Alternate translation: [You are spying on our country!]

ULT **You have come**
UST You came here

Alternate translation: [The reason you came here is]

ULT **to see the nakedness of the land**
UST to find out where {our} country is weak

Alternate translation: [to find out where our country is vulnerable!]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
dreams	dreamed
dreamed	dreamed
land	where {our} country is weak

Genesis 42:10

ULT	UST
But they said to him, "No, my lord, but your servants have come to buy food.	*But his brothers replied to him, "Sir, we are not spies. Rather, we are humble men who have come here only to buy some grain.*

ULT **No, my lord**
UST Sir, we are not spies

Make sure your translation of this phrase sounds polite. In some cultures it is rude to say **No** too directly. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 23:11. Alternate translation: [No, sir]

Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **but your servants have come**
UST Rather, {we are} humble men {who} have come here

The brothers referred to themselves as **your servants** to show respect to Joseph and to acknowledge his high position. Translate this phrase in a polite way that shows respect toward Joseph. Alternate translation: [but rather we come before you humbly] or [Rather, we are just humble men who have come here]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **to buy food**
UST only to buy {some} grain

Alternate translation: [only to buy some food]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	Sir
servants	Rather, {we are} humble men {who} have come here

Genesis 42:11

ULT	UST
All of us are sons of one man. We are honest. Your servants are not spies."	*We are all brothers who have the same father. We are humble, trustworthy men, not spies."*

ULT **sons of one man**
UST brothers who have the same father

Alternate translation: [the sons of the same man]

ULT **We {are} honest. Your servants are not spies**
UST We {are} humble, trustworthy men, not spies

Alternate translation: [We are trustworthy people who highly respect you. We are not spies] or [We are humble, honest people, not spies]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servants	humble

Genesis 42:12

ULT	UST
But he said to them, “No, indeed you have come to see the nakedness of the land!”	*But Joseph accused them, “That is not true! You have definitely come here to find out where our country is weak!”*

ULT **But he said to them**
UST But Joseph accused them

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph replied] or [But he accused them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **No, indeed you have come**
UST That is not {true}! You have definitely come here

Different languages use “yes” and “no” in different ways, depending on the context. Do what is accurate and natural in this context in your language. Also see how you translated **No** in Genesis 18:15.

ULT **to see the nakedness of the land**
UST to find out where {our} country is weak

See how you translated this phrase in verse 9. Alternate translation: [to find out where our country is vulnerable!]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	where {our} country is weak

Genesis 42:13

ULT	UST
But they said, "Your servants are twelve brothers. We are sons of one man in the land of Canaan. And behold, the youngest is with our father today, and the one is not alive."	*But they replied to him, "Sir, there were twelve of us brothers. We are sons of the same father who lives in the region of Canaan. Our youngest brother is with our father right now, but our other brother has died."*

ULT **But they said**
UST But they replied to him

Alternate translation: [Then they responded]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Your servants {are} twelve brothers**
UST Sir, {there were} twelve of us brothers

Alternate translation: [Sir, there are twelve of us brothers]

ULT **We {are} sons of one man**
UST We {are} sons of the same father

Alternate translation: [We are all sons of the same man] or [We all have the same father]

ULT **in the land of Canaan**
UST who lives in the region of Canaan

Alternate translation: [who lives in the land of Canaan] or [and we live in the land of Canaan]

ULT **And behold, the youngest**
UST Our youngest brother

The word **behold** calls attention to what the brothers say next. Some translations leave it implied. Alternate translation: [In fact, our youngest brother]

ULT **is with our father today**
UST is with our father right now

Alternate translation: [is presently back at home with our father] or [is there with our father right now]

ULT **and the one**
UST but {our other} brother

Alternate translation: [but the other one]

> ULT **is not alive**
> UST has died

In this context, **is not** is an idiom that means “has died.” Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [is no more] or [is no longer with us]

Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servants	Sir
land	who lives in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
today	right now

Genesis 42:14

ULT	UST
Then Joseph said to them, “It is just as I told you, saying, ‘You are spies!’	*But Joseph accused them, “What I told you is true! You are spying on our country!*

ULT **Then Joseph said to them**

UST But Joseph accused them

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph accused them] or [Then Joseph responded]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **It {is} just as I told you, saying, ‘You {are} spies**

UST What I told you is true! You are spying on our country

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate the embedded quote **You are spies** as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [What I told you is right You are spying on our country!] or [I was right when I said that you are secretly gathering information about our country!]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 42:15

ULT	UST
By this you will be tested: By the life of Pharaoh, you will not leave from this place unless your youngest brother comes here.	*So now, this is how I will verify whether or not you told me the truth: As certain as King Pharaoh lives, I swear that you will definitely never leave Egypt until your youngest brother is here.*

ULT **By this**
UST So now, this is how

Alternate translation: [In this way]

ULT **you will be tested**
UST I will verify whether {or not} you told me the truth

Alternate translation: [I will test whether or not you told me the truth:] or [I am going to test you to find out if your claims are true:]

ULT **By the life of Pharaoh**
UST As certain as {King} Pharaoh lives, I swear that

Joseph uses King Pharaoh's name here to make an oath that emphasizes the certainty of what he says next. Make sure that the way he refers to Pharaoh sounds respectful in your translation. See how you translated other vows in Genesis 14:22 and 21:23–24. Alternate translation: [As certain as King Pharaoh lives, I vow that]

ULT **you will not leave**
UST you will {definitely} never leave

Alternate translation: [you will definitely not leave] or [I will not let you leave]

ULT **from this place**
UST Egypt

Alternate translation: [from here]

ULT **unless your youngest brother comes here**
UST until your youngest brother is here

For some languages it may be better to change the wording of this sentence and say, "By the life of Pharaoh, the only way you will ever leave Egypt is if your youngest brother comes here." or "By the life of Pharaoh, your youngest brother must come here, or else you will definitely not/never leave Egypt!" Alternate translation: [until your youngest brother comes here] or [until I see that your youngest brother is here]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 42:16

ULT	UST
Send one of you, and let him bring your brother, and you will be bound. Then your words will be tested as to whether the truth is in you. And if not, by the life of Pharaoh, surely you are spies!”	*So one of you must go back home and bring your youngest brother back here. The rest of you must stay here in prison. That way I can verify whether you told me the truth. But if you are lying, as certain as King Pharaoh lives, that means you really are spying on our country!”*

ULT **Send one of you**
UST So one of you must go back home

Alternate translation: [Choose one of you to go home]

ULT **and let him bring your brother**
UST and bring your {youngest} brother back here

Alternate translation: [to get your youngest brother and bring him here]

ULT **and you**
UST The rest of you

In this verse, the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural. Alternate translation: [You who are left]
Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

ULT **will be bound**
UST must stay here in prison

See how you translated **bound** in Genesis 39:20; 40:3, 5. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [will be put in prison]

ULT **Then your words will be tested {as to whether} the truth {is} in you**
UST That way I can verify {whether} you told me the truth

Alternate translation: [That way I can verify whether or not you told me the truth] or [If you do that, I will know that what you told me is true]

ULT **And if not**
UST But if you are lying

Alternate translation: [But if you are not telling the truth]

ULT **by the life of Pharaoh**
UST as certain as {King} Pharaoh lives

See how you translated this phrase in verse 15.

ULT **surely you {are} spies**
UST that means you really are spying on our country

Alternate translation: [that means you are definitely spies!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 42:17

ULT	UST
Then he put them together in custody for three days.	*Then Joseph had his soldiers lock up his brothers in prison for three days.*

ULT **Then he put them together in custody {for} three days**
UST Then Joseph {had his soldiers} lock up his brothers in prison {for} three days

See how you translated **in custody** in Genesis 40:3–4, 7. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph had his soldiers put them in custody for three days]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days

Genesis 42:18

ULT	UST
Then Joseph said to them on the third day, "Do this and live, because I fear God:	*Three days later, Joseph said to them, "I am a man who reveres God. So if you do what I say, I will let you live.*

ULT **Then Joseph said to them on the third day**
UST Three days later, Joseph said to them

See how you translated **on the third day** in Genesis 22:4, 31:22, 40:20. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [After three days, Joseph said to them]

ULT **Do this**
UST So if you do what I say

Alternate translation: [Do what I say and] or [If you do this] or [If you do what I say]

ULT **and live**
UST I will let you live

Alternate translation: [you will live] or [I will spare your lives]

ULT **because I fear God**
UST I am a man who reveres God

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "I am a man who reveres/respects God. So if you do what I say, I will let you live." See how you translated **fear God** in Genesis 22:12. Alternate translation: [since I respect and obey God:]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
day	days
fear	am a man who reveres
God	God

Genesis 42:19

ULT	UST
If you are honest, let one of your brothers be bound in your prison house, and you go take grain back for the famine of your households.	*Since you claim to be trustworthy men, I will make just one of you brothers stay where you have been, in prison. The rest of you may go and carry food back home for your hungry families.*

ULT **If you {are} honest**
UST Since you {claim to be} trustworthy men

See how you translated **honest** in verse 11. Alternate translation: [If you truly are honest men as you say] or [Since you claim to be honest men]

ULT **let one of your brothers be bound in your prison house**
UST I will make {just} one of you brothers stay where you have been, in prison

See how you translated **be bound** in verse 16. Alternate translation: [I will make just one of you brothers remain where you have been, in prison] or [just one of you brothers must remain confined where you have been]

ULT **and you go take grain back**
UST The rest of you {may} go {and} carry food back home

Alternate translation: [while the rest of you go back home now with grain] or [The rest of you may go and take grain back home]

ULT **for the famine of your households**
UST for your hungry families

Alternate translation: [for your hungry families to eat] or [to feed your hungry households]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grain	food
famine	for your hungry families
your households	for your hungry families

Genesis 42:20

ULT	UST
Then you will bring your youngest brother to me so that your words will be verified, and you will not die." And they did so.	*But you must bring your youngest brother back here to me. That way I will know that you are telling the truth, and I will let you live." So Joseph's brothers agreed to do what he said.*

ULT **Then you will bring your youngest brother to me**
UST But you {must} bring your youngest brother {back} {here} to me

Alternate translation: [After that, you must come back here to me with your youngest brother]

ULT **so that your words will be verified**
UST That way I will know that you are telling the truth

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 16. Alternate translation: [so that what you have told me will be proven to be true]

ULT **and you will not die**
UST and I will let you live

Joseph is using a figure of speech here that emphasizes a positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with a mild expression that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could emphasize the positive meaning in a strong way. In this context, the word **die** refers to execution, not death by natural causes. Alternate translation: [and I will spare your lives and not execute you for being spies]
Support Reference: Litotes

ULT **And they did so**
UST So Joseph's brothers {agreed to} do what he said

Alternate translation: [… agreed to do what he said] or [… accepted his proposal]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
so that … will be verified	That way I will know that you are telling the truth

Genesis 42:21

ULT	UST
Then each man said to his brother, "We are truly guilty concerning our brother, because we saw the distress of his soul when he pleaded with us, but we did not listen. For that reason this distress has come upon us."	*While they were still standing there, they said to each other, "Surely what we did to our brother Joseph long ago was very wrong. We saw how he was suffering when he begged us not to harm him, but we refused to listen to him. That is why we are suffering now."*

ULT **We {are} truly guilty concerning our brother**
UST Surely what we did to our brother {Joseph} {long ago} was {very} wrong

Alternate translation: [This is happening because we sinned badly against our brother Joseph long ago]

ULT **because we saw the distress of his soul**
UST We saw how he was suffering

The phrase **his soul** refers here to Joseph. Alternate translation: [We saw how distressed he was] or [We saw how terribly he was suffering]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **when he pleaded with us**
UST when he begged us not to harm him

Alternate translation: [when he urgently asked us to free him]

ULT **but we did not listen**
UST but we refused to listen to him

Alternate translation: [but we refused to let him go]

ULT **For that reason**
UST That is why

Alternate translation: [That is the reason that]

ULT **this distress has come upon us**
UST we are suffering now

Alternate translation: [we are now experiencing so much trouble] or [we are suffering like this now]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
guilty	Surely what we did … long ago was {very} wrong
distress	how he was suffering
pleaded	begged
distress	we are suffering now

Genesis 42:22

ULT	UST
Then Reuben responded to them, saying, "Did I not tell you, saying, 'Do not sin against the lad'? But you did not listen, so now behold, his blood is being accounted for!"	*Reuben scolded them by saying, "I told you that you should not do anything bad to him! But you refused to listen to me, and now look, God is holding us responsible for causing him to die!"*

ULT **Then Reuben responded to them, saying**
UST Reuben scolded them by saying

Alternate translation: [Reuben reproached them by saying]

ULT **Did I not tell you, saying**
UST I told you

Reuben uses this rhetorical question to scold his brothers. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Remember that I told you]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Do not sin against the lad**
UST that you should not do anything bad to him

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, see how you translated **lad** in Genesis 37:30, and keep in mind that Joseph was seventeen years old when his brothers sold him. Alternate translation: [that you must not harm the boy!]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **But you did not listen**
UST But you refused to listen to me

Alternate translation: [But you did not obey me]

ULT **so now behold**
UST and now look

Alternate translation: [so now, see what is happening:] or [so now look]

ULT **his blood is being accounted for**
UST God is holding us responsible for causing him to die

The phrase **his blood** refers to Joseph's death; if you do not translate that phrase literally, you could put the literal text in a footnote since **blood** is such an important term throughout the Bible. Alternate translation: [we are being held responsible by God for his death!] or [We are getting what we deserve for causing his death!]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben
sin	that you should … do anything bad

Genesis 42:23

ULT	UST
And they did not know that Joseph understood them, because the interpreter was between them.	*Joseph's brothers did not realize that he could understand what they were saying to each other, because he had been speaking to them using a translator as if he did not know their language.*

ULT **that Joseph understood them**
UST that he {could} understand what they were saying to each other

Alternate translation: [that Joseph could understand what they were saying to each other] or [that he was listening to what they were saying]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **because the interpreter {was} between them**
UST because he had been speaking to them using a translator as if he did not know their language

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "Now Joseph had been using an interpreter to speak to his brothers, so they did not realize that Joseph could understand them."
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	did … realize
Joseph	he {could} understand what they were saying to each other
interpreter	he had been speaking to them using a translator as if he did not know their language

Genesis 42:24

ULT	UST
And he turned away from them and cried. Then he turned back toward them and spoke to them. Then he took Simeon from them and bound him before their eyes.	*When Joseph heard what they were saying, he turned his back to them and started crying. Then after he recovered, he turned back around and spoke to them again. Then he chose Simeon from among them and had his soldiers bind him with chains while they watched.*

ULT **And he turned away**
UST When Joseph heard what they were saying, he turned

Throughout this section make sure it is clear at each point who is being referred to, using nouns (including names) and pronouns naturally in your language. Alternate translation: [So he turned]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And he turned away from them**
UST When Joseph heard what they were saying, he turned his back to them

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “turned his back to them” or (2) “went/ stepped away from them.” Either way, Joseph was hiding his face from his brothers so they could not see that he was crying.

ULT **and cried**
UST and started crying

Alternate translation: [to hide his tears]

ULT **Then he turned back toward them**
UST Then {after he recovered,} he turned back around

Make sure that the way you translate this sentence fits with the way you translated the last sentence in verse 23. Alternate translation: [Then after he recovered, Joseph turned back around] or [When he had composed himself, he came back to them]

ULT **and spoke to them**
UST and spoke to them again

Alternate translation: [and spoke to them again using his translator] or [and continued speaking to them]

ULT **Then he took Simeon from them**
UST Then he chose Simeon from {among} them

Alternate translation: [Next he chose Simeon from among them] or [Then he separated Simeon from the rest of the brothers]

ULT **before their eyes**
UST while they watched

Alternate translation: [as they watched] or [in front of them]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Simeon	Simeon
bound	bind

Genesis 42:25

ULT	UST
Then Joseph ordered his servants and they filled their bags with grain. And he ordered them to return each man's silver to his sack and to give provisions to them for the road. And he did that for them.	*Then Joseph told his servants to fill his brothers' sacks with grain. He also told them to secretly put in each brother's sack the money they had paid for the grain and to provide them with food to eat on their trip home. After Joseph did that for his brothers,*

ULT **Then Joseph ordered {his servants} and they filled**
UST Then Joseph told {his servants} to fill

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph commanded his servants to fill] or [Then Joseph had his servants fill]

ULT **their bags {with} grain**
UST his brothers' sacks {with} grain

Two different words, "bag" and **sack**, are used in this verse to refer to the bags of grain that the brothers had. Some languages use just one of these terms in order to prevent confusion.

ULT **And {he ordered them} to return {each} man's silver to his sack**
UST He also {told them} to {secretly} put in each brother's sack the money they had paid for the grain

Joseph had his servants to do this without his brothers knowing about it.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and to give provisions to them for the road**
UST and to provide them {with} food to eat on their trip home

Alternate translation: [and to supply them with food to eat on the journey home] or [and to give them food to eat as they traveled home]

ULT **And he did that for them**
UST After Joseph did that for his brothers

Alternate translation: [So, that is what was done for them] or [That is what Joseph did for them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
grain	grain
silver	the money they had paid for the grain

Genesis 42:26

ULT	UST
Then they loaded their grain onto their donkeys and went from there.	*his brothers loaded their sacks of grain onto their donkeys' backs and started traveling home.*

ULT Then they loaded
UST his brothers loaded

Make sure your choice here fits with the way you translated the end of verse 25. Alternate translation: [Then his brothers put] or [they put] or [his brothers put]

ULT and went from there
UST and started traveling home

The way you translate this phrase should reflect the fact that Joseph's brothers were just starting their journey back home; they did not reach their home until several days later (verse 29). Alternate translation: [and left there to go home]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grain	grain
donkeys	their donkeys' backs

Genesis 42:27

ULT	UST
Then one of them opened his sack to give fodder to his donkey at the lodging place, and he saw his silver, and behold, it was in the mouth of his sack!	*Later, when they stopped at a place to stay for the night, one of them opened his sack to get some grain to feed his donkey. There in the top of his sack he saw the money that he had used to buy grain!*

ULT **Then one {of them} opened his sack to give fodder to his donkey at the lodging place**
UST Later, {when they stopped} at a place to stay for the night, one {of them} opened his sack to get {some} grain to feed his donkey

See how you translated **fodder** in Genesis 24:25, 32. Alternate translation: [Later, when they stopped at a place to lodge for the night, one of them opened his sack to get some feed to feed his donkey]

ULT **and he saw his silver, and behold, it {was} in the mouth of his sack**
UST There in the top of his sack he saw the money that he had used to buy grain

Alternate translation: [Suddenly he saw that the silver he had paid for the grain was right there in the opening of his sack] or [There in the top of his sack he saw the money that he had paid to buy grain]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
donkey	donkey
silver	the money that he had used to buy grain

Genesis 42:28

ULT	UST
So he said to his brothers, "My silver has been returned! And indeed behold, it is in my sack!" Then their hearts went out, and each man trembled to his brother, saying, "What is this God has done to us?"	*So he exclaimed to the others, "Somebody has returned my money to me! Here it is in my sack!" When they saw it, they were completely shocked, and they shook with fear. They asked each other, "Why is God doing this to us?"*

ULT **So he said to his brothers**
UST So he exclaimed to the others

Alternate translation: [Then he exclaimed to his brothers] or [Then he exclaimed to the others]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **My silver has been returned**
UST Somebody has returned my money to me

Alternate translation: [Somebody has returned my grain money to me!] or [Someone gave my grain money back to me!]

ULT **And indeed behold, {it is} in my sack**
UST Here it is in my sack

Alternate translation: [Here it is in my grain sack!] or [It is right here in my grain sack!]

ULT **Then their hearts went out**
UST When they saw it, they were {completely} shocked

Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [They looked, and their hearts sank]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and each {man} trembled to his brother, saying**
UST and they shook {with fear}. They asked each other

Alternate translation: [and they all started shaking with fear and said to each other] or [and they trembled with fear. They asked each other]

ULT **What {is} this God has done to us**
UST Why is God doing this to us

Alternate translation: [What is God doing to us?] or [Why is God making this happen to us?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	my money
trembled	and they shook {with fear}. They asked each other
God	God

Genesis 42:29

ULT	UST
Then they came to Jacob their father in the land of Canaan, and they reported to him all that had happened to them, saying,	*When they reached their home in the region of Canaan where their father Jacob was, they told him everything they had experienced. They said,*

ULT **Then they came to Jacob their father in the land of Canaan**
UST When they reached {their home in} the region of Canaan where their father Jacob was

Alternate translation: [When they got back home to their father Jacob in the region of Canaan] or [When they reached their home in the land of Canaan where their father Jacob was]

ULT **and they reported to him all**
UST they told him everything

See how you translated **reported to** in Genesis 38:13. Alternate translation: [they explained to him all]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
reported	they told

Genesis 42:30

ULT	UST
“The man, the lord of the land, spoke to us harshly and treated us as if we were spying out the land!	*“The man who governs the country of Egypt spoke to us sternly and accused us of spying on their country!*

ULT **The man, the lord of the land**
UST The man who governs the country of Egypt

Alternate translation: [The man who is the ruler over the land of Egypt] or [The man who controls the land of Egypt]

ULT **spoke to us harshly**
UST spoke to us sternly

See how you translated **harshly** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [spoke to us roughly] or [was very harsh when he spoke to us]

ULT **and treated us as {if we were} spying out**
UST and accused us of spying on

Alternate translation: [He even accused us of being spies!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	who governs
land	the country of Egypt
land	their country

Genesis 42:31

ULT	UST
But we said to him, ‘We are honest. We are not spies.	*But we told him, ‘We are trustworthy men; not spies.*

ULT **But we said to him, ‘We {are} honest. We are not spies**
UST But we told him, ‘We {are} trustworthy {men}; not spies

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, see how you translated “… honest … not spies” in verse 11.
Alternate translation: [We told him that we are not spies, but rather trustworthy men]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Genesis 42:32

ULT	UST
We are twelve brothers, the sons of our father. The one is not alive, and the youngest is with our father today in the land of Canaan.'	*There were twelve of us brothers, and we are the sons of the same father. One of our brothers has died, and the youngest brother is at home with our father right now in the region of Canaan.'*

ULT **We {are} twelve brothers**
UST There were twelve of us brothers

Make sure that the way you translate verse 32 fits with whether you used a direct or indirect quote in verse 31. Alternate translation: [We told him that we are twelve brothers]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **the sons of our father**
UST and {we are} the sons of the same father

Alternate translation: [sons of one father]

ULT **is not alive**
UST has died

See how you translated this idiom in verse 13. Alternate translation: [is no more] or [is no longer with us]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and the youngest**
UST and the youngest brother

Alternate translation: [and our youngest one]

ULT **is with our father today**
UST is {at home} with our father right now

Alternate translation: [is right now with our father at home]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
today	right now
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 42:33

ULT	UST
Then the man, the lord of the land, said to us, 'By this I will know that you are honest: Leave one of your brothers with me, and take grain for the famine of your households and go.	*But the man who governs the country told us, 'This is how I will know if you are trustworthy men: You must leave one of you here with me, and the rest of you go home with food for your starving families.*

ULT **Then the man, the lord of the land, said to us**
UST But the man who governs the country told us

See how you translated **the man, the lord of the land** in verse 30. Alternate translation: [Then the ruler of the land said to us] or [But the man who rules the land told us]

ULT **By this**
UST This is how

See how you translated **By this** in verse 15. Alternate translation: [In this way]

ULT **I will know that you {are} honest**
UST I will know if you {are} trustworthy men

Alternate translation: [I will know that you are trustworthy men]

ULT **Leave one of your brothers with me**
UST You must leave one of you {here} with me

Alternate translation: [One of you brothers will stay here with me]

ULT **and take {grain} {for} the famine of your households and go**
UST and {the rest of you} go {home} with {food for} your starving families

Alternate translation: [while the rest of you buy grain to relieve the hunger of your families and go home] or [and the rest of you go home with grain for your hungry households]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	who governs
land	the country
know	know
your households	for your starving families

Genesis 42:34

ULT	UST
Then bring your youngest brother to me so that I will know that you are not spies, that you are honest. Then I will give your brother to you, and you can trade in the land.'"	*But bring your youngest brother back here to me. Then I will know that you are trustworthy men and not spies. Then I will return your brother to you from prison, and you can travel around my country and trade freely.'"*

ULT **Then bring your youngest brother to me**
UST But bring your youngest brother {back} {here} to me

See how you translated a similar clause at the beginning of verse 20. Alternate translation: [Then bring your youngest brother back here to me] or [After that, you must come back here to me with your youngest brother]

ULT **so that I will know that you {are} not spies**
UST Then I will know that … and not spies

Consider again how you translated **spies** in Genesis 42:9–11, 14, 16, 30, 31, 34. Alternate translation: [Then I will know that you are not spies]

ULT **that you {are} honest**
UST you {are} trustworthy men

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "Then I will know that you are honest/trustworthy men/people and not spies." Alternate translation: [but are honest men]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Then I will give your brother to you**
UST Then I will return your brother to you from prison

Alternate translation: [Then I will release to you your brother who is in prison]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
land	my country

Genesis 42:35

ULT	UST
Then it happened they were emptying their sacks, and behold, each man's pouch of his silver was inside his sack! And they and their father saw the pouches of their silver, and they were afraid.	*Then Joseph's brothers started emptying their sacks of grain, and there inside each man's sack was his bag of money that he had paid for the grain! When they and their father Jacob saw the money bags, they were terrified.*

ULT **Then it happened they were emptying their sacks**
UST Then Joseph's brothers started emptying their sacks of grain

Alternate translation: [Sometime after that, the brothers began to empty the grain from their sacks]

ULT **and behold, each {man's} pouch of his silver {was} inside his sack**
UST and there inside each man's sack was his bag of money that he had paid for the grain

Alternate translation: [and they were surprised to see their bags of money inside their sacks!]

ULT **And they and their father saw the pouches of their silver, and they were afraid**
UST When they and their father {Jacob} saw the {money} bags, they were terrified

Alternate translation: [When they and their father Jacob saw the bags of silver they were terrified]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	money that he had paid for the grain
silver	the {money} bags
afraid	they were terrified

Genesis 42:36

ULT	UST
Then Jacob their father said to them, "You have bereaved me! Joseph is not here! And Simeon is not here! And you will take Benjamin! All these things are against me!"	*Then their father exclaimed to them, "You have caused me terrible loss! Joseph is gone! Simeon is gone! And now you want to take Benjamin away from me too! Everything is going terribly for me!"*

ULT **Then Jacob their father said to them**
UST Then their father exclaimed to them

If you make **Jacob** explicit in verse 35, you could leave it implied here in verse 36. Alternate translation: [Then their father said to them]

ULT **You have bereaved me**
UST You have caused me {terrible} loss

Alternate translation: [You have deprived me of my sons!]

ULT **Joseph is not {here}! And Simeon is not here**
UST Joseph is gone! Simeon is gone

Alternate translation: [Joseph and Simeon are no longer with us!]

ULT **All {these} things are against me**
UST Everything is going terribly for me

Alternate translation: [Everything is against me!] or [Everything is going badly for me!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	יַעֲקֹב
Joseph	Joseph
Simeon	Simeon
Benjamin	Benjamin

Genesis 42:37

ULT	UST
Then Reuben said to his father, saying, "You may kill my two sons if I do not bring him to you. Put him in my hand, and I will return him to you."	*Reuben replied, "Father, let me be responsible for taking Benjamin down to Egypt. If I fail to bring him back to you safely, you can punish me by killing my two sons."*

ULT **Then Reuben said to his father, saying**

UST Reuben replied

Alternate translation: [Then Reuben responded to his father]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **You may kill my two sons if I do not bring him to you**

UST If I fail to bring him {back} to you {safely}, you can {punish me by} killing my two sons

For some languages, it is necessary to change the order of clauses in this sentence (so that the condition comes first), as in the second alternate above. Alternate translation: [You may punish me by killing my sons if I do not bring Benjamin back to you] or [If I fail to bring Benjamin back to you safely, you can punish me by killing my two sons]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Put him in my hand**

UST let me be responsible for {taking} Benjamin down to Egypt

The phrase **in my hand** is used here as an idiom that means that Reuben was going to be responsible for Benjamin's welfare. Alternate translation: [Entrust him to my care as we travel to Egypt] or [Let me be responsible for taking care of Benjamin on our trip to Egypt]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and I will return him to you**

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this quote and say, "Father, let me be responsible for taking Benjamin down to Egypt. If I fail to bring him back to you safely, you can punish me by killing my two sons." Alternate translation: [and I promise that I will bring him back to you safely]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben

Genesis 42:38

ULT	UST
But he said, "My son will not go down with you, because his brother is dead, and he alone is left. And if harm were to meet him on the road that you are going on, then you would bring my gray head down in sorrow to Sheol!"	*But his father replied, "No, I will not let my son Benjamin go down to Egypt with you. His brother is dead, so he is the only son I have left from his mother. So if anything bad happened to him on your journey, you would cause me, your elderly father, to grieve so badly that I would die and go down to the afterworld!"*

ULT **But he said**
UST But his father replied

Alternate translation: [But his father insisted]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **My son will not go down with you**
UST No, I will not let my son {Benjamin} go down {to Egypt} with you

Notice that the pronoun **you** is plural in this verse. Also, see how you translated **go down** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [My son Benjamin may not go with you to Egypt]

ULT **because his brother is dead**
UST His brother is dead

Joseph was Benjamin's older brother from the same father and mother. Consider whether your language has a special kinship term for that relationship.
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **and he alone is left**
UST so he is the only son {I have} left from his mother

By **he alone is left**, Jacob means that Joseph and Benjamin were the only two sons of Rachel, Jacob's favorite wife who died after giving birth to Benjamin (Genesis 35:16–20). If Joseph is now gone, only Benjamin remains. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [so he is the only one I have left from his mother]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And {if} harm were to meet him on the road that you are going on**
UST So if anything bad happened to him on {your} journey

Jacob is saying what would happen if he lost Benjamin too. Consider what is the best way to translate this hypothetical statement in your language. Also, see how you translated "harm … meet him" in verse 4. Alternate translation: [So if he were to be killed during your journey] or [So if anything bad happened to him while you are traveling]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

> ULT **then you would bring my gray head down in sorrow**
> UST you would cause me, your elderly father, to grieve so badly that I would {die and} go down

Jacob uses the phrase **my gray head** to refer to himself as their aged father. Consider whether your language has a similar phrase that is natural and works well here. Alternate translation: [you would cause me, your gray-haired father, to grieve so deeply that I would die and go down] or [you would cause me, your gray-haired father, so much grief that I would die and go down]

Genesis 43

Genesis 43:1

ULT	UST
Now the famine was heavy in the land.	*The famine continued to be severe in the region of Canaan.*

ULT **Now the famine**
UST The famine

The setting changes here to focus on what is happening in Canaan. Some languages use a special conjunction (like **Now**) to indicate that, while others do not use a conjunction here.
Alternate translation: [The food shortage]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **was heavy**
UST continued to be severe

The word **heavy** is used here as an idiom that means the famine caused everyone much suffering. See how you translated the same idiom in Genesis 12:10 and Genesis 41:31.
Alternate translation: [was oppressive]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **in the land**
UST in the region of Canaan

Alternate translation: [in the land of Canaan]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
famine	famine
land	in the region of Canaan

Genesis 43:2

ULT	UST
So it happened when they finished eating the grain that they had brought from Egypt, then their father said to them, "Return, buy a little food for us."	*So when Jacob and his family finished eating all the grain that his sons had brought from the country of Egypt, he said to them, "Go back to Egypt and buy some more grain for us and our families."*

ULT **So it happened**
UST So

The author is using the word translated **And it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **when they finished**
UST when Jacob and his family finished

Consider whether it is clearer in your language to use a pronoun or a noun phrase here. Alternate translation: [when Jacob and his family had finished eating] or [… had used up]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the grain that they had brought**
UST all the grain that his sons had brought

The pronoun **they** refers here to Jacob's sons, not Jacob's family (as it did earlier in this sentence). Alternate translation: [all the grain that his sons had bought and brought home]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **then their father said to them**
UST he said to them

Alternate translation: [their father Jacob told them] or [he told them]

ULT **buy a little food**
UST and buy some {more} grain

Alternate translation: [and buy some more food]

ULT **for us**
UST for us and our families

The pronoun **us** includes Jacob and his sons and their families here. Alternate translation: [for our family]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grain	grain
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 43:3

ULT	UST
But Judah said to him, saying, "The man strongly warned us, saying, 'You will not see my face unless your brother is with you!'	*But his son Judah replied to him, "The governor there sternly warned us that we cannot go to him again to buy grain if our youngest brother is not with us.*

ULT **But Judah said to him, saying**
UST But {his son} Judah replied to him

Alternate translation: [His son Judah replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **The man**
UST The governor there

The brothers did not realize yet that Joseph was the governor they had spoken to in Egypt, so Judah referred to him generally here as "the man." See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 42:30. Alternate translation: [The man who governs the country there]

ULT **strongly warned us, saying**
UST sternly warned us

Alternate translation: [sternly told us] or [was serious when he warned us]

ULT **You will not see my face**
UST that we cannot go to him {again} to buy grain

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [that we cannot see him again] or [that we cannot come to him again to buy grain]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **unless your brother {is} with you**
UST if our {youngest} brother {is} not with us

Make sure that the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the previous part of this sentence. For some languages it is necessary to put this clause before the previous clause and say, "… that our youngest brother must be with us or else we will not be permitted to see him again!" Alternate translation: [unless our youngest brother is with us!]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah

Genesis 43:4

ULT	UST
If you will send our brother with us, we will go down and buy food for you.	*So if you will allow our youngest brother to go with us, then we can go to Egypt and buy more grain for you.*

ULT **If you will send our brother with us**
UST So if you will allow our {youngest} brother to go with us

In verses 3–5, the pronouns **us** and **we** are exclusive since they do not include Jacob (whom Judah is talking to). Alternate translation: [So if you will permit our youngest brother to go with us] or [So if you will let our youngest brother go with us]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **we will go down**
UST then we can go to Egypt

Alternate translation: [then we can travel to Egypt]

ULT **and buy food for you**
UST and buy {more} grain for you

Alternate translation: [and buy more grain for you and the rest of the family]

Genesis 43:5

ULT	UST
But if you will not send him, we will not go down, because the man said to us, 'You will not see my face unless your brother is with you!'"	*However if you refuse to let him go with us, we cannot go there, because the governor warned us that we cannot go to him again if our youngest brother is not with us."*

ULT **send him**
UST to let him go with us

See how you translated **send** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [allow him to go with us]

ULT **we will not go down**
UST we cannot go there

See how you translated **go down** and "went down" in Genesis 42:2–3. Alternate translation: [we cannot go down there] or [we must not go there to buy grain]

ULT **because the man said to us**
UST because the governor warned us

Alternate translation: [because the man told us]

ULT **You will not see my face**
UST that we cannot go to him again

See how you translated this quote in verse 3. Alternate translation: [that we cannot see him again] or [that we cannot go to him again to buy grain]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **unless your brother {is} with you**
UST if our {youngest} brother {is} not with us

See how you translated this clause in verse 3. Alternate translation: [unless our youngest brother is with us!]
Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

Genesis 43:6

ULT	UST
Then Israel said, "Why did you treat me badly by telling the man you have yet another brother?"	*Then their father Israel asked them, "Why did you cause trouble for me by telling the governor that you have a younger brother?"*

ULT **Then Israel said**
UST Then {their father} Israel asked them

If it is not clear that **Israel** (verse 6) and "their father" (verse 2) refer to the same person, you could include "their father" here in your translation or in a footnote. See what you did for a similar case in Genesis 42:5.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Why did you treat me badly by telling**
UST Why did you cause trouble for me by telling

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to scold his sons and to show how upset he is. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Why did you cause distress for me by telling] or [You caused me a lot of distress because you told]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **the man**
UST the governor

See how you translated **the man** in verses 3 and 5. Alternate translation: [that man] or [that governor]

ULT **you have yet {another} brother**
UST that you have a younger brother

If you translate this rhetorical question as a statement, make sure that you end it with a period or exclamation point. Alternate translation: [that you have another brother!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
did you treat … badly	did you cause trouble
telling	telling

Genesis 43:7

ULT	UST
And they said, "The man asked persistently about us and our relatives, saying, 'Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?' And we answered him according to those words. How could we possibly know that he would say, 'Bring your brother down'?"	*They answered him, "The governor asked us many questions about ourselves and about our family. He asked us if our father was still alive and if we had another brother. We just answered his questions honestly. There is no way we could have known that he would require us to take our brother down there to him!"*

ULT **The man asked persistently**
UST The governor asked {us} many questions

Alternate translation: [The man questioned us intensely] or [The man asked us many questions]

ULT **about us and our relatives, saying**
UST about ourselves and about our family

In verses 7–8, the pronouns "us," "our," and **we** are exclusive since they do not include Jacob (whom the sons are talking to). Alternate translation: [about ourselves and about the rest of our family]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **Is your father still alive? Do you have {another} brother**
UST He asked {us} if our father was still alive and if we had {another} brother

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [He specifically asked us whether our father was still alive and if we had another brother]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **And we answered him according to those words**
UST We {just} answered his questions honestly

Alternate translation: [So we just answered his questions honestly] or [All we did was answer his questions]

ULT **How could we possibly know**
UST There is no way we could have known

Jacob's sons use a rhetorical question here to emphasize their innocence and express strong emotion. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [We could not possibly have known]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **that he would say, 'Bring your brother down**
UST that he would require us to take our brother down {there} to him

If you translate this rhetorical question as a statement, make sure that you end it with a period or exclamation point. Alternate translation: [that he would tell us to bring our brother down there to him!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and our relatives	family
And we answered	We {just} answered his questions honestly
know	known

Genesis 43:8

ULT	UST
Then Judah said to Israel his father, "Send the young man with me, and we will get up and go so that both we and you and our little ones will live and not die.	*Then Judah urged his father Israel about Benjamin, "Entrust the young man to me to take care of so that we can go immediately to Egypt to buy grain. Then all of us, including our children, can survive and not starve to death.*

ULT **Then Judah said to Israel his father**
UST Then Judah urged his father Israel about Benjamin

For some languages it is necessary to make "Benjamin" explicit here in the quote margin so that it is clear that **young man** refers to him in the following quote.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Send the young man with me**
UST Entrust the young man to me to take care of

See how you translated **young man** in Genesis 37:2; 41:12. Use a term here in your language that fits with the fact that Benjamin was probably in his 30's. Alternate translation: [Allow the young man to come with me and I will watch over him]

ULT **and we will get up and go**
UST so that we can go immediately {to Egypt} to buy grain

Alternate translation: [so we can leave right away to buy grain in Egypt]

ULT **so that both we and you and our little ones will live**
UST Then all of us, including our children, can survive

See how you translated **will live and not die** in Genesis 42:2. Alternate translation: [Then all of us, including our children, will survive] or [… can stay alive]

ULT **and not die**
UST and not starve to death

Alternate translation: [and not die from hunger]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
Israel	Israel
our little ones	our children

Genesis 43:9

ULT	UST
I myself will guarantee him. From my hand you can require him. If I do not bring him back to you and set him before you, then I will have sinned against you all the days.	*I personally promise to keep him safe. You can hold me responsible for him, so that if I do not bring him back to you safely, I will be guilty of this sin against you for the rest of my life.*

ULT **I myself will guarantee him**
UST I personally promise to keep him safe

Alternate translation: [I personally guarantee to keep him safe] or [I personally guarantee his safety]

ULT **From my hand you can require him**
UST You can hold me responsible for him

See how you translated a similar idiom in Genesis 31:39. Alternate translation: [You can make me liable for him]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **If I do not bring him {back} to you and set him before you**
UST so that if I do not bring him {back} to you safely

Consider what is the best way to translate this hypothetical sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [so that if I do not bring him back home to you alive]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **then I will have sinned against you**
UST I will be guilty of this sin against you

Alternate translation: [you can blame me for this sin]

ULT **all the days**
UST for the rest of my life

Alternate translation: [all the days of my life] or [forever]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
will guarantee him	I personally promise to keep him safe
sinned	sin
days	my life

Genesis 43:10

ULT	UST
Surely if we had not delayed, surely we could have returned here twice by now.”	*In any case, if we had not waited this long, we could have made two round trips there and back by now.”*

ULT **Surely if we had not delayed**
UST In any case, if we had not waited this long

This sentence refers to something that could have happened, but did not actually happen. Consider what is the best way to translate this contrary-to-fact statement in your language. Alternate translation: [As it is, if we had not delayed such a long time] or [In any case, if we had not delayed this long]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **surely we could have returned here twice by now**
UST we could have made two {round} trips {there and back} by now

Alternate translation: [certainly we could have made two round trips there and back by now] or [we certainly would have had enough time to go down there and back two times already]

Genesis 43:11

ULT	UST
Then Israel their father said to them, "If it must be so, then do this: Take some of the choice produce of the land in your bags, and take it down to the man as a gift: a little balm, and a little honey, spices and myrrh, pistachio nuts and almonds.	*Then their father Israel said to them, "Since that is how it must be, then do this: Put some of the best things from our land in your sacks, and take them to the governor as gifts. Include some healing salve, some honey, some spices and incense, and some pistachio nuts and almonds.*

ULT **Then Israel their father said to them**
UST Then their father Israel said to them

See how you translated **Israel their father** in verse 8.

ULT **If {it must be} so**
UST Since that is how it must be

Alternate translation: [If that is how it must be] or [Okay, if that is the only way we can get more grain]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **then do this**
UST then do this

Alternate translation: [then this is what you must do:]

ULT **Take {some} of the choice produce of the land in your bags**
UST Put {some} of the best things from {our} land in your sacks

Alternate translation: [Put some of the best goods from our land in your sacks] or [Put in your sacks some of the most valuable things that our land produces]

ULT **and take {it} down to the man**
UST and take {them} to the governor

Alternate translation: [and take them to the man in Egypt]

ULT **as a gift**
UST as gifts

Consider what punctuation is best to use here in your language.

ULT **a little balm, and a little honey**
UST Include some healing salve, some honey

Consider what is the best way to make a list of things like this in your language. Also see how you translated **balm** in Genesis 37:25. Alternate translation: [including some sweet-smelling tree sap, some honey] or [Include some healing salve, honey]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **pistachio nuts and almonds**
UST and {some} pistachio nuts and almonds

The **pistachio nuts and almonds** are kinds of foods, in fact, delicacies. If your readers would not be familiar with what they are, you could use the names of similar things that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [and some sweet-tasting tree nuts] or [and other delicacies]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **spices and myrrh**
UST some spices and incense

See how you translated **spices** and **myrrh** in Gen 37:25. Alternate translation: [some food spices and incense]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
land	land
honey	honey
myrrh	and incense

Genesis 43:12

ULT	UST
And take double the silver in your hands, because you must return in your hands the silver that was returned in the mouth of your sacks. Perhaps it was a mistake.	*Also take with you twice as much money as you took the first time, because you must take back the money that someone gave back to you in your sacks. Maybe they did that by mistake.*

ULT **And take double the silver in your hands**
UST Also take with you twice {as much} money as you took the first time

Alternate translation: [Also take with you twice as much silver as you took the first time]

ULT **because you must return in your hand{s} the silver**
UST because you must take back the money

Alternate translation: [because you must give back the silver] or [You must give back the silver]

ULT **that was returned**
UST that someone gave back to you

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a passive or active clause here. Alternate translation: [that was given back to you by someone]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **in the mouth of your sacks**
UST in your sacks

See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 42:27. Alternate translation: [in the top of your sacks]

ULT **Perhaps it {was} a mistake**
UST Maybe they did that by mistake

Alternate translation: [That might have happened by mistake] or [Maybe someone did that by mistake]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	money
silver	the money

Genesis 43:13

ULT	UST
So take your brother and get up, return to the man.	*So now, take your youngest brother and immediately go back to the governor.*

ULT **So take your brother**
UST So {now,} take your {youngest} brother

Alternate translation: [So then take your youngest brother]

ULT **and get up, return to the man**
UST and immediately go back to the governor

See how you translated “get up and …” in verse 8. Alternate translation: [and return right away to the man] or [and immediately go back to the man]

Genesis 43:14

ULT	UST
And may God Almighty give you mercies before the man, and may he send your other brother and Benjamin with you. And I, if I am bereaved, I am bereaved."	*I pray that God who is all-powerful will cause him to treat you kindly so that he will let your other brother and Benjamin come back home with you. But if not, and if I must lose them and grieve for them, then I will grieve."*

ULT **And may God Almighty give**
UST I pray that God {who is} all-powerful will cause him to treat you kindly

Alternate translation: [May Almighty God]

ULT **and may he send**
UST so that he will let … come

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "so that he will" or "and I pray that the man/governor will" or (2) "and may he/God" or "and I pray that God will"

ULT **and may he send your other brother and Benjamin**
UST so that he will let your other brother and Benjamin come

Notice that **other brother** refers to Simeon, who is older or younger (and has the same or different mother) than his brothers that Israel is talking to here. Also see how you translated **send** in verses 4–5. Alternate translation: [allow your other brother and Benjamin to go] or [let your brothers Simeon and Benjamin go]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **And I, if**
UST But {if not, and} if I

The pronoun **I** is emphatic here in the Hebrew text. If possible, keep that emphasis in your translation. Alternate translation: [As for me, if I]

ULT **I am bereaved, I am bereaved**
UST must lose them and grieve {for them}, {then} I {will} grieve

See how you translated **bereaved** in Genesis 42:36. Alternate translation: [must be deprived of them, then I will be deprived] or [must suffer loss, then I will suffer loss]

ULT **And may God Almighty give you mercies before the man**
UST I pray that God {who is} all-powerful will cause him to treat you kindly

Alternate translation: [be kind to you as you go before the man] or [cause the man to be kind to you] or [cause him to treat you mercifully]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Almighty	who is all-powerful
mercies	I pray that … will cause him to treat you kindly
Benjamin	Benjamin

Genesis 43:15

ULT	UST
Then the men took that gift, and they took double the silver in their hands, and Benjamin. Then they got up and went down to Egypt and stood before Joseph.	*Then the brothers packed those gifts in their sacks along with twice as much money as the grain would cost. Then they took Benjamin with them and quickly traveled down to the country of Egypt and went directly to Joseph.*

ULT **Then the men took that gift**
UST Then the brothers packed those gifts in their sacks

See how you translated **gift** in verse 11 and in Genesis 33:10–11. Alternate translation: [So the brothers packed those gifts in their sacks] or [So the brothers got all those gifts and packed them]

ULT **and they took double the silver in their hands**
UST along with twice as much money as the grain would cost

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12. Alternate translation: [along with twice as much silver as the grain would cost] or [and they also packed double the amount of silver that they needed to pay for the grain]

ULT **and Benjamin. Then they got up and went down {to} Egypt**
UST Then they {took} Benjamin {with them} and quickly traveled down to {the country of} Egypt

See how you translated "get up and go" in verse 8. Alternate translation: [They also got Benjamin and together they immediately traveled down to the country of Egypt] or [Then they took Benjamin with them and immediately traveled down to the country of Egypt]

ULT **and stood before Joseph**
UST and went directly to Joseph

Alternate translation: [and presented themselves to Joseph] or [and came directly to Joseph]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	money as the grain would cost
Benjamin	Benjamin
Egypt	Egypt
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 43:16

ULT	UST
And Joseph saw Benjamin with them. Then he said to the one who was over his house, "Take the men to the house, and slaughter an animal and prepare a meal, because the men will eat with me at noon."	*When Joseph saw Benjamin with his other brothers, he commanded his head house-servant, "Escort these men to my house. Then butcher a calf and prepare a feast, because I want them to eat with me today at noon."*

ULT **And Joseph saw Benjamin with them. Then he said**
UST When Joseph saw Benjamin with his {other} brothers, he commanded

Alternate translation: [Joseph saw Benjamin with the rest of his brothers. So he told] or [When Joseph saw Benjamin with his other brothers, he told]

ULT **to {the one} who {was} over his house**
UST his head house-servant

Alternate translation: [the servant who managed his household]

ULT **Take the men to the house**
UST Escort these men to {my} house

Alternate translation: [Lead the men to my house]

ULT **and slaughter an animal**
UST Then butcher a calf

The Hebrew word for **animal** here is general and refers to an animal that was raised to be killed and eaten, such as a calf or goat. Alternate translation: [then kill one of my livestock] or [Then butcher an calf]

ULT **and prepare a meal**
UST and prepare a feast

Alternate translation: [and cook the meat to prepare a meal] or [and prepare a feast with its meat]

ULT **because the men will eat with me at noon**
UST because {I want} them to eat with me {today} at noon

Alternate translation: [because I have planned that the men will eat the noon meal with me at my house]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Benjamin	Benjamin
house	his head house-servant
house	house
slaughter	Then butcher

Genesis 43:17

ULT	UST
So the man did just as Joseph had said, and the man brought the men to Joseph's house.	*The servant did exactly what Joseph had told him to do and escorted the brothers to Joseph's house.*

ULT **So the man did just as Joseph {had} said**
UST The servant did exactly what Joseph {had} told him to do

Alternate translation: [The servant did exactly what Joseph had commanded him to do]

ULT **and the man brought**
UST and escorted

Alternate translation: [and led]

ULT **the men to Joseph's house**
UST the brothers to Joseph's house

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase does not sound like Joseph's brothers went inside the house yet. They did not actually go inside until later (verse 24).

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Joseph	Joseph
house	house

Genesis 43:18

ULT	UST
And the men were afraid when they were brought to Joseph's house, and they said, "Because of the matter of the silver that was returned in our sacks the first time, we have been brought. He wants to roll himself over us and throw himself on us and take us as slaves, and our donkeys!"	*But when the brothers saw that he had taken them to Joseph's house, they were afraid, and they said to each other, "He has taken us here because of our money that someone gave back to us in our sacks on our first trip here. He intends to have his soldiers attack us and overpower us and make us his servants, along with our donkeys!"*

ULT **and they said**
UST and they said to each other

Alternate translation: [Then they said to each other]

ULT **Because of the matter of the silver that was returned in our sacks the first time, we have been brought**
UST He has taken us here because of {our} money that someone gave back to us in our sacks {on} {our} first trip here

Alternate translation: [We have been brought here because of the money that was returned to us in our sacks the first time we came here] or [He has taken us here because of our silver that someone gave back to us in our sacks on our first trip here]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **He wants to roll himself over us and throw himself on us**
UST He intends to {have his soldiers} attack us and overpower us

Consider what is the best way to translate these idioms in your language. Alternate translation: [He is planning to seize us by force]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and take us as slaves**
UST and make us {his} servants

Alternate translation: [and keep us as slaves] or [and make us his slaves]

ULT **and our donkeys**
UST along with our donkeys

Alternate translation: [He will also take our donkeys!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
afraid	afraid
Joseph	Joseph
house	house
silver	our money
as slaves	servants
donkeys	donkeys

Genesis 43:19

ULT	UST
Then they went near to the man who was over Joseph's house and spoke to him at the entrance of the house.	*Then they approached Joseph's head house-servant outside the door to his house to speak to him.*

ULT **Then they went near to**
UST Then they approached

Alternate translation: [So they went up to] or [So they approached]

ULT **the man who {was} over Joseph's house**
UST Joseph's head house-servant

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 16.

ULT **and spoke to him {at} the entrance of the house**
UST outside the door to {his} house to speak to him

Alternate translation: [to speak to him at the door to his house] or [outside the door to the house in order to speak to him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph's
house	Joseph's head house-servant
house	house

Genesis 43:20

ULT	UST
And they said, "Please, my lord, we surely came down here the first time to buy food.	*And said, "Excuse us, sir, one time before this, we traveled all the way down here to Egypt to buy some grain.*

ULT **And they said**
UST And said

Alternate translation: [They said to him] or [One of them said to him on behalf of them all]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Please, my lord**
UST Excuse us, sir

The brothers are asking the servant for permission to speak. Translate this in a way that is respectful in your language. Alternate translation: [Excuse me sir] or [Sir, please allow us to speak to you]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **we surely came down {here} the first time to buy food**
UST one time before this, we traveled all the way down {here} {to Egypt} to buy {some} grain

Alternate translation: [the previous time we came down here to Egypt, we came to buy some food] or [one time before this, we traveled all the way down here to Egypt and bought some food]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	sir

Genesis 43:21

ULT	UST
But it happened when we came to the lodging place, we opened our sacks and behold, each man's silver was in the mouth of his sack; our silver was there in its full weight! So we have brought it back in our hands.	*But on our way home, when we arrived at the place where we lodged for the night, we opened our sacks. There in the top of each of our sacks was the money we had paid to you for the grain! The money was all there! So we brought it all back with us to give to you.*

ULT **But it happened**
UST But on our way home

Judah is using the word translated as **But it happened** to introduce a new development in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new development.
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **when we came to the lodging place, we opened our sacks**
UST when we arrived at the place where we lodged for the night, we opened our sacks

See how you translated **the lodging place** in Genesis 42:27. Alternate translation: [when we arrived at the place where we stayed for the night, we opened our sacks]

ULT **and behold, {each} man's silver {was} in the mouth of his sack**
UST There in the top of each of our sacks {was} the money {we had paid to you} for the grain

Also, see how you translated "in the mouth of … sacks" in verse 12. Alternate translation: [and we were surprised to see that our bags of money were in the top of each of our sacks!] or [There in the opening of each of our sacks was the silver we had given to you for the grain!]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **our silver {was there} in its {full} weight**
UST The money was all there

The silver was weighed in shekels (Genesis 20:16; 23:15–16; 37:28) to determine how much to pay for something. See how you translated **silver** in Genesis 42:25, 27, 35. Alternate translation: [The full weight of money was there!] or [The silver was all there!]
Support Reference: Biblical Money

ULT **So we have brought it back**
UST So we brought it {all} back

Alternate translation: [But we brought it all back] or [So we brought all that money back]

ULT **in our hands**
UST with us to give to you

Alternate translation: [with us to return to you]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	the money {we had paid to you} for the grain
silver	The money

Genesis 43:22

ULT	UST
And we have brought down other silver in our hands to buy food. We do not know who put our silver in our sacks."	*We have also brought more money with us so that we can buy some more grain now. We have no idea who put the money in our sacks."*

ULT **And we have brought down other silver**
UST We have {also} brought more money

Alternate translation: [We also brought enough extra money with us] or [We have also brought additional money with us]

ULT **to buy food**
UST so that we can buy {some more} grain now

Alternate translation: [so that we can buy some more food now]

ULT **who put our silver in our sacks**
UST who put the money in our sacks

Alternate translation: [who gave that money back to us in our sacks] or [how our silver got into our sacks like that]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	money
know	We have no idea
silver	the money

Genesis 43:23

ULT	UST
But he said, "Peace be to you, do not be afraid. Your God and the God of your father has given you hidden treasure in your sacks; your silver came to me." Then he brought Simeon out to them.	*But Joseph's servant replied to them, "It is all right, so do not worry about it. The God whom you and your father serve must have put the money in your sacks, because I definitely received your money that you paid for the grain." Then Joseph's servant brought Simeon out of prison to his brothers.*

ULT **Peace {be} to you**
UST It is all right, so

The phrase **Peace {be} to you** is a blessing that wishes someone to be well and at peace. Consider whether your language has a similar blessing or an idiom that would work well here. Alternate translation: [Be at peace,] or [All is well for you, so]
Support Reference: Blessings

ULT **do not be afraid**
UST do not worry about it

Alternate translation: [do not be anxious]

ULT **Your God and the God of your father**
UST The God whom you and your father serve

Make sure that your translation of these phrases refers to the same God, not two different Gods. Alternate translation: [The God whom you and your father worship]

ULT **has given you hidden treasure in your sacks**
UST must have put the money in your sacks

Alternate translation: [must have put the silver in your sacks]

ULT **your silver came to me**
UST because I {definitely} received your money that you paid for the grain

Alternate translation: [because I definitely received the silver that you paid for the grain] or [because I know that you paid me money to pay for the grain]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Peace	It is all right, so
afraid	do … worry about it
God	God
God	God
silver	because … your money that you paid for the grain
Simeon	Simeon

Genesis 43:24

ULT	UST
Then the man took the men into Joseph's house and gave them water, and they washed their feet, and he gave fodder to their donkeys.	*Then Joseph's servant brought the brothers into Joseph's house and provided them with water to wash the road dust off their feet. He also fed their donkeys.*

ULT **and they washed their feet**

UST to wash {the road dust off} their feet

Consider again how you translated "wash … feet" in the book of Genesis. See 18:4; 19:2; 24:32; 43:24. Alternate translation: [and they washed the dirt off their feet]

ULT **and he gave fodder to their donkeys**

UST He also fed their donkeys

Also, see how you translated **fodder** in Genesis 42:27. Alternate translation: [and he provided feed for their donkeys]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
house	house
donkeys	donkeys

Genesis 43:25

ULT	UST
And they prepared the gift for Joseph's arrival at noon, because they had heard that they would eat bread there.	*Meanwhile, Joseph's brothers got their gifts ready to give to Joseph when he came home at noon, because they had heard that they were going to eat a meal with him there.*

ULT **for Joseph's arrival at noon**
UST to give to Joseph when he came home at noon

Alternate translation: [to give to Joseph when he got home at noon]

ULT **because they had heard**
UST because they had heard

Alternate translation: [because they had been told] or [because someone had told them]

ULT **that they would eat bread there**
UST that they were going to eat a meal {with him} there

For some languages it is more natural to put the last half of this verse at the beginning of the verse and say, "When Joseph's brothers heard that they were going to eat the noon meal with Joseph at his house, they got their gifts ready to give him when he came/got home." Alternate translation: [that they were going to eat a meal with him there at his house]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
bread	a meal

Genesis 43:26

ULT	UST
Then Joseph came to the house, and they brought to him the gift that was in their hands into the house, and they bowed down to him to the ground.	*When Joseph came home, his brothers gave to him the gifts that they had brought with them into the house, and they bowed down before him with their faces to the ground to show respect.*

ULT **Then Joseph came to the house**
UST When Joseph came home

Alternate translation: [When Joseph came to his house] or [When Joseph got home]

ULT **and they brought to him the gift that {was} in their hand{s} into the house**
UST his brothers {gave} to him the gifts that they had brought with them into the house

Alternate translation: [his brothers presented to him the gift that they had brought with them into the house]

ULT **and they bowed down to him to the ground**
UST and they bowed down before him {with their faces} to the ground to show respect

See how you translated “bowed down … ground” in Genesis 42:6. Alternate translation: [Then they bowed themselves down before him with their faces to the ground to show him honor] or [Then they prostrated themselves on the ground to respect him]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
house	home
house	house
bowed down	bowed down
to the ground	with their faces to the ground to show respect

Genesis 43:27

ULT	UST
Then he asked them about their wellbeing, and he said, "Are things well for your aged father whom you spoke about? Is he still alive?"	*Then Joseph asked them how they were doing, and he asked them, "Is your elderly father well whom you mentioned to me? Is he still living?"*

ULT **Then he asked them about {their} wellbeing**
UST Then Joseph asked them how they were doing

Alternate translation: [Then he greeted them]

ULT **and he said**
UST and he asked them

Alternate translation: [He also asked them]

ULT **Are things well {for} your aged father**
UST Is your elderly father well

Alternate translation: [Is your aged father doing well] or [Is your aged father in good health]

ULT **whom you spoke about**
UST whom you mentioned to me

Alternate translation: [whom you spoke about to me before?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
about {their} wellbeing	how they were doing
Are things well	Is … well

Genesis 43:28

ULT	UST
And they said, "Things are well for your servant our father. He is still alive." Then they bowed and bowed down.	*They answered him, "Yes sir, our father, who highly respects you, is still alive and well." Then they bowed their heads and bowed down to the ground again.*

ULT **Things are well for your servant our father. He {is} still alive**
UST Yes sir, our father, who highly respects you, is still alive and well

The brothers refer to their father as **your servant** here to show respect to Joseph and to acknowledge his high position. Translate this phrase in a polite way that shows respect toward Joseph. Also, the pronoun **our** is exclusive here because Joseph's brothers did not yet know that they were talking to Joseph. Alternate translation: [Yes sir, our father, who highly respects you, is still alive and blessed]

Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **Then they bowed**
UST Then they bowed their heads

In this verse, the terms **bowed** and **bowed down** translate two different Hebrew words that together describe and emphasize the process of bowing down to the ground. Alternate translation: [Then they knelt]

ULT **and bowed down**
UST and bowed down {to the ground} again

See how you translated **bowed down** in verse 26. Alternate translation: [and prostrated themselves in front of him again]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Things are well	Yes sir … and well
servant	who highly respects you
bowed	bowed
and bowed down	and bowed down {to the ground} again

Genesis 43:29

ULT	UST
Then he lifted his eyes and saw Benjamin his brother, the son of his mother, and he said, "Is this your youngest brother whom you spoke to me about?" Then he said, "May God be gracious to you, my son."	*Then Joseph looked around and saw his brother Benjamin, who had the same mother that he had, and he said to them, "So this must be your youngest brother whom you told me about." Then he said to Benjamin, "I pray that God will be kind to you, young man."*

ULT **Then he lifted his eyes and saw Benjamin his brother**
UST Then Joseph looked around and saw his brother Benjamin

Benjamin was younger than Joseph. Also, consider again how you translated the idiom "lifted … eyes" in the book of Genesis. See 13:10, 14; 18:2; 22:4, 13; 24:63–64; 31:10; 33:1, 5; 37:25; 39:7; 43:29. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph looked up and saw his brother Benjamin] or [When Joseph looked around at them all, he saw his brother Benjamin]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **the son of his mother**
UST who had the same mother that he had

Alternate translation: [who was the only other son of his own mother]

ULT **and he said**
UST and he said to them

Alternate translation: [and he asked them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Is this your youngest brother**
UST So this must be your youngest brother

This question could be an actual question or a rhetorical question. The fact that Joseph does not wait for an answer suggests that this is a rhetorical question, especially since he already realized that the new brother in the group was Benjamin (verse 16). Alternate translation: [So this young man must be your youngest brother] or [I suppose this young man is your youngest brother]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **whom you spoke to me about**
UST whom you told me about

Make sure that your punctuation here fits with the way you translated this sentence, either as a question or a statement.

ULT **May God be gracious to you**
UST I pray that God will be kind to you

See how you translated "God has been gracious to …" in Genesis 33:11. Also see how you translated **grace** in 24:12, 14, 27, 49; 39:21. Alternate translation: [I pray that God will be gracious to you]

> ULT **my son**
> UST young man

The phrase **my son** is a kind way to address a man who is younger or of lower status; it does not mean that Benjamin was Joseph's actual son. Also, for some languages it is necessary to put this address first in this quote. Do what is natural in your language.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Benjamin	Benjamin
God	God
gracious	I pray that … will be kind to you

Genesis 43:30

ULT	UST
Then Joseph hurried out, because his emotions boiled over for his brother, and he sought to cry, and he went to the inner room and cried there.	*Suddenly Joseph rushed out of the room because he felt overwhelmed with emotions about his brother and was about to cry. So he went to his bedroom, where he cried privately.*

ULT **Then Joseph hurried out**
UST Suddenly Joseph rushed out of the room

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph quickly left the room] or [Then Joseph rushed out of the room]

ULT **because his emotions boiled over for his brother**
UST because he felt overwhelmed with emotions about his brother

Alternate translation: [because he was feeling deeply emotional about his brother] or [because he felt overwhelmed with emotions for his brother]

ULT **and he sought to cry**
UST and was about to cry

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “and desired/wanted to cry,” or “and felt like crying,” or “and was about to cry,” or (2) “and was looking for a place to cry,” or “and went to find a place to cry,”

ULT **and he went to the inner room**
UST So he went to his bedroom

Alternate translation: [so he went to his private room]

ULT **and cried there**
UST where he cried privately

Alternate translation: [so that he could cry there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
his emotions	he felt overwhelmed with emotions
and he sought	and was about

Genesis 43:31

ULT	UST
Then he washed his face and came out. Then he controlled himself and said, "Serve the bread."	*After he had gotten control of his emotions and stopped crying, he washed the tears off his face and came back out of his room. Then he commanded his servants, "Serve the food to us."*

ULT **Then he washed his face and came out. Then he controlled himself**

UST After he had gotten control of his emotions {and stopped crying}, he washed {the tears off} his face and came back out of his room

Alternate translation: [After a while, he stopped crying, washed the tears off his face and came out of his room]

ULT **and said**

UST Then he commanded his servants

Alternate translation: [and told his servants] or [Then he told his servants]

ULT **Serve the bread**

UST Serve the food to us

The word **bread** refers to all the food they ate at this meal, not just bread. Alternate translation: [Serve the meal to us] or [It is time to serve the meal to us]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bread	the food

Genesis 43:32

ULT	UST
So they served to him by himself, and to them by themselves, and to the Egyptians who were eating with him by themselves, because Egyptians cannot eat bread with Hebrews, because that is an abomination to Egyptians.	*So they served food to Joseph at his own table, and his brothers at their own table, and the Egyptians who were eating with him at their own table. Egyptians do not eat at the same table as Hebrew people, because Egyptians consider it unacceptable to do that.*

ULT **and to the Egyptians who were eating with him by themselves**
UST and the Egyptians who were eating with him at their own table

Alternate translation: [and the Egyptians who were eating as his guests at their own table] or [They also served food to some Egyptian guests at a separate table]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egyptians	Egyptians
Egyptians	Egyptians
bread	at the same table as Hebrew people
Hebrews	Hebrew
abomination	Egyptians consider it unacceptable to do that

Genesis 43:33

ULT	UST
And they were sitting before him, the firstborn according to his birthright and the youngest according to his youth, and the men were astonished each to his neighbor.	*Joseph's brothers were sitting at a table facing his table in the order of their ages, from the oldest to the youngest. When they noticed that, they were amazed and stared at one another.*

ULT **before him**
UST facing his table

Alternate translation: [in front of him]

ULT **the firstborn according to his birthright and the youngest according to his youth**
UST in the order of their ages, from the oldest to the youngest

Alternate translation: [according to their age order, from oldest to youngest] or [in the order of their ages, from the firstborn to the youngest]

ULT **and the men were astonished each to his neighbor**
UST When they noticed that, they were amazed {and stared} at one another

Alternate translation: [so they looked at each other in amazement] or [When they saw that, they were amazed and stared at one another]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
firstborn	in the order of their ages, from the oldest to the youngest
birthright	in the order of their ages, from the oldest to the youngest
his neighbor	When they noticed that, they were amazed {and stared} at one another

Genesis 43:34

ULT	UST
Then he served to them servings of food from before him, but Benjamin's serving was five times larger than any of their servings. And they drank and became drunk with him.	*Then Joseph had his servants serve food to his brothers from his table, but he had them serve Benjamin five times more food than they served to any of the rest of his brothers. Then his brothers feasted and drank wine freely with him.*

ULT **Then he served to them servings {of food} from before him**
UST Then Joseph {had his servants} serve food to his brothers from his table

As a person of high position and status, Joseph probably had his servants serve the food rather doing it himself. Decide whether you want to make that information explicit in your translation or include it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph served his brothers food from his table]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **but Benjamin's serving was five times larger**
UST but he {had them} serve Benjamin five times more food

Alternate translation: [but the amount of food that was served to Benjamin was five times more]

ULT **than any of their servings**
UST than {they} served to any of the rest of his brothers

Alternate translation: [than the amount of food that was served to any of the rest of them]

ULT **And they drank and became drunk with him**
UST Then his brothers feasted and drank {wine} freely with him

The Hebrew verb for **became drunk** is the same word that is used in Genesis 9:21 to describe Noah when he had drunk so much wine that he had fallen asleep. Here, it probably means that they had drunk enough wine that they were feeling happy and sociable. Alternate translation: [Then they ate food, drank wine and feasted with him] or [Then they feasted and drank wine freely with him until they were very merry]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Benjamin	Benjamin
drunk	and drank {wine} freely

Genesis 44

Genesis 44:1

ULT	UST
Then he commanded the one who was over his house, saying, "Fill the men's sacks with food, as much as they are able to carry, and put the silver of each one in the mouth of his sack.	*Later Joseph ordered his head house-servant, "Fill the men's grain bags with as much grain as they can take with them, and in the top of their bags, put the money that each of them paid for the grain.*

ULT **the one who {was} over his house**
UST his head house-servant

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 43:16. Alternate translation: [the servant who managed his household]

ULT **saying, "Fill the men's sacks {with} food, as much as**
UST Fill the men's {grain} bags with as much grain as

These grain sacks were carried by the brother's donkeys and were probably fairly large since donkeys are able to carry around 50 kilos (about 110 pounds).

ULT **they are able to carry**
UST they can take with them

Alternate translation: [the bags can hold]

ULT **and put the silver of each {one} in the mouth of his sack**
UST and in the top of their bags, put the money that each {of them} paid for the grain

See how you translated **silver/money** in Genesis 42:25, 27–28. Alternate translation: [and put their grain money in the opening of their grain bags] or [and in the top of their sacks put the silver that each of them paid for the grain]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	his head house-servant
silver	the money that each {of them} paid for the grain

Genesis 44:2

ULT	UST
And put my cup, the silver cup, in the mouth of the sack of the youngest one, and his grain's silver." So he did according to Joseph's word that he spoke.	*Also put my silver cup in the top of the youngest one's bag, along with the money that he paid for the grain." So the servant did exactly what Joseph had ordered him to do.*

ULT **And put my cup, the silver cup**
UST Also put my silver cup

Notice that this cup was made out of silver; it was not just silver in color. Alternate translation: [And put my cup, the one that is made of silver]

ULT **and his grain's silver**
UST along with the money that he paid for the grain

Alternate translation: [and his grain money] or [along with the silver that he paid for the grain]

ULT **So he did according to Joseph's word that he spoke**
UST So the servant did exactly what Joseph had ordered him to do

See how you translated "according to … words" in Genesis 43:7. Alternate translation: [So the servant did exactly as he had told him to do]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	silver
grain	grain
silver	the money that he paid for the grain
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 44:3

ULT	UST
The morning became light, and the men were sent off, they and their donkeys.	*Early the next morning, Joseph sent the brothers on their way, along with their donkeys.*

ULT **The morning became light**
UST Early the next morning

Alternate translation: [The next morning as it was becoming light] or [The next morning at dawn]

ULT **and the men were sent off, they and their donkeys**
UST Joseph sent the brothers {on their way}, along with their donkeys

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [the brothers were sent on their way with their donkeys by Joseph] or [Joseph sent the men on their way, along with their donkeys]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
donkeys	donkeys

Genesis 44:4

ULT	UST
They had left the city, they had not gone far, and Joseph said to the one who was over his house, "Get up, follow after the men, and when you overtake them, then say to them, 'Why have you repaid evil for good?	*But they had not gone very far out of the city when he ordered his head servant, "Hurry and pursue those men. When you catch up with them, ask them, 'Why have you treated my master so badly after he was so good to you?*

ULT **They had left the city, they had not gone far**
UST But they had not gone very far out of the city

Alternate translation: [But after they left the city, before they had gone very far]

ULT **and Joseph said to {the one} who {was} over his house**
UST when he ordered his head servant

Alternate translation: [he told the servant who managed his household] or [he ordered his head-servant]

ULT **Get up**
UST Hurry and

Alternate translation: [Immediately]

ULT **follow after the men**
UST pursue those men

Alternate translation: [go after the men]

ULT **and {when} you overtake them**
UST When you catch up with them

Alternate translation: [When you reach them]

ULT **then say to them**
UST ask them

Make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits with the way you translate the following rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [tell them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Why have you repaid evil for good**
UST Why have you treated {my master} so badly {after he was} so good to you

Joseph's servant uses this rhetorical question to scold the brothers and express his outrage. Consider what is the best way to communicate those things in your language. Alternate translation: [My master treated you so well, but in return you have treated him very badly!] or [You have repaid him with evil for good!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	when
house	his head servant
overtake	When you catch up with them
evil	have you treated {my master} so badly
good	good

Genesis 44:5

ULT	UST
Is this not what my lord drinks from and what he indeed divines with? You have done evil in what you have done!'"	*The cup you stole is the cup that my master drinks from. He also uses it to find out secret things! What you have done is very wrong!'"*

ULT **Is this not what my lord drinks from and what he indeed divines with**

UST The cup {you stole} is {the cup} that my master drinks from. He {also} uses it to find out secret things

The servant of Joseph uses this rhetorical question to further express his outrage about the missing cup. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [You certainly have the cup that my lord drinks from and what he indeed divines with!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **You have done evil {in} what you have done**

UST What you have done is {very} wrong

The phrase **you have done** is repeated in this sentence for emphasis. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: [What you have done is very evil]

Support Reference: Reduplication

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	master
he … divines	uses it to find out secret things
evil	is {very} wrong

Genesis 44:6

ULT	UST
Then he overtook them and spoke those words to them.	*Then the servant left, and when he caught up with the men, he repeated to them what Joseph had told him to say.*

ULT **Then he overtook them**
UST Then the servant {left, and when he} caught up with the men

Consider again how you translated **overtake** or **overtook** in the book of Genesis. See 19:19; 31:25; 44:4, 6.

ULT **and spoke those words to them**
UST he repeated to them what Joseph had told him to say

Alternate translation: [he said to them what Joseph had told him to say]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Then he overtook them	Then the servant {left, and when he} caught up with the men

Genesis 44:7

ULT	UST
But they said to him, "Why does my lord speak words like those? Far be it from your servants to do something like that!	*But they replied, "Sir, why do you say such things? We assure you, sir, that we would never do anything like that!*

ULT **But they said to him**
UST But they replied

Alternate translation: [But they exclaimed]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Why does my lord speak words like those**
UST Sir, why do you say such things

The brothers use this rhetorical question to express their shock at being accused of something they had not done. They also address the servant as **my lord** to show him respect. Decide what is the best way to communicate those things in your language. Alternate translation: [Master, we do not know why you are saying that!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Far be it from your servants to do**
UST We assure you, sir, {that} we would never do

The brothers refer to themselves as **your servants** in order to show respect to Joseph's head-servant. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [We swear as your humble servants that we would never even think of doing] or [We would never even consider doing]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **Far be it from your servants to do**
UST We assure you, sir, {that} we would never do

The brothers are using a common expression of their culture to express their horror at being accused of stealing from Joseph. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Surely, we would not do]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **something like that**
UST anything like that

Alternate translation: [such a thing!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	Sir
servants	sir

Genesis 44:8

ULT	UST
Behold, the silver that we found in the mouth of our sacks we brought back to you from the land of Canaan. So how would we steal silver or gold from the house of your lord?	*Remember that we returned to you the money that we discovered in our grain bags last time. We brought it all the way from our home in the region of Canaan! So we would never steal silver things or gold things or anything else from your master's house!*

ULT **Behold**
UST Remember that

Alternate translation: [After all]

ULT **the silver that we found in the mouth of our sacks we brought back to you from the land of Canaan**
UST we returned to you the money that we discovered in our {grain} bags {last time}. {We brought it} {all the way} from {our home in} the region of Canaan

Consider what is the best way in your language to order the clauses in this sentence. Alternate translation: [we returned to you the money that we found in our grain sacks last time. We brought it all the way from our home in the land of Canaan!] or [as soon as we came back here from the land of Canaan, we returned to you the money we had discovered inside our grain sacks]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **So how would we steal silver or gold from the house of your lord**
UST So we would never steal silver … gold … from your master's house

The brothers use this rhetorical question to strongly emphasize that they would never steal from the servant's master. Some languages must use a statement or exclamation here instead. Alternate translation: [This shows that we would never take silver or gold from the house of your lord] or [So there is no reason that we would ever take]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **silver or gold**
UST silver … gold

The brothers are emphasizing that they would never steal anything from Joseph, especially not valuable things made out of gold or silver.
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	the money
land	We brought it {all the way} from {our home in} the region of
Canaan	Canaan
silver	silver
gold	gold
house	house
lord	master

Genesis 44:9

ULT	UST
Whoever of your servants is found with it, then he will die, and we also will be slaves for my lord."	*In fact, sir, if you find that one of us does have the cup, then you may execute that person, and the rest of us, sir, will become your slaves."*

ULT **Whoever of your servants is found with it**
UST In fact, sir, if you find that one of us does have the cup

The brothers refer to themselves as **your servants** in order to show respect to Joseph's head-servant. Alternate translation: [In fact, sir, if you discover that any of us does have the cup] or [If any one of us does have the cup, sir]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **then he will die**
UST then {you may} execute that person

Alternate translation: [then he must die] or [then he should be executed] or [then you may kill that man]

ULT **and we also will be slaves for my lord**
UST and {the rest of} us, sir, will become your slaves

See how you translated **my lord** in verse 7. Alternate translation: [and besides that, the rest of us will become servants for you, sir] or [and the rest of us, sir, will become your servants]
Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servants	In fact, sir, if you find that one of us does have the cup
slaves	sir … your slaves
lord	sir

Genesis 44:10

ULT	UST
And he said, “Indeed now, according to your words, so it will be: Whoever is found with it will be a slave for me, but you others will be blameless.”	*Joseph’s servant replied to them, “Okay then, I will do as you suggest except for this: The one whom I find with my master’s cup is the only one who will become my slave. The rest of you will be innocent and free to go.”*

ULT **Indeed now**
UST Okay then

Alternate translation: [So then] or [Very well then]

ULT **according to your words, so it will be**
UST I will do as you suggest except for this

Alternate translation: [based on what you have said I will do this:]

ULT **will be a slave for me**
UST is the only one who will become my slave

Alternate translation: [is the only one who will be my slave]

ULT **but you {others} will be blameless**
UST The rest of you will be innocent and free to go

Alternate translation: [but the rest of you will be free to go]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a slave	my slave
blameless	innocent

Genesis 44:11

ULT	UST
Then they each hurried and lowered his sack to the ground, and they each opened his sack.	*So each of the brothers quickly took his grain bag off his donkey and put it on the ground, and each of them opened his own bag.*

ULT **Then they each hurried and lowered his sack to the ground**
UST So each of the brothers quickly took his {grain} bag {off his donkey} and put it on the ground

Alternate translation: [So each of them immediately lowered his bag of grain from his donkey to the ground] or [Then each of the men immediately took his grain sack off his donkey and put it on the ground]

ULT **and they each opened his sack**
UST and each of them opened his {own} bag

Alternate translation: [and each of them opened his own sack] or [and opened it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to the ground	and put it on the ground

Genesis 44:12

ULT	UST
Then he searched, beginning with the oldest and ending with the youngest, and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack!	*Then Joseph's servant searched their bags. He started with the oldest brother and continued until he came to the youngest brother, and there he found the cup in Benjamin's bag!*

ULT **Then he searched**
UST Then Joseph's servant searched their bags

Consider what is the best way to refer to Joseph's servant in verses 6, 10 and 12. Also see how you translated **searched** in Genesis 31:35.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **beginning with the oldest and ending with the youngest**
UST He started with the oldest {brother} and continued until he came to the youngest brother

Alternate translation: [beginning with the oldest brother and finishing with the youngest one] or [He started with the oldest brother and continued until he came to the youngest one]

ULT **and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack**
UST and {there} he found the cup in Benjamin's bag

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
searched	searched
Benjamin	Benjamin

Genesis 44:13

ULT	UST
Then they tore their clothes, and each one loaded up his donkey, and they returned to the city.	*In response to that, the brothers tore their clothes in distress. Then each of them put his bag back on his own donkey, and they all turned around and went back to the city.*

ULT Then they tore their clothes
UST In response {to that}, the brothers tore their clothes in distress

See how you translated "tore … clothes in distress" in Genesis 37:29, 34. Alternate translation: [In response to that, the brothers tore their clothes in grief]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT and each {one} loaded up his donkey
UST Then each {of them} put his bag {back} on his {own} donkey

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to the brothers in each context throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [Then each of them put his sack back on his own donkey] or [Then each of the men loaded up his own donkey again]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT and they returned to the city
UST and they {all} {turned around and} went back to the city

Alternate translation: [and they all returned to the city] or [then they all turned around and went back to the city]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
donkey	donkey

Genesis 44:14

ULT	UST
Then Judah and his brothers came to Joseph's house, and he was still there, so they fell to the ground before him.	*When Judah and his brothers arrived at Joseph's house, Joseph was there waiting for them. So they prostrated themselves on the ground before him to show respect.*

ULT **and he was still there**
UST Joseph was there waiting for them

Alternate translation: [Joseph was still there]

ULT **so they fell to the ground before him**
UST So they prostrated themselves on the ground before him to show respect

Alternate translation: [Then they prostrated themselves on the ground before him to show respect] or [So they bowed all the way to the ground in front of him to honor him]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
Joseph	Joseph
house	house
so they fell	So they prostrated themselves … to show respect
to the ground	on the ground

Genesis 44:15

ULT	UST
Then Joseph said to them, "What is this deed that you have done? Did you not know that a man who is like me indeed divines?"	*Then Joseph exclaimed to them, "What you have done is terrible! You should have known that someone in my position knows how to discover the secret things that people do!"*

ULT **Then Joseph said to them**
UST Then Joseph exclaimed to them

Make sure the way you translate this quote margin fits with the way you translate the following rhetorical question. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph told them]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **What {is} this deed that you have done**
UST What you have done is terrible

Joseph uses rhetorical questions in this verse to express anger and scold his brothers. Some languages must use strong statements or exclamations here instead. See what you did for a similar case in Genesis 20:9. Alternate translation: [Why did you do such a terrible thing?] or [You should never have done such a thing!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **that a man who {is} like me**
UST that someone in my position

Alternate translation: [that a ruler like me]

ULT **indeed divines**
UST knows how to discover the secret things that people do

See how you translated **divines** in verse 5. Alternate translation: [regularly practices divination!] or [could use divination to find out what you did!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
know	known
divines	knows how to discover the secret things that people do

Genesis 44:16

ULT	UST
And Judah said, "What can we say to my lord? What can we speak? And how can we justify ourselves? God has found out the sin of your servants. Behold, we are slaves for my lord, both we and the one in whose hand the cup was found."	*Judah replied to him, "Sir, there is nothing convincing that we can say to you. There is no way that we can explain this. There is no way we can prove to you that we are innocent. God is punishing us for our past sin. So now, sir, we are all here to be your slaves, including the one whom your house-servant found with your cup in his bag."*

ULT **And Judah said**
UST Judah replied to him

Alternate translation: [Judah answered]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **What can we speak**
UST There is no way that we can explain this

Alternate translation: [We cannot explain this]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **And how can we justify ourselves**
UST There is no way we can prove {to you} that we are innocent

Alternate translation: [We know of no way to prove our innocence!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **God has found out the sin of your servants**
UST God is punishing us for our {past} sin

Judah refers to himself and his brothers as **your servants** to show humility and to honor Joseph. Also, Judah is probably referring here to the sin of selling their brother Joseph into slavery years ago. You could include that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [God has exposed our guilt for our past sin] or [God is punishing us, your humble servants, for our past sin] or [God is using this occasion to punish us for our past sin]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **Behold, we {are} slaves for my lord**
UST So now, sir, we are {all} here to be your slaves

Alternate translation: [Here we all are, ready to be servants for you, sir] or [So now, sir, we are all here to be your servants]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **both we and the one**
UST including the one

Alternate translation: [including the man]

ULT **the one in whose hand the cup was found**
UST the one whom {your house-servant} found with your cup in his bag

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [who was found with your cup in his grain sack] or [in whose grain bag your house-servant found the cup] or [whom your house-servant found with your cup in his sack]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
lord	Sir
can we justify ourselves	There is no way we can prove {to you} that we are innocent
God	God
the sin of	God is punishing us for our {past} sin
servants	God is punishing us for our {past} sin
are slaves	So now, sir, we are {all} here to be your slaves
lord	sir

Genesis 44:17

ULT	UST
But he said, "Far be it from me to do that! The man in whose hand the cup was found, he will be a slave for me. But you, go up in peace to your father."	*But Joseph told them, "No, I would never even consider doing such a thing! Rather only the man whom my servant found with my cup in his bag will be my slave. The rest of you are free to go back home to your father."*

ULT **But he said**
UST But Joseph told them

Alternate translation: [But Joseph exclaimed]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Far be it from me to do that**
UST No, I would never {even} consider doing such a thing

See how you translated "Far be it from …" in verse 7.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **The man in whose hand the cup was found, he**
UST Rather {only} the man whom {my servant} found with my cup in his bag

See how you translated **in whose hand the cup was found** in verse 16. Alternate translation: [Only the one who was found with my cup in his bag] or [Only the man in whose bag my servant found the cup] or [Rather only the one whom my servant found with my cup in his bag]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **will be a slave for me**
UST will be my slave

Alternate translation: [will become my slave] or [will stay and serve me as a slave]

ULT **But you, go up in peace to your father**
UST The rest of you are free to go {back} home to your father

The phrase **go up** refers to the fact that the land of Canaan was higher in elevation than the country of Egypt. Some translations leave **up** implied. Alternate translation: [But you others may return to your father in peace] or [As for the rest of you, you may go back home to your father without any trouble]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a slave	my slave
peace	are free to go {back} home

Genesis 44:18

ULT	UST
Then Judah went near to him and said, "Please, my lord, please let your servant speak a word in my lord's ears, and do not let your anger burn against your servant, since you are like Pharaoh.	*Then Judah approached Joseph and said to him, "Please, sir, I humbly ask you to let me speak freely to you. Please do not be angry with me, especially since you are as powerful as King Pharaoh himself.*

ULT **Then Judah went near to him and said**
UST Then Judah approached Joseph and said to him

See how you translated **went near** in Genesis 43:19. Alternate translation: [Then Judah came up to Joseph and said]

ULT **Please, my lord**
UST Please, sir

Compare how you translated this phrase in Genesis 43:20. Alternate translation: [Please, master] or [Excuse me, sir]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **please let your servant speak a word in my lord's ears**
UST I humbly ask you to let me speak freely to you

Make sure your translation of **your servant** refers here to Judah, not to someone else. Throughout verses 18–34, Judah uses phrases such as "my lord," "your servant," and "your servants" to be polite and show respect to Joseph. At each point in these verses, make sure it is clear in your translation whom he is referring to. Alternate translation: [I humbly ask you to let me speak plainly to you] or [will you please allow me your humble servant to say something to you]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **and do not let your anger burn against your servant**
UST Please do not be angry with me

Compare how you translated the idiom "his anger burned" in Genesis 39:19. Alternate translation: [Please do not be angry at me]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **since you {are} like**
UST especially since you {are} as powerful as

Alternate translation: [even though you are equal in rank to]

ULT **Pharaoh**
UST King Pharaoh himself

Alternate translation: [the king himself]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
lord	sir
servant	I humbly ask you to let me speak freely to you
lord	I humbly ask you to let me speak freely to you
servant	Please do … be angry with me
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 44:19

ULT	UST
My lord asked his servants, saying, ‘Do you have a father or another brother?’	*Sir, previously you asked us if our father was still alive and if we had any other brothers.*

ULT **My lord asked**
UST Sir, {previously} you asked

Alternate translation: [Sir, the last time we were here, you asked]

ULT **his servants**
UST us

Make sure it is clear in your translation of **his servants** that Judah is referring to himself and his brothers. Alternate translation: [us your humble servants]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **saying, ‘Do you have a father or {another} brother**
UST if our father was {still} alive and if we had {any other} brothers

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate the embedded quotes in verses 19–23 as direct or indirect quotes. Alternate translation: [Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?] or [whether our father was still alive and whether we had any other brothers]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	Sir
servants	us

Genesis 44:20

ULT	UST
And we said to my lord, 'We have an aged father and the youngest son of his old age. But his brother is dead, so he is left by himself from his mother, and his father loves him.'	*And we told you, sir, that we have an elderly father and also a younger brother who was born when our father was already old. That brother's mother only had one other son, who is now dead. So our father especially loves our youngest brother.*

ULT **And we said to my lord**
UST And we told you, sir, that

Alternate translation: [We answered you, sir, that]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **We have an aged father**
UST we have an elderly father

Alternate translation: [our aged father is still alive]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and the youngest son of {his} old age**
UST and {also} a younger brother who was born when our father was {already} old

Alternate translation: [and with him is his youngest son whom our father had when he was already old]

ULT **But his brother is dead, so he is left by himself from his mother**
UST That brother's mother only had one other son, who is now dead

In this sentence, **brother** refers to an older brother from the same father and mother. Some languages have a special kinship term for that. Alternate translation: [That son is the only one left alive from his mother, since his brother died]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **and his father loves him**
UST So our father {especially} loves our youngest brother

Alternate translation: [So his father loves him very much] or [So his father especially loves our youngest brother]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	sir
loves	loves

Genesis 44:21

ULT	UST
Then you said to your servants, ‘Bring him down to me, and I will set my eyes on him.’	*Then you told us, sir, to bring our youngest brother here to you, so that you could see him for yourself.*

ULT **Then you said to your servants**
UST Then you told us, sir

Judah uses the humble term **your servants** to show respect and honor to someone of higher status and authority. Alternate translation: [Then you told us, who are your humble servants]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **Bring him down to me, and I will set my eyes on him**
UST to bring our youngest brother {here} to you, so that you could see him for yourself

The verb “bring … down” refers to the fact that Egypt was lower in elevation than the region of Canaan. Some translations leave **down** implied. Alternate translation: [Bring your youngest brother to me so that I can meet him] or [to bring our youngest brother here to you so that you can see him for yourself]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servants	us, sir

Genesis 44:22

ULT	UST
And we said to my lord, 'The young man is not able to leave his father, because if he leaves his father, then he will die.'	*But we told you, sir, that the young man should not leave his father and come here, because if he did, his father would die from anxiety.*

ULT **And we said to my lord, 'The young man is not able to leave his father**
UST But we told you, sir, that the young man should not leave his father and come here

Alternate translation: [But we told you, sir, that the young man must not leave his father and come here]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **because {if} he leaves his father, then he will die**
UST because if he did, his father would die from anxiety

Make sure the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the previous clause, as either a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [because if he did his father will die from anxiety]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lord	sir

Genesis 44:23

ULT	UST
But you said to your servants, ‘If your youngest brother does not come down with you, you will not see my face again.’	*But then, sir, you told us that unless our youngest brother came with us, we could never see you again.*

ULT **But you said to your servants**
UST But then, sir, you told us that

Alternate translation: [But you told us that]

ULT **If your youngest brother does not come down with you**
UST unless our youngest brother came with us

Consider again whether to translate the embedded quotes in verses 19–23 as direct or indirect quotes. Alternate translation: [if our youngest brother did not come back here with us]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **you will not see my face again**
UST we could never see you again

Make sure that the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the beginning of this verse, either as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [you would not allow us to see you again]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servants	But then, sir, you told us that

Genesis 44:24

ULT	UST
And it happened when we went up to your servant my father, then we related to him the words of my lord.	*When we returned home to our father, who highly respects you, we reported to him what you told us.*

ULT And it happened

Judah is using the word translated as **And it happened** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: [So after we got back home again]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT to your servant my father

UST to our father, who highly respects you

See how you translated "your servant … father" in Genesis 43:28. Alternate translation: [to my father, who is your humble servant] or [to my father, who highly respects you]

Support Reference: Politeness

ULT then we related to him

UST we reported to him

Alternate translation: [we told him]

ULT the words of my lord

UST what you told us

Alternate translation: [what you had said to us]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	who highly respects you
lord	what you told us

Genesis 44:25

ULT	UST
Then our father said, ‘Return, buy a little food for us.’	*Months later our father told us, ‘Go back to Egypt and buy some more grain for us.’*

ULT **Then our father said**
UST Months later our father told us

The pronouns **our** and **us** are exclusive here because they do not include Joseph.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

ULT **Return, buy a little food for us**
UST Go back {to Egypt} {and} buy some {more} grain for us

The pronoun **us** is inclusive here because what Judah’s father (Jacob) had said included the brothers whom he was talking to. See how you translated this same quote in Genesis 43:2.
Alternate translation: [Go back to Egypt and buy some more grain for all of us]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

Genesis 44:26

ULT	UST
But we said, ‘We cannot go down. But if our youngest brother is with us, then we will go. For we are not able to see the man’s face and our youngest brother not be with us.’	*But we replied to him, ‘We cannot go there unless our youngest brother is with us. Then we can go. The governor who sells grain there will not allow us to see him again if our youngest brother is not with us.’*

ULT **We cannot go down. {But} if our youngest brother is with us, then we will go**
UST We cannot go {there} unless our youngest brother is with us. Then we can go

See how you translated “… down” in verses 21 and 23. Alternate translation: [We can only go down there if our youngest brother is with us]

ULT **For we are not able to see the man’s face**
UST The governor {who sells grain there} will not allow us to see him again

The phrase **the man’s face** refers to the governor (Joseph) himself. Translate this in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [We will not be allowed to go to the man who sells grain there] or [The man who sells grain there will not permit us to see him again]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

Genesis 44:27

ULT	UST
Then your servant my father said to us, 'You know that my wife bore two sons for me.	*Then our father said to us, 'As you know, my wife Rachel and I only had two sons together.*

ULT **Then your servant my father said to us**
UST Then our father said to us

See how you translated **your servant my father** in verse 24. Also notice that the pronoun **us** does not include Joseph here. Some languages use an exclusive pronoun for this. Alternate translation: [Then my father who is your humble servant said to us] or [Then my father said to us]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **You know that**
UST As you know

The pronoun "you" is plural here, referring to all the brothers. Alternate translation: [As you all know]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **my wife bore two {sons} for me**
UST my wife {Rachel} and I {only} had two {sons} together

Alternate translation: [my wife Rachel bore only two sons for me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	עַבְדְּךָ
know	know
bore	and I {only} had … together

Genesis 44:28

ULT	UST
And the one went away from me, and I have said, "He was surely torn to pieces," and I have not seen him until now.	*One of her sons left here one day, and I have not seen him since then. I am sure that a wild animal must have killed him and torn him apart.*

ULT **And the one went away from me**
UST One {of her sons} left here one day

Alternate translation: [One of those sons left here one day] or [One of them has disappeared]

ULT **and I have said, "He was surely torn to pieces," and I have not seen him until now**
UST and I have not seen him since then. I am sure that {a wild animal} must have {killed him and} torn him apart

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this doubly embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated "torn. … to pieces" in Genesis 37:33.
Alternate translation: [I have thought that he must have been killed and torn to pieces by a fierce animal. I have never seen him again] or [and I have not seen him since then. I am sure that a fierce animal must have killed him and torn him apart]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

Genesis 44:29

ULT	UST
So if you also take this one from my presence, and harm were to meet him, then you would bring my gray head down in misery to Sheol.'	*So if you also take her other son away from me, and anything harms him, you will cause me, your gray-haired father, so much grief that I will die and go down to the afterworld.'*

ULT **So {if} you also take this {one} from my presence**
UST So if you also take her other son {away} from me

Consider what is the best way to translate the hypothetical sentence in this verse. Make sure all the parts of the sentence fit together well. Alternate translation: [So if you also take this son away from me]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **and harm were to meet him**
UST and anything harms him

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 42:38. Alternate translation: [and something terrible happens to him] or [and if anything bad happens to him]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **then you would bring my gray head down in misery**
UST you will cause me, your gray-haired father, so much grief that I will {die and} go down

See how you translated **bring my gray head down** in Genesis 42:38. Alternate translation: [you will cause me, your elderly father, to grieve so deeply that I will die and go down] or [you will cause me, your elderly father, so much sorrow that I will die and go down]
Support Reference: Idiom

Genesis 44:30

ULT	UST
And now, when I go to your servant my father and the young man is not with us, since his soul is bound to his soul,	*So now, sir, if we go home to our father without his youngest son, since our father's life depends on his son's life,*

ULT **And now**
UST So now

This phrase introduces the conclusion to what Judah said in verses 24–29. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [So then]

ULT **when I go to your servant my father**
UST sir, if we go {home} to our father

See how you translated **your servant my father** in verses 24 and 27. Alternate translation: [when we return home to my father, who highly respects you] or [if I go home to my father, sir]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **since his soul is bound to his soul**
UST since our father's life depends on his son's life

This idiom reflects how close the relationship was between Judah's father and youngest brother. Consider what is the best way to say this in your language. Alternate translation: [since our father is deeply attached to his son]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	עַבְדְּךָ
bound	depends

Genesis 44:31

ULT	UST
then it will happen when he sees that the young man is not there, then he will die! And your servants will bring the gray head of your servant our father down in sorrow to Sheol!	*if he sees that his son is gone, he will die! Yes, we will cause our gray-haired father so much grief that he will die and go to the afterworld!*

ULT **then it will happen when he sees that the young man is not {there}, then he will die**
UST if he sees that his son is gone, he will die

The phrase **then it will happen** introduces an important hypothetical event here and helps create suspense so that readers will wonder what the outcome will be. Many translations omit the phrase because it is not natural in their language. Alternate translation: [then he will die when he sees that his youngest son is not with us!]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **And your servants will bring the gray head of your servant our father down in sorrow**
UST Yes, we will cause our gray-haired father so much grief that he will {die and} go

Consider what is the best way to translate this hypothetical situation in your language. Also, see how you translated "bring … gray head down in sorrow to Sheol" in Genesis 42:38, and a similar phrase in 44:29. Alternate translation: [Yes, we would bring our elderly father so much sorrow that he would die and go] or [In that way, we would be responsible for bringing our elderly father …]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
young man	his son
servants	עֲבָדֶיךָ
servant	עַבְדְּךָ

Genesis 44:32

ULT	UST
For your servant guaranteed the young man to my father, saying, 'If I do not bring him back to you, then I will have sinned against my father all the days.'	*Besides that, sir, I promised my father that I would return his son to him safely. I told him that if I did not bring his son back to him, I would be guilty of sinning against him forever.*

ULT **For your servant guaranteed the young man to my father, saying**
UST Besides that, sir, I promised my father that I would return his son to him safely. I told {him} that

See how you translated the verb "guarantee" in Genesis 43:9. Alternate translation: [Besides that, sir, I guaranteed my father that I would return his son to him safely. I told him that]

ULT **If I do not bring him {back} to you**
UST if I did not bring his son {back} to him

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote.
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **then I will have sinned against my father**
UST I would be guilty of sinning against him

See how you translated a similar clause in Genesis 43:9. Alternate translation: [then this would be a terrible sin against him]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **all the days**
UST forever

Be consistent here with your choice in Genesis 43:9. Alternate translation: [all the days of my life] or [for the rest of my life]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	sir, I promised
guaranteed	sir, I promised
young man	my father that I would return his son to him safely
sinned	sinning
days	forever

Genesis 44:33

ULT	UST
And now, please let your servant stay as a slave for my lord instead of the young man, and let the young man go up with his brothers.	*So then, sir, I beg you to let me stay here and be your slave in place of our youngest brother, and let him go back home with his other brothers.*

ULT **And now**
UST So then

This phrase introduces the conclusion to what Judah said in verses 30–32. See how you translated this phrase in verse 30. Alternate translation: [So now]

ULT **please let your servant stay**
UST sir, I beg you to let me stay here

Consider again how you translated **your servant** and "your servants" throughout this chapter. See verses 7, 9, 18, 24, 27, 30–32. Alternate translation: [I urge you to allow me your servant to be the one to stay here] or [sir, I urge you to let me stay here]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **as a slave for my lord**
UST and be your slave

Throughout this chapter, the same Hebrew word is translated as **slave** when the context has negative connotations (verses 9–10, 16–17, 33), but is translated as **servant** when the context has more positive connotations (verses 7, 9, 16, 18–19, 21, 23–24, 27, 30–32). Do what is best in your language in each context. Alternate translation: [as a slave for you] or [and be your servant]

ULT **instead of**
UST in place of

Alternate translation: [to take the place of]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant	sir, I beg you to let me stay here
as a slave	and be your slave
lord	and be your slave

Genesis 44:34

ULT	UST
For how will I go up to my father if the young man is not with me? I fear to see the misery that would find my father!”	*There is no way I can go back to my father if his youngest son is not with me! I could not bear to see how terribly my father would suffer!”*

ULT **For how will I go up**
UST There is no way I can go back

Judah uses this rhetorical question to emphasize how difficult it would be for him to return to his father without his brother. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [I could never]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **will I go up to my father**
UST I can go back to my father

Consider again how you translated “… up” in verses 17, 24, 33–34. Contrast that to how you translated “… down” in verses 21, 23, and 26. Some translations leave **up** or “down” implied. Alternate translation: [return home to my father]

ULT **if the young man is not with me**
UST if his youngest {son} is not with me

Alternate translation: [if our youngest brother is not with me!]
Support Reference: Hypothetical Situations

ULT **I fear to see**
UST I could not bear to see

Alternate translation: [I do not want to see]

ULT **the misery that would find my father**
UST how terribly my father would suffer

Judah is speaking of **misery** as if it were a living thing that could **find** his **father**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [how much my father would grieve!]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the misery	how terribly my father would suffer

Genesis 45

Genesis 45:1

ULT	UST
Then Joseph was not able to control himself before all who were standing by him, and he called out, "Have every man leave from beside me!" So no man stood with him when Joseph revealed himself to his brothers.	*When Joseph heard that, he could no longer keep himself from crying in front of all his servants, so he shouted to them, "All of you leave my presence!" Immediately the servants left the room, so that no one else was with Joseph when he told his brothers who he was.*

ULT **Then Joseph was not able**
UST When Joseph heard that, he could no longer

Alternate translation: [When Joseph heard what Judah said, he was no longer able to]

ULT **to control himself**
UST keep himself from crying

Alternate translation: [hide his feelings]

ULT **before all who were standing by him**
UST in front of all his servants

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Joseph's servants, not his brothers. Alternate translation: [in front of all his servants who were with him] or [in front of all his attendants]

ULT **and he called out**
UST so he shouted to them

Alternate translation: [and he shouted to them] or [so he said loudly to them]

ULT **Have every man leave**
UST All of you leave

Alternate translation: [All of you, leave]

ULT **So no man stood with him when Joseph revealed himself to his brothers**
UST Immediately the servants left the room, so that no one else was with Joseph when he told his brothers who he was

Make sure your use of nouns or pronouns to refer to Joseph and his brothers here is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [So Joseph was alone with his brothers when he made himself known to them] or [Immediately his servants left the room, so that no one else was with him when he told his brothers who he was]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
called out	so he shouted to them
Joseph	יוֹסֵף
when … revealed himself	when he told … who he was

Genesis 45:2

ULT	UST
And he gave his voice in crying, and the Egyptians heard, and the house of Pharaoh heard.	*But he started crying so loudly that many Egyptians heard him, including Pharaoh's family.*

ULT **And he gave his voice in crying**
UST But he started crying so loudly

Consider whether your language has an idiom such as **gave his voice in crying**. Also see how you translated **cried** in Genesis 42:24; 43:30. Alternate translation: [Then he raised his voice and cried loudly so that]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and the Egyptians heard, and the house of Pharaoh heard**
UST that {many} Egyptians heard {him}, including Pharaoh's family

The word **house** refers here to Pharaoh's family members and servants, not a literal building.
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egyptians	Egyptians
house	s family
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 45:3

ULT	UST
Then Joseph said to his brothers, "I am Joseph! Is my father still alive?" But his brothers were not able to answer him, because they were terrified at his presence.	*Then he exclaimed to his brothers in their language, "I am your brother Joseph! Is my father still alive?" But Joseph's brothers could not reply to him, because they felt very afraid to be standing in front of him.*

ULT **Then Joseph said to his brothers**
UST Then he exclaimed to his brothers in their language

In this chapter, the word **brothers** refers to Joseph's older brothers (from different mothers) and his younger brother (from the same mother). Alternate translation: [Then Joseph exclaimed to his brothers in their language]
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **I {am} Joseph**
UST I {am} {your brother} Joseph

Alternate translation: [I am Joseph, your brother!]

ULT **Is my father still alive**
UST Is my father still alive

Joseph uses **my father** to emphasize his relationship with his father. Make sure your translation does not sound like he had a different father than his brothers. Alternate translation: [Is our father still alive?]

ULT **But his brothers were not able to answer him**
UST But Joseph's brothers could not reply to him

Alternate translation: [His brothers could not say a word]

ULT **because they were terrified at his presence**
UST because they felt very afraid to be standing in front of him

For some languages it is necessary to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "But his brothers were so terrified to see him that they could not answer him." Alternate translation: [because they were shocked to realize that they were in his presence]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	יוֹסֵף
Joseph	Joseph
terrified	they felt very afraid

Genesis 45:4

ULT	UST
Then Joseph said to his brothers, "Please come close to me." So they came close, and he said, "I am Joseph your brother, whom you sold into Egypt.	*So Joseph said to them, "Please come here next to me." After they went closer to him, he said to them, "I really am your brother Joseph, whom you sold to be a slave in the country of Egypt.*

ULT **Please come close to me**
UST Please come here next to me

Alternate translation: [Please come near to me]

ULT **So they came close, and he said**
UST After they went closer {to him}, he said to them

Alternate translation: [When they went closer to him, he said to them] or [After they did that, he said to them]

ULT **I {am} Joseph your brother**
UST I {really am} your brother Joseph

Alternate translation: [I truly am your brother Joseph]

ULT **whom you sold into Egypt**
UST whom you sold {to be a slave} in {the country of} Egypt

Joseph's brothers sold him to slave traders who were going to Egypt. If necessary, you could make some of that information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [whom you sold as a slave that was taken here to Egypt]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Joseph	Joseph
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 45:5

ULT	UST
And now, do not be grieved and do not let it burn in your eyes that you sold me here, because God sent me ahead of you for the preservation of life.	*But now, do not be upset or angry with yourselves for selling me, because it was actually God who sent me here before you came, to save many people's lives.*

ULT **do not be grieved**
UST do not be upset

Alternate translation: [do not be distressed]

ULT **and do not let it burn in your eyes**
UST or angry with yourselves

Consider again how you translated various idioms for "anger" or "be angry" in the book of Genesis. See 4:5–6; 30:2; 31:35–36; 34:7; 44:18; 45:5. It may be necessary to translate these idioms in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [or angry at yourselves]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **that you sold me here**
UST for selling me

Alternate translation: [that you sold me and caused me to be a slave here] or [for selling me as a slave]

ULT **because God sent me**
UST because {it was actually} God {who} sent me here

Alternate translation: [because God sent me here]

ULT **ahead of you**
UST before you came

Alternate translation: [before you got here]

ULT **for the preservation of life**
UST to save {many people's} lives

Alternate translation: [to keep many people from dying]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God

Genesis 45:6

ULT	UST
For this is two years the famine has been in the midst of the land, and there are still five years in which there will not be plowing and harvesting.	*For two years now there has been a famine throughout this region, and for another five years it will be so severe that no one will be able to plant seeds or harvest crops.*

ULT **For this {is} two years**
UST For two years now

Alternate translation: [The past two years]

ULT **the famine {has been} in the midst of the land**
UST there has been a famine throughout this region

See how you translated **famine** in Genesis 12:10. Alternate translation: [there has been a famine throughout this country] or [a famine has been affecting this whole region]

ULT **and {there are} still five years {in} which**
UST and for another five years it will be so severe that

Alternate translation: [and for another five years it will be so bad that] or [and during the next five years it will be even worse, so that] or [and there will be five more years when]

ULT **there will not be plowing and harvesting**
UST no one will {be able to} plant {seeds} or harvest crops

Alternate translation: [there will be no plowing of fields or harvesting of crops]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
famine	famine
land	this region
years	years
plowing	plant seeds
harvesting	harvest

Genesis 45:7

ULT	UST
But God sent me ahead of you to preserve a remnant for you on the earth, and to keep you alive by a great deliverance.	*That is why God sent me here before you came, to save your lives in this amazing way so that you will survive and have descendants on the earth.*

ULT **But God sent me**
UST That is why God sent me here

Alternate translation: [God caused me to come here]

ULT **ahead of you**
UST before you came

Alternate translation: [before you got here]

ULT **to preserve a remnant for you**
UST so that you will survive and have descendants

Alternate translation: [so that you will have descendants living] or [to help you survive and have descendants]

ULT **on the earth**
UST on the earth

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) **on the earth** or (2) “in the/this land”

ULT **and to keep you alive**
UST to save your lives

Alternate translation: [by helping you stay live] or [by saving your lives]

ULT **by a great deliverance**
UST in this amazing way

For some languages it is better to put the last two phrases earlier in this sentence and say, “But God sent me ahead of you to save your lives in this amazing way so that you will survive and have descendants on the earth.” Alternate translation: [through his amazing rescue] or [in this powerful way]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
remnant	so that you will survive and have descendants
earth	earth
deliverance	in this … way

Genesis 45:8

ULT	UST
So now, it was not you who sent me here, but God. And he has made me father to Pharaoh, and lord over all his house and the ruler in all the land of Egypt.	*So then, you were not the ones who caused me to come here, but rather it was God who sent me. He has also made me like a father to King Pharaoh, so that I am the one in charge of his entire household and also the governor over the entire country of Egypt.*

ULT **it was not you**
UST you {were} not the ones

Alternate translation: [you are not the ones]

ULT **who sent me here**
UST who caused me to come here

Alternate translation: [who brought me here]

ULT **but God**
UST but {rather} {it was} God who sent me

Alternate translation: [but rather it was God who brought me] or [but rather God is the one who did it]

ULT **And he has made me father to Pharaoh**
UST He has {also} made me {like a} father to {King} Pharaoh

Joseph was like a father to Pharaoh in that Pharaoh highly honored him and Joseph took care of Pharaoh's household and all their needs. Alternate translation: [He has even made me like a father to King Pharaoh]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and the ruler**
UST and {also} the governor

Alternate translation: [and also the highest official]

ULT **in all the land of Egypt**
UST over the entire country of Egypt

Alternate translation: [in the whole country of Egypt]

ULT **and lord over all his house**
UST so that I am the one in charge of his entire household

See how you translated **lord** in Gen 42:30 and 33, and how you translated **house** in Gen 41:40. Alternate translation: [so that I am the master of his entire household]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
lord	so that I am the one in charge
house	his … household
ruler	and {also} the governor
land	country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 45:9

ULT	UST
Hurry and go up to my father and say to him, 'This is what your son Joseph says, "God has made me lord over all Egypt. Come down to me, do not delay.	*Hurry back to our father and tell him that his son Joseph has sent him this message: 'God has appointed me governor over the entire country of Egypt. So please come down here to live near me, and do not delay.*

ULT **Hurry and go up**
UST Hurry back

In this verse, the words **up** and **down** reflect the fact that Canaan was higher in elevation than Egypt. Many languages leave those words implied. Alternate translation: [Hurry up] or [Leave quickly and go back] or [Return quickly]

ULT **to my father**
UST to our father

See how you translated **my father** in verse 3.

ULT **and say to him, 'This {is what} your son Joseph says**
UST and tell him that his son Joseph has sent him this message

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote.
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **God has made me lord over all Egypt**
UST God has appointed me governor over the entire {country of} Egypt

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this doubly embedded quote (which continues through verse 11) as a direct or indirect quote. An example of an indirect quote would be: "God has made him the ruler over all Egypt. He urges you to come down there to live near him, without delay. He also says that you and your family may live in Goshen Province and that way you will live near him … He will provide for you there …" Alternate translation: [God has made me ruler over the entire country of Egypt]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **do not delay**
UST and do not delay

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, "So please do not take very long, but rather come down/here quickly to live near me." Alternate translation: [and do not wait] or [and do not take very long to come]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
God	God
lord	governor
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 45:10

ULT	UST
And you will live in the land of Goshen so that you will be near to me—you and your children and your children's children and your flocks and your herds and all that belongs to you.	*You can live in Goshen Province. That way you will live close to me with your children and your grandchildren, along with your flocks of sheep and goats, your herds of cattle and everything else that you own.*

ULT **And you will live**
UST You can live

The pronouns **you** and **your** in this verse are singular, but Joseph's message to his father includes the whole family. Alternate translation: [You and your family may live]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in the land of Goshen**
UST in Goshen Province

Goshen was a region or territory that was part of the country of Egypt. Make sure your translation of **land** does not sound like Goshen was its own country. Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen] or [in Goshen County]

ULT **so that you will be near to me**
UST That way you will live close to me

Alternate translation: [and that way you can be near me] or [That way you can live close to me]

ULT **and your flocks and your herds**
UST along with your flocks {of sheep and goats}, your herds of cattle

Alternate translation: [as well as all your domestic animals]

ULT **and all that {belongs} to you**
UST and everything {else} that you own

Alternate translation: [and all your other belongings]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	in … Province
Goshen	Goshen
flocks	flocks
and your herds	cattle

Genesis 45:11

ULT	UST
And I will provide for you there, because there are still five years of famine, so that you will not become impoverished, you and your household and all that belongs to you.”’	*I will take care of you there, since the famine will last five more years. Please come so that the famine will not cause you and your family to lose everything you own and die.’”*

ULT **And I will provide for you there**
UST I will take care of you there

Alternate translation: [I will support you there]

ULT **because {there are} still five years of famine**
UST since the famine will last five {more} years

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, “There are still five more years of famine ahead/coming, so I will provide for you there in Goshen.”
Alternate translation: [since there are still five more years of famine ahead] or [because the famine will last five more years]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **so that you will not become impoverished, you and your household and all that {belongs} to you**
UST Please come so that {the famine} will not cause you and your family to lose everything you own and die

The verb **become impoverished** can include losing livestock, other belongings, and the lives of their servants and family members. Alternate translation: [That way you and your extended family will not become poor and die] or [Please come so that the famine does not cause you and your family to lose everything you own and die]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	years
famine	famine
and your household	and your family

Genesis 45:12

ULT	UST
And behold, your eyes and the eyes of my brother Benjamin see that it is my mouth that is speaking to you.	*Then Joseph said to his brothers, "Look! All of you, including my brother Benjamin, can see that it really is me, Joseph, who is talking to you.*

ULT **And behold**
UST Then Joseph said to his brothers, "Look

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph's message to his father was completed in verse 11, and that here in verse 12 he is talking directly to his brothers again. Alternate translation: [Now look] or [Then Joseph said to his brothers, Look!]

ULT **your eyes**
UST All of you

The word **eyes** is used figuratively here (and in the next phrase) to refer to the persons themselves; it also emphasizes the fact that they were seeing Joseph in person. Consider what is the best way to translate this phrase in your language. Alternate translation: [I can tell that all of you]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **and the eyes of my brother Benjamin**
UST including my brother Benjamin

See how you translated **brother** in Genesis 43:29.
Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **see that {it is} my mouth**
UST can see that {it really is} me, Joseph

Here the phrase **my mouth** refers to Joseph himself; it also emphasizes the fact that it was Joseph himself who was talking to them. Consider what is the best way to translate this figure of speech in your language. Alternate translation: [can see that I Joseph am the one]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Benjamin	Benjamin

Genesis 45:13

ULT	UST
So report to my father all my glory in Egypt and all that you have seen. Then hurry and bring my father down here."	*So go and tell our father all about how powerful I am in Egypt and about everything else that you have seen here. Then quickly bring him down here to me."*

ULT **So report to my father**
UST So {go and} tell our father

Alternate translation: [So go and tell my father]

ULT **all my glory in Egypt**
UST all {about} how powerful I am in Egypt

Alternate translation: [about my high position in Egypt] or [about how honored I am in Egypt]

ULT **Then hurry and bring my father down here**
UST Then quickly bring him down here to me

See how you translated **down** in verse 9. Alternate translation: [Then hurry and bring him down here to me] or [Then quickly bring him here to me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
report	tell
my glory	about how powerful I am
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 45:14

ULT	UST
Then he fell on the neck of Benjamin his brother and cried, and Benjamin cried on his neck.	*Then Joseph hugged his brother Benjamin tightly and cried for joy, and Benjamin also cried as he hugged Joseph.*

ULT Then he fell on the neck of Benjamin his brother
UST Then Joseph hugged his brother Benjamin tightly

See how you translated the idiom “fell on his neck” in Genesis 33:4. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph hugged his brother Benjamin strongly]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT and cried
UST and cried for joy

Alternate translation: [and started crying because he was so happy]

ULT and Benjamin cried on his neck
UST and Benjamin {also} cried as he hugged Joseph

Alternate translation: [Benjamin also cried as he hugged him back]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Benjamin	Benjamin
Benjamin	Benjamin

Genesis 45:15

ULT	UST
Then he kissed all his brothers and cried over them. And after that his brothers talked with him.	*Then Joseph kissed all his brothers on their cheeks as he continued to cry for joy. After he did that, his brothers started talking with him.*

ULT Then he kissed all his brothers

UST Then Joseph kissed all his brothers on their cheeks

See how you translated "kissed … on the cheeks" in Genesis 33:4. Alternate translation: [Next Joseph kissed all his brothers on their cheeks] or [Next Joseph greeted all his brothers with a kiss on their cheeks]

ULT and cried over them

UST as he continued to cry for joy

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "Then as Joseph continued to cry, he kissed all his brothers on the/their cheeks." Alternate translation: [with tears of joy]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT And after that his brothers talked with him

UST After {he did} that, his brothers started talking with him

Previously Joseph's brothers had been too afraid to speak (verse 3). Now they felt free to start talking to him.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kissed	kissed

Genesis 45:16

ULT	UST
And the report was heard in the house of Pharaoh, saying, "The brothers of Joseph have come." And it was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of his servants.	*When Pharaoh's household heard the news that Joseph's brothers had come there, Pharaoh and all his servants were happy.*

ULT **The brothers of Joseph have come**
UST that Joseph's brothers had come there

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language.
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **And it was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of his servants**
UST Pharaoh and {all} his servants were happy

Alternate translation: [it was pleasing to Pharaoh and all his officials] or [Pharaoh and all his officials were pleased]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	s household
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Joseph	Joseph
good	were happy
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
servants	servants

Genesis 45:17

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Say to your brothers, 'Do this: Load your animals and leave; go to the land of Canaan.	*So Pharaoh told Joseph, "Give your brothers this message from me: 'Load your donkeys with grain and go quickly back to Canaan.*

ULT **Then Pharaoh said to Joseph**
UST So Pharaoh told Joseph

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh told Joseph] or [Then Pharaoh gave these instructions to Joseph:]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Say to your brothers, 'Do this: Load your animals**
UST Give your brothers this message {from me}: 'Load your donkeys with grain

These animals were donkeys (Genesis 43:18, 44:3), not any other kind of animal. Also, consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [Tell your brothers to load their pack animals with grain]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and leave; go**
UST and go quickly back

The two verbs **leave** and **go** emphasize that Joseph's brothers should go back immediately to their father in Canaan. Alternate translation: [and quickly return]

ULT **to the land of Canaan**
UST to Canaan

Alternate translation: [to region of Canaan]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Joseph	Joseph
your animals	your donkeys
land	to
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 45:18

ULT	UST
Then get your father and your households, and come to me, and I will give to you the best of the land of Egypt, and you will eat the fat of the land.'	*Then bring your father and your families back here to me. I will give you the best area in the country of Egypt to live in, so that you will live well with the best of everything in the country.'"*

ULT **Then get your father and your households, and come to me**
UST Then bring your father and your families {back} {here} to me

Make sure it is clear in your translation that verse 18 is still part of Pharaoh's message to Joseph's brothers. Also make sure the pronouns that you use throughout verses 17 and 18 fit with whether you translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [Then tell them to bring their father and their families back here to me]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and I will give to you**
UST I will give you

Alternate translation: [I will give them]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **the best of the land of Egypt**
UST the best {area} in the country of Egypt to live in

Alternate translation: [the best land in the country of Egypt to live in]

ULT **and you will eat the fat of the land**
UST so that you will live well with the best of everything in the country

This idiom means that they would live comfortably with the best of everything; it does not just refer to food. Consider whether or not you have a similar idiom in your language.
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your households	your families
best	best
land	the country of
Egypt	Egypt
land	the country

Genesis 45:19

ULT	UST
And you are commanded, 'Do this: Take carts with you from the land of Egypt for your little ones and for your wives, and get your father and come.	*Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I also want you to tell them to take some of my wagons with them from the country of Egypt for their wives and young children to travel in. Then tell them to bring their father back here to live.*

ULT **And you are commanded**
UST Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I also want you to tell them

The pronoun **you** is singular here and refers to Joseph. This clause is not part of Pharaoh's message to Joseph's brothers (verses 17–20). Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: [You are also directed to tell them]

ULT **Do this: Take carts with you**
UST to take {some of} {my} wagons with them

These carts or wagons had two or four wheels and were pulled by animals such as oxen or donkeys. Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. See what you did for a similar case in verses 17–18. Alternate translation: [Take some of my carts with you] or [to take some of my carts with them]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **for your little ones and for your wives**
UST for their wives and {young} children to travel in

For some languages it is more natural (and respectful) to put **wives** before **little ones** in this phrase. Also see how you translated **little ones** in Genesis 43:8. Alternate translation: [for your young children and wives to ride in] or [for your wives and young children to ride in]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and get your father and come**
UST Then {tell them} to bring their father {back} here to live

Make sure the pronouns you use throughout verses 19 and 20 fit with whether you translate the embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated **get your father** in verse 18. Alternate translation: [then bring them and your father back here to live] or [Then tell them to bring their father and their families back here to live]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	from the country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 45:20

ULT	UST
And do not let your eyes grieve over your belongings, because the best of all the land of Egypt belongs to you.’”	*They should not worry about leaving some of their belongings behind, because the best things in all the country of Egypt will be theirs.”*

ULT **And do not let your eyes grieve**
UST They should not worry

Alternate translation: [And do not be concerned] or [You should not worry]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **over your belongings**
UST about {leaving some of} their belongings behind

Alternate translation: [about leaving some of your belongings behind] or [if you have to leave behind some of your possessions]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **because the best of all the land of Egypt**
UST because the best {things} in all the country of Egypt

This phrase refers generally to the wealth of Egypt that will be available to Jacob’s family, including fertile land and anything else that they need. Alternate translation: [because the best of everything in the land of Egypt] or [because the most valuable things in all the land of Egypt]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
best	best
land	the country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 45:21

ULT	UST
Then the sons of Israel did so. And Joseph gave to them carts according to the mouth of Pharaoh, and he gave provisions to them for the road.	*So Israel's sons agreed to do that. Then Joseph gave them wagons to use as King Pharaoh had commanded, and he supplied them with food to eat as they traveled home.*

ULT **Then the sons of Israel did so**
UST So Israel's sons {agreed to} do that

The author assumes that readers will know that **the sons of Israel** are the sons of Jacob. You could say that explicitly if that would be helpful to your readers. Here and again in verse 28, Jacob is referred to by his other name, Israel. If that is not clear in your translation, you could put that information in a footnote. If possible in your translation, it is best to keep the name that the author chose to use in each case so that you do not change what is being emphasized. Alternate translation: [So the sons of Israel did this]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And Joseph gave to them carts**
UST Then Joseph gave them wagons to use

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph gave them carts to use]

ULT **according to the mouth of Pharaoh**
UST as {King} Pharaoh had commanded

This phrase refers to what Pharaoh said. Alternate translation: [as King Pharaoh had directed him]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and he gave provisions to them**
UST and he supplied them with food

Alternate translation: [and he provided them with food to eat] or [and he gave them food]

ULT **for the road**
UST to eat as they traveled home

Alternate translation: [to eat on their trip home]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
Joseph	Joseph
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 45:22

ULT	UST
To all of them, to each one, he gave changes of clothes, but to Benjamin he gave 300 shekels of silver and five changes of clothes.	*He also gave a new set of clothes to each one of his brothers, but to Benjamin he gave five new sets of clothes and 300 pieces of silver money.*

ULT **To all of them, to each {one}, he gave changes of clothes**
UST He {also} gave a {new} set of clothes to each one of his brothers

Alternate translation: [To each of them he gave a new set of clothes] or [He also gave a new change of clothes to each one of his brothers]

ULT **but to Benjamin he gave 300 {shekels} of silver and five changes of clothes**
UST but to Benjamin he gave five {new} sets of clothes and 300 {pieces} of silver money

For some languages it is better to mention the gift of clothes to Benjamin before the gift of silver, to more clearly contrast how many clothes he received with how many his brothers received. Also, see how you translated **shekels of silver** in Genesis 20:16 (and see the note there). Three hundred shekels of silver was equal to about 3.5 kilos (7.5 pounds). Alternate translation: [but to Benjamin he gave 300 pieces of silver money and five new changes of clothes] or [but to Benjamin he gave five new changes of clothes plus 300 pieces of silver money]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Benjamin	Benjamin
silver	silver

Genesis 45:23

ULT	UST
And to his father he sent this: ten he-donkeys loaded with the best of Egypt, and ten she-donkeys loaded with grain and bread and provisions for his father for the road.	*He also gave them the following gifts to give to his father: ten male donkeys that were carrying some of the best things from Egypt, and ten female donkeys that were carrying grain, bread, and other food for him and his family to eat as they traveled to Egypt.*

ULT And to his father he sent this
UST He also gave {them} the following gifts to give to his father

Alternate translation: [Besides that, he sent with them the following gifts for his father:] or [He also gave them the following things to give to his father:]

ULT with the best of Egypt
UST some of the best {things} from Egypt

Alternate translation: [some of the best products from Egypt] or [some of the most valuable things produced in the country of Egypt]

ULT grain and bread and provisions
UST grain, bread, and {other} food

Alternate translation: [bags of grain, bread, and other food] or [food provisions, including grain and bread]

ULT for his father
UST for him and his family

Alternate translation: [for his father and family]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT for the road
UST to eat as they traveled to Egypt

See how you translated “provisions … for the road” in verse 21 and Genesis 42:25. Alternate translation: [to eat on his trip to Egypt] or [to eat as he traveled to Egypt]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
he-donkeys	donkeys
best	best
Egypt	Egypt
she-donkeys	donkeys
grain	grain
bread	bread

Genesis 45:24

ULT	UST
Then he sent his brothers, and as they left, then he said to them, “Do not quarrel on the road.”	*Then Joseph sent his brothers off on their way home. As they were leaving, he told them, “Do not argue with each other on the way.”*

ULT **Then he sent his brothers**
UST Then Joseph sent his brothers off on their way home

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph saw his brothers off on their way home] or [After that, Joseph got his brothers started on their journey home]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **then he said to them, “Do not quarrel**
UST he told them, “Do not argue with each other

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here. Alternate translation: [he told them not to argue with one another]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **on the road**
UST on the way

Alternate translation: [on the journey] or [as you travel]

Genesis 45:25

ULT	UST
Then they went up from Egypt and came to the land of Canaan, to Jacob their father.	*Then Joseph's brothers left Egypt and traveled home to their father Jacob in the region of Canaan.*

ULT **Then they went up from Egypt**
UST Then Joseph's brothers left Egypt

See how you translated **up** in verse 9.

ULT **and came {to} the land of Canaan, to Jacob their father**
UST and traveled {home} to their father Jacob in the region of Canaan

Alternate translation: [and went back home to their father Jacob in the land of Canaan]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 45:26

ULT	UST
And they reported to him, saying, "Joseph is still alive! And in fact, he is the ruler over all the land of Egypt!" But his heart went numb because he did not believe them.	*When they arrived, they announced to him, "Joseph is still alive! In fact, he is the governor over the entire country of Egypt!" When their father heard that news, he was stunned and silent, because he could not believe them.*

ULT **And they reported to him, saying**
UST When they arrived, they announced to him

Alternate translation: [They immediately announced to him] or [When they arrived, they exclaimed to him]

ULT **Joseph {is} still alive! And in fact, he {is} the ruler over all the land of Egypt**
UST Joseph {is} still alive! In fact, he {is} the governor over the entire country of Egypt

See how you translated **ruler** in verse 8. Alternate translation: [Joseph is still alive! In fact, he is the governor of the entire country of Egypt!]

ULT **But his heart went numb**
UST When their father heard that news, he was stunned and silent

This idiom means that Jacob was so shocked that he did not know which way to go with his emotions or what to think, say, or do; it does not mean that he died. Some languages have a similar idiom. Alternate translation: [When Jacob heard that, he was completely shocked]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **because he did not believe them**
UST because he could not believe them

Alternate translation: [because he thought it could not be true]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
reported	When they arrived, they announced
Joseph	Joseph
ruler	is the governor
land	country of
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 45:27

ULT	UST
Then they told him all the words of Joseph that he had spoken to them, and he saw the carts that Joseph had sent to carry him, then the spirit of Jacob their father revived.	*But after they told him everything that Joseph had said to them, and after he saw the wagons that Joseph had sent to carry him and his family to Egypt, he recovered from the shock.*

ULT **Then they told him**
UST But {after} they told him

Alternate translation: [But then they reported to him]

ULT **and he saw the carts**
UST and {after} he saw the wagons

See how you translated **carts** in verses 19 and 21. Alternate translation: [and when he saw the carts]

ULT **then the spirit of Jacob their father revived**
UST he recovered from the shock

Alternate translation: [their father Jacob felt much better]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Joseph	Joseph
spirit	he recovered from the shock
Jacob	יַעֲקֹב

Genesis 45:28

ULT	UST
And Israel said, "Enough! Joseph my son is still alive! I will go and see him before I die."	*Then he exclaimed to them, "That's enough! It must be true! My son Joseph really is alive! I must go now and see him again before I die."*

ULT **And Israel said**
UST Then he exclaimed to them

Consider again whether to include in this chapter a footnote which explains that **Israel** (verses 21 and 28) and "Jacob" (verses 25 and 27) refer to the same person, not two different people.
Alternate translation: [Then Israel exclaimed to them]

ULT **Joseph my son {is} still alive**
UST My son Joseph really is alive

Alternate translation: [My son Joseph must still be alive!]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	יִשְׂרָאֵל
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 46

Genesis 46:1

ULT	UST
Then Israel set out and all that belonged to him. Then he came to Beersheba, and he sacrificed sacrifices to the God of his father Isaac.	*So Israel and his family started traveling toward Egypt with all their belongings. When they reached the city of Beersheba, he offered some of his animals on an altar there as sacrifices to God, whom his father Isaac had worshiped.*

ULT Then Israel set out and all that {belonged} to him
UST So Israel {and his family} started traveling {toward Egypt} with all their belongings

Alternate translation: [So Israel started the journey to Egypt with all his family members and belongings] or [So Israel and his family started traveling toward Egypt with all his belongings]

ULT and he sacrificed sacrifices
UST he offered some of his animals {on an altar} {there} as sacrifices

The author is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [he offered offerings] or [burned some of his animals on an altar there as sacrifices]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT to the God of his father Isaac
UST to God, whom his father Isaac had worshiped

Alternate translation: [to God, whom his father Isaac had served]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
Beersheba	Beersheba
Beersheba	Beersheba
sacrificed	sacrifices
sacrifices	sacrifices
God	God
Isaac	Isaac

Genesis 46:2

ULT	UST
And God spoke to Israel in visions of the night and said, "Jacob! Jacob!" And he said, "Behold me."	*During the night God called to Israel in a vision, "Jacob! Jacob!" Jacob replied, "Yes, Lord?"*

ULT **And God spoke to Israel in visions of the night and said, "Jacob! Jacob**
UST During the night God called to Israel in a vision, "Jacob! Jacob

God repeats Jacob's name to communicate that he has something urgent or important to tell him. Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound angry or critical. Also see how you translated **vision** in Genesis 15:1.

ULT **And he said**
UST Jacob replied

For some languages, it is more natural to put this quotation margin (**he said**) after the quote. Alternate translation: [Jacob replied to him]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **Behold me**
UST Yes, Lord

Consider again how you translated the idiom **Behold me** throughout the book of Genesis. See 22:1, 7, 11; 27:1, 18; 31:11; 37:13; 46:2. Alternate translation: [Here I am, Lord] or [Yes, Master?] or [I am listening, Lord]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Israel	Israel
visions	vision
Jacob	Jacob
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 46:3

ULT	UST
And he said, "I am God, the God of your father. Do not be afraid to go down to Egypt, because I will make you into a great nation there.	*Then God said to him, "I am God, the God whom your father worshiped. Do not be afraid of moving down to the country of Egypt, because I will make your descendants multiply and become a large people group while they live there.*

ULT **I {am} God, the God of your father**
UST I {am} God, the God whom your father worshiped

See how you translated **the God of** in verse 1. Alternate translation: [I am God, the God whom your father served]

ULT **Do not be afraid**
UST Do not be afraid

Alternate translation: [You must not be afraid]

ULT **to go down to Egypt**
UST of moving down to {the country of} Egypt

Alternate translation: [to move down to the country of Egypt] or [to go to the country of Egypt and settle there]

ULT **because I will make you**
UST because I will make your descendants

See how you translated **I will make you into a great nation** (and similar phrases) in Genesis 12:2; 17:20; 18:18; 21:13, 18. Alternate translation: [because I will make you and your descendants] or [because I will make your family] or [because I will give you many descendants, who will]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **into a great nation there**
UST multiply and become a large people group {while they live} there

Alternate translation: [multiply and become an important ethnic group there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
God	God
afraid	afraid
Egypt	Egypt
nation	multiply and become a … people group

Genesis 46:4

ULT	UST
I myself will go down with you to Egypt, and I myself will also surely bring you up. And Joseph will put his hand over your eyes."	*I will personally go with you down to Egypt and take care of you there. Later I will definitely bring your descendants back here to Canaan. When you die, Joseph will be with you."*

ULT **I myself will go down with you to Egypt**

UST I will personally go with you down to Egypt and take care of you there

Consider what is the best way to translate the emphatic pronoun **I** here and in the next clause. Also see how you translated **down** and **up** in Genesis 45:9. Alternate translation: [I personally will go with you to Egypt]

ULT **and I myself will also surely bring you up**

UST Later I will definitely bring your descendants {back} here to Canaan

The pronoun **you** refers here to Jacob's descendants.

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And Joseph will put his hand over your eyes**

UST When you die, Joseph will be with you

This clause refers to the custom of closing a person's eyes after he died and means that Joseph would be with Jacob when he died. Alternate translation: [And when you die, Joseph will be right there to close your eyes]

Support Reference: Euphemism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 46:5

ULT	UST
Then Jacob got up from Beersheba, and the sons of Israel carried Jacob their father and their little ones and their wives in the carts that Pharaoh had sent to carry him.	*After that, Jacob left the city of Beersheba, and his sons took him and their wives and children in the wagons that King Pharaoh had provided for them to ride in to Egypt.*

ULT **Then Jacob got up from Beersheba**
UST After that, Jacob left {the city of} Beersheba

Be consistent with how you spell **Beersheba** throughout the book of Genesis. See 21:14, 31–33; 22:19; 26:23, 33; 28:10; 46:1, 5. Alternate translation: [So Jacob left the city of Beersheba] or [After that, Jacob whose other name was Israel left the city of Beersheba]

ULT **and the sons of Israel carried Jacob their father**
UST and his sons took him

"and his sons, the sons of Israel, took/transported him their father" or "and his sons, that is the sons of Israel, took/transported him" or "and his sons took/transported him." **Israel** is the name that God gave to Jacob (Genesis 32:28, 35:10). In chapters 45 and 46, the text repeatedly switches back and forth between both of Jacob's names. Make sure it is clear in your translation that these two names refer to the same person. You could include a footnote that helps readers understand what is happening. Alternate translation: [and his sons, the sons of Israel, took him their father] or [and his sons, that is the sons of Israel, took him] or [and his sons transported him]

ULT **and their little ones and their wives**
UST and their wives and children

See how you translated "little ones and … wives" in Genesis 45:19. Alternate translation: [as well as their children and wives]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **in the carts**
UST in the wagons

See how you translated **carts** in Genesis 45:19, 21, 27.

ULT **that Pharaoh**
UST that {King} Pharaoh

For a note about how **Pharaoh** is used like a name in the Bible, see 12:15. Alternate translation: [that Pharaoh the king of Egypt] or [that the king of Egypt]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **had sent**
UST had provided

Alternate translation: [had sent to Canaan]

> ULT **to carry him**
> UST for them to ride in to Egypt

The pronoun **him** refers to Jacob, the head of his family, and includes Jacob's wives and children. It may be necessary to use the plural pronoun "them" to make that clear. Alternate translation: [to transport him to Egypt] or [for them to ride on to Egypt]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Beersheba	Beersheba
Beersheba	Beersheba
Israel	him
Jacob	him
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 46:6

ULT	UST
And they took their livestock and their possessions that they had acquired in the land of Canaan. Then they came to Egypt, Jacob and all of his offspring with him,	*They also brought with them their livestock and their other belongings that they had gotten in the region of Canaan. Then Jacob and all of his descendants arrived in Egypt.*

ULT **And they took their livestock**
UST They {also} brought {with them} their livestock

Alternate translation: [They also took with them their animals]

ULT **and their possessions**
UST and their {other} belongings

Consider again how you translated **possessions** in the book of Genesis. See 12:5 (and note); 13:6; 14:11–12, 16, 21; 15:14; 31:18; 36:7; 46:6. It may be necessary to translate this term in slightly different ways, depending on the context.

ULT **that they had acquired**
UST that they had gotten

Consider again how you translated **acquired** in the book of Genesis. See 12:5; 31:18; 36:6; 46:6. Alternate translation: [that they had accumulated]

ULT **in the land of Canaan**
UST in the region of Canaan

Alternate translation: [in Canaan]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
livestock	livestock
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
Egypt	Egypt
Jacob	Jacob
his offspring	his descendants

Genesis 46:7

ULT	UST
his sons and his sons' sons with him, his daughters and his sons' daughters. So all his offspring he brought with him to Egypt.	*He brought his entire extended family with him to Egypt, including his sons and daughters, and his grandsons and granddaughters.*

ULT **his sons and his sons' sons with him, his daughters and his sons' daughters**
UST including his sons and daughters, {and} his grandsons and granddaughters

Consider what is the best way in your language to list these descendants. Alternate translation: [including his sons and grandsons, and his daughters and granddaughters] or [including his sons, daughters, grandsons, and granddaughters]

Support Reference: Kinship

ULT **So all his offspring he brought with him to Egypt**
UST He brought his entire {extended} family with him to Egypt

For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, "He/Jacob brought his entire extended family with him to Egypt, including his sons …" Alternate translation: [Yes, Jacob brought his entire family with him to Egypt] or [Jacob had all his descendants with him when he arrived in Egypt]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his offspring	his … extended family
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 46:8

ULT	UST
Now these are the names of the sons of Israel who went to Egypt, Jacob and his sons: the firstborn of Jacob was Reuben.	*Here is a list of the names of Israel's descendants who came with him to Egypt, that is, the names of Jacob's descendants: Reuben, who was his oldest son,*

ULT **the firstborn of Jacob {was} Reuben**
UST Reuben, {who was} his oldest son

Some translations put verses 8–14, 16–17, and 19–24 in list format, beginning a new paragraph with each of Jacob's sons.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
Egypt	Egypt
Jacob	Jacob's
firstborn	who was … oldest son
Jacob	his
Reuben	Reuben

Genesis 46:9

ULT	UST
And the sons of Reuben were Hanoch and Pallu and Hezron and Carmi.	*and Reuben's sons, who were Hanoch, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi.*

ULT **And the sons of Reuben were**
UST and Reuben's sons, who were

Throughout this section (verses 9–27), some translations use a colon before each list of names instead of **were** or "who were."

ULT **Hanoch and Pallu and Hezron and Carmi**
UST Hanoch, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi

For some languages it is more natural to include **and** between every name in a list like this. For other languages it is more natural to use commas between names and leave **and** implied, except before the last name in the list. See how you translated similar lists of names in Genesis 10.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben
Hanoch	Hanoch

Genesis 46:10

ULT	UST
And the sons of Simeon were Jemuel and Jamin and Ohad and Jakin and Zohar and Shaul, the son of a Canaanite woman.	*Simeon and Simeon's sons, who were Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul, who had a Canaanite mother.*

ULT **and Shaul, the son of a Canaanite woman**
UST and Shaul, who had a Canaanite mother

In this list, only Shaul had a Canaanite mother. See how you translated **Canaanite** in Genesis 38:2. Alternate translation: [and Shaul, whose mother was a Canaanite] or [and Shaul. (Shaul had a Canaanite mother.)]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Simeon	Simeon
and Shaul	and Shaul
Canaanite	Canaanite

Genesis 46:12

ULT	UST
And the sons of Judah were Er and Onan and Shelah and Perez and Zerah, but Er and Onan had died in the land of Canaan. And the sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul.	*Judah and Judah's sons, who were Er, Onan, Shelah, Perez, and Zerah; actually, Er and Onan had already died in the region of Canaan. Perez's sons were Hezron and Hamul.*

ULT **Er and Onan and Shelah and Perez and Zerah**
UST Er, Onan, Shelah, Perez, and Zerah

Be consistent here with how you spelled these names in Genesis 38:3–11, 26, 29–30.

ULT **but Er and Onan had died in the land of Canaan**
UST actually, Er and Onan had {already} died in the region of Canaan

Alternate translation: [actually, Er and Onan had already died in the land of Canaan]

ULT **And the sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul**
UST Perez's sons were Hezron and Hamul

Alternate translation: [Perez had sons named Hezron and Hamul]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 46:13

ULT	UST
And the sons of Issachar were Tola and Puvah and Job and Shimron.	*Issachar and Issachar's sons, who were Tola, Puvah, Job, and Shimron.*

ULT Tola and Puvah and Job and Shimron
UST Tola, Puvah, Job, and Shimron

Numbers 26:24 and 1 Chronicles 7:1 have the same list of Issachar's sons as here, but instead of **Puvah** and "Job," they have "Puah" and "Jashub." Some translations keep the spelling for these names the same in all three locations to avoid confusion. Alternate translation: [Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Issachar	Issachar

Genesis 46:15

ULT	UST
Those were the sons of Leah, whom she bore for Jacob in Paddan Aram, and Dinah his daughter. All the souls of his sons and his daughters were thirty-three.	*Those were the sons and grandsons whom Jacob and his wife Leah had together in the region of Paddan Aram. They also had a daughter named Dinah. The total number of those descendants was thirty-three.*

ULT **Those {were} the sons of**
UST Those {were} the sons {and grandsons} whom

Alternate translation: [All those were the descendants]

ULT **Leah, whom she bore for Jacob**
UST Jacob and {his wife} Leah had together

Alternate translation: [of Leah and Jacob who were born]

ULT **in Paddan Aram**
UST in {the region of} Paddan Aram

Alternate translation: [in the land of Paddan Aram]

ULT **and Dinah his daughter**
UST They also {had} a daughter {named} Dinah

Be consistent with how you spell the name **Dinah** in the book of Genesis. See 30:21; 34:1–5, 11, 13, 25–26; 46:15. Alternate translation: [as well as Dinah their daughter] or [in addition to their daughter Dinah]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **All the souls of his sons and his daughters {were} thirty-three**
UST The total number of those descendants {was} thirty-three

Alternate translation: [All together those sons, daughters and grandchildren totaled thirty-three persons]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Leah	Leah
bore	Jacob and {his wife} Leah had together
Jacob	Jacob
in Paddan	in {the region of} Paddan
Aram	Aram

Genesis 46:16

ULT	UST
And the sons of Gad were Ziphion and Haggi, Shuni and Ezbon, Eri and Arodi and Areli.	*Jacob's other descendants who came with him included his son Gad and Gad's sons, who were Ziphion, Haggi, Shuni, Ezbon, Eri, Arodi, and Areli.*

ULT **And the sons of Gad were**

UST Jacob's other descendants who came with him included {his son Gad and} Gad's sons, who were

This verse begins a new section in the list of Jacob's descendants. Decide what is the best way to begin this new section in your language.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Gad	Gad

Genesis 46:17

ULT	UST
And the sons of Asher were Imnah and Ishvah and Ishvi and Beriah and Serah their sister. And the sons of Beriah were Heber and Malkiel.	*He also took his son Asher and Asher's sons, who were Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah, and their sister Serah. Beriah's sons were Heber and Malkiel.*

ULT **and Serah their sister**
UST and their sister Serah

Alternate translation: [and their sister, who was Serah] or [and their sister, whose name was Serah] or [Their sister was Serah]

ULT **And the sons of Beriah {were} Heber and Malkiel**
UST Beriah's sons {were} Heber and Malkiel

Alternate translation: [Beriah had sons named Heber and Malkiel]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Asher	Asher

Genesis 46:18

ULT	UST
Those were the sons of Zilpah, whom Laban had given to Leah his daughter. And she bore those sixteen souls for Jacob.	*Those were the children and grandchildren that Jacob had with Zilpah, who was the servant woman that Laban had given to his daughter Leah. Those descendants that Zilpah and Jacob had together totaled sixteen persons.*

ULT Those {were} the sons of Zilpah

UST Those {were} the children {and grandchildren} {that Jacob had} with Zilpah

Be consistent with how you spell the name **Zilpah** in the book of Genesis. See 29:24; 30:9–10, 12; 35:26; 37:2; 46:18. Alternate translation: [Those were the descendants of Jacob and Zilpah]

ULT And she bore those sixteen souls for Jacob

UST Those descendants that Zilpah and Jacob had together {totaled} sixteen persons

Consider whether it is better in your language to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, “Those were sixteen descendants that Jacob had with his concubine Zilpah, whom Laban had given to his daughter Leah as a maidservant/servant.” Alternate translation: [Zilpah and Jacob had those sixteen descendants] or [The total number of those descendants that Zilpah and Jacob had together was sixteen]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Zilpah	Zilpah
Laban	Laban
Leah	Leah
bore	Those descendants that Zilpah and Jacob had together
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 46:19

ULT	UST
The sons of Rachel, the wife of Jacob, were Joseph and Benjamin.	*The sons that Jacob had with his wife Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin.*

ULT **The sons of Rachel, the wife of Jacob, {were} Joseph and Benjamin**
UST The sons that Jacob had with his wife Rachel {were} Joseph and Benjamin

This verse begins a new section in the list of Jacob's descendants. Decide what is the best way to begin this new section in your language.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
Jacob	Jacob
Joseph	Joseph
Benjamin	Benjamin

Genesis 46:20

ULT	UST
And Manasseh and Ephraim were born to Joseph in the land of Egypt, whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera the priest of On, bore for him.	*Joseph's sons who were born in the country of Egypt were Manasseh and Ephraim. Their mother was Joseph's wife Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, who was the priest at the city of On.*

ULT **whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera the priest of On, bore for him**

UST Their mother was {Joseph's wife} Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, {who was} the priest at {the city of} On

See how you translated "Asenath … daughter of Potiphera the priest of On" in Genesis 41:45.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Manasseh	Manasseh
Ephraim	Ephraim
And … were born	Joseph's {sons} who were born
Joseph	Joseph's
land	in the country of
Egypt	Egypt
priest	priest
bore	Their mother was Joseph's wife

Genesis 46:21

ULT	UST
And the sons of Benjamin were Bela and Beker and Ashbel, Gera and Naaman, Ehi and Rosh, Muppim and Huppim and Ard.	*Benjamin's sons were Bela, Beker, Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Ehi, Rosh, Muppim, Huppim, and Ard.*

ULT **Ehi and Rosh, Muppim and Huppim and Ard**
UST Ehi, Rosh, Muppim, Huppim, and Ard

Remember to use (or not use) **and** between the names in this list in a way that is natural in your language.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Benjamin	Benjamin
Naaman	Naaman

Genesis 46:22

ULT	UST
Those were the sons of Rachel, whom she bore for Jacob; all the souls were fourteen.	*Those were the sons and grandsons whom Jacob and his wife Rachel had together, a total of fourteen descendants.*

ULT **Those {were} the sons of**
UST Those {were} the sons {and grandsons} whom

Alternate translation: [All those were the descendants]

ULT **Rachel, whom she bore for Jacob**
UST Jacob and {his wife} Rachel had together

Your punctuation here will depend on how you translate the rest of this verse. Alternate translation: [that Jacob and his wife Rachel had together] or [who came from Rachel and Jacob]

ULT **all the souls {were} fourteen**
UST a total of fourteen descendants

Alternate translation: [The total number of those descendants was fourteen]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Rachel	Rachel
bore	Jacob and {his wife} Rachel had together
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 46:23

ULT	UST
And the sons of Dan were Hushim.	*Other descendants who came with Jacob included: his son Dan and Dan's son Hushim.*

ULT **And the sons of Dan {were} Hushim**

UST Other descendants who came with Jacob included: {his son Dan and} Dan's son Hushim

This verse begins a new section in the list of Jacob's descendants. See how you started verse 16, which is similar.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Dan	Dan

Genesis 46:24

ULT	UST
And the sons of Naphtali were Jahziel and Guni and Jezer and Shillem.	*Naphtali and Naphtali's sons, who were Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem.*

ULT **Jahziel and Guni and Jezer and Shillem**
UST Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem

Consider again how you translated these lists of names in this chapter (verses 9–24).

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Naphtali	Naphtali

Genesis 46:25

ULT	UST
Those were the sons of Bilhah, whom Laban had given to Rachel his daughter. And she bore those for Jacob; all the souls were seven.	*Those were all the sons and grandsons that Jacob had with Bilhah, the servant woman whom Laban had given to his daughter Rachel. The total number of those descendants was seven.*

ULT **Those {were} the sons of Bilhah**
UST Those {were all} the sons and grandsons … Bilhah

Be consistent in how you spell **Bilhah** in the book of Genesis. See 29:29; 30:3–5, 7; 35:22, 25; 37:2; 46:25. Also see how you translated verse 18, which is similar in structure to verse 25. Alternate translation: [Those were the descendants of Jacob and Bilhah]

ULT **whom Laban had given to Rachel his daughter**
UST the servant woman whom Laban had given to his daughter Rachel

Alternate translation: [who was the servant woman whom Laban had given to his daughter Rachel]

ULT **And she bore those for Jacob; all the souls {were} seven**
UST that Jacob had with … The total number of those descendants {was} seven

For some languages it is better to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, “All those were seven descendants that Jacob had with his concubine Bilhah, whom Laban had given to his daughter Rachel as a maidservant/servant.” Alternate translation: [The total number of those descendants that Bilhah and Jacob had together was seven] or [Those descendants that Bilhah had with Jacob totaled seven persons]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Bilhah	Bilhah
Laban	Laban
Rachel	Rachel
bore	that Jacob had with
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 46:26

ULT	UST
All the souls who went with Jacob to Egypt, who came out of his thigh, apart from the wives of Jacob's sons; all the souls were sixty-six.	*Altogether Jacob had sixty-six blood relatives who went with him to Egypt. That number does not include his wives or his sons' wives.*

ULT **All the souls who went with Jacob to Egypt**
UST Altogether Jacob had … who went with him to Egypt

Alternate translation: [The total number of people who traveled with Jacob to Egypt]

ULT **who came out of his thigh**
UST blood relatives

Make sure that your translation of this idiom can be read in public without offending or embarrassing listeners. See how you translated a similar idiom in Genesis 35:11. Alternate translation: [who came from him] or [who were his blood relatives] or [who were his biological descendants]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **apart from the wives of Jacob's sons**
UST That {number} does not include {his wives or} his sons' wives

Alternate translation: [not including his wives or the wives of his sons]

ULT **all the souls {were} sixty-six**
UST sixty-six

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "Altogether Jacob had sixty-six blood relatives who went with him to Egypt. That number does not include his wives or his sons' wives." Alternate translation: [was sixty-six people in all]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Egypt	Egypt
his thigh	blood relatives
Jacob	his wives or his sons' wives

Genesis 46:27

ULT	UST
And the sons of Joseph who were born for him in Egypt were two souls. All the souls belonging to the house of Jacob who went to Egypt were seventy.	*If you include Jacob, Joseph, and Joseph's two sons, who were born in Egypt, then there was a total of seventy members of Jacob's family in Egypt.*

ULT **And the sons of Joseph who were born for him in Egypt {were} two souls**
UST If you include {Jacob, Joseph, and} Joseph's two sons, who were born in Egypt

Alternate translation: [Joseph and his two sons were already in Egypt, so, including Jacob]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
were born	were born
Egypt	Egypt
house	members of Jacob's family in Egypt
Jacob	Jacob's
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 46:28

ULT	UST
And he sent Judah before him to Joseph to show the way before him to Goshen. And they came to the land of Goshen.	*When they reached Egypt, Jacob had Judah go to Joseph ahead of them to get directions from him to Goshen Province. After that, Jacob's family traveled to Goshen.*

ULT **And he sent Judah**
UST When they reached Egypt, Jacob had Judah go

Alternate translation: [Then he told Judah to go] or [When they reached Egypt, he had Judah go]

ULT **before him to Joseph**
UST to Joseph ahead of them

Alternate translation: [ahead of them to Joseph]

ULT **to show {the way} before him**
UST to get directions from him

Alternate translation: [to find out which way to go] or [to ask him how to get]

ULT **to Goshen**
UST to Goshen Province

Goshen was a region or territory that was part of the country of Egypt. For some languages it is better to make that explicit here, rather than wait until the end of the verse. Also be consistent here with how you spelled **Goshen** in Genesis 45:10. Alternate translation: [to the region of Goshen] or [to Goshen County]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And they came**
UST After that, Jacob's family traveled

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to here. Alternate translation: [Then Jacob and his family traveled to]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to the land of Goshen**
UST to Goshen

If you use **the land of Goshen** earlier in this verse, it may be better to just say **Goshen** here. Alternate translation: [the region of Goshen] or [Goshen County]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
Joseph	Joseph
Goshen	Goshen
land	to
Goshen	Goshen

Genesis 46:29

ULT	UST
Then Joseph harnessed his chariot and went up to meet Israel his father in Goshen. And he appeared to him, and he fell on his neck and cried on his neck a long time.	*Then Joseph got his chariot ready and went to Goshen to meet his father Israel. There Joseph greeted his father and hugged him tightly and cried for joy on his shoulder for a long time.*

ULT **Then Joseph harnessed his chariot**
UST Then Joseph got his chariot ready

Joseph may have harnessed his horses to his chariot himself, or he may have had his servants do that for him (which was usual for a powerful person like him). Consider how you translated similar situations in Genesis 41:48. Also see how you translated **chariot** in Genesis 41:43. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph got his cart ready] or [Then Joseph had his servants get his cart ready]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and went up to meet Israel his father in Goshen**
UST and went to Goshen to meet his father Israel

See how you translated **went up** in Genesis 13:1 and "go up" in Genesis 45:9.

ULT **And he appeared to him**
UST There Joseph greeted his father

Alternate translation: [When he got there, Joseph went up to his father]

ULT **and he fell on his neck**
UST and hugged him tightly

See how you translated "fell on … neck" in Genesis 45:14. Alternate translation: [and put his arms around his neck] or [and hugged him strongly]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
chariot	chariot
Israel	Israel
Goshen	Goshen

Genesis 46:30

ULT	UST
Then Israel said to Joseph, "Now I can die, since I have seen your face, that you are still alive!"	*Then Israel exclaimed to Joseph, "Now when I die I will be at peace, because I have seen you in person and know that you are still alive!"*

ULT **Then Israel said to Joseph**
UST Then Israel exclaimed to Joseph

Alternate translation: [Then Israel exclaimed to him]

ULT **Now I can die**
UST Now when I die I will be at peace

Jacob did not die until 17 years later (Genesis 47:28). Make sure your translation of this clause does not mean or imply that Jacob wanted to die soon or that he thought he would die soon.
Alternate translation: [Now I will die happy]

ULT **since I have seen your face**
UST because I have seen you in person

In this context, **your face** refers to Joseph, not just his face. Decide what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [since I have seen you face to face] or [since I have seen you in person]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 46:31

ULT	UST
Then Joseph said to his brothers and to the household of his father, "I will go up and report to Pharaoh, and I will say to him, 'My brothers and the household of my father who were living in the land of Canaan have come to me.	*Then Joseph announced to his brothers and the rest of his father's family, "I will go to King Pharaoh and inform him, 'My brothers and the rest of my father's family have traveled here from the region of Canaan to live near me.*

ULT **Then Joseph said to his brothers**
UST Then Joseph announced to his brothers

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph told his brothers]

ULT **I will go up and report to Pharaoh, and I will say to him**
UST I will go to {King} Pharaoh and inform him

Make sure that the way Joseph refers to Pharaoh here sounds respectful in your translation. See what you did in Genesis 41:35. Alternate translation: [I will go to King Pharaoh and tell him]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **My brothers and the household of my father**
UST My brothers and {the rest of} my father's family

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote (in verses 31–32) with a direct or indirect quote.
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **who {were living} in the land of Canaan have come to me**
UST have traveled {here} from the region of Canaan to live near me

Alternate translation: [have come here from the land of Canaan to live near me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
the household of	the rest of … s family
report	and inform him
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
and the household of	and the rest of … s family
land	from the region of Canaan
Canaan	Canaan

Genesis 46:32

ULT	UST
And the men are herders of sheep, for they are livestock men, and they have brought their flocks and their herds and everything that belongs to them.'	*The men of my family raise sheep and goats. In fact, they raise all kinds of livestock for a living, and they have brought with them all their sheep and goats and cattle, and everything else that they own.'*

ULT **And the men {are} herders of sheep**
UST The men {of my family} raise sheep and goats

Be consistent here with whether you are translating this embedded quote (that began in verse 31) as an direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [The men of my family tend sheep and goats] or [I will also tell him that you men in my family raise sheep and goats]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **for they are livestock men**
UST In fact, they raise {all kinds of} livestock for a living

Alternate translation: [for they are livestock raisers]

ULT **and everything**
UST and everything else

Alternate translation: [as well as everything else]

ULT **that {belongs} to them**
UST that they own

Alternate translation: [that they have] or [that is theirs]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
herders	raise
sheep	sheep and goats
livestock	livestock
flocks	and … all their sheep and goats
and their herds	cattle

Genesis 46:33

ULT	UST
Then it will be, when Pharaoh calls for you and says, ‘What is your work?’	*So then, when the king summons you and asks you what your occupation is,*

ULT Then it will be
UST So then

This phrase introduces and emphasizes what Joseph says next. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language.

ULT when Pharaoh
UST when the king

Alternate translation: [when King Pharaoh]

ULT calls for you and says, ‘What {is} your work
UST summons you and asks {you} what your occupation is

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quotation with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: [summons you and asks you what your work is]
Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	the king
calls	summons you

Genesis 46:34

ULT	UST
then you should say, 'Your servants have been livestock men from our youth and until now, both we and also our fathers,' so that you can settle in the land of Goshen, because every herder of sheep is an abomination to Egyptians."	*you should tell him, 'Sir, ever since the time we were young until now, we have been raising livestock, which is the same occupation that our ancestors had.' That way he will allow you to live separately in Goshen Province, especially since Egyptians despise everyone who raises sheep."*

ULT **then you should say**
UST you should tell him

Alternate translation: [you must tell him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Your servants have been livestock men from our youth and until now**
UST Sir, ever since the time we were young until now, we have been raising livestock

The phrase "Your servants" shows respect to Pharaoh and acknowledges his high position. It does not mean that Pharaoh actually owns Joseph's brothers as servants. Translate this in a polite way that shows respect toward Pharaoh. Alternate translation: [Your Majesty, we have raised livestock since the time we were young]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **both we {and} also our fathers**
UST which is the same occupation that our ancestors had

See how you translated **fathers** in Genesis 15:15. Alternate translation: [which is the same occupation that our forefathers had]

ULT **so that**
UST That way

Alternate translation: [If you say that, then]

ULT **you can settle**
UST he will allow you to live separately

The idea here is that Jacob's family would be permitted to live in rural areas to raise their livestock away from most Egyptians, who despised sheep herders. Alternate translation: [you will be allowed to live privately] or [he will permit you to live privately]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in the land of Goshen**
UST in Goshen Province

Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen] or [in Goshen County]

ULT **because**
UST especially since

Alternate translation: [especially because]

ULT **every herder of sheep {is} an abomination {to} Egyptians**
UST Egyptians despise everyone who raises sheep

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of phrases in this clause. Also see how you translated **abomination** in Genesis 43:32. Alternate translation: [sheep herders are detestable to Egyptians] or [the people of Egypt have disdain for sheep herders] or [Egyptians detest everyone who raises sheep]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servants	Sir … we have been raising livestock
livestock	livestock
land	in … Province
Goshen	Goshen
sheep	sheep
abomination	Egyptians despise
Egyptians	Egyptians

Genesis 47

Genesis 47:1

ULT	UST
Then Joseph went and reported to Pharaoh and said, "My father and my brothers and their flocks and their herds and all that belongs to them have come from the land of Canaan, and behold, they are in the land of Goshen."	*So Joseph went to King Pharaoh and informed him, "My father and my brothers and their families have come to Egypt from the region of Canaan and are now in Goshen Province. They brought with them their sheep, goats, cattle, and everything else that they own."*

ULT **Then Joseph went and reported to Pharaoh and said**
UST So Joseph went to {King} Pharaoh and informed him

See how you translated "report to Pharaoh" in Genesis 46:31. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph went to King Pharaoh and told him]

ULT **My father and my brothers**
UST My father and my brothers and their families

It is implied that the brothers brought their families with them. Consider whether or not to make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [My father, my brothers and their families]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and their flock{s} and their herds**
UST They brought with them their sheep, {goats,} cattle

Alternate translation: [and their flocks of sheep and goats and their herds of cattle] or [along with their sheep, goats, cattle]

ULT **have come from the land of Canaan**
UST have come {to Egypt} from the region of Canaan

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause and the rest of this verse earlier in this sentence. For example: "My father and my brothers and their families have come to Egypt from the region of Canaan and are now in Goshen Province. They brought with them their sheep …" Alternate translation: [have come here from the land of Canaan]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and behold, they are**
UST and {are} now

Alternate translation: [They are staying now] or [and they have already arrived]

ULT **in the land of Goshen**
UST in Goshen Province

Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen] or [in Goshen County]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
reported	to {King} Pharaoh and informed him
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
flocks	They brought with them their sheep, goats
and their herds	cattle
land	from the region of
Canaan	Canaan
land	in … Province
Goshen	Goshen

Genesis 47:2

ULT	UST
Then he took five men from among his brothers, and he presented them before Pharaoh.	*Then Joseph brought five of his brothers before Pharaoh and introduced them to him.*

ULT Then he took five men from among his brothers, and he presented them before Pharaoh

UST Then Joseph brought five of his brothers before Pharaoh and introduced them to him

Joseph probably brought his father and brothers with him from Goshen (46:31) to Pharaoh's palace. It is not clear whether or not they were in the room yet when Joseph spoke to Pharaoh about them (47:1). Alternate translation: [Then he took five of his brothers to Pharaoh and presented them to him] or [Joseph had brought five of his brothers with him from Goshen, so he brought them before Pharaoh and presented them to him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 47:3

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh said to his brothers, "What is your work?" And they said to Pharaoh, "Your servants are herders of sheep, both we and our fathers."	*Then Pharaoh asked them, "What is your occupation?" They answered him, "Your Majesty, we raise sheep for a living, just like our ancestors did."*

ULT **Then Pharaoh said to his brothers**
UST Then Pharaoh asked them

Make sure that your translation of **his brothers** refers to Joseph's brothers, not Pharaoh's.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **What {is} your work**
UST What {is} your occupation

Alternate translation: [What kind of work do you do?] or [What do you do for a living?]

ULT **And they said to Pharaoh**
UST They answered him

Alternate translation: [They answered Pharaoh] or [One of them said]

ULT **Your servants**
UST Your Majesty, we

See how you translated **Your servants** in Genesis 46:34. Alternate translation: [We, your humble servants] or [Your Majesty, we] or [Sir, we]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **are herders of sheep**
UST raise sheep for a living

Alternate translation: [are herdsmen]

ULT **both we and our fathers**
UST just like our ancestors did

Alternate translation: [just as our ancestors were] or [which is the same kind of work that our forefathers did]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
servants	Your Majesty, we
herders	raise … for a living
sheep	sheep

Genesis 47:4

ULT	UST
Then they said to Pharaoh, "We have come to sojourn in the land, because there is not pasture for the flocks that belong to your servants, because the famine is heavy in the land of Canaan. So now, please let your servants settle in the land of Goshen."	*They also said to him, "We have come here to live for a while in your country. The famine is so severe In the region of Canaan where we come from that there is not enough grass in the fields for our flocks. So then, sir, please let us live in Goshen Province."*

ULT **Then they said to Pharaoh**
UST They {also} said to him

For some languages it is more natural here to omit this quote margin, because the same people (Joseph's brothers) are still talking to the same person (Pharaoh). However, the words emphasize what Joseph's five brothers say next and may indicate that there was a pause between what they said in verse 3 and verse 4. Alternate translation: [Then they added]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **We have come to sojourn**
UST We have come {here} to live for a while

Alternate translation: [We have come here to stay for a while] or [We came here to stay temporarily]

ULT **in the land**
UST in {your} country

Alternate translation: [in this country] or [in your land]

ULT **because there is not pasture for the flock{s} that {belong} to your servants**
UST that there is not enough grass {in the fields} for our flocks

Alternate translation: [because there was not enough grass for our flocks of sheep and goats] or [Our flocks, sir, did not have enough grass to eat]

ULT **because the famine {is} heavy in the land of Canaan**
UST The famine is so severe In the region of Canaan where we come from

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence. For example: "The famine is so severe/terrible in the region of Canaan where we are/come from that there is not enough grass in the fields for our flocks." Alternate translation: [in the region of Canaan where we are from, because the famine is so severe there]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **So now, please let your servants settle**
UST So then, sir, please let us live

See how you translated **your servants** in verse 3 to show respect. Alternate translation: [So now please let us your humble servants live] or [So then, sir, please let us settle]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **in the land of Goshen**
UST in Goshen Province

Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	him
land	in {your} country
flocks	flocks
servants	for our flocks
famine	famine
land	In the region of
Canaan	Canaan
servants	sir … us
land	in … Province
Goshen	Goshen

Genesis 47:5

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, saying, "Your father and your brothers have come to you.	*Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Now that your father and brothers have come to live near you,*

ULT **Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, saying**
UST Then Pharaoh said to Joseph

Alternate translation: [Then Pharaoh turned to Joseph and said] or [When Pharaoh heard that, he said to Joseph]

ULT **Your father and your brothers have come to you**
UST Now that your father and brothers have come {to live} near you

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like Pharaoh was telling Joseph something he did not already know. Rather, he is stating shared knowledge as the basis for what he says next.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 47:6

ULT	UST
The land of Egypt is before you. Settle your father and your brothers in the best land; let them settle in the land of Goshen. And if you know that there are men of ability among them, then appoint them overseers of livestock over those that belong to me."	*you may choose any part of the land of Egypt for them to live in. In fact, they may live in the best land in the country, in Goshen Province. And if you know that some of them are especially talented at raising livestock, then put them in charge of raising my livestock also."*

ULT **The land of Egypt {is} before you**
UST you may choose any part of the land of Egypt for them to live in

Alternate translation: [the entire land of Egypt is available to you to choose from]

ULT **Settle your father and your brothers**
UST In fact, they may live

Alternate translation: [So have your father and your brothers settle] or [In fact, they may settle]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **in the best land; let them settle in the land of Goshen**
UST in the best land {in the country}, in Goshen Province

Alternate translation: [in the finest land in the country, in Goshen Province] or [in the region of Goshen, which is the finest land in the country]

ULT **And if you know that there are men of ability among them**
UST And if you know that some of them are especially talented at raising livestock

Alternate translation: [And if you know that some of them are very skilled at raising livestock]

ULT **then appoint them overseers of livestock over {those} that {belong} to me**
UST then put them in charge of raising my livestock also

Alternate translation: [then make them herdsmen over my livestock also]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	land
Egypt	Egypt
best	best
land	land
land	in … Province
Goshen	Goshen
know	know
appoint	then put them
overseers of	in charge of raising my livestock also
livestock	livestock

Genesis 47:7

ULT	UST
Then Joseph brought Jacob his father and presented him before Pharaoh, and Jacob blessed Pharaoh.	*Then Joseph took his father Jacob and introduced him to King Pharaoh, and Jacob asked God to bless Pharaoh.*

ULT **Then Joseph brought Jacob his father**
UST Then Joseph took his father Jacob

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph brought his father Jacob]

ULT **and presented him before Pharaoh**
UST and introduced him to {King} Pharaoh

See how you translated **presented** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [and presented him to King Pharaoh] or [to King Pharaoh and introduced them to each other]

ULT **and Jacob blessed Pharaoh**
UST and Jacob {asked God to} bless Pharaoh

In Hebrew, there is a common greeting which means “peace be to you,” so it is possible that Jacob used this blessing of peace here to greet Pharaoh. Alternate translation: [and Jacob greeted and blessed Pharaoh] or [and Jacob asked God to prosper Pharaoh] or [and Jacob greeted Pharaoh with a blessing]

Support Reference: Blessings

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Jacob	Jacob
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Jacob	Jacob
blessed	bless
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 47:8

ULT	UST
Then Pharaoh said to Jacob, "How many are the days of the years of your life?"	*Then Pharaoh asked Jacob, "Sir, how old are you now?"*

ULT **How many {are} the days of the years of your life**
UST Sir, how old are you now

Make sure your translation of Pharaoh's question about Jacob's age sounds polite. Also, for some languages, a title of respect (such as "Sir") is necessary whenever someone addresses a distinguished old man such as Jacob.

Support Reference: Politeness

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Jacob	Jacob
days	Sir, how old are you now
years	Sir, how old are you now

Genesis 47:9

ULT	UST
And Jacob said to Pharaoh, "The days of the years of my sojournings are 130 years. The days of the years of my life have been few and difficult, and they have not reached the days of the years of my fathers' lives in the days of their sojournings."	*Jacob answered him, "I have been living in this world for 130 years. My life has been short, with many hardships. In fact, I have not lived nearly as long as my ancestors did during their time on earth."*

ULT **And Jacob said to Pharaoh**
UST Jacob answered him

Alternate translation: [Jacob replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **The days of the years of my sojournings {are} 130 years**
UST I have been living {in this world} for 130 years

Consider again how you translated **sojournings,** "sojourn," and "sojourner" in the book of Genesis. See 12:10; 15:13; 17:8; 19:9; 20:1; 21:23, 34; 23:4; 26:3; 28:4; 32:4; 35:27; 37:1; 47:4, 9. It may be necessary to translate these terms in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [The length of my life so far has been 130 years]

ULT **The days of the years of my life have been few and difficult**
UST My life has been short, with many hardships

Alternate translation: [I have not lived very long, and I have had many difficulties] or [My life has been short, with many difficulties]

ULT **and they have not reached the days of the years of my fathers' lives**
UST In fact, I have not lived {nearly} as long as my ancestors did

Alternate translation: [In fact, I have lived less years than my forefathers did] or [In fact, I have not lived nearly as long as my forefathers did]

ULT **in the days of their sojournings**
UST during their time on earth

Alternate translation: [during the time that they lived on earth] or [during their years on earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Pharaoh	him
days	I have been living {in this world} for
years	I have been living {in this world} for
years	years
days	My life has been
years	My life has been
and difficult	with many hardships
days	I have … lived {nearly} as long as my ancestors did
years	I have … lived {nearly} as long as my ancestors did
days	during their time on earth

Genesis 47:10

ULT	UST
Then Jacob blessed Pharaoh and left from the presence of Pharaoh.	*Then Jacob again asked God to bless Pharaoh and left him.*

ULT **and left from the presence of Pharaoh**
UST and left him

Alternate translation: [and left his presence]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
blessed	bless
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Pharaoh	him

Genesis 47:11

ULT	UST
Then Joseph settled his father and his brothers, and he gave them property in the land of Egypt, in the best land, in the land of Rameses, as Pharaoh had commanded.	*After that, Joseph did what Pharaoh had told him to do: He helped his father and brothers settle in the country of Egypt. He gave them the choicest property in Egypt, which was in Goshen Province, also known as Rameses Province.*

ULT **Then Joseph settled his father and his brothers, and he gave them property in the land of Egypt, in the best land, in the land of Rameses**

UST After that, Joseph … He helped his father and brothers settle in the country of Egypt. He gave them the choicest property {in Egypt}, which was in {Goshen Province, also known as} Rameses Province

It is implied that Rameses (verse 11) was another name for Goshen (verses 1, 4, 6). If necessary, you could make that information explicit in your translation or put it in a footnote. Later in Egypt's history, some of the Pharaohs were named Rameses and a city was named after one of them (Exodus 1:11). Alternate translation: [So Joseph gave his father and his brothers the choicest land in the country of Egypt, and they and their families settled there. The property was in Rameses Count, that is, Goshen County] or [After that, Joseph helped his father and brothers settle in the country of Egypt. He gave them the choicest property in Egypt, which was in Goshen Province, also known as Rameses Province]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **as Pharaoh had commanded**

UST did what Pharaoh had told him to do

It may be more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "After that, Joseph did what Pharaoh had commanded/told him to do: He helped his father and brothers settle in the country of Egypt. He gave them property in Rameses Province/County, that is, Goshen Province/County, which was the choicest land in Egypt." Alternate translation: [just as Pharaoh had told him to do] or [He did exactly as Pharaoh had commanded him to do]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
property	אֲחֻזָּה
land	in the country of
Egypt	Egypt
best	choicest
land	the … property in Egypt
land	which was in Goshen Province, also known as … Province
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 47:12

ULT	UST
And Joseph provided his father and his brothers and all the household of his father with bread, according to the mouths of the little ones.	*Joseph also provided his father and brothers and all the rest of his father's family with as much food as each family needed to feed all the people in their family.*

ULT bread, according to the mouth{s} of the little ones

UST as much food as {each family} needed to feed {all} the people in their family

The children are mentioned to emphasize that all the members of the families were well-provided for, including the youngest ones. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph was providing food for everyone in each family, not just the children. Alternate translation: [food, based on how many children were in each family] or [as much food as each family needed to feed all the children in their family]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
the household of	s family with
bread	as much food as {each family} needed to feed {all} the people in their family

Genesis 47:13

ULT	UST
Now there was no bread in all the earth, because the famine was very heavy, and the land of Egypt and the land of Canaan were languishing because of the famine.	*Now after a while, the famine became so severe in the entire world that there was very little food available anywhere. The people of the country of Egypt and the region of Canaan were suffering badly because they did not have enough to eat.*

ULT **Now there was no bread**

UST Now after a while … there was very little food {available} anywhere

This clause is probably an exaggeration to emphasize that there was so little food that the people were starving. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Also consider what is the best way in your language to begin this new section that returns to the famine and how it was progressing. Alternate translation: [Now meanwhile, there was no more food] or [Meanwhile, there was almost no food] or [After a while, there was very little food available]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **in all the earth**

UST in the entire world

This phrase is ambiguous in the Hebrew text. It could mean: (1) “in all the earth,” or “in the entire known world,” or “anywhere,” which might be an exaggeration (like the previous phrase); or (2) “in all the land,” or “in the/that entire area/region of the earth/world,” which includes Egypt and Canaan (mentioned later in the verse) and other nearby regions and countries. See how you translated **all the earth** in Genesis 41:57.

ULT **because the famine {was} very heavy**

UST the famine became so severe … that

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, for example: “Now after a while, the famine was/became so severe/terrible in the entire world that there was very little food available anywhere.” Alternate translation: [because the famine was so severe]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and the land of Egypt and the land of Canaan were languishing**

UST The people of the country of Egypt and the region of Canaan were suffering badly

Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to the people who live in Egypt and Canaan, not just the lands. Alternate translation: [As a result, the people in the country of Egypt and the region of Canaan] or [In fact, the people living in the lands of Egypt and Canaan]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and … were languishing**
UST were suffering badly

The verb **languishing** refers in general to the suffering that the famine was causing, including things such as weakness, fainting and other distress. Some languages have an idiom (like "were wasting away") that fits well here. Alternate translation: [were weak] or [were suffering terribly] or [were wasting away]

ULT **because of the famine**
UST because they did not have enough to eat

Alternate translation: [because of the severe lack of food] or [from hunger]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bread	Now after a while … there was very little food {available} anywhere
earth	in the entire world
famine	famine
land	The people of the country of
Egypt	Egypt
land	and the region of
Canaan	Canaan
famine	because they did not have enough to eat

Genesis 47:14

ULT	UST
And Joseph collected all the silver that was found in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan for the grain which they were buying, and Joseph brought the silver to the house of Pharaoh.	*So they bought grain from Joseph until there was no more money left in the country of Egypt or the region of Canaan. Joseph had his servants take the money to Pharaoh's palace.*

ULT **And Joseph collected all the silver that was found in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan for the grain which they were buying**

UST So they bought grain from Joseph until there was no more money left in the country of Egypt or the region of Canaan

Alternate translation: [So the people spent their money buying grain from Joseph until he had collected all their money] or [So they bought grain from Joseph until there was no more silver left in the country of Egypt or the land of Canaan]

ULT **and Joseph brought the silver to the house of Pharaoh**

UST Joseph {had his servants} take the money to Pharaoh's palace

Joseph probably had servants do this for him. See what you did for a similar case in Genesis 41:48.

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
silver	until there was no more money left
land	in the country of
Egypt	Egypt
land	or the region of
Canaan	Canaan
grain	grain
Joseph	Joseph
silver	the money
house	to … s palace
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 47:15

ULT	UST
So the silver was consumed from the land of Egypt and from the land of Canaan, and all Egypt came to Joseph, saying, "Give us bread! And why should we die before you? For the silver is gone!"	*When the people in Egypt and Canaan had spent all their money, people from all over Egypt went to Joseph and begged him, "Sir, we have no more money! Please give us food so that we do not starve to death!"*

ULT **So the silver was consumed from the land of Egypt and from the land of Canaan**
UST When {the people in} Egypt and Canaan had spent all their money

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a passive or active clause here. Alternate translation: [So when all the silver in the country of Egypt and the region of Canaan had been used up] or [After the people in Egypt and Canaan had spent all their money]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **all Egypt**
UST people from all over Egypt

The word **all** is an exaggeration which emphasizes that a large number of Egyptians went to Joseph. Consider whether or not it is best to use exaggeration here in your language. Alternate translation: [all the people in Egypt] or [the Egyptians all]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **and … came to Joseph**
UST went to Joseph

Consider whether **came** or "went" is more natural here in your language.
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **saying**
UST and begged him

Alternate translation: [and pleaded with him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Give us bread**
UST Sir … Please give us food

Make sure your translation of the people's request sounds polite, not rude or disrespectful. Also see how you translated **bread** in verses 12–13. Alternate translation: [Sir, please give us food]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **And why should we die before you**
UST so that we do not starve to death

The people use a rhetorical question here to emphasize how desperate they feel. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [so that we do not die right here in front of you!] or [and do not let us starve to death!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **For the silver is gone**
UST we have no more money

It may be more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, “Sir, we have no more money to buy grain/food! Please give us food so that we do not starve to death!” Alternate translation: [There is no more money to buy food] or [We have no more money to buy food]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
silver	When … had spent all their money
land	the people in Egypt
Egypt	Egypt
land	and
Canaan	Canaan
Egypt	Egypt
Joseph	Joseph
bread	food
silver	we have no more money

Genesis 47:16

ULT	UST
And Joseph said, "Bring your livestock and I will give grain to you in exchange for your livestock, since the silver is gone."	*Joseph responded, "Since your money is gone, bring me your livestock to pay for the food that I will give you."*

ULT **And Joseph said**
UST Joseph responded

Alternate translation: [Joseph said to them] or [Joseph replied]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Bring your livestock**
UST bring {me} your livestock

The word **livestock** is general here and includes all the different kinds of animals that are specified in verse 17. Alternate translation: [Give me your animals]

ULT **and I will give {grain} to you {in exchange} for your livestock**
UST to pay for the food that I will give you

Alternate translation: [and I will sell you grain when you give me your animals to pay for it] or [and in exchange for them I will give you grain]

ULT **since the silver is gone**
UST Since your money is gone

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, "Since your silver/money is gone, bring/give me your livestock to pay for the grain/food that I will give you." Alternate translation: [since all your money is gone] or [since you have spent all your money]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
livestock	livestock
livestock	to pay for the food that I will give you
silver	your money

Genesis 47:17

ULT	UST
So they brought their livestock to Joseph, and Joseph gave bread to them in exchange for the horses and for the herds of sheep and for the herds of cattle and for the donkeys. So he provided them with bread in that year in exchange for all their livestock.	*So the people brought their livestock to Joseph. They gave him their horses, sheep, goats, cattle, and donkeys to pay for the food that he gave them. In that way Joseph supplied the people with food that year, and they gave him all their livestock to pay for it.*

ULT **So they brought their livestock to Joseph**
UST So the people brought their livestock to Joseph

Alternate translation: [So the people took their animals to Joseph]

ULT **and Joseph gave bread to them {in exchange} for the horses and for the herd{s} of sheep and for the herd{s} of cattle and for the donkeys**
UST They gave him {their} horses, sheep, goats, cattle, and donkeys to pay for the food that he gave them

Alternate translation: [and gave him their horses, sheep, goats, cattle, and donkeys to pay for the food that he gave them]

ULT **So he provided them with bread in that year**
UST In that way Joseph supplied the people with food that year

Alternate translation: [In that way Joseph supplied the people with grain that year]

ULT **in exchange for all their livestock**
UST and they gave him all their livestock {to pay} for it

Alternate translation: [and they gave him all their animals to pay for it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
livestock	livestock
Joseph	Joseph
Joseph	They gave him … to pay for the food that he gave them
bread	They gave him … to pay for the food that he gave them
horses	horses
and for the herd{s} of	sheep, goats
sheep	sheep, goats
and for the herd{s} of	cattle
cattle	cattle
donkeys	donkeys
bread	with food
year	year
livestock	livestock

Genesis 47:18

ULT	UST
And when that year had ended, then they came to him in the second year and said to him, "We cannot hide it from my lord that since the silver is consumed and the herds of livestock belong to my lord, there is nothing left before my lord except our bodies and our lands.	*After that year was over, the people went to Joseph again in the following year and pleaded with him, "Sir, as you know, our money is gone and all our livestock belong to you. The only way we can pay you for food is to give you our farmland and work for you, sir.*

ULT **And {when} that year had ended**
UST After that year was over

Alternate translation: [When that year was over]

ULT **then they came to him in the second year**
UST the people went to Joseph {again} in the following year

Alternate translation: [the people came to Joseph again in the next year]
Support Reference: Go and Come

ULT **and said to him**
UST and pleaded with him

Alternate translation: [and told him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **We cannot hide {it} from my lord that since**
UST Sir, as you know

For some languages, it may be more natural to put the address "my/our lord" or "sir" first in this quote. Also notice that this address is used three times in this verse to show extra respect to Joseph. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [Our lord we cannot hide from you the fact that]
Support Reference: Politeness

ULT **the silver is consumed and the herd{s} of livestock**
UST our money is gone and {all} {our} livestock

Consider again how you translated **silver** in the book of Genesis. See 13:2; 20:16; 23:15–16; 24:35, 53; 31:15; 37:28; 42:25, 27–28, 35; 43:12, 15, 18, 21–23; 44:1–2, 8; 45:22; 47:14–16, 18. It may be necessary to translate this word in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [our money is gone and our animals] or [not only is our silver all gone, but all our animals also]

ULT **belong to my lord**
UST belong to you

In this verse, the people use the third person **my/our lord** to address Joseph in a respectful manner. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: [belong to you, our lord] or [are yours, sir]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **there is nothing left before my lord except our bodies and our lands**

UST The only way we can pay you {for food} is to give you our farmland and work for you, sir

Consider what is the best way to translate the Hebrew word for “land” here (and In verses 19–26), which refers to cultivated land (such as farmland or fields), not to the planet earth or to a country. It is different from the word for “land” in the rest of this chapter (in verses 1, 4, 6, 11, 13–15, 27–28). Alternate translation: [We have nothing left to pay you, sir, for grain except ourselves and our land] or [The only way we can pay you for grain is to give you our land and work for you, sir]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
year	year
year	year
lord	Sir
silver	our money
and the herd{s} of	livestock
livestock	and {all} {our} livestock
lord	belong to you
lord	sir

Genesis 47:19

ULT	UST
Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land? Buy us and our land in exchange for the bread, and we and our land will be slaves to Pharaoh. Give us seed so that we will live and not die, and the land will not be desolate!”	*Please do not just watch us die or let our land become wasteland. Instead, please take us and our land in exchange for food. Then we will be King Pharaoh’s slaves, and our land will also be his. Please give us seeds to plant so that we can stay alive and not starve to death, and so that the land will not become a desert!”*

ULT **Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land**
UST Please do not {just} watch us die or let our land become wasteland

For many languages, the verb **die** does not fit with both people and land, so a different verb must be used for each one. The end of verse 19 specifies how the land would “die.” See how you translated a similar rhetorical question in verse 15. Alternate translation: [What good would it do for us to die and our fields to become ruined] or [Please do not just watch us die or let our land become empty]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Buy us and our land {in exchange} for the bread**
UST Instead, {please} take us and our land {in exchange} for food

Here the author is using one kind of food, **bread**, to mean food in general. Consider again how you translated the word **bread** in the book of Genesis. See 3:19 (and note); 14:18; 21:14; 28:20; 37:25; 38:6; 41:54–55; 43:31; 47:12, 15, 17, 19. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Instead, please take us and our fields in exchange for food] or [Instead please give us food and we will give you our farmland and ourselves to pay for it]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **and we and our land will be slaves to Pharaoh**
UST Then we will be {King} Pharaoh’s slaves, and our land will also be his

Alternate translation: [Then our fields will belong to King Pharaoh and we will work for him as his servants]

ULT **Give {us} seed**
UST Please give {us} seeds to plant

Alternate translation: [Please give us seeds to sow]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **so that we will live**
UST so that we can stay alive

Alternate translation: [so that we can survive] or [so that we will stay alive]

> ULT **and not die**
> UST and not {starve} to death

See how you translated **so that we will live and not die** in Genesis 42:2. Alternate translation: [and not die from hunger]

> ULT **and the land will not be desolate**
> UST and {so that} the land will not become a desert

For some languages it may be clearer and more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, “Please just give us seeds to plant so that the land will produce/grow food crops again and then we will survive and not die from hunger!” Alternate translation: [and so that the land will grow crops again!]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bread	in exchange for food
slaves	s slaves
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
seed	seeds
desolate	desert

Genesis 47:20

ULT	UST
Then Joseph bought all the farmland of Egypt for Pharaoh, because every Egyptian sold his field, because the famine was heavy for them. So the land became Pharaoh's.	*So Joseph agreed and acquired all the land in the country of Egypt for Pharaoh. All the Egyptians sold their fields to him in exchange for food, because the food shortage was so severe. In that way, all the land became Pharaoh's property.*

ULT **Then Joseph bought**
UST So Joseph {agreed and} acquired

For some languages it may be necessary to make explicit that Joseph agreed to do what the people suggested. Alternate translation: [So Joseph agreed and bought] or [Joseph did what they asked and bought]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **all the {farm}land of Egypt for Pharaoh**
UST all the land in {the country of} Egypt for Pharaoh

Alternate translation: [all the farmland in the country of Egypt for Pharaoh]

ULT **because every Egyptian sold his field**
UST All the Egyptians sold their fields {to him} in exchange for food

Alternate translation: [All the Egyptians gave their fields to him in exchange for grain]

ULT **because … the famine**
UST the food shortage

Consider again how you translated **famine** in the book of Genesis. See 12:10; 26:1; 41:27, 30–31, 36, 50, 54–57; 42:5; 43:1; 45:6, 11; 47:4, 13, 20. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [because the food scarcity]

ULT **was heavy for them**
UST was {so} severe

See how you translated **heavy** in verses 4 and 13. For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, "The famine was very severe for all the Egyptian people, so Joseph agreed with their request/suggestion and let them sell their fields to him in exchange for grain/food. In that way, Joseph/he bought/acquired all the land/farmland in the country of Egypt for King Pharaoh, so that all the land became Pharaoh's property." Alternate translation: [was very severe] or [was so severe that they did not have enough to eat]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **So the land became Pharaoh's**
UST In that way, {all} the land became Pharaoh's property

Alternate translation: [That is how all the farmland eventually belonged to King Pharaoh]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Egypt	Egypt
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Egyptian	Egyptians
famine	the food shortage
land	land
Pharaoh’s	Pharaoh’s

Genesis 47:21

ULT	UST
And as for the people, he moved them to the cities from one end of the border of Egypt to its other end.	*Joseph also relocated the people to the cities throughout the entire country of Egypt.*

ULT And {as for} the people, he moved them to the cities
UST Joseph {also} relocated the people to the cities

The Masoretic Hebrew text has **moved them to the cities** here, which Joseph may have done in order to make the grain more readily accessible to them. The Samaritan Pentateuch (a different Hebrew version) and the Septuagint (Greek translation of the Hebrew text) have "made the people slaves" instead, which may refer to the fact that all the people would now be working for Pharaoh, since all the fields belonged to him. The textual variant that is not used in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Joseph also moved all the people from their farmlands to the nearby cities]

Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT from {one} end of the border of Egypt to its {other} end
UST throughout the entire {country of} Egypt

Alternate translation: [in every part of the country of Egypt]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 47:22

ULT	UST
Only the land of the priests he did not buy, because there was an allotment for the priests from Pharaoh, and they ate from their allotment that Pharaoh gave to them. For that reason they did not sell their land.	*The only land that he did not buy was the priests' land, because they regularly received a certain amount of food from Pharaoh, and they had enough to eat from what he gave to them. That is why they did not need to sell their land to buy food.*

ULT **because {there was} an allotment for the priests from Pharaoh**
UST because they regularly received a certain amount {of food} from Pharaoh

Alternate translation: [because Pharaoh gave them a regular food allowance]

ULT **and they ate {from} their allotment that Pharaoh gave to them**
UST and they had enough to eat from what he gave to them

Alternate translation: [so that they had plenty to eat]

ULT **For that {reason} they did not sell their land**
UST That is why they did not {need to} sell their land to buy food

Alternate translation: [That is why they did not need to sell their farmland to buy food]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
priests	was the priests' land
priests	they regularly received a certain amount of food
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
Pharaoh	פַּרְעֹה

Genesis 47:23

ULT	UST
Then Joseph said to the people, "Behold, today I have bought you and your land for Pharaoh. Here is seed for you so that you can sow the ground.	*Next Joseph announced to the Egyptian people, "Listen, now that you and your farmland belong to King Pharaoh, here are some seeds for you so that you can plant them in the fields.*

ULT **Then Joseph said to the people**
UST Next Joseph announced to the {Egyptian} people

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph declared to the Egyptian people]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold**
UST Listen

Alternate translation: [Look]

ULT **today I have bought you and your land for Pharaoh**
UST now that you and your farmland belong to {King} Pharaoh

Alternate translation: [now that I have acquired you and your fields for King Pharaoh] or [now that you and your fields belong to King Pharaoh]

ULT **Here {is} seed for you**
UST here {are} {some} seeds for you

Alternate translation: [I am giving you some seeds]

ULT **so that you can sow the ground**
UST so that you can plant {them in} the fields

See how you translated **sowed** in Genesis 26:12. Alternate translation: [to plant in the fields]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
today	now
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
seed	seeds
sow	plant

Genesis 47:24

ULT	UST
And it will happen in the harvests that you must give a fifth to Pharaoh, and the four parts will be for you as seed of the field and as your food and for those in your houses and for your little ones to eat."	*Then every harvest season, you must give him one-fifth of the crops you harvest. The rest of what you harvest will be yours to use to plant in the fields and as food for you and your families, including your children."*

ULT **And it will happen in the harvests**
UST Then every harvest season

Alternate translation: [Then whenever you gather the crops] or [Then every harvest time]

ULT **that you must give a fifth to Pharaoh**
UST you must give him one-fifth of the crops you harvest

Alternate translation: [you are required to give one-fifth of the crops to him] or [you must give Pharaoh one-fifth of the crops you gather]

ULT **and the four parts**
UST The rest of what you harvest

Alternate translation: [but the other four-fifths] or [The other four-fifths of your harvest] or [The rest of what you gather]

ULT **will be for you**
UST will be yours

Alternate translation: [you may keep for yourselves]

ULT **as seed of the field**
UST to use to plant {in} the fields

Alternate translation: [as seed to plant the fields] or [to plant seeds in the fields]

ULT **and as your food and for those in your houses**
UST and as food for you and your families

Alternate translation: [and as food for you and your households] or [and for you and your households to eat]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	him
seed	to use to plant
houses	and your families

Genesis 47:25

ULT	UST
And they said, "You have kept us alive! Let us find favor in the eyes of my lord, and we will be slaves for Pharaoh."	*The people replied to him, "You have saved our lives! Please continue to be kind to us, sir, and we will agree to be King Pharaoh's servants."*

ULT **And they said**
UST The people replied to him

Alternate translation: [Then they responded] or [The people said to him]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **You have kept us alive**
UST You have saved our lives

Alternate translation: [You have made it so we can live!]

ULT **and we will be slaves for Pharaoh**
UST and we will {agree to} be {King} Pharaoh's servants

Alternate translation: [and we will serve King Pharaoh as his slaves]

ULT **Let us find favor in the eyes of my lord**
UST Please {continue to} be kind to us, sir

Alternate translation: [May we continue to find favor in your eyes sir] or [Please continue to be kind to us, master]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
favor	Please {continue to} be kind to us
lord	sir
slaves	servants
Pharaoh	Pharaoh's

Genesis 47:26

ULT	UST
And Joseph established it as a law to this day concerning the farmland of Egypt, that the fifth belongs to Pharaoh. Only the land of the priests by itself did not become Pharaoh's.	*So Joseph made a law that required people to give to Pharaoh one-fifth of all the crops they harvested from the fields in Egypt. That law is still in effect today. The priests' land was the only land in Egypt that did not belong to Pharaoh.*

ULT **And Joseph established it as a law**
UST So Joseph made a law

Alternate translation: [So Joseph established a law]

ULT **concerning the {farm}land of Egypt, {that} the fifth {belongs} to Pharaoh**
UST that required {people to give} to Pharaoh one-fifth {of all the crops they harvested} from the fields in Egypt

See how you translated "a fifth" in verse 24. Alternate translation: [concerning the fields in the country of Egypt: one-fifth of the crops belongs to Pharaoh] or [that required people to give to Pharaoh one-fifth of all the crops they harvested from the farmland in Egypt]

ULT **Only the land of the priests by itself did not become Pharaoh's**
UST The priests' land was the only {land} {in Egypt} that did not belong to Pharaoh

See how you translated "only the land of the priests" in verse 22. Also, consider again how you translated **land/farmland** in verses 18–26. Alternate translation: [The only land that Pharaoh did not own was the land that belonged to the priests]

ULT **to this day**
UST That law is still {in effect} today

This phrase refers to the time that Moses was writing the book of Genesis. You could put that information in a footnote. For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this phrase at the end of the sentence and say, "That law is still in effect/force today/now." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [that is still in force now]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
as a law	a law
day	today
Egypt	Egypt
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
priests	priests
Pharaoh's	Pharaoh

Genesis 47:27

ULT	UST
And Israel settled in the land of Egypt, in the land of Goshen, and they acquired possessions in it. And they were fruitful and multiplied greatly.	*Now Jacob, whose other name was Israel, was living with his family in Goshen Province in the country of Egypt, and they acquired many possessions there. They had many children and became very numerous.*

ULT **And … settled**
UST Now … was living with his family

It was already mentioned in verse 11 that Israel (Jacob) had settled in the country of Egypt. Your translation of verse 27 should not imply that he settled there again. Alternate translation: [So] or [Meanwhile]
Support Reference: Connect — Background Information

ULT **Israel**
UST Jacob, whose other name was Israel

The name **Israel** and the name "Jacob" refer to the same person. To make that clear, you could make "Jacob" explicit here in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [Israel that is, Jacob]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And … settled**
UST Now … was living with his family

Alternate translation: [had settled with his family] or [was dwelling with his family]

ULT **in the land of Egypt, in the land of Goshen**
UST in Goshen Province in the country of Egypt

See how you translated **in the land of Goshen** in Genesis 45:10. Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen in the land of Egypt] or [in Goshen County in the country of Egypt]

ULT **and they acquired possessions**
UST and they acquired many possessions

This phrase is general here and refers to acquiring land and other possessions. Alternate translation: [and they gained many possessions] or [and owned much land]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in it**
UST there

Alternate translation: [in that region]

ULT **And they were fruitful**
UST They had many children

See how you translated a similar phrase **be fruitful and multiply** in Genesis 35:11. Alternate translation: [They were fruitful]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and multiplied greatly**
UST and became very numerous

Alternate translation: [and their numbers increased greatly] or [and became very many]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
land	in the country of
Egypt	Egypt
land	in … Province
Goshen	Goshen
possessions	possessions
fruitful	They had many children
multiplied	and became … numerous

Genesis 47:28

ULT	UST
And Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years, and the days of Jacob, the years of his life, were 147 years,	*After Jacob had lived in the country of Egypt for seventeen years, he was 147 years old.*

ULT **And Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years**
UST After Jacob had lived in the country of Egypt {for} seventeen years

Alternate translation: [When Jacob had lived in the country of Egypt for seventeen years]

ULT **and the days of Jacob, the years of his life, were 147 years**
UST he was 147 years old

Alternate translation: [he reached the age of 147 years]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
land	in the country of
Egypt	Egypt
years	years
days	he was
Jacob	he was
years	שְׁנֵי
years	years
years	years

Genesis 47:29

ULT	UST
and the days of Israel drew near for him to die. So he called for his son, for Joseph, and said to him, "If, please, I have found favor in your eyes, please put your hand under my thigh, and deal with me in kindness and faithfulness. Please do not bury me in Egypt.	*When it was almost time for him to die, he summoned his son Joseph and urged him, "Please do this favor for me: Put your hand under my leg, and promise me that after I die, you will be kind and faithful to me. Please promise that you will not bury my body here in the country of Egypt.*

ULT **and the days of Israel drew near {for him} to die**
UST When it was almost time for him to die

Alternate translation: [When it was almost time for Israel to die] or [He knew that it was almost time for him to die, so]

ULT **So he called for his son, for Joseph**
UST he summoned his son Joseph

Alternate translation: [he asked for his son Joseph to come to him]

ULT **please put your hand under my thigh**
UST Put your hand under my leg

See how you translated this clause in Genesis 24:2, and see the note about this custom there.
Alternate translation: [put your hand under my leg to show that you will do what I ask] or [make a vow by putting your hand under my leg]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and deal with me {in} kindness and faithfulness**
UST and {promise me that} {after I die,} you will be kind and faithful to me

Consider again how you translated **kindness** in Genesis 21:23; 24:12, 14, 27, 49; 32:10; 39:21; 40:14; and how you translated **faithfulness** in Genesis 24:27, 49; and 32:10.
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **Please do not bury me**
UST Please {promise that} you will not bury my body

Make sure your translation of **bury me** does not sound like Israel would still be alive when he was buried. Alternate translation: [Please promise that you will not bury my bones]

ULT **in Egypt**
UST here in {the country of} Egypt

Alternate translation: [here in the land of Egypt]

ULT **If, please, I have found favor in your eyes**
UST Please do this favor for me

Alternate translation: [Please show your favor toward me and] or [Please, if you truly love me]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	When it was almost time
Israel	When it was almost time
called	he summoned
Joseph	Joseph
favor	favor
my thigh	my leg
in kindness	kind
and faithfulness	and faithful
bury	bury
Egypt	Egypt

Genesis 47:30

ULT	UST
And when I lie down with my fathers, then carry me out of Egypt and bury me in their tomb." And he said, "I will do according to your word."	*Rather, after I die and join my ancestors who have died, take my body out of Egypt to the region of Canaan and bury it in the same burial place where their bodies are." Joseph promised him, "I will do what you requested."*

ULT **And {when} I lie down with my fathers**
UST Rather, after I die and join my ancestors who have died

The phrase **lie down with my fathers** is a idiom that refers to Jacob's death. See how you translated an idiom with a similar meaning in Genesis 15:15. Alternate translation: [When I die and rest with my ancestors] or [Rather, after I die and join my ancestors who have gone before me]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **then carry me out of Egypt**
UST take my body out of Egypt to the region of Canaan

See how you translated **me** in verse 29. Alternate translation: [carry my body out of Egypt to the region of Canaan]

ULT **and bury me in their tomb**
UST and bury it in the same burial place where their bodies are

Jacob is referring here to the cave near the city of Hebron that Abraham had bought as a family burial place, to bury Sarah there. Abraham, Isaac and Rebekah were also buried there (Genesis 23:19–20; 25:9–10; 49:31). You could put some of that information in a footnote. Also see how you translated **grave** in Genesis 35:20 and a different word with a similar meaning **burial place** in Genesis 23:4, 6, 9, 20. Alternate translation: [and bury me in the same burial place where their bodies are]

ULT **And he said**
UST Joseph promised him

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph is the one speaking here. It may be helpful to read this paragraph aloud to make sure it is clear who is talking at each point in the conversation. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph replied to him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **I will do according to your word**
UST I will do what you requested

Alternate translation: [I will do as you requested of me] or [I will do exactly what you asked me to do]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Egypt	Egypt
bury	bury
tomb	burial place

Genesis 47:31

ULT	UST
Then he said, "Swear to me." And he swore to him. Then Israel bowed at the head of the bed.	*But his father insisted, "Vow to me before God that you will do it." So Joseph vowed that he would do it. Then his father Israel bowed down to worship God beside his bed.*

ULT **Then he said**
UST But his father insisted

Consider what is the best way to refer to Joseph's father Israel here in your language. Alternate translation: [But he urged him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Swear to me**
UST Vow to me {before God} that you will do it

See how you translated "swear to me" in Genesis 21:23. Alternate translation: [Vow to me by Yahweh that you will do it] or [With God as your witness, make an oath to me that you will do it]

ULT **And he swore to him**
UST So Joseph vowed that he would do it

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph is the one speaking here. Alternate translation: [So Joseph swore that he would do it] or [So Joseph promised his father with an oath to do what he had requested]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Then Israel bowed**
UST Then {his father} Israel bowed {down} to worship God

If it is not clear in your culture why Israel bowed, you could make that explicit. Alternate translation: [Then Israel bowed down to thank God] or [Then his father Israel bowed his head and thanked God]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **at the head of the bed**
UST beside {his} bed

The Hebrew text has **at the head of the bed** here, while the Septuagint (Greek translation of the Old Testament) has "on the top of his staff" instead, which is quoted in Hebrews 11:21. You could include some of that information in a footnote. The difference between versions may be due to the fact that the Hebrew words for **bed** and "staff" are very similar in spelling. Or it could be that Jacob did both; for example, he may have been sitting at the head of his bed and leaning on his staff when he bowed his head and worshiped God. Alternate translation: [as he sat at the top of his bed] or [as he was lying on his bed]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Swear	Vow
And he swore	vowed
Israel	Israel
bowed	bowed {down

Genesis 48

Genesis 48:1

ULT	UST
Then it happened after those things that someone said to Joseph, "Behold, your father is sick." So he took his two sons with him, Manasseh and Ephraim.	*Some time after those things happened, someone told Joseph, "Listen, your father is sick." So Joseph went to visit his father and took his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim with him.*

ULT **Then it happened after those things**
UST Some time after those things happened

Consider again how you translated these two phrases in the book of Genesis. See 22:1, 20; 39:7; 40:1; 48:1.
Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **that {someone} said to Joseph, "Behold, your father is sick**
UST someone told Joseph, "Listen, your father is sick

For some languages it may be more natural to use an indirect quote here. Alternate translation: [Joseph was told by someone that his father was sick]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **So he took his two sons with him, Manasseh and Ephraim**
UST So Joseph {went to visit his father and} took his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim with him

Consider what is the best way to refer to Joseph in this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: [So Joseph took his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim with him to visit his father] or [So he went to visit his father and took his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim with him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Manasseh	Manasseh
Ephraim	Ephraim

Genesis 48:2

ULT	UST
And someone announced to Jacob and said, "Behold, your son Joseph has come to you." Then Israel gathered his strength and sat up on the bed.	*When they got there, someone informed Jacob, "Look, your son Joseph has come to visit you." Immediately Israel exerted himself and sat up at the head of his bed and they greeted each other.*

ULT **And {someone} announced to Jacob and said, "Behold, your son Joseph has come to you**

UST When they got there, someone informed Jacob, "Look, your son Joseph has come to visit you

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **Then Israel gathered his strength**

UST Immediately Israel exerted himself

Consider whether you language has a similar idiom that fits well here. Also, make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that **Israel** (verses 2, 8, 11, 13–14, 21) and **Jacob** (verses 2–3) refer to the same person, not two different people. Alternate translation: [Then Israel rallied his strength] or [Immediately Israel, who was lying down, used all his strength]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and sat up on the bed**

UST and sat up at {the head of} {his} bed and they greeted each other

The context (verse 12) shows that Jacob sat on the edge of his bed with his feet resting on the floor and his knees facing Joseph's sons. Also, for some languages it may be necessary (for politeness) to make it explicit that they greeted each other first before continuing their conversation. Alternate translation: [and sat up on the edge of his bed and they greeted each other]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And {someone} announced	When they got there, someone informed
Jacob	Jacob
Joseph	Joseph
Israel	Israel

Genesis 48:3

ULT	UST
Then Jacob said to Joseph, "God Almighty appeared to me at Luz in the land of Canaan, and he blessed me	*Then Jacob told Joseph, "God who is all-powerful appeared to me long ago in the region of Canaan at the town of Luz. He blessed me there*

ULT **Then Jacob said to Joseph**
UST Then Jacob told Joseph

Alternate translation: [Then Jacob recounted to Joseph the following:]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **appeared to me**
UST appeared to me long ago

Consider again how you translated **appear** in the book of Genesis. See 8:5; 12:7; 17:1; 18:1; 26:2, 24; 35:1, 9; 46:29; 48:3. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [came to me in a vision long ago]

ULT **at Luz in the land of Canaan**
UST in the region of Canaan at {the town of} Luz

For some languages it is more natural to put the larger place (Canaan) first before the smaller place (Luz) that is located inside it. It may also be more natural to put the time and place phrases first in this verse and say, "Long ago when I was at the town of Luz in the land/region of Canaan, God Almighty …" Also see how you spelled the name **Luz** in Genesis 28:19 and 35:6. Alternate translation: [when I was at the town of Luz in the land of Canaan] or [in the land of Canaan at the town of Luz]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **God Almighty**
UST God {who is} all-powerful

Consider again how you translated **God Almighty** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 17:1, 28:3, 35:11, and 43:14. Alternate translation: [Almighty God]

ULT **and he blessed me**
UST He blessed me there

For some languages it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: [He pronounced a blessing over me there]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
Joseph	Joseph
God	God
Almighty	who is all-powerful
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
blessed	blessed

Genesis 48:4

ULT	UST
and said to me, ‘Behold, I am making you fruitful, and I will multiply you and make you into an assembly of peoples. And I will give this land to your offspring after you as an everlasting possession.’	*by saying to me, ‘Listen, I will give you many descendants who will increase in number and become a community of peoples. I will also give this land to your descendants to own forever.’”*

ULT **and said to me**
UST by saying to me

The term **said** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this term explicitly. Make sure your translation of “blessed … and said” (verses 3–4) refers to the same event, not two separate events. Alternate translation: [He said]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold, I am making you fruitful, and I will multiply you and make you**
UST Listen, I will give you many descendants who will increase {in number} and become

See how you translated “make you fruitful and multiply you” in Genesis 28:3 and “make him fruitful and … multiply him” in Genesis 17:20. Alternate translation: [Look I will give you many descendants who will increase in number and become] or [Look I will give you and your descendants many children so that your descendants will become]

ULT **into an assembly of peoples**
UST a community of peoples

See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 28:3, and a similar phrase **a community of nations** in 35:11. Alternate translation: [many ethnic groups]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fruitful	I will give you many descendants
multiply	who will increase in number
assembly	community
land	land
to your offspring	to your descendants
everlasting	forever
possession	to own

Genesis 48:5

ULT	UST
And now, your two sons, who were born for you in the land of Egypt before I came to you in Egypt, they are mine, Ephraim and Manasseh, just as Reuben and Simeon are mine.	*Then Jacob said to Joseph, "Now then, your two sons Ephraim and Manasseh, who were born to you here in the country of Egypt before I joined you here, I will treat as my sons, just like my sons Reuben and Simeon.*

ULT **And now, your two sons**
UST Then Jacob said to Joseph, "Now then, your two sons

The phrase **And now** shows that there is a change of topic. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob is no longer quoting God's words in verse 5.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **in the land of Egypt**
UST here in the country of Egypt

Alternate translation: [here in the land of Egypt]

ULT **before I came to you in Egypt**
UST before I joined you here

Alternate translation: [before I arrived]

ULT **they {are} mine, Ephraim and Manasseh**
UST Ephraim and Manasseh … I will treat as my sons

Alternate translation: [Ephraim and Manasseh, they now belong to me] or [Ephraim and Manasseh, will be my sons]

ULT **just as Reuben and Simeon are mine**
UST just like my sons Reuben and Simeon

For some languages it may be clearer and more natural to put the names of these sons earlier in the verse and say, "Now then, your two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, who were born to you here in the country of Egypt before I joined you here, I will treat as my sons, just as/like …"
Alternate translation: [just as Reuben and Simeon are my sons] or [just as my sons Reuben and Simeon]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
who were born	who were born
land	here in the country of
Egypt	Egypt
Egypt	here
Ephraim	Ephraim
Manasseh	Manasseh
Reuben	Reuben
Simeon	Simeon

Genesis 48:6

ULT	UST
But your children whom you father after them will be yours. They will be called by the name of their brothers in their inheritance.	*If you have any more children, they will be yours, so that what they inherit from me will be some of what their brothers Ephraim and Manasseh inherit from me.*

ULT **But your children whom you father after them will be yours**
UST If you have any more children, they will be yours

Alternate translation: [But any other children that you have later on will be yours] or [If you father any other children, they will belong to you]

ULT **They will be called by the name of their brothers in their inheritance**
UST so that what they inherit {from me} will be some of what their brothers {Ephraim and Manasseh} inherit from me

Alternate translation: [So they will share in some of what their brothers inherit from me]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called	so that … will be some of what their brothers {Ephraim and Manasseh} inherit from me
inheritance	inherit

Genesis 48:7

ULT	UST
And I, as I was coming from Paddan, Rachel died beside me in the land of Canaan on the way, while there was still a distance of land to go to Ephrath. And I buried her there beside the road of Ephrath, which is Bethlehem."	*I am doing this because as our family was returning home from the region of Paddan Aram, your mother Rachel died beside me in the region of Canaan while we were still traveling and some distance away from the town of Ephrath. As you know, I buried her body there by the road that goes to Ephrath, which now has the name Bethlehem."*

ULT **And I**
UST I am doing this because

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture. Jacob is probably explaining in that since his favorite wife Rachel died with only two sons, that is why he is treating her son Joseph's two sons as his own sons (verses 5–6). Alternate translation: [I want it this way because]

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **as I was coming**
UST as our family was returning home

Jacob is in focus here, but he was traveling with his family, not alone. Decide whether or not it is necessary to make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [as I and our family were coming home] or [as our family was coming home]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **from Paddan**
UST from {the region of} Paddan Aram

Consider again how you translated "the land/region of Paddan Aram" in the book of Genesis. See 25:20 (and note); 28:2, 5–7; 31:18; 33:18; 35:9, 26; 46:15; 48:7. Also, be consistent with how you spelled "Aram" in those verses and in Genesis 10:22–23; 22:21; 24:10. Alternate translation: [from the land of Paddan Aram]

ULT **Rachel**
UST your mother Rachel

Alternate translation: [my beloved wife Rachel]

ULT **died beside me**
UST died beside me

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here because the preposition can have different meanings. It could mean: (1) **died beside me** or "died by my side"; or (2) "died, bringing sorrow/grief on/to me"

ULT **on the way, while {there was} still a distance of land to go to Ephrath**
UST while we were still traveling and some distance away from {the town of} Ephrath

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Ephrath** in Genesis 35:16, 19, and how you spelled **Bethlehem** in 35:19.

ULT **which {is} Bethlehem**
UST which {now has the name} Bethlehem

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. This phrase might be: (1) Jacob's words; or (2) the author's words. If you follow the second interpretation, you could put this phrase within parentheses, outside of the quote marks.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
from Paddan	Paddan Aram
Rachel	Rachel
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
land	and some distance away from
Ephrath	Ephrath
buried	buried
Ephrath	Ephrath
Bethlehem	Bethlehem

Genesis 48:8

ULT	UST
Then Israel saw the sons of Joseph and said, "Who are these?"	*Then Israel noticed Joseph's two sons and asked him, "Who are these young men?"*

ULT **and said**
UST and asked him

Alternate translation: [and asked Joseph]

ULT **Who {are} these**
UST Who {are} these young men

Joseph's two sons were in their 20s at this time, so refer to them here with a term that fits with that fact. They were born before the famine started (Genesis 41:50–52), and Jacob had now been in Egypt for 17 years (47:28). Alternate translation: [Whose sons are these?]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 48:9

ULT	UST
And Joseph said to his father, "They are my sons whom God has given to me in this place." Then he said, "Please bring them to me, and I will bless them."	*Joseph answered him, "These are my sons whom God gave to me here in Egypt." Then Israel said to Joseph, "Please bring them closer to me so that I can ask God to bless them."*

ULT **And Joseph said to his father**
UST Joseph answered him

Alternate translation: [Joseph said to him] or [Joseph replied]

ULT **They {are} my sons whom God has given to me**
UST These {are} my sons whom God gave to me

Alternate translation: [They are my sons whom God gave to me]

ULT **Then he said**
UST Then Israel said to Joseph

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking here. Alternate translation: [Then Israel said to him]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Please bring them to me**
UST Please bring them {closer} to me

Some languages have a dual pronoun that works well to refer to Joseph's two sons here (and throughout chapter 48).
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

ULT **and I will bless them**
UST so that I can {ask God to} bless them

Alternate translation: [so that I can ask God to prosper them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
God	God
bless	bless

Genesis 48:10

ULT	UST
Now the eyes of Israel were heavy from age, so that he was not able to see. So he brought them near to him, and he kissed them and embraced them.	*Now Israel was almost blind because of old age, so that he could not see very clearly. So Joseph took his sons closer to his father, and his father kissed them on the cheeks and hugged them.*

ULT **Now the eyes of Israel were heavy**
UST Now Israel was almost blind

Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to use a conjunction (**Now**) to begin this clause that gives background information about Israel. Also, the word **heavy** is used here as an idiom that means Israel's eyesight was getting bad, but he could still see some (as indicated in verses 8 and 11). Many languages have a similar idiom. A translation of verse 10 should not imply that Israel was completely blind. Alternate translation: [Israel had very bad eyesight]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **from age**
UST because of old age

Alternate translation: [because he was very old]

ULT **so that he was not able to see**
UST so that he could not see very clearly

For some languages it is more natural to switch the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "Now Israel was very old, so his eyesight was failing and he was not able to see very well." Alternate translation: [so that he could not see very well]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **So he brought them near to him**
UST So Joseph took his sons {closer} to his father

Make sure it is clear in your translation whom is being referred to at each point in this sentence. Alternate translation: [So Joseph brought his sons near to his father] or [So he had his sons stand near to his father]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and he kissed them**
UST and his father kissed them on the cheeks

It may be helpful to read this sentence aloud in your translation to make sure the use of nouns and pronouns is natural and accurate in your language. Alternate translation: [and Israel kissed them on the cheeks] or [and his father kissed …]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **and embraced them**
> UST and hugged them

Consider again how you translated the word **embraced** in the book of Genesis. See 29:13; 33:4; 48:10. Also compare that to how you translated an idiom ("fell on … neck") that has a similar meaning in Genesis 33:4; 45:14, 46:29. It may be necessary to translate these terms in different ways, depending on the context.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
kissed	kissed

Genesis 48:11

ULT	UST
Then Israel said to Joseph, "I did not expect to see your face, but behold, God has let me see also your offspring!"	*Then Israel exclaimed to Joseph, "I never thought I would see you again, but now look, God has even let me meet your children!"*

ULT **I did not expect to see your face**
UST I never thought I would see you again

Alternate translation: [I did not think I would ever see you again]

ULT **but behold**
UST but {now} look

Alternate translation: [but amazingly]

ULT **God has let me see also your offspring**
UST God has even let me meet your children

Alternate translation: [God has allowed me to see even your offspring] or [God has also allowed me to see your offspring]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
Joseph	Joseph
God	God
your offspring	your children

Genesis 48:12

ULT	UST
Then Joseph removed them from beside his knees, and he bowed down with his nose to the ground.	*Then Joseph had his sons move away from beside his father's knees, and he bowed before his father and touched the ground with his forehead to show him respect.*

ULT Then Joseph removed them
UST Then Joseph had his sons move away

Alternate translation: [Then Joseph took his sons away] or [Then Joseph had his sons step away]

ULT from beside his knees
UST from beside his father's knees

Joseph's sons (who were in their 20s) were near Israel's knees, so that he could hug them; they were not sitting on his knees or lap. Also make sure your translation of **his** refers to Joseph's father (Israel/Jacob), not Joseph. Alternate translation: [from near his father]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT and he bowed down
UST and he bowed before his father

Alternate translation: [and he prostrated himself before him]

ULT with his nose to the ground
UST and touched the ground with his forehead to show him respect

Joseph bowed to the ground to show thankfulness and respect to his father and possibly also to God. If necessary, you could make that information explicit in your translation or put it in a footnote. Alternate translation: [with his face toward the ground in thankfulness and respect]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
bowed down	bowed
to the ground	and touched the ground with his forehead to show him respect

Genesis 48:13

ULT	UST
Then Joseph took both of them, Ephraim on his right toward Israel's left and Manasseh on his left toward Israel's right, and brought them near to him.	*Then he brought his sons close to his father again. He had Ephraim stand in front of Israel's left side, and he had Manasseh stand in front of Israel's right side.*

ULT Then Joseph took
UST Then … He had … stand

Alternate translation: [Then he took]

ULT both of them
UST his sons

Alternate translation: [both of his sons]

ULT Ephraim on his right
UST Ephraim

Alternate translation: [with Ephraim at his right hand]

ULT and Manasseh on his left
UST and he had Manasseh stand

Alternate translation: [and with Manasseh at his left hand]

ULT and brought {them} near to him
UST he brought … close to his father again

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "Then he took/brought his sons close to his father again. He had Ephraim stand in front of Israel's left hand/side, and he had Manasseh stand in front of Israel's right hand/side."
Alternate translation: [and he took them close to his father again]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	יוֹסֵף׃
Ephraim	Ephraim
Israel	Israel
Manasseh	Manasseh
Israel	Israel

Genesis 48:14

ULT	UST
But Israel extended his right hand and placed it on the head of Ephraim, and he was the younger, and he placed his left hand on the head of Manasseh. He guided his hands, because Manasseh was the firstborn.	*But Israel intentionally reached out his right hand and put it on Ephraim's head, even though Ephraim was Joseph's younger son. Then he crossed his arms and put his left hand on Manasseh's head, even though Manasseh was Joseph's oldest son.*

ULT **and {he placed} his left hand on the head of Manasseh. He guided his hands**

UST Then he crossed his arms and {put} his left hand on Manasseh's head

In the Hebrew culture, the right side was the place of highest honor and using the right hand to bless someone was symbolic of giving greater honor to that person. The oldest son was also the one who normally received the greater blessing. Israel reverses that here and gives Joseph's younger son the greater blessing. It may be important to include a footnote in your translation that gives this information.

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **because**

UST even though

Make sure that the way you translate **because** fits with the fact that Israel wanted to place his right hand on Ephraim (to give him the greater blessing), even though Manasseh was the firstborn (who would normally receive the greater blessing in that culture). Alternate translation: [in spite of the fact that]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
Ephraim	Ephraim
Manasseh	Manasseh
Manasseh	Manasseh
firstborn	was {Joseph's} oldest son

Genesis 48:15

ULT	UST
Then he blessed Joseph and said, "May the God whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked before, the God who has been shepherding me from since I was born until this day,	*Then Israel blessed Joseph and his sons by saying, "I pray that the God whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac served will bless your sons. He is the God who has taken care of me my entire life.*

ULT **Then he blessed Joseph and said**
UST Then Israel blessed Joseph {and his sons} by saying

By **he blessed Joseph**, the author means Israel blessed Joseph by blessing Joseph's sons (verses 15–16, 19–20). You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Then Israel blessed Joseph by blessing his sons and saying]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **May the God**
UST I pray that the God … will bless your sons

Jacob is asking God to bless the his son Joseph. In your translation, use a form that people would recognize as a blessing in your language. You might express this as a prayer if that would be more natural in your language. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to break up the long sentence in verses 15–16 into shorter sentences. Alternate translation: [May God bless your sons, the God] or [I ask God to bless your sons. He is the God]
Support Reference: Blessings

ULT **whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac**
UST whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac

Alternate translation: [whom my forefathers Abraham and Isaac]

ULT **walked before**
UST served

See how you translated the idiom "walk/live before" in Genesis 17:1 and 24:40. You may need to translate it differently in different contexts. Alternate translation: [walked with according to his will] or [lived obediently in the presence of] or [obeyed]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the God who has been shepherding me**
UST He is the God who has taken care of me

The word **shepherding** includes guiding, protecting, and providing food and water, such as a shepherd would do for his sheep. Here it is used as a image that refers to God's complete care of Israel throughout his life. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to use a similar image here. Alternate translation: [the same God who has watched over me]
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **from since I {was born} until this day**
> UST my entire life

Alternate translation: [from the beginning of my life until the present day]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blessed	blessed
Joseph	Joseph
God	God
Abraham	Abraham
Isaac	Isaac
God	God
shepherding	who has taken care of
day	my entire life

Genesis 48:16

ULT	UST
the Angel who has redeemed me from all evil, may he bless these boys, and may my name be called in them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac, and may they grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth."	*He is also the Angel who saved me continually from every harm. I pray that he will cause these young men to prosper greatly, so that my family line and the family line of my ancestors Abraham and Isaac will continue through them and so that they will have many descendants on the earth."*

ULT **may he bless {these} boys**

UST I pray that he will cause {these} young men to prosper greatly

Since Joseph's sons were probably in their 20s, make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like they were little **boys**. The Hebrew word for "boy" here can also be translated as "lad," "servant," or "young man," depending on the context and who is speaking to whom. With that in mind, consider again how you translated this word in the book of Genesis. See 14:24; 18:7; 19:4; 21:12, 17–20; 22:3, 5, 12, 19; 25:27; 34:19; 37:2; 41:12; 43:8; 44:22, 30–34; 48:16. Alternate translation: [I ask that he will cause these young men to prosper greatly]

ULT **and may my name be called in them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac, and may they grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth**

UST so that my family line and the family line of my ancestors Abraham and Isaac will continue through them and so that they will have many descendants on the earth

Alternate translation: [so that my family name and the family name of my ancestors Abraham and Isaac will continue through them and so that they will have many descendants on the earth] or [I pray that they will have many descendants on the earth who will carry on the family name for me and for my forefathers Abraham and Isaac]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Angel	Angel
redeemed	who saved … continually
evil	harm
bless	I pray that he will cause … to prosper greatly
called	so that … will continue
Abraham	Abraham
Isaac	Isaac
earth	earth

Genesis 48:17

ULT	UST
And Joseph saw that his father had placed his right hand on the head of Ephraim, and it was displeasing in his eyes, so he took hold of the hand of his father to move it from the head of Ephraim to the head of Manasseh.	*When Joseph noticed that his father had put his right hand on Ephraim's head, he thought it was a mistake. So he took hold of his father's hand in order to move it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head.*

ULT **And Joseph saw that his father had placed his right hand on the head of Ephraim**
UST When Joseph noticed that his father had put his right hand on Ephraim's head

See how you translated **placed** in verse 14.

ULT **and it was displeasing in his eyes**
UST he thought it was a mistake

Alternate translation: [it displeased him] or [he was unhappy about it]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Ephraim	Ephraim
and it was displeasing	he thought it was a mistake
Ephraim	Ephraim
Manasseh	Manasseh

Genesis 48:18

ULT	UST
And Joseph said to his father, "Not so, my father, because that one is the firstborn son. Put your right hand on his head."	*Then he said to his father, "That is the wrong son, Father. The other one is my oldest son. So you need to have your right hand on his head."*

ULT **Not so, my father, because that {one} {is} the firstborn son**
UST That is the wrong son, Father. The other {one} {is} {my} oldest son

Alternate translation: [Not like that, Father. It is the other son who is my firstborn] or [That is the wrong one Father. The other one is my oldest son]

ULT **Put your right hand on his head**
UST So {you need to} have your right hand on his head

Alternate translation: [So you need to put your right hand on his head]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	יוֹסֵף
firstborn	my oldest son

Genesis 48:19

ULT	UST
But his father refused and said, "I know, my son, I know. He will also become a people, and he will also be great. Nevertheless his younger brother will be greater than he, and his offspring will become a multitude of nations."	*But his father would not move his hands and replied, "I know it, my son, I know what I am doing. In fact, your oldest son will also be a great man, and he will become the ancestor of a people group. However, his younger brother will be even greater than he will be, and his younger brother's descendants will become many people groups."*

ULT **But his father refused**
UST But his father would not move his hands

Alternate translation: [But his father refused to move his hands]

ULT **I know, my son, I know**
UST I know {it}, my son, I know what I am doing

Alternate translation: [I know it my son, I know what I am doing] or [I know what I am doing, my son]

ULT **He will also become a people, and he will also be great**
UST In fact, your oldest son will also be a great man, and he will become {the ancestor of} a people group

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Joseph's firstborn in these two clauses. Alternate translation: [In fact, the descendants of your firstborn son will also become a ethnic group, and he will be a great man] or [In fact, your firstborn son will also be a important man, and he will be the ancestor of a people group]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Nevertheless his younger brother will be greater than he**
UST However, his younger brother will be {even} greater than he will be

Alternate translation: [However, his younger brother Ephraim will be even greater than he will be]

ULT **and his offspring**
UST and his {younger} brother's descendants

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Ephraim's descendants, not Manasseh's. Alternate translation: [with many descendants, who]

ULT **will become a multitude of nations**
UST will become many people groups

Compare how you translated a similar phrase **a community of peoples** in verse 4. Alternate translation: [will become many ethnic groups]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
know	know
and his offspring	and his {younger} brother’s descendants
nations	people groups

Genesis 48:20

ULT	UST
And he blessed them on that day, saying, "By you Israel will bless people, saying, 'May God make you like Ephraim and like Manasseh.'" So he put Ephraim before Manasseh.	*So Israel blessed Ephraim and Manasseh that day by saying to them, "The people of Israel will use your names when they bless people and say, 'May God prosper you like he prospered Ephraim and Manasseh.'" In that way, Israel made Ephraim greater than Manasseh.*

ULT **saying**
UST by saying to them

Alternate translation: [and said]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **By you Israel will bless people**
UST The people of Israel will use your names when they bless people

Alternate translation: [When the people of Israel say a blessing over someone, they will use your names]

ULT **May God make you**
UST May God prosper you

Alternate translation: [May God bless you] or [We ask God to make you great]

ULT **like Ephraim and like Manasseh**
UST like {he prospered} Ephraim and Manasseh

Alternate translation: [like he blessed Ephraim and Manasseh]

ULT **So he put Ephraim before Manasseh**
UST In that way, Israel made Ephraim greater than Manasseh

Alternate translation: [When he said that, he put Ephraim ahead of Manasseh] or [In that way, he made Ephraim greater than Manasseh]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blessed	blessed
day	day
Israel	Israel
bless	bless
God	God
Ephraim	Ephraim
Manasseh	Manasseh
Ephraim	Ephraim
Manasseh	Manasseh

Genesis 48:21

ULT	UST
Then Israel said to Joseph, "Behold, I am dying, and God will be with you, and he will bring you back to the land of your fathers.	*After that, Israel turned to Joseph and said to him, "As you can see, I am about to die, but God will always be with you and your brothers and all your descendants to help you. He will also take you back to the land that he gave to your ancestors.*

ULT **Then Israel said to Joseph**
UST After that, Israel {turned} to Joseph {and} said to him

Alternate translation: [Next Israel spoke to Joseph. He said]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Behold**
UST As you can see

Alternate translation: [Look]

ULT **I am dying**
UST I am about to die

Alternate translation: [I will die soon]

ULT **and God will be with you**
UST but God will {always} be with you and your brothers {and all your descendants} to help you

The pronouns **you** and **your** are plural throughout this verse and probably refer to all Israel's family, including Joseph, his brothers, and their descendants. Alternate translation: [but God will always stay with all of you and help you] or [but God will always stay with you and your brothers and all your descendants and help you]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and he will bring you back**
UST He will also take you back

Alternate translation: [He will also bring you back]

ULT **to the land of your fathers**
UST to the land that {he gave} to your ancestors

Alternate translation: [to the land that he gave to your forefathers]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	Israel
Joseph	Joseph
God	God
land	land

Genesis 48:22

ULT	UST
And I give you Shechem, one portion above your brothers, which I took from the hand of the Amorites with my sword and with my bow."	*Besides that, as part of your inheritance from me, I hereby give you the city of Shechem, which I captured from the Amorites when I defeated them in battle. This is more land than I am giving to your brothers."*

ULT **And I give you**
UST Besides that, {as part of your inheritance from me,} I {hereby} give you

The pronouns **you** and **your** shift to singular in verse 22, so use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction. Alternate translation: [And I bequeath to you as part of your inheritance]
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **Shechem**
UST the city of Shechem

Here, **Schechem** could refer to: (1) the city of Shechem. (2) a mountain ridge. This second interpretation comes from the meaning of the Hebrew word "shekem" **shoulder**, which can be used as an image to refer to a mountain slope or ridge.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **one {portion} above your brothers**
UST This is more {land} than I am giving to your brothers

Alternate translation: [which is more land than I am giving to your brothers and]

ULT **which I took from the hand of**
UST which I captured from

Alternate translation: [which I took control of from] or [I took that land from]

ULT **the Amorite{s} with my sword and with my bow**
UST the Amorite{s} when I defeated them in battle

For some languages it may be clearer to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, "Besides that, I hereby give you the city of Shechem, which I took/captured from the Amorites when I defeated them in battle. This is more land than I am giving to your brothers." Also consider again how you translated **Amorites** in the book of Genesis. See 10:16; 14:7, 13; 15:16, 21; 48:22. Alternate translation: [the Amorites in battle using my sword and my bow]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Amorites	Amorites
sword	when I defeated them in battle
and with my bow	when I defeated them in battle

Genesis 49

Genesis 49:1

ULT	UST
Then Jacob called for his sons and said, "Gather together, and I will reveal to you what will meet you in the end of days.	*Then Jacob summoned all his sons. He said to them, "Come together here, so that I can tell you what will happen to you and your descendants in the years ahead.*

ULT **Then Jacob called for his sons**
UST Then Jacob summoned {all} his sons

The events in chapter 49 may have occurred on the same day as the events in chapter 48, or not very long after that. Consider again how you translated **called for** in the book of Genesis. See 12:18; 14:14; 20:2, 8–9; 24:57–58; 26:9; 27:1, 42; 28:1; 31:4; 39:14; 41:8, 14; 46:33; 47:29; 49:1.

ULT **Gather together**
UST Come together here

Much of what Jacob says to his sons in verses 1–27 is Hebrew poetry, which is characterized by the use of parallelisms and metaphors to emphasize important points. Many translations put these verses in poetry format (starting here); many others use regular paragraph formatting. For a complete list of verses that some translations treat as poetry in the book of Genesis, see the introduction to the book. Alternate translation: [Gather yourselves together before me]
Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **and I will reveal to you**
UST so that I can tell you

Alternate translation: [and I will declare to you] or [so that I can inform you]

ULT **what will meet you**
UST what will happen to you and your descendants

Much of what Jacob prophesies in this chapter about his sons also applies to their descendants. Some translation teams may prefer to put that information in a footnote rather than make it explicit in the text. Also see how you translated **meet** in Genesis 42:4, 38.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in the end of days**
UST in the years ahead

In this context, this phrase refers to a period of years in the future. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [in the days ahead] or [in future days]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob
called	Then Jacob summoned
Gather	Come together here
and I will reveal	tell
days	in the years ahead

Genesis 49:2

ULT	UST
Assemble and listen, sons of Jacob, and listen to Israel your father.	*My sons, gather around me, your father Jacob, and listen to me. I, your father Israel, have something important to tell you.*

ULT **Assemble and listen, sons of Jacob**

UST My sons, gather around {me,} {your father} Jacob, and listen to me

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this verse that Jacob is talking to his own sons and is referring to himself as both Jacob and as Israel. Also, for some languages it is more natural to put the address **sons of Jacob** first in verse 2, or even first in the quote (which begins in verse 1).

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and listen to Israel your father**

UST I, your father Israel, have something {important} to tell you

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause to emphasize that Jacob wants his sons to listen to him carefully. Try to keep both halves of this parallelism in your translation, since each half has a slightly different focus. Alternate translation: [Pay attention to me, your father Israel]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Assemble	gather
Jacob	Jacob
Israel	Israel

Genesis 49:3

ULT	UST
Reuben, you are my firstborn, my might and the first of my strength, excelling in rank and excelling in power.	*Reuben, you are my oldest son, the result of my strength and the first child I had as a young man. You had high status and great authority in our family.*

ULT **Reuben, you {are} my firstborn**
UST Reuben, you {are} my oldest son

Consider again how you translated **firstborn** in the book of Genesis. See 4:4; 10:15; 19:31, 33–34, 37; 22:21; 25:13, 27; 27:19, 32; 29:26; 35:23; 36:15; 38:6–7; 41:51; 43:33; 46:8, 14; 48:18; 49:3. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context.

ULT **my might and the first of my strength**
UST the result of my strength and the first child I had as a young man

This phrase is used here as a euphemistic idiom that refers to Jacob's ability to have children. Other languages may have a similar idiom. Translate this in a way that will not embarrass or offend listeners. Alternate translation: [the result of my fertility, and the first child I had as a young man] or [You are the first sign of my manhood and strength]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **excelling {in} rank and excelling {in} power**
UST You had high status and great authority in our family

Alternate translation: [You had higher honor and authority than all your brothers]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Reuben	Reuben
firstborn	my oldest son
in power	and great authority in our family

Genesis 49:4

ULT	UST
Turbulent like waters, you will not excel, because you went up onto your father's bed, and you defiled it. He went up onto my couch!	*However, you are unstable like rushing water, so you will no longer have your important status in our family, because you got into my bed with my concubine and dishonored me! You actually climbed into my couch!*

ULT Turbulent
UST However, {you are} unstable

Alternate translation: [However, you are uncontrollable] or [However, you are reckless]

ULT like waters
UST like {rushing} water

Here Jacob compares Reuben's reckless, uncontrolled sexual behavior to turbulent water that is out of control and destructive. Consider whether or not you have a similar comparison in your language that would fit well here. Alternate translation: [like a flood of water]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT you will not excel
UST so you will no longer have your important status in our family

Alternate translation: [so you will no longer have your high position in our family] or [so you will no longer be first among your brothers]

ULT because you went up {onto} your father's bed, and you defiled it
UST because you got {into} my bed {with my concubine} {and} dishonored me

This clause, along with the rest of the verse, is a euphemistic way of referring to Reuben committing adultery by sleeping with his father's concubine (secondary wife) Bilhah (Genesis 35:22). Alternate translation: [because you got into my bed with my wife and dishonored me!] or [because you dishonored me by getting into my bed and committing adultery with my concubine]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT He went up {onto} my couch
UST You {actually} climbed {into} my couch

Here Jacob repeats part of what he said in the previous clause, in order to emphasize Reuben's sin against him and to communicate how upset he is about it. He may have still been talking to Reuben (switching from second to third person), or he may have been exclaiming about Reuben to himself and the rest of his sons.
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
defiled	dishonored me

Genesis 49:5

ULT	UST
Simeon and Levi are brothers. Their swords are weapons of violence.	*Simeon and Levi, you are partners. You use your swords to do violent things together.*

ULT **Simeon and Levi**
UST Simeon and Levi, you

In verses 3–27, Jacob sometimes refers to his sons using second person **you**, and sometimes (as here) he uses third person ("they" or "he"). Consider whether or not it is better in your language to use second person throughout these verses, especially since Jacob is talking to his sons who are right there with him. Also, some languages have dual pronouns that fit well in verses 5–7. Alternate translation: [As for Simeon and Levi, they]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **are brothers**
UST are partners

This phrase is used here as an idiom that emphasizes the fact that Simeon and Levi thought alike and acted together to do evil things. Alternate translation: [are close brothers] or [are partners in crime] or [do evil things together]

ULT **Their swords {are} weapons of violence**
UST You use your swords to do violent things together

Make sure in your translation that the pronouns you use here (and in verses 6–7) fit with the way you translated the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: [They use their weapons to do violent things together]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Simeon	Simeon
Levi	Levi
swords	swords

Genesis 49:6

ULT	UST
Do not let my soul enter into their council! Do not let my glory join in their assembly, because in their anger they killed a man, and for their pleasure they hamstrung an ox.	*I will never participate with you when you plan evil things! I refuse to make evil plans with you, because you became angry and murdered many people, and just to entertain yourselves you crippled some cattle.*

ULT **Do not let my soul enter**
UST I will never participate with you

Here Jacob uses the phrase **my soul** to refer to himself and to emphasize how strongly he feels about what he is saying. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Do not ever let me] or [May I never]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **Do not let … enter into their council**
UST I will never participate with you when you plan {evil} things

In verses 5–7, Jacob is probably referring to the time when Simeon and Levi killed all the males in the city of Shechem out of revenge (Genesis 34:25–26, 30). Jacob was very upset that they did that. Alternate translation: [take part in their evil plans] or [participate with them when you plan evil things!]

ULT **Do not let my glory join in their assembly**
UST I refuse to make {evil} plans with you

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause and emphasizes that Jacob is upset and does not want to participate with these two sons in their evil behavior. Consider what is the best way to translate that in your language. Alternate translation: [Do not let my honor be associated with your evil plans] or [I never want to be linked with their evil plans]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **because in their anger they killed a man**
UST because you became angry and murdered {many} people

The phrase **a man** probably refers collectively here to all the men whom these two sons killed in the city of Shechem (Genesis 34:25–26, 30). Alternate translation: [because you became angry and murdered many men]

ULT **and for their pleasure they hamstrung an ox**
UST and {just} to entertain yourselves you crippled {some} cattle

This may have happened during the time that Simeon and Levi took revenge on the people of Shechem. Alternate translation: [and just to please yourselves, you crippled some oxen so they could not walk] or [and you cut the leg tendons of some oxen just for the fun of it]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
council	when you plan {evil} things
assembly	I refuse to make {evil} plans with you
killed	murdered
and for their pleasure	and {just} to entertain yourselves
ox	cattle

Genesis 49:7

ULT	UST
Cursed be their anger because it is strong, and their fury because it is cruel! I will divide them in Jacob, and I will scatter them in Israel.	*May God curse you for being so fiercely angry and malicious! I ask God to scatter you and your descendants among the descendants of Jacob. That's right, I ask him to scatter you throughout the land of Israel.*

ULT **Cursed {be} their anger because {it is} strong, and their fury because {it is} cruel**
UST May God curse you for being so fiercely angry and malicious

Consider what is the best way to translate this parallelism in your language. Also, consider again how you translated **cursed** in the book of Genesis. See 3:14 (and note), 17; 4:11; 5:29; 8:21; 9:25; 12:3; 27:12–13, 29; 49:7. Alternate translation: [May God curse them for your intense anger and your malicious fury!] or [I ask God to punish them for being so intensely angry and malicious!]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **I will divide them**
UST I {ask God to} scatter you and your descendants

The last half of verse 7 specifies how Jacob is asking God to curse Simeon and Levi. Alternate translation: [I ask God to disperse them and their descendants] or [May he cause them and their descendants to be spread out]

ULT **in Jacob**
UST among {the descendants of} Jacob

In this context, the name **Jacob** refers to his family and especially his descendants. Alternate translation: [among the family of Jacob]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and I will scatter them**
UST That's right, I {ask him to} scatter you

The clauses "I will divide …" and "I will scatter …" form a parallelism that emphasizes the way Jacob is asking God to curse Simeon and Levi. If possible, it is best to keep both parts of a parallelism in your translation. Alternate translation: [Yes, I will]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **and I will scatter them**
UST That's right, I {ask him to} scatter you

Consider again how you translated **scatter** in the book of Genesis. See 10:18, 32; 11:4, 8–9; 49:7. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. If the pronoun "you" is used here in your translation, it should be plural. Alternate translation: [disperse you] or [cause them to be spread out]

> ULT **in Israel**
> UST throughout {the land of} Israel

Jacob's prophecy in verse 7 came true many years later: the tribe of Simeon was absorbed by the tribe of Judah (Joshua 19:1), and the tribe of Levi never had its own territory, but rather lived in cities scattered throughout the other tribes of Israel (Joshua 21:1–42). You could put this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [throughout the descendants of Israel]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Cursed	curse
it is strong	you for being so fiercely angry and malicious
fury	you for being so fiercely angry and malicious
Jacob	Jacob
scatter	scatter
Israel	Israel

Genesis 49:8

ULT	UST
Judah, it is you your brothers will praise. Your hand will be on the neck of those opposing you. The sons of your father will bow down to you.	*Judah, your brothers and their descendants will highly praise you and your descendants. You will conquer your enemies. Then my other sons will prostrate themselves before you and your descendants in respect.*

ULT **Judah, {it is} you your brothers will praise**
UST Judah, your brothers {and their descendants} will {highly} praise you and your descendants

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic, and it has an emphatic position in the sentence. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: [Judah, you are the one whom your brothers will praise] or [Judah, you and your descendants will be highly praised by your brothers and their descendants]

ULT **Your hand {will be} on the neck of**
UST You will conquer

Consider what is the best way to translate this Hebrew idiom in your language. Also, if your translation includes Judah's descendants in the previous sentence, make sure that the pronouns **your** and **you** are plural in this sentence. Alternate translation: [You will be victorious over] or [You will defeat]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **those opposing you**
UST your enemies

Alternate translation: [those who are against you] or [your adversaries]

ULT **The sons of your father**
UST Then my {other} sons

Make sure that your translation of **your father** refers to Jacob. Alternate translation: [Your brothers]
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **will bow down to you**
UST will prostrate themselves before you {and your descendants} in respect

Consider again how you translated **bow down** in the book of Genesis. See 18:2; 19:1; 22:5; 23:7, 12; 24:26, 48, 52; 27:29; 33:3, 6–7; 37:7, 9–10; 42:6; 43:26, 28; 47:31; 48:12; 49:8. Also see how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 17:3, 17. Alternate translation: [and their descendants will bow themselves before you and your descendants in submission]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	will {highly} praise
praise	Judah
those opposing you	enemies
bow down	will prostrate themselves

Genesis 49:9

ULT	UST
Judah is the cub of a lion. From the prey, my son, you have gone up. He crouches and lies down like a lion. And like a lioness, who will rouse him?	*Judah, my son, you are powerful like a young lion that has returned to its den after killing its prey. It stretches out and lies down to sleep. No one dares to disturb that lion.*

ULT **Judah {is} the cub of a lion. From the prey, my son, you have gone up**
UST Judah, my son, {you are} {powerful} {like} a young lion that has returned {to its den} after {killing} {its} prey

Alternate translation: [Judah, you, my son, are like a powerful young lion that kills its prey and returns to its den]
Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

ULT **He crouches {and} lies down like a lion**
UST It stretches out {and} lies down to sleep

Here in verse 9 Jacob switches to using third person references **he, his, him** for Judah. For some languages it is better to use second person references **you, your** throughout verses 8–12. Alternate translation: [You are like a lion that stretches out and lies down to rest after eating]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **And like a lioness, who will rouse him**
UST No one dares to disturb that lion

This sentence forms a parallelism with the previous sentence to emphasize Judah's authority. Also, Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize the respect that people will have for Judah. Some languages must use a statement here instead. Alternate translation: [Yes, you are like a lion that no one dares to awaken] or [No one dares to disrespect that lion]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	Judah
lion	lion
prey	prey
lion	כְּאַרְיֵה
lioness	lion

Genesis 49:10

ULT	UST
The scepter will not depart from Judah, nor the staff from between his feet, until Shiloh comes and to him belongs the obedience of the peoples.	*Judah, there will always be one of your descendants ruling as king. In fact, your descendants will rule until the highest king comes and the peoples of the earth obey him.*

ULT The scepter will not depart from Judah
UST Judah, there will always be one of your descendants ruling as king

A scepter, or a king's staff, is a special, decorated rod that a king holds to symbolize his authority to rule the people who are under him. Alternate translation: [Judah, the authority to rule will always belong to you and your descendants]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT nor the staff from between his feet
UST In fact, your descendants will rule

This phrase forms a parallelism with the previous clause and emphasizes the authority that Judah and his descendants will have.
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT until Shiloh comes
UST until the {highest} king comes

Jacob is probably prophesying here about the coming of the Messiah/Christ. This fits with the fact that Jesus was a descendant of the tribe of Judah and is now ruling as the true King over heaven and earth. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [until the highest king arrives] or [until the One whom the scepter belongs to comes]

ULT and to him {belongs} the obedience of the peoples
UST and the peoples {of the earth} obey him

Alternate translation: [and the nations of the earth obey him] or [and all people obey him] or [All people will obey him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
scepter	Judah, there will always be one of your descendants ruling as king
Judah	Judah
Shiloh	the {highest} king

Genesis 49:11

ULT	UST
He will tether his donkey to the grapevine, and the son of his donkey to the choice branch. He will wash his garments in wine and his robes in the blood of grapes.	*You and your descendants will be so wealthy that you could tie your donkeys to your grapevines to eat the valuable fruit. It will not matter if your donkeys' colts eat your best grapevine branches. You will still have so much wine from other vines that you could even use it like water to wash your clothes.*

ULT **He will tether**

UST You {and your descendants} will {be so wealthy that you could} tie

In verse 11, the pronouns "he" and **his** refer to Judah and his descendants. To make that clear, you could make that explicit here and then use plural pronouns "they" and "their" throughout the verse. Or if you are using the second person throughout this section, you could say, "You and your descendants …" and use plural pronouns "you" and "your" after that. Alternate translation: [Judah and his descendants]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **He will tether his donkey to the {grape}vine**

UST You {and your descendants} will {be so wealthy that you could} tie your donkey{s} to {your} {grape}vine{s} to eat the valuable fruit

The author assumes that readers will know that in Jacob's culture grapevines were valuable plants. Unless a person was very rich, he would never tether a donkey to his grapevines, because the donkey would eat the valuable fruit and the vines. If necessary, you could make some of that information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [He will be so rich that he will tie his donkey to his grapevines and let it eat the valuable fruit]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the son of his donkey to the choice branch**

UST It will not matter if your donkeys' colts eat {your} best {grapevine} branches

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous one to emphasize how wealthy Judah and his descendants will be.

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **He will wash his garment{s} in wine and his robe{s} in the blood of grapes**

UST You will still have so much wine from other vines that you could {even} use it like water to wash your clothes

This sentence is another parallelism that emphasizes how wealthy Judah and his descendants will be. The phrase **blood of grapes** is an idiom that refers to red wine made from the juice of grapes. Alternate translation: [They will still have so much wine from other vines that you could even use the wine like water to wash your robes and other clothes]

Support Reference: Parallelism

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
He will tether	You {and your descendants} will {be so wealthy that you could} tie
donkey	donkeys
vine	vine
donkey	It will not matter if your donkeys' colts
and … to the choice branch	eat {your} best {grapevine} branches
wine	wine
grapes	You will still have so much wine from other vines that you could {even} use it like water to wash your clothes

Genesis 49:12

ULT	UST
His eyes will be brilliant from wine, and his teeth will be white from milk.	*Your eyes will be bright from drinking abundant wine, and your teeth will be white from drinking abundant milk.*

ULT **His eyes**
UST Your eyes

Alternate translation: [Their eyes] or [You will be so blessed that your eyes]

ULT **will be brilliant from wine**
UST will be bright from {drinking} {abundant} wine

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “will be bright from drinking abundant wine,” or (2) “will be darker than wine,” In both interpretations the emphasis is that Judah’s descendants will be blessed with an abundance of the best foods, including wine and milk, which are examples of the most valuable foods that were produced in the land.

ULT **and {his} teeth {will be} white from milk**
UST and {your} teeth {will be} white from {drinking} {abundant} milk

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “and their/your teeth will be white from drinking abundant milk.” or (2) “and their/your teeth will be whiter than milk.” Make sure that the way you translate this phrase fits with the interpretation you used for the first part of this verse.

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wine	wine

Genesis 49:13

ULT	UST
Zebulun will settle at the shore of the sea, and he will live at the shore of ships, and his border will reach to Sidon.	*Zebulun, you and your descendants will live near the coast, where there will be a safe harbor for ships. Your territory will extend as far north as the city of Sidon.*

ULT Zebulun
UST Zebulun, {you} and your descendants

Throughout this chapter, decide whether it is best in your language to use third person or second person when Jacob refers to each of his sons (and their descendants). Alternate translation: [As for Zebulun, he and his descendants]

ULT will settle at the shore of the sea
UST will live near the coast

Alternate translation: [will live at the coast]

ULT and he {will live} at the shore of ships
UST where there will be a {safe} harbor for ships

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause to emphasize where Zebulun and his descendants will live. Alternate translation: [yes, they will settle at a harbor for ships] or [where there will be a safe place for ships to load and unload their cargo]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT to Sidon
UST as far {north} as {the city of} Sidon

Alternate translation: [all the way up to the city of Sidon]

ULT and his border will reach
UST Your territory will extend

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [Their territory will extend]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Zebulun	Zebulun
Sidon	Sidon

Genesis 49:14

ULT	UST
Issachar is a strong donkey lying down between two saddlebags.	*Issachar, you and your descendants will be like a sturdy donkey that is resting on the ground between two loads.*

ULT **Issachar**
UST Issachar, {you} and your descendants

Alternate translation: [As for Issachar, he and his descendants]

ULT **is a strong donkey**
UST will be {like} a sturdy donkey

Consider again how you translated **donkey** in the book of Genesis. See 12:16; 16:12; 22:3, 5, 6; 24:35; 30:43; 32:5, 15; 34:28; 36:24; 42:26–27; 43:18, 24; 44:3, 13; 45:23; 47:17; 49:14.
Alternate translation: [will be like a strong donkey]
Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

ULT **lying down**
UST that is resting on the ground

Alternate translation: [lying down resting]

ULT **between two saddlebags**
UST between two loads

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “between two saddlebags/loads.” or (2) “between the two parts of a sheep pen.” Both interpretations imply that the donkey is lying down to rest after it worked hard.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Issachar	Issachar
donkey	donkey

Genesis 49:15

ULT	UST
And he sees his resting place that it is good and the land that it is pleasant. Then he will bend his shoulder to bear the loads, and he will be a forced labor servant.	*You will have a good place to rest, in a land that is pleasant, but you will work hard and carry heavy loads. You will have to work very hard for others as slaves.*

ULT **And he sees {his} resting place that {it is} good and the land that it is pleasant**
UST You will have a good place to rest, in a land that is pleasant

Alternate translation: [They will have a good place to live, in a enjoyable land]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **Then he will bend his shoulder**
UST but you will work hard

Consider what is the best way to translate this Hebrew idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [However, you will also have to exert yourselves] or [But you will work hard]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to bear the loads**
UST and carry heavy loads

Alternate translation: [to carry heavy loads]

ULT **and he will be a forced labor servant**
UST You will have to work {very} hard {for others} as slaves

Alternate translation: [In fact, you will be forced to be slaves] or [They will have to work very hard for others as slaves] or [and people will force you to be their slaves]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
good	good
land	land
it is pleasant	is pleasant
servant	as slaves

Genesis 49:16

ULT	UST
Dan will judge his people as one of the tribes of Israel.	*Dan, you and your descendants will rule your own people and have equal status with the rest of the tribes of Israel.*

ULT **Dan**
UST Dan, you and your descendants

Alternate translation: [As for Dan, he and his descendants]

ULT **will judge his people**
UST will rule your {own} people

Alternate translation: [will govern their own people group]

ULT **as one of the tribes of Israel**
UST and have equal status with {the rest of} the tribes of Israel

Alternate translation: [just as the other tribes of Israel govern their own people]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
judge	will rule
tribes	tribes
Israel	Israel

Genesis 49:17

ULT	UST
Dan will be a snake beside the road, a viper beside the path, that bites the heels of a horse, and its rider falls off backward.	*You will be like a poisonous snake lying beside a road that strikes the feet of its enemy's horse, so that it rears up and the enemy falls off backward to the ground."*

ULT **Dan**
UST You

Be consistent with your choice of third person or second person (singular or plural) references to Dan (and his descendants) throughout verses 16 and 17. Alternate translation: [They]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **will be a snake beside the road, a viper beside the path**
UST will be {like} a poisonous snake {lying} beside a road

Alternate translation: [will be cunning like a poisonous snake lying beside a road]
Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

ULT **and its rider falls off backward**
UST so that {it rears up and} the enemy falls off backward to the ground

Alternate translation: [so that it rears up and the rider falls off backward to the ground] or […is thrown off the horse and defeated]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Dan	You
snake	נָחָשׁ
horse	horse

Genesis 49:18

ULT	UST
I am waiting for your salvation, Yahweh!	*Then Jacob paused and exclaimed, "Yahweh, I am looking expectantly to you to save me!"*

ULT **I am waiting for your salvation, Yahweh**
UST Then Jacob paused and exclaimed, "Yahweh, I am looking expectantly to you to save me

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob is talking to God in verse 18, not Dan any more.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
salvation	save
Yahweh	Yahweh

Genesis 49:19

ULT	UST
As for Gad, raiders will attack him, but he will attack their heels.	*Then he continued, "As for you, Gad, a group of robbers will attack you and your descendants, but you will chase them and defeat them.*

ULT **raider{s} will attack him**
UST a group of robbers will attack you and your descendants

Alternate translation: [a group of robbers will attack him and his descendants] or [you and your descendants will be attacked by enemies]

ULT **but he will attack {their} heels**
UST but you will chase them and defeat them

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to at each point in this sentence.
Alternate translation: [but they will hunt them down and defeat them]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Gad	Gad
raiders	robbers

Genesis 49:20

ULT	UST
From Asher, his bread will be fat, and he will provide king's delicacies.	*Asher, you and your descendants will be wealthy and eat the best food. In fact, you will produce delicious foods that are fit for kings to eat.*

ULT **From Asher, his bread {will be} fat**
UST Asher, {you} {and your descendants} will {be wealthy and} eat the best food

Here the word **bread** refers to food in general and **fat** refers to the best kinds of food. Alternate translation: [Asher and his descendants will produce rich food] or [Asher, you and your descendants will be wealthy and produce the finest food]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **and he will provide king's delicacies**
UST In fact, you will produce delicious foods {that are fit} for kings to eat

Alternate translation: [and he will even supply food that is fancy enough for a king] or [In fact, they will supply fine foods that are fit for kings to eat]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Asher	Asher
bread	you {and your descendants} will {be wealthy and} eat the best food
king	kings

Genesis 49:21

ULT	UST
Naphtali is a doe that is let loose. He gives words of beauty.	*Naphtali, you and your descendants will be swift like a deer that is free to run wherever it wants. You will also speak eloquently.*

ULT Naphtali
UST Naphtali, {you} and your descendants

Alternate translation: [As for Naphtali, he and his descendants]

ULT is a doe
UST will be {swift} {like} a deer

This image pictures a deer that swiftly runs away after being released from captivity. Alternate translation: [will be swift like a doe] or [will be warriors who are swift like a deer]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT that is let loose
UST that is free to run wherever it wants

Alternate translation: [that is set free] or [that has been released to run freely] or [that is free to go wherever it wants]

ULT He gives words of beauty
UST You will {also} speak eloquently

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “He/They/You will also speak eloquently.” or “They/You will also be gifted/excellent speakers/negotiators.” or (2) “and that bears/has beautiful/healthy fawns.” or “He/They/You will have beautiful children.” If you made Naphtali’s descendants explicit at the beginning of this verse, make sure you use a plural pronoun (“they” or “you”) here.
Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Naphtali	Naphtali
doe	deer

Genesis 49:22

ULT	UST
Joseph is the son of a fruit-bearing vine, the son of a fruit-bearing vine beside a spring, whose daughters go up over a wall.	*Joseph, you and your descendants will become very numerous like fruit on a productive tree that is growing next to a stream of water, with branches full of fruit that hang over a nearby wall.*

ULT **Joseph is**
UST Joseph, {you} and your descendants

Alternate translation: [As for Joseph, he and his descendants]

ULT **the son of a fruit-bearing {vine}, the son of a fruit-bearing vine**
UST will become very numerous {like} {fruit on} a productive tree

The same phrase is repeated here to emphasize how prosperous and productive Joseph (and his descendants) will be. Instead of saying the same phrase twice, many translations combine the two phrases and form one clause that communicates the emphasis in a different way. Do what is accurate and natural in your language. Alternate translation: [will be like the branch of a fruitful tree, yes, like a fruitful tree] or [will be very successful and flourish like a fruitful branch of a vine] or [will be very fruitful like the fruit on a fruitful vine]
Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

ULT **beside a spring**
UST that is growing next to a stream of water

Alternate translation: [that is planted next to a spring of water]

ULT **whose daughters go up**
UST with branches {full of fruit} that hang

This phrase probably continues the word picture of the fruitful vine that symbolizes how prosperous and numerous Joseph and his descendants will be. Consider what is the best way to translate this word picture in your language. Alternate translation: [with branches extending] or [with branches full of fruit that extend]
Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

ULT **over a wall**
UST over a {nearby} wall

Alternate translation: [over a surrounding wall]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
a fruit-bearing vine	fruit
spring	a stream of water

Genesis 49:23

ULT	UST
And masters of arrows will attack him and shoot and harass him.	*Enemy warriors will fiercely attack you and your descendants and shoot arrows at you and try to destroy you.*

ULT **And … will attack him**
UST will {fiercely} attack you and your descendants

Be consistent with your choice of third person or second person (singular or plural) references to Joseph (and his descendants) throughout verses 22–26. Alternate translation: [Skillful bowmen will fiercely attack them and their descendants] or [Enemy soldiers will …] or [Your enemies will …]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and shoot**
UST and shoot {arrows} at you

Alternate translation: [and shoot arrows at them]

ULT **and harass him**
UST and try to destroy you

Alternate translation: [and treat them hatefully] or [and try to destroy them]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
masters	Enemy warriors
arrows	Enemy warriors

Genesis 49:24

ULT	UST
But his bow will remain in strength and the arms of his hands will be made limber by the hands of the Mighty One of Jacob, by the name of the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel,	*But the Mighty God whom I worship will keep you strong and help you use your weapons well as you fight back. He takes care of his people the way a shepherd takes care of his sheep. He is like a rock fortress who protects Israel and his descendants.*

ULT **But his bow will remain in strength**
UST But … will keep you strong and help you use your weapons well as you fight back

Make sure that the way you translate **his** in this verse fits with whether you use second or third person (singular or plural) to refer to Joseph (and his descendants) in verses 22–26. Alternate translation: [But as they fight back, you will hold your bows steady] or [… you will use your bows well]

ULT **and the arms of his hands will be made limber**
UST But … will keep you strong and help you use your weapons well as you fight back

Alternate translation: [and their powerful arms will stay agile]

ULT **by the hands of the Mighty {One} of Jacob**
UST the Mighty {God} whom I worship

Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: [because of the power]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the Mighty {One} of Jacob**
UST the Mighty {God} whom I worship

For some languages, it is clearer or more natural to change the order of the phrases in this verse and say, "But the Mighty/Powerful God whom I worship/serve will keep you strong and help you use your bows/weapons well/effectively as you fight back." Alternate translation: [of the Powerful God whom I worship] or [that the Powerful God of Jacob gives you]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **by the name of the Shepherd**
UST He takes care of {his people} the way a shepherd takes care of his sheep

A shepherd takes care of his sheep and provides for all of their needs. In the same way God takes care of his people and provides for all of their needs. See Psalm 23 which also talks about God as our Shepherd. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [He takes care of his people the way that a shepherd takes care of his sheep]
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **the Rock of Israel**
> UST He is {like} a rock {fortress} who protects Israel and his descendants

In verses 24 and 25, several different titles are used to refer to Yahweh, the only true God. Make sure that your translation of these verses does not sound like there is more than one God. Also make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that Jacob is referring to himself in this verse as Jacob and Israel.

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his bow	But … will keep you strong and help you use your weapons well as you fight back
Mighty	Mighty
Jacob	the Mighty {God} whom I worship
Shepherd	shepherd
Israel	Israel

Genesis 49:25

ULT	UST
by the God of your father, and he will help you, and with the Almighty, and he will bless you with blessings of the heavens above, blessings of the deep that lies below, blessings of breasts and womb.	*That strength/power comes from the God who has always taken care of me, your father. He is the all-powerful God who will help you and your descendants and bless you all with rain from above and water from deep in the ground. He will also bless you with many children and much livestock.*

ULT **by the God of**
UST That strength/power comes from the God {who has always taken care} of

Alternate translation: [That power is from]

ULT **by the God of your father, and he will help you**
UST That strength/power comes from the God {who has always taken care} of {me,} your father … who will help you and your descendants

Alternate translation: [the God who has always taken care of me, your father. He will also help you and your descendants]

ULT **and with the Almighty, and he will bless you**
UST He is the all-powerful {God} who will help you {and your descendants} and bless you all

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of some of the clauses in the first half of this verse and say, “That strength/power comes from the God who has always taken care of me, your father. He is the all-powerful God who will help you and your descendants and bless you all.” Also, compare how you translated “God Almighty” in Genesis 48:3. Alternate translation: [He is the all-powerful God, who will bless you all]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **with blessings of the heavens above**
UST with rain from above

Alternate translation: [He will provide you with rain from the sky]

ULT **blessings of the deep that lies below**
UST and water from deep in the ground

This phrase refers to water that comes from under the ground and supplies springs, wells, and rivers. Alternate translation: [and bless you with water from under the ground]

ULT **blessings of breasts and womb**
UST He will {also} bless {you} with many children and much livestock

Consider what is the best way to translate this metonymy in your language. Alternate translation: [May your wives bear many children and your animals bear many young]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Almighty	He is the all-powerful God
bless	bless
blessings	with rain from above
heavens	with rain from above
blessings	and water from deep in the ground
blessings	bless
womb	many children and much livestock

Genesis 49:26

ULT	UST
The blessings of your father have surpassed the blessings of my ancestors, even to the bounties of the eternal hills. May they rest on the head of Joseph, even on the top of the head of the one consecrated from among his brothers.	*God has blessed me more than he blessed my ancestors. He has blessed me with riches that are greater than the riches that come from the ancient mountains. I pray that God will abundantly bless you too, Joseph, as the one he chose to set apart and honor above your brothers.*

ULT **The blessings of your father have surpassed the blessings of my ancestors**
UST God has blessed me more than he blessed my ancestors

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “God has blessed me your father more than he blessed my ancestors,” or (2) “The blessings your father is blessing you with are greater than the blessings my ancestors blessed me with,” or (3) “The blessings of your father have surpassed the blessings/riches of the ancient mountains,” The third interpretation is based on the Greek Septuagint, which interprets the Hebrew word for **ancestors** as “mountains” (which has a similar spelling in Hebrew).

Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **even to the bounties of**
UST He has blessed me with riches that are greater than the riches {that come} from

The meaning of the Hebrew text is uncertain here. It could mean: (1) “He has blessed me with riches that are greater than the riches that come from” or (2) “My blessings are so great that they extend to the farthest boundaries/limits of.”

ULT **May they rest on the head of Joseph**
UST I pray that {God} will abundantly bless {you too,} Joseph, as

The words **head** and **top of the head** refer to Joseph and are connected with the custom of laying hands on the head of the person being blessed. Alternate translation: [May God also give those blessings to you Joseph, as] or [I pray that God will abundantly bless you too, Joseph, since you are]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **the one consecrated from among**
UST the one he chose to set apart {and honor} above

The expression **the one consecrated from** is a passive verbal form. If your language would not use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the one God consecrated from among] or [the one whom God chose to set apart and honor among]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **his brothers**
UST your brothers

Make sure your choice of **his** or **your** here fits with how you translated the beginning of this sentence. Alternate translation: [over his brothers]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

> ULT **the eternal hills**
> UST the ancient mountains

Alternate translation: [the everlasting mountains]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blessings	blessed
blessings	blessed
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 49:27

ULT	UST
Benjamin is a ravenous wolf. In the morning it devours its prey, and in the evening it divides the plunder."	*Benjamin you and your descendants will be like a fierce wolf. You will always defeat your enemies and take their possessions and wealth."*

ULT **Benjamin**
UST Benjamin you and your descendants

Consider again whether you make "and … descendants" explicit for each of Jacob's sons in this chapter or whether you leave it implied and possibly put that information in a footnote. See verses 1, 7–8, 11, 13–14, 16, 19–23, 27. Alternate translation: [As for Benjamin, he and his descendants] or [Benjamin, you and your descendants]

ULT **is a ravenous wolf**
UST will be {like} a fierce wolf

Wolves are a type of large, fierce, wild dog that lives and hunts together in groups. If wolves are unknown in your language area, you could say "wild dog" or "a pack of wild dogs." Consider again how you translated the metaphors and comparisons that Jacob uses in verses 4, 9–11, 14, 17, 21–22, 24, 27. Alternate translation: [is like a fierce wolf] or [will be fierce warriors like hungry wolves]

Support Reference: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

ULT **In the morning it devours {its} prey, and in the evening it divides the plunder**
UST You will always defeat your enemies and take their possessions and wealth

Consider again whether to use second person or third person (singular or plural) in verses 3–27, and make sure your translation of the pronouns is clear and natural. To do that, it is helpful to read your translation of this section aloud. Alternate translation: [You defeat their enemies in the morning and share the plunder of battle with your warriors in the evening]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Benjamin	Benjamin
wolf	wolf
prey	You will … defeat your enemies

Genesis 49:28

ULT	UST
All those are the twelve tribes of Israel, and that is what their father said to them. And he blessed them, each one, according to his blessing he blessed them.	*Those twelve sons are the ancestors of the twelve tribes that descended from Israel, and those were the blessings that their father spoke to them. He blessed each one of them with blessings that were appropriate for them and their descendants.*

ULT All those {are} the twelve tribes of Israel

UST Those {twelve sons} {are} {the ancestors of} the twelve tribes that descended from Israel

This clause refers back to Jacob's sons who are mentioned in verses 1–27. Alternate translation: [Those twelve sons are the forefathers of the twelve tribes that came from Israel]

ULT and that {is} what their father said to them

UST and those {were} the blessings that their father spoke to them

Alternate translation: [and those were the words that their father spoke to them]

ULT them, each one

UST each one of them

Alternate translation: [each of them] or [each son]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
tribes	tribes
Israel	Israel
blessed	blessed
blessing	blessings
blessed	blessings

Genesis 49:29

ULT	UST
Then he commanded them and said to them, "I am being gathered to my people. Bury me with my fathers in the cave that is in the field of Ephron the Hittite,	*Then Jacob instructed his sons by saying to them, "I am about to die and join my ancestors who have already died. Bury my body next to their bodies inside the cave that is in the field that Ephron the Hittite used to own.*

ULT **Then he commanded them**
UST Then Jacob instructed his sons

Alternate translation: [After that, he instructed his sons]

ULT **and said to them**
UST by saying to them

Make sure that your translation of "commanded … and said …" refers to a single action, not two different actions.
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **I am being gathered to**
UST I am about to {die and} join

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [I will soon die and be taken by God to be with] or [God will soon take my spirit to be with]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **my people**
UST my ancestors who have already died

Alternate translation: [my relatives who have already died] or [my relatives who have gone before me] or [my deceased ancestors]

ULT **Bury me**
UST Bury my body

Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not mean or imply that Jacob was asking to be buried while he was still physically alive. Alternate translation: [Please bury my body] or [When that happens, please bury me]

ULT **with my fathers**
UST next to their bodies

Alternate translation: [with the bodies of my ancestors] or [next to them]

ULT **in the cave that {is} in the field of Ephron the Hittite**
UST inside the cave that {is} in the field that Ephron the Hittite used to own

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like Ephron still owned that property. Alternate translation: [inside the cave that is located in the field that Ephron the Hittite used to own] or [… the field that used to belong to Ephron the Hittite]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gathered	am about to {die and} join
Bury	Bury
Hittite	Hittite

Genesis 49:30

ULT	UST
in the cave that is in the field of Machpelah that is in front of Mamre in the land of Canaan, that Abraham bought with the field from Ephron the Hittite as property for a burial place.	*That cave and field are in the Machpelah area that is near the city of Mamre in the region of Canaan. That is the cave that my grandfather Abraham bought, along with the field, from Ephron the Hittite, in order to have a place to bury his dead relatives.*

ULT **in the cave that {is} in the field of Machpelah**
UST That cave and field are in the Machpelah area

See how you translated **Machpelah** in Genesis 23:9.

ULT **that {is} in front of Mamre**
UST that is near {the city of} Mamre

Alternate translation: [that is east of the city of Mamre]

ULT **as property {for} a burial place**
UST in order to have a place to bury his dead relatives

Alternate translation: [to use for a family burial site] or [in order to possess a place to bury his dead relatives]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
Abraham	Abraham
Hittite	Hittite
burial place	a place to bury his dead relatives

Genesis 49:31

ULT	UST
There they buried Abraham and Sarah his wife, there they buried Isaac and Rebekah his wife, and there I buried Leah.	*That is where the bodies of Abraham and his wife Sarah are buried, and where the bodies of Isaac and his wife Rebekah are buried, and that is where I buried the body of my wife Leah.*

ULT **There they buried Abraham and Sarah his wife**
UST That is where {the bodies of} Abraham and his wife Sarah are buried

The pronoun **they** is general in this verse and does not specify who buried these people. Many languages have a similar general word. Other languages make this a passive clause without specifying the subject.

ULT **and there**
UST and that is where

Alternate translation: [That is also where]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
buried	buried
Abraham	Abraham
Sarah	Sarah
buried	buried
Isaac	Isaac
Rebekah	Rebekah
buried	buried
Leah	Leah

Genesis 49:32

ULT	UST
The purchase of the field and the cave that is in it was from the sons of Heth."	*Abraham bought that field and cave from the descendants of Heth."*

ULT **The purchase of the field and the cave that {is} in it was**
UST Abraham bought that field and cave … the descendants

In verse 32, Jacob repeats some of what he said in verses 29–30. Make sure your translation does not sound like it was the first time he said this. Also consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [That field and cave were bought by Abraham]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from the sons of Heth**
UST from … of Heth

Compare how you translated **Hittite** in verse 29, which refers to the same people group as here. Alternate translation: [from the descendants of Heth] or [from the Hittite people]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Heth	of Heth

Genesis 49:33

ULT	UST
Then Jacob finished commanding his sons, and he drew his feet into the bed and exhaled and was gathered to his people.	*When Jacob had finished giving those instructions to his sons, he lay down and pulled his feet up into his bed. Then he took his last breath and died and joined his ancestors who had died before him.*

ULT **and he drew his feet into the bed**

UST he {lay down and} pulled his feet {up} into {his} bed

This clause means that Jacob lay back down after being in a sitting position on the side of his bed (Genesis 48:2). Alternate translation: [he lay down and lifted his feet up into his bed]

ULT **and exhaled**

UST Then he took his last breath and died

Consider again how you translated the idiom **exhaled** in the book of Genesis. See 6:17; 7:21; 25:8, 17; 35:29; 49:33. Alternate translation: [and breathed out his last breath] or [Then he took his final breath and died]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and was gathered to his people**

UST and joined his ancestors who had died before him

Consider again how you translated this phrase in the book of Genesis. See 25:8 (and note), 17; 35:29; 49:29, 33. Alternate translation: [and was taken by God to be with his deceased relatives]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 50

Genesis 50:1

ULT	UST
Then Joseph fell on the face of his father, and he wept over him and kissed him.	*Then Joseph hugged his father in sorrow, and he cried over him and kissed him goodbye on the cheek.*

ULT **Then Joseph fell on the face of**
UST Then Joseph hugged his father in sorrow

Make sure that your translation of this phrase, **fell on the face of** does not imply that Joseph fell accidentally. Rather, he intentionally threw himself on his father to embrace him and express his love for him and his grief. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 46:29. Alternate translation: [Immediately, Joseph sorrowfully embraced]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and he wept over him**
UST and he cried over him

For some languages it may be better to put this clause earlier and say, “Then Joseph cried in his sorrow/grief, and he hugged his father tightly and kissed him.”

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and kissed him**
UST and kissed him {goodbye} on the cheek

Consider again how you translated **kissed** in the book of Genesis. See 27:26–27; 29:11, 13; 31:28, 55; 33:4; 45:15; 48:10; 50:1. Alternate translation: [and kissed him goodbye on the forehead]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
and he wept	and he cried
kissed	kissed

Genesis 50:2

ULT	UST
Then Joseph commanded his servants the physicians to embalm his father. So the physicians embalmed Israel,	*Then he ordered his doctors who served him to prepare his father's body for burial. So they did that.*

ULT **Then Joseph commanded**
UST Then he ordered

Alternate translation: [Then he told]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **his servants the physicians**
UST his doctors who served him

Alternate translation: [his servants who were doctors] or [his physicians who served him]

ULT **to embalm his father**
UST to prepare his father{'s body} for burial

The word **embalm** refers here to the special process that the Egyptians used to slow down the decaying process of a dead body in order to preserve it for burial.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	יוֹסֵף
servants	served
Israel	So they did that

Genesis 50:3

ULT	UST
and they completed forty days for him, for so they complete the days of embalmings. And the Egyptians wept for him seventy days.	*The process took forty days, which is how long it normally takes to prepare a body. The people in Egypt mourned for Israel for seventy days.*

ULT **and they completed forty days for him**
UST The process took forty days

Alternate translation: [which took them 40 days] or [The work took 40 days]

ULT **for so they complete the days of embalmings**
UST which is how long it {normally} takes to prepare a body

Alternate translation: [because that is the usual amount of time needed to embalm a body] or [which is how long it usually takes to embalm a body]

ULT **And the Egyptians wept for him seventy days**
UST The people in Egypt mourned for Israel {for} seventy days

The seventy days of mourning included the forty days of embalming, so do not begin your translation of this sentence with a word like “Then.” Alternate translation: [The people in Egypt wept for him for seventy days] or [For seventy days the people of Egypt mourned for him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	days
days	which is how long it {normally} takes
Egyptians	Egypt
And … wept	mourned
days	days

Genesis 50:4

ULT	UST
And the days of his mourning passed, then Joseph spoke to the house of Pharaoh, saying, "Please, if I have found favor in your eyes, please speak in the ears of Pharaoh, saying,	*After that time of mourning Israel's death, Joseph said to Pharaoh's officials, "Please do this favor for me: please take a message to King Pharaoh for me and tell him*

ULT **And the days of his mourning passed**
UST After that time of mourning Israel's death

Alternate translation: [When those seventy days of mourning for him were over]

ULT **then Joseph spoke to the house of Pharaoh, saying**
UST Joseph said to Pharaoh's officials

The phrase **the house of Pharaoh** refers to members of the royal court.
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Please, if I have found favor in your eyes**
UST Please do this favor for me

Alternate translation: [Please do this kindness for me:] or [Please show me kindness and do this:]

ULT **please speak in the ears of Pharaoh, saying**
UST please take a message to {King} Pharaoh {for me} and tell him

Alternate translation: [please speak to King Pharaoh for me and say to him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	that time of
mourning	mourning
Joseph	Joseph
house	s officials
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
favor	favor
Pharaoh	Pharaoh

Genesis 50:5

ULT	UST
'My father made me swear, saying, "Behold, I am dying. In my grave that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan, there you must bury me." So now, please let me go up there and bury my father, then I will return.'"	*that when my father was about to die, he had me vow to him that I would bury his body in the region of Canaan, in a tomb that he had prepared for himself there. So ask the king to please let me go to Canaan and bury my father's body there. After that, I will come back here."*

ULT **My father made me swear, saying, "Behold, I am dying. In my grave that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan, there you must bury me**

UST that when my father was about to die, he had me vow to him that I would bury his body in the region of Canaan, in a tomb that he had prepared for himself there

For some languages it may be better to translate this embedded quote as an indirect quote and say, "that when my father was about to die, he had me swear/vow/promise to him that I would bury his body in the region of Canaan, in a grave/tomb that he had prepared for himself there."

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **So now, please let me go up {there} and bury my father**

UST So {ask the king to} please let me go {to Canaan} and bury my father{'s body} there

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as an indirect quote. Also see how you translated **go up** in Genesis 45:9.

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **then I will return**

UST After that, I will come back here

Alternate translation: [After I have done that, I will return to Egypt]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
swear	vow
grave	tomb
land	in the region of
Canaan	Canaan
bury	bury

Genesis 50:6

ULT	UST
And Pharaoh said, “Go up and bury your father just as he made you swear.”	*When Pharaoh heard Joseph’s message, he replied, “Tell Joseph that he may go to Canaan and bury his father’s body just as his father made him vow that he would do.”*

ULT **And Pharaoh said**
UST When Pharaoh heard Joseph’s message, he replied

Alternate translation: [Pharaoh sent back this reply to him]

ULT **Go up and bury your father just as he made you swear**
UST Tell Joseph that he may go {to Canaan} and bury his father{’s body} just as his father made him vow that he would do

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this sentence as a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated “go up” in verse 5.
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
bury	bury
swear	vow

Genesis 50:7

ULT	UST
So Joseph went up to bury his father, and with him went up all the servants of Pharaoh, the elders of his house and all elders of the land of Egypt	*So Joseph started the trip to Canaan to bury his father's body, and all Pharaoh's officials escorted him, including the important leaders from Pharaoh's court and all the other important leaders in the country of Egypt.*

ULT **So Joseph went up**
UST So Joseph started the trip to Canaan

Joseph did not arrive in Canaan until later (verse 10). Alternate translation: [So Joseph started traveling to Canaan] or [So Joseph started the journey to Canaan] or [So Joseph left Egypt]

ULT **the elders of his house**
UST including the important leaders from Pharaoh's court

The **elders** were probably older men who had served Pharaoh for a long time and held important positions in his court.

ULT **and all elders of the land of Egypt**
UST and all the {other} important leaders in the country of Egypt

Alternate translation: [and all the other senior men in the country of Egypt]

ULT **and with him went up all the servants of Pharaoh**
UST and all Pharaoh's officials escorted him

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, consider again how you translated **Pharaoh** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:15 (and note), 12:16–18, 12:20; 37:36; 39:1; 40:2, 40:11, 40:13, 40:14, 40:17, 40:19; 41:1, 41:4, 41:7–10, 41:14–17, 41:25, 41:28, 41:32–35, 41:37–39, 41:41–46, 41:55; 42:15–16; 44:18; 45:2, 45:8, 45:16–17, 45:21; 46:5, 46:31, 46:33–34; 47:1–5, 47:7–11, 47:14, 47:19–26; 50:4, 50:6–7. Also consider again how you translated **servants** and "officials" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 20:8, 40:2, 40:4, 40:7, 40:20, 41:10, and 41:37–38; 45:16; 50:7. Alternate translation: [All the officials of Pharaoh went with him to escort him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
bury	bury
servants	s officials
Pharaoh	Pharaoh
elders	including the important leaders from
house	Pharaoh's court
elders	the {other} important leaders in

Genesis 50:8

ULT	UST
and all of the house of Joseph and his brothers and the house of his father. Only their little ones and their flocks and their herds they left in the land of Goshen.	*All of Joseph's family also went with him, including his brothers and the rest of his father's family. They only left behind their children and their livestock in Goshen Province.*

ULT **and all of the house of Joseph**
UST All of Joseph's family also went with him

The word **house** refers here to Joseph's whole extended family, not just to the people in his own household. Alternate translation: [and Joseph's entire family]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **Only their little ones**
UST only … their children

Alternate translation: [Only their children]

ULT **and their flock{s} and their herds**
UST and their livestock

Consider again how you translated "flocks and herds" in the book of Genesis. See 12:16; 13:5; 20:14; 21:27; 24:35; 26:14; 32:8; 33:13; 34:28; 45:10; 46:32; 47:1, 17; 50:8. Also see how you translated **herd** in Genesis 18:7–8, and how you translated **flock** in Genesis 4:2, 4; 21:28; 27:9; 29:2–3, 6–10; 30:31, 32, 36, 38–43; 31:4, 8, 10, 12, 19, 38, 41, 43; 32:6; 37:2, 12, 14; 38:12, 13, 17; 46:34; 47:1, 17. It may be necessary to translate these terms in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [and their sheep and cattle]

ULT **they left**
UST They … left behind

The children and animals were probably left with servants who took care of them during the funeral. For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, "They left behind only their children and their livestock in Goshen Province." Alternate translation: [they left behind] or [were left behind with servants]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **in the land of Goshen**
UST in Goshen Province

Consider again how you translated "the land/region of Goshen" in the book of Genesis. See 45:10; 46:28–29, 34; 47:1, 4, 6, 27; 50:8. Alternate translation: [in the region of Goshen]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
house	Joseph’s
Joseph	family
house	and the rest of … s family
flocks	and their livestock
and their herds	and their livestock
land	in … Province
Goshen	Goshen

Genesis 50:9

ULT	UST
And with him went up both chariots and horsemen, and the company was very great.	*Many soldiers also escorted Joseph, including those who were riding chariots and those who were riding horses, so that the entire group was very large.*

ULT **And with him went up both chariot{s} and horsemen**
UST Many soldiers also escorted Joseph, {including} those {who were} riding chariots and those {who were} riding horses

Consider again how you translated **chariot** in Genesis 41:43; 46:29; 50:9. Alternate translation: [There were men riding chariots and men riding horses who also went with Joseph] or [Many soldiers also escorted him including those who were riding chariots and those who were riding horses]

ULT **and the company was very great**
UST so that the {entire} group was very large

Alternate translation: [so that the entire group of people was very large] or [so that there was a very large group of people traveling together]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
chariots	chariots
horsemen	those {who were} riding horses

Genesis 50:10

ULT	UST
Then they came to the threshing floor of Atad, which is beyond the Jordan, and they lamented there with a very great and heavy lamentation. And he did seven days of mourning for his father.	*They traveled to the other side of the Jordan River and stopped at a grain threshing place owned by a man named Atad. There Joseph and the others mourned for his father very loudly and sorrowfully for seven days.*

ULT **Then they came to**

UST They traveled to … and stopped at

Alternate translation: [Then when they came to] or [When they arrived at]

ULT **the threshing floor of Atad**

UST a {grain} threshing place owned by {a man named} Atad

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "Atad's threshing floor/place," or "a place owned by a man named Atad where people separated grain from chaff," or (2) "the threshing floor/place near the city/town of Atad," or "Goren Ha-Atad," or (3) "the grain/wheat threshing place that was surrounded by thornbushes," The Hebrew word "atad" means "thorns," but most Bible scholars think it refers here to the name of a person or city.

ULT **which {is} beyond the Jordan, and they lamented**

UST the other side of the Jordan River … Joseph {and the others} mourned

For some languages it may be better to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "They traveled to the other side of the Jordan River and stopped at a grain threshing place owned by a man named Atad." The location of Atad's threshing floor is not certain. It was most likely on the west side of the Jordan River, since that is where the cave was located and that is where the Canaanites would have been most likely to observe Joseph's family and the Egyptians mourning (verse 11). However, since its location is not certain, it is best to translate **beyond the Jordan** in a general way (like the Hebrew text is). Alternate translation: [which was located across the Jordan River]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **and they lamented there**

UST There Joseph {and the others} mourned

Alternate translation: [they began to mourn]

ULT **And he did seven days {of} mourning for his father**

UST for his father … for seven days

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to combine the last two sentences in this verse and say, "There Joseph and the others mourned for his father very loudly and sorrowfully for seven days." Alternate translation: [For seven days Joseph and the others grieved the death of his father] or [and for seven days, Joseph led everyone in mourning the death of his father]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
threshing	threshing
Jordan	Jordan River
lamentation	מִסְפֵּד
days	days
mourning	אֵבֶל

Genesis 50:11

ULT	UST
And the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning at the threshing floor of Atad, and they said, "This is a heavy mourning for the Egyptians!" For that reason they called its name Abel Mizraim, which is beyond the Jordan.	*When the Canaanites who lived in the area saw them mourning like that at Atad's threshing place, they exclaimed to each other, "Wow! Those people from Egypt are mourning very sorrowfully for someone who died!" That is why the name of that place on the other side of the Jordan River is Abel Mizraim, which means "Egyptians' mourning place."*

ULT **And the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning at the threshing floor of Atad**

UST When the Canaanites who lived in the area saw them mourning {like that} at Atad's threshing place

See how you translated **threshing floor of Atad** in verse 10.

ULT **This {is} a heavy mourning for the Egyptians**

UST Wow! Those people from Egypt are mourning {very} sorrowfully for someone who died

Consider again how you translated **Egyptian** in the book of Genesis. See 12:14; 16:1, 3; 21:9; 25:12; 39:1, 2, 5; 41:55–56; 43:32; 45:2; 46:34; 47:15, 20; 50:3, 11. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [Wow! Those people of Egypt are mourning very sorrowfully for someone who died!]

ULT **For that reason**

UST That is why

Alternate translation: [That is the reason that]

ULT **they called its name**

UST the name of that place … is

Consider again how you translated "For that (reason) he/they called/call …" in the book of Genesis. See 11:9; 16:14; 19:22; 21:31; 25:26, 30; 31:48; 33:17; 35:8; 38:29–30; 50:11. Alternate translation: [people call that place] or [the name of that place is] or [that place is called]

ULT **which {is} beyond**

UST on the other side of

Alternate translation: [which is located over] or [The place is across]

> ULT **This {is} a heavy mourning for the Egyptians!" For that {reason} they called its name Abel Mizraim, which {is} beyond the Jordan**
>
> UST Wow! Those people from Egypt are mourning {very} sorrowfully {for someone who died}!" That is why the name of that place on the other side of the Jordan {River} is Abel Mizraim, which means "Egyptians' mourning place

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence. Also, be consistent here with how you translate this phrase in verse 10. Alternate translation: [That is why the name of that place on the other side of the Jordan River is Abel Mizraim, which means "Egyptians' mourning place."]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	the area
Canaanites	Canaanites
mourning	mourning
threshing	threshing
mourning	mourning
Egyptians	Egypt
called	the name of that place … is
Jordan	Jordan River

Genesis 50:12

ULT	UST
And his sons did for him just as he had commanded them:	*Jacob's sons did everything for him just as he had instructed them to do:*

> ULT **he had commanded them**
> UST he had instructed them to do

Alternate translation: [he had told them to do:]

Genesis 50:13

ULT	UST
And his sons carried him to the land of Canaan and buried him in the cave of the field of Machpelah, which Abraham had bought with the field as property for a burial place from Ephron the Hittite, in front of Mamre.	*They took his body to the region of Canaan and buried it in the cave that is in the field in the Machpelah area, near the city of Mamre. It was the field and cave that Abraham had bought from Ephron the Hittite as a place to bury his dead relatives.*

ULT **And his sons carried him**
UST They took his body

Alternate translation: [They brought his body]

ULT **to the land of Canaan**
UST to the region of Canaan

Consider again how you translated "the land/region of Canaan" in the book of Genesis. See 11:31; 12:5; 13:12, 14; 16:3; 17:8; 23:2, 19; 31:18; 33:18; 35:6; 36:5–6; 37:1; 42:5, 7, 13, 29, 32; 44:8; 45:17, 25; 46:6, 12, 31; 47:1, 4, 13, 15, 27; 48:3, 7; 49:30; 50:5, 13. Also be consistent with how you spelled the name of the man named Canaan in 9:18, 22, 25–27; 10:6, 15, and compare that to how you translated "the Canaanites" in 10:18–19; 12:6; 13:7; 15:21; 24:3, 37; 28:1, 6, 8; 34:30; 36:2; 38:2; 46:10; 50:11.

ULT **and buried him in the cave of the field of Machpelah**
UST and buried it in the cave {that is} in the field in the Machpelah area

Consider again how you translated **cave** and **the cave of the field of Machpelah** in the book of Genesis. See 19:30; 23:9 (and note), 11, 17, 19–20; 25:9; 49:29–30, 32; 50:13. Alternate translation: [and buried him in the cave that is in the field in the Machpelah area]

ULT **which Abraham had bought with the field as property for a burial place from Ephron the Hittite**
UST It was the field {and cave} that Abraham had bought from Ephron the Hittite as a place to bury his dead relatives

Consider again how you translated **property for a burial place** in Genesis 23:4, 9, 20, and how you translated **Hittite** or **Ephron the Hittite** in Genesis 10:15; 15:20; 23:3, 5, 7, 10, 16, 18; 25:9–10; 26:34; 27:46; 36:2; 49:29–30; 50:13. Be consistent with how you spelled **Ephron** in those verses and in Genesis 23:8, 13–14, 16–17. Alternate translation: [It was the field and cave that Abraham had bought from Ephron the Hittite as a property to bury his dead relatives]

ULT **in front of Mamre**
UST near {the city of} Mamre

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence (after **Machpelah**) and say, "… the field of Machpelah near the city of Mamre. It was the field and cave that Abraham …" Also, consider again how you translated **in front of Mamre** in the book of Genesis. See 23:17, 19; 25:9; 49:30; 50:13. Be consistent with how you spelled **Mamre** in those verses and in Genesis 13:18; 14:13, 24; 18:1.

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
land	to the region of
Canaan	Canaan
buried	buried
Abraham	Abraham
burial place	as a place to bury his dead relatives
Hittite	Hittite

Genesis 50:14

ULT	UST
Then after he buried his father, Joseph returned to Egypt, he and his brothers and all who had gone up with him to bury his father.	*After Joseph buried his father's body, he returned to the country of Egypt, along with his brothers and everyone else who had accompanied him to his father's funeral.*

ULT **Then … Joseph returned to Egypt**
UST he returned to {the country of} Egypt

Alternate translation: [Joseph returned to the country of Egypt]

ULT **who had gone up with him**
UST who had accompanied him

Alternate translation: [who had gone to Canaan with him]

ULT **to bury his father**
UST to his father's funeral

Consider again how you translated **bury** in the book of Genesis. See 15:15; 23:4, 6, 8, 11, 13, 15, 19; 25:9–10; 35:8, 19, 29; 47:29–30; 48:7; 49:29, 31; 50:5–7, 13–14. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
buried	buried
Joseph	יוֹסֵף
Egypt	Egypt
bury	to his father's funeral

Genesis 50:15

ULT	UST
And the brothers of Joseph saw that their father was dead, and they said, "What if Joseph hates us? Then he will surely repay us for all the evil that we did to him!"	*Now that their father was no longer alive, Joseph's brothers were worried and said to each other, "If Joseph is angry at us for the terrible way that we treated him, he might punish us severely for what we did."*

ULT **What if Joseph hates us**

UST If Joseph is angry at us

Alternate translation: [What if Joseph is holding a grudge against us?]

ULT **Then he will surely repay us**

UST he might punish us severely

Alternate translation: [Then certainly he will pay us back] or [then he will certainly take revenge on us and punish us severely]

ULT **What if Joseph hates us? Then he will surely repay us {for} all the evil that we did to him**

UST If Joseph is angry at us for the terrible way that we treated him, he might punish us severely for what we did

It may be clearer or more natural to put the two clauses of the second sentence before the first sentence. Alternate translation: [Joseph will surely repay us for the evil that we did to him if he hates us.]

Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Joseph	Joseph
evil	for the terrible way

Genesis 50:16

ULT	UST
Then they ordered a messenger to go to Joseph, saying, "Your father commanded before his death, saying,	*So they sent a messenger to Joseph to tell him, "Before our father died, he told us*

ULT **Then they ordered {a messenger to go} to Joseph, saying**
UST So they sent {a messenger} to Joseph to tell him

Alternate translation: [So they sent a message to Joseph which said]

ULT **Your father commanded before his death, saying**
UST Before our father died, he told us

Consider again how you translated **commanded** in the book of Genesis. See 2:16; 3:11, 17; 6:22; 7:5, 9, 16; 12:20; 18:19; 21:4; 26:5, 11; 27:8; 28:1, 6; 32:4, 17, 19; 42:25, 44:1; 45:19; 47:11; 49:29, 33; 50:2, 12, 16. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Also, the pronoun "us" is exclusive here since it does not include Joseph. Alternate translation: [Our father commanded us before he died] or [Before your father died, he commanded us]

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 50:17

ULT	UST
‘This you must say to Joseph: “I beg you, please forgive the crime of your brothers and their sin, because they did evil to you.”’ So now, please forgive the crime of the servants of your father’s God.” And Joseph cried when they spoke to him.	*to ask you to please forgive us, your brothers, for sinning against you and treating you so badly. So then, as servants of God whom our father worshiped, we beg you to forgive us for sinning against you.” When Joseph heard his brothers’ message to him, he was very sad and cried.*

ULT **This you must say to Joseph: “I beg you**
UST to ask you to

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. See what you did for doubly-embedded quotes in Genesis 32:4. Alternate translation: [to tell you that he asks you to] or [to ask you on his behalf to]
Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **So now, please forgive the crime of the servants of your father’s God**
UST So then, as servants of God whom our father worshiped, we beg you to forgive us for sinning against you

Consider again how you translated “the God of” in the book of Genesis. See 9:26; 24:12, 27, 42, 48; 26:24; 28:13; 31:5, 29, 42, 53; 32:9; 43:23; 46:1, 3; 49:24–25; 50:17. Alternate translation: [So then, as servants of God whom our father served, we beg you to forgive us for sinning against you]

ULT **And Joseph cried when they spoke to him**
UST When Joseph heard his brothers’ message to him, he {was very sad and} cried

Alternate translation: [Joseph cried when he heard that message]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	to ask you to
forgive	forgive
the crime of	for sinning against you
sin	and treating you so badly
evil	and treating you so badly
forgive	forgive
the crime of	us for sinning against you
servants	servants
God	God
Joseph	Joseph

Genesis 50:18

ULT	UST
Then his brothers also came and fell before him and said, "Behold us, we belong to you as slaves!"	*Then his brothers came to him, prostrated themselves before him to show respect, and said to him, "Here we are, we will be your servants!"*

ULT and fell before him and said
UST prostrated themselves before him {to show respect}, and said to him

See how you translated "fell … before him" in Genesis 44:14. Compare that to how you translated "bowed down to/before …" (See: 49:8). Alternate translation: [and threw themselves on the ground in front of him and said]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT Behold us
UST Here we are

See how you translated a similar phrase **Behold me** in 22:1, 7. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context.

ULT we belong to you as slaves
UST we {will be} your servants

If you use an exclamation point here in your translation, make sure it does mean that Joseph's brothers were angry. Rather, they were worried and desperate. Alternate translation: [we will be your slaves] or [we will serve you as slaves]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and fell	prostrated themselves … to show respect
as slaves	servants

Genesis 50:19

ULT	UST
But Joseph said to them, "Do not be afraid. For am I in place of God?	*But Joseph replied to them, "You do not need to be afraid. After all, I am not God! So I have no right to punish you.*

ULT Do not be afraid
UST You do not need to be afraid

Alternate translation: [You have nothing to fear]

ULT For {am} I in place of God
UST After all, I am not God! So I have no right to punish you

Joseph uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize that he will not take God's place and punish his brothers. Some languages must use a statement or exclamation here instead.
Alternate translation: [After all, I am not God, that I should judge you.]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
afraid	afraid
God	God

Genesis 50:20

ULT	UST
And as for you, you intended evil against me, but God intended it for good in order to do as he is doing this day, to save many people.	*It is true that you planned to harm me, but God is using that to benefit us all. Right now he is doing what he planned, to keep many people from dying.*

ULT **And {as for} you, you intended evil against me**
UST It is true that you planned to harm me

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic in form and position to emphasize Joseph's brothers and contrast them with God. Consider what is the best way to translate that contrast in your language. Alternate translation: [Although you intentionally treated me very badly]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **in order to do as {he is doing} this day**
UST Right now he is doing what he planned

Alternate translation: [to accomplish what he is doing these days]

ULT **to save many people**
UST to keep many people from dying

Consider again how you translated "save (lives)" or "keep alive" in the book of Genesis. See 7:3; 12:12; 19:19; 45:7; 47:25; 50:20. Alternate translation: [to save the lives of many people] or [to keep many people alive] or [keeping many people from dying]

ULT **but God intended it for good**
UST but God is using that to benefit us all

Alternate translation: [God is using that evil to benefit us all] or [God planned that what you did would turn out to be good for me and everyone else]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
evil	to harm me
God	God
good	to benefit us all
day	Right now he is doing what he planned

Genesis 50:21

ULT	UST
So now, do not be afraid. I will support you and your little ones." So he comforted them, and he spoke to their hearts.	*So then, you do not need to be afraid. I myself will provide everything that you and your children need." In that way, Joseph assured them that he had forgiven them, and he also said other things to encourage them.*

ULT **So now**
UST So then

Alternate translation: [So again I tell you]

ULT **do not be afraid**
UST you do not need to be afraid

Consider again how you translated **do not be afraid** in the book of Genesis. See 15:1; 21:17; 26:24; 35:17; 43:23; 46:3; 50:19, 21. Alternate translation: [you have nothing to fear]

ULT **I will support you and your little ones**
UST I {myself} will provide {everything} that you and your children need

In the Hebrew text here, **I** is an emphatic pronoun. Consider what is the best way to translate that in your language. Also, consider again how you translated **little ones** in the book of Genesis. See 34:29; 43:8; 45:19; 46:5; 47:12, 24; 50:8, 21. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [I myself will take care of you and your children]

ULT **So he comforted them**
UST In that way, Joseph assured them that he had forgiven them

Consider again how you translated **comforted** in the book of Genesis. See 24:67; 27:42; 37:35; 38:12; 50:21. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: [In that way, Joseph consoled them that he had forgiven them]

ULT **and he spoke to their hearts**
UST and he {also} said {other} things to encourage them

The phrase **spoke to their hearts** is an idiom that means Joseph said things to comfort and encourage his brothers. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom with the same meaning that would work well here. Alternate translation: [and he also said other things to comfort them]

Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
afraid	afraid

Genesis 50:22

ULT	UST
Then Joseph stayed in Egypt, he and the house of his father. And Joseph lived 110 years.	*Joseph continued to live in the country of Egypt, along with the rest of his father Jacob's family, until he was 110 years old.*

ULT Then Joseph stayed
UST Joseph continued to live

Alternate translation: [Joseph remained] or [Joseph continued to stay]

ULT in Egypt
UST in {the country of} Egypt

Alternate translation: [in the land of Egypt]

ULT And Joseph lived 110 years
UST until he was 110 years old

Alternate translation: [He lived to be 110 years old]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Egypt	Egypt
house	along with the rest of … s family
Joseph	יוֹסֵף
years	years

Genesis 50:23

ULT	UST
And Joseph saw Ephraim's sons to the third generation. Also, the sons of Machir, the son of Manasseh, were born on the knees of Joseph.	*He lived long enough to see his son Ephraim's children, grandchildren, and great-grandchildren. The children of his grandson Machir, who was Manasseh's son, also grew up during his lifetime.*

ULT **And Joseph saw**
UST He lived {long enough} to see

Alternate translation: [So he was able to see] or [He lived long enough to know]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **were born on the knees of Joseph**
UST grew up during his lifetime

For some languages it is better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, "He also lived to see his son Manasseh's son Machir grow up, as well as Machir's children." or "He also lived to see the children of his grandson Machir grow up, who was Manasseh's son." Also, the phrase "born on Joseph's knees" is an idiom that means Joseph recognized Makir's children as his descendants and that they grew up during his lifetime and spent time with him.
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	יוֹסֵף
Ephraim's	Ephraim's
Manasseh	Manasseh
were born	grew up
Joseph	during his lifetime

Genesis 50:24

ULT	UST
Then Joseph said to his brothers, "I am dying, and God will surely visit you and take you up from this land to the land that he swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob."	*Then one day Joseph said to his brothers, "I am about to die, but God will definitely help you and take you and your descendants from this country to the land that he vowed to give to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.*

ULT **I am dying**
UST I am about to die

Consider again how you translated **I am dying** in Genesis 35:18; 48:21; 50:5, 24.

ULT **and God will surely visit you**
UST but God will definitely help you

The word **visit** is used here as an idiom that refers to God helping his people in a powerful way. See how you translated this idiom in Genesis 21:1, where it has a slightly different meaning. Alternate translation: [but God will certainly help you]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and take you up from this land**
UST and take you {and your descendants} from this country

Alternate translation: [and lead you and your descendants from this land]

ULT **to the land that he swore**
UST to the land that he vowed

Alternate translation: [to the land that he swore with an vow]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
God	God
land	country
land	land
he swore	vowed
Abraham	Abraham
Isaac	Isaac
Jacob	Jacob

Genesis 50:25

ULT	UST
Then Joseph made the sons of Israel swear an oath, saying, "Surely God will visit you, and you must take my bones up from this place."	*When God does that, you must take my body back to Canaan with you and bury it there." Then Joseph had his brothers and the rest of the descendants of Israel vow that they would do that.*

ULT **Then Joseph made the sons of Israel swear {an oath}, saying**
UST When God does that … Then Joseph had {his brothers and} {the rest of} the descendants of Israel vow that they would do that

Consider again how you translated **swear** in the book of Genesis. See 21:23 (and note), 24, 31; 22:16; 24:3, 7, 9, 37; 25:33; 26:3, 31; 31:53; 47:31; 50:5–6, 24–25. Alternate translation: [Then Joseph told his brothers and the rest of the descendants of Israel to promise with an oath that they would do something for him. He said]

ULT **Surely God will visit you**
UST When God does that

See how you translated **visit you** in verse 24. Alternate translation: [Yes, God will definitely help you, and when he does] or [When God helps you that way]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and you must take my bones up from this place**
UST you must take my body back {to Canaan} {with you} and bury it there

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, "When God does that, you must take my body back to Canaan with you and bury it there.' Then Joseph made/had his brothers and the rest of the descendants of Israel swear/promise with an oath that they would do that." Alternate translation: [you must take my bones back to Canaan with you and bury it there]
Support Reference: Information Structure

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
Israel	Israel
swear	vow
God	God

Genesis 50:26

ULT	UST
Then Joseph died, a son of 110 years. Then they embalmed him, and he was put in a coffin in Egypt.	*So Joseph died at the age of 110 years. Then his doctors prepared his body for burial, and they put it in a burial box in the country of Egypt.*

ULT **Then Joseph died, a son of 110 years**
UST So Joseph died at the age of 110 years

Alternate translation: [So Joseph died when he was 110 years old]

ULT **Then they embalmed him**
UST Then his doctors prepared his body for burial

See how you translated **embalmed** in verses 2–3, and how you translated **physicians/doctors** in verse 2. Alternate translation: [And his morticians preserved his body for burial]

ULT **and he was put**
UST and they put it

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: [and they put him] or [and put his body]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **in a coffin**
UST in a burial box

Alternate translation: [in a burial chest]

ULT **in Egypt**
UST in {the country of} Egypt

Alternate translation: [in the land of Egypt]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Joseph	Joseph
years	years
in a coffin	box
Egypt	Egypt

Appendix: Translation Academy

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as "I" and the person he is speaking to as "you." Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than "I" or "you."

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns "I" and "we." (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun "you." (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns "he," "she," "it," and "they." (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like "the man" or "the woman" are also third person.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant "I" or "you."

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of "I" or "me" to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as "your servant" and used "his." He was calling himself Saul's servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words "God's" and "his." He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of "you" or "your" to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, "Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!" (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as "My Lord" rather than as "you." He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying "each of you," Jesus used the third person "his" instead of "your."

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean "I" or "you" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."
(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34)
>
> > But David said to Saul, "**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father's sheep."

(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)
>
> > Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?"
>
> So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)
>
> > So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:22 Genesis 9:6 Genesis 9:16 Genesis 18:3 Genesis 18:19 Genesis 18:19 Genesis 18:27 Genesis 18:30 Genesis 18:31 Genesis 18:32 Genesis 19:2 Genesis 19:19 Genesis 27:31 Genesis 28:20 Genesis 28:21 Genesis 28:22 Genesis 29:8 Genesis 41:10 Genesis 41:13 Genesis 41:16 Genesis 41:25 Genesis 41:28 Genesis 41:32 Genesis 41:33 Genesis 41:34 Genesis 41:35 Genesis 42:10 Genesis 42:11 Genesis 44:16 Genesis 44:19 Genesis 47:4 Genesis 47:18 Genesis 49:2 Genesis 49:4 Genesis 49:5 Genesis 49:8 Genesis 49:21 Genesis 49:24 Genesis 49:26 Genesis 49:27

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example,

"What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

> From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

> He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

> … from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)
>
> > Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

> But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

> Today the people in this house **have been saved** … Today God **has saved** the people in this house …

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:1 Genesis 4:13 Genesis 21:16 Genesis 21:23 Genesis 22:3 Genesis 30:18 Genesis 32:10 Genesis 40:14 Genesis 45:5 Genesis 47:29

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

> Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
(3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)
>
> > **The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)
>
> > It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> > It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)
>
> > He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:9 Genesis 2:1 Genesis 2:4 Genesis 2:20 Genesis 2:23 Genesis 4:11 Genesis 4:24 Genesis 7:19 Genesis 7:20 Genesis 8:2 Genesis 8:2 Genesis 9:2 Genesis 9:6 Genesis 9:11 Genesis 9:14 Genesis 12:3 Genesis 12:15 Genesis 14:14 Genesis 16:4 Genesis 16:5 Genesis 17:12 Genesis 17:24 Genesis 17:25 Genesis 17:26 Genesis 18:4 Genesis 18:18 Genesis 18:29 Genesis 18:32 Genesis 19:15 Genesis 19:17 Genesis 20:16 Genesis 22:13 Genesis 22:20 Genesis 24:33 Genesis 24:67 Genesis 26:4 Genesis 27:33 Genesis 27:42 Genesis 28:14 Genesis 29:33 Genesis 31:22 Genesis 31:39 Genesis 32:12 Genesis 33:11 Genesis 35:19 Genesis 38:13 Genesis 40:15 Genesis 43:12 Genesis 44:3 Genesis 44:12 Genesis 44:16 Genesis 44:17 Genesis 47:15 Genesis 49:26 Genesis 49:29 Genesis 49:32 Genesis 50:26

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples in English are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not," such as the bolded parts of these words: "**un**happy," "**im**possible," and "use**less**." Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as "lack" or "reject," or even "fight" or "evil."

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

> We did this **not** because we have **no** authority … (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)
>
> And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)
>
> Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent."

- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called litotes.

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.
or:
Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means “in order to be fruitful.”

> A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means “a prophet is honored.”

> I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means “I want you to be knowledgeable.”

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.
(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

> For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)
>
> > “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)
>
> > “… so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if

it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

> > Without me, you can do **nothing**.
> >
> > or:
> > Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

> ...ἰῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)
>
> ...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

> > ...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law
> >
> > or:
> > ...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Genesis References:

Genesis 11:6

Doublet

Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word "and." Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

> He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> … like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of "Master" means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)
>
> > "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)
>
> > "He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> … like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)
>
> - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
>
> > "… like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)
>
> > Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!** We are perishing!"

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:26 Genesis 5:3 Genesis 5:29
Genesis 9:2 Genesis 11:1 Genesis 24:1

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis[^1] occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because "nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[^1]: English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (…) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.
>
> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk —**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> > Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> > “Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> > To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

> > Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:16 Genesis 14:23 Genesis 14:23
Genesis 17:26 Genesis 18:28 Genesis 18:29
Genesis 18:30 Genesis 18:30 Genesis 18:31
Genesis 18:31 Genesis 18:32 Genesis 21:23

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

> … they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead." It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
>
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**"
> >
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**"
>
> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)
>
> > But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man**?"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

> They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)
>
> > "They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:1 Genesis 4:1 Genesis 4:17 Genesis 4:25 Genesis 6:4 Genesis 15:15 Genesis 15:15 Genesis 16:2 Genesis 16:4 Genesis 16:5 Genesis 17:10 Genesis 18:11 Genesis 19:5 Genesis 19:8 Genesis 19:31 Genesis 19:32 Genesis 19:33 Genesis 19:33 Genesis 19:34 Genesis 19:35 Genesis 19:35 Genesis 20:4 Genesis 21:8 Genesis 25:8 Genesis 26:10 Genesis 29:23 Genesis 29:30 Genesis 30:3 Genesis 30:4 Genesis 30:15 Genesis 30:16 Genesis 30:16 Genesis 31:35 Genesis 34:2 Genesis 34:14 Genesis 35:11 Genesis 35:22 Genesis 35:29 Genesis 38:2 Genesis 38:9 Genesis 38:16 Genesis 38:18 Genesis 38:26 Genesis 39:7 Genesis 39:12 Genesis 39:14 Genesis 42:13 Genesis 42:32 Genesis 46:4 Genesis 46:26 Genesis 47:30 Genesis 49:3 Genesis 49:4 Genesis 49:33

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.





Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

> They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

> **We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

> The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

> Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:2 Genesis 3:22 Genesis 11:3
Genesis 14:10 Genesis 19:13 Genesis 24:23
Genesis 26:10 Genesis 26:28 Genesis 26:28
Genesis 31:32 Genesis 31:44 Genesis 31:49
Genesis 34:16 Genesis 34:16 Genesis 34:21
Genesis 37:8 Genesis 38:23 Genesis 39:14
Genesis 39:17 Genesis 41:11 Genesis 43:2
Genesis 43:4 Genesis 43:7 Genesis 44:25
Genesis 44:25 Genesis 44:27 Genesis 50:16

Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

An **extended metaphor** is an explicit metaphor that uses multiple images and multiple ideas at the same time. This is in contrast to a simple metaphor, which uses only a single Image and a single Idea. The difference between an extended metaphor and a complex metaphor is that an extended metaphor is explicitly stated by a writer/speaker, but a complex metaphor is not.

Explanation of an Extended Metaphor

When using a metaphor, a writer/speaker uses a physical Image in order to express an abstract Idea about some immediate Topic, with at least one point of comparison between the Topic and the Image. In an extended metaphor, the writer/speaker explicitly states the Topic, and then describes multiple images and communicates multiple ideas.

In Isaiah 5:1b-7, the prophet Isaiah uses a vineyard (the **Image**) to express God's disappointment (the **Idea**) with the nation of Israel (the **Topic**) for their unfaithfulness to God and his covenant with them as his people. Farmers care for their gardens, and a farmer would feel disappointed if his vineyard produced bad fruit. If a vineyard produced only bad fruit for a long enough time, the farmer would eventually stop caring for it. We call this an extended metaphor because the prophet describes in detail multiple images relating to a vineyard as well as multiple aspects of God's disappointment.

> 1b My well beloved had a **vineyard** on a very fertile hill. 2 He **spaded it, removed the stones**, and **planted it** with an excellent kind of vine. He **built a tower** in the middle of it, and also **built a winepress**. **He waited for it to produce grapes, but it produced wild grapes**. 3 So now, inhabitant of Jerusalem and man of Judah; judge between me and my vineyard. 4 What more could have been done for my vineyard, that I have not done for it? **When I looked for it to produce grapes, why did it produce wild grapes**? 5 Now I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard; I will remove the hedge; I will turn it into a pasture; I will break down its wall, and it will be trampled down. 6 I will lay it waste, and it will not be pruned nor hoed. Instead, briers and thorns will spring up. I will also command the clouds not to rain on it. 7 For **the vineyard of Yahweh of hosts is the house of Israel**, and the man of Judah his pleasant planting; **he waited for justice, but instead, there was killing**; **for righteousness, but, instead, a shout for help**. (Isa 5:1b-7 ULT)

Other Examples From the Bible

In Psalm 23, the psalmist uses the physical **Image** of a shepherd to describe the way that God (the **Topic**) shows great concern and care (the **Idea**) for his people. The psalmist describes multiple aspects of what shepherds do for sheep (leads them to pasture and to water, protects them, etc.). The psalmist also describes multiple aspects of how God takes care of him (gives him life, righteousness, comfort, etc.). Shepherds give sheep what they need, take them to safe places, rescue them, guide them, and protect them. What God does for his people is like these actions.

> 1 Yahweh is my shepherd; I will lack nothing.
> 2 He **makes me** to lie down in green pastures;
> he **leads me** beside tranquil water.
> 3 He **brings back** my life;
> he **guides me** along right paths for his name's sake.
> 4 Even though I walk through a valley of darkest shadow,
> I will not fear harm since you are with me;
> your rod and your staff comfort me.
> (Psalm 23:1-4 ULT)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not realize that the images represent other things.
- People may not be familiar with the things that are used as images.
- Extended metaphors are often so profound that it would be impossible for a translator to show all of the meaning generated by the metaphor.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of the extended metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.
- When someone uses an extended metaphor, the images are an important part of what he is trying to say.
- If the target audience is not familiar with some of the images, you will need to find some way of helping them understand the images so that they can understand the whole extended metaphor.

Translation Strategies

Consider using the same extended metaphor if your readers will understand it in the same way the original readers would have understood it. If not, here are some other strategies:

(1) If the target audience would think that the images should be understood literally, translate the metaphor as a simile by using words such as "like" or "as." It may be enough to to do this in just the first sentence or two.
(2) If the target audience would not know the image, find a way of translating it so they can understand what the image is.
(3) If the target audience still would not understand, then state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the target audience would think that the images should be understood literally, translate the metaphor as a simile by using words such as "like" or "as." It may be enough to to do this in just the first sentence or two. See Psalm 23:1-2 as an example:

> Yahweh is **my shepherd**; I will lack nothing.
> He makes **me** to lie down in green pastures;
> **he leads me** beside tranquil water. (ULT)

Can be translated as:

> "Yahweh is **like** a shepherd to me, so I will lack nothing.
> **Like** a shepherd who makes his sheep lie down in green pastures and leads them by peaceful waters, Yahweh helps me to rest peacefully."

(2) If the target audience would not know the image, find a way of translating it so they can understand what the image is.

> My well beloved had a **vineyard** on a very fertile hill.
> He **spaded** it, removed the stones, and planted it with **an excellent kind of vine**.
> He built **a tower** in the middle of it, and also built a **winepress**.
> He waited for it to produce grapes, but it only produced **wild grapes.** (Isaiah 5:1b-2 ULT)

May be translated as:

> My well beloved had a **grapevine garden** on a very fertile hill.
> He **dug up the ground** and removed the stones, and planted it with **the best grapevines**.
> He built a **watchtower** in the middle of it, and also built **a tank where he could crush the juice out of the grapes**.
> He waited for it to produce grapes, but it produced **wild grapes that were not good for making wine**.

(3) If the target audience still would not understand, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh is **my shepherd**; I will lack nothing. (Psalm 23:1 ULT)
>
> > "Yahweh **cares for me** like a shepherd that cares for his sheep, so I will lack nothing."
>
> For the vineyard of Yahweh of hosts **is** the house of Israel,
> and the men of Judah his pleasant planting;
> he waited for justice, but instead, there was killing;
> for righteousness, but, instead, a shout for help. (Isaiah 5:7 ULT)

Can be translated as:

> > For the vineyard of Yahweh of hosts **represents** the house of Israel,
> > and the men of Judah **are like** his pleasant planting;
> > he waited for justice, but instead, there was killing;
> > for righteousness, but, instead, a cry for help.

or as:

> > **So as a farmer stops caring for a grapevine garden that produces bad fruit**,
> > **Yahweh will stop protecting** Israel and Judah,
> > **because they do not do what is right.**
> > He waited for justice, but instead, there was killing;
> > for righteousness, but, instead, a cry for help.

Genesis References:

Genesis 49:9 Genesis 49:14 Genesis 49:17
Genesis 49:22 Genesis 49:22 Genesis 49:27

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and

did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

> It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon,** than for you.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**."
>
> It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
> or:
> At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:7 Genesis 1:12 Genesis 1:18
Genesis 1:21 Genesis 1:21 Genesis 1:22
Genesis 1:24 Genesis 1:24 Genesis 1:25
Genesis 2:23 Genesis 3:1 Genesis 3:1 Genesis 3:7 Genesis 3:7 Genesis 3:14 Genesis 3:24
Genesis 4:4 Genesis 4:8 Genesis 4:11 Genesis 4:15 Genesis 4:22 Genesis 4:25 Genesis 5:4
Genesis 5:6 Genesis 5:29 Genesis 5:32
Genesis 6:3 Genesis 6:7 Genesis 6:19 Genesis 7:1 Genesis 7:10 Genesis 8:1 Genesis 8:1
Genesis 8:5 Genesis 8:11 Genesis 8:12
Genesis 8:14 Genesis 8:20 Genesis 9:20
Genesis 9:21 Genesis 9:28 Genesis 10:19
Genesis 10:30 Genesis 11:2 Genesis 11:5
Genesis 11:31 Genesis 12:5 Genesis 12:14
Genesis 13:3 Genesis 13:12 Genesis 13:17
Genesis 14:2 Genesis 14:3 Genesis 14:5
Genesis 14:9 Genesis 14:10 Genesis 14:14
Genesis 14:20 Genesis 15:2 Genesis 15:5
Genesis 15:10 Genesis 15:10 Genesis 15:13
Genesis 15:16 Genesis 15:17 Genesis 15:18
Genesis 15:18 Genesis 16:5 Genesis 16:10
Genesis 16:11 Genesis 17:12 Genesis 17:26
Genesis 18:1 Genesis 18:8 Genesis 18:26
Genesis 18:28 Genesis 19:9 Genesis 21:17
Genesis 21:24 Genesis 22:2 Genesis 22:3
Genesis 22:6 Genesis 22:10 Genesis 22:13
Genesis 22:13 Genesis 22:19 Genesis 22:19
Genesis 22:19 Genesis 23:3 Genesis 23:4
Genesis 23:4 Genesis 24:9 Genesis 24:10
Genesis 24:11 Genesis 24:13 Genesis 24:16
Genesis 24:18 Genesis 24:22 Genesis 24:31
Genesis 24:32 Genesis 24:44 Genesis 24:49
Genesis 24:59 Genesis 24:67 Genesis 25:3
Genesis 25:6 Genesis 25:8 Genesis 25:10
Genesis 25:17 Genesis 25:21 Genesis 25:28
Genesis 25:33 Genesis 26:1 Genesis 26:2
Genesis 26:6 Genesis 26:17 Genesis 26:22
Genesis 26:29 Genesis 26:35 Genesis 27:4
Genesis 27:14 Genesis 27:19 Genesis 28:1
Genesis 28:10 Genesis 28:10 Genesis 29:2
Genesis 29:2 Genesis 29:2 Genesis 29:13
Genesis 29:27 Genesis 29:35 Genesis 30:40
Genesis 30:42 Genesis 30:42 Genesis 30:42
Genesis 31:5 Genesis 31:8 Genesis 31:12
Genesis 31:19 Genesis 31:19 Genesis 31:21
Genesis 31:25 Genesis 31:31 Genesis 31:37
Genesis 31:38 Genesis 31:50 Genesis 31:55
Genesis 32:1 Genesis 32:23 Genesis 32:30
Genesis 32:32 Genesis 34:6 Genesis 35:1
Genesis 35:1 Genesis 35:2 Genesis 35:4
Genesis 35:10 Genesis 36:1 Genesis 36:2
Genesis 36:12 Genesis 36:13 Genesis 36:40
Genesis 37:3 Genesis 37:25 Genesis 37:28
Genesis 37:28 Genesis 38:8 Genesis 38:14
Genesis 38:14 Genesis 38:15 Genesis 38:16
Genesis 38:24 Genesis 38:29 Genesis 39:9
Genesis 39:14 Genesis 39:14 Genesis 40:1
Genesis 40:3 Genesis 40:8 Genesis 40:15
Genesis 41:1 Genesis 41:6 Genesis 41:10
Genesis 41:14 Genesis 41:17 Genesis 41:48
Genesis 41:51 Genesis 41:56 Genesis 42:5
Genesis 42:23 Genesis 42:25 Genesis 42:38
Genesis 43:6 Genesis 43:8 Genesis 43:11
Genesis 43:34 Genesis 45:4 Genesis 45:10
Genesis 45:21 Genesis 45:23 Genesis 46:28
Genesis 46:29 Genesis 46:34 Genesis 47:1
Genesis 47:11 Genesis 47:19 Genesis 47:20
Genesis 47:27 Genesis 47:27 Genesis 48:2
Genesis 48:7 Genesis 48:15 Genesis 49:1
Genesis 49:11 Genesis 49:11 Genesis 49:18

Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

Description

Some languages have ways of saying things that are natural for them but sound strange when translated into Other Languages. One of the reasons for this is that some languages say things explicitly that some Other Languages would leave as implicit information.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

If you translate all of the explicit information from the source language into the explicit information in the target language, it could sound foreign, unnatural, or perhaps even unintelligent if the target language would not make that information explicit. Instead, it is best to leave that kind of information implicit in the target language.

Examples from the Bible

> **And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to start most sentences with a conjunction such as "and" to show the connection between sentences. In English, it is not natural to do so, it is quite tiresome for the English reader, and it gives the impression that the author is uneducated. In English, it is best to leave the idea of connection between sentences implicit in most cases and not translate the conjunction explicitly.

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to say that something was burned with fire. In English, the idea of fire is included in the action of burning, and so it is unnatural to state both ideas explicitly. It is enough to say that something was burned and leave the idea of fire implicit.

> But the centurion **answered and said**, "Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof" (Matthew 8:8a ULT)

In the biblical languages, it was normal to introduce direct speech with two verbs of speaking. One verb indicated the action, and the other introduced the words of the speaker. English speakers do not do this, so it is very unnatural and confusing to use two verbs. For the English speaker, the idea of speaking is included in the idea of answering. Using two verbs in English implies two separate speeches, rather than just one. So in English, it is better to use only one verb of speaking.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.
(2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, leave the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.

- There would be no change to the text using this strategy, so no examples are given here.

(2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, make the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

> **And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)
>
> > Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it, and he approached the door of the tower **to burn it**. (Or) … **to set it on fire**.

In English, it is clear that the action of this verse follows the action of the previous verse without the use of the connector "and" at the beginning, so it was omitted. Also, the words "with fire" were left out, because this information is communicated implicitly by the word "burn." An alternative translation for "to burn it" is "to set it on fire." It is not natural in English to use both "burn" and "fire," so the English translator should choose only one of them. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, "How would the door burn?" If they knew it was by fire, then they have understood the implicit information. Or, if you chose the second option, you could ask, "What happens to a door that is set on fire?" If the readers answer, "It burns," then they have understood the implicit information.

> But the centurion **answered and said**, "Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof" (Matthew 8:8a ULT)
>
> > The centurion **answered**, "Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof"

In English, the information that the centurion responded by speaking is included in the verb "answered," so the verb "said" can be left implicit. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, "How did the centurion answer?" If they knew it was by speaking, then they have understood the implicit information.

> **He opened his mouth** and taught them, saying, (Matthew 5:2 ULT)
>
> > **He began to** teach them, saying, (Or) He taught them, saying,

In English, it would be very strange to include the information that Jesus opened his mouth when he spoke. That information is included in the verbs "taught" and "saying," so that phrase can be omitted and that information left implicit. However, "he opened his mouth" is an idiom that indicates the beginning of a speech, so that information may be included, or it may also be left implicit.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:14 Genesis 1:22 Genesis 1:26
Genesis 2:19 Genesis 2:20 Genesis 3:8
Genesis 6:7 Genesis 9:2 Genesis 12:13
Genesis 13:16 Genesis 16:3 Genesis 38:1

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

> A wise son makes **his** father rejoice but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples From the Bible

> Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

(1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

> The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)
>
> > "The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies."
> > "Wise **people** die just like fools die."

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

> For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
>
> > "For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia."

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

> "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, "he," "himself," and "his" to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, "they," "themselves," and "their" in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

> > "If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me."

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:22 Genesis 3:23 Genesis 13:13

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

> Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
> So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife**;
> **the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

> People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil

plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.
(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.
(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."
(4) Use the plural form, as in "people."
(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
>
> > "Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**." (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain."

(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain."

(4) Use the plural form, as in "people" (or in this sentence, "men").

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain"

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain."

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:3 Genesis 4:22 Genesis 5:2 Genesis 6:14 Genesis 6:17 Genesis 12:5 Genesis 12:15 Genesis 12:20 Genesis 13:6 Genesis 13:7

Go and Come

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come” and whether to use the words “take” or “bring” when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I am coming,” while Spanish speakers say “I am going.” You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words “go” and “come” (and also “take” and “bring”), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words “go” and “come” or “take” and “bring” differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples From the Bible

> Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark.” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham’s relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it … (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, “When you have **gone** into the land …”

> They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

> Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)
>
> > But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
> > What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it … (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)
>
> > "When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it …"

> Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark …" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh said to Noah, "**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark …"

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
> > What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:19 Genesis 2:22 Genesis 7:16 Genesis 8:16 Genesis 8:17 Genesis 8:18 Genesis 8:19 Genesis 12:5 Genesis 14:17 Genesis 15:7 Genesis 19:17 Genesis 24:32 Genesis 41:14 Genesis 42:5 Genesis 47:15 Genesis 47:18

Hendiadys

Description

In a hendiadys, a speaker uses two words that mean different things and that are connected with "and." These two words work together to express a single idea. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> … his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by "and" can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

> while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. "The blessed hope" and "appearing of the glory" refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, "our great God" and "Savior Jesus Christ" refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)

"A mouth" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes what comes from the mouth.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > For I will give you **wise words** …
>
> Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > for I will give you **words of wisdom**.
>
> You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)
>
> > If you are **willingly obedient** …

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

> > if you **obey willingly** …

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

> We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

> > We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing** of **Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:12 Genesis 4:14

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave **stone upon stone in you.** (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians.** (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,**
> but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed … (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

> Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans

behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> **A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."
(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)
>
> > The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)
>
> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
>
> When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do,** for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)
>
> > And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
> > or:
> >
> > **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:14 Genesis 4:24 Genesis 14:23
Genesis 19:4 Genesis 19:31 Genesis 25:32
Genesis 27:46 Genesis 29:31 Genesis 30:1
Genesis 31:26 Genesis 31:43 Genesis 33:13
Genesis 41:44 Genesis 47:13 Genesis 47:15

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: "If the sun stopped shining …" "What if the sun stopped shining …" "Suppose the sun stopped shining …" and "If only the sun had not stopped shining." We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with "if.")

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples From the Bible

Hypothetical Situations in the Past

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

> Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died**." (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

Hypothetical Situations in the Present

> And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed**. (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

> Jesus said to them, "What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out**?" (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical Situation in the Future

> **Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved**. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

> The Israelites said to them, "**If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger." (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

> I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

Genesis References:

Genesis 24:5 Genesis 24:39 Genesis 27:12 Genesis 31:27 Genesis 31:31 Genesis 31:42 Genesis 32:8 Genesis 34:22 Genesis 42:38 Genesis 43:9 Genesis 43:10 Genesis 44:29 Genesis 44:31 Genesis 44:31 Genesis 44:32 Genesis 44:34

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, "You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.")
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme.")
- This house is under water. (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.")
- We are painting the town red. (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase "come under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

> The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

(2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
>
> > Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

> Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)
>
> > He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

> I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)
>
> > I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> Put these words **into your ears.** (Luke 9:44a ULT)
>
> > **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

> My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)
>
> > I am crying my **eyes out**

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:5 Genesis 2:21 Genesis 2:24 Genesis 2:24 Genesis 3:5 Genesis 3:7 Genesis 3:8 Genesis 3:16 Genesis 3:19 Genesis 4:2 Genesis 4:5 Genesis 4:5 Genesis 4:12 Genesis 4:14 Genesis 4:14 Genesis 4:15 Genesis 4:19 Genesis 4:20 Genesis 5:22 Genesis 5:29 Genesis 5:32 Genesis 6:3 Genesis 6:5 Genesis 6:5 Genesis 6:6 Genesis 6:7 Genesis 6:8 Genesis 6:9 Genesis 6:9 Genesis 6:17 Genesis 7:4 Genesis 7:21 Genesis 7:23 Genesis 8:1 Genesis 8:21 Genesis 8:21 Genesis 8:21 Genesis 9:1 Genesis 9:2 Genesis 9:6 Genesis 9:7 Genesis 9:15 Genesis 9:16 Genesis 11:3 Genesis 11:4 Genesis 11:4 Genesis 11:8 Genesis 12:2 Genesis 12:8 Genesis 12:8 Genesis 12:10 Genesis 13:1 Genesis 13:10 Genesis 14:5 Genesis 14:10 Genesis 14:15 Genesis 14:17 Genesis 14:20 Genesis 15:2 Genesis 15:4 Genesis 15:4 Genesis 15:12 Genesis 15:12 Genesis 15:18 Genesis 16:4 Genesis 16:4 Genesis 16:6 Genesis 16:6 Genesis 16:9 Genesis 16:16 Genesis 17:1 Genesis 17:1 Genesis 17:14 Genesis 17:14 Genesis 17:17 Genesis 17:18 Genesis 17:24 Genesis 18:2 Genesis 18:5 Genesis 18:10 Genesis 18:12 Genesis 18:19 Genesis 18:25 Genesis 18:27 Genesis 19:8 Genesis 19:11 Genesis 19:14 Genesis 19:21 Genesis 20:5 Genesis 20:5 Genesis 20:6 Genesis 20:8 Genesis 20:10 Genesis 20:15 Genesis 20:15 Genesis 20:16 Genesis 21:1 Genesis 21:5 Genesis 21:11 Genesis 21:12 Genesis 21:15 Genesis 21:19 Genesis 21:20 Genesis 21:21 Genesis 21:22 Genesis 21:27 Genesis 21:32 Genesis 21:32 Genesis 21:33 Genesis 22:3 Genesis 22:4 Genesis 22:7 Genesis 22:8 Genesis 22:12 Genesis 22:13 Genesis 22:14 Genesis 22:17 Genesis 23:10 Genesis 23:16 Genesis 23:18 Genesis 24:3 Genesis 24:16 Genesis 24:40 Genesis 24:45 Genesis 24:49 Genesis 24:50 Genesis 24:57 Genesis 25:8 Genesis 25:18 Genesis 25:26 Genesis 26:11 Genesis 26:19 Genesis 26:28 Genesis 26:29 Genesis 27:38 Genesis 27:40 Genesis 27:44 Genesis 27:45 Genesis 29:4 Genesis 29:7 Genesis 29:14 Genesis 29:31 Genesis 29:34 Genesis 30:2 Genesis 30:3 Genesis 30:22 Genesis 30:27 Genesis 30:30 Genesis 30:35 Genesis 30:40 Genesis 31:2 Genesis 31:5 Genesis 31:12 Genesis 31:15 Genesis 31:20 Genesis 31:21 Genesis 31:26 Genesis 31:35 Genesis 31:36 Genesis 31:39 Genesis 32:16 Genesis 32:20 Genesis 32:30 Genesis 32:32 Genesis 33:1 Genesis 33:4 Genesis 33:5 Genesis 33:8 Genesis 34:1 Genesis 34:7 Genesis 34:18 Genesis 34:21 Genesis 34:24 Genesis 34:30 Genesis 35:3 Genesis 35:3 Genesis 36:35 Genesis 37:3 Genesis 37:21 Genesis 37:22 Genesis 37:25 Genesis 37:26

Genesis 37:27 Genesis 37:27 Genesis 38:2
Genesis 38:7 Genesis 38:16 Genesis 39:6
Genesis 39:7 Genesis 39:8 Genesis 39:19
Genesis 39:21 Genesis 39:22 Genesis 40:2
Genesis 40:13 Genesis 41:5 Genesis 41:36
Genesis 41:37 Genesis 41:40 Genesis 41:47
Genesis 41:52 Genesis 42:9 Genesis 42:12
Genesis 42:24 Genesis 42:28 Genesis 42:37
Genesis 43:1 Genesis 43:9 Genesis 43:18
Genesis 43:21 Genesis 44:7 Genesis 44:17
Genesis 44:18 Genesis 44:29 Genesis 44:29
Genesis 44:30 Genesis 45:2 Genesis 45:5
Genesis 45:14 Genesis 45:18 Genesis 45:26
Genesis 46:2 Genesis 46:29 Genesis 47:27
Genesis 47:29 Genesis 48:2 Genesis 48:15
Genesis 48:17 Genesis 49:1 Genesis 49:8
Genesis 49:15 Genesis 49:24 Genesis 50:1
Genesis 50:21 Genesis 50:23 Genesis 50:24
Genesis 50:25

Imperatives — Other Uses

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

> Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, "**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in." (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command "Be clean" means to "be healed" so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

> "I am willing. **Be clean**." Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person

command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like "light must be."

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

> God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

> **Do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;
> **love** her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

> **Teach** a child the way he should go,
> and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Imperatives that function as good results

An imperative sentence can also describe a desirable result. In Proverbs 3:3-4, several imperatives give instructions, then the final imperative describes the good outcome of following those instructions.

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> and **find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man! (Proverbs 3:3-4 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

> **Be clean**. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)
>
> > **You are now clean.**
> > **I now cleanse you.**

God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

> God said, "**There is now** light" and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

> God blessed them and said to them, "**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> **and find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man! (Proverbs 3:3-4 ULT)

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> **then you will find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man!

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

> God said, 'Let there be light,' **so** there was light.
> God said, "Light must be;" **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

> Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

> "**If** you teach a child the way he should go,
> **then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction."

Genesis References:

Genesis 13:9 Genesis 13:14 Genesis 15:5 Genesis 21:23 Genesis 24:3 Genesis 24:4 Genesis 24:54

Information Structure

Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, “What did Peter paint yesterday?” The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, “his house.” Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say “His house is what Peter painted (yesterday).”

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

> Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that “woe” is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

Translation Strategies

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your

translation.
(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

> And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

> Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food.”
>
> Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > When all men speak well of you, which is just as people’s ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:10 Genesis 1:11 Genesis 1:30
Genesis 3:15 Genesis 3:17 Genesis 3:17
Genesis 4:1 Genesis 4:25 Genesis 5:2 Genesis 5:4 Genesis 5:24 Genesis 6:4 Genesis 6:4
Genesis 6:17 Genesis 6:20 Genesis 7:1
Genesis 7:3 Genesis 7:4 Genesis 7:6 Genesis 7:11 Genesis 7:11 Genesis 7:15 Genesis 7:17
Genesis 8:1 Genesis 8:4 Genesis 8:5 Genesis 8:22 Genesis 9:3 Genesis 9:6 Genesis 10:5
Genesis 10:5 Genesis 10:8 Genesis 10:32
Genesis 11:8 Genesis 11:10 Genesis 11:11
Genesis 11:30 Genesis 12:6 Genesis 12:7
Genesis 12:10 Genesis 12:17 Genesis 13:1
Genesis 13:3 Genesis 13:7 Genesis 13:8
Genesis 13:14 Genesis 13:16 Genesis 14:12
Genesis 14:17 Genesis 14:19 Genesis 14:23
Genesis 15:13 Genesis 15:14 Genesis 15:15
Genesis 15:18 Genesis 16:3 Genesis 17:10
Genesis 17:12 Genesis 17:23 Genesis 17:27
Genesis 18:5 Genesis 18:14 Genesis 19:16
Genesis 19:21 Genesis 19:24 Genesis 19:30
Genesis 19:34 Genesis 19:34 Genesis 20:3
Genesis 20:6 Genesis 20:6 Genesis 21:2
Genesis 21:4 Genesis 21:13 Genesis 21:16
Genesis 21:20 Genesis 21:34 Genesis 22:4
Genesis 22:8 Genesis 22:9 Genesis 23:1
Genesis 23:2 Genesis 23:6 Genesis 23:17
Genesis 24:12 Genesis 24:15 Genesis 24:21
Genesis 24:63 Genesis 25:6 Genesis 25:9
Genesis 25:21 Genesis 25:28 Genesis 26:7
Genesis 26:16 Genesis 26:24 Genesis 27:23
Genesis 28:5 Genesis 28:9 Genesis 28:11
Genesis 28:13 Genesis 29:5 Genesis 29:20
Genesis 29:21 Genesis 29:22 Genesis 29:26
Genesis 29:32 Genesis 29:34 Genesis 30:16
Genesis 30:24 Genesis 30:33 Genesis 31:10
Genesis 31:18 Genesis 31:20 Genesis 31:25
Genesis 31:27 Genesis 31:28 Genesis 31:29
Genesis 31:34 Genesis 31:44 Genesis 32:7
Genesis 32:20 Genesis 33:2 Genesis 33:5
Genesis 33:9 Genesis 34:2 Genesis 34:13
Genesis 34:19 Genesis 34:28 Genesis 35:6
Genesis 35:6 Genesis 35:8 Genesis 35:9
Genesis 35:13 Genesis 35:29 Genesis 36:6
Genesis 36:8 Genesis 36:14 Genesis 36:19
Genesis 36:24 Genesis 36:32 Genesis 36:33
Genesis 36:34 Genesis 36:36 Genesis 36:37
Genesis 37:8 Genesis 37:15 Genesis 37:16
Genesis 37:25 Genesis 37:31 Genesis 38:12
Genesis 38:14 Genesis 39:1 Genesis 39:2
Genesis 39:13 Genesis 39:23 Genesis 40:4
Genesis 40:5 Genesis 40:5 Genesis 40:6
Genesis 41:3 Genesis 41:18 Genesis 41:19
Genesis 41:22 Genesis 41:23 Genesis 41:25
Genesis 41:28 Genesis 41:31 Genesis 41:48
Genesis 41:53 Genesis 41:57 Genesis 42:18
Genesis 42:23 Genesis 42:34 Genesis 42:37
Genesis 42:37 Genesis 43:18 Genesis 43:25
Genesis 44:8 Genesis 45:3 Genesis 45:7
Genesis 45:9 Genesis 45:11 Genesis 45:15
Genesis 45:19 Genesis 45:22 Genesis 46:2
Genesis 46:5 Genesis 46:7 Genesis 46:18
Genesis 46:25 Genesis 46:26 Genesis 46:34
Genesis 47:1 Genesis 47:4 Genesis 47:11
Genesis 47:13 Genesis 47:15 Genesis 47:16
Genesis 47:19 Genesis 47:20 Genesis 47:26
Genesis 48:3 Genesis 48:5 Genesis 48:10
Genesis 48:13 Genesis 48:22 Genesis 49:12
Genesis 49:24 Genesis 49:25 Genesis 50:1
Genesis 50:8 Genesis 50:10 Genesis 50:10
Genesis 50:11 Genesis 50:13 Genesis 50:15
Genesis 50:25

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

> Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "the righteous," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples From the Bible

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

> "Present your case," says Yahweh;
> "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> **You know, for you were born then, and the number of your days is many!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

> Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting

and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate the irony in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. (Remember: The true meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)
>
> > **You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!
> > or:
> > **You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!
>
> I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)
>
> > I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call people who know that they are sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)
>
> > **You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!
>
> "Present your case," says Yahweh;
> "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen**, so we may know these things well. **Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)
>
> > 'Present your case,' says Yahweh;
> > 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. **Can your idols bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well? **No!** We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.
>
> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> **You know, for you were born then, and the number of your days is many!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)
>
> > Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not**!

Genesis References:

Genesis 37:19

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a double negative is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples From the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

> Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)
>
> > "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**."

> Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)
>
> > "Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
> >
> > or:
> > "Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

Genesis References:

Genesis 23:6 Genesis 24:27 Genesis 39:9 Genesis 42:20

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> "I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)
>
> I am **the alpha and the omega**, **the first and the last**, **the beginning and the end**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> … I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** …, (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)
>
> > **In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)
>
> > He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

Genesis References:

Genesis 13:17 Genesis 19:4 Genesis 19:11 Genesis 31:24

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction "up" (the Image) often represents the concepts of "more" or "better" (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going **up**," "A **highly** intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going **down**," and "I am feeling very **low**."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat **up**." More is spoken of as up.
- "Let us **go ahead** with our debate." Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- "You **defend** your theory well." Argument is spoken of as war.
- "A **flow** of words." Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> And he said to them, "Go and tell that fox …" (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we did not take bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but

"yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)
>
> > Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)
>
> > It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
>
> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)
>
> > I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
> > Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:29 Genesis 1:31 Genesis 3:22 Genesis 4:14 Genesis 6:13 Genesis 7:11 Genesis 9:9 Genesis 10:1 Genesis 11:6 Genesis 12:11 Genesis 12:19 Genesis 15:1 Genesis 16:2 Genesis 16:6 Genesis 16:12 Genesis 16:14 Genesis 17:4 Genesis 18:27 Genesis 19:19 Genesis 24:13 Genesis 27:40 Genesis 45:8 Genesis 48:15 Genesis 48:22 Genesis 49:21 Genesis 49:24

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> … and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

> The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)
>
> > He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)
>
> > "The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David."
> > or:
> > "The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David."
>
> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)
>
> > "Who warned you to flee from God's coming **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies.

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:6 Genesis 3:17 Genesis 4:16
Genesis 4:23 Genesis 6:11 Genesis 6:12
Genesis 6:13 Genesis 9:11 Genesis 9:13
Genesis 9:25 Genesis 9:27 Genesis 10:25
Genesis 12:1 Genesis 12:3 Genesis 12:6
Genesis 14:11 Genesis 16:2 Genesis 18:5
Genesis 18:18 Genesis 18:20 Genesis 19:31
Genesis 20:13 Genesis 21:23 Genesis 22:6
Genesis 22:18 Genesis 24:60 Genesis 26:5
Genesis 26:18 Genesis 27:8 Genesis 27:13
Genesis 27:22 Genesis 27:28 Genesis 27:28
Genesis 27:37 Genesis 27:39 Genesis 27:40
Genesis 27:43 Genesis 28:14 Genesis 28:20
Genesis 28:21 Genesis 31:30 Genesis 32:11
Genesis 35:5 Genesis 39:5 Genesis 41:30
Genesis 41:33 Genesis 41:34 Genesis 41:36
Genesis 41:40 Genesis 41:40 Genesis 41:55
Genesis 41:57 Genesis 42:22 Genesis 45:2
Genesis 45:8 Genesis 45:21 Genesis 46:3
Genesis 46:4 Genesis 47:13 Genesis 47:14
Genesis 49:7 Genesis 49:10 Genesis 49:25
Genesis 50:4 Genesis 50:8

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word "rich" is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that "rich" is an adjective.

> **The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes before the word "man" and describes "man."

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes after the verb "be" and describes "He."

Here is a sentence that shows that "rich" can also function as a noun.

> **The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word "rich" acts as a noun in the phrase "the rich," and it refers to rich people. The word "poor" also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)
>
> > The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)
>
> > Blessed are **people who are meek**.

Genesis References:

Genesis 18:26 Genesis 19:34

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
>
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
>
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

> Yahweh sees everything a person does
>
> and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything… does" corresponds to "all the paths…takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

> Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
>
> exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
>
> and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

> Until now you have deceived me with your lies.

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

> Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

> Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

> You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

> All you have done is lie to me.

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

> Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:27 Genesis 3:16 Genesis 4:23
Genesis 6:11 Genesis 6:19 Genesis 8:17
Genesis 8:22 Genesis 9:6 Genesis 14:23
Genesis 16:12 Genesis 21:1 Genesis 22:2
Genesis 22:12 Genesis 26:5 Genesis 27:29
Genesis 27:29 Genesis 31:1 Genesis 49:6
Genesis 49:7 Genesis 49:7 Genesis 49:10
Genesis 49:11 Genesis 49:11 Genesis 49:13
Genesis 49:15

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

> You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
>
> > **Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you.**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word "as."
>
> > Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person.**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the "wind and the sea" as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
>
> > He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:16 Genesis 1:18 Genesis 4:7 Genesis 4:10 Genesis 4:11 Genesis 19:19 Genesis 30:33 Genesis 31:40 Genesis 44:34

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word "**of**," by using **an apostrophe and the letter "s"**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my **grandfather's** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.

> The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own

- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.

> The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John

> A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel

- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.

> The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing

> the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord

- Contents — Something has something in it.

> a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes

- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.

> my head — the head that is part of my body

> the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession.** This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language. In languages that mark the difference, the expression of inalienable possession and alienable possession will be different.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

> The younger son … wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

> Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

> Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

> For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace.** (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

> Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

> The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

> Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

> For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

> Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

> John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

(1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
(2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
(3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)
>
> > "On their heads were **gold crowns**"

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

> Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)
>
> > Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink … will not lose his reward.
>
> Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath.** (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)
>
> > Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.
> > or:
> > Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, "punishment of Yahweh" and "your God.")

> Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God.** (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)
>
> > Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.
>
> You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)
>
> > You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.
>
> You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)
>
> > You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

Genesis References:

Genesis 24:12 Genesis 24:27 Genesis 24:42 Genesis 24:48 Genesis 27:13

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are “I,” “you,” “he,” “it,” “this,” “that,” “himself,” “someone,” and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
  - Exclusive and Inclusive “We”
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - Forms of You
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word "himself" refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause "that John built" tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause "who built the house" tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, "they" and "you" just refer to people in general.

Genesis References:

Genesis 19:16 Genesis 19:34

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest …**"

> And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming,**
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look. here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote. (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "**Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**" (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them**.

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

> And he commanded him **to tell no one,** but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him, "**Tell no one**. But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:12 Genesis 12:13 Genesis 18:15
Genesis 18:27 Genesis 22:20 Genesis 24:30
Genesis 26:7 Genesis 26:7 Genesis 26:7
Genesis 26:20 Genesis 27:7 Genesis 28:6
Genesis 29:5 Genesis 29:12 Genesis 31:8
Genesis 31:8 Genesis 32:16 Genesis 32:20
Genesis 32:27 Genesis 32:27 Genesis 32:29
Genesis 37:15 Genesis 37:17 Genesis 38:22
Genesis 42:4 Genesis 45:16 Genesis 45:24
Genesis 48:1 Genesis 48:2 Genesis 50:5
Genesis 50:5 Genesis 50:6 Genesis 50:17

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I," the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples From the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

> But Paul said, "I, however, was indeed born a citizen." (Acts 22:28b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

> Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

> Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

> Abraham said, “… I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **“He is my brother.”**’” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: **‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’**”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

> Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, “There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**.” (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)
>
> > Festus presented Paul’s case to the king. He said, “A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **‘Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?’** But when Paul said, **‘I want to be kept in custody for the emperor’s decision,’** I told the guard, **‘Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.’**”

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word “that” can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

> And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, “I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, ‘During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.’” (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)
>
> > And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, “I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God.’”
>
> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”””” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)
>
> > They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, “Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:1 Genesis 3:3 Genesis 3:3 Genesis 3:11 Genesis 3:17 Genesis 14:23 Genesis 18:13 Genesis 20:2 Genesis 20:5 Genesis 20:11 Genesis 20:13 Genesis 24:7 Genesis 24:14 Genesis 24:43 Genesis 24:44 Genesis 24:45 Genesis 26:9 Genesis 26:9 Genesis 27:7 Genesis 31:29 Genesis 32:4 Genesis 32:5 Genesis 32:9 Genesis 32:9 Genesis 32:12 Genesis 32:17 Genesis 32:17 Genesis 32:20 Genesis 42:14 Genesis 42:22 Genesis 42:31 Genesis 42:32 Genesis 43:3 Genesis 43:5 Genesis 43:7 Genesis 44:19 Genesis 44:20 Genesis 44:21 Genesis 44:22 Genesis 44:22 Genesis 44:23 Genesis 44:23 Genesis 44:28 Genesis 44:32 Genesis 45:9 Genesis 45:9 Genesis 45:17 Genesis 45:18 Genesis 45:18 Genesis 45:19 Genesis 45:19 Genesis 45:20 Genesis 45:20 Genesis 46:31 Genesis 46:32 Genesis 46:33

Reduplication

Description

Writers and speakers in the Bible sometimes repeat the same word or forms of the same word. This is to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of the action that the word describes, or to otherwise increase the emotional impact of the word.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages may not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, or they may not repeat words to increase the level of emotion that they communicate. In these cases, repeated words may appear to be a mistake or may indicate that the speaker is unable to speak correctly.

Examples From the Bible

To the woman he said, “To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing…” (Genesis 3:16 ULT)

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb “multiply” in order to intensify the idea of multiplying.

To be circumcised he must be circumcised (Genesis 17:13)

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb “circumcise” in order to increase the certainty that this must happen.

Begin, possess, to possess his land (Deuteronomy 2:31 ULT)

Moses repeats the word “possess” to emphasize the completeness of the action of possessing the land.

My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? (Psalm 22:1 ULT)

The writer repeats “my God” to increase the level of emotion that he wants to communicate; he is crying out desperately to God.

“Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great…” (Revelation 14:8 ULT)

The angel repeats the word “fallen” in order to show deep emotion in this lament for the ruined city of Babylon.

Translation Strategies

If repeating words would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then do the same in your translation. If not, here are some other options:

(1) If your language would not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, then use a different word or phrase to add that meaning.
(2) If your language would not repeat words to increase emotional intensity, then use an emotional word to do that.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language would not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, then use a different word or phrase to add that meaning.

> To the woman he said, “To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing…” (Genesis 3:16 ULT)
>
> > To the woman he said, “I will greatly multiply your pain and your childbearing…”

> To be circumcised he must be circumcised (Genesis 17:13 ULT)
>
> > He certainly must be circumcised
> > Or By all means, he must be circumcised

> Begin, possess, to possess his land (Deuteronomy 2:31 ULT)
>
> > Begin to completely possess his land
> > Or Enter his land until you completely possess it

(2) If your language would not repeat words to increase emotional intensity, then use an emotional word to do that.

> My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? (Psalm 22:1 ULT)
>
> > You are my God! Why, then, have you forsaken me?
> > Or My God, oh, why have you forsaken me?

> "Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great…" (Revelation 14:8 ULT)
>
> > "Alas, Babylon the Great has fallen!

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:16 Genesis 17:13 Genesis 27:41
Genesis 30:26 Genesis 44:5

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself," "yourself," "himself," "herself," "itself," "ourselves," "yourselves," and "themselves." In English, these pronouns can also be used to emphasize the person to whom they refer. Other languages may have other ways to do both of these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone or something did something alone or was alone

Examples From the Bible

To show that the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence

> If **I** testify about **myself**, my testimony is not true. (John 5:31 ULT)

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

> So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

> Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that **he himself** was about to depart soon. (Acts 25:4 ULT)

To show that someone did something alone, or that something was alone

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."
(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

> If I testify about **myself**, my testimony is not true. (John 5:31)
>
> > "If I **self-testify**, my testimony is not true."

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)
>
> > "Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**."

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

> **He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)
>
> > "**The one who** took our sickness and bore our diseases **was Jesus**."

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)
>
> > "**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples."

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.

> But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)
>
> > But Jesus said this to test Philip, for, **as for him, he** knew what he was going to do.

> Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that **he himself** was about to depart soon. (Acts 25:4 ULT)
>
> > Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that, **for his part, he** was about to depart soon.

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)
>
> > "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain."

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)
>
> > "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in it's own place**."

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:17 Genesis 15:15

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> But those who stood by said, "**Are you insulting the high priest of God?**"(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.

- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above **to remind** King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order **to rebuke** him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above **to remind** his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then **rebuked** his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

> But you, why do you judge your brother? And you also, why do you despise your brother? (Romans 14:10 ULT)

Paul used these rhetorical questions **to rebuke** the Romans for doing what they should not do.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above **to show deep emotion**. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above **to show how surprised and happy she was** that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to remind** the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on **to teach them** about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question **to teach** the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden … (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to introduce what he was going to talk about**. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to express

surprise or other emotion? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

(1) Add the answer after the question.
(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)
>
> > **This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed …

> **Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)
>
> > **You should not insult God's high priest!**

> **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)
>
> > **I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

> **And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)
>
> > **How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> **Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)
>
> > You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone**?

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > **What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> But you, **why do you judge your brother**? And you also, **why do you despise your brother**? (Romans 14:10 ULT)
>
> > Do you think it is good to judge your brother? Do you think it is good to despise your brother?

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:13 Genesis 4:6 Genesis 4:7 Genesis 4:9 Genesis 4:10 Genesis 12:18 Genesis 12:18 Genesis 12:19 Genesis 13:9 Genesis 15:2 Genesis 16:13 Genesis 17:17 Genesis 17:17 Genesis 18:12 Genesis 18:13 Genesis 18:14 Genesis 18:17 Genesis 18:23 Genesis 18:23 Genesis 18:24 Genesis 18:24 Genesis 18:25 Genesis 19:20 Genesis 20:4 Genesis 20:4 Genesis 20:5 Genesis 20:9 Genesis 20:9 Genesis 20:9 Genesis 21:7 Genesis 24:31 Genesis 25:32 Genesis 26:10 Genesis 26:27 Genesis 27:36 Genesis 27:37 Genesis 27:45 Genesis 27:46 Genesis 29:15 Genesis 29:25 Genesis 29:25 Genesis 30:2 Genesis 30:15 Genesis 30:30 Genesis 31:14 Genesis 31:15 Genesis 31:26 Genesis 31:27 Genesis 31:36 Genesis 31:36 Genesis 31:43 Genesis 32:29 Genesis 33:15 Genesis 34:23 Genesis 34:31 Genesis 37:8 Genesis 37:10 Genesis 37:10 Genesis 37:13 Genesis 37:26 Genesis 37:30 Genesis 38:29 Genesis 39:9 Genesis 40:8 Genesis 41:38 Genesis 42:1 Genesis 42:22 Genesis 43:6 Genesis 43:7 Genesis 43:29 Genesis 44:4 Genesis 44:5 Genesis 44:7 Genesis 44:8 Genesis 44:15 Genesis 44:16 Genesis 44:16 Genesis 44:34 Genesis 47:15 Genesis 47:19 Genesis 49:9 Genesis 50:19

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves.** (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
> — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
>
> > See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

> For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
> — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
>
> > See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

> How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** … (Matthew 17:20)

> If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
>
> > See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Genesis References:

Genesis 19:28 Genesis 22:17 Genesis 25:25 Genesis 26:4 Genesis 28:14 Genesis 31:26 Genesis 33:10 Genesis 49:4 Genesis 49:9

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> "**My soul** magnifies the Lord." (Luke 1:46b ULT)
>
> > "**I** magnify the Lord."
>
> So **the Pharisees** said to him … (Mark 2:24a ULT)
>
> > **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him …
>
> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)
>
> > I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:18 Genesis 6:12 Genesis 6:13 Genesis 7:15 Genesis 7:16 Genesis 8:4 Genesis 8:17 Genesis 9:5 Genesis 9:5 Genesis 9:11 Genesis 15:2 Genesis 16:12 Genesis 17:13 Genesis 19:20 Genesis 21:12 Genesis 21:14 Genesis 27:4 Genesis 27:19 Genesis 31:17 Genesis 31:42 Genesis 31:54 Genesis 33:10 Genesis 34:30 Genesis 36:7 Genesis 37:21 Genesis 37:22 Genesis 41:54 Genesis 42:21 Genesis 43:31 Genesis 44:8 Genesis 44:26 Genesis 45:12 Genesis 45:12 Genesis 46:5 Genesis 46:30 Genesis 47:12 Genesis 47:15 Genesis 47:19 Genesis 49:6 Genesis 49:20 Genesis 49:26

Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

Description

Some languages have a singular form of "you" for when the word "you" refers to just one person, and a plural form for when the word "you" refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form of "you" for when the word "you" refers to only two people. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have a singular form of "you" and a plural form of "you." When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one person. However, they do not show us whether it refers to only two people or more than two people. When the pronouns do not show us how many people the word "you" refers to, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular, dual, and plural forms of "you" will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning "you," translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know how many people the speaker was addressing.

Examples From the Bible

> Then **James and John**, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him, saying to him, "Teacher, we desire that you to do for us whatever we ask you." 36 So he said to them, "What do **you** want me to do for **you**?" (Mark 10:35-36 ULT)

Jesus is asking the two, James and John, what they want him to do for them. If the target language has a dual form of "you," use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

> Jesus sent out two of his disciples and said to them, "Go into the village opposite us. As soon as **you** enter it, **you** will find a colt tied there, on which no one has yet sat. Untie it and bring it to me." (Mark 11:1b-2 ULT)

The context makes it clear that Jesus is addressing two people. If the target language has a dual form of "you," use that. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

> James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes who are in the dispersion: Greetings. Consider it all joy, my brothers, when **you** experience various troubles. You know that the testing of **your** faith produces endurance. (James 1:1-3 ULT)

James wrote this letter to many people, so the word "you" refers to many people. If the target language has a plural form of "you," it would be best to use it here.

Strategies for finding out how many people "you" refers to

(1) Look at the translationNotes to see if they tell whether "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes "you" singular from "you" plural, see which form of "you" that Bible has in that sentence.
(4) Look at the context to see who the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youdual.

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:24 Genesis 3:5 Genesis 3:7 Genesis 19:1 Genesis 22:5 Genesis 22:6 Genesis 22:8 Genesis 24:50 Genesis 24:56 Genesis 31:6 Genesis 31:50 Genesis 33:4 Genesis 33:7 Genesis 34:26 Genesis 48:9

Forms of 'You' — Singular

Description

Some languages have a **singular** form of "you" for when the word "you" refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word "you" refers to more than one person. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have both a singular form of "you" and a plural form of "you." When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one. When we read the Bible in a language that does not have different forms of you, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular and plural forms of "you" will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning "you," translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people the speaker was speaking to. Sometimes Greek and Hebrew speakers used the singular form of "you" even though they were speaking to a group of people. (See Forms of 'You' — Singular to a Crowd.)

Examples From the Bible

> But he said, "All these things **I** have kept from my youth." But when he heard this, Jesus said to him, "One thing is still lacking to **you**. All things, as much as **you** have, **sell** all and **distribute** to the poor, and **you** will have treasure in heaven—and **come**, **follow** me." (Luke 18:21-22 ULT)

The ruler was speaking about just himself when he said "I." This shows us that when Jesus said "you" he was referring only to the ruler and he used the singular form. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" need the singular form here, as well as for the verbs "sell," distribute," "come," and "follow."

> The angel said to him, "**Dress yourself** and **put on your** sandals." So he did that. He said to him, "**Put on your** outer garment and **follow** me." (Acts 12:8 ULT)

The angel used singular forms here and the context makes it clear that he was speaking to one person and that only one person did what the the angel commanded. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" would need the singular form here for "yourself" and "your." Also, if verbs have different forms for singular and plural subjects, then the verbs "dress," "put on," and "follow" need the form that indicates a singular subject.

> All the ones {who are} with me greet **you**. **Greet** the ones loving us in faith. Grace {be} with all of **you**. (Titus 3:15 ULT)

Paul wrote this letter to one person, Titus, so most of the time the word "you" in this letter is singular and refers only to Titus. In this verse, the first "you" is singular, so the greeting is for Titus, as well as the instruction to greet the others there. The second "you," however, is plural, so the blessing is for Titus and for all of the believers there in Crete.

> "Having gone, **search** carefully for the young child, and after **you** have found him, **report** to me so that I also, having come, might worship him." (Matthew 2:8 ULT)

Since Herod is speaking to all of the learned men, the word "you" and the commands "search" and "report" are plural.

Strategies for finding out how many people "you" refers to

(1) Look at the notes to see if they tell whether "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes "you" singular from "you" plural, see which form of "you" that Bible has in that sentence.
(4) Look at the context to see how many people the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:9 Genesis 3:11 Genesis 6:21 Genesis 6:21 Genesis 7:2 Genesis 17:7 Genesis 17:10 Genesis 17:10 Genesis 17:10 Genesis 17:11 Genesis 17:11 Genesis 18:3 Genesis 18:4 Genesis 24:49 Genesis 31:29 Genesis 34:8 Genesis 42:16 Genesis 44:27 Genesis 48:21 Genesis 48:22

Collective Nouns

Description

A collective noun is a singular noun that refers to a group of something. Examples: a **family, clan,** or **tribe** is a group of people who are related to each other; a **flock** is a group of birds or sheep; a **fleet** is a group of ships; and an **army** is a group of soldiers.

Many collective nouns are used exclusively as a singular replacement for a group as in the examples above. Frequently in the Bible the name of an ancestor is used, through a process of metonymy, as a collective noun referencing the group of his descendants. In the Bible, sometimes the singular noun will take a singular verb form, other times it will take a plural verb form. This may depend on how the author is thinking about the group, or whether the action is being done as a group or as individuals.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

There are several issues that require care when translating collective nouns. Further care is needed because the language you are translating into may not use collective nouns in the same way as the language you are translating from. Issues include:

1. The source language may have a collective noun for a group that the target language does not and vice-versa. You may have to translate a collective noun with a plural noun in your language, or you may need to translate a plural noun with a collective noun in your language.
2. Subject-verb agreement. Different languages or dialects may have different rules about using singular or plural verbs with collective nouns. Examples (from Wikipedia):
   - a singular noun with a singular verb: The team *is* in the dressing room.
   - a singular noun with a plural verb which is correct in British, but not American, English: The team *are* fighting among themselves. The team *have* finished the project.

3. Pronoun agreement. Similar to the previous, care needs to be taken to use the correct pronoun plurality and possibly gender or noun class to agree with the number/gender/class of the noun used. See the biblical examples below.
4. Clarity of referent. Especially if there is a mismatch in your translation between the verb and noun or pronoun concerning any of the factors above, readers may be confused about who or what is being referenced.

Examples from the Bible

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

The word in bold is written in singular form in both Hebrew and English, but it refers to a group of warriors that fight together.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

The word in bold is singular and refers to a group of sheep.

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

Note in this example that the noun is singular but the pronoun is plural. This may or may not be allowed or natural in your language.

> Do not let **your heart** be troubled. **You** believe in God; believe also in me. (John 14:1 ULT)

In this verse, the words translated "your" and "you" are plural, referring to many people. The word "heart" is singular in form, but it refers to all of their hearts as a group.

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

The word **hair** is singular, but it refers to many hairs, not just one.

> And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

Here, "Israel" is singular, but means "the Israelites" by metonymy.

Translation Strategies

If your language has a collective (singular) noun that refers to the same group as referenced by the collective noun in the source text, then translate the word using that term. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.
(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.
(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.
(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.

> And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the Israelites** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the Israelites** go."

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

And he shall take the **hairs** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **them** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings.

(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

And Joab and all the **army men who were** with him arrived

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **people of the crowd were** coming to him, and he was teaching **them**.

(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

and though the **group of sheep** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the people of Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the people of Israel** go.”

(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

> Now this John had his clothing from the **hairs** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist (Matthew 3:4a ULT)

Now this John had his clothing from the **hair** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist

> You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that {is} in **the heavens** above, or that {is} in the earth beneath, or that {is} in **the waters** under the earth. (Deuteronomy 5:8 ULT)

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in **the water** under the earth.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:26

Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Contrary-to-Fact Conditions

Description

A Contrary-to-Fact Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical, but the speaker is already certain that it is NOT true.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Usually there are no special words that indicate a Contrary-to-Fact Condition. The writer assumes that the reader knows that it is NOT a true condition. For this reason it often requires knowledge of implied information to know that it is not true. If this kind of condition is difficult for translators to communicate, they may want to consider using the same strategies that they used for Rhetorical Questions or Implied Information.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> Elijah came near to all the people and said, "How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, follow him. But **if Baal is God**, then follow him." Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

Baal is not God. Elijah is not suggesting that Baal might be God, and he does not want the people to follow Baal. But Elijah used a conditional statement to show them that what they were doing was wrong. In the example above, we see two conditions that have the same construction. The first one, "If Yahweh is God," is a Factual Condition because Elijah is certain that it is true. The second one, "if Baal is God," is a Contrary-to-Fact Condition because Elijah is certain that it is not true. You will need to consider if people would say both of these in the same way in your language or if they would say them in different ways.

> But his wife replied to him, "**If Yahweh had desired to kill us**, he would not have taken from our hand the whole burnt offering and the offering. He would not have shown us all these things, and at this time would he have not allowed us to hear about this." (Judges 13:23 ULT)

Manoah's wife thinks that the second part of her conditional statement is not true, therefore the first part is also not true. God received their burnt offering; therefore, He does not want to kill them.

> "**If only we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt, sitting by a pot of meat and eating bread to the full." (Exodus 16b:3 ULT)

Of course the people speaking here did not die in Egypt, and so this is a Contrary-to-Fact condition that is used to express a wish.

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

The English reader knows that these last two examples are Contrary-to-Fact conditions because of the past-tense verbs used in the first part (they are not things that might happen). The last example also has a second part that uses "would have." These words also signal something that did not happen.

Translation Strategies

If Contrary-to-Fact conditions are clear in your language, then use them as they are.

(1) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker believes something that is false, then restate the condition as something

that others believe.
(2) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker is suggesting that the first part is true, then restate it as a statement that it is not true.
(3) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen but the speaker wanted it to happen, restate it as a wish.
(4) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen, restate it as a negative statement.
(5) Often Factual and Contrary-to-Fact conditions are used to make reasoned arguments for a change in behavior. If translators are struggling to know the best way to translate them, it could be helpful to discuss how this is done in their language community. If someone is trying to convince people to change their behavior, how do they do that? It may be possible to adapt similar strategies when translating these conditions.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker believes something that is false, then restate the condition as something that others believe.

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> > If you believe that Baal is God, then worship him!

(2) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker is suggesting that the first part is true, then restate it as a statement that it is not true.

> > If Baal is not God, then you should not worship him!

But his wife replied to him, "**If Yahweh had desired to kill us**, he would not have taken from our hand the whole burnt offering and the offering. He would not have shown us all these things, and at this time would he have not allowed us to hear about this." (Judges 13:23 ULT)

> > "**Yahweh does not want to kill us**, or he would not have received the burnt offering and the offering we gave him."

(3) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen but the speaker wanted it to happen, restate it as a wish.

> "**If only we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt, sitting by a pot of meat and eating bread to the full." (Exodus 16b:3 ULT)

> > "**I wish we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt…"

(4) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen, restate it as a negative statement.

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

> > "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! The mighty deeds which were done in you **were not done** in Tyre and Sidon. But **if they had been done there, those people would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes."

(5) Often Factual and Contrary-to-Fact Conditions are used to make reasoned arguments for a change in behavior. If translators are struggling to know the best way to translate them, it could be helpful to discuss how this is done in their language community. If someone is trying to convince people to change their behavior, how do they do that? It may be possible to adapt similar strategies when translating these conditions.

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> > Is Baal the one who is truly God? Should you worship him?

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

> > "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! You think that you are better than Tyre and Sidon, but you are not! **They would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes at seeing the mighty deeds that you have seen! **You should be like them**!"

Genesis References:

Genesis 13:16 Genesis 15:5

Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Hypothetical Condition

Description

A Hypothetical Condition is a condition in which the second event (the "then" clause) will only take place if the first event (the "if" clause) takes place or is fulfilled in some way. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

It is important that translators understand whether or not something is a Hypothetical Condition so that they translate it in the correct way. For example, some of God's promises to Israel were conditional, based on whether or not Israel obeyed God. However, many of God's promises to Israel were not conditional; God would keep these promises whether or not the Israelites obeyed. It is important that you (the translator) know the difference between these two types of promises and communicate each one accurately in your own language. Also, sometimes conditions are stated in an order different than the order in which they would happen. If the target language would state the clauses in a different order, then you will need to make that adjustment.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

There are two hypothetical conditions in this frame. In both of these conditions, the first event (the "if clause") is stated after the "then" clause. If this is unnatural or confusing, the clauses can be restated in the more natural order. The first hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites obeyed God, then God would bless and protect them. The second hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites did not obey God, then God would punish them.

> If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? (Genesis 4:7a ULT)

If Cain does what is right, then he will be accepted. The only way for Cain to be accepted is by doing what is right.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them. (Acts 5:38b-39aULT)

There are two hypothetical conditions here: (1) If it is true that this plan is of men, then it will be overthrown; (2) If it is true that this plan is of God, then it cannot be overthrown.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

> God promised to bless the people and protect them **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

> If the people obeyed these laws, God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, God said that he would punish them.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then."

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

> If the people obeyed these laws, **then** God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, **then** God said that he would punish them.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38b-39a ULT)

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, **then** it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, **then** you will not be able to overthrow them;

Genesis References:

Genesis 18:24

Connect — Exception Clauses

Exceptional Relationship

Description

Exceptional relationship connectors exclude one or more items or people from a group.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

English indicates exceptional relationships by first describing a group (Part 1) and then stating what is not in that group by using words like “except,” “but not,” “other than,” “besides,” “unless,” “however … not,” and “only” (Part 2). Some languages do not indicate in this way that one or more items or people are excluded from a group. Instead, they have other ways of doing this. In some languages this type of construction does not make sense because the exception in Part 2 seems to contradict the statement in Part 1. Translators need to understand who (or what) is in the group and who (or what) is excluded in order to be able to accurately communicate this in their language.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)
>
> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4b ULT)
>
> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not** a man escaped **except for** 400 young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)
>
> The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If the way that Exceptional Clauses are marked in the source language is also clear in your language, then translate the Exceptional Clauses in the same way.

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”
(2) Reverse the order of the clauses so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

Examples of Translation Strategy Applied

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”

> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not a man escaped except for 400 young men**, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

- Part 1: (**Not** a man escaped)
- Part 2: (**except for** 400 young men)

> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Only** 400 young men escaped; they rode on camels and fled.

> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4 ULT)
>
> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for **you are first in line to redeem it {only you can redeem it}**, and I am after you.

> The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)
>
> > The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will let you go **only if** you bless me.”

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

> God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)
>
> > God told Adam that he could **not** eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, but he could eat from **any other** tree in the garden.

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:17 Genesis 9:4 Genesis 14:24 Genesis 32:26 Genesis 39:6 Genesis 42:15 Genesis 43:3 Genesis 43:5

Connect — Contrast Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Contrast Relationship

Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.
(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.
(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)
>
> > For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)
>
> > The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

> {David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)
>
> > [David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:2 Genesis 6:18 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 15:10 Genesis 15:14 Genesis 19:18 Genesis 20:7 Genesis 21:13 Genesis 25:27 Genesis 28:2 Genesis 30:35 Genesis 30:42 Genesis 33:4 Genesis 33:17 Genesis 50:20

Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are "in order to," "in order that" or "so that." It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison**. (Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman's false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

> Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian**. (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with "in order to."

> Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes**. Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God's ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

> Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

> Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with "and." Then the word "so" marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear. (2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

> "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!" (Ruth 2:16 ULT)
>
> > "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!"

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)
>
> > The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us."

(2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17bULT)
>
> > "… keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**." or: "… keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**."

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)
>
> > But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance**.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:22 Genesis 1:28 Genesis 6:20
Genesis 9:1 Genesis 18:21 Genesis 30:41

Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Reason-and-Result Relationships

Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — "I did Y because I wanted X to happen." But usually it is looking backward — "X happened, and so I did Y." Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are "because," "so," "therefore," and "for." Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus! (Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. "Because" connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by "so that." Notice that the term "so that" often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

> "Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God." (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

> But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.

(2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.

(3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

> Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

(1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.

(2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.

(3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

(1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.

(2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.

(3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

> **Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

(1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.

(2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:17 Genesis 4:25 Genesis 6:14 Genesis 7:4 Genesis 8:4 Genesis 8:9 Genesis 12:12 Genesis 12:12 Genesis 12:19 Genesis 12:20 Genesis 13:6 Genesis 19:32 Genesis 24:35 Genesis 26:14 Genesis 39:23

Connect — Background Information

Time Relationship

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Background Clause

Description

A background clause is one that describes something that is ongoing. Then, in the same sentence, another clause indicates an event that begins to happen during that time. These events are also simultaneous events, but they have the further relationship of background event and main event because the event that is already happening serves as the background for the other event, the one that is in focus. The background event simply provides the time frame or other context for the main event or events.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate a shift in time in different ways. You (the translator) need to understand how these shifts in time are indicated in the original languages in order to communicate them clearly in your own language. Background clauses often indicate a time that began long before the event that is in focus. Translators need to understand how both the source language and the target language communicate background events. Some English words that indicate background events are “now,” “when,” “while,” and “during.” Those words can also indicate simultaneous events. To tell the difference, ask yourself if all of the events seem to be equal in importance and started at about the same time. If so, they are probably simultaneous events. But if an event(s) is ongoing and another event(s) just started, then the ongoing event(s) is probably background to the other event(s). Some common phrases that indicate background events are “in those days” and “at that time.”

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> **When** Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods. (OBS Story 18 Frame 3)

Solomon began to worship foreign gods at a time when he was old. Being old is the background event. Worshiping other gods is the main event.

> And his parents went **every year** to Jerusalem to the Feast of the Passover. And when he was 12 years old, they went up according to the custom of the feast. (Luke 2:41-42 ULT)

The first event—going to Jerusalem—is ongoing and started long ago. We know this because of the words “every year.” Going to Jerusalem is the background event. Then an event begins that started during the time “when he was twelve years old.” So the main event is the specific time Jesus and his family traveled to Jerusalem for the Passover festival **when he was twelve years old.**

> And it came about that, **while** they were there, the days were fulfilled for her to give birth. (Luke 2:6 ULT)

Being in Bethlehem is the background event. The birth of the baby is the main event.

> And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness. (Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

This example begins with five background clauses (marked by commas), signalled as background by the words “while” and “during.” Then the main event happens: “the word of God came to John.”

Translation Strategies

If the way that the Background Clauses are marked is also clear in your language, then translate the Background Clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a Background Clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
(2) If your language marks Background Clauses in a different way than using connecting words (such as by using different verb forms), then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> And in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—**while** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **during** the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John, the son of Zechariah, in the wilderness. (Luke 3:1-2 ULT)

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that what follows is a background clause, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

> **It happened during the time that** Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, **and during the time that** Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, **and during the time that** his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, **and during the time that** Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, **and also during the time that** Annas and Caiaphas were high priests—**that** the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

(2) If your language marks background clauses in a different way than using connecting words, such as with different verb forms, then use that way.

> Pontius Pilate **was governing** Judea, and Herod **was ruling over** Galilee, and his brother Philip **was ruling over** the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias **was ruling over** Abilene, and Annas and Caiaphas **were being** high priests—the word of God **came** to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.

Example of Differences in Time Relationship Connecting Words:

Category	Example
Background setting	Yahweh's word was rare **in those days**;
Background repeated	there was no frequent prophetic vision.
Introduction of main event	**At that time**, **when** Eli
Background	**whose** eyesight had begun to grow dim so that he could not see well,
Simultaneous background	was lying down in his own bed.
Simultaneous background	The lamp of God **had not yet** gone out,
Simultaneous background	**and** Samuel was lying down to sleep in the temple of Yahweh,
Simultaneous background	where the ark of God was.
Main event	**Yahweh called to Samuel**,
Sequential event	who said, "Here I am." (1 Sam 3:1-4 ULT)

In the above example, the first two lines talk about a condition that was going on for a long time. This is the general, long-term background. We know this from the phrase "in those days." After the introduction of the main event ("At that time,"), there are several lines of simultaneous background. The first one is introduced by "when," and then three more follow, with the last connected by "and." The background clause introduced by "where" explains a little more about the background clause before it. Then the main event happens, followed by more events. Translators will need to think about the best

way to show these relationships in their language.

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:5 Genesis 4:2 Genesis 5:6 Genesis 5:9 Genesis 6:1 Genesis 11:1 Genesis 12:4 Genesis 13:2 Genesis 13:5 Genesis 13:13 Genesis 14:10 Genesis 14:13 Genesis 17:24 Genesis 18:10 Genesis 18:11 Genesis 20:4 Genesis 24:29 Genesis 24:52 Genesis 29:16 Genesis 38:24 Genesis 38:27 Genesis 41:8 Genesis 43:1 Genesis 43:2 Genesis 43:21 Genesis 47:27

Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Sequential Clause

Description

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense (Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a reference point in the context.) Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as “then,” “later,” “after,” “afterward,” “before,” “first,” and “when.” Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> **When** Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders. (OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers, and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word “**when**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter. (Revelation 10:10b ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We

know this because of the connecting word "**after**." The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate, and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word "**before**." However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so that the clauses come in the order that they happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector "**and**" connects four events. These are sequential events—each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general connector "and" is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.

Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.
(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)
>
> > Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah, **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)
>
> > For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

> For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see Sequence of Events.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:5 Genesis 4:8 Genesis 7:17

Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Simultaneous Clause

Description

A simultaneous clause is a time relationship that connects two or more events that occur at the same time.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate in many different ways that events occur simultaneously. These ways may vary based on whether or not something is causing the events to occur simultaneously. Connecting words that may indicate simultaneous events are words such as "while," "as," and "during." Often the Bible does not state a relationship between the events but simply says they occurred at the same time. It is important that you (the translator) know when a time relationship is implied and when it is not implied so that you can communicate it clearly. A simultaneous clause communicates that events happened at the same time but it does not indicate that one event caused the other. That would be a reason-and-result relationship.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> Joseph served his master well, **and** God blessed Joseph. (OBS Story 8 Frame 4)

Two events happened while Joseph was a slave to a wealthy government official: Joseph served well, and God blessed Joseph. There is no indication of a reason-and-result (cause and effect) relationship between the two, or that the first event happened, and then the second event happened.

> But in truth I say to you that there were many widows in Israel **during** the days of Elijah. (Luke 4:25b ULT)

The connecting word "**during**" tells us clearly that two things happened at the same time, but one event did not cause the other.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

The people were both waiting and wondering at the same time. The general connector "**and**" indicates this.

> **While** they were looking intensely into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

Three events happened at the same time — the disciples looking, Jesus going up, and two men standing. The connector words "**while**" and "**as**" tell us this.

Translation Strategies

If the way that the simultaneous clauses are marked also is clear in your language, then translate the simultaneous clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that the simultaneous clauses are happening at the same time, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
(2) If it is not clear which clause the simultaneous clause is connected to, and that they are happening at the same time, mark all of the clauses with a connecting word.
(3) If your language marks events as simultaneous in a different way than using connecting words, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Below, each Bible verse will be restated in three different ways, according to the translation strategies in the list above. Each restatement will have the same number as the translation strategy that it is using.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

(1) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(2) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were **also** wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(3) Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, wondering at his delaying in the temple.

> **While** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

(1) And **during the time** they were looking intently into heaven **while** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing.

(2) And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, **at that same time** two men stood by them in white clothing.

(3) They were looking intently into heaven; he was going up **when** they saw two men standing by them in white clothing.

Genesis References:

Genesis 8:8 Genesis 19:23

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

> It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.
>
> **Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: Hypothetical Statements.
- Goal Relationship — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- Contrast Relationship — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word “instead” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

> **Therefore,** whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word "therefore" links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. "Therefore" usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word "and" links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word "but" contrasts what one group of people will be called in God's kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

> We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God's servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words "so that" connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. "Instead" contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God's servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
(3) Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

> Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so."

> Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words “instead” or “then” here. They might translate like this:

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

> **Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:4 Genesis 1:5 Genesis 1:12 Genesis 1:27 Genesis 2:3 Genesis 2:6 Genesis 2:10 Genesis 3:5 Genesis 3:19 Genesis 4:18 Genesis 6:9 Genesis 6:16 Genesis 7:18 Genesis 8:10 Genesis 12:4 Genesis 14:8 Genesis 16:4 Genesis 16:9 Genesis 16:16 Genesis 17:6 Genesis 25:4 Genesis 25:11 Genesis 25:15 Genesis 26:3 Genesis 31:30 Genesis 41:31

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong,” which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

> They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

The footnotes would look like:

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] two and a half cubits
> [2] one cubit and a half

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:15 Genesis 6:16 Genesis 7:20 Genesis 21:16

Blessings

Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

> Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, "Yahweh be with you." And they said to him, "May Yahweh bless you." (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the

beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul's second letter to Timothy:

> Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT)
> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Add a verb if that is natural in your language.
2. Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.
3. Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

> The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb 'be.' However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the 'grace' from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide 'God' as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them."

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God's presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

> "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

"Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them."

"Our sister, by God's power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and

your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them.”

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:28 Genesis 9:26 Genesis 43:23 Genesis 47:7 Genesis 48:15

Biblical Money

Description

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day’s wage.

Unit in OT	**Metal**	**Weight**
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	**Metal**	**Day’s Wage**
denarius/ denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
(4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

> The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

1. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

> > "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

> > "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

> > "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

> > [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

> "The one owed **500 denarii**,1 and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)
>
> [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Genesis References:

Genesis 20:16 Genesis 23:15 Genesis 31:15
Genesis 33:19 Genesis 37:28 Genesis 43:21

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

> For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or

are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**."

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

> "For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters[1], and 220 liters[2] of seed will yield only 22 liters[3]."

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] one bath
> [2] one homer
> [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word "measure."

> When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
(2) Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount."
(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.
(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

> When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

> When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

(2) Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount."

> When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

> When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

> When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Genesis References:

Genesis 18:6

Biblical Weight

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”

5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath's spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as "3300 grams" or "3.3 kilograms," it can be translated as "about three and one half kilograms."
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say "about" in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

> The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms)** and **2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. 1"

The footnote would look like:

> [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Genesis References:

Genesis 24:22 Genesis 24:22

Kinship

Description

Kinship terms refer to those words used to describe people related to one another in familial relationships. These terms vary widely in their specificity from language to language. They range from the (Western) nuclear or immediate family (father-son, husband-wife) out to broad clan relationships in other cultures.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Depending on the language translators may need to use specific terms to designate the accurate kinship relationship. In some languages a different term may be used based on siblings' birth order. In others, the side of the family (father's or mother's), age, marital status, etc. may determine the term used. Different terms may be used based on the gender of the speaker and/or addressee. Translators may need to make sure they know the exact relationship between two related people in the Bible to find the correct term. Sometimes these terms are difficult even for native speakers to remember and translators may need to seek community help in finding the correct term. Another complicating issue is that the Bible may not give enough information about the relationship for translators to determine the correct term in the language being translated into. In this case, translators will have to use a more general term or simply pick a satisfactory term based on the limited information available.

Sometimes terms that seem like kinship terms are used for people who are not necessarily related. For instance, an older person may refer to a younger man or woman as "my son" or "my daughter."

Examples from the Bible

> Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is Abel **your brother**?" He said, "I do not know. Am I **my brother's** keeper?" (Genesis 4:9 ULT)

Abel was Cain's younger brother.

> Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock and said to them, "I see **your father's** attitude toward me has changed, but the God of my father has been with me." (Genesis 31:4-5 ULT)

Jacob is referring here to his father-in-law. In some languages there may be a specific term for a man's father-in-law, however, in this case it is better to retain the form **your father** as Jacob may be using it to distance himself from Laban.

> And Moses was shepherding the flock of Jethro **his father-in-law**, the priest of Midian. (Exodus3:1a ULT)

Unlike the previous instance, if your language has a term for a man's father-in-law this is a good place to use it.

> And **his sister** stationed herself at a distance to know what would be done to him. (Exodus 2:4 ULT)

From context we know that this was Miriam, Moses's older sister. In some languages this may require a specific term. In others, the term for older sister may be only used when the younger sibling is addressing and/or referring to his or her sister.

> Then she and **her daughters-in-law** arose to return from the fields of Moab (Ruth 1:6a ULT)

Ruth & Orpah are Naomi's daughters-in-law.

> Then she said, "Look, your sister-in-law has turned back to her people and to her gods." (Ruth 1:15 ULT)

Orpah had been the wife of Ruth's husband's brother. This may be a different term in your language than if she had been Ruth's husband's sister.

> Then Boaz said to Ruth, "Will you not listen to me, **my daughter**?" (Ruth 2:8a ULT)

Boaz is not Ruth's father; he is simply using the term to address a younger woman.

> And behold, **your relative** Elizabeth—she also has conceived a son in her old age, and this is the sixth month for her who was called barren. (Luke 1:36 ULT)

While the KJV translated this as **cousin**, the term simply means a related woman.

Translation Strategies

(1) Find out the exact relationship specified and translate using the term your language uses.

(2) If the text does not specify the relationship as clearly as your language would, either:

(a) settle on a more general term.

(b) use a specific term if required by your language, choosing the one that is most likely to be correct.

Translation Strategies Applied

This is not an issue in English, so the following illustrations draw on other languages.

In Korean, there are several terms for brother and sister, the use of them depends on the speaker's (or referent's) sex and birth order. Examples are from the Korean Living Bible, found on biblegateway.com

> Genesis 30:1 Rachel is jealous of her "eonni," which is the term a woman uses for her older sister.
>
> Genesis 34:31 Simeon and Levi refer to Dinah as "nui," a general term for sister.
>
> Genesis 37:16 Joseph refers to his brothers as "hyeong," which is the term a man uses for his older brother(s).
>
> Genesis 45:12 Joseph refers to Benjamin as "dongsaeng," which roughly means sibling, usually younger.

In Russian, in-law terms are complex. For instance, "nevéstka" is the term for a brother's (or brother-in-law's) wife; a woman uses the same term for her daughter-in-law but her husband would call the same daughter-in-law "snoxá." Examples from the Russian Synodal Version.

> Genesis 38:25 Tamar sends a message to her father-in-law, Judah. The term used is "svekor." This is used for a woman's husband's father.
>
> Exodus 3:1 Moses is watching his father-in-law's herd. The term used is "test'." This is used for a man's wife's father.

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:2 Genesis 4:8 Genesis 4:21 Genesis 9:25 Genesis 10:5 Genesis 10:8 Genesis 10:15 Genesis 10:15 Genesis 10:20 Genesis 10:20 Genesis 10:21 Genesis 10:26 Genesis 10:31 Genesis 11:26 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 24:48 Genesis 27:5 Genesis 27:6 Genesis 27:6 Genesis 28:2 Genesis 28:9 Genesis 34:25 Genesis 36:3 Genesis 36:22 Genesis 42:3 Genesis 42:4 Genesis 42:38 Genesis 43:14 Genesis 43:29 Genesis 44:20 Genesis 45:3 Genesis 45:12 Genesis 46:7

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name first indeed means "king of righteousness," and then also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beer Lahai Roi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> **Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)
>
> But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)
>
> > You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites.**
>
> At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)
>
> > At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)
>
> > She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’),** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)
>
> > She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why

the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> … a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)
>
> > … a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

> a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)
>
> > a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)
>
> > It came about in Iconium that **Paul**[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:11 Genesis 2:11 Genesis 2:14 Genesis 2:15 Genesis 2:19 Genesis 3:20 Genesis 3:20 Genesis 4:1 Genesis 4:1 Genesis 4:1 Genesis 4:22 Genesis 5:2 Genesis 5:29 Genesis 10:4 Genesis 10:13 Genesis 10:22 Genesis 10:23 Genesis 10:25 Genesis 11:9 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 12:9 Genesis 13:3 Genesis 13:7 Genesis 13:10 Genesis 14:1 Genesis 14:1 Genesis 14:1 Genesis 14:5 Genesis 14:9 Genesis 14:18 Genesis 16:11 Genesis 16:11 Genesis 16:13 Genesis 16:14 Genesis 17:1 Genesis 17:19 Genesis 19:37 Genesis 19:38 Genesis 20:1 Genesis 21:3 Genesis 22:2 Genesis 22:14 Genesis 23:2 Genesis 23:9 Genesis 23:19 Genesis 24:62 Genesis 25:2 Genesis 25:3 Genesis 25:6 Genesis 25:11 Genesis 25:13 Genesis 25:18 Genesis 25:25 Genesis 25:26 Genesis 25:30 Genesis 26:18 Genesis 26:20 Genesis 26:33 Genesis 28:2 Genesis 29:32 Genesis 29:33 Genesis 29:34 Genesis 29:35 Genesis 30:6 Genesis 30:8 Genesis 30:8 Genesis 30:11 Genesis 30:13 Genesis 30:18 Genesis 30:24 Genesis 31:47 Genesis 32:2 Genesis 32:28 Genesis 32:31 Genesis 33:17 Genesis 33:20 Genesis 35:8 Genesis 35:8 Genesis 35:10 Genesis 35:18 Genesis 35:18 Genesis 35:21 Genesis 35:27 Genesis 36:2 Genesis 36:2 Genesis 36:2 Genesis 36:39 Genesis 36:39 Genesis 38:3 Genesis 38:29 Genesis 40:2 Genesis 41:1 Genesis 41:51 Genesis 41:52 Genesis 46:5 Genesis 46:13 Genesis 46:15

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

> When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands.** (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

(1) Write numbers using numerals.
(2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
(4) Combine words for large numbers.
(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh’s house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh’s house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh’s house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents)**, **ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

> When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Genesis References:

Genesis 5:3 Genesis 5:12 Genesis 7:4 Genesis 7:6 Genesis 7:24

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.
(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.

> The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim … the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)
>
> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim … **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
> >
> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim … **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

> A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)
>
> > A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)
>
> > They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim … Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:5 Genesis 1:8 Genesis 1:13 Genesis 1:19 Genesis 1:23 Genesis 1:31 Genesis 2:2 Genesis 7:11 Genesis 8:13 Genesis 8:14

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

> And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:22 Genesis 17:3 Genesis 17:17 Genesis 19:1 Genesis 22:5 Genesis 23:7 Genesis 23:12 Genesis 24:2 Genesis 24:9 Genesis 24:26 Genesis 24:48 Genesis 24:52 Genesis 24:65 Genesis 28:18 Genesis 31:13 Genesis 31:54 Genesis 33:3 Genesis 33:6 Genesis 35:14 Genesis 37:7 Genesis 37:9 Genesis 37:29 Genesis 37:34 Genesis 41:42 Genesis 41:43 Genesis 41:43 Genesis 42:6 Genesis 43:26 Genesis 43:28 Genesis 44:13 Genesis 44:14 Genesis 47:29 Genesis 47:31 Genesis 48:12 Genesis 48:14 Genesis 49:8 Genesis 50:18

Irregular Use of Tenses

Description

Normally, languages indicate when an event happens by marking it as past, present, or future (or some subset of those categories) through using different verb tenses. But sometimes speakers use those verb tenses in other ways to draw special attention to what they are saying. This article will discuss three ways that this happens in the Bible.

Past For Future

In the Bible, sometimes the past tense is used to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is a figure of speech that is used in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is sometimes called the "predictive past" or "prophetic perfect."

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the past tense in prophecy to refer to future events may think that these are events that have already happened.

Examples From the Bible

> Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

> For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given; and the rule will be on his shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

> But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, "Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones." (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen far in the future, but he used the past tense when he said, "the Lord came."

Present For Past

In the Bible, sometimes the present tense is used to refer to events that happened in the past. This is a figure of speech that makes these events more vivid or prominent for the reader. The effect can be to draw the reader into the story because these events are told as though they are happening now. The reader, however, knows that the events happened in the past. This is sometimes called the "historical present."

> Now the mother-in-law of Simon was lying down, being sick with a fever, and immediately they speak to him concerning her. (Mark 1:30 ULT)

In the example above, Mark had been narrating events that happened in the past, using the past tense. But when he came to the part about the disciples speaking to Jesus about Simon's mother-in-law, he changed from past tense to present tense.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the present tense to refer to past events may think that these events are happening now or that the Bible translation makes no sense.

Examples From the Bible

> And Simon and the ones with him searched for him 37 and found him and say to him, "Everyone is seeking you." 38 And he says to them, "Let us go elsewhere, (Mark 1:36-38 ULT)

As in the above example, the historical present is often used to make direct speech stand out from the narrative.

> And he enters into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach. (Mark 1:21 ULT)

As in the above example, the historical present sometimes serves to set the scene for a new set of events. By using the historical present in this way, the writer draws the reader into the scene, and then relates the events using the past tense.

Present For Future

In the Bible, sometimes the present tense is used for a future event. Usually, this is to communicate that the event will happen very soon. Also, like the predictive past, this can communicate that the event is sure to happen or that the speaker is fully committed to making the event happen. This is sometimes called the "imminent future."

> And Moses said, "Thus says Yahweh: 'About the middle of the night I am going out in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

In the example above, Yahweh uses the present tense for something that he will do soon.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the present tense to refer to future events may think that these events are happening at the time of speaking or writing or that the Bible translation is confusing or wrong.

Examples From the Bible

> For behold me, raising up the Chaldeans, that fierce and impetuous nation… (Habakkuk 1:6 ULT)

> Therefore, remember from where you have fallen and repent and do the first works. But if not, I am coming to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place—if you do not repent. (Revelation 2:5 ULT)

In the examples above, God speaks of a future event as though he is doing it in the present. This is a way of emphasizing the certainty of the event.

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the present tense continues the sense of the predictive past, communicating future events that are sure to happen.

Translation Strategies

If the tense that is used in the Literal Translation would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
(2) Use the past tense to refer to past events.
(3) Use the tense that your language commonly uses to communicate the time of the event.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

> For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

> > For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, **I have delivered** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> > Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, **I will deliver** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand."

> And Moses said, "Thus says Yahweh: 'About the middle of the night **I am going out** in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

> > And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I will go out** in the midst of Egypt,

(2) Use the past tense to refer to past events.

> And Simon and the ones with him searched for him and found him and **say** to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” And he **says** to them, “Let us go elsewhere, (Mark 1:36-38 ULT)

> > And Simon and the ones with him searched for him and found him and **said** to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” And he **said** to them, “Let us go elsewhere,

> And he **enters** into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach. (Mark 1:21 ULT)

> > And he **entered** into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach.

(3) Use the tense that your language commonly uses to communicate the time of the event.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I have delivered** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> > Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I am delivering** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” Or: Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I am about to deliver** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.”

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I am going out** in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

> > And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I will be going out** in the midst of Egypt, Or: And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I shall certainly go out** in the midst of Egypt,

Genesis References:

Genesis 17:5 Genesis 20:3

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT New Testament on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. The ULT Old Testament is based on the Westminster Leningrad Codex, which is considered to be the best representative of the ancient copies. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> 10 See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. 11 [1]
>
> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest copies. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> 53 [Then everyone went to his own house … 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more.”] [2]
>
> [2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Psalm 100:3 ULT follows the Westminster Leningrad Codex. It says:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and not we**,

There are some other ancient copies that say:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and we are his**,

There is an unfoldingWord® Translation Note at that place to tell the translator about this other reading and that either one is an acceptable choice.

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include a footnote about the alternate reading such as the one that the ULT provides or one in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” 16 [1]

> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” 16 [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. 16 If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:8 Genesis 4:15 Genesis 47:21 Genesis 49:26

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can "borrow" the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to "borrow" words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

Examples From the Bible

> Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

> Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

> The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter "j" the same way that people pronounce the letter "y" when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft "th" sound in the English word "think," and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like "st" as in "stop."

There are several ways to borrow a word.

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

> צְפַנְיָה — A man's name in Hebrew letters.
>
> > "Zephaniah" — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

> Zephaniah — This is a man's name.
>
> > "Zephaniah" — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

> Zephaniah — If your language does not have the “z,” you could use “s.” If your writing system does not use “ph” you could use “f.” Depending on how you pronounce the “i” you could spell it with “i” or “ai” or “ay.”
>
> > “Sefania”
> >
> > “Sefanaia”
> >
> > “Sefanaya”

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:16 Genesis 6:4 Genesis 6:14 Genesis 10:4

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

> So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)
>
> > Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow.** (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
>
> > Your sins … will be white like **milk**.
> >
> > Your sins … will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
>
> > Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
>
> > We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)
>
> > I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)
>
> > to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:6 Genesis 1:8 Genesis 2:12 Genesis 2:12 Genesis 6:14 Genesis 8:7 Genesis 10:30 Genesis 12:6 Genesis 15:11 Genesis 18:1 Genesis 21:33 Genesis 24:20 Genesis 25:34 Genesis 28:12 Genesis 30:14 Genesis 30:37 Genesis 34:12 Genesis 35:4 Genesis 37:3 Genesis 38:18 Genesis 41:42 Genesis 41:42 Genesis 43:11 Genesis 43:11 Genesis 43:11 Genesis 50:2

Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

> 29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, 30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

> 29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples From the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

> 4-5 Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

> 4 However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), 5 if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

> 16-17 But Yahweh said to him, “I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park.” (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

> 16 Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, “From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. 17 But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die.” (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

(1) If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in translationStudio.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

> 2 You must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 ULT)
>
> 2-3 You must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:3 Genesis 20:18 Genesis 24:30 Genesis 36:7 Genesis 40:2

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day**. **Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story

> - Setting includes:
> - where the story takes place
> - when the story takes place
> - who is present when the story begins
> - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son (as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces a section of background information about Jesus' age and ancestors (Luke 3:23-38). The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain**, **rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said … (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said …."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain

how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> **And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son **(as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information. A set of parentheses is also a way to mark background information. Here, "as it was assumed" gives background information to the phrase, "He was the son." People assumed that Joseph was Jesus' father, although his true father was God.

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. **Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram**. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)
>
> > "**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

> "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:8 Genesis 2:15 Genesis 2:19
Genesis 4:2 Genesis 6:1 Genesis 11:30
Genesis 14:4 Genesis 16:1 Genesis 31:19
Genesis 31:25 Genesis 31:25 Genesis 31:32
Genesis 31:34 Genesis 39:1 Genesis 39:6
Genesis 42:6 Genesis 48:7 Genesis 48:10

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> **In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

> **And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

> **The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

> **Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

> **Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

> **Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he

did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

> 6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

> There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

> One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

> As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him … (Mark 2:14a ULT)

> As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and and said to him …

> As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …

> As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as "another time," or "someone."

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)
> — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

> **After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

> **Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.
>
> > **Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.
>
> > Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)
>
> > **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.
>
> > **This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)
>
> > **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come**.

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:3 Genesis 4:23 Genesis 7:10
Genesis 8:6 Genesis 9:20 Genesis 10:1
Genesis 11:2 Genesis 11:3 Genesis 11:31
Genesis 12:1 Genesis 15:12 Genesis 15:17
Genesis 17:1 Genesis 19:34 Genesis 21:22
Genesis 22:1 Genesis 22:20 Genesis 24:2
Genesis 24:15 Genesis 25:12 Genesis 25:29
Genesis 26:1 Genesis 27:1 Genesis 34:1
Genesis 37:23 Genesis 38:1 Genesis 39:7
Genesis 39:10 Genesis 40:20 Genesis 41:50
Genesis 42:1 Genesis 44:24 Genesis 48:1

Oath Formulas

An oath is a solemn promise that someone makes to another person to do something or to solemnly testify that something is true. The oath includes the idea that a bad thing will happen if the person making the oath does not do the thing promised or if what the person says is not true.

Description

There are two types of oath in the Bible. We can call the first type a “Promise” oath, and the second type a “Truth” oath.

Promise Oath

In this type of oath, the person saying it is promising to do something. As a guarantee that the person taking the oath will do what he promises, the person calls on God to witness the oath and to punish him severely if he does not do the thing promised. A complete Promise oath has four parts, but some of them are often left unspoken and only implied:

1. Calling on God to witness the oath and judge the person making it
2. Making the promise (may be implied as the opposite of the violation)
3. Telling what would be a violation of the oath (may be implied as the opposite of the promise)
4. Saying what punishment God would do if the person violates the oath (often implied)

Truth Oath

In this type of oath, the person saying it is affirming that what he is saying is true, and he guarantees that it is true by naming the life of God. Sometimes the person will not name God directly but will instead name something holy that is associated with God, such as the temple. In some situations, a person might name a revered person, such as a king. The implication is that if the person’s statement proves to be false, that person will lose any relationship to God or to the revered person.

These oaths have three parts, but the third part is implied and not stated:

1. Naming something holy, usually the life of God or of someone who is revered.
2. Making the statement.
3. Implied: The speaker and hearers of the oath understand that the speaker forfeits his relationship to God or to the revered person if his statement is false.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

People in some cultures may not be familiar with the practice of taking oaths, and so they may not understand what the people in the Bible are doing. In many languages, people would not take an oath the way that people did in the Bible, and so they might not recognize that the person is taking an oath. In the Old Testament, people often did not speak one or more parts of the oath, leaving those parts implied. The part that was most often left unspoken was the part that would tell what would happen if they break the oath. People believed that spoken words have power, and that speaking the part about punishment might cause the punishment to happen, so they often left that part to be understood silently. Because of these things, people might think that the person in the Bible is not making a real oath or they may not understand what the verse is talking about at all.

Examples From the Bible

Promise Oath

> “I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, ‘I made Abram rich.’ (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

In the verse above, Abram describes a symbolic action (raising his hand to Yahweh) to signal that he is taking an oath and calling on Yahweh as witness and judge. He says what would violate his oath (thus promising to do the opposite). Then he leaves out the part that would describe how Yahweh would

punish him if he fails to do what he is promising.

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

Ruth calls on Yahweh and includes the part about Yahweh punishing her, says what the violation would be (thus promising to do the opposite), but does not say what the punishment would be.

> And Saul said, "Thus may God do and thus may he add, for dying you will die, Jonathan." (1 Samuel 14:44 ULT)

Saul takes an oath that Jonathan will die, but does not specifically say whom God would punish, what the punishment would be, or what the person would do that would violate the oath and bring about God's punishment.

Truth Oath

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step!" (1 Samuel 20:3)

Here David uses a truth oath to convince Jonathan that Saul does indeed want to kill David. David says this because Jonathan had been trying to assure David that he had nothing to fear from Saul. But Jonathan knows that David holds both Yahweh's and Jonathan's life as sacred, and so this oath convinces Jonathan that David truly believes what he is saying.

> The life of your soul, my lord, I {am} the woman having stationed herself with you in this {place} to pray to Yahweh. (1 Samuel 1:26 ULT)

Hannah is speaking to the priest Eli. She demonstrates that she holds the priest's life as sacred by swearing by it that what she is saying is true.

And Elijah said, "The life of Yahweh of armies, before whom I stand, that I will appear before him today." (1 Kings 18:15 ULT)

Elijah uses this oath to convince Obadiah to announce his arrival to Ahab. Obadiah knows that Elijah would never break his relationship to Yahweh.

Combination oath

> The life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here. (Genesis 42:15)

Joseph is speaking to his brothers as an Egyptian official, and so he swears by the life of Pharaoh rather than by the life of the God of the Hebrews. Joseph combines the two types of oaths here by using a conditional "if" statement (part 3 of the "Promise" oath). He leaves unstated the "then" part of the oath which would be either a punishment from Pharoah (as with a Promise oath) or a breaking of relationship with Pharaoh (as with a "Truth" oath) if this conditional statement proves true.

Translation Strategies

If people who speak your language would recognize the oath as it is in the ULT, consider translating it in its current form. If not, consider using the following strategies.

(1) Add in the missing parts so that people recognize it as an oath.
(2) If oaths are unfamiliar, add a short explanation of what an oath is.
(3) Put the oath into a form that would be natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add in the missing parts so that people recognize it as an oath.

> "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.' (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

"I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, **and ask him to punish me severely** if from a thread

even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.'

> And Saul said, "Thus may God do and thus may he add, for dying you will die, Jonathan." (1 Samuel 14:44 ULT)

And Saul said, "May God **punish me severely** and may he add **even more punishment if I do not kill you**, for dying you will die, Jonathan."

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

But indeed, **I swear by** Yahweh's life and **by** the life of yourself that **it is true that** between me and death is like a step!

> The life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here. (Genesis 42:15)

I swear by the life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here, **may Pharaoh punish me severely**.

(2) If oaths are unfamiliar, add a short explanation of what an oath is.

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

Then Ruth called on Yahweh to enforce her promise: "May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you."

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

Then David made a statement to Jonathan to convince him that he truly believed that he was in danger: "But indeed, **I forfeit my relationship to** Yahweh and **to you** yourself **if it is not true** that between me and death is like a step!"

(3) Put the oath into a form that would be natural in your language.

> "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.' (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

"**I solemnly swear before** Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, **that I will not take** from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or from anything that {belongs} to you, **so help me God**, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.'

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

May Yahweh **strike me dead right where I stand** if death separates between me and between you.

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

But indeed, **before** Yahweh and **before you** yourself, **I swear** that between me and death is like a step!

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:22 Genesis 21:23

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

> Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** … **This man** came to Jesus at night … Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as "This man" and "him" when he has become an old participant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples From the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as "There was a man," as in the example below. The phrase "There was" tells us that this man existed. The word "a" in "a man" tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who is family was, and what his name was.

> **Now there was a man** from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah's wife is simply referred to as "his wife." This phrase shows her relationship to him.

> Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

> Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun "his," and his wife is referred to with the pronoun "she."

> **His wife** was barren and **she** had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to by the noun phrase "the wife."

> The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the wife** and he said to her … (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

> Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
(2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

> Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth … (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) — Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.
>
> > There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

> And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples." (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who "he" refers to.
>
> > It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples."

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

> Joseph's master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.
>
> > Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:1 Genesis 24:15 Genesis 24:21

Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

In poetry we commonly find:

- many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- arrangements of clauses into particular patterns such as:
  - parallel lines (See Parallelism)
  - acrostics (beginning lines with successive letters of the alphabet)
  - chiasms (in which the first line relates to the last line, the second to the next-to-last line, etc.):

> You should not give what is holy to the dogs,
>
> > and should not throw your pearls in front of the pigs.
> >
> > Otherwise they will trample them under their feet,
>
> and having turned, they might tear you to pieces. (Matt 7:6 ULT)

- repetition of some or all of a line:

> Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his hosts. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- lines of similar length:

> Listen to my call to you,
>
> Yahweh; think about my groanings.
>
> Listen to the sound of my call, my King and my God,
>
> for it is to you that I pray. (Psalm 5:1-2 ULT)

- the same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines:

> “Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**.” (from an English rhyme)

- the same sound repeated many times:

> “Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater” (from an English rhyme)

- The same root word used as both a verb and as a noun:

> Your old men will **dream dreams** (Joel 2:28 ULT)

> Yahweh,…**light lightning** and scatter them (Psalm 144:5-6 ULT)

We also find:

- old words and expressions
- dramatic imagery
- different use of grammar — including:
  - incomplete sentences
  - lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children’s games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language’s features of

poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language, you may need to write it without the poetry.
- Different languages use different poetic devices. A poetic device that conveys elegance or emotion in a biblical language may be confusing or misunderstood in another language.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples From the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely made up of poetry.

> … for you saw my affliction; you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7b ULT)

This example of Parallelism has two lines that mean the same thing.

> Yahweh, judge the nations; vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High. (Psalm 7:8 ULT)

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See Parallelism.)

> Keep your servant also from arrogant sins; let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13a ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See Personification.)

> Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good,
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endure
>
> Oh, give thanks to the God of gods,
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endure
>
> Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endure

(Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked, or stand in the pathway with sinners, or sit in the assembly of mockers. But his delight is in the law of Yahweh, and on his law he meditates day and night. (Psalm 1:1-2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1-2.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example

has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

> "Happy is the person not encouraged **to sin**, Disrespect for God he will not **begin**, To those who laugh at God he is **no kin.** God is his constant **delight**, He does what God says **is right**, He thinks of it all day **and night**."

(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

> This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people nor stop along the road to speak with sinners nor join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather, he takes great joy in Yahweh's law, and he meditates on it day and night.

(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

> The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or join with those who do not respect God. Instead, they love to obey Yahweh's law, and they think about it all the time.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:20 Genesis 2:4 Genesis 8:17 Genesis 8:17 Genesis 46:1 Genesis 49:1

Politeness

Description

People say certain things, or say things in a certain way, in order to communicate that they respect the people to whom they are speaking. We can refer to this as speaking politely. The ways of speaking politely are generally agreed on by those who share a culture. People also use polite ways of speaking to avoid offending others. This can be especially important if the person being addressed has an influential or powerful position.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

Every language has ways to communicate politeness to other speakers of that language, but different languages do not communicate politeness in the same ways. A phrase that is polite in one language may be offensive in another language, or it may simply be confusing. Translators need to recognize politeness in the Bible and communicate the same polite meaning using the appropriate form of politeness in the target language.

Examples From the Bible

> **do not trouble yourself** (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The centurion sent friends to give Jesus this polite message that Jesus should not come to his house.

> **I ask you, have me excused** (Luke 14:18 ULT)

In this culture, this was a polite formula for declining a social invitation.

> **May I find favor in your eyes, my lord**, since you have comforted me, and since you have spoken to the heart of **your female servant**. (Ruth 2:13 ULT)

Ruth uses several phrases of politeness as she talks to Boaz. **May I find favor in your eyes** is an idiomatic phrase that communicates that Boaz is in a high position, **my lord** is an honorific form of address, and she refers to

herself humbly as **your female servant** even though she is not actually one of his servants.

> **Please** let **a little** water be brought… Let me also bring **a bit** of bread (Genesis 18:4-5 ULT)

Abraham describes his generosity as something small in order to be polite. This was a way to communicate to his guests that they were not imposing on him at all. Abraham also uses a word translated as "please" to make his request more polite.

> Then he brought him outside and said, "**Please** look at the heavens and count the stars…" (Genesis 15:5)

In the above example, God is speaking to Abram, inviting him to look at the stars. He also uses the word translated as "please." God has no need to be polite, but this communicates respect for Abram.

Honorifics

A specific category of politeness is the way that people address other people who are important, powerful, or worthy of honor in other ways. We can refer to this form of politeness as using honorific language. Honorific language can be in the form of special titles or, in some languages, special forms of the words used.

> to the **most excellent** Governor Felix (Acts 23:26 ULT)

The expression **most excellent** was an honorific title by which people addressed Roman government officials.

> **O king, live forever!** (Daniel 5:10 ULT)

This was the polite and respectful way to address the king before saying anything else to him.

Politeness under other categories

People often use language that is non-standard or figurative to communicate politeness. In these cases, there will be a Translation Note under the category of the figure of speech rather than under the category of politeness. The Note will discuss the issue of the figurative speech and then also mention that this is being used to be polite. For example, the following verses will have Translation Notes under the categories given rather than under politeness.

Metaphor

> Men, **brothers and fathers**, hear my defense to you now. (Acts 22:1 ULT)

Paul is using the word **brothers** to refer to his fellow Israelites. He is using the word **fathers** to refer either to Jewish leaders who may be present or to Jewish men who are older than he is. In both cases he is speaking respectfully.

Idiom

> **I beg of you**, about whom is the prophet saying this…? (Acts 8:34 ULT)

The Ethiopian official is using an idiomatic expression as a polite way to introduce a request.

Symbolic action

> **And having fallen down**, they worshiped him (Matt 2:11 ULT)

The act of kneeling down before someone showed deep respect for the person.

Speaking of oneself in the third person

> please do not pass by **your servant**. (Gen 18:3 ULT)

Abraham refers to himself as **your servant** here in order to show respect to his guests.

Euphemism

> And having said this, **he fell asleep**. (Acts 7:60 ULT)

Luke is describing the death of Stephen when he says **he fell asleep**. He is using this polite way of referring to something unpleasant to avoid offending his readers.

Other Uses of the Imperative

> **You pray to the Lord for me**, so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me. (Acts 8:24 ULT)

The verb **pray** is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command.

Rhetorical question

> **Lord, are you not concerned that my sister has left me alone to serve**? (Luke 10:40 ULT)

Martha is complaining that Jesus is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. But Martha respects Jesus, so she uses the question form to make her complaint more polite.

Translation Strategies

If the phrase used in the ULT would be natural and be a polite expression in your language, consider using it. If not, use the strategy below.

(1) Use a phrase that would be both natural and polite in your language for this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that would be both natural and polite in your language for this situation.

> **do not trouble yourself** (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I do not want you to go out of your way
or
Please do not bother

> **I ask you, have me excused** (Luke 14:18 ULT)

Please accept my apology for not being able to attend

> **May I find favor in your eyes, my lord**, since you have comforted me, and since you have spoken to the heart of **your female servant**. (Ruth 2:13 ULT)

You are too kind to me, good sir; you have comforted me and you have spoken to my heart **even though I am not worthy of it**.

> Please let **a little** water be brought… Let me also bring **a bit** of bread (Genesis 18:4-5 ULT)

I have **plenty** of water… I also have **plenty** of food

> "**Please** look at the heavens and count the stars…" (Genesis 15:5)

"Look up at the heavens, **if you will**, and count the stars…"

> **O king, live forever!** (Daniel 5:10 ULT)

Your majesty, **I wish you well**!

> **I beg of you**, about whom is the prophet saying this…? (Acts 8:34 ULT)

Please tell me, about whom is the prophet saying this…?

> **You pray to the Lord for me**, so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me. (Acts 8:24 ULT)

Please pray to the Lord for me so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me.
or
I ask you to pray to the Lord for me so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me.

> **Lord, are you not concerned that my sister has left me alone to serve**? (Luke 10:40 ULT)

Lord, it seems as if you do not care that my sister has left me alone to serve.

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:1 Genesis 14:21 Genesis 14:24
Genesis 15:2 Genesis 15:3 Genesis 18:3
Genesis 18:12 Genesis 19:2 Genesis 19:2
Genesis 19:2 Genesis 19:7 Genesis 19:18
Genesis 19:31 Genesis 20:3 Genesis 20:4
Genesis 20:18 Genesis 22:1 Genesis 22:11
Genesis 23:4 Genesis 23:6 Genesis 23:11
Genesis 23:13 Genesis 23:15 Genesis 23:15
Genesis 24:14 Genesis 24:18 Genesis 24:33
Genesis 24:43 Genesis 24:43 Genesis 24:46
Genesis 24:51 Genesis 24:55 Genesis 26:16
Genesis 27:1 Genesis 27:25 Genesis 27:31
Genesis 29:7 Genesis 29:25 Genesis 30:25
Genesis 31:35 Genesis 31:46 Genesis 32:4
Genesis 32:5 Genesis 32:18 Genesis 32:24
Genesis 32:29 Genesis 33:14 Genesis 33:15
Genesis 40:14 Genesis 40:17 Genesis 41:9
Genesis 41:16 Genesis 42:2 Genesis 42:7
Genesis 42:10 Genesis 43:20 Genesis 43:28
Genesis 44:7 Genesis 44:9 Genesis 44:9
Genesis 44:16 Genesis 44:18 Genesis 44:18
Genesis 44:21 Genesis 44:24 Genesis 44:30
Genesis 44:33 Genesis 46:31 Genesis 46:34
Genesis 47:3 Genesis 47:8 Genesis 47:18

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase “this man.” Then he is referred to with the pronoun “him.”

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

> Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom "he" in the second sentence refers to.

> Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

> Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)
>
> > Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **he** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:7 Genesis 1:22 Genesis 1:27 Genesis 2:3 Genesis 2:7 Genesis 2:21 Genesis 3:1 Genesis 3:8 Genesis 3:8 Genesis 3:11 Genesis 3:15 Genesis 4:10 Genesis 4:17 Genesis 5:7 Genesis 5:10 Genesis 5:13 Genesis 5:13 Genesis 5:16 Genesis 5:19 Genesis 5:26 Genesis 6:4 Genesis 6:6 Genesis 6:9 Genesis 8:1 Genesis 8:9 Genesis 9:7 Genesis 9:9 Genesis 9:18 Genesis 9:23 Genesis 9:26 Genesis 10:25 Genesis 11:2 Genesis 11:6 Genesis 11:7 Genesis 11:11 Genesis 11:13 Genesis 11:17 Genesis 11:21 Genesis 11:25 Genesis 11:25 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 12:7 Genesis 12:8 Genesis 12:15 Genesis 12:16 Genesis 12:20 Genesis 13:11 Genesis 13:11 Genesis 14:4 Genesis 14:11 Genesis 14:17 Genesis 14:20 Genesis 15:5 Genesis 15:5 Genesis 15:6 Genesis 15:6 Genesis 15:8 Genesis 15:13 Genesis 15:13 Genesis 16:6 Genesis 16:12 Genesis 17:22 Genesis 18:7 Genesis 18:8 Genesis 18:8 Genesis 18:10 Genesis 18:19 Genesis 18:29 Genesis 18:30 Genesis 18:30 Genesis 19:5 Genesis 19:9 Genesis 19:13 Genesis 19:21 Genesis 19:28 Genesis 19:32 Genesis 19:33 Genesis 20:7 Genesis 20:8 Genesis 20:9 Genesis 20:14 Genesis 21:4 Genesis 22:1 Genesis 22:7 Genesis 22:10 Genesis 22:12 Genesis 24:23 Genesis 24:29 Genesis 24:30 Genesis 24:32 Genesis 24:58 Genesis 26:2 Genesis 29:12 Genesis 29:23 Genesis 29:25 Genesis 30:6 Genesis 30:39 Genesis 31:21 Genesis 31:44 Genesis 31:49 Genesis 32:2 Genesis 32:25 Genesis 32:25 Genesis 32:25 Genesis 33:5 Genesis 33:11 Genesis 33:13 Genesis 35:18 Genesis 37:2 Genesis 37:4 Genesis 39:4 Genesis 39:4 Genesis 39:14 Genesis 39:16 Genesis 39:19 Genesis 39:20 Genesis 40:7 Genesis 41:6 Genesis 41:36 Genesis 42:24 Genesis 43:2 Genesis 43:2 Genesis 44:12 Genesis 44:13 Genesis 45:1 Genesis 45:24 Genesis 46:28 Genesis 47:3 Genesis 47:6 Genesis 47:30 Genesis 47:31 Genesis 47:31 Genesis 48:1 Genesis 48:9 Genesis 48:10 Genesis 48:10 Genesis 48:12 Genesis 48:19 Genesis 49:17 Genesis 49:19 Genesis 49:23 Genesis 50:23

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, "The food is ready. Come and eat."
- "The food is ready. Come and eat," **she said**.
- "The food is ready," **she said.** "Come and eat."

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning "said."

> But his mother **answered** and **said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (“ ”). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning "said."
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples From the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

> **Then Zechariah said to the angel**, "How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days." (Luke 1:18 ULT)

> Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, "Teacher, what should we do?" (Luke 3:12 ULT)

> So **he said to them**, "Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered." (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

> Yahweh relented concerning this. "It will not happen," **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

> "I will hide my face from them," **he said,** "and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful." (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

> For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh's declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning "said."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

> **He said**, “Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)
>
> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”
> >
> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.
> >
> > “Therefore, those who can,” **he said**, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

> But his mother **answered and said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)
>
> > But his mother **replied**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
> >
> > But his mother **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
> >
> > But his mother **answered** like this. “No. Rather, he will be called John,” she **said**.

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:3 Genesis 1:6 Genesis 1:9 Genesis 1:11 Genesis 1:14 Genesis 1:20 Genesis 1:26 Genesis 1:28 Genesis 1:29 Genesis 3:2 Genesis 3:4 Genesis 3:9 Genesis 3:10 Genesis 3:13 Genesis 4:6 Genesis 4:9 Genesis 4:9 Genesis 4:13 Genesis 4:15 Genesis 8:15 Genesis 9:1 Genesis 9:8 Genesis 9:12 Genesis 9:17 Genesis 9:25 Genesis 12:7 Genesis 12:18 Genesis 14:19 Genesis 15:2 Genesis 15:3 Genesis 16:6 Genesis 16:8 Genesis 16:10 Genesis 17:3 Genesis 17:9 Genesis 17:18 Genesis 17:19 Genesis 18:5 Genesis 18:9 Genesis 18:9 Genesis 18:10 Genesis 18:13 Genesis 18:17 Genesis 18:20 Genesis 18:23 Genesis 18:26 Genesis 18:28 Genesis 18:29 Genesis 18:29 Genesis 18:31 Genesis 18:31 Genesis 18:32 Genesis 18:32 Genesis 19:7 Genesis 19:9 Genesis 19:12 Genesis 19:17 Genesis 20:4 Genesis 20:9 Genesis 20:10 Genesis 20:13 Genesis 20:15 Genesis 21:7 Genesis 21:24 Genesis 22:2 Genesis 22:7 Genesis 22:7 Genesis 22:8 Genesis 22:11 Genesis 23:5 Genesis 23:8 Genesis 23:10 Genesis 23:10 Genesis 23:13 Genesis 23:14 Genesis 24:5 Genesis 24:6 Genesis 24:12 Genesis 24:17 Genesis 24:19 Genesis 24:23 Genesis 24:24 Genesis 24:25 Genesis 24:31 Genesis 24:33 Genesis 24:33 Genesis 24:34 Genesis 24:37 Genesis 24:47 Genesis 24:57 Genesis 24:60 Genesis 25:22 Genesis 25:23 Genesis 25:30 Genesis 25:31 Genesis 25:32 Genesis 26:2 Genesis 26:7 Genesis 26:9 Genesis 26:9 Genesis 26:10 Genesis 26:16 Genesis 26:28 Genesis 26:32 Genesis 27:1 Genesis 27:2 Genesis 27:11 Genesis 27:13 Genesis 27:18 Genesis 27:19 Genesis 27:24 Genesis 27:25 Genesis 27:26 Genesis 27:31 Genesis 27:32 Genesis 27:34 Genesis 27:35 Genesis 27:38 Genesis 27:39 Genesis 27:41 Genesis 27:42 Genesis 27:46 Genesis 28:1 Genesis 29:4 Genesis 29:4 Genesis 29:5 Genesis 29:6 Genesis 29:7 Genesis 29:8 Genesis 29:14 Genesis 29:15 Genesis 29:18 Genesis 29:26 Genesis 29:34 Genesis 30:1 Genesis 30:3 Genesis 30:6 Genesis 30:15 Genesis 30:16 Genesis 30:18 Genesis 30:27 Genesis 30:28 Genesis 30:29 Genesis 30:31 Genesis 30:31 Genesis 30:34 Genesis 31:3 Genesis 31:11 Genesis 31:12 Genesis 31:14 Genesis 31:26 Genesis 31:31 Genesis 31:35 Genesis 31:36 Genesis 31:43 Genesis 31:48 Genesis 32:4 Genesis 32:6 Genesis 32:9 Genesis 32:26 Genesis 32:26 Genesis 32:27 Genesis 32:29 Genesis 33:5 Genesis 33:8 Genesis 33:8 Genesis 33:9 Genesis 33:10 Genesis 33:15 Genesis 35:1 Genesis 35:10 Genesis 35:11 Genesis 37:10 Genesis 37:17 Genesis 37:21 Genesis 37:22 Genesis 37:30 Genesis 38:18 Genesis 38:22 Genesis 38:23

Genesis 38:24 Genesis 38:24 Genesis 38:25
Genesis 38:29 Genesis 39:7 Genesis 39:8
Genesis 39:12 Genesis 39:14 Genesis 39:17
Genesis 40:8 Genesis 40:8 Genesis 40:16
Genesis 40:18 Genesis 41:9 Genesis 41:15
Genesis 41:16 Genesis 41:17 Genesis 41:25
Genesis 41:41 Genesis 42:2 Genesis 42:12
Genesis 42:13 Genesis 42:14 Genesis 42:28
Genesis 42:37 Genesis 42:38 Genesis 43:3
Genesis 43:20 Genesis 43:29 Genesis 44:4
Genesis 44:7 Genesis 44:15 Genesis 44:16
Genesis 44:17 Genesis 44:20 Genesis 45:17
Genesis 46:34 Genesis 47:4 Genesis 47:9
Genesis 47:15 Genesis 47:16 Genesis 47:18
Genesis 47:23 Genesis 47:25 Genesis 48:3
Genesis 48:4 Genesis 48:5 Genesis 48:20
Genesis 48:21 Genesis 49:29 Genesis 50:2

Appendix: Translation Words

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and did not want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, false god, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

Genesis References:

Genesis 43:32 Genesis 46:34

Almighty

Definition:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord)

Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2-5
- Genesis 17:1
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 8:3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Ruth 1:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7706, G38410

Genesis References:

Genesis 17:1 Genesis 28:3 Genesis 35:11 Genesis 43:14 Genesis 48:3 Genesis 49:25

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

Genesis References:

Genesis 8:20 Genesis 8:20 Genesis 12:7
Genesis 12:8 Genesis 13:4 Genesis 13:18
Genesis 22:9 Genesis 22:9 Genesis 26:25
Genesis 33:20 Genesis 35:1 Genesis 35:3
Genesis 35:7

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.

- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

Genesis References:

Genesis 16:7 Genesis 16:9 Genesis 16:10
Genesis 16:11 Genesis 19:1 Genesis 19:15
Genesis 21:17 Genesis 22:11 Genesis 22:15
Genesis 24:7 Genesis 24:40 Genesis 28:12
Genesis 31:11 Genesis 32:1 Genesis 48:16

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil. Often this was a Symbolic Action, representing God empowering that person with the Holy Spirit for special service to him.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship.
- People prepared dead bodies for burial by anointing them with perfumed oils and spices.
- In the New Testament, receiving the Holy Spirit is described as anointing.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour/put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring oil on” or “consecrate” or “appoint.”
- Depending on the context, to “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated” or “be given the Holy Spirit.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:13

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

Genesis References:

Genesis 17:21 Genesis 18:14 Genesis 21:2
Genesis 24:14 Genesis 24:44 Genesis 40:4
Genesis 41:33 Genesis 41:34 Genesis 47:6

ark

Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, basket)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:6
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0727, H8392, G27870

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:14 Genesis 6:14 Genesis 6:15 Genesis 6:16 Genesis 6:16 Genesis 6:18 Genesis 7:1 Genesis 7:9 Genesis 7:13 Genesis 7:15 Genesis 7:17 Genesis 7:18 Genesis 7:23 Genesis 8:1 Genesis 8:4 Genesis 8:6 Genesis 8:9 Genesis 8:9 Genesis 8:10 Genesis 8:13 Genesis 8:16 Genesis 8:19 Genesis 9:10 Genesis 9:18

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, covenant, atonement, holy place, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

Genesis References:

Genesis 50:26

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
- To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
- The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

Translation Suggestions:

- To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
- To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."
- Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ."
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him."
- Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus."
- The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing."
- The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26

- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:6

birthright

Definition:

The term “birthright” in the Bible refers to the honor, family name, and physical wealth that was normally given to the firstborn son in a family.

- The birthright of the firstborn son included a double portion of the father’s inheritance.
- A king’s firstborn son was normally given the birthright to rule after his father died.
- Esau sold his birthright to his younger brother Jacob. Because of this, Jacob inherited the blessing of the firstborn instead of Esau.
- The birthright also included the honor of having the family descendants traced through the firstborn son’s line.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible ways to translate “birthright” could include, “rights and wealth of the firstborn son” or “family honor” or “privilege and inheritance of the firstborn.”

(See also: firstborn, inherit, descendant)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:1
- Genesis 25:34
- Genesis 43:33
- Hebrews 12:14-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1062, G44150

Genesis References:

Genesis 25:31 Genesis 25:32 Genesis 25:33
Genesis 25:34 Genesis 27:36 Genesis 43:33

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34

- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:22 Genesis 1:28 Genesis 2:3 Genesis 5:2 Genesis 9:1 Genesis 9:26 Genesis 12:2 Genesis 12:2 Genesis 12:3 Genesis 12:3 Genesis 12:3 Genesis 14:19 Genesis 14:19 Genesis 14:20 Genesis 17:16 Genesis 17:16 Genesis 17:20 Genesis 18:18 Genesis 22:17 Genesis 22:18 Genesis 24:1 Genesis 24:27 Genesis 24:31 Genesis 24:35 Genesis 24:48 Genesis 24:60 Genesis 25:11 Genesis 26:3 Genesis 26:4 Genesis 26:12 Genesis 26:24 Genesis 26:29 Genesis 27:4 Genesis 27:7 Genesis 27:10 Genesis 27:12 Genesis 27:19 Genesis 27:23 Genesis 27:25 Genesis 27:27 Genesis 27:27 Genesis 27:29 Genesis 27:29 Genesis 27:30 Genesis 27:31 Genesis 27:33 Genesis 27:33 Genesis 27:34 Genesis 27:35 Genesis 27:36 Genesis 27:36 Genesis 27:38 Genesis 27:38 Genesis 27:41 Genesis 28:1 Genesis 28:3 Genesis 28:4 Genesis 28:6 Genesis 28:6 Genesis 28:14 Genesis 30:27 Genesis 30:30 Genesis 31:55 Genesis 32:26 Genesis 32:29 Genesis 33:11 Genesis 35:9 Genesis 39:5 Genesis 39:5 Genesis 47:7 Genesis 47:10 Genesis 48:3 Genesis 48:9 Genesis 48:15 Genesis 48:16 Genesis 48:20 Genesis 48:20 Genesis 49:25 Genesis 49:25 Genesis 49:25 Genesis 49:25 Genesis 49:26 Genesis 49:26 Genesis 49:28 Genesis 49:28 Genesis 49:28

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:9 Genesis 37:7 Genesis 38:28
Genesis 42:24 Genesis 44:30 Genesis 49:11

call, called, call out, called out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out,” in this sense, mean to speak loudly.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- In some contexts the terms “call” and “call out” mean to loudly ask for help.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.

(See also: pray, cry, call to summon, call name)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:5 Genesis 1:5 Genesis 1:8 Genesis 1:10 Genesis 1:10 Genesis 2:19 Genesis 2:20 Genesis 2:23 Genesis 3:9 Genesis 3:20 Genesis 4:17 Genesis 4:25 Genesis 4:26 Genesis 4:26 Genesis 5:2 Genesis 5:3 Genesis 5:29 Genesis 11:9 Genesis 12:8 Genesis 12:18 Genesis 13:4 Genesis 16:11 Genesis 16:13 Genesis 16:14 Genesis 16:15 Genesis 17:5 Genesis 17:15 Genesis 17:19 Genesis 19:5 Genesis 19:22 Genesis 19:37 Genesis 19:38 Genesis 20:8 Genesis 20:9 Genesis 21:3 Genesis 21:12 Genesis 21:17 Genesis 21:31 Genesis 21:33 Genesis 22:11 Genesis 22:14 Genesis 22:15 Genesis 24:57 Genesis 24:58 Genesis 25:25 Genesis 25:26 Genesis 25:30 Genesis 26:9 Genesis 26:18 Genesis 26:18 Genesis 26:20 Genesis 26:21 Genesis 26:25 Genesis 26:33 Genesis 27:1 Genesis 27:36 Genesis 27:42 Genesis 28:1 Genesis 28:19 Genesis 29:32 Genesis 29:33 Genesis 29:34 Genesis 29:35 Genesis 30:6 Genesis 30:8 Genesis 30:11 Genesis 30:13 Genesis 30:18 Genesis 30:20 Genesis 30:21 Genesis 30:24 Genesis 31:4 Genesis 31:47 Genesis 31:47 Genesis 31:48 Genesis 31:54 Genesis 32:2 Genesis 32:28 Genesis 32:30 Genesis 33:17 Genesis 33:20 Genesis 35:7 Genesis 35:8 Genesis 35:10 Genesis 35:10 Genesis 35:15 Genesis 35:18 Genesis 38:3 Genesis 38:5 Genesis 38:29 Genesis 38:30 Genesis 39:14 Genesis 41:8 Genesis 41:14 Genesis 41:43 Genesis 41:45 Genesis 41:51 Genesis 41:52 Genesis 45:1 Genesis 46:33 Genesis 47:29 Genesis 48:6 Genesis 48:16 Genesis 49:1 Genesis 50:11

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.

- The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."

- The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.

- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who do not belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."

- The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 5:3
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 1:20
- Jeremiah 9:26
- Ezekiel 32:25

- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:3
- Acts 15:1
- Acts 11:3
- Romans 2:27
- Galatians 5:3
- Ephesians 2:11
- Philippians 3:3
- Colossians 2:11
- Colossians 2:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:3** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **5:5** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G02030, G05640, G19860, G40590, G40610

Genesis References:

Genesis 17:10 Genesis 17:11 Genesis 17:12
Genesis 17:13 Genesis 17:14 Genesis 17:14
Genesis 17:23 Genesis 17:24 Genesis 17:25
Genesis 17:26 Genesis 17:27 Genesis 21:4
Genesis 34:15 Genesis 34:17 Genesis 34:22
Genesis 34:22 Genesis 34:24

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "deep caring" or "pity" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 5:9-11
- Jonah 4:1-3
- Mark 1:41
- Romans 9:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G16530, G33560, G36270, G46970, G48340, G48350

Genesis References:

Genesis 43:14 Genesis 43:30

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** “The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:18 Genesis 9:9 Genesis 9:11
Genesis 9:12 Genesis 9:13 Genesis 9:15
Genesis 9:16 Genesis 9:17 Genesis 14:13
Genesis 15:18 Genesis 17:2 Genesis 17:4
Genesis 17:7 Genesis 17:7 Genesis 17:9
Genesis 17:10 Genesis 17:11 Genesis 17:13
Genesis 17:13 Genesis 17:14 Genesis 17:19
Genesis 17:19 Genesis 17:21 Genesis 21:27
Genesis 21:32 Genesis 26:28 Genesis 31:44

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: "faithful love;" "loyal, committed love;" or "loving dependability."

(See also: covenant, faithful, grace, Israel, people of God, promise)

Bible References:

- Ezra 3:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

Genesis References:

Genesis 20:13 Genesis 21:23 Genesis 24:12
Genesis 24:14 Genesis 24:27 Genesis 24:49
Genesis 32:10 Genesis 39:21 Genesis 47:29

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed**!"
- **2:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **4:4** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:14 Genesis 3:17 Genesis 4:11
Genesis 5:29 Genesis 8:21 Genesis 9:25
Genesis 12:3 Genesis 27:12 Genesis 27:13
Genesis 27:29 Genesis 27:29 Genesis 49:7

dominion

Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- Colossians 1:13
- Jude 1:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:26 Genesis 1:28 Genesis 3:16
Genesis 4:7 Genesis 24:2 Genesis 37:8

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”

- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”

- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”

- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”

- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”

- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”

- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:22 Genesis 6:3 Genesis 9:12 Genesis 9:16 Genesis 13:15 Genesis 17:7 Genesis 17:8 Genesis 17:13 Genesis 17:19 Genesis 21:33 Genesis 48:4

evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does."
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:9 Genesis 2:17 Genesis 3:5 Genesis 3:22 Genesis 6:5 Genesis 6:5 Genesis 8:21 Genesis 13:13 Genesis 18:23 Genesis 18:25 Genesis 18:25 Genesis 19:7 Genesis 19:9 Genesis 19:19 Genesis 21:11 Genesis 21:12 Genesis 24:50 Genesis 26:29 Genesis 28:8 Genesis 31:7 Genesis 31:24 Genesis 31:29 Genesis 31:29 Genesis 31:52 Genesis 37:2 Genesis 37:20 Genesis 37:33 Genesis 38:7 Genesis 38:10 Genesis 39:9 Genesis 41:3 Genesis 41:4 Genesis 41:19 Genesis 41:19 Genesis 41:20 Genesis 41:21 Genesis 41:27 Genesis 44:4 Genesis 44:5 Genesis 44:34 Genesis 47:9 Genesis 48:16 Genesis 48:17 Genesis 50:15 Genesis 50:17 Genesis 50:20

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.

- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:30 Genesis 31:32 Genesis 31:53 Genesis 35:2 Genesis 35:4

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term "favor" generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression "find favor" with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
- A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term "favoritism" means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include "approval" or "blessing" or "benefit."
- The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
- The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:8 Genesis 12:13 Genesis 18:3 Genesis 19:19 Genesis 30:27 Genesis 32:5 Genesis 33:8 Genesis 33:10 Genesis 33:11 Genesis 33:15 Genesis 34:11 Genesis 39:4 Genesis 39:21 Genesis 47:25 Genesis 47:29 Genesis 50:4

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms "fear" often refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect," or "deep respect;" "revere," or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
- The phrase "fear Yahweh" could be translated as "reverence Yahweh" or "deeply respect Yahweh."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."

(See also: awe, Yahweh, Lord, marvel, power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:10 Genesis 9:2 Genesis 15:1 Genesis 18:15 Genesis 19:30 Genesis 20:8 Genesis 20:11 Genesis 21:17 Genesis 22:12 Genesis 26:7 Genesis 26:24 Genesis 28:17 Genesis 31:31 Genesis 31:42 Genesis 31:53 Genesis 32:7 Genesis 32:11 Genesis 35:17 Genesis 42:18 Genesis 42:35 Genesis 43:18 Genesis 43:23 Genesis 46:3 Genesis 50:19 Genesis 50:21

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term "fool" refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term "foolish" describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term "fool" usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term "folly" refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often "folly" also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "fool" could be translated as "foolish person" or "unwise person" or "senseless person" or "ungodly person."
- Ways to translate "foolish" could include "lacking understanding" or "unwise" or "senseless."

(See also: wise)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:17
- Ephesians 5:15
- Galatians 3:3
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 25:8
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 49:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0191, H0196, H0200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G04530, G04540, G07810, G08010, G08770, G08780, G27570, G31500, G31540, G34710, G34720, G34730, G34740, G39120

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:28

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

Genesis References:

Genesis 18:26 Genesis 50:17 Genesis 50:17

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being" or "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god." NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word "god," it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).

- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15** **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14** **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:1 Genesis 1:2 Genesis 1:3 Genesis 1:4 Genesis 1:4 Genesis 1:5 Genesis 1:6 Genesis 1:7 Genesis 1:8 Genesis 1:9 Genesis 1:10 Genesis 1:10 Genesis 1:11 Genesis 1:12 Genesis 1:14 Genesis 1:16 Genesis 1:17 Genesis 1:18 Genesis 1:20 Genesis 1:21 Genesis 1:21 Genesis 1:22 Genesis 1:24 Genesis 1:25 Genesis 1:25 Genesis 1:26 Genesis 1:27 Genesis 1:27 Genesis 1:28 Genesis 1:28 Genesis 1:29 Genesis 1:31 Genesis 2:2 Genesis 2:3 Genesis 2:3 Genesis 2:4 Genesis 2:5 Genesis 2:7 Genesis 2:8 Genesis 2:9 Genesis 2:15 Genesis 2:16 Genesis 2:18 Genesis 2:19 Genesis 2:21 Genesis 2:22 Genesis 3:1 Genesis 3:1 Genesis 3:3 Genesis 3:5 Genesis 3:5 Genesis 3:8 Genesis 3:8 Genesis 3:9 Genesis 3:13 Genesis 3:14 Genesis 3:21 Genesis 3:22 Genesis 3:23 Genesis 4:25 Genesis 5:1 Genesis 5:1 Genesis 5:22 Genesis 5:24 Genesis 5:24 Genesis 6:2 Genesis 6:4 Genesis 6:9 Genesis 6:11 Genesis 6:12 Genesis 6:13 Genesis 6:22 Genesis 7:9 Genesis 7:16 Genesis 8:1 Genesis 8:1 Genesis 8:15 Genesis 9:1 Genesis 9:6 Genesis 9:8 Genesis 9:12 Genesis 9:16 Genesis 9:17 Genesis 9:26 Genesis 9:27 Genesis 14:18 Genesis 14:19 Genesis 14:20 Genesis 14:22 Genesis 17:1 Genesis 17:3 Genesis 17:7 Genesis 17:8 Genesis 17:9 Genesis 17:15 Genesis 17:18 Genesis 17:19 Genesis 17:22 Genesis 17:23 Genesis 19:29 Genesis 19:29 Genesis 20:3 Genesis 20:6 Genesis 20:11 Genesis 20:13 Genesis 20:17 Genesis 20:17 Genesis 21:2 Genesis 21:4 Genesis 21:6 Genesis 21:12 Genesis 21:17 Genesis 21:17 Genesis 21:17 Genesis 21:19 Genesis 21:20 Genesis 21:22 Genesis 21:23 Genesis 21:33 Genesis 22:1 Genesis 22:3 Genesis 22:8 Genesis 22:9 Genesis 22:12 Genesis 23:6 Genesis 24:3 Genesis 24:3 Genesis 24:7 Genesis 24:12 Genesis 24:27 Genesis 24:42 Genesis 24:48 Genesis 25:11 Genesis 26:24 Genesis 27:20 Genesis 27:28 Genesis 28:3 Genesis 28:4 Genesis 28:12 Genesis 28:13 Genesis 28:13 Genesis 28:17 Genesis 28:20 Genesis 28:21 Genesis 28:22 Genesis 30:2 Genesis 30:6 Genesis 30:8 Genesis 30:17 Genesis 30:18 Genesis 30:20 Genesis 30:22 Genesis 30:22 Genesis 30:23 Genesis 31:5 Genesis 31:7 Genesis 31:9 Genesis 31:11 Genesis 31:13 Genesis 31:16 Genesis 31:16 Genesis 31:24 Genesis 31:29 Genesis 31:42 Genesis 31:42 Genesis 31:42 Genesis 31:50 Genesis 31:53 Genesis 32:1 Genesis 32:2 Genesis 32:9 Genesis 32:9 Genesis 32:28 Genesis 32:30 Genesis 33:5 Genesis 33:10 Genesis 33:11 Genesis 33:20 Genesis 33:20 Genesis 35:1 Genesis 35:3 Genesis 35:5 Genesis 35:7 Genesis 35:7 Genesis 35:9 Genesis 35:10 Genesis 35:11 Genesis 35:11 Genesis 35:13 Genesis 35:15 Genesis 39:9 Genesis 40:8 Genesis 41:16 Genesis 41:25 Genesis 41:28 Genesis 41:32 Genesis 41:32 Genesis 41:38 Genesis 41:39 Genesis 41:51 Genesis 41:52 Genesis 42:18 Genesis 42:28 Genesis 43:14 Genesis 43:23 Genesis 43:23 Genesis 43:29 Genesis 44:16 Genesis 45:5 Genesis 45:7 Genesis 45:8 Genesis 45:9 Genesis 46:1 Genesis 46:2 Genesis 46:3 Genesis 46:3 Genesis 48:3 Genesis 48:9 Genesis 48:11 Genesis 48:15 Genesis 48:15 Genesis 48:20 Genesis 48:21 Genesis 49:25 Genesis 50:17 Genesis 50:19 Genesis 50:20 Genesis 50:24 Genesis 50:25

good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: righteous, prosper, evil)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:4 Genesis 1:10 Genesis 1:12 Genesis 1:18 Genesis 1:21 Genesis 1:25 Genesis 1:31 Genesis 2:9 Genesis 2:9 Genesis 2:12 Genesis 2:17 Genesis 2:18 Genesis 3:5 Genesis 3:6 Genesis 3:22 Genesis 4:7 Genesis 6:2 Genesis 12:16 Genesis 15:15 Genesis 16:6 Genesis 18:7 Genesis 20:15 Genesis 24:10 Genesis 24:16 Genesis 24:50 Genesis 25:8 Genesis 26:7 Genesis 26:29 Genesis 27:9 Genesis 29:19 Genesis 30:20 Genesis 31:24 Genesis 31:29 Genesis 32:9 Genesis 32:12 Genesis 34:18 Genesis 40:14 Genesis 40:16 Genesis 41:5 Genesis 41:22 Genesis 41:24 Genesis 41:26 Genesis 41:26 Genesis 41:35 Genesis 41:37 Genesis 44:4 Genesis 45:16 Genesis 45:18 Genesis 45:20 Genesis 45:23 Genesis 47:6 Genesis 47:11 Genesis 49:15 Genesis 50:20

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

Genesis References:

Genesis 43:29

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, iniquity, punish, sin)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 6:7
- James 2:10-11
- John 19:4
- Jonah 1:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you not fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.”
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0816, H0817, H0818, H5352, H5355, H7563, G03380, G17770, G37840, G52670

Genesis References:

Genesis 26:10 Genesis 42:21

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we cannot directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called "manna."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me."
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:1 Genesis 1:8 Genesis 1:9 Genesis 1:14 Genesis 1:15 Genesis 1:17 Genesis 1:20 Genesis 1:26 Genesis 1:28 Genesis 1:30 Genesis 2:1 Genesis 2:4 Genesis 2:4 Genesis 2:19 Genesis 2:20 Genesis 6:7 Genesis 6:17 Genesis 7:3 Genesis 7:11 Genesis 7:19 Genesis 7:23 Genesis 8:2 Genesis 8:2 Genesis 9:2 Genesis 11:4 Genesis 14:19 Genesis 14:22 Genesis 15:5 Genesis 19:24 Genesis 21:17 Genesis 22:11 Genesis 22:15 Genesis 22:17 Genesis 24:3 Genesis 24:7 Genesis 26:4 Genesis 27:28 Genesis 27:39 Genesis 28:12 Genesis 28:17 Genesis 49:25

Hebrew

Definition:

The term "Hebrew" refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word "Hebrew" can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called "Hebrew." However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term "Hebrew" probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called "Israelites" or "Jews." When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jew, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 5:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 1:8-10
- Philippians 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G14440, G14450, G14460, G14470

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:13 Genesis 39:14 Genesis 39:17 Genesis 40:15 Genesis 41:12 Genesis 43:32

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

Genesis References:

Genesis 30:20 Genesis 34:19 Genesis 45:13

image of God, image

Definition:

The term “image” refers to something that looks like something else or that is like someone in character or essence. The phrase “image of God” is used in different ways, depending on the context.

- At the beginning of time, God created human beings “in his image,” that is, “in his likeness.” This means that people have certain characteristics that reflect the image of God, such as the ability to feel emotion, the ability to reason and communicate, and a spirit that lives eternally.
- The Bible teaches that Jesus, God’s Son, is “the image of God,” that is, he is God himself. Unlike human beings, Jesus was not created. From all eternity God the Son has had all the divine characteristics because he has had the same essence with God the Father.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to Jesus, “image of God” could be translated as “exact likeness of God” or “same essence as God” or “same being as God.”
- When referring to human beings, “God created them in his image” could be translated with a phrase that means “God created them to be like him” or “God created them with characteristics like his own.”

(See also: image, Son of God, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 4:3-4
- Colossians 3:9-11
- Genesis 1:26-27
- Genesis 9:6
- James 3:9-10
- Romans 8:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4541, H1544, H2553, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6816, H8403, G05040, G01790

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:26 Genesis 1:27 Genesis 1:27 Genesis 9:6

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:3 Genesis 15:4 Genesis 15:4 Genesis 31:14 Genesis 48:6

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:16 Genesis 44:16

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.

- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

Genesis References:

Genesis 20:5 Genesis 44:10

Israel, Israelites

Definition:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”

- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of __Israel __ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of __Israel __ its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished __Israel __ again for worshiping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

Genesis References:

Genesis 32:28 Genesis 32:32 Genesis 33:20
Genesis 34:7 Genesis 35:10 Genesis 35:10
Genesis 35:21 Genesis 35:22 Genesis 35:22
Genesis 36:31 Genesis 42:5 Genesis 47:27
Genesis 48:20 Genesis 49:7 Genesis 49:16
Genesis 49:24 Genesis 49:28 Genesis 50:25

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms "judge" and "judgment" can also mean "to cause harm to" (usually because God has decided a person or nation's actions are wicked).
- The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- "Judgment" can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
- The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
- In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:14 Genesis 16:5 Genesis 19:9
Genesis 31:53 Genesis 49:16

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

Genesis References:

Genesis 18:19 Genesis 18:25

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7716, G07210, G23160

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:7 Genesis 22:8 Genesis 30:32 Genesis 30:33 Genesis 30:35

lament, lamentation

Definition:

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “lament” could be translated as to “deeply mourn” or to “wail in grief” or to “be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

Bible References:

- Amos 8:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:18
- Job 27:15-17
- Lamentations 2:5
- Lamentations 2:8
- Micah 2:4
- Psalm 102:1-2
- Zechariah 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0421, H0578, H0592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G23540, G23550, G28700, G28750

Genesis References:

Genesis 21:16 Genesis 23:2 Genesis 27:38 Genesis 37:35 Genesis 50:1 Genesis 50:3 Genesis 50:10

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”

- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.

- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”

- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.

- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.

- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:2 Genesis 15:8 Genesis 18:3
Genesis 18:12 Genesis 18:27 Genesis 18:30
Genesis 18:31 Genesis 18:32 Genesis 19:2
Genesis 19:18 Genesis 20:4 Genesis 23:6
Genesis 23:11 Genesis 23:15 Genesis 24:9
Genesis 24:10 Genesis 24:10 Genesis 24:12
Genesis 24:12 Genesis 24:14 Genesis 24:18
Genesis 24:27 Genesis 24:27 Genesis 24:27
Genesis 24:35 Genesis 24:36 Genesis 24:36
Genesis 24:37 Genesis 24:39 Genesis 24:42
Genesis 24:44 Genesis 24:48 Genesis 24:48
Genesis 24:49 Genesis 24:51 Genesis 24:54
Genesis 24:56 Genesis 24:65 Genesis 27:29
Genesis 27:37 Genesis 31:35 Genesis 32:4
Genesis 32:5 Genesis 32:18 Genesis 33:8
Genesis 33:13 Genesis 33:14 Genesis 33:14
Genesis 33:15 Genesis 37:19 Genesis 39:2
Genesis 39:3 Genesis 39:7 Genesis 39:8
Genesis 39:8 Genesis 39:16 Genesis 39:19
Genesis 39:20 Genesis 40:1 Genesis 40:7
Genesis 42:10 Genesis 42:30 Genesis 42:33
Genesis 43:20 Genesis 44:5 Genesis 44:7
Genesis 44:8 Genesis 44:9 Genesis 44:16
Genesis 44:16 Genesis 44:18 Genesis 44:18
Genesis 44:19 Genesis 44:20 Genesis 44:22
Genesis 44:24 Genesis 44:33 Genesis 45:8
Genesis 45:9 Genesis 47:18 Genesis 47:18
Genesis 47:18 Genesis 47:25 Genesis 49:23

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
    - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
    - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
    - In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
    - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
    - The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.

- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2
- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:8** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:2 Genesis 24:67 Genesis 25:28 Genesis 25:28 Genesis 27:4 Genesis 27:9 Genesis 27:14 Genesis 29:18 Genesis 29:20 Genesis 29:30 Genesis 29:32 Genesis 34:3 Genesis 37:3 Genesis 37:4 Genesis 44:20

Most High

Definition:

The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority. This title emphasizes God’s supreme authority and power over all creation.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 4:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 7:1-3
- Hosea 7:16
- Lamentations 3:35
- Luke 1:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5945, G53100

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:18 Genesis 14:19 Genesis 14:20 Genesis 14:22

myrrh

Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: frankincense, learned men)

Bible References:

- Exodus 30:22-25
- Genesis 37:25-26
- John 11:1-2
- Mark 15:23
- Matthew 2:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3910, H4753, G34640, G46660, G46690

Genesis References:

Genesis 37:25 Genesis 43:11

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

Genesis References:

Genesis 20:7 Genesis 20:17

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:18 Genesis 41:45 Genesis 41:50 Genesis 46:20 Genesis 47:22 Genesis 47:22 Genesis 47:26

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."

- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** “This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

Genesis References:

Genesis 20:7

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

Genesis References:

Genesis 35:2

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

Genesis References:

Genesis 48:16

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

Genesis References:

Genesis 45:7

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

Genesis References:

Genesis 37:22

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness." (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."

- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:9 Genesis 7:1 Genesis 15:6 Genesis 18:19 Genesis 18:23 Genesis 18:24 Genesis 18:24 Genesis 18:25 Genesis 18:25 Genesis 18:26 Genesis 18:28 Genesis 20:4 Genesis 30:33 Genesis 38:26 Genesis 44:16

save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."

- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."

- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."

- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."

- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"

- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

Genesis References:

Genesis 49:18

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
  - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
  - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:14 Genesis 4:15 Genesis 9:12
Genesis 9:13 Genesis 9:17 Genesis 17:11

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people do not know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who did not keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”

- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people do not see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children.”
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people’s **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**.”
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:7 Genesis 13:13 Genesis 18:20 Genesis 20:6 Genesis 20:9 Genesis 20:9 Genesis 31:36 Genesis 39:9 Genesis 40:1 Genesis 41:9 Genesis 42:22 Genesis 43:9 Genesis 44:32 Genesis 50:17

sons of God, children of God

Definition:

The term “sons of God” is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term “sons of God” that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- The title “Son of God” is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God’s only Son.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “sons of God” refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as “children of God.”
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate “sons of God” could include “angels,” “spirit beings,” “supernatural creatures,” or “demons.”
- Also see the link for “son.”

(See also: angel, demon, son, Son of God, ruler, spirit)

Bible References:

- Genesis 6:2
- Genesis 6:4
- Job 1:6
- Romans 8:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H1121, G52070, G50430

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:2 Genesis 6:4

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives."
- Sometimes this term can be translated as "wind" when referring to the simple movement of air or "breath" when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:2 Genesis 3:8 Genesis 6:3 Genesis 6:17 Genesis 7:15 Genesis 7:22 Genesis 8:1 Genesis 26:35 Genesis 41:8 Genesis 41:38 Genesis 45:27

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12

- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:1

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- In some places in the Old Testament, "Testimony" refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God's law more broadly.
- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things.”
- **43:7** “We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:44 Genesis 31:48 Genesis 31:50
Genesis 31:52 Genesis 31:52

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:36 Genesis 50:17 Genesis 50:17

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

Genesis References:

Genesis 24:27 Genesis 24:49 Genesis 32:10 Genesis 42:20 Genesis 47:29

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: bread, Egypt, feast, Passover, servant, sin, yeast)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 6:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 6:21
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Luke 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G01060

Genesis References:

Genesis 19:3

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

Genesis References:

Genesis 41:33 Genesis 41:39

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To "prostrate" oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to "worship," referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally "bow down" or "prostrate oneself" to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: bow, fear, sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods."
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, '**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:5 Genesis 24:26 Genesis 24:48

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

Genesis References:

Genesis 27:44 Genesis 40:2 Genesis 49:7

Yahweh, Yah

Definition:

The term "Yahweh" is God's personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, "to be."

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term "LORD" or "the LORD" to represent "Yahweh." This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying "Lord" every time the term "Yahweh" appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write "LORD" with all capital letters to show that this represents God's personal name and to distinguish it from "Lord" which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as "Yahweh," in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term "Yahweh" never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for "Lord" is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- "Yah" is a shortened form of the name Yahweh that occurs in poetry and praise (e.g. Hallelujah = "Praise Yah"), and in some Hebrew names (e.g. Zechariah = "Yah remembers").

Translation Suggestions:

- "Yahweh" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "I am" or "existing one" or "the one who is" or "he who is present."
- This name could also be written in a way that is similar to how "Yahweh" is spelled, or how it sounds in your language.

- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- In most cases it is good to keep the name Yahweh where it occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places to make the text more natural and clear.
- An introduction of a quote from Yahweh could be something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, Lord)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5
- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **13:5** “Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God.”
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3050, H3068, H3069

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:4 Genesis 2:5 Genesis 2:7 Genesis 2:8 Genesis 2:9 Genesis 2:15 Genesis 2:16 Genesis 2:18 Genesis 2:19 Genesis 2:21 Genesis 2:22 Genesis 3:1 Genesis 3:8 Genesis 3:8 Genesis 3:9 Genesis 3:13 Genesis 3:14 Genesis 3:21 Genesis 3:22 Genesis 3:23 Genesis 4:1 Genesis 4:3 Genesis 4:4 Genesis 4:6 Genesis 4:9 Genesis 4:13 Genesis 4:15 Genesis 4:15 Genesis 4:16 Genesis 4:26 Genesis 5:29 Genesis 6:3 Genesis 6:5 Genesis 6:6 Genesis 6:7 Genesis 6:8 Genesis 7:1 Genesis 7:5 Genesis 7:16 Genesis 8:20 Genesis 8:21 Genesis 8:21 Genesis 9:26 Genesis 10:9 Genesis 10:9 Genesis 11:5 Genesis 11:6 Genesis 11:8 Genesis 11:9 Genesis 11:9 Genesis 12:1 Genesis 12:4 Genesis 12:7 Genesis 12:7 Genesis 12:8 Genesis 12:8 Genesis 12:17 Genesis 13:4 Genesis 13:10 Genesis 13:10 Genesis 13:13 Genesis 13:14 Genesis 13:18 Genesis 14:22 Genesis 15:1 Genesis 15:2 Genesis 15:4 Genesis 15:6 Genesis 15:7 Genesis 15:8 Genesis 15:18 Genesis 16:2 Genesis 16:5 Genesis 16:7 Genesis 16:9 Genesis 16:10 Genesis 16:11 Genesis 16:11 Genesis 16:13 Genesis 17:1 Genesis 18:1 Genesis 18:13 Genesis 18:14 Genesis 18:17 Genesis 18:19 Genesis 18:19 Genesis 18:20 Genesis 18:22 Genesis 18:26 Genesis 18:33 Genesis 19:13 Genesis 19:13 Genesis 19:14 Genesis 19:16 Genesis 19:24 Genesis 19:24 Genesis 19:27 Genesis 20:18 Genesis 21:1 Genesis 21:1 Genesis 21:33 Genesis 22:11 Genesis 22:14 Genesis 22:14 Genesis 22:15 Genesis 22:16 Genesis 24:1 Genesis 24:3 Genesis 24:7 Genesis 24:12 Genesis 24:21 Genesis 24:26 Genesis 24:27 Genesis 24:27 Genesis 24:31 Genesis 24:35 Genesis 24:40 Genesis 24:42 Genesis 24:44 Genesis 24:48 Genesis 24:48 Genesis 24:50 Genesis 24:51 Genesis 24:52 Genesis 24:56 Genesis 25:21 Genesis 25:21 Genesis 25:22 Genesis 25:23 Genesis 26:2 Genesis 26:12 Genesis 26:22 Genesis 26:24 Genesis 26:25 Genesis 26:28 Genesis 26:29 Genesis 27:7 Genesis 27:20 Genesis 27:27 Genesis 28:13 Genesis 28:13 Genesis 28:16 Genesis 28:21 Genesis 29:31 Genesis 29:32 Genesis 29:33 Genesis 29:35 Genesis 30:24 Genesis 30:27 Genesis 30:30 Genesis 31:3 Genesis 31:49 Genesis 32:9 Genesis 38:7 Genesis 38:7 Genesis 38:10 Genesis 39:2 Genesis 39:3 Genesis 39:3 Genesis 39:5 Genesis 39:5 Genesis 39:21 Genesis 39:23 Genesis 39:23 Genesis 49:18

Abel

Definition:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

- Abel was a shepherd.
- Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
- God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
- Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Genesis 4:2
- Genesis 4:9
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 23:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1893, G00060

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:2 Genesis 4:2 Genesis 4:4 Genesis 4:4 Genesis 4:8 Genesis 4:8 Genesis 4:9 Genesis 4:25

Abimelech

Definition:

Abimelech was a Philistine king over the region of Gerar during the time when Abraham and Isaac were living in the land of Canaan.

- Abraham deceived King Abimelech by telling him that Sarah was his sister rather than his wife.
- Abraham and Abimelech made an agreement regarding ownership of wells at Beersheba.
- Many years later, Isaac also deceived Abimelech and the other men of Gerar by saying that Rebekah was his sister, not his wife.
- King Abimelech rebuked Abraham, and later Isaac, for lying to him.
- Another man by the name of Abimelech was a son of Gideon and a brother of Jotham. While some translations use a slightly different spelling of his name to make it clear that he is a different person from King Abimelech, we recommend translating the same Hebrew name consistently for each person who had that name.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Beersheba, Gerar, Gideon, Jotham, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 11:21
- Genesis 20:3
- Genesis 20:5
- Genesis 21:22
- Genesis 26:11
- Judges 9:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0040

Genesis References:

Genesis 20:2 Genesis 20:3 Genesis 20:4
Genesis 20:8 Genesis 20:9 Genesis 20:10
Genesis 20:14 Genesis 20:15 Genesis 20:17
Genesis 20:18 Genesis 21:22 Genesis 21:25
Genesis 21:25 Genesis 21:26 Genesis 21:27
Genesis 21:29 Genesis 21:32 Genesis 26:1
Genesis 26:8 Genesis 26:9 Genesis 26:10
Genesis 26:11 Genesis 26:16 Genesis 26:26

Abraham, Abram

Definition:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram**’s name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham’s** faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0087, H0085, G00110

Genesis References:

Genesis 11:26 Genesis 11:27 Genesis 11:29
Genesis 11:29 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 11:31
Genesis 12:1 Genesis 12:4 Genesis 12:4
Genesis 12:5 Genesis 12:6 Genesis 12:7
Genesis 12:9 Genesis 12:10 Genesis 12:14
Genesis 12:16 Genesis 12:17 Genesis 12:18
Genesis 13:1 Genesis 13:2 Genesis 13:4
Genesis 13:5 Genesis 13:7 Genesis 13:8
Genesis 13:12 Genesis 13:14 Genesis 13:18
Genesis 14:12 Genesis 14:13 Genesis 14:13
Genesis 14:14 Genesis 14:19 Genesis 14:22
Genesis 14:23 Genesis 15:1 Genesis 15:1
Genesis 15:2 Genesis 15:3 Genesis 15:11
Genesis 15:12 Genesis 15:13 Genesis 15:18
Genesis 16:1 Genesis 16:2 Genesis 16:2
Genesis 16:3 Genesis 16:3 Genesis 16:3
Genesis 16:5 Genesis 16:6 Genesis 16:15
Genesis 16:15 Genesis 16:16 Genesis 16:16
Genesis 17:1 Genesis 17:1 Genesis 17:3
Genesis 17:5 Genesis 17:5 Genesis 17:9
Genesis 17:15 Genesis 17:17 Genesis 17:18
Genesis 17:22 Genesis 17:23 Genesis 17:23
Genesis 17:24 Genesis 17:26 Genesis 18:6
Genesis 18:7 Genesis 18:11 Genesis 18:13
Genesis 18:16 Genesis 18:17 Genesis 18:18
Genesis 18:19 Genesis 18:22 Genesis 18:23
Genesis 18:27 Genesis 18:33 Genesis 18:33
Genesis 19:27 Genesis 19:29 Genesis 20:1
Genesis 20:2 Genesis 20:9 Genesis 20:10
Genesis 20:11 Genesis 20:14 Genesis 20:17
Genesis 20:18 Genesis 21:2 Genesis 21:3
Genesis 21:4 Genesis 21:5 Genesis 21:7
Genesis 21:8 Genesis 21:9 Genesis 21:10
Genesis 21:11 Genesis 21:12 Genesis 21:14
Genesis 21:22 Genesis 21:24 Genesis 21:25
Genesis 21:27 Genesis 21:28 Genesis 21:29
Genesis 21:34 Genesis 22:1 Genesis 22:1
Genesis 22:3 Genesis 22:4 Genesis 22:5
Genesis 22:6 Genesis 22:7 Genesis 22:8
Genesis 22:9 Genesis 22:10 Genesis 22:11
Genesis 22:11 Genesis 22:13 Genesis 22:13
Genesis 22:14 Genesis 22:15 Genesis 22:19
Genesis 22:19 Genesis 22:20 Genesis 22:23
Genesis 23:2 Genesis 23:3 Genesis 23:5
Genesis 23:7 Genesis 23:10 Genesis 23:12
Genesis 23:14 Genesis 23:16 Genesis 23:16
Genesis 23:18 Genesis 23:19 Genesis 23:20
Genesis 24:1 Genesis 24:1 Genesis 24:2
Genesis 24:6 Genesis 24:9 Genesis 24:12
Genesis 24:12 Genesis 24:15 Genesis 24:27
Genesis 24:34 Genesis 24:42 Genesis 24:48
Genesis 24:52 Genesis 24:59 Genesis 25:1
Genesis 25:5 Genesis 25:6 Genesis 25:6
Genesis 25:7 Genesis 25:8 Genesis 25:10
Genesis 25:10 Genesis 25:11 Genesis 25:12
Genesis 25:12 Genesis 25:19 Genesis 25:19
Genesis 26:1 Genesis 26:3 Genesis 26:5
Genesis 26:15 Genesis 26:18 Genesis 26:18
Genesis 26:24 Genesis 26:24 Genesis 28:4
Genesis 28:9 Genesis 28:13 Genesis 31:42
Genesis 31:53 Genesis 32:9 Genesis 35:12
Genesis 35:27 Genesis 48:15 Genesis 48:16
Genesis 49:30 Genesis 49:31 Genesis 50:13
Genesis 50:24

Adam

Definition:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: death, descendant, Eve, image of God, life)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:21 Genesis 4:25 Genesis 5:1 Genesis 5:3 Genesis 5:4

Ai

Definition:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

- After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
- An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethel, Jericho)

Bible References:

- Ezra 2:27-30
- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 13:3-4
- Joshua 7:3
- Joshua 8:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5857

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:8 Genesis 13:3

Amalek, Amalekite

Definition:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negeb desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term "Amalek" is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites. (See: synecdoche)
- In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, David, Esau, Negeb, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:43
- 2 Samuel 1:8
- Exodus 17:10
- Numbers 14:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6002, H6003

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:7 Genesis 36:12

Ammon, Ammonite

Definition:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group that lived on the east side of the Jordan River across from the Israelites.

- The book of Genesis reports that the Ammonite nation was descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.
- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:2
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 2:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5983, H5984, H5985

Genesis References:

Genesis 19:38

Amorite

Definition:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0567

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:16 Genesis 14:7 Genesis 14:13
Genesis 15:16 Genesis 15:21 Genesis 48:22

Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus

Definition:

"Aram" was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as "Arameans" and spoke "Aramaic." Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem's sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name "Syria."
- The term "Paddan Aram" means "plain of Aram" and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham's relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in "Paddan Aram."
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms "Aram" and "Paddan Aram" refer to the same region.
- The term "Aram Naharaim" may mean "Aram of Two Rivers." This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of "Paddan Aram."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Mesopotamia, Paddan Aram, Rebekah, Shem, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:17-19
- 2 Samuel 8:6
- Amos 1:5
- Ezekiel 27:16
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Hosea 12:12
- Psalm 60:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0130, H0726, H0758, H0761, H0762, H0763, H1834, H7421

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:22 Genesis 10:23 Genesis 22:21 Genesis 24:10 Genesis 25:20 Genesis 25:20 Genesis 28:5 Genesis 31:20 Genesis 31:24

Ararat

Definition:

In the Bible, "Ararat" is the name given to a land, a kingdom, and a mountain range.

- The "land of Ararat" was probably located in what is now the northeastern part of the country of Turkey.
- Ararat is best known as the name of the mountain that Noah's ark came to rest on after the waters of the great flood began to recede.
- In modern times, a mountain called "Mount Ararat" is often thought to be the location of the "mountains of Ararat" in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:35-37
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Isaiah 37:38
- Jeremiah 51:27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0780

Genesis References:

Genesis 8:4

Asher

Definition:

Asher was Jacob's eighth son. He was Zilpah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Asher" or "Asher."
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning "blessed, happy."
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterannean Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Asher" refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0836

Genesis References:

Genesis 30:13 Genesis 35:26 Genesis 46:17 Genesis 49:20

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Definition:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 7:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 7:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:14 Genesis 10:11 Genesis 10:22
Genesis 25:3 Genesis 25:18

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Definition:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.

- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:10 Genesis 11:9

Beersheba

Definition:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negeb.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means "well of the oath." It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech's men for seizing control of one of Abraham's wells.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abimelech, Abraham, Hagar, Ishmael, Jerusalem, oath)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 3:20
- 2 Samuel 17:11
- Genesis 21:14
- Genesis 21:31
- Genesis 46:1
- Nehemiah 11:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0884

Genesis References:

Genesis 21:14 Genesis 21:14 Genesis 21:31 Genesis 21:31 Genesis 21:32 Genesis 21:32 Genesis 21:33 Genesis 21:33 Genesis 22:19 Genesis 22:19 Genesis 22:19 Genesis 22:19 Genesis 26:23 Genesis 26:23 Genesis 26:33 Genesis 26:33 Genesis 28:10 Genesis 28:10 Genesis 46:1 Genesis 46:1 Genesis 46:5 Genesis 46:5

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Definition:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- The phrase "the land of Benjamin" refers to the territory that Yahweh gave to the descendants of Benjamin to live in.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

Genesis References:

Genesis 35:18 Genesis 35:24 Genesis 42:4
Genesis 42:36 Genesis 43:14 Genesis 43:15
Genesis 43:16 Genesis 43:29 Genesis 43:34
Genesis 44:12 Genesis 45:12 Genesis 45:14
Genesis 45:14 Genesis 45:22 Genesis 46:19
Genesis 46:21 Genesis 49:27

Bethel

Definition:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz." "Bethel" means "house of God."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven. After that, he set up a monument there and named the place "Bethel."
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- When Israel separated from Judah, Jereboam I set up a golden calf in Bethel so that the people in the northern kingdom would worship there rather than go to the temple in Jerusalem.
- Bethel then became a center of idol worship, and the prophets Amos and Hosea strongly criticise the place for that. Hosea refers to it by the derogatory name, "Beth Aven," which means, "house of evil."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, altar, Jacob, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1
- Judges 1:23
- 1 Kings 12:29-33
- Hosea 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:8 Genesis 12:8 Genesis 12:8
Genesis 12:8 Genesis 13:3 Genesis 13:3
Genesis 13:3 Genesis 28:19 Genesis 28:19
Genesis 31:13 Genesis 31:13 Genesis 35:1
Genesis 35:1 Genesis 35:3 Genesis 35:3
Genesis 35:6 Genesis 35:6 Genesis 35:7
Genesis 35:7 Genesis 35:8 Genesis 35:8
Genesis 35:15 Genesis 35:15 Genesis 35:16
Genesis 35:16

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Definition:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as "Ephrathah," which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the "city of David," since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from "Bethlehem Ephrathah."
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name "Bethlehem" means "house of bread" or "house of food."

(See also: Caleb, David, Micah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- John 7:42
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 2:16
- Ruth 1:2
- Ruth 1:21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **23:4** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- **23:6** "The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem**!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0376, H0672, H1035, G09650

Genesis References:

Genesis 35:19 Genesis 48:7

Bethuel

Definition:

Bethuel was the son of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- Bethuel was the father of Rebekah and Laban.
- There was also a town called Bethuel, which may have been located in southern Judah, not far from the town of Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Beersheba, Laban, Nahor, Rebekah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:30
- Genesis 28:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1328

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:22 Genesis 22:23 Genesis 24:15 Genesis 24:24 Genesis 24:47 Genesis 24:50 Genesis 25:20 Genesis 28:2 Genesis 28:5

Bilhah

Definition:

Bilhah was one of Jacob's wives. She gave birth to Dan and Naphtali, two sons of Jacob whose descendants became tribes of Israel.

- Laban gave Bilhah to Rachel as a servant when Rachel married Jacob.
- Because Rachel was not having children, she gave Bilhah to Jacob as a wife in order to produce children for her.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Rachel, Dan, Naphtali)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:29
- Genesis 30:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1090

Genesis References:

Genesis 29:29 Genesis 30:3 Genesis 30:4 Genesis 30:5 Genesis 30:7 Genesis 35:22 Genesis 37:2 Genesis 46:25

Cain

Definition:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

- Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
- Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
- As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
- God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Genesis 4:2
- Genesis 4:9
- Genesis 4:15
- Hebrews 11:4
- Jude 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7014, G25350

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:1 Genesis 4:2 Genesis 4:3 Genesis 4:5 Genesis 4:5 Genesis 4:6 Genesis 4:8 Genesis 4:8 Genesis 4:9 Genesis 4:13 Genesis 4:15 Genesis 4:15 Genesis 4:16 Genesis 4:17 Genesis 4:24 Genesis 4:25

Canaan, Canaanite

Definition:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

Genesis References:

Genesis 9:18 Genesis 9:22 Genesis 9:25
Genesis 9:26 Genesis 9:27 Genesis 10:15
Genesis 10:18 Genesis 10:19 Genesis 11:31
Genesis 12:5 Genesis 12:5 Genesis 12:6
Genesis 13:7 Genesis 13:12 Genesis 15:21
Genesis 16:3 Genesis 17:8 Genesis 23:2
Genesis 23:19 Genesis 24:3 Genesis 24:37
Genesis 28:1 Genesis 28:6 Genesis 28:8
Genesis 31:18 Genesis 33:18 Genesis 34:30
Genesis 35:6 Genesis 36:2 Genesis 36:5
Genesis 36:6 Genesis 37:1 Genesis 38:2
Genesis 42:5 Genesis 42:7 Genesis 42:13
Genesis 42:29 Genesis 42:32 Genesis 44:8
Genesis 45:17 Genesis 45:25 Genesis 46:6
Genesis 46:10 Genesis 46:12 Genesis 46:31
Genesis 47:1 Genesis 47:4 Genesis 47:13
Genesis 47:14 Genesis 47:15 Genesis 48:3
Genesis 48:7 Genesis 49:30 Genesis 50:5
Genesis 50:11 Genesis 50:13

Chaldea, Chaldean

Definition:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as "Ur of the Chaldeans."
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term "Chaldean" came to mean "Babylonian."
- In the book of Daniel, the term "Chaldean" also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:4-5
- Ezekiel 1:1
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G54660

Genesis References:

Genesis 11:28 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 15:7

Cush

Definition:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

- In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
- The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have, at different times, included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
- Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, Canaan, Egypt, Ethiopia)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:10
- Genesis 2:13
- Genesis 10:6-7
- Jeremiah 13:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3570, 3571

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:13 Genesis 10:8

Damascus

Definition:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Assyria, believe, Syria)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- Acts 9:1-2
- Acts 9:3
- Acts 26:12
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Genesis 14:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1834, G11540

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:15 Genesis 15:2

Dan

Definition:

Dan was Jacob's fifth son. He was Bilhah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "judge."
- The tribe of Dan settled in the northern part of Canaan. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Dan" refers to the land given to the tribe of Dan.
- "Dan" was also the name an Israelite city located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem. In the Old Testament times, the city of Dan served as a landmark for the northern boundary of the country of Israel, opposite the city of Beersheba as a landmark for the southern boundary.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:35
- 1 Kings 4:25
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 14:14
- Genesis 30:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:14 Genesis 30:6 Genesis 46:23 Genesis 49:17

Eden, garden of Eden

Definition:

In ancient times, Eden was a region that had a garden where God placed the first man and woman to live.

- The garden where Adam and Eve lived was only part of Eden.
- The exact location of the region of Eden is not certain, but the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers were flowing through it.
- The word "Eden" comes from a Hebrew word meaning to "take great delight in."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, Euphrates River, Eve)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Genesis 2:7-8
- Genesis 2:10
- Genesis 2:15
- Genesis 4:16-17
- Joel 2:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5729, H5731

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:8 Genesis 2:10 Genesis 2:15 Genesis 3:23 Genesis 3:24 Genesis 4:16

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Definition:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as "Edom" and later, "Idumea." The "Edomites" were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it "Idumea."
- The name "Edom" means "red," which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: adversary, birthright, Esau, Obadiah, prophet)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:30
- Genesis 32:3
- Genesis 36:1
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0123, H0130, H8165, G24010

Genesis References:

Genesis 25:30 Genesis 32:3 Genesis 36:1
Genesis 36:8 Genesis 36:9 Genesis 36:16
Genesis 36:17 Genesis 36:19 Genesis 36:21
Genesis 36:31 Genesis 36:32 Genesis 36:43
Genesis 36:43

Egypt, Egyptian

Definition:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to __Egypt __ to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:13 Genesis 12:10 Genesis 12:11
Genesis 12:12 Genesis 12:14 Genesis 12:14
Genesis 13:1 Genesis 13:10 Genesis 15:18
Genesis 16:1 Genesis 16:3 Genesis 21:9
Genesis 21:21 Genesis 25:12 Genesis 25:18
Genesis 26:2 Genesis 37:25 Genesis 37:28
Genesis 37:36 Genesis 39:1 Genesis 39:2
Genesis 39:5 Genesis 40:1 Genesis 40:1
Genesis 40:5 Genesis 41:8 Genesis 41:19
Genesis 41:29 Genesis 41:30 Genesis 41:33
Genesis 41:34 Genesis 41:36 Genesis 41:41
Genesis 41:43 Genesis 41:44 Genesis 41:45
Genesis 41:46 Genesis 41:46 Genesis 41:48
Genesis 41:53 Genesis 41:54 Genesis 41:55
Genesis 41:55 Genesis 41:56 Genesis 41:56
Genesis 41:57 Genesis 42:1 Genesis 42:2
Genesis 42:3 Genesis 43:2 Genesis 43:15
Genesis 43:32 Genesis 43:32 Genesis 45:2
Genesis 45:4 Genesis 45:8 Genesis 45:9
Genesis 45:13 Genesis 45:18 Genesis 45:19
Genesis 45:20 Genesis 45:23 Genesis 45:25
Genesis 45:26 Genesis 46:3 Genesis 46:4
Genesis 46:6 Genesis 46:7 Genesis 46:8
Genesis 46:20 Genesis 46:26 Genesis 46:27
Genesis 46:27 Genesis 46:34 Genesis 47:6
Genesis 47:11 Genesis 47:13 Genesis 47:14
Genesis 47:15 Genesis 47:15 Genesis 47:20
Genesis 47:20 Genesis 47:21 Genesis 47:26
Genesis 47:27 Genesis 47:28 Genesis 47:29
Genesis 47:30 Genesis 48:5 Genesis 48:5
Genesis 50:3 Genesis 50:11 Genesis 50:14
Genesis 50:22 Genesis 50:26

Elam, Elamites

Definition:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called "Elamites," and they lived in a region that was also called "Elam."
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:17-19
- Acts 2:9
- Ezra 8:4-7
- Isaiah 22:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5867, H5962, G16390

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:22 Genesis 14:1 Genesis 14:9

Enoch

Definition:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, Seth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:3
- Genesis 5:18-20
- Genesis 5:24
- Jude 1:14
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2585, G18020

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:17 Genesis 4:17 Genesis 4:18
Genesis 5:18 Genesis 5:19 Genesis 5:21
Genesis 5:22 Genesis 5:23 Genesis 5:24
Genesis 25:4 Genesis 46:9

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Definition:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning "to make fruitful."
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Joseph, Manasseh, kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0669, H0673, G21870

Genesis References:

Genesis 41:52 Genesis 46:20 Genesis 48:1 Genesis 48:5 Genesis 48:13 Genesis 48:14 Genesis 48:17 Genesis 48:17 Genesis 48:20 Genesis 48:20 Genesis 50:23

Ephrath, Ephrathah

Definition:

The name "Ephrathah" refers to a clan of Judah as well as to the territory that they occupied, which was centered around the town of Bethlehem. Sometimes the name is shortened to "Ephrath."

- The clan of Ephrathah was probably named after a woman named "Ephrathah," who was a wife of Caleb and the grandmother of the founders of the towns of Kiriath Jearim, Bethlehem, and Beth Gader (1 Chron 2:50-51).
- The towns of Bethlehem (Gen 35:19;48:7) and Kirjath Jearim (Psalm 132:6) are both sometimes referred to as "Ephrathah."
- Rachel died on the way to a town called "Ephrathah."
- It is possible that there was a different town called "Ephrathah" further north near Ramah, and that Rachel was buried near there (1 Sam 10:2; Jer 31:15).

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, Caleb, David, Israel)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0672, H0673

Genesis References:

Genesis 35:16 Genesis 35:19 Genesis 48:7 Genesis 48:7

Esau

Definition:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Edom, Isaac, Jacob, Rebekah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:5
- Hebrews 12:17
- Romans 9:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:7** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **7:2** So **Esau** gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **7:4** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **7:5** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **7:10** But **Esau** had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G22690

Genesis References:

Genesis 25:25 Genesis 25:26 Genesis 25:27
Genesis 25:28 Genesis 25:29 Genesis 25:30
Genesis 25:32 Genesis 25:34 Genesis 25:34
Genesis 26:34 Genesis 27:1 Genesis 27:5
Genesis 27:5 Genesis 27:6 Genesis 27:11
Genesis 27:15 Genesis 27:19 Genesis 27:21
Genesis 27:22 Genesis 27:23 Genesis 27:24
Genesis 27:30 Genesis 27:32 Genesis 27:34
Genesis 27:37 Genesis 27:38 Genesis 27:38
Genesis 27:41 Genesis 27:41 Genesis 27:42
Genesis 27:42 Genesis 28:5 Genesis 28:6
Genesis 28:8 Genesis 28:9 Genesis 32:3
Genesis 32:4 Genesis 32:6 Genesis 32:8
Genesis 32:11 Genesis 32:13 Genesis 32:17
Genesis 32:18 Genesis 32:19 Genesis 33:1
Genesis 33:4 Genesis 33:9 Genesis 33:15
Genesis 33:16 Genesis 35:1 Genesis 35:29
Genesis 36:1 Genesis 36:2 Genesis 36:4
Genesis 36:5 Genesis 36:6 Genesis 36:8
Genesis 36:8 Genesis 36:9 Genesis 36:10
Genesis 36:10 Genesis 36:10 Genesis 36:12
Genesis 36:12 Genesis 36:13 Genesis 36:14
Genesis 36:14 Genesis 36:15 Genesis 36:15
Genesis 36:17 Genesis 36:17 Genesis 36:18
Genesis 36:18 Genesis 36:19 Genesis 36:40
Genesis 36:43

Euphrates River, the River

Definition:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called "the River."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 2:13-14
- Isaiah 7:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G21660

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:14 Genesis 15:18

Eve

Definition:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, life, Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:3
- Genesis 3:20
- Genesis 4:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:13** Then God took one of Adam's ribs and made it into a woman and brought her to him.
- **2:2** But there was a crafty snake in the garden. He asked the woman, "Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?"
- **2:11** The man named his wife **Eve**, which means "life-giver," because she would become the mother of all people.
- **21:1** God promised that a descendant of **Eve** would be born who would crush the snake's head.
- **48:2** Satan spoke through the snake in the garden in order to deceive **Eve**.
- **49:8** When Adam and **Eve** sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because Adam and **Eve** disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2332, G20960

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:20 Genesis 4:1

Gad

Definition:

Gad was Jacob's seventh son. He was Zilpah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Gad" or "Gad" or "Gad."
- The name Gad is similar to the Hebrew word for "good fortune."
- The tribe of Gad settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. This was to the north of Reuben and south of half of the tribe of Manasseh. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Gad" refers to the land given to the tribe of Gad.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 1:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G10450

Genesis References:

Genesis 30:11 Genesis 35:26 Genesis 46:16 Genesis 49:19

Gaza

Definition:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Philip, Philistines, Ethiopia, Gath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:24-25
- Acts 8:26
- Genesis 10:19
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Judges 6:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5804, H5841, G10480

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:19

Gerar

Definition:

Gerar was a city and region in the land of Canaan, located southwest of Hebron and northwest of Beersheba.

- King Abimelech was the ruler of Gerar when Abraham and Sarah settled there.
- The Philistines dominated the region of Gerar during the time that the Israelites were living in Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abimelech, Beersheba, Hebron, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 14:12-13
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1642

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:19 Genesis 20:1 Genesis 20:2 Genesis 26:1 Genesis 26:6 Genesis 26:17 Genesis 26:20 Genesis 26:26

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the "hill country of Gilead" or "Mount Gilead."
- "Gilead" was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:22
- 1 Samuel 11:1
- Amos 1:3
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:21 Genesis 31:23 Genesis 31:25 Genesis 37:25

Girgashites

Definition:

The Girgashites were a people group living near the Sea of Galilee in the land of Canaan.

- They were descendants of Ham's son Canaan and so were one of the many people groups who were also known as "Canaanites."
- God promised the Israelites that he would help them defeat the Girgashites and other Canaanite people groups.
- Like all the Canaanite peoples, the Girgashites worshiped false gods and did immoral things as part of that worship.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Noah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Joshua 24:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1622

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:16 Genesis 15:21

Gomorrah

Definition:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley near Sodom, where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

- The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
- There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
- When Lot's family was captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
- Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, Lot, Salt Sea, Sodom)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:6
- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 18:21
- Isaiah 1:9
- Matthew 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6017

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:19 Genesis 13:10 Genesis 14:2 Genesis 14:8 Genesis 14:10 Genesis 14:11 Genesis 18:20 Genesis 19:24 Genesis 19:28

Goshen

Definition:

Goshen was the name of a fertile region of land located along the Nile River in the northern part of Egypt.

- When Joseph was a ruler in Egypt, his father and brothers and their families came to live in Goshen to escape a famine in Canaan.
- They and their descendants lived well in Goshen for over 400 years, but then they were forced into slavery by the Egyptian pharaoh.
- Finally God sent Moses to help the people of Israel leave the land of Goshen and escape this slavery.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, famine, Moses, Nile River)

Bible References:

- Exodus 8:22-24
- Genesis 45:11
- Genesis 47:2
- Genesis 50:7-9
- Joshua 10:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1657

Genesis References:

Genesis 45:10 Genesis 46:28 Genesis 46:28 Genesis 46:29 Genesis 46:34 Genesis 47:1 Genesis 47:4 Genesis 47:6 Genesis 47:27 Genesis 50:8

Greece, Grecian

Definition:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

- Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, the Aegean Sea, and the Ionian Sea.
- The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Philippi and probably others.
- People who are from Greece are called "Greeks" and their language is "Greek." People from other Roman provinces also spoke Greek, including many Jews.
- Sometimes the term "Greek" is used to refer to a Gentile.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Corinth, Gentile, Greek, Hebrew, Philippi, Thessalonica)

Bible References:

- Daniel 8:21
- Daniel 10:20-21
- Daniel 11:1-2
- Zechariah 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3120, G16710

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:2 Genesis 10:4

Hagar

Definition:

Hagar was an Egyptian woman who was Sarai's personal slave.

- When Sarai was not able to bear children, she gave her servant Hagar to her husband Abram to have a child by him.
- Hagar conceived and gave birth to Abram's son Ishmael.
- God watched over Hagar when she was in distress in the desert and promised to bless her descendants.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, Ishmael, Sarah, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:25
- Genesis 16:1-4
- Genesis 21:9
- Genesis 25:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:1** So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, **Hagar**. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **5:2** **Hagar** had a baby boy, and Abram named him Ishmael.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1904

Genesis References:

Genesis 16:1 Genesis 16:3 Genesis 16:4
Genesis 16:8 Genesis 16:15 Genesis 16:15
Genesis 16:16 Genesis 21:9 Genesis 21:14
Genesis 21:17 Genesis 21:17 Genesis 25:12

Ham

Definition:

Ham was the second of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Ham and his brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- After the flood, there was an occasion where Ham was very dishonoring to his father, Noah. As a result, Noah cursed Ham's son Canaan and all his descendants, who eventually became known as the Canaanites.
- Another son of Ham was Mizraim, which means "Egypt." His descendants became the Egyptians. For this reason, Egypt is sometimes called, "the land of Ham."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ark, Canaan, dishonor, Noah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2526

Genesis References:

Genesis 5:32 Genesis 6:10 Genesis 7:13
Genesis 9:18 Genesis 9:18 Genesis 9:22
Genesis 10:1 Genesis 10:20

Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath, Hamath Rabbah

Definition:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- Sometimes called "Hamath Rabbah" which means "great Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, causing them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "person from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Canaan, Nebuchadnezzar, Syria, Zedekiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Samuel 8:9
- Amos 6:1-2
- Ezekiel 47:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2574, H2577

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:18

Hamor

Definition:

Hamor was a Canaanite man living in the city of Shechem when Jacob and his family were living in nearby Succoth. He was a Hivite.

- Jacob bought a family burial ground from Hamor's sons.
- While they were there, Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah.
- Dinah's brothers took revenge on Hamor's family and killed all the men in the city of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Hivite, Jacob, Shechem, Succoth)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:14-16
- Genesis 34:2
- Genesis 34:21
- Joshua 24:32-33
- Judges 9:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2544

Genesis References:

Genesis 33:19 Genesis 34:2 Genesis 34:4 Genesis 34:6 Genesis 34:8 Genesis 34:13 Genesis 34:18 Genesis 34:18 Genesis 34:20 Genesis 34:24 Genesis 34:26

Haran

Definition:

Haran was a younger brother of Abram and the father of Lot.

- Haran was also the name of the town where Abram and his family lived awhile on their journey from the city of Ur to the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Haran was a son of Caleb.
- A third man in the Bible named Haran was a descendant of Levi.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Caleb, Canaan, Levite, Lot, Terah, Ur)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:12
- Acts 7:1-3
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 27:43-45
- Genesis 28:10-11
- Genesis 29:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2039

Genesis References:

Genesis 11:26 Genesis 11:27 Genesis 11:27 Genesis 11:28 Genesis 11:29 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 11:32 Genesis 12:4 Genesis 12:5 Genesis 27:43 Genesis 28:10 Genesis 29:4

Hebron, Kiriath Arba

Definition:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.
- The city of Hebron was formerly called Kiriath Arba (see Joshua 14:15 and Joshua 15:54).
- The city of Hebron, formerly called Kiriath Arba, was probably founded by Arba, the father of Anak and may have been originally named Kiriath Arba to honor Arba because Joshua 14:15 records that Arba "was a great man among the Anakites."
- The name "Hebron" is an English transliteration of the Hebrew word for Hebron.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Anak, Absalom)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 2:10-11
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Genesis 35:27
- Genesis 37:12-14
- Judges 1:10
- Numbers 13:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2275, H2276

Genesis References:

Genesis 13:18 Genesis 23:2 Genesis 23:19 Genesis 35:27 Genesis 37:14

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, foreigner, Ham, mighty, Solomon, Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:8
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:15 Genesis 15:20 Genesis 23:3 Genesis 23:5 Genesis 23:7 Genesis 23:10 Genesis 23:10 Genesis 23:10 Genesis 23:16 Genesis 23:18 Genesis 23:20 Genesis 25:9 Genesis 25:10 Genesis 26:34 Genesis 26:34 Genesis 27:46 Genesis 27:46 Genesis 36:2 Genesis 49:29 Genesis 49:30 Genesis 49:32 Genesis 50:13

Hivite

Definition:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Hamor, Noah, Shechem)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 34:2
- Joshua 9:1-2
- Judges 3:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

Genesis References:

Genesis 34:2 Genesis 36:2

Isaac

Definition:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, eternity, fulfill, Jacob, Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**."
- **5:6** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."

- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac.**
- **6:5** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **7:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G24640

Genesis References:

Genesis 17:19 Genesis 17:21 Genesis 21:3 Genesis 21:4 Genesis 21:5 Genesis 21:8 Genesis 21:10 Genesis 21:12 Genesis 22:2 Genesis 22:3 Genesis 22:6 Genesis 22:7 Genesis 22:9 Genesis 24:4 Genesis 24:14 Genesis 24:62 Genesis 24:63 Genesis 24:64 Genesis 24:66 Genesis 24:67 Genesis 24:67 Genesis 25:5 Genesis 25:6 Genesis 25:9 Genesis 25:11 Genesis 25:11 Genesis 25:19 Genesis 25:19 Genesis 25:20 Genesis 25:21 Genesis 25:26 Genesis 25:28 Genesis 26:1 Genesis 26:6 Genesis 26:8 Genesis 26:9 Genesis 26:9 Genesis 26:12 Genesis 26:16 Genesis 26:17 Genesis 26:18 Genesis 26:19 Genesis 26:20 Genesis 26:25 Genesis 26:27 Genesis 26:31 Genesis 26:32 Genesis 26:35 Genesis 27:5 Genesis 27:20 Genesis 27:21 Genesis 27:22 Genesis 27:26 Genesis 27:30 Genesis 27:32 Genesis 27:33 Genesis 27:37 Genesis 27:39 Genesis 27:46 Genesis 28:1 Genesis 28:5 Genesis 28:6 Genesis 28:8 Genesis 28:13 Genesis 31:42 Genesis 31:53 Genesis 32:9 Genesis 35:12 Genesis 35:27 Genesis 35:27 Genesis 35:28 Genesis 35:29 Genesis 46:1 Genesis 48:15 Genesis 48:16 Genesis 49:31 Genesis 50:24

Ishmael, Ishmaelite

Definition:

Ishmael was the son of Abraham and the Egyptian slave Hagar. There were several other men in the Old Testament named Ishmael.

- The name "Ishmael" means "God hears."
- God promised to bless Abraham's son Ishmael, but he was not the son with whom God had promised to establish his covenant.
- God protected Hagar and Ishmael when they were sent into the desert.
- While Ishmael was living in the desert of Paran, he married an Egyptian woman.
- Ishmael son of Nethaniah was an army officer from Judah who led a group of men to kill a governor who had been appointed by the Babylonian king, Nebuchadnezzar.
- There were also four other men named Ishmael in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, covenant, desert, Egypt, Hagar, Isaac, Nebuchadnezzar, Paran, Sarah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 23:1
- Genesis 16:12
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 37:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:2** So Abram married Hagar. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him **Ishmael**.
- **5:4** "I will make **Ishmael** a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3458, H3459

Genesis References:

Genesis 16:11 Genesis 16:15 Genesis 16:16
Genesis 17:18 Genesis 17:20 Genesis 17:23
Genesis 17:25 Genesis 17:26 Genesis 25:9
Genesis 25:12 Genesis 25:13 Genesis 25:13
Genesis 25:16 Genesis 25:17 Genesis 28:9
Genesis 28:9 Genesis 36:3 Genesis 37:25
Genesis 37:27 Genesis 37:28 Genesis 39:1

Issachar

Definition:

Issachar was Jacob's ninth son. He was Leah's fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Issachar" or "Issachar."
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning "reward, hire."
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G24660

Genesis References:

Genesis 30:18 Genesis 35:23 Genesis 46:13
Genesis 49:14

Jacob, Israel

Definition:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- The name Jacob is often used to represent the nation of Israel.
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

Genesis References:

Genesis 25:26 Genesis 25:27 Genesis 25:28
Genesis 25:29 Genesis 25:30 Genesis 25:31
Genesis 25:33 Genesis 25:33 Genesis 25:34
Genesis 27:6 Genesis 27:11 Genesis 27:15
Genesis 27:17 Genesis 27:19 Genesis 27:21
Genesis 27:22 Genesis 27:22 Genesis 27:30
Genesis 27:30 Genesis 27:36 Genesis 27:41
Genesis 27:41 Genesis 27:42 Genesis 27:46
Genesis 28:1 Genesis 28:5 Genesis 28:5
Genesis 28:6 Genesis 28:7 Genesis 28:10
Genesis 28:16 Genesis 28:18 Genesis 28:20
Genesis 29:1 Genesis 29:4 Genesis 29:10
Genesis 29:10 Genesis 29:11 Genesis 29:12
Genesis 29:13 Genesis 29:15 Genesis 29:18
Genesis 29:20 Genesis 29:21 Genesis 29:28
Genesis 30:1 Genesis 30:1 Genesis 30:2
Genesis 30:4 Genesis 30:5 Genesis 30:7
Genesis 30:9 Genesis 30:10 Genesis 30:16
Genesis 30:17 Genesis 30:19 Genesis 30:25
Genesis 30:31 Genesis 30:36 Genesis 30:36
Genesis 30:37 Genesis 30:40 Genesis 30:41
Genesis 30:42 Genesis 31:1 Genesis 31:2
Genesis 31:3 Genesis 31:4 Genesis 31:11
Genesis 31:17 Genesis 31:20 Genesis 31:22
Genesis 31:24 Genesis 31:25 Genesis 31:25
Genesis 31:26 Genesis 31:29 Genesis 31:31
Genesis 31:32 Genesis 31:33 Genesis 31:36
Genesis 31:36 Genesis 31:43 Genesis 31:45
Genesis 31:46 Genesis 31:47 Genesis 31:51
Genesis 31:53 Genesis 31:54 Genesis 32:1
Genesis 32:2 Genesis 32:3 Genesis 32:4
Genesis 32:6 Genesis 32:7 Genesis 32:9
Genesis 32:18 Genesis 32:20 Genesis 32:24
Genesis 32:25 Genesis 32:27 Genesis 32:28
Genesis 32:29 Genesis 32:30 Genesis 32:32
Genesis 33:1 Genesis 33:10 Genesis 33:17
Genesis 33:18 Genesis 34:1 Genesis 34:3
Genesis 34:5 Genesis 34:5 Genesis 34:6
Genesis 34:7 Genesis 34:7 Genesis 34:13
Genesis 34:19 Genesis 34:25 Genesis 34:27
Genesis 34:30 Genesis 35:1 Genesis 35:2
Genesis 35:4 Genesis 35:4 Genesis 35:5
Genesis 35:6 Genesis 35:9 Genesis 35:10
Genesis 35:10 Genesis 35:14 Genesis 35:15
Genesis 35:20 Genesis 35:22 Genesis 35:23
Genesis 35:26 Genesis 35:27 Genesis 35:29
Genesis 36:6 Genesis 37:1 Genesis 37:2
Genesis 37:3 Genesis 37:13 Genesis 37:34
Genesis 42:1 Genesis 42:1 Genesis 42:4
Genesis 42:29 Genesis 42:36 Genesis 43:6
Genesis 43:8 Genesis 43:11 Genesis 45:21
Genesis 45:25 Genesis 45:27 Genesis 45:28
Genesis 46:1 Genesis 46:2 Genesis 46:2
Genesis 46:2 Genesis 46:5 Genesis 46:5
Genesis 46:5 Genesis 46:6 Genesis 46:8
Genesis 46:8 Genesis 46:8 Genesis 46:15
Genesis 46:18 Genesis 46:19 Genesis 46:22
Genesis 46:25 Genesis 46:26 Genesis 46:26
Genesis 46:27 Genesis 46:29 Genesis 46:30
Genesis 47:7 Genesis 47:7 Genesis 47:8
Genesis 47:9 Genesis 47:10 Genesis 47:28
Genesis 47:28 Genesis 47:29 Genesis 47:31
Genesis 48:2 Genesis 48:2 Genesis 48:3
Genesis 48:8 Genesis 48:10 Genesis 48:11
Genesis 48:13 Genesis 48:13 Genesis 48:14
Genesis 48:21 Genesis 49:1 Genesis 49:2
Genesis 49:2 Genesis 49:7 Genesis 49:24
Genesis 49:33 Genesis 50:2 Genesis 50:24

Japheth

Definition:

Japheth was one of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Japheth and his two brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- Noah's sons are usually listed as, "Shem, Ham, and Japheth." This indicates that Japheth was the youngest brother.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ark, flood, Ham, Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:4
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3315

Genesis References:

Genesis 5:32 Genesis 6:10 Genesis 7:13
Genesis 9:18 Genesis 9:23 Genesis 9:27
Genesis 10:1 Genesis 10:2 Genesis 10:21

Jebus, Jebusite

Definition:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Judges 1:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:16 Genesis 15:21

Jordan River, Jordan

Definition:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

Genesis References:

Genesis 13:10 Genesis 13:11 Genesis 32:10
Genesis 50:10 Genesis 50:11

Joseph (OT)

Definition:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Ephraim, Manasseh, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2** **Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.

- **8:9** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

Genesis References:

Genesis 30:24 Genesis 30:25 Genesis 33:2
Genesis 33:7 Genesis 35:24 Genesis 37:2
Genesis 37:2 Genesis 37:3 Genesis 37:5
Genesis 37:13 Genesis 37:17 Genesis 37:23
Genesis 37:23 Genesis 37:28 Genesis 37:28
Genesis 37:28 Genesis 37:29 Genesis 37:31
Genesis 37:33 Genesis 39:1 Genesis 39:2
Genesis 39:4 Genesis 39:5 Genesis 39:6
Genesis 39:6 Genesis 39:7 Genesis 39:10
Genesis 39:20 Genesis 39:21 Genesis 39:22
Genesis 40:3 Genesis 40:4 Genesis 40:6
Genesis 40:8 Genesis 40:9 Genesis 40:12
Genesis 40:16 Genesis 40:18 Genesis 40:22
Genesis 40:23 Genesis 41:14 Genesis 41:15
Genesis 41:16 Genesis 41:17 Genesis 41:25
Genesis 41:39 Genesis 41:41 Genesis 41:42
Genesis 41:44 Genesis 41:45 Genesis 41:45
Genesis 41:46 Genesis 41:46 Genesis 41:49
Genesis 41:50 Genesis 41:51 Genesis 41:54
Genesis 41:55 Genesis 41:56 Genesis 41:57
Genesis 42:3 Genesis 42:4 Genesis 42:6
Genesis 42:6 Genesis 42:7 Genesis 42:8
Genesis 42:9 Genesis 42:14 Genesis 42:18
Genesis 42:23 Genesis 42:25 Genesis 42:36
Genesis 43:15 Genesis 43:16 Genesis 43:17
Genesis 43:17 Genesis 43:18 Genesis 43:19
Genesis 43:24 Genesis 43:25 Genesis 43:26
Genesis 43:30 Genesis 44:2 Genesis 44:4
Genesis 44:14 Genesis 44:15 Genesis 45:1
Genesis 45:1 Genesis 45:3 Genesis 45:3
Genesis 45:4 Genesis 45:4 Genesis 45:9
Genesis 45:16 Genesis 45:17 Genesis 45:21
Genesis 45:26 Genesis 45:27 Genesis 45:27
Genesis 45:28 Genesis 46:4 Genesis 46:19
Genesis 46:20 Genesis 46:27 Genesis 46:28
Genesis 46:29 Genesis 46:30 Genesis 46:31
Genesis 47:1 Genesis 47:5 Genesis 47:7
Genesis 47:11 Genesis 47:12 Genesis 47:14
Genesis 47:14 Genesis 47:15 Genesis 47:16
Genesis 47:17 Genesis 47:17 Genesis 47:20
Genesis 47:23 Genesis 47:26 Genesis 47:29
Genesis 48:1 Genesis 48:2 Genesis 48:3
Genesis 48:8 Genesis 48:9 Genesis 48:11
Genesis 48:12 Genesis 48:13 Genesis 48:15
Genesis 48:17 Genesis 48:18 Genesis 48:21
Genesis 49:22 Genesis 49:26 Genesis 50:1
Genesis 50:2 Genesis 50:4 Genesis 50:7
Genesis 50:8 Genesis 50:14 Genesis 50:15
Genesis 50:15 Genesis 50:16 Genesis 50:17
Genesis 50:17 Genesis 50:19 Genesis 50:22
Genesis 50:22 Genesis 50:23 Genesis 50:23
Genesis 50:24 Genesis 50:25 Genesis 50:26

Judah

Definition:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, Judea, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

Genesis References:

Genesis 29:35 Genesis 35:23 Genesis 37:26
Genesis 38:1 Genesis 38:2 Genesis 38:6
Genesis 38:7 Genesis 38:8 Genesis 38:12
Genesis 38:12 Genesis 38:15 Genesis 38:20
Genesis 38:22 Genesis 38:23 Genesis 38:24
Genesis 38:24 Genesis 38:26 Genesis 43:3
Genesis 43:8 Genesis 44:14 Genesis 44:16
Genesis 44:18 Genesis 46:12 Genesis 46:28
Genesis 49:8 Genesis 49:9 Genesis 49:10

Kadesh, Kadesh Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

Definition:

The names Kadesh, Kadesh Barnea, and Meribah Kadesh all refer to an important city in Israel's history which was located in the southern part of Israel, near the region of Edom.

- The city of Kadesh was an oasis, a place where there was water and fertile soil in the middle of a desert named Zin.
- Moses sent twelve spies into the land of Canaan from Kadesh Barnea.
- Israel also encamped at Kadesh during the wandering in the wilderness.
- Kadesh Barnea was where Miriam died.
- It was at Meribah Kadesh where Moses disobeyed God and hit a rock to get water for the Israelites, instead of speaking to it as God had told him to do.
- The name "kadesh" comes from the Hebrew word meaning "holy" or "set apart."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: desert, Edom, holy)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 48:28
- Genesis 14:7-9
- Genesis 16:14
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4809, H6946, H6947

Genesis References:

Genesis 20:1

Kedar

Definition:

Kedar was Ishmael's second son. It was also an important city, which was probably named after the man.

- The city of Kedar is located in the northern part of Arabia near the southern border of Palestine. In Bible times, it was known for its greatness and beauty.
- The descendants of Kedar formed a large people group that is also called "Kedar."
- The phrase "dark tents of Kedar" refers to the black goathair tents the people of Kedar lived in.
- These people raised sheep and goats. They also used camels for transporting things.
- In the Bible, the phrase "the glory of Kedar" refers to the greatness of that city and its people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, goat, Ishmael, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Song of Songs 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6938

Genesis References:

Genesis 25:13

Korah, Korahite

Definition:

Korah was the name of three men in the Old Testament.

1. Korah was a descendant of Levi and so served in the tabernacle as a priest. He became jealous of Moses and Aaron and led a group of men to rebel against them.
2. One of the sons of Esau was named Korah. He became a leader in his community.
3. A third man named Korah is listed as a descendant of Judah.

(See also: Aaron, authority, Caleb, descendant, Esau, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:34-37
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Psalm 42:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7141

Genesis References:

Genesis 36:5 Genesis 36:14 Genesis 36:16 Genesis 36:18

Laban

Definition:

In the Old Testament, Laban was the uncle and father-in-law of Jacob.

- Jacob lived with Laban's household in Padan Aram and managed his sheep and goats as a condition of marriage to Laban's daughters.
- Jacob's preference was for Laban's daughter Rachel to be his wife.
- Laban deceived Jacob and made him marry his oldest daughter Leah first before giving Rachel to him as his wife.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Nahor, Leah, Rachel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:30
- Genesis 24:50
- Genesis 27:43
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 29:5
- Genesis 29:13
- Genesis 30:26
- Genesis 46:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3837

Genesis References:

Genesis 24:29 Genesis 24:29 Genesis 24:50
Genesis 25:20 Genesis 27:43 Genesis 28:2
Genesis 28:5 Genesis 29:5 Genesis 29:10
Genesis 29:10 Genesis 29:13 Genesis 29:13
Genesis 29:14 Genesis 29:15 Genesis 29:16
Genesis 29:19 Genesis 29:21 Genesis 29:22
Genesis 29:24 Genesis 29:25 Genesis 29:26
Genesis 29:29 Genesis 30:25 Genesis 30:27
Genesis 30:34 Genesis 30:36 Genesis 30:40
Genesis 30:40 Genesis 30:42 Genesis 31:1
Genesis 31:2 Genesis 31:12 Genesis 31:19
Genesis 31:20 Genesis 31:22 Genesis 31:24
Genesis 31:25 Genesis 31:25 Genesis 31:26
Genesis 31:31 Genesis 31:33 Genesis 31:34
Genesis 31:36 Genesis 31:36 Genesis 31:43
Genesis 31:47 Genesis 31:48 Genesis 31:51
Genesis 31:55 Genesis 31:55 Genesis 32:4
Genesis 46:18 Genesis 46:25

Lamech

Definition:

Lamech was the name of two men mentioned in the book of Genesis.

- The first Lamech mentioned was a descendant of Cain. He boasted to his two wives that he had killed a man for injuring him.
- The second Lamech was a descendant of Seth. He was also the father of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, Noah, Seth)

Bible References:

- Genesis 4:18-19
- Genesis 4:24
- Genesis 5:25
- Genesis 5:29
- Genesis 5:31
- Luke 3:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3929, G29840

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:18 Genesis 4:19 Genesis 4:23
Genesis 4:23 Genesis 4:24 Genesis 5:25
Genesis 5:26 Genesis 5:28 Genesis 5:30
Genesis 5:31

Leah

Definition:

Leah was one of Jacob's wives. She was the older sister of Rachel and the mother of six of Jacob's sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun. She was also the mother of Jacob's daughter Dinah.

- The book of Genesis tells the story of how Leah's father Laban tricked Jacob into marrying her before marrying Rachel.
- God abundantly blessed Leah by giving her many children, even though her husband Jacob loved Rachel more than her.
- Leah is the ancestral mother of both King David and Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Zebulun, Laban, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:17
- Genesis 29:28
- Genesis 31:6
- Ruth 4:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3812

Genesis References:

Genesis 29:16 Genesis 29:17 Genesis 29:23 Genesis 29:24 Genesis 29:25 Genesis 29:30 Genesis 29:31 Genesis 29:32 Genesis 30:9 Genesis 30:10 Genesis 30:11 Genesis 30:13 Genesis 30:14 Genesis 30:14 Genesis 30:16 Genesis 30:17 Genesis 30:18 Genesis 30:19 Genesis 30:20 Genesis 31:4 Genesis 31:14 Genesis 31:33 Genesis 31:33 Genesis 33:1 Genesis 33:2 Genesis 33:7 Genesis 34:1 Genesis 35:23 Genesis 35:26 Genesis 46:15 Genesis 46:18 Genesis 49:31

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, priest, sacrifice, temple, Jacob, Leah, Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

Genesis References:

Genesis 29:34 Genesis 34:25 Genesis 34:30
Genesis 35:23 Genesis 49:5

Lot

Definition:

Lot was Abraham's nephew.

- He was the son of Abraham's brother Haran.
- Lot traveled with Abraham to the land of Canaan and settled in the city of Sodom.
- Lot was the ancestor of the Moabites and Ammonites.
- When enemy kings attacked Sodom and captured Lot, Abraham came with several hundred men to rescue Lot and recover his belongings.
- The people living in the city of Sodom were very wicked, so God destroyed that city. But he first told Lot and his family to leave the city so that that they could escape.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Ammon, Haran, Moab, Sodom)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3876, G30910

Genesis References:

Genesis 11:27 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 12:4
Genesis 12:5 Genesis 13:1 Genesis 13:5
Genesis 13:7 Genesis 13:8 Genesis 13:10
Genesis 13:11 Genesis 13:11 Genesis 13:12
Genesis 13:14 Genesis 14:12 Genesis 14:16
Genesis 19:1 Genesis 19:1 Genesis 19:5
Genesis 19:6 Genesis 19:9 Genesis 19:10
Genesis 19:12 Genesis 19:14 Genesis 19:15
Genesis 19:18 Genesis 19:23 Genesis 19:29
Genesis 19:29 Genesis 19:30 Genesis 19:36

Maacah

Definition:

Maacah (or Maakah) was one of the sons of Abraham's brother Nahor. Other people in the Old Testament also had this name.

- The city of Maacah or Beth Maacah was located in the far north of Israel, in the region occupied by the tribe of Naphtali.
- It was an important city and was attacked by enemies on several occasions.
- Maacah was the name of several women, including the mother of David's son Absalom.
- King Asa removed his grandmother Maacah from being queen because she had promoted Asherah worship.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asa, Asherah, Nahor, Naphtali, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4601

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:24

Manasseh

Definition:

Manasseh was the older son of Joseph. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Manasseh is similar to the the Hebrew word meaning "to forget."
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh. King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Three other men named Manasseh are mentioned in the Old Testament. One of them was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods. The other two were men who lived during the time of Ezra and were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Joseph, Ephraim, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:9
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Genesis 41:51
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 1:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4519, H4520, G31280

Genesis References:

Genesis 41:51 Genesis 46:20 Genesis 48:1
Genesis 48:5 Genesis 48:13 Genesis 48:14
Genesis 48:14 Genesis 48:17 Genesis 48:20
Genesis 48:20 Genesis 50:23

Mede, Medes, Media

Definition:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called “Medes.”

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Daniel, Darius, Elam, Persia)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:6
- Acts 2:9
- Daniel 5:28
- Esther 1:3-4
- Ezra 6:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G33700

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:2

Melchizedek

Definition:

During the time when Abram lived, Melchizedek was the king of the city of Salem (later “Jerusalem”)

- Melchizedek’s name means “king of righteousness” and his title “king of Salem” means “king of peace.”
- He was also called a “priest of God Most High.”
- Melchizedek is first mentioned in the Bible when he served Abram bread and wine after Abram rescued his nephew Lot from powerful kings. Abram gave Melchizedek one-tenth of the plunder from his victory.
- In the New Testament, Melchizedek is described as someone who had no father or mother. He was called a priest and king who will reign forever.
- The New Testament also says that Jesus is a priest according to the priestly “order of Melchizedek.” Jesus was not descended from Levi as the Israelite priests were. His priesthood is directly from God, as Melchizedek’s was.
- Based on these descriptions of him in the Bible, Melchizedek was a human priest who was also chosen by God to represent or point forward to Jesus, the eternal king of peace and righteousness and our great high priest.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, everlasting, high priest, Jerusalem, Levite, priest, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:18
- Hebrews 6:20
- Hebrews 7:17
- Psalm 110:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4442, G31980

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:18 Genesis 14:18

Meshech

Definition:

Meshech is the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One Meshech was a son of Japheth.
- The other Meshech was a grandson of Shem.
- Meshech was also the name of a region of land, which was probably named after one of these men.
- The region of Meshech may have been located in part of what is now the country of Turkey.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Japheth, Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:5-7
- Ezekiel 27:12-13
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Psalms 120:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4851, H4902

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:23

Midian, Midianite

Definition:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also Arabia, Egypt, flock, Gideon, Jethro, Moses)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:16
- Genesis 25:1-4
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Genesis 37:28
- Judges 7:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **16:4** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **16:11** The man's friend said, "This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat the **Midianite** army!"
- **16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

Genesis References:

Genesis 25:2 Genesis 25:4 Genesis 36:35 Genesis 37:28 Genesis 37:36

Mizpah

Definition:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means "look-out point" or "watchtower."

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: David, Judah, kingdom of Israel, Moab, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 7:5-6
- 1 Samuel 7:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:49

Moab, Moabite

Definition:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

Genesis References:

Genesis 19:37 Genesis 19:37 Genesis 36:35

Naaman

Definition:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman’s household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob’s son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Jordan River, leprosy, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:6-7
- 2 Kings 5:1
- Luke 4:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- **19:15** At first **Naaman** was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- **26:6** “He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5283, G34970

Genesis References:

Genesis 46:21

Nahor

Definition:

Nahor was the name of two relatives of Abraham, his grandfather and his brother.

- Abraham's brother Nahor was the grandfather of Isaac's wife Rebekah.
- The phrase "city of Nahor" could mean "the city named Nahor" or "the city where Nahor had lived" or "Nahor's city."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Rebekah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:24-27
- Genesis 31:53
- Joshua 24:2
- Luke 3:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5152, G34930

Genesis References:

Genesis 11:22 Genesis 11:23 Genesis 11:24 Genesis 11:25 Genesis 11:26 Genesis 11:27 Genesis 11:29 Genesis 11:29 Genesis 22:20 Genesis 22:23 Genesis 24:10 Genesis 24:15 Genesis 24:24 Genesis 24:47 Genesis 29:5 Genesis 31:53

Naphtali

Definition:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

Genesis References:

Genesis 30:8 Genesis 46:24 Genesis 49:21

Negeb, Negev

Definition:

The Negeb is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negeb Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negeb or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negeb when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negeb region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, Israel, Judah, Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 3:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5045, H6160

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:9 Genesis 13:1 Genesis 13:3 Genesis 13:14 Genesis 20:1 Genesis 24:62 Genesis 28:14

Nephils, Nephilim, Nephilites

Definition:

The term “Nephils” is the name for a group of people who is mentioned in two passages in the Bible. Once in Genesis 6:4, before the flood, and twice in Numbers 13:33, after the flood. The “Nephils” are called “Nephilim” or “Nephilites.” The Nephils were a physically large people that had a reputation for being mighty warriors.

English translations have chosen to either transliterate the original language (Hebrew) word as “Nephilim” or transliterate the first part of the word "Nephil" and then add the English plural ending “ites” resulting in “Nephilites.” You may desire to do translisterate this term in your translation as well.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names, Copy or Borrow Words)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6062, H7497

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:4

Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile

Definition:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water for food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen, which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Goshen, Moses)

Bible References:

- Amos 8:8
- Genesis 41:1-3
- Jeremiah 46:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**.
- **9:4** Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**.
- **9:6** When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed.
- **10:3** God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0216, H2975, H4714, H5104

Genesis References:

Genesis 41:1 Genesis 41:2 Genesis 41:3
Genesis 41:3 Genesis 41:17 Genesis 41:18

Nineveh, Ninevite

Definition:

Nineveh was the capital city of Assyrian empire. A “Ninevite” was a person who lived in Nineveh.

- God sent the prophet Jonah to warn the Ninevites to turn from their wicked ways. The people stopped acting so violently and God did not destroy them at that time.
- The prophets Nahum and Zephaniah both prophesied that God would destroy Nineveh as judgment for their sin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Jonah, repent, turn)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Jonah 1:3
- Jonah 3:3
- Luke 11:32
- Matthew 12:41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5210, G35350, G35360

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:11 Genesis 10:12

Noah

Definition:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: descendant, ark)

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:30-31
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:8
- Genesis 8:1
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **3:4** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **3:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5146, G35750

Genesis References:

Genesis 5:29 Genesis 5:30 Genesis 5:32 Genesis 5:32 Genesis 6:8 Genesis 6:9 Genesis 6:9 Genesis 6:9 Genesis 6:9 Genesis 6:10 Genesis 6:13 Genesis 6:22 Genesis 7:1 Genesis 7:5 Genesis 7:6 Genesis 7:7 Genesis 7:9 Genesis 7:9 Genesis 7:11 Genesis 7:13 Genesis 7:13 Genesis 7:13 Genesis 7:15 Genesis 7:23 Genesis 8:1 Genesis 8:6 Genesis 8:11 Genesis 8:13 Genesis 8:15 Genesis 8:18 Genesis 8:20 Genesis 9:1 Genesis 9:8 Genesis 9:17 Genesis 9:18 Genesis 9:20 Genesis 9:24 Genesis 9:28 Genesis 9:29 Genesis 10:1 Genesis 10:32

Paddan Aram

Definition:

Paddan Aram was the name of a region where Abraham's family lived before moving to the land of Canaan. It means "plain of Aram."

- When Abraham left Haran in Paddan Aram to travel to the land of Canaan, most of the rest of his family stayed behind in Haran.
- Many years later, Abraham's servant went to Paddan Aram to find a wife for Isaac among his relatives there and found Rebekah, grand-daughter of Bethuel.
- Isaac and Rebekah's son Jacob also traveled to Paddan Aram and married two daughters of Rebekah's brother Laban who was living in Haran.
- Aram, Paddan Aram, and Aram Naharaim were all part of the same region that is now where the modern-day country of Syria is located.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Aram, Bethuel, Canaan, Haran, Jacob, Laban, Rebekah, Syria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:2
- Genesis 35:9
- Genesis 46:12-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6307

Genesis References:

Genesis 25:20 Genesis 25:20 Genesis 28:2 Genesis 28:2 Genesis 28:5 Genesis 28:5 Genesis 28:6 Genesis 28:6 Genesis 28:7 Genesis 28:7 Genesis 31:18 Genesis 31:18 Genesis 33:18 Genesis 33:18 Genesis 35:9 Genesis 35:9 Genesis 35:26 Genesis 35:26 Genesis 46:15 Genesis 46:15 Genesis 48:7

Paran

Definition:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

- The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
- When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
- It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
- The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, desert, Egypt, Kadesh, Sinai)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:18
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- Genesis 21:19-21
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 13:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0364, H6290

Genesis References:

Genesis 21:21

Perizzite

Definition:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the "Perezites," was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:16-18
- Genesis 13:7
- Joshua 3:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

Genesis References:

Genesis 13:7 Genesis 15:20 Genesis 34:30

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Definition:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: egypt, king)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 7:13
- Acts 7:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:7
- Genesis 41:25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **8:8** **Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **9:2** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **9:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed __Pharaoh __ that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G53280

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:15 Genesis 12:15 Genesis 12:15
Genesis 12:17 Genesis 12:18 Genesis 12:20
Genesis 37:36 Genesis 39:1 Genesis 40:2
Genesis 40:7 Genesis 40:11 Genesis 40:11
Genesis 40:11 Genesis 40:13 Genesis 40:13
Genesis 40:14 Genesis 40:17 Genesis 40:19
Genesis 40:21 Genesis 41:1 Genesis 41:4
Genesis 41:7 Genesis 41:8 Genesis 41:8
Genesis 41:9 Genesis 41:10 Genesis 41:14
Genesis 41:14 Genesis 41:15 Genesis 41:16
Genesis 41:16 Genesis 41:17 Genesis 41:25
Genesis 41:25 Genesis 41:25 Genesis 41:28
Genesis 41:28 Genesis 41:32 Genesis 41:33
Genesis 41:34 Genesis 41:35 Genesis 41:37
Genesis 41:38 Genesis 41:39 Genesis 41:41
Genesis 41:42 Genesis 41:44 Genesis 41:44
Genesis 41:45 Genesis 41:46 Genesis 41:46
Genesis 41:55 Genesis 41:55 Genesis 42:15
Genesis 42:16 Genesis 44:18 Genesis 45:2
Genesis 45:8 Genesis 45:16 Genesis 45:16
Genesis 45:17 Genesis 45:21 Genesis 46:5
Genesis 46:31 Genesis 46:33 Genesis 47:1
Genesis 47:2 Genesis 47:3 Genesis 47:4
Genesis 47:5 Genesis 47:7 Genesis 47:7
Genesis 47:8 Genesis 47:9 Genesis 47:10
Genesis 47:10 Genesis 47:11 Genesis 47:14
Genesis 47:19 Genesis 47:20 Genesis 47:20
Genesis 47:22 Genesis 47:22 Genesis 47:23
Genesis 47:24 Genesis 47:25 Genesis 47:26
Genesis 47:26 Genesis 50:4 Genesis 50:4
Genesis 50:6 Genesis 50:7

Philistines

Definition:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, David, Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:4
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 56:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6429, H6430

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:14 Genesis 21:32 Genesis 21:34 Genesis 26:1 Genesis 26:8 Genesis 26:14 Genesis 26:15 Genesis 26:18

Potiphar

Definition:

Potiphar was an important official for the pharaoh of Egypt during the time that Joseph was sold as a slave to some Ishmaelites.

- Potiphar bought Joseph from the Ishmaelites and appointed him to be in charge of his household.
- When Joseph was falsely accused of doing wrong, Potiphar had Joseph put in prison.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Joseph (OT), Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:34-36
- Genesis 39:2
- Genesis 39:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6318

Genesis References:

Genesis 37:36 Genesis 39:1

Rachel

Definition:

Rachel was one of Jacob's wives. She was the mother of Joseph and Benjamin, whose descendants became three of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Rachel and her sister Leah were the daughters of Laban, Jacob's uncle.
- For many years, Rachel was not able to have any children. Then God enabled her to give birth to Joseph.
- Years later, Rachel died as she gave birth to Benjamin. Jacob buried her near Bethlehem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Jacob, Laban, Leah, Joseph (OT), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:6
- Genesis 29:19-20
- Genesis 29:30
- Genesis 31:6
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Matthew 2:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7354, G44780

Genesis References:

Genesis 29:6 Genesis 29:9 Genesis 29:10 Genesis 29:11 Genesis 29:12 Genesis 29:16 Genesis 29:17 Genesis 29:18 Genesis 29:18 Genesis 29:20 Genesis 29:25 Genesis 29:28 Genesis 29:29 Genesis 29:30 Genesis 29:30 Genesis 29:31 Genesis 30:1 Genesis 30:1 Genesis 30:2 Genesis 30:6 Genesis 30:7 Genesis 30:8 Genesis 30:14 Genesis 30:15 Genesis 30:22 Genesis 30:25 Genesis 31:4 Genesis 31:14 Genesis 31:19 Genesis 31:32 Genesis 31:33 Genesis 31:34 Genesis 33:1 Genesis 33:2 Genesis 33:7 Genesis 35:16 Genesis 35:19 Genesis 35:20 Genesis 35:24 Genesis 46:19 Genesis 46:22 Genesis 46:25 Genesis 48:7

Rebekah

Definition:

Rebekah was a grand-daughter of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- God chose Rebekah to be the wife of Abraham's son Isaac.
- Rebekah left the region of Aram Naharaim where she lived and went with Abraham's servant to the region of the Negeb where Isaac was living.
- For a long time Rebekah did not have any children, but finally God blessed her with twin boys, Esau and Jacob.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Aram, Esau, Isaac, Jacob, Nahor, Negeb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15
- Genesis 24:45
- Genesis 24:56
- Genesis 24:64
- Genesis 25:28
- Genesis 26:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:2** After a very long journey to the land where Abraham's relatives lived, God led the servant to **Rebekah**. She was the granddaughter of Abraham's brother.
- **6:6** God told **Rebekah**, "There are two nations inside of you."
- **7:1** As the boys grew up, **Rebekah** loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau.
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau. But before he did, **Rebekah** and Jacob tricked him by having Jacob pretend to be Esau.
- **7:6** But **Rebekah** heard of Esau's plan. So she sent Jacob far away to live with her relatives.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7259

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:23 Genesis 24:15 Genesis 24:29
Genesis 24:30 Genesis 24:45 Genesis 24:51
Genesis 24:53 Genesis 24:58 Genesis 24:59
Genesis 24:60 Genesis 24:61 Genesis 24:61
Genesis 24:64 Genesis 24:67 Genesis 25:20
Genesis 25:21 Genesis 25:28 Genesis 26:7
Genesis 26:8 Genesis 26:35 Genesis 27:5
Genesis 27:6 Genesis 27:11 Genesis 27:15
Genesis 27:42 Genesis 27:46 Genesis 28:5
Genesis 29:12 Genesis 35:8 Genesis 49:31

Reuben

Definition:

Reuben was Jacob's first son. He was Leah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the tribe of Reuben or the Reubenites.
- In Hebrew, the name Reuben means "Look, a son!"
- The tribe of Reuben settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River along with the tribe of Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G45020

Genesis References:

Genesis 29:32 Genesis 30:14 Genesis 35:22
Genesis 35:23 Genesis 37:21 Genesis 37:22
Genesis 37:29 Genesis 42:22 Genesis 42:37
Genesis 46:8 Genesis 46:9 Genesis 48:5
Genesis 49:3

Salt Sea, eastern sea

Definition:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on its west and Moab on its east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, it is more the size of a lake.
- This sea has such a high concentration of minerals (or "salts") that nothing can live in its waters. Its lack of plants and animals is the cause of the name "Dead Sea."
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the "Sea of Arabah" and the "Sea of Negeb" because of its location near the regions of Arabah and Negeb.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ammon, Arabah, Jordan River, Moab, Negeb)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:17
- Joshua 3:14-16
- Numbers 34:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H4417

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:3

Sarah, Sarai

Definition:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:30
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 17:15
- Genesis 25:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:1** So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **5:4** "Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son—he will be the son of promise."
- **5:4** God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess."
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8283, H8297, G45640

Genesis References:

Genesis 11:29 Genesis 11:30 Genesis 12:5
Genesis 12:11 Genesis 12:17 Genesis 16:1
Genesis 16:2 Genesis 16:2 Genesis 16:3
Genesis 16:5 Genesis 16:6 Genesis 16:6
Genesis 16:8 Genesis 16:8 Genesis 17:15
Genesis 17:15 Genesis 17:15 Genesis 17:17
Genesis 17:19 Genesis 17:21 Genesis 18:6
Genesis 18:9 Genesis 18:10 Genesis 18:10
Genesis 18:11 Genesis 18:11 Genesis 18:12
Genesis 18:13 Genesis 18:14 Genesis 18:15
Genesis 20:2 Genesis 20:2 Genesis 20:14
Genesis 20:16 Genesis 20:18 Genesis 21:1
Genesis 21:1 Genesis 21:2 Genesis 21:3
Genesis 21:6 Genesis 21:7 Genesis 21:9
Genesis 21:12 Genesis 23:1 Genesis 23:1
Genesis 23:2 Genesis 23:2 Genesis 23:19
Genesis 24:36 Genesis 24:67 Genesis 25:10
Genesis 25:12 Genesis 49:31

Saul (OT)

Definition:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: king)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 9:1
- 2 Samuel 1:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 18:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:1** **Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **17:4** **Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- **17:5** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G45490

Genesis References:

Genesis 36:37 Genesis 36:38 Genesis 46:10

Seth

Definition:

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

- Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
- Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
- Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abel, Cain, call, descendant, ancestor, flood, Noah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:1
- Luke 3:36-38
- Numbers 24:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8352, G45890

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:25 Genesis 4:26 Genesis 5:3 Genesis 5:4 Genesis 5:6 Genesis 5:7

Sheba

Definition:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what are now the present-day countries of Yemen and Ethiopia.
- Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There were also several men named "Sheba" listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba was shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Arabia, Beersheba, Ethiopia, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:8-10
- 1 Kings 10:1-2
- Isaiah 60:6-7
- Psalms 72:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5434, H7614

Genesis References:

Genesis 25:3

Shechem

Definition:

Shechem was a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem was also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem was where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem. This land later became his family burial ground and the place where his sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, resulting in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: Hamor)

(See also: Canaan, Esau, Hamor, Hivite, Jacob)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:14-16
- Genesis 12:6-7
- Genesis 33:19
- Genesis 37:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7928, H7930

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:6 Genesis 33:18 Genesis 33:19 Genesis 34:2 Genesis 34:4 Genesis 34:6 Genesis 34:8 Genesis 34:11 Genesis 34:13 Genesis 34:18 Genesis 34:20 Genesis 34:24 Genesis 34:26 Genesis 34:26 Genesis 37:12 Genesis 37:13 Genesis 37:14

Shem

Definition:

Shem was one of Noah's three sons, all of whom went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

- Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
- The descendants of Shem were known as "Semites"; they spoke "Semitic" languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
- The Bible indicates that Shem lived nearly 600 years.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Arabia, ark, flood, Noah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:31
- Genesis 11:10
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8035, G45900

Genesis References:

Genesis 5:32 Genesis 6:10 Genesis 7:13 Genesis 9:18 Genesis 9:23 Genesis 9:26 Genesis 9:27 Genesis 10:1 Genesis 10:21 Genesis 10:22 Genesis 10:31 Genesis 11:10 Genesis 11:10 Genesis 11:11

Shiloh

Definition:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

- The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
- During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
- The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
- Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
- When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethel, dedicate, Hannah, Jerusalem, Jordan River, priest, sacrifice, Samuel, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:26-27
- 1 Samuel 1:9-10
- Joshua 18:1-2
- Judges 18:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7886, H7887

Genesis References:

Genesis 49:10

Shinar

Definition:

Shinar means “country of two rivers” and was the name of a plain or region in southern Mesopotamia.

- Shinar later became known as “Chaldea” and then, “Babylonia.”
- Ancient peoples living in the city of Babel in the Plain of Shinar built a tall tower to try to make themselves great.
- Generations later, the Jewish patriarch Abraham lived in the city of Ur in this region, which by that time was called “Chaldea.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babel, Babylon, Chaldea, Mesopotamia, patriarchs, Ur)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:8-10
- Genesis 14:1
- Genesis 14:7-9
- Isaiah 11:10-11
- Zechariah 5:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8152

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:10 Genesis 11:2 Genesis 14:1 Genesis 14:9

Sidon, Sidonians

Definition:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan’s son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The “Sidonians” were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Noah, Phoenicia, the sea, Tyre)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6721, H6722, G46050, G46060

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:15 Genesis 10:19 Genesis 49:13

Simeon

Definition:

Simeon was Jacob's second son. He was Leah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Simeon."
- The name Simeon is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to hear."
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Simeon" refers to the land given to the tribe of Simeon.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.
- Another man named Simeon is mentioned in Luke's geneology of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33
- Genesis 34:25
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 2:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G48260

Genesis References:

Genesis 29:33 Genesis 34:25 Genesis 34:30
Genesis 35:23 Genesis 42:24 Genesis 42:36
Genesis 43:23 Genesis 46:10 Genesis 48:5
Genesis 49:5

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: Canaan, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- Matthew 10:15
- Matthew 11:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G46700

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:19 Genesis 13:10 Genesis 13:12
Genesis 13:13 Genesis 14:2 Genesis 14:8
Genesis 14:10 Genesis 14:11 Genesis 14:12
Genesis 14:17 Genesis 14:21 Genesis 14:22
Genesis 18:16 Genesis 18:20 Genesis 18:22
Genesis 18:26 Genesis 19:1 Genesis 19:1
Genesis 19:4 Genesis 19:24 Genesis 19:28

Succoth

Definition:

Succoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, “succoth” (or “sukkoth”) means “shelters.”

- One city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midianites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The other city called Succoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:46
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Joshua 13:27-28
- Judges 8:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5523, H5524

Genesis References:

Genesis 33:17 Genesis 33:17

Tamar

Definition:

Tamar is the name of several different women in the Old Testament. There are also several cities or other places that are named Tamar in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. After Tamar became a widow, Judah fathered a son with Tamar, who continued the family name of her dead husband. The son’s name was Perez, who became an ancestor of King David and of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David’s daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called “Hazezon Tamar” was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a “Baal Tamar,” and general references to a place called “Tamar” which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: Absalom, ancestor, Amnon, David, ancestor, Judah, Salt Sea)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:4
- 2 Samuel 13:2
- 2 Samuel 14:25-27
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24
- Ruth 4:12
- Matthew 1:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1193, H2688, H8412, H8559

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:7 Genesis 38:6 Genesis 38:13 Genesis 38:24

Tarshish

Definition:

In biblical times, Tarshish was a port city situated on the Mediterranean Sea. The specific location of the city is unknown. Also, the Old Testament mentions two different men named Tarshish.

- The city of Tarshish was a prosperous port city with ships that carried products to buy, sell, or trade. The Bible states that King Solomon kept a fleet of ships stationed at Tarshish.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.
- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Esther, Japheth, Jonah, Nineveh, Phoenicia, wise men)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:2-5
- Isaiah 2:16
- Jeremiah 10:9
- Jonah 1:3
- Psalms 48:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8659

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:4

Terah

Definition:

Terah was a descendant of Noah's son Shem. He was the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran.

- Terah left his home in Ur in order to go to the land of Canaan with his son Abram, his nephew Lot, and Abram's wife Sarai.
- On the way to Canaan, Terah and his family lived for years in the city of Haran in Mesopotamia. Terah died in Haran at the age of 205.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, Haran, Lot, Mesopotamia, Nahor, Sarah, Shem, Ur)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:31-32
- 1 Chronicles 1:24-27
- Luke 3:33-35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8646, G22910

Genesis References:

Genesis 11:24 Genesis 11:25 Genesis 11:26
Genesis 11:27 Genesis 11:27 Genesis 11:28
Genesis 11:31 Genesis 11:32 Genesis 11:32

Tubal

Definition:

There were several men in the Old Testament who had the name “Tubal.”

- One man named Tubal was one of the sons of Japheth.
- A man named “Tubal-Cain” was a son of Lamech and descendant of Cain.
- Tubal was also the name of a people group mentioned by the prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, descendant, Ezekiel, Isaiah, Japheth, Lamech, people group, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:5
- Ezekiel 27:12-13
- Genesis 10:2-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8422, H8423

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:22 Genesis 4:22 Genesis 10:2

Ur

Definition:

Ur was an important city along the Euphrates River in the ancient region of Chaldea, which was part of Mesopotamia. This region was located in what is now the modern-day country of Iraq.

- Abraham was from the city of Ur and it was from there that God called him to leave to go to the land of Canaan.
- Haran, the brother of Abraham and father of Lot, died in Ur. This was probably a factor that influenced Lot to leave Ur with Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, Chaldea, Euphrates River, Haran, Lot, Mesopotamia)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0218

Genesis References:

Genesis 11:28 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 15:7

Zebulun

Definition:

Zebulun was Jacob's tenth son. He was Leah's sixth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Zebulun" or "Zebulun."
- The meaning of the name Zebulun is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word probably meaning "to honor" or "to dwell."
- The tribe of Zebulun settled in northwest Canaan, bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Issachar, Manasseh, and Asher.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:20
- Isaiah 9:1
- Judges 4:10
- Matthew 4:13
- Matthew 4:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G21940

Genesis References:

Genesis 30:20 Genesis 35:23 Genesis 49:13

Zilpah

Definition:

Zilpah was one of Jacob's wives. She was the mother of Jacob's two sons Gad and Asher.

- Laban gave Zilpah to Leah as a servant when Leah married Jacob.
- When Leah stopped having children, she gave Zilpah to Jacob as a wife to bear more children for her.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Leah, Gad, Asher)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:23
- Genesis 30:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2153

Genesis References:

Genesis 29:24 Genesis 30:9 Genesis 30:10
Genesis 35:26 Genesis 37:2 Genesis 46:18

Zoar

Definition:

Zoar was a small city where Lot fled when God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.

- It was formerly known as “Bela” but was renamed “Zoar” when Lot asked God to spare this “small” city.
- Zoar is thought to have been located in the plain of the Jordan River or at the southern end of the Dead Sea.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Lot, Sodom, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 34:1-3
- Genesis 13:10-11
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 19:22
- Genesis 19:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6820

Genesis References:

Genesis 13:10 Genesis 14:2 Genesis 14:8 Genesis 19:22 Genesis 19:23 Genesis 19:30 Genesis 19:30

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:20 Genesis 22:17 Genesis 24:60 Genesis 49:8

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one’s soul” means to abstain from eating food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

Genesis References:

Genesis 16:11 Genesis 29:32 Genesis 31:42
Genesis 31:50 Genesis 41:52 Genesis 43:6

archer

Definition:

The term “archer” refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

- In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
- Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
- Some languages might have a term for this, such as “bow-man.”

(See also: Assyria)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24
- Genesis 21:20
- Isaiah 21:16-17
- Job 16:13
- Proverbs 26:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1167, H1869, H2671, H3384, H7198, H7199, H7228

Genesis References:

Genesis 21:20

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

Genesis References:

Genesis 28:3 Genesis 48:4 Genesis 49:1
Genesis 49:2 Genesis 49:6 Genesis 49:29

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To "avenge" or "take revenge" or "execute vengeance" is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is "vengeance."

- Usually "avenge" implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression "take revenge" or "get revenge" usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God "takes vengeance" or "executes vengeance," he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to "avenge" could also be translated as to "right a wrong" or to "get justice for."
- When referring to human beings, to "take revenge" could be translated as "pay back" or "hurt in order to punish" or "get back at."
- Depending on the context, "vengeance" could be translated as "punishment" or "punishment of sin" or "payment for wrongs done." If a word meaning "retaliation" is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, "take my vengeance," this could be translated by "punish them for wrongs done against me" or "cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me."
- When referring to God's vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, just, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:15 Genesis 4:24

barren, dry

Definition:

To be "barren" means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "barren" is used to refer to land, it could be translated as "not fertile" or "unfruitful" or "without plants."
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as "childless" or "not able to bear children" or "unable to conceive a child."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:5
- Galatians 4:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 3:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G06920, G47230

Genesis References:

Genesis 11:30 Genesis 25:21 Genesis 29:31

bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced

Definition:

Used in this sense, the term “bear” means to “produce” or “give birth to.”

- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit”
- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child
- Depending on context, this term could be translated as “produce” or “give birth to.”

(Translation suggestions: fruit)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3205, H3209, H3211, H5375, G01420, G03990, G04300, G09410, G10800, G41600, G47220, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:16 Genesis 4:1 Genesis 4:2 Genesis 4:13 Genesis 4:17 Genesis 4:18 Genesis 4:20 Genesis 4:22 Genesis 4:25 Genesis 4:26 Genesis 6:1 Genesis 6:4 Genesis 10:1 Genesis 10:21 Genesis 14:14 Genesis 16:1 Genesis 16:2 Genesis 16:11 Genesis 16:15 Genesis 16:15 Genesis 16:16 Genesis 17:12 Genesis 17:13 Genesis 17:17 Genesis 17:19 Genesis 17:21 Genesis 17:23 Genesis 17:27 Genesis 18:13 Genesis 19:37 Genesis 19:38 Genesis 20:17 Genesis 21:2 Genesis 21:3 Genesis 21:3 Genesis 21:5 Genesis 21:7 Genesis 21:9 Genesis 22:20 Genesis 22:24 Genesis 24:15 Genesis 24:24 Genesis 24:36 Genesis 24:47 Genesis 25:2 Genesis 25:12 Genesis 25:24 Genesis 25:26 Genesis 29:32 Genesis 29:33 Genesis 29:34 Genesis 29:34 Genesis 29:35 Genesis 29:35 Genesis 30:1 Genesis 30:3 Genesis 30:5 Genesis 30:7 Genesis 30:9 Genesis 30:10 Genesis 30:17 Genesis 30:19 Genesis 30:20 Genesis 30:21 Genesis 30:23 Genesis 30:25 Genesis 30:39 Genesis 31:8 Genesis 31:8 Genesis 31:43 Genesis 34:1 Genesis 35:16 Genesis 35:16 Genesis 35:17 Genesis 35:26 Genesis 36:4 Genesis 36:4 Genesis 36:5 Genesis 36:5 Genesis 36:12 Genesis 36:14 Genesis 38:3 Genesis 38:5 Genesis 38:5 Genesis 38:27 Genesis 38:28 Genesis 40:20 Genesis 41:50 Genesis 41:50 Genesis 44:27 Genesis 46:15 Genesis 46:18 Genesis 46:20 Genesis 46:20 Genesis 46:22 Genesis 46:25 Genesis 46:27 Genesis 48:5 Genesis 50:23

beast

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, nation, power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

Genesis References:

Genesis 7:2 Genesis 7:2 Genesis 7:8 Genesis 7:8 Genesis 8:20 Genesis 34:23 Genesis 36:6 Genesis 45:17 Genesis 47:18

day

Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: time, judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:5 Genesis 1:5 Genesis 1:8 Genesis 1:13 Genesis 1:14 Genesis 1:14 Genesis 1:16 Genesis 1:18 Genesis 1:19 Genesis 1:23 Genesis 1:31 Genesis 2:2 Genesis 2:2 Genesis 2:3 Genesis 2:4 Genesis 2:17 Genesis 3:5 Genesis 3:8 Genesis 3:14 Genesis 3:17 Genesis 4:3 Genesis 4:14 Genesis 5:1 Genesis 5:2 Genesis 5:4 Genesis 5:11 Genesis 5:14 Genesis 5:17 Genesis 5:20 Genesis 5:23 Genesis 5:27 Genesis 5:31 Genesis 6:3 Genesis 6:4 Genesis 6:5 Genesis 7:4 Genesis 7:4 Genesis 7:10 Genesis 7:11 Genesis 7:11 Genesis 7:12 Genesis 7:13 Genesis 7:17 Genesis 7:24 Genesis 8:3 Genesis 8:4 Genesis 8:6 Genesis 8:10 Genesis 8:12 Genesis 8:14 Genesis 8:22 Genesis 8:22 Genesis 9:29 Genesis 10:25 Genesis 11:32 Genesis 14:1 Genesis 15:18 Genesis 17:12 Genesis 17:23 Genesis 17:26 Genesis 18:1 Genesis 19:37 Genesis 19:38 Genesis 21:4 Genesis 21:8 Genesis 21:26 Genesis 21:34 Genesis 22:4 Genesis 22:14 Genesis 24:1 Genesis 24:12 Genesis 24:42 Genesis 24:55 Genesis 25:7 Genesis 25:24 Genesis 25:31 Genesis 25:33 Genesis 26:1 Genesis 26:8 Genesis 26:15 Genesis 26:18 Genesis 26:32 Genesis 26:33 Genesis 27:2 Genesis 27:41 Genesis 27:44 Genesis 27:45 Genesis 29:7 Genesis 29:14 Genesis 29:20 Genesis 29:21 Genesis 30:14 Genesis 30:32 Genesis 30:33 Genesis 30:35 Genesis 30:36 Genesis 31:22 Genesis 31:23 Genesis 31:39 Genesis 31:40 Genesis 31:43 Genesis 31:48 Genesis 32:32 Genesis 33:16 Genesis 34:25 Genesis 35:3 Genesis 35:20 Genesis 35:28 Genesis 35:29 Genesis 37:34 Genesis 38:12 Genesis 39:10 Genesis 39:10 Genesis 39:11 Genesis 40:4 Genesis 40:7 Genesis 40:12 Genesis 40:13 Genesis 40:18 Genesis 40:19 Genesis 40:20 Genesis 41:1 Genesis 41:9 Genesis 42:13 Genesis 42:17 Genesis 42:18 Genesis 42:32 Genesis 43:9 Genesis 44:32 Genesis 47:8 Genesis 47:9 Genesis 47:9 Genesis 47:9 Genesis 47:9 Genesis 47:23 Genesis 47:26 Genesis 47:28 Genesis 47:29 Genesis 48:15 Genesis 48:20 Genesis 49:1 Genesis 50:3 Genesis 50:3 Genesis 50:3 Genesis 50:4 Genesis 50:10 Genesis 50:20

month, monthly

Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, H3391, H3393, G33760

Genesis References:

Genesis 7:11 Genesis 7:11 Genesis 8:4 Genesis 8:4 Genesis 8:5 Genesis 8:5 Genesis 8:13 Genesis 8:14 Genesis 8:14 Genesis 29:14 Genesis 38:24

week

Definition:

The term “week” literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

- In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
- In the Bible, the term “week” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
- The “Festival of Weeks” is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called “Pentecost.”

(See also: Pentecost)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:7-8
- Deuteronomy 16:9
- Leviticus 23:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7620, G45210

Genesis References:

Genesis 29:27 Genesis 29:28

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:14 Genesis 5:3 Genesis 5:4 Genesis 5:6 Genesis 5:6 Genesis 5:7 Genesis 5:7 Genesis 5:9 Genesis 5:10 Genesis 5:10 Genesis 5:11 Genesis 5:11 Genesis 5:12 Genesis 5:13 Genesis 5:13 Genesis 5:14 Genesis 5:14 Genesis 5:15 Genesis 5:15 Genesis 5:16 Genesis 5:16 Genesis 5:17 Genesis 5:17 Genesis 5:18 Genesis 5:18 Genesis 5:19 Genesis 5:20 Genesis 5:20 Genesis 5:21 Genesis 5:22 Genesis 5:23 Genesis 5:23 Genesis 5:25 Genesis 5:25 Genesis 5:26 Genesis 5:26 Genesis 5:27 Genesis 5:27 Genesis 5:28 Genesis 5:28 Genesis 5:30 Genesis 5:30 Genesis 5:31 Genesis 5:31 Genesis 5:32 Genesis 6:3 Genesis 7:6 Genesis 7:11 Genesis 8:13 Genesis 9:28 Genesis 9:28 Genesis 9:29 Genesis 9:29 Genesis 11:10 Genesis 11:10 Genesis 11:11 Genesis 11:12 Genesis 11:13 Genesis 11:13 Genesis 11:14 Genesis 11:15 Genesis 11:15 Genesis 11:16 Genesis 11:17 Genesis 11:17 Genesis 11:18 Genesis 11:19 Genesis 11:19 Genesis 11:20 Genesis 11:21 Genesis 11:21 Genesis 11:22 Genesis 11:23 Genesis 11:24 Genesis 11:25 Genesis 11:25 Genesis 11:26 Genesis 11:32 Genesis 11:32 Genesis 12:4 Genesis 12:4 Genesis 14:4 Genesis 14:4 Genesis 14:5 Genesis 15:13 Genesis 16:3 Genesis 16:16 Genesis 16:16 Genesis 17:1 Genesis 17:1 Genesis 17:17 Genesis 17:21 Genesis 17:24 Genesis 17:25 Genesis 21:5 Genesis 23:1 Genesis 23:1 Genesis 23:1 Genesis 23:1 Genesis 25:7 Genesis 25:7 Genesis 25:7 Genesis 25:7 Genesis 25:17 Genesis 25:17 Genesis 25:17 Genesis 25:17 Genesis 25:20 Genesis 25:26 Genesis 26:12 Genesis 26:34 Genesis 29:18 Genesis 29:20 Genesis 29:27 Genesis 29:30 Genesis 31:38 Genesis 31:41 Genesis 31:41 Genesis 31:41 Genesis 35:28 Genesis 35:28 Genesis 37:2 Genesis 41:1 Genesis 41:26 Genesis 41:26 Genesis 41:27 Genesis 41:27 Genesis 41:29 Genesis 41:30 Genesis 41:34 Genesis 41:35 Genesis 41:36 Genesis 41:46 Genesis 41:47 Genesis 41:48 Genesis 41:50 Genesis 41:53 Genesis 41:54 Genesis 45:6 Genesis 45:6 Genesis 45:11 Genesis 47:8 Genesis 47:9 Genesis 47:9 Genesis 47:9 Genesis 47:9 Genesis 47:17 Genesis 47:18 Genesis 47:18 Genesis 47:28 Genesis 47:28 Genesis 47:28 Genesis 47:28 Genesis 50:22 Genesis 50:26

blot out, wipe out

Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 7:23
- Psalm 51:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4229, H8045, G18130

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:7 Genesis 7:4 Genesis 7:23 Genesis 7:23

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19

- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

Genesis References:

Genesis 18:2 Genesis 19:1 Genesis 23:7 Genesis 23:12 Genesis 24:26 Genesis 24:48 Genesis 24:52 Genesis 27:29 Genesis 27:29 Genesis 33:3 Genesis 33:6 Genesis 33:7 Genesis 33:7 Genesis 37:7 Genesis 37:9 Genesis 37:10 Genesis 41:43 Genesis 42:6 Genesis 43:26 Genesis 43:28 Genesis 44:14 Genesis 47:31 Genesis 48:12 Genesis 49:8 Genesis 50:18

bow and arrow, a bow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine. When not in use the bow string would not be attached to both ends of the bow so that the bow was not under the pressure of being bent all the time. When preparing to fight a warrior would bend the bow and attach the string to both ends.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:16
- Habakkuk 3:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 2:4
- Psalms 58:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G51150

Genesis References:

Genesis 9:13 Genesis 9:14 Genesis 9:16 Genesis 21:16 Genesis 27:3 Genesis 48:22 Genesis 49:23 Genesis 49:24

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:19 Genesis 14:18 Genesis 18:5
Genesis 21:14 Genesis 25:34 Genesis 27:17
Genesis 28:20 Genesis 31:54 Genesis 31:54
Genesis 37:25 Genesis 39:6 Genesis 40:16
Genesis 41:54 Genesis 41:55 Genesis 43:25
Genesis 43:31 Genesis 43:32 Genesis 45:23
Genesis 47:12 Genesis 47:13 Genesis 47:15
Genesis 47:17 Genesis 47:17 Genesis 47:19
Genesis 49:20

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:22

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

Genesis References:

Genesis 8:20 Genesis 22:2 Genesis 22:3 Genesis 22:6 Genesis 22:7 Genesis 22:8 Genesis 22:13

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, tomb)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:15 Genesis 23:4 Genesis 23:6 Genesis 23:6 Genesis 23:8 Genesis 23:11 Genesis 23:13 Genesis 23:15 Genesis 23:19 Genesis 25:9 Genesis 25:10 Genesis 35:4 Genesis 35:8 Genesis 35:19 Genesis 35:29 Genesis 47:29 Genesis 47:30 Genesis 48:7 Genesis 49:29 Genesis 49:31 Genesis 49:31 Genesis 49:31 Genesis 50:5 Genesis 50:6 Genesis 50:7 Genesis 50:13 Genesis 50:14 Genesis 50:14

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, clean)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:21
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 3:4
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G25740

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:16 Genesis 24:10 Genesis 24:10
Genesis 24:11 Genesis 24:14 Genesis 24:19
Genesis 24:20 Genesis 24:22 Genesis 24:30
Genesis 24:31 Genesis 24:32 Genesis 24:32
Genesis 24:35 Genesis 24:44 Genesis 24:46
Genesis 24:46 Genesis 24:61 Genesis 24:63
Genesis 24:64 Genesis 30:43 Genesis 31:17
Genesis 31:34 Genesis 32:7 Genesis 32:15
Genesis 37:25

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms "captive" and "captivity" refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to "take captive" is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, "carry you away captive" could also be translated as "force you to live as captives" or "take you away to another country as prisoners."
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to "take captive" every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be "taken captive" by sin, which means he is "controlled by" sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be "held captive" could also be translated by, "not allowed to be free" or "kept in prison" or "forced to live in a foreign country."
- The expression, "led captive" or "taken captive" could be translated as "captured" or "imprisoned" or "forced to go to a foreign land."
- The term "captives" could also be translated as "people who were captured" or "enslaved people."
- Depending on the context, "captivity" could also be translated as "imprisonment" or "exile" or "forced stay in a foreign country."

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5

- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:14 Genesis 31:26 Genesis 34:29

cast out, driving out, throw out

Definition:

To "cast out" or "drive out" someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term "cast" means the same thing as "throw." To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, "cast out" or "cast away" someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, "force out" or "send away" or "get rid of."
- To "cast out demons" could be translated as "cause the demons to leave" or "drive the evil spirits out" or "expel the demons" or "command the demon to come out."
- To "cast out" someone from a synagog or church could be translated as "banish them" or "put them out."

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, lots)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:17-19
- Mark 3:13-16
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G15440

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:24 Genesis 4:14 Genesis 21:10
Genesis 37:20 Genesis 37:22 Genesis 37:24

chariot, charioteer

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Egypt, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

Genesis References:

Genesis 41:43 Genesis 46:29 Genesis 50:9

cherub, cherubs

Definition:

The term "cherub" and "cherubs"(the plural form is often transliterated as "cherubim" in English versions), refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubs as having wings and flames.

- The cherubs display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubs with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubs facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubs into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubs are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "cherubs" could be translated as "creatures with wings" or "guardians with wings" or "winged spiritual guardians" or "holy, winged guardians."
- A "cherub" should be translated as the singular of cherubs, as in, "creature with wings" or "winged spiritual guardian," for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "angel."
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: angel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6

- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G55020

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:24

chief, leader

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: head, chief priests, priest, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:2
- Psalm 4:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

Genesis References:

Genesis 36:15 Genesis 36:15 Genesis 36:15
Genesis 36:15 Genesis 36:15 Genesis 36:16
Genesis 36:16 Genesis 36:16 Genesis 36:16
Genesis 36:17 Genesis 36:17 Genesis 36:17
Genesis 36:17 Genesis 36:17 Genesis 36:18
Genesis 36:18 Genesis 36:18 Genesis 36:18
Genesis 36:19 Genesis 36:21 Genesis 36:29
Genesis 36:29 Genesis 36:29 Genesis 36:29
Genesis 36:29 Genesis 36:30 Genesis 36:30
Genesis 36:30 Genesis 36:30 Genesis 36:40
Genesis 36:40 Genesis 36:40 Genesis 36:40
Genesis 36:41 Genesis 36:41 Genesis 36:41
Genesis 36:43 Genesis 36:43 Genesis 36:43

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- The term “clan” might also be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: family, Jethro, tribe)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 3:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0441, H1004, H4940

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:5 Genesis 10:18 Genesis 10:20
Genesis 10:31 Genesis 10:32 Genesis 12:3
Genesis 24:38 Genesis 24:40 Genesis 24:41
Genesis 28:14 Genesis 36:40

companion, fellow worker, friend

Definition:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term “fellow worker” refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with” or “person who works with.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 1:9
- Proverbs 2:17
- Psalms 38:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G28440, G33530, G48980, G49040

Genesis References:

Genesis 26:26 Genesis 38:20 Genesis 43:33

conceive, conceived, conception

Definition:

Used in this sense, the terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to a woman becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- Depending on context, the term “conceived” could be translated as “became pregnant” or “became pregnant with.”

(See also: create, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 2:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 1:24-25
- Luke 2:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G10800, G17220, G28450, G48150

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:1 Genesis 4:17 Genesis 16:4 Genesis 16:4 Genesis 16:5 Genesis 16:11 Genesis 19:36 Genesis 21:2 Genesis 25:21 Genesis 29:32 Genesis 29:33 Genesis 29:34 Genesis 29:35 Genesis 30:5 Genesis 30:7 Genesis 30:17 Genesis 30:19 Genesis 30:23 Genesis 30:41 Genesis 38:3 Genesis 38:18 Genesis 38:24 Genesis 38:25

concubine

Definition:

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:7
- Genesis 22:24
- Genesis 25:5-6
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 36:12
- Judges 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3904, H6370

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:24 Genesis 25:6 Genesis 35:22 Genesis 36:12

contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to

Definition:

The term “contempt” refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called “contemptible.”

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called “contemptible” and could be translated as “greatly disrespectful” or “completely dishonorable” or “deserving scorn.”
- To “hold in contempt” means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: “have contempt for” or “show contempt for” or “be in contempt of” or “treat with contempt.” These all mean to “strongly disrespect” or “strongly dishonor” something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had “shown contempt for” God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: dishonor)

Bible References:

- Daniel 12:1-2
- Proverbs 15:5-6
- Psalms 31:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0936, H0937, H0959, H0963, H1860, H7043, H7589, H5006, G18480

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:3 Genesis 25:34 Genesis 38:23

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: evil)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G08610, G13110, G27040, G53510, G53560

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:11 Genesis 6:12 Genesis 6:12

council

Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The “Jewish Council” in Jerusalem, also known as the “Sanhedrin,” had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word “council” could also be translated as “legal assembly” or “political assembly.”
- To be “in council” means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than “counsel,” which means “wise advice.”

(See also: assembly, counsel, Pharisee, law, priest, Sadducee, scribe)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 24:20
- John 3:2
- Luke 22:68
- Mark 13:9
- Matthew 5:22
- Matthew 26:59

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4186, H5475, G10100, G48240, G48920

Genesis References:

Genesis 49:6

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:16 Genesis 13:5 Genesis 15:9
Genesis 18:7 Genesis 18:7 Genesis 18:8
Genesis 20:14 Genesis 21:27 Genesis 24:35
Genesis 26:14 Genesis 32:5 Genesis 32:7
Genesis 32:15 Genesis 32:15 Genesis 33:13
Genesis 34:28 Genesis 41:2 Genesis 41:3
Genesis 41:3 Genesis 41:4 Genesis 41:4
Genesis 41:18 Genesis 41:19 Genesis 41:20
Genesis 41:20 Genesis 41:26 Genesis 41:27
Genesis 45:10 Genesis 46:32 Genesis 47:1
Genesis 47:17 Genesis 49:6 Genesis 50:8

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:1 Genesis 1:21 Genesis 1:27 Genesis 1:27 Genesis 1:27 Genesis 2:3 Genesis 2:4 Genesis 5:1 Genesis 5:2 Genesis 5:2 Genesis 6:7

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- The terms “cry” or “cry out” can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: call speak loudly, plead, pray)

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:10 Genesis 18:20 Genesis 18:21 Genesis 19:13 Genesis 27:34 Genesis 27:34 Genesis 39:14 Genesis 39:15 Genesis 39:18 Genesis 41:55

cupbearer

Definition:

In Old Testament times, a “cupbearer” was a king’s servant who was given the task of bringing the king his cup of wine, usually tasting the wine first to make sure it had not been poisoned.

- In English, the term cupbearer literally means “cup bringer” or “someone who brings the cup.”
- A cupbearer was known for being very trustworthy and loyal to his king.
- Because of his trusted position, a cupbearer would often have influence in the decisions the ruler made.
- Nehemiah was the cupbearer for King Artaxerxes of Persia during the time when some of the Israelites were in captivity in Babylon.

(See also: Artaxerxes, Babylon, captive, Persia, Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:3-5
- Nehemiah 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8248

Genesis References:

Genesis 40:1 Genesis 40:2 Genesis 40:5 Genesis 40:9 Genesis 40:13 Genesis 40:20 Genesis 40:21 Genesis 40:23 Genesis 41:9

deceive, lie, deception, illusion

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:13 Genesis 27:35 Genesis 29:25 Genesis 31:7 Genesis 34:13

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:16 Genesis 26:22

deer, doe, fawn, roebuck, stag

Definition:

A deer is a large, graceful, four-legged animal that lives in forests or on mountains. The male animal has large horns or antlers on its head.

- The term “doe” refers to a female deer and a “fawn” is the name of a baby deer.
- The terms “buck” and "stag" refer to a male deer.
- A “roebuck” is the male of the specific variety called “roe deer.”
- Deer have strong, thin legs that help them jump high and run fast.
- Their feet have split hooves which help them walk or climb easily on most any terrain.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:34
- Genesis 49:21
- Job 39:2
- Psalms 18:33
- Song of Songs 2:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0354, H0355, H0365, H3180, H3280, H6643, H6646

Genesis References:

Genesis 49:21

defile, defiled, desecrate

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: profane, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 7:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G28390, G28400, G33920, G34350

Genesis References:

Genesis 34:5 Genesis 34:13 Genesis 34:27 Genesis 49:4

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:9 Genesis 18:12 Genesis 34:19 Genesis 49:6 Genesis 49:15

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: judge, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:20 Genesis 32:11 Genesis 32:30
Genesis 37:21 Genesis 37:22 Genesis 45:7

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

Genesis References:

Genesis 17:12 Genesis 21:23

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:6 Genesis 16:7 Genesis 21:14 Genesis 21:20 Genesis 21:21 Genesis 36:24 Genesis 37:22

desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator

Definition:

The terms "desolate" and "desolation," when used to refer to a place or location, refer to the state or condition of being ruined and left fully or partially uninhabited. The term "desolate," when referring to a person or group of people, describes a state or condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.

- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A "desolate region" refers to an area of land that is partially deserted or abandoned and therefore has few people living there.
- If a city is "made desolate" it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes "empty" and "ruined." This is similar to the meaning of "devastate" or "devastated," but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- A "desolate land" or "wilderness" was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a city or region, could be translated as "ruined" or "destroyed" or "laid waste" or "abandoned" or "deserted."
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a person or people group, could be translated as "lonely and outcast" or "deserted."
- A "desolator" is one who causes desolation.

(See also: desert, devastate, ruin, waste)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 1:20
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Lamentations 3:11
- Luke 11:17

- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0490, H0816, H0910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G20480, G20490, G20500, G34430

Genesis References:

Genesis 47:19

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:13 Genesis 6:17 Genesis 9:11
Genesis 9:15 Genesis 13:10 Genesis 18:28
Genesis 18:28 Genesis 18:31 Genesis 18:32
Genesis 19:13 Genesis 19:14 Genesis 19:29
Genesis 34:30

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: consume)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:15

discern, discernment, distinguish

Definition:

The term “discern” means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

- The term “discernment” refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
- It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discern” could also be translated as “understand” or “know the difference between” or “distinguish good and evil” or “judge rightly about” or “perceive right from wrong.”
- “Discernment” could be translated as “understanding” or “ability to distinguish good and evil.”

(See also: judge, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:7-9
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Proverbs 1:5
- Psalms 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H2940, H4209, H5234, H8085, G03500, G12520, G12530, G29240

Genesis References:

Genesis 41:33 Genesis 41:39

disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed

Definition:

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: believe, persecute, captive, exile)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:1
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 30:23
- Psalms 18:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2219, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G12870, G12900, G46500

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:18 Genesis 10:32 Genesis 11:4 Genesis 11:8 Genesis 11:9 Genesis 49:7

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: apostle, false god, magic, sorcery)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:1-2
- Acts 16:16
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:5
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G44360

Genesis References:

Genesis 30:27 Genesis 44:5 Genesis 44:15

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:16 Genesis 12:16 Genesis 16:12
Genesis 22:3 Genesis 22:5 Genesis 24:35
Genesis 30:43 Genesis 32:5 Genesis 32:15
Genesis 32:15 Genesis 34:28 Genesis 36:24
Genesis 42:26 Genesis 42:27 Genesis 43:18
Genesis 43:24 Genesis 44:3 Genesis 44:13
Genesis 45:23 Genesis 45:23 Genesis 47:17
Genesis 49:11 Genesis 49:11 Genesis 49:14

dove, pigeon, turtledove

Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.
- A turtledove is a type of dove mentioned in Genesis 15:9, Song of Songs 2:12, and Leviticus 12:6.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: olive, innocent, pure)

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:9
- Luke 2:22-24
- Mark 1:10
- Matthew 3:16
- Matthew 21:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G40580

Genesis References:

Genesis 8:8 Genesis 8:9 Genesis 8:10 Genesis 8:11 Genesis 8:12 Genesis 15:9

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:16-17
- Daniel 1:17-18
- Daniel 2:1
- Genesis 37:6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 2:13
- Matthew 2:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2** Joseph’s brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **8:7** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, “God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine.”

- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:1** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G17970, G17980, G36770

Genesis References:

Genesis 20:3 Genesis 20:6 Genesis 28:12
Genesis 31:10 Genesis 31:11 Genesis 31:24
Genesis 37:5 Genesis 37:5 Genesis 37:6
Genesis 37:6 Genesis 37:8 Genesis 37:9
Genesis 37:9 Genesis 37:9 Genesis 37:9
Genesis 37:10 Genesis 37:10 Genesis 37:19
Genesis 37:20 Genesis 40:5 Genesis 40:5
Genesis 40:5 Genesis 40:5 Genesis 40:8
Genesis 40:8 Genesis 40:9 Genesis 40:9
Genesis 40:16 Genesis 41:1 Genesis 41:5
Genesis 41:7 Genesis 41:8 Genesis 41:11
Genesis 41:11 Genesis 41:11 Genesis 41:11
Genesis 41:12 Genesis 41:12 Genesis 41:15
Genesis 41:15 Genesis 41:15 Genesis 41:17
Genesis 41:22 Genesis 41:25 Genesis 41:26
Genesis 41:32 Genesis 42:9 Genesis 42:9

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: burnt offering, grain offering)

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14
- Jeremiah 7:16-18
- Numbers 5:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

Genesis References:

Genesis 35:14

drunk, drunkard

Definition:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

Genesis References:

Genesis 9:21 Genesis 43:34

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of a people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.

- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”

- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, heaven)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:1 Genesis 1:2 Genesis 1:10 Genesis 1:11 Genesis 1:11 Genesis 1:12 Genesis 1:15 Genesis 1:17 Genesis 1:20 Genesis 1:22 Genesis 1:24 Genesis 1:24 Genesis 1:25 Genesis 1:26 Genesis 1:26 Genesis 1:28 Genesis 1:28 Genesis 1:29 Genesis 1:30 Genesis 1:30 Genesis 2:1 Genesis 2:4 Genesis 2:4 Genesis 2:5 Genesis 2:5 Genesis 2:6 Genesis 2:11 Genesis 2:12 Genesis 2:13 Genesis 4:12 Genesis 4:14 Genesis 4:16 Genesis 6:4 Genesis 6:5 Genesis 6:6 Genesis 6:11 Genesis 6:11 Genesis 6:12 Genesis 6:12 Genesis 6:13 Genesis 6:13 Genesis 6:17 Genesis 6:17 Genesis 7:3 Genesis 7:4 Genesis 7:6 Genesis 7:10 Genesis 7:12 Genesis 7:14 Genesis 7:17 Genesis 7:17 Genesis 7:18 Genesis 7:19 Genesis 7:21 Genesis 7:21 Genesis 7:23 Genesis 7:24 Genesis 8:1 Genesis 8:3 Genesis 8:7 Genesis 8:9 Genesis 8:11 Genesis 8:13 Genesis 8:14 Genesis 8:17 Genesis 8:17 Genesis 8:17 Genesis 8:19 Genesis 8:22 Genesis 9:1 Genesis 9:2 Genesis 9:7 Genesis 9:10 Genesis 9:10 Genesis 9:11 Genesis 9:13 Genesis 9:14 Genesis 9:16 Genesis 9:17 Genesis 10:5 Genesis 10:8 Genesis 10:10 Genesis 10:11 Genesis 10:20 Genesis 10:25 Genesis 10:31 Genesis 10:32 Genesis 11:1 Genesis 11:2 Genesis 11:4 Genesis 11:8 Genesis 11:9 Genesis 11:9 Genesis 11:28 Genesis 11:31 Genesis 12:1 Genesis 12:1 Genesis 12:5 Genesis 12:5 Genesis 12:6 Genesis 12:6 Genesis 12:7 Genesis 12:10 Genesis 12:10 Genesis 13:6 Genesis 13:7 Genesis 13:9 Genesis 13:10 Genesis 13:12 Genesis 13:15 Genesis 13:16 Genesis 13:16 Genesis 13:17 Genesis 14:19 Genesis 14:22 Genesis 15:7 Genesis 15:13 Genesis 15:18 Genesis 16:3 Genesis 17:8 Genesis 17:8 Genesis 18:2 Genesis 18:18 Genesis 18:25 Genesis 19:1 Genesis 19:23 Genesis 19:28 Genesis 19:28 Genesis 19:31 Genesis 19:31 Genesis 20:1 Genesis 20:15 Genesis 21:21 Genesis 21:23 Genesis 21:32 Genesis 21:34 Genesis 22:2 Genesis 22:18 Genesis 23:2 Genesis 23:7 Genesis 23:12 Genesis 23:13 Genesis 23:15 Genesis 23:19 Genesis 24:3 Genesis 24:4 Genesis 24:5 Genesis 24:5 Genesis 24:7 Genesis 24:7 Genesis 24:37 Genesis 24:52 Genesis 24:62 Genesis 25:6 Genesis 26:1 Genesis 26:2 Genesis 26:3 Genesis 26:3 Genesis 26:4 Genesis 26:4 Genesis 26:12 Genesis 26:22 Genesis 27:28 Genesis 27:39 Genesis 27:46 Genesis 28:4 Genesis 28:12 Genesis 28:13 Genesis 28:14 Genesis 29:1 Genesis 30:25 Genesis 31:3 Genesis 31:13 Genesis 31:13 Genesis 31:18 Genesis 32:3 Genesis 32:9 Genesis 33:3 Genesis 33:18 Genesis 34:1 Genesis 34:2 Genesis 34:10 Genesis 34:21

Genesis 34:21 Genesis 34:30 Genesis 35:6
Genesis 35:12 Genesis 35:12 Genesis 35:16
Genesis 35:22 Genesis 36:5 Genesis 36:6
Genesis 36:6 Genesis 36:7 Genesis 36:16
Genesis 36:17 Genesis 36:20 Genesis 36:21
Genesis 36:30 Genesis 36:31 Genesis 36:34
Genesis 36:43 Genesis 37:1 Genesis 37:1
Genesis 37:10 Genesis 38:9 Genesis 40:15
Genesis 41:19 Genesis 41:29 Genesis 41:30
Genesis 41:30 Genesis 41:31 Genesis 41:33
Genesis 41:34 Genesis 41:34 Genesis 41:36
Genesis 41:36 Genesis 41:36 Genesis 41:41
Genesis 41:43 Genesis 41:44 Genesis 41:45
Genesis 41:46 Genesis 41:47 Genesis 41:48
Genesis 41:52 Genesis 41:53 Genesis 41:54
Genesis 41:54 Genesis 41:55 Genesis 41:56
Genesis 41:56 Genesis 41:57 Genesis 41:57
Genesis 42:5 Genesis 42:6 Genesis 42:6
Genesis 42:6 Genesis 42:7 Genesis 42:9
Genesis 42:12 Genesis 42:13 Genesis 42:29
Genesis 42:30 Genesis 42:30 Genesis 42:32
Genesis 42:33 Genesis 42:34 Genesis 43:1
Genesis 43:11 Genesis 43:26 Genesis 44:8
Genesis 44:11 Genesis 44:14 Genesis 45:6
Genesis 45:7 Genesis 45:8 Genesis 45:10
Genesis 45:17 Genesis 45:18 Genesis 45:18
Genesis 45:19 Genesis 45:20 Genesis 45:25
Genesis 45:26 Genesis 46:6 Genesis 46:12
Genesis 46:20 Genesis 46:28 Genesis 46:31
Genesis 46:34 Genesis 47:1 Genesis 47:1
Genesis 47:4 Genesis 47:4 Genesis 47:4
Genesis 47:6 Genesis 47:6 Genesis 47:6
Genesis 47:11 Genesis 47:11 Genesis 47:11
Genesis 47:13 Genesis 47:13 Genesis 47:13
Genesis 47:14 Genesis 47:14 Genesis 47:15
Genesis 47:15 Genesis 47:20 Genesis 47:27
Genesis 47:27 Genesis 47:28 Genesis 48:3
Genesis 48:4 Genesis 48:5 Genesis 48:7
Genesis 48:7 Genesis 48:12 Genesis 48:16
Genesis 48:21 Genesis 49:15 Genesis 49:30
Genesis 50:5 Genesis 50:8 Genesis 50:11
Genesis 50:13 Genesis 50:24 Genesis 50:24

elder

Definition:

The term “elder” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community and to be respected for their wisdom and experience.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “respected leaders” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

Genesis References:

Genesis 50:7 Genesis 50:7

envy, covet, jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “envy” and “envious” refer to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities or abilities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, possessions, or abilities.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.
- In some contexts the terms “jealous” and “jealousy” can mean “envy.”

Translation Suggestions

- When the terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to being wrongfully “envious” of someone the terms “envious” or “envy” could be used if the context permits.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

Genesis References:

Genesis 26:14 Genesis 30:1

family, household

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 1:21
- Joshua 2:12-13
- Luke 2:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0251, H0272, H0504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G10850, G36140, G36240, G39650

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:1 Genesis 24:4 Genesis 24:7 Genesis 31:3 Genesis 32:9 Genesis 43:7 Genesis 43:8

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:10 Genesis 12:10 Genesis 26:1 Genesis 26:1 Genesis 41:27 Genesis 41:30 Genesis 41:30 Genesis 41:31 Genesis 41:36 Genesis 41:36 Genesis 41:54 Genesis 41:54 Genesis 41:56 Genesis 41:56 Genesis 41:57 Genesis 42:5 Genesis 42:19 Genesis 43:1 Genesis 45:6 Genesis 45:11 Genesis 47:4 Genesis 47:13 Genesis 47:13 Genesis 47:20

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

Genesis References:

Genesis 19:3 Genesis 21:8 Genesis 26:30
Genesis 29:22 Genesis 40:20

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:7

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, son)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 2:6-7
- Revelation 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:4 Genesis 10:15 Genesis 22:21 Genesis 25:13 Genesis 27:19 Genesis 27:32 Genesis 29:26 Genesis 35:23 Genesis 36:15 Genesis 38:6 Genesis 38:7 Genesis 41:51 Genesis 43:33 Genesis 46:8 Genesis 48:14 Genesis 48:18 Genesis 49:3

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: goat, cow, pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:2 Genesis 4:4 Genesis 12:16
Genesis 13:5 Genesis 21:28 Genesis 24:35
Genesis 26:14 Genesis 27:9 Genesis 29:2
Genesis 29:2 Genesis 29:3 Genesis 29:8
Genesis 30:31 Genesis 30:32 Genesis 30:36
Genesis 30:38 Genesis 30:38 Genesis 30:39
Genesis 30:39 Genesis 30:40 Genesis 30:40
Genesis 30:40 Genesis 30:40 Genesis 30:41
Genesis 30:41 Genesis 30:42 Genesis 30:43
Genesis 31:4 Genesis 31:8 Genesis 31:8
Genesis 31:10 Genesis 31:10 Genesis 31:12
Genesis 31:38 Genesis 31:41 Genesis 31:43
Genesis 31:43 Genesis 32:5 Genesis 32:7
Genesis 32:16 Genesis 32:16 Genesis 32:16
Genesis 32:16 Genesis 32:19 Genesis 33:13
Genesis 34:28 Genesis 37:2 Genesis 37:12
Genesis 37:14 Genesis 38:17 Genesis 45:10
Genesis 46:32 Genesis 46:32 Genesis 46:34
Genesis 47:1 Genesis 47:3 Genesis 47:4
Genesis 47:17 Genesis 50:8

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “do not let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: Metaphor)
- The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:10
- Genesis 7:6-7
- Luke 6:46-48
- Matthew 7:24-25
- Matthew 7:26-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3999, G26270

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:17 Genesis 7:7 Genesis 7:10 Genesis 7:17 Genesis 9:11 Genesis 9:11 Genesis 9:15 Genesis 9:28 Genesis 10:1 Genesis 10:32 Genesis 11:10

flute, pipe

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: flock, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:7
- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- Daniel 3:3-5
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 9:23
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G08320, G08340, G08360

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:21

alien, foreigner, sojourn

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.” To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

Genesis References:

Genesis 17:12 Genesis 17:27 Genesis 31:15 Genesis 35:4

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

Genesis References:

Genesis 24:27 Genesis 28:15

fountain, source, spring

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: flood)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:17
- Genesis 7:11
- Genesis 8:2
- Genesis 24:13
- Genesis 24:42
- James 3:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0953, H1530, H1543, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H8444, H8666, G02420, G40770

Genesis References:

Genesis 7:11 Genesis 8:2 Genesis 16:7 Genesis 16:7 Genesis 24:13 Genesis 24:29 Genesis 24:30 Genesis 24:42 Genesis 24:45 Genesis 36:24 Genesis 49:22

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” produces a lot of fruit. Something that is “unfruitful” does not produce fruit.

- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the phrase “the fruit of every tree” refers to the fruit that comes from these trees.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.

Translation Suggestions:

- When the term “fruit” refers to what a specific plant produces, the specific term for the fruit of that plant can be used, otherwise, use a general word for the edible things that plants produce, if possible. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- When used literally, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much fruit.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When used literally, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 1:11
- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:11 Genesis 1:11 Genesis 1:12 Genesis 1:22 Genesis 1:28 Genesis 1:29 Genesis 3:2 Genesis 3:3 Genesis 3:6 Genesis 4:3 Genesis 8:17 Genesis 9:1 Genesis 9:7 Genesis 17:6 Genesis 17:20 Genesis 26:22 Genesis 28:3 Genesis 30:2 Genesis 35:11 Genesis 41:52 Genesis 47:27 Genesis 48:4 Genesis 49:22

gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway

Definition:

The term "gate" refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A "bar" for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

Genesis References:

Genesis 19:1 Genesis 22:17 Genesis 23:10 Genesis 23:18 Genesis 24:60 Genesis 28:17 Genesis 34:20 Genesis 34:24 Genesis 34:24 Genesis 38:14

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” in this sense refers to a period of time approximately equal to the lifetime of a person. This could be as long as 100 years. This period of time also came to be measured by the time between the adulthood of one person and the adulthood of his or her offspring, or a 30–40-year time span.

Translation Suggestions

- When referring to the past, “generations” could be translated as “during the times of our ancestors” or “when people lived before us.”
- When referring to the future, “generations” could be translated as “lifespans” or “times of people who will come afterwards” or “when our descendants are living.”
- The phrase “in his own generation” could be translated as “while he lived” or “during his time”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “from the time of people living now and for always” or “as long as people live on the earth” or “from now to all future time periods” or “for all time.”

(See also: descendant, ancestor)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H8435, G01650, G10740

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:4 Genesis 5:1 Genesis 6:9 Genesis 6:9 Genesis 7:1 Genesis 9:12 Genesis 10:1 Genesis 10:32 Genesis 11:10 Genesis 11:27 Genesis 15:16 Genesis 17:7 Genesis 17:9 Genesis 17:12 Genesis 25:12 Genesis 25:13 Genesis 25:19 Genesis 36:1 Genesis 36:9 Genesis 37:2

goat, goatskin, scapegoat, kid

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flock, sacrifice, sheep, righteous, wine)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 3:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G01220, G20550, G20560, G51310

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:9 Genesis 27:9 Genesis 27:9
Genesis 27:16 Genesis 27:16 Genesis 30:32
Genesis 30:33 Genesis 30:35 Genesis 30:35
Genesis 31:10 Genesis 31:12 Genesis 31:38
Genesis 32:14 Genesis 37:31 Genesis 38:17
Genesis 38:20 Genesis 38:23

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:11 Genesis 2:12 Genesis 13:2
Genesis 24:22 Genesis 24:22 Genesis 24:35
Genesis 24:53 Genesis 41:42 Genesis 44:8

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: head, wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

Genesis References:

Genesis 27:28 Genesis 27:37 Genesis 41:5
Genesis 41:6 Genesis 41:7 Genesis 41:7
Genesis 41:22 Genesis 41:23 Genesis 41:24
Genesis 41:24 Genesis 41:26 Genesis 41:27
Genesis 41:35 Genesis 41:49 Genesis 42:1
Genesis 42:2 Genesis 42:3 Genesis 42:19
Genesis 42:25 Genesis 42:26 Genesis 43:2
Genesis 44:2 Genesis 45:23 Genesis 47:14

grape, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called "raisins" and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: vine, vineyard, wine)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 9:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 6:43-44
- Matthew 7:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0811, H0891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G02880, G47180

Genesis References:

Genesis 40:10 Genesis 40:11 Genesis 49:11

hang, hung

Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person's neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a "tree"), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures "hung" a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by "hanging" in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 3:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G05190

Genesis References:

Genesis 40:19 Genesis 40:22 Genesis 41:13

hard, harder

Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, challenging, or requires great diligence and persistence to be done.

- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “persistent” or “diligently” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- Depending on context the term “harder” could also be translated as “more difficult” or “more diligently”
- In some contexts “hard” could be translated as “heavy” or “heavily.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2388, H3515, H6381, H7185, H7186, G03180, G14190, G14220, G14230, G25320, G28730, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

Genesis References:

Genesis 18:14

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, festival, good news)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

Genesis References:

Genesis 8:22 Genesis 30:14 Genesis 45:6

heir

Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, inherit)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:7
- Genesis 15:1
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:7
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G28160, G28180, G28200, G47890

Genesis References:

Genesis 21:10

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: Simile, Metaphor)
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

Genesis References:

Genesis 43:11

horn, horned, shofar

Definition:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a "ram's horn" or "shofar," which was blown for special events such as religious festivals or to call men for battle.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet, which is usually made of metal.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called "horns," they were not actually animal horns.
- The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.

(See also: authority, cow, deer, goat, power royal, sheep, trumpet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 1:39
- 2 Samuel 22:3
- Jeremiah 17:1
- Psalms 22:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G27680

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:13

horse, warhorse, horseback, stallion, steed, mare

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people. A stallion is a male horse and a mare is a female horse. "Steed" is a poetic word referring to a horse that is powerful or fast.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: chariot, donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

Genesis References:

Genesis 41:43 Genesis 47:17 Genesis 49:17

horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term "horsemen" referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called "horsemen," though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- Yahweh commanded the Israelites not to have many horsemen because having a strong army would cause them to trust their own strength rather than Yahweh in battle.
- This term could also be translated as "horse riders" or "men on horses."

(See also: chariot, horse)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:5
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G24600

Genesis References:

Genesis 50:9

house

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps.

- When referring to a building where people live and sleep the term “house” could be translated as “dwelling place” or “dwelling structure” or with another term that expresses the meaning.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, H1035, H1397, G36140, G36240

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:14 Genesis 7:1 Genesis 12:1
Genesis 12:15 Genesis 12:17 Genesis 14:14
Genesis 15:2 Genesis 15:3 Genesis 17:12
Genesis 17:13 Genesis 17:23 Genesis 17:23
Genesis 17:27 Genesis 17:27 Genesis 18:19
Genesis 19:2 Genesis 19:3 Genesis 19:4
Genesis 19:10 Genesis 19:11 Genesis 20:13
Genesis 20:18 Genesis 24:2 Genesis 24:7
Genesis 24:23 Genesis 24:27 Genesis 24:28
Genesis 24:31 Genesis 24:32 Genesis 24:38
Genesis 24:40 Genesis 27:15 Genesis 28:2
Genesis 28:17 Genesis 28:21 Genesis 28:22
Genesis 29:13 Genesis 30:30 Genesis 31:14
Genesis 31:30 Genesis 31:37 Genesis 31:41
Genesis 33:17 Genesis 34:19 Genesis 34:26
Genesis 34:29 Genesis 34:30 Genesis 35:2
Genesis 36:6 Genesis 39:2 Genesis 39:4
Genesis 39:5 Genesis 39:5 Genesis 39:5
Genesis 39:8 Genesis 39:9 Genesis 39:11
Genesis 39:11 Genesis 39:11 Genesis 39:14
Genesis 39:16 Genesis 40:3 Genesis 40:7
Genesis 41:10 Genesis 41:40 Genesis 41:51
Genesis 42:19 Genesis 42:33 Genesis 43:16
Genesis 43:16 Genesis 43:17 Genesis 43:18
Genesis 43:19 Genesis 43:19 Genesis 43:24
Genesis 43:26 Genesis 43:26 Genesis 44:1
Genesis 44:4 Genesis 44:8 Genesis 44:14
Genesis 45:2 Genesis 45:8 Genesis 45:11
Genesis 45:16 Genesis 45:18 Genesis 46:27
Genesis 46:31 Genesis 46:31 Genesis 47:12
Genesis 47:14 Genesis 47:24 Genesis 50:4
Genesis 50:7 Genesis 50:8 Genesis 50:8
Genesis 50:22

image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, God, false god, image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:19 Genesis 31:34 Genesis 31:35

integrity

Definition:

The term "integrity" refers to being honest, with strong moral principles and behavior is said to have integrity.

- Having integrity also means choosing to do what is honest and right even when nobody else is watching.
- Certain characters in the Bible, such as Joseph and Daniel, showed integrity when they refused to do evil and chose to obey God.
- The book of Proverbs says that it is better to be poor and have integrity than to be rich and corrupt or dishonest.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "integrity" could also be translated as "honesty" or "moral uprightness" or "behaving truthfully" or "acting in a trustworthy, honest manner."

(See also: Daniel, Joseph (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4
- Job 2:3
- Job 4:6
- Proverbs 10:8-9
- Psalm 26:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3476, H6664, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8537, H8538, H8549, G45870

Genesis References:

Genesis 20:5 Genesis 20:6

interpret, interpretation, interpreter

Definition:

The terms “interpret” and “interpretation” refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The “interpretation” of the dream is the “explanation” of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term “interpret” can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term “interpret” could include, “figure out the meaning of” or “explain” or “give the meaning of.”
- The term “interpretation” could also be translated as “explanation” or “meaning.”

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, dream, prophet, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 4:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 7:15-16
- Luke 12:56

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G12520, G13280, G13290, G13810, G19550, G20580, G31770, G47930

Genesis References:

Genesis 40:5 Genesis 40:8 Genesis 40:8
Genesis 40:12 Genesis 40:16 Genesis 40:18
Genesis 40:22 Genesis 41:8 Genesis 41:11
Genesis 41:12 Genesis 41:12 Genesis 41:13
Genesis 41:15 Genesis 41:15 Genesis 42:23

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **34:4** “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:27

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: governor, judge, law)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:8
- Acts 7:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 5:25
- Ruth 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G03500, G12520, G13480, G29190, G29220, G29230

Genesis References:

Genesis 18:25

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God is as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: "king of the Jews;" "king of Israel;" and "king of kings."
- Depending on the context, the term "king" might also be translated as "supreme chief" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" might be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:1 Genesis 14:1 Genesis 14:1
Genesis 14:1 Genesis 14:2 Genesis 14:2
Genesis 14:2 Genesis 14:2 Genesis 14:2
Genesis 14:5 Genesis 14:8 Genesis 14:8
Genesis 14:8 Genesis 14:8 Genesis 14:9
Genesis 14:9 Genesis 14:9 Genesis 14:9
Genesis 14:9 Genesis 14:10 Genesis 14:17
Genesis 14:17 Genesis 14:17 Genesis 14:18
Genesis 14:21 Genesis 14:22 Genesis 17:6
Genesis 17:16 Genesis 20:2 Genesis 26:1
Genesis 26:8 Genesis 35:11 Genesis 36:31
Genesis 36:31 Genesis 39:20 Genesis 40:1
Genesis 40:1 Genesis 40:5 Genesis 41:46
Genesis 49:20

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:10 Genesis 20:9

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G27050, G53680, G53700

Genesis References:

Genesis 27:26 Genesis 27:27 Genesis 29:11
Genesis 31:28 Genesis 31:55 Genesis 33:4
Genesis 45:15 Genesis 48:10 Genesis 50:1

know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

Used in this sense the term "know" and "knowledge" mean generally to understand something. It can also mean to be aware of a fact. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."

- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with that person. The word for knowing facts should be used when translating this sense of the word “know.”

(See also: know-relationship, law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1844, H1847, H3045, H3046, H3318, G00500, G00560, G03190, G10970, G11070, G11080, G11100, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G42670

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:9 Genesis 2:17 Genesis 3:5 Genesis 3:5 Genesis 3:7 Genesis 3:22 Genesis 4:1 Genesis 4:9 Genesis 4:17 Genesis 4:25 Genesis 8:11 Genesis 9:24 Genesis 12:11 Genesis 15:8 Genesis 15:13 Genesis 15:13 Genesis 18:19 Genesis 18:21 Genesis 19:5 Genesis 19:8 Genesis 19:33 Genesis 19:35 Genesis 20:6 Genesis 20:7 Genesis 21:26 Genesis 22:12 Genesis 24:14 Genesis 24:16 Genesis 24:21 Genesis 25:27 Genesis 27:2 Genesis 28:16 Genesis 29:5 Genesis 29:5 Genesis 30:26 Genesis 30:29 Genesis 31:6 Genesis 31:32 Genesis 33:13 Genesis 38:9 Genesis 38:16 Genesis 38:26 Genesis 39:6 Genesis 39:8 Genesis 41:21 Genesis 41:31 Genesis 41:39 Genesis 42:23 Genesis 42:33 Genesis 42:34 Genesis 43:7 Genesis 43:22 Genesis 44:15 Genesis 44:27 Genesis 45:1 Genesis 47:6 Genesis 48:19 Genesis 48:19

labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “toil” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3021, H4399, H4522, H4639, H5647, H5656, H5998, H6001, H6089, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:5 Genesis 2:15 Genesis 4:2 Genesis 4:12

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: law of Moses, decree, command, declare)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:2
- Esther 3:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:5
- John 18:31
- Romans 7:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G17850, G35480, G35510, G47470

Genesis References:

Genesis 26:5

lion, lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 7:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 17:12
- Revelation 5:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0738, H0739, H0744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G30230

Genesis References:

Genesis 49:9 Genesis 49:9 Genesis 49:9

livestock, animals

Definition:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cow, ox, donkey, goat, horse, sheep)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 3:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 1:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Numbers 3:41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0929, H4399, H4735

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:24 Genesis 1:25 Genesis 1:26
Genesis 2:20 Genesis 3:14 Genesis 4:20
Genesis 6:7 Genesis 6:20 Genesis 7:14
Genesis 7:21 Genesis 7:23 Genesis 8:1
Genesis 8:17 Genesis 9:10 Genesis 13:2
Genesis 13:7 Genesis 13:7 Genesis 29:7
Genesis 30:29 Genesis 31:9 Genesis 31:18
Genesis 31:18 Genesis 33:17 Genesis 34:5
Genesis 34:23 Genesis 36:6 Genesis 36:7
Genesis 46:6 Genesis 46:32 Genesis 46:34
Genesis 47:6 Genesis 47:16 Genesis 47:16
Genesis 47:17 Genesis 47:17 Genesis 47:17
Genesis 47:17 Genesis 47:18

loins

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: euphemism)
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: euphemism)
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, gird, children)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- 2 Chronicles 6:9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G37510

Genesis References:

Genesis 35:11 Genesis 37:34 Genesis 46:26
Genesis 47:29

lust, lustful, passion, desire

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."

(See also: adultery, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 Timothy 2:22
- Galatians 5:16
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 5:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0183, H0185, H0310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G07660, G19370, G19390, G22370, G37150, G38060

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:6

lute, lyre

Definition:

A lute and a lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.
- A lute is very similar to a modern day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: harp)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:11-12
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 5:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5443

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:21 Genesis 31:27

magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits

Definition:

The term “magic” refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A “magician” is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh’s magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: divination, Egypt, Pharaoh, power, sorcery)

Bible References:

- Genesis 41:8
- Genesis 41:22-24
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Genesis 44:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2748, H2749, H3049, G30970

Genesis References:

Genesis 41:8 Genesis 41:24

meditate, meditation

Definition:

“The term meditate” means to spend time thinking about something carefully and deeply.

- This term is often used in the Bible to refer to thinking about God and his teachings.
- Psalm 1 says that the person who meditates on the law of the Lord “day and night” will be greatly blessed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “meditate on” could be translated as to “think about carefully and deeply” or to “consider thoughtfully” or to “think about often.”
- The noun form is “meditation” and could be translated as “deep thoughts.” A phrase like “meditation of my heart” could be translated as “what I think deeply about” or “what I often think about.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:63
- Joshua 1:8-9
- Psalm 1:1-2
- Psalms 119:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1897, H1900, H1902, H7742, H7878, H7879, H7881

Genesis References:

Genesis 24:63

messenger

Definition:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

Genesis References:

Genesis 32:3 Genesis 32:6

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:4 Genesis 10:8 Genesis 10:9 Genesis 10:9 Genesis 18:18 Genesis 26:16 Genesis 49:3 Genesis 49:7 Genesis 49:24

mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms "mock," "ridicule," and "scoff at" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:5** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, "He deserves to die!" Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, "Look, the King of the Jews!"
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God?"

- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

Genesis References:

Genesis 21:9 Genesis 39:14 Genesis 39:17

mourn, mourner, weeping

Definition:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

Genesis References:

Genesis 23:2 Genesis 27:41 Genesis 37:34 Genesis 37:35 Genesis 50:4 Genesis 50:10 Genesis 50:11 Genesis 50:11

multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:22 Genesis 1:22 Genesis 1:28
Genesis 3:16 Genesis 6:1 Genesis 7:17
Genesis 7:18 Genesis 8:17 Genesis 9:1
Genesis 9:7 Genesis 9:7 Genesis 16:10
Genesis 17:2 Genesis 17:20 Genesis 22:17
Genesis 26:4 Genesis 26:24 Genesis 28:3
Genesis 35:11 Genesis 47:27 Genesis 48:4

nation

Definition:

In the Bible, a nation is a large group of people who share a common identity and speak the same language. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- In the Bible, a nation could be a country with an extensive government structure and defined boundaries (such as Egypt or Ethiopia), but usually it is more general and refers to a people group.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- When used in the plural in a general way, the word translated as “nations” often referred to the people who were not Israelites, that is, to Gentiles, the people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “non-Jews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:5 Genesis 10:5 Genesis 10:20 Genesis 10:31 Genesis 10:32 Genesis 10:32 Genesis 12:2 Genesis 15:14 Genesis 17:4 Genesis 17:5 Genesis 17:6 Genesis 17:16 Genesis 17:20 Genesis 18:18 Genesis 18:18 Genesis 20:4 Genesis 21:13 Genesis 21:18 Genesis 22:18 Genesis 25:23 Genesis 26:4 Genesis 35:11 Genesis 35:11 Genesis 46:3 Genesis 48:19

oak

Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could be measured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like…," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: holy)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 6:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H0424, H0427, H0436, H0437, H0438

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:6 Genesis 13:18 Genesis 14:13 Genesis 18:1 Genesis 35:8

oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by, sworn

Definition:

The term “oath” in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term “swear” means to make an oath. A “vow” is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word “swear” is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.
- Depending on the context, the term “vow” can be translated as “solemn promise” or “solemn oath” or “promise made to God.”

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72
- 1 Corinthians 7:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 1:14-16
- Jonah 2:9-10
- Proverbs 7:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280, H5087, H5088, G21710

Genesis References:

Genesis 21:23 Genesis 21:24 Genesis 21:31
Genesis 22:16 Genesis 24:3 Genesis 24:7
Genesis 24:8 Genesis 24:9 Genesis 24:37
Genesis 24:41 Genesis 24:41 Genesis 25:33
Genesis 25:33 Genesis 26:3 Genesis 26:28
Genesis 26:31 Genesis 28:20 Genesis 28:20
Genesis 31:13 Genesis 31:13 Genesis 31:53
Genesis 47:31 Genesis 47:31 Genesis 50:5
Genesis 50:6 Genesis 50:24 Genesis 50:25

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

Genesis References:

Genesis 28:18 Genesis 35:14

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

Genesis References:

Genesis 8:11

oversee, overseer, keeper

Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people. In the Bible, often the term “keeper” means “overseer.”

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/ pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, elder, pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 3:2
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G19830, G19840, G19850

Genesis References:

Genesis 39:4 Genesis 39:5 Genesis 41:34

overtake

Definition:

The term “overtake” and “overtook” refer to gaining control over someone or something. It usually includes the idea of catching up to something after pursuing it.

- When military troops “overtake” an enemy, it means they defeat that enemy in battle.
- When a predator overtakes its prey, it means that it pursues and catches its prey.
- If a curse “overtakes” someone, it means that whatever was said in that curse happens to the person
- If blessings “overtake” people, it means that those people experience those blessings.
- Depending on the context, “overtake” could be translated as “conquer” or “capture” or “defeat” or “catch up to” or “completely affect.”
- The past action “overtook” can be translated as “caught up to” or “came alongside of” or “conquered” or “defeated” or “caused harm to.”
- When used in a warning that darkness or punishment or terrors will overtake people because of their sin, it means that those people will experience these negative things if they do not repent.
- The phrase “My words have overtaken your fathers” means that the teachings that Yahweh gave to their ancestors will now cause the ancestors to receive punishment because they failed to obey those teachings.

(See also: bless, curse, prey, punish)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- John 12:35

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H0935, H1692, H4672, H5066, H5381, G26380, G29830

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:25 Genesis 44:4 Genesis 44:6

peace, peaceful, peacemaker

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:15 Genesis 26:29 Genesis 26:31
Genesis 28:21 Genesis 29:6 Genesis 29:6
Genesis 34:21 Genesis 37:4 Genesis 37:14
Genesis 37:14 Genesis 41:16 Genesis 43:23
Genesis 43:27 Genesis 43:27 Genesis 43:28
Genesis 44:17

perfect, complete

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be “perfect” or “complete,” that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

(See also: blemish)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

Genesis References:

Genesis 6:9 Genesis 17:1

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, false god, image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

Genesis References:

Genesis 19:26 Genesis 28:18 Genesis 28:22
Genesis 31:13 Genesis 31:45 Genesis 31:51
Genesis 31:52 Genesis 31:52 Genesis 35:14
Genesis 35:14 Genesis 35:20 Genesis 35:20

pit, pitfall, trench, cistern

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- A "cistern" was a hole dug in order to hold water.
- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase "the pit" refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to "the abyss."
- The term "pit" is also used figuratively in phrases such as, "pit of destruction" which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: abyss, hell, prison)

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:18
- Luke 6:39
- Proverbs 1:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0875, H0953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G00120, G09990, G54210

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:10 Genesis 40:15 Genesis 41:14

plea, plead, please, beg, implore

Definition:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 8:3-5
- Judges 6:31
- Luke 4:39
- Proverbs 18:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G11890, G17930, G20650, G38700

Genesis References:

Genesis 25:21 Genesis 42:21

pledge

Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- To “pledge” could be translate as to “formally commit to” or to “strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: promise, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:4-5
- Exodus 22:26
- Genesis 38:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0781, H2254, H2258, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6161, H6162

Genesis References:

Genesis 38:17 Genesis 38:18 Genesis 38:20 Genesis 43:9 Genesis 44:32

plow, plower, plowman, plowmen, plowshare, unplowed

Definition:

A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: bronze, ox)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:4
- Luke 9:62
- Luke 17:7
- Psalm 141:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0406, H0855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G07220, G07230

Genesis References:

Genesis 45:6

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Definition:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”

- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship, inherit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:7 Genesis 15:8 Genesis 17:8 Genesis 22:17 Genesis 24:60 Genesis 28:4 Genesis 34:10 Genesis 36:43 Genesis 47:11 Genesis 47:27 Genesis 48:4

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.

- **22:7** Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!"
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:15 Genesis 29:35 Genesis 49:8

prey, prey on

Definition:

The term "prey" refers to something that is hunted, usually an animal that is used for food.

- In a figurative sense, "prey" can refer to a person who is taken advantage of, abused, or oppressed by a more powerful person.
- To "prey on" people means to take advantage of them by oppressing them or stealing something from them.
- The term "prey" could also be translated as "hunted animal" or "hunted one" or "victim."

(See also: oppress)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 12:9
- Psalms 104:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0400, H0957, H0962, H2963, H2964, H5706, H5861, H7997, H7998

Genesis References:

Genesis 49:9 Genesis 49:27

prince, princess, governor, provincial governor, official, nobleman, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, lord, power, ruler, Satan, Savior, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

Genesis References:

Genesis 12:15 Genesis 17:20

profit, profits, profited, profitable

Definition:

Used in this sense, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining some material thing through doing certain actions or behaviors. Something is “profitable” to someone if it enables them to earn or attain good material things.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they cause material things to be gained for people.

(See also: worthy,profit-spiritual)

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- Depending on context, the term “profits” could be translated as “earnings” when referring to wages earned by working.
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- The term “profited” could be translated as “gained.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3276, H4195, G12810, G20390, G27700, G27710, G36850, G37860, G48510, G48525, G55390, G56220, G56230, G56240

Genesis References:

Genesis 37:26

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: bless, good, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

Genesis References:

Genesis 24:21 Genesis 24:40 Genesis 24:42 Genesis 24:56 Genesis 34:29 Genesis 39:2 Genesis 39:3 Genesis 39:23

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms "prostitute" and "harlot" both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word "prostitute" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression "play the harlot" means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To "prostitute oneself" to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, false god, sexual immorality, false god)

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

Genesis References:

Genesis 34:31 Genesis 38:15 Genesis 38:24 Genesis 38:24

prostrate

Definition:

The term “prostrate” means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

- To “fall prostrate” or to “prostrate oneself” before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
- Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
- Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “prostrated” could include “bowed down low with the face to the ground” or “worshiped him by lying face down in front of him” or “bowed down low to the ground in amazement” or “worshiped.”
- The phrase “will not prostrate ourselves” could be translated as “will not worship” or “will not lie face down in worship” or “will not bow down and worship.”
- “Prostrate himself to” could also be translated as “worship” or “bow down in front of.”

(See also: awe, bow)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:36-38
- Genesis 43:28
- Revelation 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5307, H5457, H6440, H6915, H7812

Genesis References:

Genesis 43:28

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.

- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, "You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:4

rebuke, reprove

Definition:

The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:25
- Mark 1:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 8:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G16490, G16510, G19690, G20080, G36790

Genesis References:

Genesis 21:25 Genesis 31:42 Genesis 37:10

reed

Definition:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Moses, Nile River)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 7:24
- Matthew 11:7
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 68:30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0098, H0100, H0260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G25630

Genesis References:

Genesis 41:2 Genesis 41:5 Genesis 41:18 Genesis 41:22

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

Genesis References:

Genesis 36:31 Genesis 36:32 Genesis 36:33 Genesis 36:34 Genesis 36:35 Genesis 36:36 Genesis 36:37 Genesis 36:38 Genesis 36:39 Genesis 37:8

report, reported, tell, reputation

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as “Do not talk about this with anyone” or “Do not tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

Genesis References:

Genesis 9:22 Genesis 14:13 Genesis 21:26 Genesis 22:20 Genesis 24:28 Genesis 26:32 Genesis 27:42 Genesis 29:12 Genesis 29:12 Genesis 31:20 Genesis 31:22 Genesis 31:27 Genesis 32:5 Genesis 32:29 Genesis 37:2 Genesis 37:16 Genesis 38:13 Genesis 38:24 Genesis 41:24 Genesis 41:25 Genesis 42:29 Genesis 43:6 Genesis 43:7 Genesis 45:13 Genesis 45:26 Genesis 46:31 Genesis 47:1 Genesis 48:2 Genesis 49:1

reward, prize, deserve

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:6
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 6:35
- Mark 9:40-41
- Matthew 5:11-12
- Matthew 6:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:1

rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
- Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
- The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:16 Genesis 1:16 Genesis 1:18 Genesis 21:22 Genesis 21:32 Genesis 23:6 Genesis 25:16 Genesis 26:26 Genesis 34:2 Genesis 37:36 Genesis 39:1 Genesis 39:21 Genesis 39:22 Genesis 39:23 Genesis 40:2 Genesis 40:2 Genesis 40:3 Genesis 40:4 Genesis 40:7 Genesis 40:9 Genesis 40:16 Genesis 40:20 Genesis 40:20 Genesis 40:21 Genesis 40:22 Genesis 40:23 Genesis 41:9 Genesis 41:10 Genesis 41:10 Genesis 41:12 Genesis 42:6 Genesis 45:8 Genesis 45:26 Genesis 47:6

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase "sackcloth and ashes" was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "coarse cloth from animal hair" or "clothes made of goat hair" or "rough, scratchy clothing."
- Another way to translate this term could be "rough, scratchy mourning clothes."
- The phrase "sit in sackcloth and ashes" could be translated as "show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ash, camel, goat, humble, mourn, repent, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G45260

Genesis References:

Genesis 37:34

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

Genesis References:

Genesis 31:54 Genesis 31:54 Genesis 46:1 Genesis 46:1

sandal

Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

Bible References:

- Acts 7:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 1:27
- Joshua 5:15
- Mark 6:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G45470, G52660

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:23

scepter

Definition:

The term “scepter” refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority and also symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God was described as having a scepter of righteousness because God rules as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy referred to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as “ruling rod” or “ruler’s rod” or “king’s rod.”

(See also: authority, Christ, king, righteous)

Bible References:

- Amos 1:5
- Esther 4:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Hebrews 1:8
- Numbers 21:18
- Psalms 45:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2710, H4294, H7626, H8275, G44640

Genesis References:

Genesis 49:10

seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

When referring to an action, the term “seal” means to close an object with something (usually called a “seal”) that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal. When referring to an object, the term “seal” refers to something that was made of wood or metal or stone that was formed into a design so that it could be used to stamp something (make an imprint on it).

- A seal was marked with a design to show who it belonged to.
- Seals were used to mark different objects for the purpose of showing that the thing belonged to the owner or had come from the owner or was approved by the owner.
- Seals were used to indicate the authenticity of something as deriving from the owner or being approved by the owner or belonging to the owner in some way.
- Sometimes a seal was put on the top of a ring so that the owner of the ring could press the seal down into something and make an imprint on it.
- Sometimes seals were attached to a string or cord and worn around the neck.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.

(See also: Holy Spirit, tomb)

Bible References:

- Exodus 2:3
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 6:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G26960, G49720, G49730

Genesis References:

Genesis 38:18 Genesis 38:25

seed

Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant.

- The term "seed" can also refer to what a man plants into a woman that allows them to reproduce.
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a man's or woman's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the seed of a plant, use a general term that can apply to all plants, if possible.
- When "seed" refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: children, descendant)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

Genesis References:

Genesis 1:11 Genesis 1:11 Genesis 1:12 Genesis 1:12 Genesis 1:29 Genesis 1:29 Genesis 3:15 Genesis 3:15 Genesis 4:25 Genesis 7:3 Genesis 8:22 Genesis 9:9 Genesis 12:7 Genesis 13:15 Genesis 13:16 Genesis 13:16 Genesis 15:3 Genesis 15:5 Genesis 15:13 Genesis 15:18 Genesis 16:10 Genesis 17:7 Genesis 17:7 Genesis 17:8 Genesis 17:9 Genesis 17:10 Genesis 17:19 Genesis 19:32 Genesis 19:34 Genesis 21:12 Genesis 21:13 Genesis 22:17 Genesis 22:17 Genesis 22:18 Genesis 24:7 Genesis 24:60 Genesis 26:3 Genesis 26:4 Genesis 26:4 Genesis 26:4 Genesis 26:24 Genesis 28:4 Genesis 28:13 Genesis 28:14 Genesis 28:14 Genesis 32:12 Genesis 35:12 Genesis 38:8 Genesis 38:9 Genesis 38:9 Genesis 46:6 Genesis 46:7 Genesis 47:19 Genesis 47:23 Genesis 47:24 Genesis 48:4 Genesis 48:11 Genesis 48:19

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

Genesis References:

Genesis 9:5 Genesis 9:5 Genesis 9:5 Genesis 25:22 Genesis 31:35 Genesis 31:39 Genesis 37:15 Genesis 37:16 Genesis 43:30 Genesis 44:12

seize, seizure, capture

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: euphemism)

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:11 Genesis 14:12 Genesis 19:16
Genesis 21:25 Genesis 31:31 Genesis 39:12

serpent, snake, viper

Definition:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term "serpent" usually refers to a large snake and "viper" refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders "offspring of vipers" because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, deceive, disobey, Eden, evil, prey, Satan, sin, tempt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 3:3
- Genesis 3:4-6
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 23:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G21910, G20620, G37890

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:1 Genesis 3:2 Genesis 3:4 Genesis 3:13 Genesis 3:14 Genesis 49:17

servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women

Definition:

A "servant" refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's direction. In the Bible, "servant" and "slave" are mostly interchangeable terms. The term "serve" generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- In the Bible the words "young man" or "young woman" often mean "servant" or "slave." This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. "her young women" which could be translated as "her servants" or "her slaves."

Translation Suggestions

- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.

- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."
- Often, when a person referred to himself as "your servant" he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: enslave, works, obey, house, lord)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- Strong's for Servant: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- Strong's for Serve: H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560

Genesis References:

Genesis 9:25 Genesis 9:25 Genesis 9:26
Genesis 9:27 Genesis 12:16 Genesis 12:16
Genesis 14:4 Genesis 14:15 Genesis 15:13
Genesis 15:14 Genesis 16:1 Genesis 16:2
Genesis 16:3 Genesis 16:5 Genesis 16:6
Genesis 16:8 Genesis 18:3 Genesis 18:5
Genesis 18:7 Genesis 19:2 Genesis 19:19
Genesis 20:8 Genesis 20:14 Genesis 20:14
Genesis 20:17 Genesis 21:10 Genesis 21:10
Genesis 21:12 Genesis 21:13 Genesis 21:25
Genesis 22:3 Genesis 22:5 Genesis 22:19
Genesis 24:2 Genesis 24:5 Genesis 24:9
Genesis 24:10 Genesis 24:14 Genesis 24:17
Genesis 24:34 Genesis 24:35 Genesis 24:35
Genesis 24:52 Genesis 24:53 Genesis 24:59
Genesis 24:61 Genesis 24:65 Genesis 24:65
Genesis 24:66 Genesis 25:12 Genesis 25:23
Genesis 26:14 Genesis 26:15 Genesis 26:19
Genesis 26:24 Genesis 26:25 Genesis 26:32
Genesis 27:29 Genesis 27:37 Genesis 27:40
Genesis 29:15 Genesis 29:18 Genesis 29:20
Genesis 29:24 Genesis 29:24 Genesis 29:25
Genesis 29:27 Genesis 29:29 Genesis 29:29
Genesis 29:30 Genesis 30:3 Genesis 30:4
Genesis 30:7 Genesis 30:9 Genesis 30:10
Genesis 30:18 Genesis 30:26 Genesis 30:26
Genesis 30:29 Genesis 30:43 Genesis 30:43
Genesis 31:6 Genesis 31:33 Genesis 31:41
Genesis 32:4 Genesis 32:5 Genesis 32:5
Genesis 32:10 Genesis 32:16 Genesis 32:16
Genesis 32:18 Genesis 32:20 Genesis 32:22
Genesis 33:1 Genesis 33:2 Genesis 33:5
Genesis 33:6 Genesis 33:14 Genesis 34:19
Genesis 35:26 Genesis 39:4 Genesis 39:17
Genesis 39:19 Genesis 40:4 Genesis 40:20
Genesis 40:20 Genesis 41:10 Genesis 41:12
Genesis 41:37 Genesis 41:38 Genesis 42:10
Genesis 42:11 Genesis 42:13 Genesis 43:18
Genesis 43:28 Genesis 44:7 Genesis 44:9
Genesis 44:9 Genesis 44:10 Genesis 44:16
Genesis 44:16 Genesis 44:17 Genesis 44:18
Genesis 44:18 Genesis 44:19 Genesis 44:21
Genesis 44:23 Genesis 44:24 Genesis 44:27
Genesis 44:30 Genesis 44:31 Genesis 44:31
Genesis 44:31 Genesis 44:32 Genesis 44:32
Genesis 44:33 Genesis 44:33 Genesis 45:16
Genesis 46:34 Genesis 47:3 Genesis 47:4
Genesis 47:4 Genesis 47:19 Genesis 47:25
Genesis 49:15 Genesis 50:2 Genesis 50:7
Genesis 50:17 Genesis 50:18

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5
- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:25 Genesis 30:23 Genesis 34:7 Genesis 34:14

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:9 Genesis 20:14 Genesis 21:27 Genesis 21:28 Genesis 21:29 Genesis 21:30 Genesis 22:13 Genesis 22:13 Genesis 29:2 Genesis 29:3 Genesis 29:6 Genesis 29:7 Genesis 29:8 Genesis 29:9 Genesis 29:10 Genesis 29:10 Genesis 30:32 Genesis 30:32 Genesis 31:19 Genesis 31:38 Genesis 31:38 Genesis 32:14 Genesis 32:14 Genesis 33:13 Genesis 38:12 Genesis 38:13

shepherd, herder, pastor

Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: sheep, livestock, pastor)

Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:2 Genesis 13:7 Genesis 13:7
Genesis 13:8 Genesis 13:8 Genesis 26:20
Genesis 26:20 Genesis 29:7 Genesis 29:9
Genesis 30:31 Genesis 30:36 Genesis 37:2
Genesis 37:12 Genesis 37:13 Genesis 37:16
Genesis 46:32 Genesis 47:3 Genesis 48:15
Genesis 49:24

shield

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith, obey, Satan, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 18:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G23750

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:1

shrewd, cunning

Definition:

The term “shrewd” describes a person who is intelligent and clever, especially in practical matters.

- Often the term “shrewd” has a meaning that is partly negative since it usually also involves being selfish.
- A shrewd person is usually focused on helping himself, not others.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “cunning” or “crafty” or “smart” or “clever,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2450, H6175, G54290

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:1

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made from silver include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph’s brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.
- If your culture does not have silver you could translate this term as “precious metal”

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

Genesis References:

Genesis 13:2 Genesis 17:12 Genesis 17:13
Genesis 17:23 Genesis 17:27 Genesis 20:16
Genesis 23:9 Genesis 23:13 Genesis 23:15
Genesis 23:16 Genesis 23:16 Genesis 24:35
Genesis 24:53 Genesis 31:15 Genesis 37:28
Genesis 42:25 Genesis 42:27 Genesis 42:28
Genesis 42:35 Genesis 42:35 Genesis 43:12
Genesis 43:12 Genesis 43:15 Genesis 43:18
Genesis 43:21 Genesis 43:21 Genesis 43:22
Genesis 43:22 Genesis 43:23 Genesis 44:1
Genesis 44:2 Genesis 44:2 Genesis 44:8
Genesis 44:8 Genesis 45:22 Genesis 47:14
Genesis 47:14 Genesis 47:15 Genesis 47:15
Genesis 47:16 Genesis 47:18

slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder

Definition:

To “slay” a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal he has “slain” it.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term “slaughter” is another term that is often used.
- An act of slaughtering is also called a “slaughter.”
- The phrase “the slain” could also be translated as “the slain people” or “the people who were killed.”

(See also: slaughter)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:23
- Isaiah 26:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2076, H2491, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7819, G03370, G06150, G13150, G23800, G26950, G49680, G49690, G54070

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:8 Genesis 4:14 Genesis 4:15
Genesis 4:23 Genesis 4:25 Genesis 12:12
Genesis 20:4 Genesis 20:11 Genesis 26:7
Genesis 27:41 Genesis 27:42 Genesis 34:25
Genesis 34:26 Genesis 37:20 Genesis 37:26
Genesis 49:6

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

Genesis References:

Genesis 22:10 Genesis 37:31 Genesis 43:16

sow, sower, plant, planted, replanted, transplanted

Definition:

To “sow” means to put seeds on top of or in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds. A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground.

- One method of sowing or planting seeds during biblical times was to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Farmers would often plow the ground on which they had sown seeds after they had sown the seeds. The reason farmers would plow the ground after they had sown the seed is so that the seed would be covered with soil.
- Sometimes farmers may have plowed the field that they sowed seeds in both before and after sowing seeds.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word or phrase you use to translate this term refers to, or can include, planting seeds by scattering them because this is the method of sowing that Jesus was referring to in his parable in Matthew 13:3-23, Mark 4:2-20, and Luke 8:4-8 where he describes a sower who sowed seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.

(See also: harvest)

Bible References:

- Luke 8:5
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:4

- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G46870, G47030, G54520

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:8 Genesis 9:20 Genesis 21:33 Genesis 26:12 Genesis 47:23

staff, clubs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, power, sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:1-3
- Exodus 7:9
- Luke 9:3
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G25630, G35860, G44640

Genesis References:

Genesis 38:18 Genesis 38:25

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

Genesis References:

Genesis 26:5 Genesis 47:26

strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict

Definition:

The term “strife” refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements between people and in hurt feelings.
- Sometimes the use of the word “strife” implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “disagreement” or “dispute” or “conflict.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 3:3-5
- Habakkuk 1:3
- Philippians 1:17
- Proverbs 17:1
- Psalms 55:8-9
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H1779, H4066, H4090, H4683, H4808, H7379, H7701, G04850, G20520, G20540, G30550, G31630, G53790

Genesis References:

Genesis 13:7 Genesis 13:8 Genesis 26:20 Genesis 26:21

sweep

Definition:

To “sweep” usually means to remove dirt by making broad, quick movements with a broom or brush. “Swept” is the past tense of “sweep.” These words are also used figuratively.

- The term “sweep” is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
- For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would “sweep through” the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
- The term “sweep” can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
- When overwhelming, difficult things are happening to a person, it can be said that they are “sweeping over” him.

(See also: Assyria, Isaiah, Judah, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:3
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Genesis 18:24
- Proverbs 21:7-8
- Psalms 90:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0622, H0857, H1640, H2498, H2894, H3261, H5500, H5595, H7857, G42160, G45630, G49510

Genesis References:

Genesis 18:23 Genesis 18:24 Genesis 19:15 Genesis 19:17

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword’s blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible exposed people’s innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2

- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:24 Genesis 27:40 Genesis 31:26 Genesis 34:25 Genesis 34:26 Genesis 48:22 Genesis 49:5

tent, tentmaker

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, curtain, Paul, Sinai, tabernacle, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0167, H0168, H2583, H3407, H6898

Genesis References:

Genesis 4:20 Genesis 9:21 Genesis 9:27
Genesis 12:8 Genesis 13:3 Genesis 13:5
Genesis 13:12 Genesis 13:18 Genesis 18:1
Genesis 18:2 Genesis 18:6 Genesis 18:9
Genesis 18:10 Genesis 24:67 Genesis 25:27
Genesis 26:25 Genesis 31:25 Genesis 31:33
Genesis 31:33 Genesis 31:33 Genesis 31:33
Genesis 31:33 Genesis 31:34 Genesis 33:19
Genesis 35:21

tenth, tithe

Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: believe, Israel, Levite, livestock, Melchizedek, minister, sacrifice, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- Isaiah 6:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4643, H6237, H6241, G05860, G11810, G11830

Genesis References:

Genesis 14:20 Genesis 28:22

terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme or intense fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: adversary, fear, judge, plague, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 2:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:9
- Mark 6:48-50

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H0928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G16290, G16300, G22580, G44220, G44260, G54010

Genesis References:

Genesis 9:2 Genesis 15:12 Genesis 28:17 Genesis 35:5 Genesis 45:3

thief, thieves, rob, robber, robbery, bandit

Definition:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: bless, crime, crucify, darkness, destroyer, power, Samaria, Satan)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 6:30
- Revelation 3:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G07270, G24170, G28120, G30270

Genesis References:

Genesis 49:19

thorn, thorn bush, thistle

Definition:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: crown, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 6:7-8
- Matthew 13:7
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G01730, G01740, G46470, G51460

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:18 Genesis 3:18

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

Genesis References:

Genesis 50:10 Genesis 50:11

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, king, reign)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

Genesis References:

Genesis 41:40

grave, gravedigger, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

Genesis References:

Genesis 23:4 Genesis 23:6 Genesis 23:6 Genesis 23:9 Genesis 23:20 Genesis 35:20 Genesis 35:20 Genesis 47:30 Genesis 49:30 Genesis 50:5 Genesis 50:13

tongue, language

Definition:

The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, joy, praise, rejoice, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

Genesis References:

Genesis 10:5 Genesis 10:20 Genesis 10:31

tremble, shake, shaken, quake

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

Genesis References:

Genesis 27:33 Genesis 27:33 Genesis 42:28

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

Genesis References:

Genesis 25:16 Genesis 49:16 Genesis 49:28

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Do not trouble her" could also be translated as "do not bother her" or "do not criticize her."
- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or "when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

Genesis References:

Genesis 34:30 Genesis 35:3 Genesis 41:8
Genesis 41:51 Genesis 42:21 Genesis 42:21

tunic

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See Also: robe)

Bible References:

- Daniel 3:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 8:12-13
- Luke 3:11
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2243, H3801, H6361, G55090

Genesis References:

Genesis 3:21 Genesis 37:3 Genesis 37:23 Genesis 37:23 Genesis 37:31 Genesis 37:31 Genesis 37:32 Genesis 37:32 Genesis 37:33

veil, veiled, unveiled

Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to fully or partially cover the head or face.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The veils that women in the Bible wore over their face may have been made of thin material which could be partly seen through and may have only covered part of the face so that the women’s eyes were not covered.
- The verb to “veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a better term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as “thin cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: Moses)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 3:12-13
- 2 Corinthians 3:16
- Ezekiel 13:18
- Isaiah 47:1-2
- Song of Songs 4:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4304, H4533, H4555, H6777, H6809, H7196, H7479, G03430, G25710, G25720

Genesis References:

Genesis 24:65 Genesis 38:14 Genesis 38:19

vine

Definition:

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem." (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, vineyard)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

Genesis References:

Genesis 40:9 Genesis 40:10 Genesis 49:11 Genesis 49:11

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: Metaphor)
- Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."

(See also: grape, Israel, vine)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- Luke 13:6
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:2
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

Genesis References:

Genesis 9:20

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

Genesis References:

Genesis 24:16

vision, envision

Definition:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

- Acts 9:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 1:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G37010, G37050, G37060

Genesis References:

Genesis 15:1 Genesis 46:2

watch, guard, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

Genesis References:

Genesis 2:15 Genesis 4:9 Genesis 17:9
Genesis 17:10 Genesis 24:6 Genesis 28:15
Genesis 28:20 Genesis 30:31 Genesis 31:24
Genesis 31:29 Genesis 31:49 Genesis 37:11

cistern, well

Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: Jeremiah, prison, strife)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0875, H0883, H0953, H1360, H4599, H4726, H4841, G40770, G54210

Genesis References:

Genesis 16:14 Genesis 21:19 Genesis 21:25
Genesis 21:30 Genesis 24:11 Genesis 24:20
Genesis 26:15 Genesis 26:18 Genesis 26:19
Genesis 26:20 Genesis 26:21 Genesis 26:25
Genesis 26:32 Genesis 29:2 Genesis 29:2
Genesis 29:2 Genesis 29:3 Genesis 29:3
Genesis 29:8 Genesis 29:10 Genesis 37:20
Genesis 37:22 Genesis 37:24 Genesis 37:24
Genesis 37:28 Genesis 37:29 Genesis 37:29

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, seed, thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H2406, G46210

Genesis References:

Genesis 30:14

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

Genesis References:

Genesis 9:21 Genesis 9:24 Genesis 14:18
Genesis 19:32 Genesis 19:33 Genesis 19:34
Genesis 19:35 Genesis 27:25 Genesis 27:28
Genesis 27:37 Genesis 49:11 Genesis 49:12

wise men, advisor

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wise men" is often a technical term referring to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king's royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- The "wise men" who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes "wise men" also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called "magi," which is often translated as "wise men," since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "wise men" could be translated using the term "wise" or with a phrase such as "gifted men" or "educated men" or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 2:1-2
- Daniel 2:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G46800

Genesis References:

Genesis 41:8

wolf, wild dog, wild dogs

Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term "wolves" is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as "wild dog" or "wild animal."
- Other names for wild dogs could be "jackal" or "coyote."
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as "evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep."

(See also: evil, false prophet, sheep, teach)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:29
- Isaiah 11:7
- John 10:11-13
- Luke 10:3
- Matthew 7:15
- Zephaniah 3:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2061, H3611, G30740

Genesis References:

Genesis 49:27

womb

Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: euphemism)
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 2:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G10640, G28360, G33880

Genesis References:

Genesis 20:18 Genesis 25:23 Genesis 25:24 Genesis 29:31 Genesis 30:2 Genesis 30:22 Genesis 38:27 Genesis 49:25

wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:5
- Luke 6:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 71:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G00910, G00920, G00930, G00950, G02640, G08240, G09830, G09840, G15360, G16260, G16510, G17270, G19080, G25560, G25580, G25590, G26070, G30760, G30770, G37620, G41220, G51950, G51960

Genesis References:

Genesis 16:5